

**THE BOOK OF  
MORMON**

**MĀORI – ENGLISH  
PARALLEL EDITION**

Version 1, published April 2023. [bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/](http://bencrowder.net/book-of-mormon-parallel-edition/)

This parallel edition © 2023 Benjamin Crowder. All rights reserved. You have permission to print this document for your own use. For other uses, send requests to [ben.crowder@gmail.com](mailto:ben.crowder@gmail.com).

Text of the Book of Mormon © 2023 Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All rights reserved.

The text of this edition is licensed from The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints with the following disclaimer: *The Product offered by Benjamin Crowder is neither made, provided, approved, nor endorsed by, Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Any content or opinions expressed, implied, or included in or with the Product offered by Benjamin Crowder are solely those of Benjamin Crowder and not those of Intellectual Reserve, Inc. or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

## Ko te Pukapuka a Moromona

### He Tuhinga i Tuhituhia e te Ringa o Moromona i runga i ngā Papa i tangohia i ngā Papa a Nīwhai

Nā reira, he whakarāpopototanga ia nō te tuhituhinga a te iwi o Nīwhai, me ngā Rāmana anō hoki—i tuhia atu ki ngā Rāmana, ko rātou nei he mōrehu nō te whare o Iharaira; ki te Hūrai, ki te Tauīwi anō hoki: i tuhia mā runga i te whakahaunga, mā runga anō i te wairua o te poropititanga me te whakakitenga. I tuhia, i hīria ake, i hunaia ake anō ki te Ariki, kia kaua e whakangaromia—kia puta mai ai i runga i te takohatanga me te kaha o te Atua hei whakamāramatanga i aua mea—i hīria e te ringa o Moronai, i hunaia ake anō ki te Ariki kia puta mai ai i tōna wā mā te ringa o ngā Tauīwi—Ko tōna whakamāoritanga mā roto i te takohatanga a te Atua.

He whakarāpopototanga i tangohia mai i te Pukapuka a Ētere anō hoki; he tuhinga ia nō te iwi o Iarere; i whakamararatia atu rā i te wā i whakapōauautia ai e te Ariki te reo o te iwi, i a rātou e hanga ana i tētahi pourewa e tae ai ki te rangi; he mea tēnei hei whakaatu ai ki ngā mōrehu o te whare o Iharaira i ngā mea nunui i mea ai te Ariki mō ō rātou mātua: ā, e mōhio ai hoki rātou ki ngā kawenata a te Ariki, arā, e kore rātou e makaia atu mō ake tonu atu—Ā, tae atu ana ki te whakapakepaketanga i te Hūrai me te Tauīwi ko IHU TE KARAITI, te ATUA ORA TONU, e whakakite atu ana i a ia anō ki ngā iwi katoa—Ā, ināianei, mehemea he hē, he hapa ērā nā te tangata; nā reira, whakahē kore i ngā mea a te Atua, kia kitea kohakorehia ai koutou i te nohoanga-whakawā o te Karaiti.

*KO TE WHAKAPĀKEHĀTANGA TŪTURU MAI  
I NGĀ PAPA KI TE REO INGARIHI NĀ  
HŌHEPA METE, TAM.*

## The Book of Mormon

### An Account Written by the Hand of Mormon upon Plates Taken from the Plates of Nephi

Wherefore, it is an abridgment of the record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites—Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; and also to Jew and Gentile—Written by way of commandment, and also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation—Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed—To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof—Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentile—The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether also, which is a record of the people of Jared, who were scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven—Which is to show unto the remnant of the house of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers; and that they may know the covenants of the Lord, that they are not cast off forever—And also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations—And now, if there are faults they are the mistakes of men; wherefore, condemn not the things of God, that ye may be found spotless at the judgment-seat of Christ.

*TRANSLATED BY JOSEPH SMITH, JUN.*

## Ko te Whakaaturanga a ngā Kaiwhakaatu Tokotoru

Kia mōhio mai ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā huihuinga tāngata, e tae ai tēnei pukapuka: Ko mātou, nā te aroha noa o te Atua te Matua, o tō tātou Ariki hoki o Ihu Karaiti, kua kite i ngā papa e mau nei tēnei tuhituhinga ki runga, koia nei he tuhituhinga nō te iwi o Nīwhai, nō ngā Rāmāna hoki, o rātou tuākana, nō te iwi anō hoki o Iarere, i haere mai rā i te pourewa kua kōrerotia ake nei. E mōhio ana anō mātou kua whakapākehātia ēnei mea, he mea nā te takohatanga me te mana o te Atua, nā tōna reo hoki tēnei i whakapuaki mai ki a mātou; nō reira e tino mōhio ana mātou e pono ana tēnei pukapuka. E whakaatu pono atu ana anō mātou kua kite mātou i ngā whaowhaonga i runga nei i ngā papa; kua whakakitea ki a mātou e te mana o te Atua, ehara nō te tangata. Ā, e whakapuaki ana mātou i runga i ngā kupu whaiwhakaaro, i heke iho tētahi anahera a te Atua i te rangi, nāna i mau mai, i whakatakoto mai ki mua i ō mātou karu, ā, kite ana, mātakitaki ana mātou i ngā papa, me ngā whaowhaonga i runga; ā, e mōhio ana mātou, nā te aroha noa o te Atua Matua, o tō tātou Ariki hoki o Ihu Karaiti, i kite ai, ā, e whakaatu atu nei anō mātou e pono ana ēnei mea. He mea whakamīharo ki ō mātou karu. Ahakoa rā nā te reo o te Ariki mātou i whakahau kia whakaatuhia atu ai tēnei mea e mātou; Hei ahakoa rā, e whakaatuhia atu nei ia e mātou kia ngohengohe ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua. E mōhio ana anō mātou ki te ū tonu mātou i roto i a te Karaiti, nā, ka whakakorea atu e mātou te toto o ngā tangata katoa i runga i ō mātou kākahu, ā, ka kitea kohakoretia i te aroaro o te nohoanga whakawā o te Karaiti, ka noho āke tonu atu hoki i a ia i roto i ngā rangi. Ā, mō te Matua te hōnore, mō te Tama hoki, me te Wairua Tapu, ko ia he Atua kotahi. Āmine.

ŌRIWA KAUTARI  
RĀWIRI WITIMA  
MĀTENE HĀRIHI

## The Testimony of Three Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken. And we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God, for his voice hath declared it unto us; wherefore we know of a surety that the work is true. And we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates; and they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man. And we declare with words of soberness, that an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes, that we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon; and we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true. And it is marvelous in our eyes. Nevertheless, the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it; wherefore, to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things. And we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men, and be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ, and shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens. And the honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God. Amen.

OLIVER COWDERY  
DAVID WHITMER  
MARTIN HARRIS

## Ko te Whakaaturanga a ngā Kaiwhakaatu Tokowaru

Kia mōhio mai ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā huihuinga tāngata, e tae ai tēnei pukapuka: Ko Hōhepa Mete, Tam., te kaiwhakapākehā o tēnei pukapuka, nāna i whakakite mai ki a mātou ngā papa kua kōrerotia ake nei, e rite ana ki te kōura te āhua; ā, ko ngā rau katoa i whakapākehātia e taua Mete i whāwhāngia ki ō mātou ringaringa; ā, i kite anō mātou i ngā whaowhaonga o reira, he onamata te āhua o ngā mahinga katoa, ā, he mahi tohunga hoki. Ā, e whakapuaki ana mātou i tēnei i runga i ngā kupu whaiwhakaaro, nā taua Mete anō i whakakitea mai ki a mātou, nō te mea kua kite mātou, kua hapahāpai anō hoki, ā, e tino mōhio ana mātou kei taua Mete anō ngā papa i kōrerotia ake nei e mātou. Ā, ka hoatu e mātou ō mātou ingoa ki te ao, hei whakaatu ki te ao nei i ngā mea i kite nei mātou; ā, kāore ō mātou teka, ko te Atua te kaiwhakaatu mō tēnei.

KARAITIANA WITIMA  
HĀKOPA WITIMA  
PITA WITIMA, TAM.  
HŌNE WITIMA  
HAIRAMA PĒTI  
HŌHEPA METE, MAT.  
HAIRAMA METE  
HĀMUERA H. METE

## The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

Be it known unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, unto whom this work shall come: That Joseph Smith, Jun., the translator of this work, has shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold; and as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands; and we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship. And this we bear record with words of soberness, that the said Smith has shown unto us, for we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken. And we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen. And we lie not, God bearing witness of it.

CHRISTIAN WHITMER  
JACOB WHITMER  
PETER WHITMER, JUN.  
JOHN WHITMER  
HIRAM PAGE  
JOSEPH SMITH, SEN.  
HYRUM SMITH  
SAMUEL H. SMITH

# Ko te Pukapuka Tuatahi a Nīwhai

## Tana Whakahaere me Tana Minitatanga

*He tubinga mō Rībai me tana wabine Harāia, me āna tamariki tāne tokowhā, e huaina ana, (e tīmata ana i te mātāmua), ko Rāmana, ko Remuere, ko Hāmi rātou ko Nīwhai. Ka whakatūpato te Ariki i a Rībai kia webe atu ai i te whenua o Hirubarama, nō te mea i te poropiti ia ki te iwi mō ā rātou mabi haututū kātabi ka whai ratou ki te muru i tōna orange. Ka toru rā tana haerenga i te koraha rātou ko tana hapū. Ka mau a Nīwhai ki ōna tuākana ka hoki atu ki te whenua o Hirubarama e hopu ai i te tubinga o ngā Hūrai. Ko te tubinga o ō rātou mamaetanga. Ka moea e rātou ngā tamābine a Ihimaera hei boawabine. Ka mau rātou ki ō rātou whānau, ā, ka webe atu ki te koraha. Ko ō rātou mamaetanga me ngā pōuritanga i roto i te koraha. Te ritenga atu o tō rātou huarabi. Ka tae rātou ki ngā wai nunui. Ka haututū ngā tuākana o Nīwhai ki a ia. Ka whakapōauau ia i a rātou, ā, ka hangaia he kaipuke. Ka whakabua rātou i te wāhi ko Mōmona. Ka whakawhiti atu rātou i ngā wai nunui ki roto i te whenua i whakaaria, ā, haere ake. E ai tēnei ki te kōrero a Nīwhai; me kī kē rānei, nāku, nā Nīwhai, tēnei tubinga i tubi.*

### 1 Nīwhai 1

- 1 Ko ahau, ko Nīwhai, kua whānau mai i ngā mātua pai, nō reira ahau i āhua ākona ai ki tētahi wāhi o te mātauranga o tōku matua; ā, kua kite anō ahau i ngā pōuritanga maha i roto i ōku rā katoa—hei aha koa, kua atawhaitia nuitia ahau e te Ariki i ōku rā katoa; āe rā, i a au hoki he mātauranga nui o te painga me ngā mea ngaro o te Atua, nō reira ahau e hanga nei i tētahi tuhinga mō aku mahi i ōku rā.
- 2 Āe rā, e hanga nei ahau i tētahi tuhinga i te reo o tōku matua, koia rā ia nō te mātauranga o ngā Hūrai me te reo o ngā Ihipiana.
- 3 Ā, e mōhio ana ahau he pono te tuhinga e hanga nei ahau; ā, e hanga nei ahau ki tōku ringaringa ake; ā, e hanga nei ahau i a ia e ai ki tōku mātauranga.

# The First Book of Nephi

## His Reign and Ministry

*An account of Lehi and his wife Sariah, and his four sons, being called, (beginning at the eldest) Laman, Lemuel, Sam, and Nephi. The Lord warns Lehi to depart out of the land of Jerusalem, because he prophesieth unto the people concerning their iniquity and they seek to destroy his life. He taketh three days' journey into the wilderness with his family. Nephi taketh his brethren and returneth to the land of Jerusalem after the record of the Jews. The account of their sufferings. They take the daughters of Ishmael to wife. They take their families and depart into the wilderness. Their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness. The course of their travels. They come to the large waters. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. He confoundeth them, and buildeth a ship. They call the name of the place Bountiful. They cross the large waters into the promised land, and so forth. This is according to the account of Nephi; or in other words, I, Nephi, wrote this record.*

### 1 Nephi 1

I, Nephi, having been born of goodly parents, therefore I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father; and having seen many afflictions in the course of my days, nevertheless, having been highly favored of the Lord in all my days; yea, having had a great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God, therefore I make a record of my proceedings in my days.

Yea, I make a record in the language of my father, which consists of the learning of the Jews and the language of the Egyptians.

And I know that the record which I make is true; and I make it with mine own hand; and I make it according to my knowledge.

- 4 Nā, i pahawa ake i te tīmatanga o te tau tuatahi o te whakahaeretanga a Herekia, kīngi o Hura, (tōku matua, a Rīhai, kua noho i Hiruharama i ōna rā katoa); ā, i taua tau anō i haere mai ai ngā poropiti tokomaha, e poropititia ana ki te iwi me rīpeneta rātou, ka whakangaromia ai rānei te pā nui o Hiruharama.
- 5 Nā reira, i pahawa ake i tōku matua, a Rīhai, i a ia e haere atu ana ka inoi ki te Ariki, āe rā, kua whakapaua katoatia e ia tōna ngākau, mō tōna iwi.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake i a ia e inoi ana ki te Ariki, ka puta mai tētahi pou ahi, ā, ka tau ki tētahi toka i mua i tōna aroaro; ā, nā te nui o ngā mea i kite ai ia, i rongo ai ia, tūoi ana, ngāueue rawa ana ia.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake tana hokinga atu ki tōna ake whare i Hiruharama; ā, ka ruke atu i a ia anō ki runga ki tōna moenga, i te mea kua warea nā te Wairua me ngā mea i kitea ai e ia.
- 8 Ā, i te mea kua warea nā te Wairua, i kahakina atu ia i roto i tētahi whakakitenga, tae atu ana ki tana kite atu i te puaretanga o ngā rangi, ā, ka mahara ia i kite ai ia i te Atua e noho ana i runga i tōna torona, e karapotia ana e ngā mano tini o ngā anahera e noho waiata ana, e whakamoemiti ana ki tō rātou Atua.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake tana kite atu i Tētahi e heke iho ana i te pito o te rangi, ā, ka kite atu ia i tōna kānāpatanga i kō atu i tō te poutūmārōtanga o te rā.
- 10 Ā, ka kite anō ia i tētahi hunga tekau mā rua e whai ana i a ia, ā, he nui noa atu ō rātou pīatatanga i ō ngā whetū i te kikorangi.
- 11 Ā, ka heke iho rātou, ka haere atu i runga i te mata o te whenua; ā, ka tae mai te tuatahi, ka tū ki te aroaro o tōku matua, ā, ka hoatu ki a ia he pukapuka, kātahi ka tonoa ia kia pānui ai ia.
- 12 Ā, i pahawa ake i a ia e pānui ana, ka whakakīa ia ki te Wairua o te Atua.
- 13 Ā, ka pānui ia, e mea ana: Auē, auē te mate mō Hiruharama, kua kite ai au i ō whakarihariha! Āe rā, he maha ngā mea i pānui ai tōku matua e pā ana ki a Hiruharama—ka whakangaromia ia, me ōna tāngata anō; he tokomaha e mate ai i te hoari, he tokomaha anō hoki e kawea hereheretia atu ai ki Papurona.

For it came to pass in the commencement of the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, (my father, Lehi, having dwelt at Jerusalem in all his days); and in that same year there came many prophets, prophesying unto the people that they must repent, or the great city Jerusalem must be destroyed.

Wherefore it came to pass that my father, Lehi, as he went forth prayed unto the Lord, yea, even with all his heart, in behalf of his people.

And it came to pass as he prayed unto the Lord, there came a pillar of fire and dwelt upon a rock before him; and he saw and heard much; and because of the things which he saw and heard he did quake and tremble exceedingly.

And it came to pass that he returned to his own house at Jerusalem; and he cast himself upon his bed, being overcome with the Spirit and the things which he had seen.

And being thus overcome with the Spirit, he was carried away in a vision, even that he saw the heavens open, and he thought he saw God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels in the attitude of singing and praising their God.

And it came to pass that he saw One descending out of the midst of heaven, and he beheld that his luster was above that of the sun at noon-day.

And he also saw twelve others following him, and their brightness did exceed that of the stars in the firmament.

And they came down and went forth upon the face of the earth; and the first came and stood before my father, and gave unto him a book, and bade him that he should read.

And it came to pass that as he read, he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord.

And he read, saying: Wo, wo, unto Jerusalem, for I have seen thine abominations! Yea, and many things did my father read concerning Jerusalem—that it should be destroyed, and the inhabitants thereof; many should perish by the sword, and many should be carried away captive into Babylon.

- 14     Ā, i pahawa ake i te pānuitanga a tōku matua me tana kitenga i ngā mea nui whakamīharo maha, he nui tāna i whakahua ai ki te Ariki; ka pēnei: Anō te nui me te whakamīharo o āu mahi, e te Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa! Ko tō torona kei ngā rangi ikeike, me tō kaha, me tō painga, me tō aroha nui kei runga i ngā tangata katoa o te whenua; ā, nō te mea e aroha nui nei koe, kua kore koe e tuku i te hunga e haere mai ana ki a koe kia mate ai!
- 15     Ā, i pēnei rawa te āhua o te reo o tōku matua i te whakamoemititanga ki tōna Atua; nō te mea i hari tōna wairua, ā, i whakakīa tōna ngākau katoa, nā ngā mea i kite ai ia, āe rā, koia anō ngā mea i whakakitea ai e te Ariki ki a ia.
- 16     Ā, ko au ianei, ko Nīwhai, e kore e hanga nei i tētahi tuhinga whānui o ngā mea i kitea ai, i tuhia ai e tōku matua, nō te mea he maha ngā mea i tuhia ai e ia mō ōna whakakitenga me ōna moemoeā; ā, he maha anō āna i tuhia ai kua poropititia, kua kōrerotia anōtia e ia ki ana tamariki, koirā e kore au e hanga nei i tētahi tuhinga whānui.
- 17     Engari ka hanga nei ahau i tētahi tuhinga mō aku mahi i ōku rā. Nana, ka hanga nei ahau i tētahi whakarāpopototanga o te tuhinga a tōku matua, i runga i ngā papa kua hangaia nei e ōku ringaringa ake; nā reira, hei muri i taku whakarāpopototanga i te tuhinga a tōku matua ka hanga nei ahau i tētahi tuhinga mō tōku ake oranga.
- 18     Nō reira, e hiahia ana au kia mōhio ai koutou, nā, i muri i te whakakitenga mai a te Ariki i ngā mea whakamīharo maha ki tōku matua, a Rīhai, āe rā, e pā ana ki te whakangaromanga o Hīruharama, nana, i haere atu ia ki waenganui i te iwi, kātahi ka tīmata ia ki te poropiti me te kauhau ki a rātou e pā ana ki ngā mea i kite ai, i rongō ai ia.
- 19     Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakato ai ngā Hūrai i a ia nā ngā mea i whakaatu ai ia mō rātou; nā te mea i tino whakaatuhia e ia ō rātou hara me ō rātou whakarihariha; ā, i whakaatuhia anōtia e ia ko ngā mea i kite ai, i rongō ai, me ngā mea anō i pānui ai i te pukapuka, i whakapuakina māramatia nei mō te haerenga mai o tētahi Mīhaia, me te hokonga anō hoki o te ao.

And it came to pass that when my father had read and seen many great and marvelous things, he did exclaim many things unto the Lord; such as: Great and marvelous are thy works, O Lord God Almighty! Thy throne is high in the heavens, and thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth; and, because thou art merciful, thou wilt not suffer those who come unto thee that they shall perish!

And after this manner was the language of my father in the praising of his God; for his soul did rejoice, and his whole heart was filled, because of the things which he had seen, yea, which the Lord had shown unto him.

And now I, Nephi, do not make a full account of the things which my father hath written, for he hath written many things which he saw in visions and in dreams; and he also hath written many things which he prophesied and spake unto his children, of which I shall not make a full account.

But I shall make an account of my proceedings in my days. Behold, I make an abridgment of the record of my father, upon plates which I have made with mine own hands; wherefore, after I have abridged the record of my father then will I make an account of mine own life.

Therefore, I would that ye should know, that after the Lord had shown so many marvelous things unto my father, Lehi, yea, concerning the destruction of Jerusalem, behold he went forth among the people, and began to prophesy and to declare unto them concerning the things which he had both seen and heard.

And it came to pass that the Jews did mock him because of the things which he testified of them; for he truly testified of their wickedness and their abominations; and he testified that the things which he saw and heard, and also the things which he read in the book, manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah, and also the redemption of the world.



20      Ā, rongo ana ngā Hūrai i ēnei mea ka riri ki a ia; āe rā, he pērā rawa ki tā rātou ki ngā poropiti onamata, i peia atu e rātou, i ākina hoki ki te kōhatu, i patua hoki; ā, ka whai atu anō i tōna oranga, e murua atu ai ia. Engari nana, ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka whakaatu atu ki a koutou ko te aroha nunui o te Ariki kei runga katoa i ngā tāngata kua whiriwhiria e ia, nā ō rātou whakapono, hei whakakaha i a rātou tae atu ana ki te mana o te whakarauranga.

And when the Jews heard these things they were angry with him; yea, even as with the prophets of old, whom they had cast out, and stoned, and slain; and they also sought his life, that they might take it away. But behold, I, Nephi, will show unto you that the tender mercies of the Lord are over all those whom he hath chosen, because of their faith, to make them mighty even unto the power of deliverance.

## 1 Nīwhai 2

- 1 Nana rā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero ai te Ariki ki tōku matua, āe rā, i roto i tētahi moemoeā, ka mea atu ki a ia: Kua manaakitia koe e Rīhai, nā ngā mea i mahi nei koe; ā, nā tō ū tonu ki te whakapuaki ki tēnei iwi i ngā mea i whakahaua ai e ahau ki a koe, nana, e whai ana rātou ki te muru i tō oranga.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakahau ai te Ariki ki tōku matua, i roto rawa i tētahi moemoeā, me kawe e ia tōna hapū, ā, me wehe atu ki roto i te koraha.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, i ngohengohe ia ki te kupu a te Ariki, nā reira ia i mea ai i tā te Ariki i whakahau ai ki a ia.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i wehe atu ia ki roto i te koraha. Ā, ka mahue i a ia tōna whare, me tōna whenua tuku iho, me ana kōura, me ana hiriwā, me ana mea utu nui, kāore he mea i mauria e ia, hāunga ko tōna hapū, me ngā ō, me ngā tēneti, ā, ka wehe atu ki roto i te koraha.
- 5 Ā, ka haere iho ia ki ngā rohe e pātata ana ki te tahatai o te Moana Whero; ā, ka haere ia i te koraha i roto i ngā rohe e pātata ake ana ki te Moana Whero; ā, ka haere tahi i te koraha me tōna hapū, koia rā anō ko tōku whaea, ko Haraia, ko ōku tuākana, ko Rāmana, ko Remuere rātou ko Hāmi.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake ngā rā e toru i a ia e haere ana i te koraha, ka whakatūria e ia tōna tēneti i tētahi raorao ki te taha o tētahi awa wai.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, i hangaia ai e ia he āta kōhatu, ā, ka mahia e ia he whakahere ki te Ariki, ā, ka tuku whakawhetai ki te Ariki tō tātou Atua.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i huaina ai e ia te ingoa o te awa, ko Rāmana, ā, ka pau atu ki roto i te Moana Whero; ā, ka tū te raorao i roto i ngā rohe e pātata ana ki te pūaha o reira.
- 9 Ā, kitea ana e tōku matua te paunga atu o ngā wai o te awa ki roto i te mātāpuna o te Moana Whero, ka kōrero ia ki a Rāmana, ka mea: Auē, me i pēnei koe ki te awa nei, e rere tonu ana ki roto i te mātāpuna o te tika katoa.
- 10 Ā, ka kōrero ia ki a Remuere: Auē, me i pēnei koe ki te raorao nei, e ū ana, e pūmau ana, e kore e nekeneke i runga i te pupuri ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki.

## 1 Nephi 2

For behold, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream, and said unto him: Blessed art thou Lehi, because of the things which thou hast done; and because thou hast been faithful and declared unto this people the things which I commanded thee, behold, they seek to take away thy life.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded my father, even in a dream, that he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he was obedient unto the word of the Lord, wherefore he did as the Lord commanded him.

And it came to pass that he departed into the wilderness. And he left his house, and the land of his inheritance, and his gold, and his silver, and his precious things, and took nothing with him, save it were his family, and provisions, and tents, and departed into the wilderness.

And he came down by the borders near the shore of the Red Sea; and he traveled in the wilderness in the borders which are nearer the Red Sea; and he did travel in the wilderness with his family, which consisted of my mother, Sariah, and my elder brothers, who were Laman, Lemuel, and Sam.

And it came to pass that when he had traveled three days in the wilderness, he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

And it came to pass that he built an altar of stones, and made an offering unto the Lord, and gave thanks unto the Lord our God.

And it came to pass that he called the name of the river, Laman, and it emptied into the Red Sea; and the valley was in the borders near the mouth thereof.

And when my father saw that the waters of the river emptied into the fountain of the Red Sea, he spake unto Laman, saying: O that thou mightest be like unto this river, continually running into the fountain of all righteousness!

And he also spake unto Lemuel: O that thou mightest be like unto this valley, firm and steadfast, and immovable in keeping the commandments of the Lord!

- 11 Nā, koinei i kōrero ai ia nā te kakī mārōtanga a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere; nana rā, i amuamu rāua i roto i ngā mea maha ki tō rāua matua, nā te mea he tangata matakite ia, ā, nāna hoki rāua i arataki ki waho atu i te whenua o Hiruharama, kia whakarērea tō rāua whenua tuku iho, me ā rāua kōura, me ā rāua hiriwā, me ā rāua mea utu nui, kia mate ai i te koraha. Ā, koinei i kī ai rāua kua mahia e ia nō ngā whakaaro kūare o tōna ngākau.
- 12 Ā, koia a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere, ko rāua ngā mātāmua, i amuamu ai ki tō rāua matua. Ā, ka amuamu nei rāua nā te mea kāore rāua i te mōhio ki ngā mahinga a taua Atua nāna nei rāua i hanga.
- 13 Kīhai anō rāua i whakapono ko Hiruharama, ko taua pā nui rawa atu, e taea nei te whakangaro e ai ki ngā kupu a ngā poropiti. Ā, ka pērā anō rāua ki ngā Hūrai e noho ana ki Hiruharama, i whai nei kia murua te orange o tōku matua.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero tōku matua ki a rāua i te raorao o Remuere, i runga i te kaha, e kī ana ki te Wairua, tae atu ana ki te tūwiriwiritanga o ō rāua tīnana i tōna aroaro. Ā, ka whakapōauau ia i a rāua, kia kaua rawa ai e hamumu atu ki a ia; nā reira, ka mahi rāua i tāna i whakahaua ai rāua.
- 15 Ā, ka noho tēneti tōku matua.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, ko au, ko Nīwhai, e tamariki rawa nei, hei ahakoa rā e kaitā ā-tīnana nei, ā, e hihiri nui ana anō kia mōhio ai ki ngā mea ngaro o te Atua, nā reira, ka karanga ake ahau ki te Ariki; ā, nana, ka puta mai ia ki ahau, ā, ka whakangāwaritia tōku ngākau e whakapono ai au ki ngā kupu katoa kua kōrerotia nei e tōku matua; nā reira, kāore aku haututū ki a ia pērā i ōku tuākana.
- 17 Ā, ka kōrero au ki a Hāmi, e whakamōhioitia ana ki a ia ngā mea kua whakakītea mai e te Ariki ki ahau nā tōna Wairua Tapu. Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakapono ia ki aku kupu.
- 18 Engari, nana, kāore a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere i whakarongo ki aku kupu; ā, ka pōuri i te mārōtanga o ō rāua ngākau ka karanga au ki te Ariki mō rāua.
- 19 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai te Ariki ki ahau, ka mea: Kua manaakitia nei koe, e Nīwhai, nā tō whakapono, nāu anō au i rapu i runga i te kaha, i runga i te ngākau pāpaku.

Now this he spake because of the stiffneckedness of Laman and Lemuel; for behold they did murmur in many things against their father, because he was a visionary man, and had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things, to perish in the wilderness. And this they said he had done because of the foolish imaginations of his heart.

And thus Laman and Lemuel, being the eldest, did murmur against their father. And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them.

Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city, could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews who were at Jerusalem, who sought to take away the life of my father.

And it came to pass that my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him. And he did confound them, that they durst not utter against him; wherefore, they did as he commanded them.

And my father dwelt in a tent.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, being exceedingly young, nevertheless being large in stature, and also having great desires to know of the mysteries of God, wherefore, I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me, and did soften my heart that I did believe all the words which had been spoken by my father; wherefore, I did not rebel against him like unto my brothers.

And I spake unto Sam, making known unto him the things which the Lord had manifested unto me by his Holy Spirit. And it came to pass that he believed in my words.

But, behold, Laman and Lemuel would not hearken unto my words; and being grieved because of the hardness of their hearts I cried unto the Lord for them.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Blessed art thou, Nephi, because of thy faith, for thou hast sought me diligently, with lowliness of heart.

20 Ā, inā hoki ka pupuri koe ki aku whakahaunga, ka whaioranga koe, ka arahina anō hoki ki tētahi whenua whakaari; āe rā, he whenua anō kua whakaritea e au mōu; āe rā, he whenua e pai ake ana i ērā atu whenua katoa.

21 Ā, inā hoki ka haututū ō tuākana ki a koe, ka hātepea atu rāua i te aroaro o te Ariki.

22 Ā, inā hoki ka pupuri koe i aku whakahaunga, ka whakatūria koe hei rangatira, hei kaiako i runga i ō tuākana.

23 Nana rā, hei taua rā ka haututū rātou ki ahau, ka kanga au i a rātou ki tētahi kanga nanakia, ā, kua kore e whaimana i runga i ō uri, heoi, ka haututū rātou ki ahau anō hoki.

24 Ā, mehemea rā anō ka haututū ki ahau, ka noho mai rātou hei whiu ki ō uri, hei whakaohoho i a rātou ki ngā huarahi o te whakamaharatanga.

And inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise; yea, even a land which I have prepared for you; yea, a land which is choice above all other lands.

And inasmuch as thy brethren shall rebel against thee, they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And inasmuch as thou shalt keep my commandments, thou shalt be made a ruler and a teacher over thy brethren.

For behold, in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse, and they shall have no power over thy seed except they shall rebel against me also.

And if it so be that they rebel against me, they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

## 1 Nīwhai 3

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, ko au, ko Nīwhai, i hoki mai i taku kōrerotanga ki te Ariki, ki te tēneti o tōku matua.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai ia ki ahau, e mea ana: Nana, kua moeā e au he moemoeā, i reira rā anō i whakahau mai te Ariki ki ahau kia hoki atu ai koe me ō tuākana ki Hiruharama.
- 3 Nana rā, kei a Rāpana te tuinga o ngā Hūrai me tētahi whakapapa nō ōku mātua tīpuna, ā, kua whakairohia i runga i ngā papa parāhe.
- 4 Nā reira, kua whakahau ahau e te Ariki kia haere ai koe me ō tuākana ki te whare o Rāpana, me te whai atu i ngā tuinga, me te kawē iho mai nei ki roto i te koraha.
- 5 Ā, ianei, nana ō tuākana e amuamu ai, e kī ana he mea uua tāku e tonono nei ki a rātou; engari nana, ehara i ahau tēnei tonono ki a rātou, engari he whakahaunga ia nā te Ariki.
- 6 Nō reira haere, taku tama, ā, ka whakamanawatia koe e te Ariki, nā te mea kīhai koe i amuamu.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake i a au, a Nīwhai, ka kī atu ki tōku matua: Ka haere ahau me te mahi i ngā mea kua whakahau e te Ariki, e mōhio ana rā ahau e kore te Ariki e homai i tētahi whakahaunga ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, engari ka whakaritea e ia he huarahi mō rātou e tutuki ai i te mea kua whakahau rātou.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake i te rongonga a tōku matua i ēnei kupu ka koa rawa ia, nā te mea rā kua mōhio ia kua manaakitia au e te Ariki.
- 9 Ā, ko au, ko Nīwhai, me ōku tuākana ka tīmata i tā mātou haerenga i roto i te koraha, me ō mātou tēneti, kia haere ake ai ki te whenua o Hiruharama.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake tā mātou haere ake ki te whenua o Hiruharama, ka kōrerorero tahi au me ōku tuākana tētahi ki tētahi.
- 11 Ā, ka whiu rotarota mātou—ko wai o mātou me haere ki te whare o Rāpana. Ā, i pahawa ake, ka tau iho te rotarota ki runga i a Rāmana; ā, ka haere a Rāmana ki te whare o Rāpana, ā, ka kōrero ia ki a ia i a ia e noho ana i roto i tōna whare.
- 12 Ā, ka inoi ia ki a Rāpana mō ngā tuinga kua whaowhao ki runga i ngā papa parāhe, i mau nei te whakapapa o tōku matua.

## 1 Nephi 3

- And it came to pass that I, Nephi, returned from speaking with the Lord, to the tent of my father.
- And it came to pass that he spake unto me, saying: Behold I have dreamed a dream, in the which the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brethren shall return to Jerusalem.
- For behold, Laban hath the record of the Jews and also a genealogy of my forefathers, and they are engraven upon plates of brass.
- Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me that thou and thy brothers should go unto the house of Laban, and seek the records, and bring them down hither into the wilderness.
- And now, behold thy brothers murmur, saying it is a hard thing which I have required of them; but behold I have not required it of them, but it is a commandment of the Lord.
- Therefore go, my son, and thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured.
- And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto my father: I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, for I know that the Lord giveth no commandments unto the children of men, save he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.
- And it came to pass that when my father had heard these words he was exceedingly glad, for he knew that I had been blessed of the Lord.
- And I, Nephi, and my brethren took our journey in the wilderness, with our tents, to go up to the land of Jerusalem.
- And it came to pass that when we had gone up to the land of Jerusalem, I and my brethren did consult one with another.
- And we cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban. And it came to pass that the lot fell upon Laman; and Laman went in unto the house of Laban, and he talked with him as he sat in his house.
- And he desired of Laban the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, which contained the genealogy of my father.

- 13     Ā nana, i pahawa ake, ka riri a Rāpana, ā, ka panaia atu ia i tōna aroaro; tē whakaae ia kia mau i a ia ngā tuhinga. Nā reira, ka kī atu ia ki a ia: Nana he kaipāhua koe, ā, ka whakamate au i a koe.
- 14     Engari ka tahuti atu a Rāmana i tōna aroaro, ā, ka kōrerohia ngā mea nā Rāpana i mahi, ki a mātou. Ā, ka pā mai te hinapōuri nui ki a mātou, ā, whano ka hoki ōku tuākana ki tōku matua i te koraha.
- 15     Engari nana, ka mea atu au ki a rātou: E ora ana te Ariki, ā, e ora ana anō tātou, engari tātou mō te haere iho ki tō tātou matua i te koraha kia tutuki rā anō te mea kua whakahaua tātou e te Ariki.
- 16     Nā reira, kia ū tātou ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki; nō reira tukuna tātou kia haere iho ki te whenua tuku iho o tō tātou matua, nana rā, kua mahue i a ia he kōura, he hiriwā, me ngā momo taonga katoa. Koinei katoa kua mahi nei ia nā ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki.
- 17     Nā te mea i mōhio ia, me whakangaro a Hiruharama, nā ngā whakarihariha o te iwi.
- 18     Nana rā, kua whakaparahakongia ngā kupu a ngā poropiti. Nā reira, mehemea ka noho tōku matua i te whenua whai muri iho i te whakahau i a ia kia tahuti atu i te whenua, nana, ka mate anō hoki ia. Nā reira, koia pū anō me tahuti atu i te whenua.
- 19     Ā nana, he whaimōhio tanga ia nō roto i te Atua kia mau i a tātou ēnei tuhinga, kia tiakina e tātou mō ā tātou tamariki te reo o ō tātou tīpuna;
- 20     Ā, e tiakina anōtia ai e tātou mō rātou ngā kupu kua kōrerotia e ngā māngai o ngā poropiti tapu katoa, kua tukuna ki a rātou e te Wairua me te mana o te Atua, nō te tīmatanga o te ao, ā mohoa noa nei.
- 21     Ā, i pahawa ake, i pēnei taku momo reo hei whakapakepake au i ōku tuākana, me kore pea e ū rātou ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.
- 22     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere iho mātou ki tō mātou whenua tuku iho, ka kohikohi mātou i ā mātou kōura, me ā mātou hiriwā, me ā mātou mea utu nui.
- 23     Ā, whai muri iho i tā mātou kohikohi tahi i ēnei mea, ka haere ake anō mātou ki te whare o Rāpana.

And behold, it came to pass that Laban was angry, and thrust him out from his presence; and he would not that he should have the records. Wherefore, he said unto him: Behold thou art a robber, and I will slay thee.

But Laman fled out of his presence, and told the things which Laban had done, unto us. And we began to be exceedingly sorrowful, and my brethren were about to return unto my father in the wilderness.

But behold I said unto them that: As the Lord liveth, and as we live, we will not go down unto our father in the wilderness until we have accomplished the thing which the Lord hath commanded us.

Wherefore, let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; therefore let us go down to the land of our father's inheritance, for behold he left gold and silver, and all manner of riches. And all this he hath done because of the commandments of the Lord.

For he knew that Jerusalem must be destroyed, because of the wickedness of the people.

For behold, they have rejected the words of the prophets. Wherefore, if my father should dwell in the land after he hath been commanded to flee out of the land, behold, he would also perish. Wherefore, it must needs be that he flee out of the land.

And behold, it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, that we may preserve unto our children the language of our fathers;

And also that we may preserve unto them the words which have been spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, which have been delivered unto them by the Spirit and power of God, since the world began, even down unto this present time.

And it came to pass that after this manner of language did I persuade my brethren, that they might be faithful in keeping the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

And after we had gathered these things together, we went up again unto the house of Laban.

- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere mātou ki roto ki a Rāpana, ā, ka inoi atu ki a ia kia homai e ia ki a mātou ngā tuhituhinga kua whaowhāoa ki runga i ngā papa parāhe, hei reira mātou hoatu ai ki a ia ā mātou kōura, me ā mātou hiriwā, me ā mātou mea utu nui katoa.
- 25     Ā, i pahawa ake, kitea ana e Rāpana ā mātou rawa, ā, he mea nui whakaharahara ia, ka apohia mai e ia, nā konā ka panaia atu mātou ki waho, ā, ka tukuna āna pononga ki te whakamate i a mātou, me kore pea e mau i a ia ā mātou rawa.
- 26     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tahuti atu mātou i ngā pononga a Rāpana, ā, ka meinga mātou kia mahue iho ki muri ā mātou rawa, ā, ka taka ki roto i ngā ringaringa o Rāpana.
- 27     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tahuti atu mātou ki roto i te koraha, kīhai ngā pononga a Rāpana i mau ki a mātou, ā, ka huna mātou i te ana o tētahi toka.
- 28     Ā, i pahawa ake, i riri a Rāmana ki ahau, ā, ki tōku matua anō hoki; ā, i pēnā anō a Remuere, nā te mea i aro katoa atu ia ki ngā kupu a Rāmana. Nā reira, he nui ngā kupu taunu i kōrero mai ai a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere ki a māua, ā rāua teina, ā, ka patua māua ki tētahi tokotoko.
- 29     Ā, i pahawa ake, i a rāua e patu ana i a māua ki te tokotoko, nana, ka puta mai he anahera o te Ariki, ā, ka tū mai ki mua i a rāua, ka kōrero anō ia ki a rāua, e kī ana: He aha kōrua e patu ai i tā kōrua teina ki te tokotoko? Kāore kōrua e mōhio nei kua whiriwhiri te Ariki i a ia hei rangatira i runga i a kōrua, ā, he haututū nō kōrua i pēnei ai? Nana, ka haere ake anō koutou ki Hiruharama, ā, ka tukuna e te Ariki a Rāpana ki roto i ō koutou ringaringa.
- 30     Ā, whai muri iho i te kōrero a te anahera ki a mātou, ka wehe atu ia.
- 31     Ā, whai muri iho i te wehenga a te anahera, ka tīmata anō a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere ki te amuamu, e kī ana: Me pēhea e taea ai e te Ariki te tuku mai i a Rāpana ki roto i ō tātou ringaringa? Nana, he tangata mārōhirohi ia, ā, i a ia te kaha ki te whakahau e rima tekau, āe rā, e taea nei e ia te whakamate e rima tekau; nō konei, he aha e kore ai tātou?

And it came to pass that we went in unto Laban, and desired him that he would give unto us the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, for which we would give unto him our gold, and our silver, and all our precious things.

And it came to pass that when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

And it came to pass that we did flee before the servants of Laban, and we were obliged to leave behind our property, and it fell into the hands of Laban.

And it came to pass that we fled into the wilderness, and the servants of Laban did not overtake us, and we hid ourselves in the cavity of a rock.

And it came to pass that Laman was angry with me, and also with my father; and also was Lemuel, for he hearkened unto the words of Laman. Wherefore Laman and Lemuel did speak many hard words unto us, their younger brothers, and they did smite us even with a rod.

And it came to pass as they smote us with a rod, behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them, saying: Why do ye smite your younger brother with a rod? Know ye not that the Lord hath chosen him to be a ruler over you, and this because of your iniquities? Behold ye shall go up to Jerusalem again, and the Lord will deliver Laban into your hands.

And after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

And after the angel had departed, Laman and Lemuel again began to murmur, saying: How is it possible that the Lord will deliver Laban into our hands? Behold, he is a mighty man, and he can command fifty, yea, even he can slay fifty; then why not us?

## 1 Nīwhai 4

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero au ki ōku tuākana, e kī ana: Tēnā, kia haere ake anō ai tātou ki Hiruharama, ā, kia ū tātou ki te pupuri ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki; nana rā he kaha ake ia i te ao katoa, nā, he aha e kore ai e kaha ake i a Rāpana me tana rima tekau, āe rā, i ana tekau rānei o ngā mano?
- 2 Nō reira kia haere ake tātou; kia kaha tātou pērā i a Mohi; nā, nāna pono nei i kōrero ki ngā wai o te Moana Whero, ā, ka wehe ki tētahi taha, ki tētahi taha, ā, ka haere i waenganui, i waho atu i te hereherenga, mā runga whenua maroke, ā, ka aruaru mai ngā tauā a Parao, ā, ka tōremi iho i ngā wai o te Moana Whero.
- 3 Nana ianei, e mōhio ana kōrua e pono ana tēnei; ā, e mōhio ana anō hoki kōrua kua kōrero tētahi anahera ki a kōrua; nā reira e āhei ana kōrua kia rangirua ai? Kia haere ake tātou; e kaha ana te Ariki ki te whakaputa i a tātou, pērā ki ō tātou mātua, me te whakangaro i a Rāpana, pērā ki ngā Ihipiana.
- 4 Kōrero kau anō au i ēnei kupu, i te riri tonu rāua, ā, ka amuamu tonu rāua; hei aha koa ka aruaru mai rāua i ahau kia tae anō mātou ki waho i ngā taiapa o Hiruharama.
- 5 Ā, i te pō ia; ā, ka meinga rātou e ahau kia huna ai i a rātou anō i waho i ngā taiapa. Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou hunanga, ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka ngōki ki roto ki te pā, ā, ka haere whaka-te-whare o Rāpana.
- 6 Ā, i arahina au e te Wairua, tē mātau i mua i ngā mea e mahi ai ahau.
- 7 Hei aha koa, ka haere whakamua ahau, ā, i ahau e whakatata atu ana ki te whare o Rāpana ka kite au i tētahi tangata, ā, kua hinga ia ki te whenua i mua i ahau, nā te mea kua haurangi ia ki te waina.
- 8 Ā, tae ana au ki a ia ka kitea e ahau ko Rāpana ia.
- 9 Ā, ka kite ahau i tana hoari, ā, ka unuhia mai ia e au i tōna pūkoro; ā, he kōura horomata tōna kakau; he tino mātanga rawa tōna whakamahinga, ā, ka kite ahau i tōna rau he maitai tino utu nui.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, i meinga ahau e te Wairua kia whakamate au i a Rāpana; engari ka kī ake ahau i tōku ngākau: Kīhai rawa atu au i ngā wā katoa kia whakaheke ai i te toto o te tangata.

## 1 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that I spake unto my brethren, saying: Let us go up again unto Jerusalem, and let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord; for behold he is mightier than all the earth, then why not mightier than Laban and his fifty, yea, or even than his tens of thousands?

Therefore let us go up; let us be strong like unto Moses; for he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither, and our fathers came through, out of captivity, on dry ground, and the armies of Pharaoh did follow and were drowned in the waters of the Red Sea.

Now behold ye know that this is true; and ye also know that an angel hath spoken unto you; wherefore can ye doubt? Let us go up; the Lord is able to deliver us, even as our fathers, and to destroy Laban, even as the Egyptians.

Now when I had spoken these words, they were yet wroth, and did still continue to murmur; nevertheless they did follow me up until we came without the walls of Jerusalem.

And it was by night; and I caused that they should hide themselves without the walls. And after they had hid themselves, I, Nephi, crept into the city and went forth towards the house of Laban.

And I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do.

Nevertheless I went forth, and as I came near unto the house of Laban I beheld a man, and he had fallen to the earth before me, for he was drunken with wine.

And when I came to him I found that it was Laban.

And I beheld his sword, and I drew it forth from the sheath thereof; and the hilt thereof was of pure gold, and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine, and I saw that the blade thereof was of the most precious steel.

And it came to pass that I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban; but I said in my heart: Never at any time have I shed the blood of man. And I shrunk and would that I might not slay him.



11     Ā, ka kī mai te Wairua ki ahau: Nana kua tukuna mai ia e te Ariki ki roto i ō ringaringa. Āe rā, i mōhio anō ahau i whai anō ia kia murua atu ai tōku oranga ake; āe rā, ā, kua kore ia e whakarongo ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki; ā, i raupatu anō ia i ā mātou rawa.

12     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai anō te Ariki ki ahau: Whakamatea ia, nā te mea kua tukuna mai ia e te Ariki ki roto i ō ringaringa;

13     Nana, ka whakamate te Ariki i te hunga kino kia whakaputaia mai ai ana take tika. He pai ake kia mate ai te tangata kotahi i te memeha haeretanga me te tāmātehangā o tētahi iwi i te whakapono kore.

14     Ā ināianeī, rongo ana au, a Nīwhai i ēnei kupu, ka mahara au ki ngā kupu a te Ariki i kōrero mai ki ahau i roto i te koraha, e kī ana: ina pupuri ō uri i aku whakahaunga, ka whaioranga rātou i te whenua whakaari.

15     Āe rā, i whakaaro anō ahau e kore e taea e rātou ngā whakahaunga te pupuri e ai ki te ture a Mohi, ki te kore e roto mai i a rātou te ture.

16     Ā, i mōhio anō ahau kua whaowhaoa te ture ki runga i ngā papa parāhe.

17     Ā, waihoki, i mōhio ahau kua tukuna a Rāpana e te Ariki ki roto i ōku ringaringa mō tēnei take, kia hopu mai ai ahau i ngā tuinga e ai ki ana whakahaunga.

18     Nō reira, ka whakarongo au ki te reo o te Wairua, ā, ka mau ahau ki ngā makawe o te upoko o Rāpana, ā, ka poutoa iho tōna upoko ki tana hoari ake.

19     Ā, whai muri iho i taku poutoahanga iho i tōna upoko ki tana hoari ake, ka tiki atu au i ngā kākahu o Rāpana kātahi ka whakamaui ki tōku tīnana ake; āe rā, ko ngā mea katoa; ā, ka whītiki au i ana kākahu whawhai ki ōku hope.

20     Ā, oti ana tēnei i ahau, ka haere whakamua au ki te takotoranga taonga a Rāpana. Ā, i ahau e haere whakamua atu ana whaka-te-takotoranga taonga a Rāpana, nana, ka kite au i te pononga a Rāpana i a ia ngā kī o te takotoranga taonga. Ā, ka whakahaua atu ia e ahau mā roto i te reo o Rāpana, kia haere tahi me au ki roto i te takotoranga taonga.

21     Ā, ka whakapono ia ko ahau tōna rangatira, a Rāpana, nā te mea i kite ia i ngā kākahu me te hoari e whītiki ana ki ōku hope.

And the Spirit said unto me again: Behold the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands. Yea, and I also knew that he had sought to take away mine own life; yea, and he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord; and he also had taken away our property.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me again: Slay him, for the Lord hath delivered him into thy hands;

Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes. It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief.

And now, when I, Nephi, had heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord which he spake unto me in the wilderness, saying that: Inasmuch as thy seed shall keep my commandments, they shall prosper in the land of promise.

Yea, and I also thought that they could not keep the commandments of the Lord according to the law of Moses, save they should have the law.

And I also knew that the law was engraven upon the plates of brass.

And again, I knew that the Lord had delivered Laban into my hands for this cause—that I might obtain the records according to his commandments.

Therefore I did obey the voice of the Spirit, and took Laban by the hair of the head, and I smote off his head with his own sword.

And after I had smitten off his head with his own sword, I took the garments of Laban and put them upon mine own body; yea, even every whit; and I did gird on his armor about my loins.

And after I had done this, I went forth unto the treasury of Laban. And as I went forth towards the treasury of Laban, behold, I saw the servant of Laban who had the keys of the treasury. And I commanded him in the voice of Laban, that he should go with me into the treasury.

And he supposed me to be his master, Laban, for he beheld the garments and also the sword girded about my loins.

22     Ā, ka kōrero mai ia ki ahau mō ngā kaumātua o ngā Hūrai, e mōhio ana ia ko tōna rangatira, a Rāpana, kua puta atu i te pō ki waenganui i a rātou.

23     Ā, ka kōrero atu ahau me te mea nei ko Rāpana.

24     Ā, ka kī anō au ki a ia māku e kawe ngā whaowhaonga, i runga i ngā papa parāhe, ki ōku tuākana, i waho atu i ngā taiapa.

25     Ā, ka tonono anō au ki a ia kia arumia mai au e ia.

26     Ā, ko ia, e whakapono ana i te kōrero au mō ngā tuākana o te hāhi, ā, ko ahau pū anō taua Rāpana nāku i whakamate, nā reira ia i aru mai i ahau.

27     Ā, he maha ana kōrerotanga ki ahau mō ngā kaumātua o ngā Hūrai, i ahau e haere whakamua ana ki ōku tuākana, i waho atu i ngā taiapa.

28     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite a Rāmana i ahau he nui tōna wehi, me Remuere anō hoki rātou ko Hāmi. Ā, ka tahuti atu i mua i tōku aroaro; nā te mea i whakapono rātou ko Rāpana ahau, ā, kua whakamate anō ia i ahau, ā, kua whai ki te muru i ō rātou oranga anō hoki.

29     Ā, i pahawa ake, i karanga atu au ki a rātou, ā, ka rongoro rātou i ahau; nā reira ka mutu tā rātou tahuti atu i tōku aroaro.

30     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite atu te pononga a Rāpana i ōku tuākana ka tīmata te tūwiriwiri, whano ka tahuti atu i mua i ahau me te hoki atu ki te pā o Hiruharama.

31     Ā, ko au ianei, ko Nīwhai, he tangata tupu rahi, ā, nā te mea kua riro mai hoki i ahau he kaha nui i te Ariki, nō reira ka hopu au i te pononga a Rāpana, ā, ka mau ia, kei tahuti atu ia.

32     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero tahi ahau me ia, mehemea ka whakarongo ia ki aku kupu, e ora ana te Ariki, ā, e ora ana ahau, nā konei rā ki te whakarongo ia ki ā mātou kupu, ka tohungia e mātou tōna oranga.

33     Ā, ka kōrero ahau ki a ia, he mea oati hoki, kia kaua ia e wehi; nā, ka meinga ia he tangata herekore pērā i a mātou mehemea ka haere iho ki te koraha me mātou.

And he spake unto me concerning the elders of the Jews, he knowing that his master, Laban, had been out by night among them.

And I spake unto him as if it had been Laban.

And I also spake unto him that I should carry the engravings, which were upon the plates of brass, to my elder brethren, who were without the walls.

And I also bade him that he should follow me.

And he, supposing that I spake of the brethren of the church, and that I was truly that Laban whom I had slain, wherefore he did follow me.

And he spake unto me many times concerning the elders of the Jews, as I went forth unto my brethren, who were without the walls.

And it came to pass that when Laman saw me he was exceedingly frightened, and also Lemuel and Sam. And they fled from before my presence; for they supposed it was Laban, and that he had slain me and had sought to take away their lives also.

And it came to pass that I called after them, and they did hear me; wherefore they did cease to flee from my presence.

And it came to pass that when the servant of Laban beheld my brethren he began to tremble, and was about to flee from before me and return to the city of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being a man large in stature, and also having received much strength of the Lord, therefore I did seize upon the servant of Laban, and held him, that he should not flee.

And it came to pass that I spake with him, that if he would hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth, and as I live, even so that if he would hearken unto our words, we would spare his life.

And I spake unto him, even with an oath, that he need not fear; that he should be a free man like unto us if he would go down in the wilderness with us.

- 34     Ā, ka kōrero anō ahau ki a ia, e kī ana: Kāore e kore kua whakahau te Ariki i a mātou kia mahi ai i tēnei mea; ā, me kua mātou e ū ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki? Nō reira, mehemea ka haere iho koe me mātou ki roto i te koraha ki tōku matua ka whaiwāhi koe i a mātou.
- 35     Ā, i pahawa ake, i māia a Hōrama i ngā kupu i kōrero ai ahau. Nā, ko Hōrama te ingoa o te pononga; ā, ka whakataurangi mai ia ka haere iho ki roto i te koraha ki tō mātou matua. Āe rā, ka oati anō hoki ki a mātou ka piri tahi me mātou mai i taua wā, ā, haere ake nei.
- 36     Nā, i te hiahia mātou kia piri tahi ia me mātou nā tēnei take, kia kua ngā Hūrai e mōhio ai e pā ana ki tā mātou rere ki roto i te koraha, kei whaiwhai mai rātou i a mātou me te whakangaro i a mātou.
- 37     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, oati ana a Hōrama ki a mātou, ka mutu ō mātou wehi i a ia.
- 38     Ā, i pahawa ake, i mauria atu e mātou ngā papa parāhe me te pononga a Rāpana, ā, ka māwehe atu ki roto i te koraha, ā, ka haere atu ki te tēneti o tōku matua.

And I also spake unto him, saying: Surely the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing; and shall we not be diligent in keeping the commandments of the Lord? Therefore, if thou wilt go down into the wilderness to my father thou shalt have place with us.

And it came to pass that Zoram did take courage at the words which I spake. Now Zoram was the name of the servant; and he promised that he would go down into the wilderness unto our father. Yea, and he also made an oath unto us that he would tarry with us from that time forth.

Now we were desirous that he should tarry with us for this cause, that the Jews might not know concerning our flight into the wilderness, lest they should pursue us and destroy us.

And it came to pass that when Zoram had made an oath unto us, our fears did cease concerning him.

And it came to pass that we took the plates of brass and the servant of Laban, and departed into the wilderness, and journeyed unto the tent of our father.

## 1 Nīwhai 5

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā mātou taenga iho ki te koraha ki tō mātou matua, nana, ka kī ia i te hari, me tōku whaea anō hoki, a Haraia, i tino harikoa, nā te mea i nui tana tangi mō mātou.
- 2 Nā te mea i whakaponono ia kua mate mātou i te koraha; ā, i kaha amuamu anō ia ki tōku matua, e mea ana ki a ia he tangata matakite ia; e kī ana: Nana, nāu mātou i arataki mai i tō mātou whenua tuku iho, ā, kua kore ianei aku tama, ā, kei te mate haere mātou i te koraha.
- 3 Ā, koinei te āhua o te reo i amuamu ai tōku whaea ki tōku matua.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero tōku matua ki a ia, e kī ana: E mōhio nei ahau he tangata matakite ahau; nā te mea mehemea kīhai au i kite atu i ngā mea o te Atua i tētahi whakakitenga kua kore au e mōhio ki ngā painga a te Atua, engari kua noho tonu i Hiruharama, ā, kua mate tahi me aku huānga.
- 5 Engari nana, kua whiwhi au i tētahi whenua whakaari, koia anō ngā mea e koa nei ahau; āe rā, e mōhio ana ahau mā te Ariki anō aku tama e whakaputa mai i ngā ringaringa o Rāpana, ā, ka mauria iho mai anō rātou ki a tāua i te koraha.
- 6 Ā, koinei te āhua o te reo nā tōku matua, a Rihai, i whakamārire ai i tōku whaea, a Haraia, e pā ana ki a mātou, i a mātou e haere ake ana i te koraha ki te whenua o Hiruharama, kia hopu ai i te tuinga o ngā Hūrai.
- 7 Ā, i tō mātou hokinga ki te tēneti o tōku matua, nana, kua kī tonu tō rāua koa, ā, kua whakamāriretia tōku whaea.
- 8 Ā, ka mea mai ia, e kī ana: Nā, e mōhio pū ana ahau kua whakahau te Ariki i taku hoatāne kia tahuti atu ki roto i te koraha; āe rā, e mōhio pū ana anō ahau kua tiaki te Ariki i aku tama, ā, kua whakaputaia rātou i ngā ringaringa o Rāpana, ā, kua hoatu ki a rātou he mana mā konei rā i taea ai te tutuki i tēnei mea kua whakahaua rātou e te Ariki. Ā, koinei te āhua o te reo i kōrero ai ia.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, i hari rawa rāua, ā, ka tuku whakahere me ngā whakaherenga tahu ki te Ariki; ā, ka tuku whakamoemiti rāua ki te Atua o Iharaira.

## 1 Nephi 5

And it came to pass that after we had come down into the wilderness unto our father, behold, he was filled with joy, and also my mother, Sariah, was exceedingly glad, for she truly had mourned because of us.

For she had supposed that we had perished in the wilderness; and she also had complained against my father, telling him that he was a visionary man; saying: Behold thou hast led us forth from the land of our inheritance, and my sons are no more, and we perish in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language had my mother complained against my father.

And it had come to pass that my father spake unto her, saying: I know that I am a visionary man; for if I had not seen the things of God in a vision I should not have known the goodness of God, but had tarried at Jerusalem, and had perished with my brethren.

But behold, I have obtained a land of promise, in the which things I do rejoice; yea, and I know that the Lord will deliver my sons out of the hands of Laban, and bring them down again unto us in the wilderness.

And after this manner of language did my father, Lehi, comfort my mother, Sariah, concerning us, while we journeyed in the wilderness up to the land of Jerusalem, to obtain the record of the Jews.

And when we had returned to the tent of my father, behold their joy was full, and my mother was comforted.

And she spake, saying: Now I know of a surety that the Lord hath commanded my husband to flee into the wilderness; yea, and I also know of a surety that the Lord hath protected my sons, and delivered them out of the hands of Laban, and given them power whereby they could accomplish the thing which the Lord hath commanded them. And after this manner of language did she speak.

And it came to pass that they did rejoice exceedingly, and did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord; and they gave thanks unto the God of Israel.

10     Ā, whai muri iho i tā rāua tuku whakamoemiti ki te Atua o Iharaira, ko tōku matua, ko Rīhai, ka haria atu ngā tuhinga kua whaowhaoa ki runga i ngā papa parāhe, ā, ka rangahaua e ia mai i te tīmatatanga.

11     Ā, ka kite ia i reira ngā pukapuka e rima a Mohi, i tuku kōrero ia mō te hanganga o te ao, me Arama rāua ko Iwi anō hoki, ko rāua ō tātou mātua tuatahi;

12     Ā, he tuhinga anō mō ngā Hūrai mai i te tīmatanga, tae iho ana ki te tīmatanga o te whakahaeretanga a Herekia, kīngi o Hura.

13     Ā, ko ngā poropititanga anō a ngā poropiti tapu, mai i te tīmatanga, tae iho ana ki te tīmatanga o te whakahaeretanga a Herekia; me ngā poropiti maha kua kōrerohia e te māngai o Heremaia.

14     Ā, i pahawa ake i tōku matua, a Rīhai, ka kimi anō i runga i ngā papa parāhe he whakapapa o ōna mātua; nā reira ia i mōhio ai he uri ia nō Hōhepa; āe rā, ko taua Hōhepa pū anō koia te tama a Hākopa, kua hokona atu ki roto o Ihīpa, ā, kua whakarauorahia e te ringa o te Atua, me kore pea ia e whakarauora i tōna matua, a Hākopa, me tōna whare katoa kei mate i te hemokaitanga.

15     Ā, kua ārahina anōtia rātou ki waho atu i te hereheretanga ki tua atu i te whenua o Ihīpa, e taua Atua pū anō nāna rātou i whakarauora.

16     Ā, nā konā tōku matua, a Rīhai, i kimi i te whakapapa o ōna tīpuna. Ā, ko Rāpana anō tētahi uri nō Hōhepa, nā reira ia me ōna tīpuna i tuhituhi ai i ngā tuhinga.

17     Ā, i te kitenga a tōku matua i ēnei mea katoa, ka kī ia i te Wairua, ā, ka tīmata ki te poropiti mō ōna uri—

18     Ka kawea whānuitia atu ēnei papa ki ngā iwi katoa, ki ngā hapū, ki ngā reo, ki ngā tāngata anō he uri nōna.

19     Nā reira, i kī ai ia kua kore rawa ēnei papa parāhe e memeha; e kore rānei e pōuriuri i te huringa o te wā. Ā, i poropititia e ia ngā mea maha mō ōna uri.

20     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tau ki tēnei wā mohoa kua puritia e māua ko tōku matua ngā whakahaunga i whakahaua ai māua e te Ariki.

And after they had given thanks unto the God of Israel, my father, Lehi, took the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass, and he did search them from the beginning.

And he beheld that they did contain the five books of Moses, which gave an account of the creation of the world, and also of Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;

And also a record of the Jews from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah;

And also the prophecies of the holy prophets, from the beginning, even down to the commencement of the reign of Zedekiah; and also many prophecies which have been spoken by the mouth of Jeremiah.

And it came to pass that my father, Lehi, also found upon the plates of brass a genealogy of his fathers; wherefore he knew that he was a descendant of Joseph; yea, even that Joseph who was the son of Jacob, who was sold into Egypt, and who was preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he might preserve his father, Jacob, and all his household from perishing with famine.

And they were also led out of captivity and out of the land of Egypt, by that same God who had preserved them.

And thus my father, Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. And Laban also was a descendant of Joseph, wherefore he and his fathers had kept the records.

And now when my father saw all these things, he was filled with the Spirit, and began to prophesy concerning his seed—

That these plates of brass should go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people who were of his seed.

Wherefore, he said that these plates of brass should never perish; neither should they be dimmed any more by time. And he prophesied many things concerning his seed.

And it came to pass that thus far I and my father had kept the commandments wherewith the Lord had commanded us.

- 21     Ā, kua hopungia e mātou ngā tuhinga kua whakahaua mātou e te Ariki, ā, kua rangahaua ērā me te kite atu he mea e hiahiatia ana; āe rā, he mea utu nui kē ki a mātou, nā konā ka āhei mātou ki te tiaki i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki mō ā mātou tamariki.
- 22     Nā reira, he whaimōhiohio tangata ia i roto i te Ariki kia kawea ai mātou i ērā me mātou, i a mātou e haere ana i te koraha whaka-te-whenua whakaari.

And we had obtained the records which the Lord had commanded us, and searched them and found that they were desirable; yea, even of great worth unto us, insomuch that we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.

Wherefore, it was wisdom in the Lord that we should carry them with us, as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

## 1 Nīwhai 6

- 1 Ā, nō konā au, a Nīwhai, e kore e tuku nei i ngā whakapapa o tōku matua i tēnei wāhanga o taku tuhinga; e kore hoki au e tuku a muri ake nei i runga i ēnei papa e tuhia nei e ahau; nā te mea kua tukuna i roto i te tuhinga kua tuhituhia e tōku matua; nā reira, kāore au i te tuhi i a ia i tēnei pukapuka.
- 2 Kāti hoki māku te kī nei he uri mātou nō Hōhepa.
- 3 Ā, kāore he tikanga ki ahau e tūpato ai au ki te tuku i tētahi kōrero whānui o ngā mea katoa a tōku matua, nā te mea kāore e taea ērā te tuhi ki runga i ēnei papa, nā te mea e hiahia ana ahau kia wātea te wāhi kia tuhi ai au i ngā mea o te Atua.
- 4 Nō konā ko taku hiahia katoa kia whakapakepake mai ai i ngā tangata kia haere mai ai ki te Atua o Aperahama, me te Atua o Ihaka, me te Atua o Hakopa, ā, kia whakaorangia ai.
- 5 Nā reira, ko ngā mea e pai ana ki te ao kāore au mō te tuhi, engari ko ngā mea e pai ana ki te Atua, ā, ki te hunga anō hoki ehara nō te ao.
- 6 Nā reira, ka tuku whakahau ki ōku uri, kia kaua e whakakī i ēnei papa ki ngā mea e tikanga kore ana ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.

## 1 Nephi 6

And now I, Nephi, do not give the genealogy of my fathers in this part of my record; neither at any time shall I give it after upon these plates which I am writing; for it is given in the record which has been kept by my father; wherefore, I do not write it in this work.

For it sufficeth me to say that we are descendants of Joseph.

And it mattereth not to me that I am particular to give a full account of all the things of my father, for they cannot be written upon these plates, for I desire the room that I may write of the things of God.

For the fulness of mine intent is that I may persuade men to come unto the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, and be saved.

Wherefore, the things which are pleasing unto the world I do not write, but the things which are pleasing unto God and unto those who are not of the world.

Wherefore, I shall give commandment unto my seed, that they shall not occupy these plates with things which are not of worth unto the children of men.

## 1 Nīwhai 7

- 1 Nana ianei, e hiahia ana au kia mōhio ai koutou, nō muri iho i tā tōku matua, i tā Rīhai, whakakapinga poropititanga e pā ana ki ōna uri, i pahawa ake, i kōrero anō te Ariki ki a ia, e mea ana kāore e tika ana mōna, mō Rīhai, kia kawea e ia tōna hapū ki roto i te koraha ko rātou anake; engari kē me taumau ana tama i ngā tamāhine hei hoawahine, e whakatururia ai he uri ki te Ariki i te whenua whakaari.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakahau te Ariki i a ia, nā, māku, mā Nīwhai, me ōku tuākana, e hoki anō ai ki te whenua o Hiruharama, ā, ka mauria iho mai a Ihimaera me tōna hapū ki roto i te koraha.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai anō, me ōku tuākana, i haere whakamua atu ki roto i te koraha kia haere ake ai ki Hiruharama.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere ake mātou ki te whare o Ihimaera, ā, ka whaipai mātou i te tirohanga a Ihimaera, nā konā mātou i kōrero atu ki a ia i ngā kupu a te Ariki.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakangāwarihia e te Ariki te ngākau o Ihimaera, me tōna whare anō hoki, nā konā rātou i haere tahi iho ai me mātou ki roto i te koraha ki te tēneti o tōku matua.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i a mātou e haere ana i te koraha, nana ko Rāmana rāua ko Remuere, me ngā tamāhine tokorua a Ihimaera, me ngā tama tokorua a Ihimaera me ō rāua hapū, ka haututū mai ki a mātou; āe rā, ki ahau, a Nīwhai, me Hāmi, me tō rātou matua, a Ihimaera, me tana hoawahine, me ētahi atu o ana tamāhine tokotoru.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, i taua haututūtanga, i te hiahia rātou kia hoki anō ai ki te whenua o Hiruharama.
- 8 Nana ianei au, a Nīwhai, i te pōuri nō te mārō o ō rātou ngākau, nō reira au ka kōrero ki a rātou, e kī ana, āe rā, ki a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere pū anō: Nana ko ōku tuākana kōrua, ā, nā te aha i pēnā rawa ai te mārō i ō kōrua ngākau, ā, i pēnā rawa ai te kāpō i ō kōrua hinengaro, e whaitake ai kōrua māku, tā kōrua teina, e kōrero atu ki a kōrua, āe rā, me te whakatakoto tauira mā kōrua?
- 9 Nā te aha i kore ai tā kōrua whakarongo ki te kupu a te Ariki?
- 10 Nā te aha i wareware ai tā kōrua kitenga atu i te anahera a te Ariki?

## 1 Nephi 7

And now I would that ye might know, that after my father, Lehi, had made an end of prophesying concerning his seed, it came to pass that the Lord spake unto him again, saying that it was not meet for him, Lehi, that he should take his family into the wilderness alone; but that his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that I, Nephi, and my brethren, should again return unto the land of Jerusalem, and bring down Ishmael and his family into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did again, with my brethren, go forth into the wilderness to go up to Jerusalem.

And it came to pass that we went up unto the house of Ishmael, and we did gain favor in the sight of Ishmael, insomuch that we did speak unto him the words of the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the heart of Ishmael, and also his household, insomuch that they took their journey with us down into the wilderness to the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that as we journeyed in the wilderness, behold Laman and Lemuel, and two of the daughters of Ishmael, and the two sons of Ishmael and their families, did rebel against us; yea, against me, Nephi, and Sam, and their father, Ishmael, and his wife, and his three other daughters.

And it came to pass in the which rebellion, they were desirous to return unto the land of Jerusalem.

And now I, Nephi, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts, therefore I spake unto them, saying, yea, even unto Laman and unto Lemuel: Behold ye are mine elder brethren, and how is it that ye are so hard in your hearts, and so blind in your minds, that ye have need that I, your younger brother, should speak unto you, yea, and set an example for you?

How is it that ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

How is it that ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?



- 11 Āe rā, nā te aha anō i wareware ai kōrua i ngā mea nui i mahia e te Ariki mō tātou, i tana whakarauoratanga i a tātou i ngā ringaringa o Rāpana, ā, kia riro mai anō ai i a tātou te tuinga?
- 12 Āe rā, nā te aha anō i wareware ai kōrua e taea ana e te Ariki ngā mea katoa e ai ki tana hiahia, mō ngā tamariki a te tangata, mēnā rā ia ka whakapakari rātou i tō rātou whakapono i roto i a ia? Nā reira, kia pono tonu tātou ki a ia.
- 13 Ā, mēnā rā ia ka pono tātou ki a ia, ka whiwhi tātou i te whenua whakaari; ā, ka mōhio koutou ā tōna wā ka tutuki te kupu a te Ariki e pā ana ki te whakangaromanga o Hiruharama; nā te mea ko ngā mea katoa kua kōrerotia e te Ariki e pā ana ki te whakangaromanga o Hiruharama, me tutuki.
- 14 Nana rā, hei ākuanei ka oti te Wairua o te Ariki ki te tohetohe ki a rātou; nana rā, kua whakaparahakotia ngā poropiti, ā, kua makaia a Heremaia ki roto i te whareherehere. Ā, kua whai rātou ki te muru i te oranga o tōku matua, nā konā rātou i pei atu ai i a ia ki waho atu i te whenua.
- 15 Nana ianei, ka kī atu au ki a koutou mēnā rā ka hoki atu koutou ki Hiruharama ka mate tahi anō koutou me rātou. Āpiti, mēnā i a koutou te kōwhiri, haere ake ki te whenua, me mahara anō ki ngā kupu ka kōrero atu nei au ki a koutou, nā, mēnā ka haere koutou ka mate anō koutou; nā konei rā e akiaki ana te Wairua o te Ariki i ahau kia kōrero au.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, i tāku, i tā Nīwhai, kōrerotanga atu i ēnei kupu ki ōku tuākana, i tino riri ki ahau. Ā, i pahawa ake ka pā mai ō rāua ringaringa ki runga i ahau, nana rā, i tino pukuriri rawa rāua, ka here rāua i ahau ki ngā taura, nā te mea i whai rāua kia muru ai i tōku oranga, kia mahue au i a rāua i te koraha e kaingia ai e ngā kararehe mohoa.
- 17 Engari, i pahawa ake, i inoi au ki te Ariki, e kī ana: Auē e te Ariki, e ai ki tōku whakapono i roto i a koe, Māu ahau e whakaputa i ngā ringaringa o ōku tuākana; āe rā, homai ki ahau he kaha e taea ai te momotu atu i ēnei hereherenga e herea nei ahau.
- 18 Ā, i pahawa ake, i taku kōrerotanga i ēnei kupu, nana, ka wetekia ngā hereherenga mai i ōku ringaringa me ōku waewae, ā, ka tū ahau i mua i ōku tuākana, ā, ka kōrero anō ahau ki a rāua.

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten what great things the Lord hath done for us, in delivering us out of the hands of Laban, and also that we should obtain the record?

Yea, and how is it that ye have forgotten that the Lord is able to do all things according to his will, for the children of men, if it so be that they exercise faith in him? Wherefore, let us be faithful to him.

And if it so be that we are faithful to him, we shall obtain the land of promise; and ye shall know at some future period that the word of the Lord shall be fulfilled concerning the destruction of Jerusalem; for all things which the Lord hath spoken concerning the destruction of Jerusalem must be fulfilled.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord ceaseth soon to strive with them; for behold, they have rejected the prophets, and Jeremiah have they cast into prison. And they have sought to take away the life of my father, insomuch that they have driven him out of the land.

Now behold, I say unto you that if ye will return unto Jerusalem ye shall also perish with them. And now, if ye have choice, go up to the land, and remember the words which I speak unto you, that if ye go ye will also perish; for thus the Spirit of the Lord constraineth me that I should speak.

And it came to pass that when I, Nephi, had spoken these words unto my brethren, they were angry with me. And it came to pass that they did lay their hands upon me, for behold, they were exceedingly wroth, and they did bind me with cords, for they sought to take away my life, that they might leave me in the wilderness to be devoured by wild beasts.

But it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, according to my faith which is in thee, wilt thou deliver me from the hands of my brethren; yea, even give me strength that I may burst these bands with which I am bound.

And it came to pass that when I had said these words, behold, the bands were loosed from off my hands and feet, and I stood before my brethren, and I spake unto them again.

- 19     Ā, i pahawa ake, i riri anō rāua ki ahau, ka whai mai e pā ai ō rāua ringaringa ki runga i ahau; engari nana, ko tētahi o ngā tamāhine a Ihimaera, āe rā, me tōna whaea anō hoki, me tētahi o ngā tama a Ihimaera, ka tohe ki ōku tuākana, nā konā i whakangāwarihia ō rāua ngākau; ka mutu tā rāua ngana ki te muru atu i tōku oranga.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake, i pōuri rāua, nā tō rāua whakarihariha, nā konā rāua i tuohu iho i mua i ahau, ka inoi mai kia whakamuru au i a rāua mō ngā mea i mahi ai rāua ki ahau.
- 21     Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakamurua noatia rāua e ahau me ngā mea katoa i mahi ai rāua, ā, ka akiaki ahau i a rāua kia inoi ai ki te Ariki tō rāua Atua mō te whakamurunga hara. Ā, i pahawa ake, i pēnā rāua. Ā, whai muri iho i te mutunga o tā rāua inoi ki te Ariki ka haere anō mātou i tō mātou haerenga whaka-te-tēneti o tō mātou matua.
- 22     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere iho mātou ki te tēneti o tō mātou matua. Ā, whai muri iho i tāku, me tā ōku tuākana me tā te whare katoa o Ihimaera haere iho ki te tēneti o tōku matua, ka whakawhetai atu rātou ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua; ā, ka tuku whakahere me ngā whakaherenga tahu ki a ia.

And it came to pass that they were angry with me again, and sought to lay hands upon me; but behold, one of the daughters of Ishmael, yea, and also her mother, and one of the sons of Ishmael, did plead with my brethren, insomuch that they did soften their hearts; and they did cease striving to take away my life.

And it came to pass that they were sorrowful, because of their wickedness, insomuch that they did bow down before me, and did plead with me that I would forgive them of the thing that they had done against me.

And it came to pass that I did frankly forgive them all that they had done, and I did exhort them that they would pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. And it came to pass that they did so. And after they had done praying unto the Lord we did again travel on our journey towards the tent of our father.

And it came to pass that we did come down unto the tent of our father. And after I and my brethren and all the house of Ishmael had come down unto the tent of my father, they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; and they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

## 1 Nīwhai 8

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kohikohia e mātou ngā momo purapura katoa o ia āhua, me ngā kerēne o ia āhua, me ngā purapura hua rākau anō hoki o ia āhua.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i tōku matua e noho ana i te koraha ka kī mai ia ki a mātou, e mea ana: Nana, kua moea e ahau he moemoeā; me kī kē rānei, kua kite ahau i tētahi whakakitenga.
- 3 Ā nana, nā te mea i kite ai ahau, kua whaitake ahau kia hari i roto i te Ariki nā Nīwhai rāua ko Hāmi; nā te mea kua whaitake taku whakapono atu ko rāua, me te tini anō o ō rāua uri, ka whakaorangia ai.
- 4 Heoi nana, e Rāmana me Remuere, he nui rawa atu tōku wehi mō kōrua; nana rā, ki taku mahara i kite ai au i taku moemoeā, he koraha pōuri mokemoke.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i tētahi tangata, e kākahuria ana ki tētahi kahu mā; ā, ka haere mai ia me te tū ki mua i ahau.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai ia ki ahau, ā, ka tonoa au kia aru atu i a ia.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, i ahau e aru atu ana i a ia ka kite ahau i ahau anō i roto i tētahi wāhi tītōhea pōuri mokemoke.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, taku haeretanga mō ngā haora maha i te pōuritanga, ka tīmata au ki te inoi atu ki te Ariki kia whaiaroha ia mōku, e ai ki ōna tini aroha noatanga.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, whai muri i taku inoi ki te Ariki i kite ahau i tētahi whīra nui whakaharahara.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i tētahi rākau, ko ōna hua i hiahiatia nei kia whakakoa ai i tētahi.
- 11 Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere whakamua ahau me te kai i ngā hua o reira; ā, ka kite anō ahau he tino reka rawa ake i ngā mea katoa kua kainga e ahau. Āe rā, ka kite anō ahau he mā ngā hua o reira, he mā ake i ngā mā katoa kua kite rā anō ahau.
- 12 Ā, i ahau e kai ana i ngā hua o reira ka kīa tōku wairua ki te hari tino nui; nā reira, ka tīmata taku hiahia kia kai anō ai tōku hapū; nā te mea i mōhio ahau he mea e hiahiatia ana i runga ake i ērā atu hua katoa.

## 1 Nephi 8

And it came to pass that we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

And it came to pass that while my father tarried in the wilderness he spake unto us, saying: Behold, I have dreamed a dream; or, in other words, I have seen a vision.

And behold, because of the thing which I have seen, I have reason to rejoice in the Lord because of Nephi and also of Sam; for I have reason to suppose that they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

But behold, Laman and Lemuel, I fear exceedingly because of you; for behold, methought I saw in my dream, a dark and dreary wilderness.

And it came to pass that I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe; and he came and stood before me.

And it came to pass that he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

And it came to pass that as I followed him I beheld myself that I was in a dark and dreary waste.

And after I had traveled for the space of many hours in darkness, I began to pray unto the Lord that he would have mercy on me, according to the multitude of his tender mercies.

And it came to pass after I had prayed unto the Lord I beheld a large and spacious field.

And it came to pass that I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable to make one happy.

And it came to pass that I did go forth and partake of the fruit thereof; and I beheld that it was most sweet, above all that I ever before tasted. Yea, and I beheld that the fruit thereof was white, to exceed all the whiteness that I had ever seen.

And as I partook of the fruit thereof it filled my soul with exceedingly great joy; wherefore, I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also; for I knew that it was desirable above all other fruit.

13     Ā, i ahau e whiu haere ana i ōku kamo huri noa, me kore pea e kite ai i tōku hapū anō hoki, ka kitea e ahau he awa wai; e rere ana, e pātata ana ki te rākau nōna ngā hua i kai ai au.

14     Ā, ka titiro atu e kite ai nōhea rā anō ia; ā, ka kite au i tōna mātāpuna kāore i tawhiti atu; ā, i tōna mātāpuna ka kite au i tō whaea Haraia, me Hāmi, me Nīwhai; ā, i te tū rātou me te mea nei kāore rātou i te mōhio ki hea haere ai rātou.

15     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tāwhiri atu au ki a rātou; ā, ka kī atu anō ahau ki a rātou i runga i te reo kaha kia haere mai ai rātou ki ahau, me te kai i te hua, koia e hiahiatia ana i runga ake i ērā atu hua katoa.

16     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere mai rātou ki ahau, ā, ka kai anō i te hua.

17     Ā, i pahawa ake, i te hiahia ahau kia haere mai ai a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere ki te kai i te hua anō hoki; nā reira, ka whiua ōku kamo ki te mātāpuna o te awa, me kore pea au e kite i a rāua.

18     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i a rāua, engari kāore rāua mō te haere mai ki ahau ki te kai i te hua.

19     Ā, ka kite ahau i tētahi tokotoko rino, ā, e takoto whārōrō ana ia i te taha o te awa, ā, e ārahina ana ki te rākau i tū ai ahau.

20     Ā, ka kite anō hoki ahau i tētahi ara tōtika, ara whāiti, e haere hāngai ana ki te tokotoko rino, tae atu ana ki te rākau i tū ai ahau; ā, i ārahina anōtia rā ki te mātāpuna o te awa, ki tētahi whīra nui whakaharahara, me te mea nei he ao ia.

21     Ā, ka kite ahau i ngā tāngata manomano tini, he tokomaha o rātou e tāruke whakamua ana, kia tae atu ai rātou ki te ara i ārahina atu ai ki te rākau i tū ai ahau.

22     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere mai rātou, ā, ka tīmata atu i te ara i ārahina atu ai ki te rākau.

23     Ā, i pahawa ake, i ara mai he kohu pōuriuri; āe rā, he kohu pōuriuri nui whakaharahara; nā konā rātou te hunga kua tīmata i te ara i ngaro atu ai i tō rātou ara, nā, ka ātiutiu atu rātou, ā, ka ngaro rātou.

And as I cast my eyes round about, that perhaps I might discover my family also, I beheld a river of water; and it ran along, and it was near the tree of which I was partaking the fruit.

And I looked to behold from whence it came; and I saw the head thereof a little way off; and at the head thereof I beheld your mother Sariah, and Sam, and Nephi; and they stood as if they knew not whither they should go.

And it came to pass that I beckoned unto them; and I also did say unto them with a loud voice that they should come unto me, and partake of the fruit, which was desirable above all other fruit.

And it came to pass that they did come unto me and partake of the fruit also.

And it came to pass that I was desirous that Laman and Lemuel should come and partake of the fruit also; wherefore, I cast mine eyes towards the head of the river, that perhaps I might see them.

And it came to pass that I saw them, but they would not come unto me and partake of the fruit.

And I beheld a rod of iron, and it extended along the bank of the river, and led to the tree by which I stood.

And I also beheld a strait and narrow path, which came along by the rod of iron, even to the tree by which I stood; and it also led by the head of the fountain, unto a large and spacious field, as if it had been a world.

And I saw numberless concourses of people, many of whom were pressing forward, that they might obtain the path which led unto the tree by which I stood.

And it came to pass that they did come forth, and commence in the path which led to the tree.

And it came to pass that there arose a mist of darkness; yea, even an exceedingly great mist of darkness, insomuch that they who had commenced in the path did lose their way, that they wandered off and were lost.

24     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ētahi atu e tāruke  
whakamua ana, ā, ka haere mai rātou, ā, ka mau i a  
rātou te pito o te tokotoko rino; ā, ka tāruke  
whakamua rātou ki waenganui i te kohu pōuriuri, e  
rapa ana ki te tokotoko rino, tae atu ana ki tā rātou  
putanga mai, ā, ka kai i te hua o te rākau.

25     Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou kai i te hua o te rākau  
ka whiu haere rātou i ō rātou kamo me te mea nei i  
whakamā rātou.

26     Ā, ka whiu haere anō ahau i ōku kamo, ā ka kitea,  
i tērā atu taha o te awa wai, he whare nui  
whakaharahara; ā, i te tū ia me te mea nei i te hau  
takiwā, i runga rawa ake i te whenua.

27     Ā, i kī katoa i te tangata, kaumātua mai, tamariki  
mai, tāne mai, wahine mai; ā, ko te āhua o ō rātou  
kākahu he tino pai rawa atu; ā, i te tāwai rātou me te  
tuhi mai i ō rātou matikara ki te hunga i haere mai ai,  
ā, e kai ana i te hua.

28     Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou kai i te hua ka  
whakamā rātou, nā te hunga e taunu ana i a rātou; ā,  
ka taka atu rātou ki ngā ara kua whakakāhoretia atu,  
ā, ka ngaro.

29     Ā, ko au ianei, a Nīwhai, e kore e kōrero i ngā  
kupu katoa a tōku matua.

30     Engari, kia poto ai i te tuinga, nana, i kite ia i ngā  
marea e tāruke whakamua ana; ā, i haere mai rātou  
me te whakamau ki te pito o te tokotoko rino; ā, ka  
tāruke whakamua rātou, e ū ana ki te pupuri ki te  
tokotoko rino, tae atu ana ki tā rātou putanga mai, ā,  
ka hinga ki raro, ā, ka kai i te hua o te rākau.

31     Ā, i kite anō i ētahi atu marea e whāwhā haere ana  
rātou whaka-te-whare nui whakaharahara.

32     Ā, i pahawa ake, i toromi iho rātou ki ngā rire o te  
awa; ā, he tokomaha i ngaro atu ai i tōna kitenga, e  
ātiutiu ana i ngā ara hē kē atu.

33     Ā, he nui rawa atu te marea i kuhu ai ki roto i taua  
whare kē. Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou kuhu ki roto i  
taua whare ka tuhi rātou i te matikara taunu ki ahau  
me te hunga anō e kai ana i te hua; engari kāore  
mātou i aro atu.

34     Koinei ngā kupu a tōku matua: Nā te mea ko te  
hunga katoa i aro atu ki a rātou, i taka atu.

35     Ā, kāore a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere i kai i te hua,  
te kī a tōku matua.

And it came to pass that I beheld others pressing  
forward, and they came forth and caught hold of the  
end of the rod of iron; and they did press forward  
through the mist of darkness, clinging to the rod of  
iron, even until they did come forth and partake of  
the fruit of the tree.

And after they had partaken of the fruit of the tree  
they did cast their eyes about as if they were  
ashamed.

And I also cast my eyes round about, and beheld,  
on the other side of the river of water, a great and  
spacious building; and it stood as it were in the air,  
high above the earth.

And it was filled with people, both old and young,  
both male and female; and their manner of dress was  
exceedingly fine; and they were in the attitude of  
mocking and pointing their fingers towards those  
who had come at and were partaking of the fruit.

And after they had tasted of the fruit they were  
ashamed, because of those that were scoffing at  
them; and they fell away into forbidden paths and  
were lost.

And now I, Nephi, do not speak all the words of  
my father.

But, to be short in writing, behold, he saw other  
multitudes pressing forward; and they came and  
caught hold of the end of the rod of iron; and they  
did press their way forward, continually holding fast  
to the rod of iron, until they came forth and fell  
down and partook of the fruit of the tree.

And he also saw other multitudes feeling their way  
towards that great and spacious building.

And it came to pass that many were drowned in  
the depths of the fountain; and many were lost from  
his view, wandering in strange roads.

And great was the multitude that did enter into  
that strange building. And after they did enter into  
that building they did point the finger of scorn at me  
and those that were partaking of the fruit also; but  
we heeded them not.

These are the words of my father: For as many as  
heeded them, had fallen away.

And Laman and Lemuel partook not of the fruit,  
said my father.

- 36     Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i te kōrero a tōku matua i ngā kupu katoa o tana moemoeā, whakakitenga rānei, koia he mea maha, ka kī mai ia ki a mātou, nā ēnei mea i kite ai ia i tētahi whakakitenga, i tino nui whakaharahara tōna wehi mō Rāmana rāua ko Remuere; āe rā, i wehi ia kei makaia atu rāua i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 37     Ā, ka akiaki ia i a rāua i konā i runga i te aroha katoa o tētahi matua ngāwari, kia whakarongo ai rāua ki ana kupu, e aroha nui pea te Ariki ki a rāua, ā, kia kaua e makaia atu rāua; āe rā, i kauhau ai tōku matua ki a rāua.
- 38     Ā, whai muri iho i tana kauhau atu ki a rāua, ā, ka poropiti atu ia ki a rāua i ngā mea maha, ka tono ia ki a rāua kia puritia ai ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki; ā, ka mutu tana kōrero atu ki a rāua.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken all the words of his dream or vision, which were many, he said unto us, because of these things which he saw in a vision, he exceedingly feared for Laman and Lemuel; yea, he feared lest they should be cast off from the presence of the Lord.

And he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent, that they would hearken to his words, that perhaps the Lord would be merciful to them, and not cast them off; yea, my father did preach unto them.

And after he had preached unto them, and also prophesied unto them of many things, he bade them to keep the commandments of the Lord; and he did cease speaking unto them.

## 1 Nīwhai 9

- 1 Ā, koinei mea katoa i kite ai tōku matua, i rongō ai, i kōrero ai, i a ia e noho tēneti ana, i te raorao o Remuere, ā, he maha rawa anō ngā mea hoki, kāore e taea te tuhituhi i runga i ēnei papa.
- 2 Ā ināianei, i te mea kua kōrero ahau e pā ana ki ēnei papa, nana, ehara ēnei i ngā papa ka tuhia te roanga atu o ngā hītori mō tōku iwi; nā te mea ko ngā papa ka tuhia e ahau te roanga atu o ngā kōrero mō tōku iwi kua huaina e au ki te ingoa o Nīwhai; nā reira, e karangahia ana ko ngā papa a Nīwhai, whai muri ana i tōku ake ingoa; ā, koinei papa anō kua karangahia ko ngā papa a Nīwhai.
- 3 Hei aha koa, kua riro mai i ahau he whakahaunga nā te Ariki kia hangaia ai ēnei papa, mō tētahi take motuhake kia whaowhaoa ai tētahi tuhinga mō te minitanga a tōku iwi.
- 4 Me whaowhao i runga i ērā atu papa ko ngā tuhinga mō ngā whakahaeretanga a ngā kīngi, ā, ko ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga o tōku iwi; nā reira ko te wāhi nui o ēnei papa ko te minitanga; ā, ko te wāhi nui o ērā atu papa ko te whakahaeretanga a ngā kīngi me ngā pakanga, me ngā tautohetohenga o tōku iwi.
- 5 Nā reira, kua whakahau te Ariki i ahau kia hangaia ai ēnei papa mō tētahi take motuhake i roto i a ia, ko taua take kāore au e mōhio ana.
- 6 Engari e mōhio ana te Ariki i ngā mea katoa mai i te tīmatanga; nā reira, ka whakaritea e ia he huarahi kia whakatutuki ai i āna mahi katoa i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata; nana rā, i a ia te mana katoa tae atu ana ki te whakatutukitanga i āna kupu katoa. Ā, koia anō tēnei. Āmine.

## 1 Nephi 9

And all these things did my father see, and hear, and speak, as he dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel, and also a great many more things, which cannot be written upon these plates.

And now, as I have spoken concerning these plates, behold they are not the plates upon which I make a full account of the history of my people; for the plates upon which I make a full account of my people I have given the name of Nephi; wherefore, they are called the plates of Nephi, after mine own name; and these plates also are called the plates of Nephi.

Nevertheless, I have received a commandment of the Lord that I should make these plates, for the special purpose that there should be an account engraven of the ministry of my people.

Upon the other plates should be engraven an account of the reign of the kings, and the wars and contentions of my people; wherefore these plates are for the more part of the ministry; and the other plates are for the more part of the reign of the kings and the wars and contentions of my people.

Wherefore, the Lord hath commanded me to make these plates for a wise purpose in him, which purpose I know not.

But the Lord knoweth all things from the beginning; wherefore, he prepareth a way to accomplish all his works among the children of men; for behold, he hath all power unto the fulfilling of all his words. And thus it is. Amen.

## 1 Nīwhai 10

- 1 Ā ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, ka haere tonu taku tuhinga i runga i ēnei papa mō aku mahi, ā, ko taku whakahaeretanga me taku minitātanga; nā reira, kia haere tonu ai taku tuhinga, me paku kōrero ahau mō ngā mea a tōku matua, mō ōku tuākana anō hoki.
- 2 Nana rā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i te whakakapinga kōrero a tōku matua i ngā kupu o tana moemoeā, ā, me tana akiaki i a rātou kia tākare katoa ai, ka kōrero ia ki a rātou e pā ana ki ngā Hūrai—
- 3 Nā, whai muri iho i tō rātou whakangaromanga, ko taua pā nui whakaharahara pū anō a Hiruharama, ā, me te tokomaha anō ka mauheretia atu ki roto i a Papurona, e ai ki te wā e rite ai i te Ariki, ka hoki mai anō rātou, āe rā, ka whakahokia pū anō mai i waho i te hereherenga; ā, whai muri iho i te whakahokinga mai i a rātou i waho i te hereherenga ka nohoia anōtia e rātou tō rātou whenua tuku iho.
- 4 Āe rā, kia ono rau rā anō ngā tau mai te wā i wehe ai tōku matua i Hiruharama, ka whakaarahia e te Ariki te Atua tētahi poropiti i waenganui i ngā Hūrai—he Mīhaia pū anō, me kī kē rānei, tētahi Kaiwhakaora mō te ao.
- 5 Ā, ka kōrero anō ia e pā ana ki ngā poropiti, anō te tokomaha rawa kua whakaatuhia mō ēnei mea, e pā ana ki tēnei Mīhaia, kua kōrerotia e ia, ko tēnei Kaihoko rānei mō te ao.
- 6 Nā reira, i tau ai ngā tāngata katoa i tētahi āhuratanga ngaro, i tētahi āhuratanga taka, ā, ka pērā mō āke tonu atu ki te kore rātou e whakawhirinaki i runga i tēnei Kaihoko.
- 7 Ā, ka kōrero anō ia e pā ana ki tētahi poropiti ka haere mai ki te aroaro o te Mīhaia, kia whakaritea te huarahi o te Ariki—
- 8 Āe rā, me haere whakamua atu ia me te kauhau i te koraha: Whakaritea e koe te huarahi o te Ariki, ā, kia whakatōtikahia ōna ara; nā te mea e tū ana tētahi i waenganui i a koutou kāore i te mōhiotia e koutou; ā, he nui kē atu tōna mana i tōku, kāore au e pai ana kia wewete i te here o ōna hū. Ā, he nui anō tā tōku matua i kōrero ai e pā ana ki tēnei mea.

## 1 Nephi 10

And now I, Nephi, proceed to give an account upon these plates of my proceedings, and my reign and ministry; wherefore, to proceed with mine account, I must speak somewhat of the things of my father, and also of my brethren.

For behold, it came to pass after my father had made an end of speaking the words of his dream, and also of exhorting them to all diligence, he spake unto them concerning the Jews—

That after they should be destroyed, even that great city Jerusalem, and many be carried away captive into Babylon, according to the own due time of the Lord, they should return again, yea, even be brought back out of captivity; and after they should be brought back out of captivity they should possess again the land of their inheritance.

Yea, even six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem, a prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

And he also spake concerning the prophets, how great a number had testified of these things, concerning this Messiah, of whom he had spoken, or this Redeemer of the world.

Wherefore, all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

And he spake also concerning a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the way of the Lord—

Yea, even he should go forth and cry in the wilderness: Prepare ye the way of the Lord, and make his paths straight; for there standeth one among you whom ye know not; and he is mightier than I, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. And much spake my father concerning this thing.



- 9     Ā, ka kī mai tōku matua ka rūmaki ia ki Petapara, ki kō atu i a Hōrana; ā, i kī mai anō ia ka rūmaki ia ki te wai; ka rūmaki pū anō ia i te Mīhaia ki te wai.
- 10    Ā, whai muri iho i tana rūmaki i te Mīhaia ki te wai, ka mōhio ia, ā, ka kitea, ā, ka whakaatuhia atu e ia nāna te Reme a te Atua i rūmaki, koia ka tango atu i ngā hara o te ao.
- 11    Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā tōku matua kōrero i ēnei kupu ka kōrero ia ki ōku tuākana e pā ana ki te rongopai ka kauhautia atu i waenganui i ngā Hūrai, ā, e pā ana anō hoki ki te memeha haeretanga o te whakapono o ngā Hūrai. Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou whakamate i te Mīhaia, ka haere mai nei, ā, whai muri iho i tana whakamatenga ka ara ake anō ia i te mate, ā, ka whakaatu atu ia i a ia anō, mā te Wairua Tapu, ki ngā Tauivi.
- 12    Āe rā, he nui pū anō tā tōku matua i kōrero ai e pā ana ki ngā Hūrai, ā, e pā ana anō hoki ki te whare o Ihairaira, nā, ka whakatauritehia rātou kia rite ki te rākau ōriwa, ko ōna manga me whati atu, ā, ka whakamararatia atu i runga katoa i te mata o te ao.
- 13    Nā reira, i kī mai ia me pēnei kē kia ārahina tahitia ai tātou i runga i te whakaaro kotahi ki roto i te whenua whakaari, tae atu ana ki te whakatutukitanga i te kupu a te Ariki, nā, ka whakamararatia tātou ki runga i te mata katoa o te ao.
- 14    Ā, i muri iho i te whakamararatanga i te whare o Ihairaira, ka huihuia mai anō rātou; arā, rānei, hei muri iho i te rironga o te rāneatanga o te Rongopai, ko ngā manga tupu o te rākau ōriwa, ko ngā mōrehu rānei o te whare o Ihairaira, ka hono whakarotohia rātou, ka ako rānei ki te mātauranga o te Mīhaia pono, tō rātou Ariki me tō rātou Kaihoko.
- 15    Ā, koinei te āhua o te reo i poropiti ai, i kōrero ai tōku matua ki ōku tuākana, ā, he maha anō ngā mea kāore au e tuhituhi ki roto i tēnei pukapuka; nā te mea kua tuhituhi au i ngā mea katoa e pai ana ki ahau i roto i tērā atu o āku pukapuka.
- 16    Ā, koinei mea katoa, kua kōrero nei ahau, i mahia ai i tōku matua e noho tēneti ana, i te raorao o Remuere.

And my father said he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; and he also said he should baptize with water; even that he should baptize the Messiah with water.

And after he had baptized the Messiah with water, he should behold and bear record that he had baptized the Lamb of God, who should take away the sins of the world.

And it came to pass after my father had spoken these words he spake unto my brethren concerning the gospel which should be preached among the Jews, and also concerning the dwindling of the Jews in unbelief. And after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

Yea, even my father spake much concerning the Gentiles, and also concerning the house of Israel, that they should be compared like unto an olive tree, whose branches should be broken off and should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

Wherefore, he said it must needs be that we should be led with one accord into the land of promise, unto the fulfilling of the word of the Lord, that we should be scattered upon all the face of the earth.

And after the house of Israel should be scattered they should be gathered together again; or, in fine, after the Gentiles had received the fulness of the Gospel, the natural branches of the olive tree, or the remnants of the house of Israel, should be grafted in, or come to the knowledge of the true Messiah, their Lord and their Redeemer.

And after this manner of language did my father prophesy and speak unto my brethren, and also many more things which I do not write in this book; for I have written as many of them as were expedient for me in mine other book.

And all these things, of which I have spoken, were done as my father dwelt in a tent, in the valley of Lemuel.

- 17     Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tāku, tā Nīwhai, rangona ngā kupu katoa a tōku matua, e pā ana ki tāna i kite ai i tētahi whakakitenga, ā, ko ngā mea anō i kōrero ai ia i runga i te kaha o te Wairua Tapu, koia nei te kaha i roiro mai i a ia i runga i te whakapono ki te Tama a te Atua—ā, ko te Tama a te Atua te Mīhaia ka haere mai—ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka hiahia anō kia kite ai ahau, kia rongo ai, kia mōhio ai i ēnei mea, mā te kaha o te Wairua Tapu, koia te takohatanga o te Atua ki te hunga katoa e ū ana ki te whai atu i a ia, pērā anō i ngā wā onamata me ō te wā e whakakite ai ia i a ia anō ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 18     Nā te mea e tūturu tonu ana ia inānahi, ināiane, ā, āke ake tonu atu; ā, kua whakaritea te huarahi mō ngā tāngata katoa mai i te orokohanganga o te ao, ki te mea ka rīpeneta rātou, ā, ka haere mai ki a ia.
- 19     Nā te mea ko ia e ū ana ki te whai atu i a ia ka kite; ā, ka whakapuarehia ngā mea ngaro a te Atua ki a rātou, mā te kaha o te Wairua Tapu, pērā anō i ēnei wā me ngā wā onamata, ā, pērā anō ki ngā wā onamata me ngā wā anamata; nā reira, ko te huarahi o te Ariki he ara mutunga kore kotahi.
- 20     Nō reira mahara, Auē e te tangata, nā te mea ko āu mahinga katoa ka whakawākia ai.
- 21     Nā reira, mehemea kua whai atu koe ki te mahi whakarihariha i ngā rā o tō poropeihana, tēnā, kua kitea koe e poke ana i mua i te aroaro o te nohoanga-whakawā o te Atua; ā, kāore tētahi mea poke e āhei ana ki te noho tahi me te Atua; nā reira, ka makaia atu koe mō āke tonu atu.
- 22     Ā, kua homai e te Wairua Tapu te mana kia kōrero ai au i ēnei mea, ā, kua ēnā e whakakāhoretia.

And it came to pass after I, Nephi, having heard all the words of my father, concerning the things which he saw in a vision, and also the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost, which power he received by faith on the Son of God—and the Son of God was the Messiah who should come—I, Nephi, was desirous also that I might see, and hear, and know of these things, by the power of the Holy Ghost, which is the gift of God unto all those who diligently seek him, as well in times of old as in the time that he should manifest himself unto the children of men.

For he is the same yesterday, today, and forever; and the way is prepared for all men from the foundation of the world, if it so be that they repent and come unto him.

For he that diligently seeketh shall find; and the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost, as well in these times as in times of old, and as well in times of old as in times to come; wherefore, the course of the Lord is one eternal round.

Therefore remember, O man, for all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment.

Wherefore, if ye have sought to do wickedly in the days of your probation, then ye are found unclean before the judgment-seat of God; and no unclean thing can dwell with God; wherefore, ye must be cast off forever.

And the Holy Ghost giveth authority that I should speak these things, and deny them not.

## 1 Nīwhai 11

- 1 Nā te mea i pahawa ake, i muri iho i taku hiahia kia mōhio ai i ngā mea kua kitea e tōku matua, me te whakapono anō e taea ana e te Ariki ērā te whakamōhio mai ki ahau, i ahau e noho ana ki te whakaaroaro i tōku ngākau ka kahakina atu ahau i roto i te Wairua o te Ariki, āe rā, ki runga i tētahi maunga tiketike, kīhai nei ahau i kite noa i mua, kīhai nei ahau i tau noa tōku waewae i runga.
- 2 Ā, ka kī mai te Wairua ki ahau: Nana, he aha tāu e hiahia nei?
- 3 Ā, ka kī atu ahau: E hiahia ana ahau kia kitea ai ngā mea i kite ai tōku matua.
- 4 Ā, ka kī mai te Wairua ki ahau: E whakapono ana rānei koe i kite ai tō matua i te rākau i kōrero ai ia?
- 5 Ā, ka kī atu ahau: Āe rā, e mōhio ana koe kei te whakapono ahau ki ngā kupu katoa a tōku matua.
- 6 Ā, ka oti i ahau te kōrero i ēnei kupu, ka karanga kaha nei te Wairua, e mea ana: Ōhana ki te Ariki, te Atua i runga rawa; nā te mea ko ia te Atua i runga i te ao katoa, āe rā, i runga pū anō i te katoa. Ā, kua manaakitia koe, e Nīwhai, nā te mea kei te whakapono koe i te Tama a te Atua i runga rawa; nā reira, ka kite koe i ngā mea kua hiahia nei koe.
- 7 Ā, nana ka hoatu tēnei ki a koe hei tohu, nā, i muri iho i tō titiro atu ki te rākau nāna i hua ai ngā hua i kaingia ai e tō matua, ka kite anō koe i tētahi tangata e heke ana i te rangi, ā, ko ia tāu e kitea ai; ā, i muri iho i tāu kite atu i a ia ka tuku whakaaturanga koe ko ia te Tama a te Atua.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te Wairua ki ahau: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kitea he rākau; ā, he rite tonu ia ki te rākau i kite ai tōku matua; ā, kei tua noa atu tōna ātaahua, āe rā, he ātaahua ake i ngā ātaahua katoa; ā, ko tōna mā he nui ake i te mā o te hukarere e pūhia haeretia ana.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i taku kite atu i te rākau, i kī atu au ki te Wairua: Kua kite nei ahau kua whakaatu mai koe ki ahau te rākau tongarerewa i runga ake i te katoa.
- 10 Ā, ka mea mai ia ki ahau: He aha tāu e hiahia nei?

## 1 Nephi 11

For it came to pass after I had desired to know the things that my father had seen, and believing that the Lord was able to make them known unto me, as I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away in the Spirit of the Lord, yea, into an exceedingly high mountain, which I never had before seen, and upon which I never had before set my foot.

And the Spirit said unto me: Behold, what desirest thou?

And I said: I desire to behold the things which my father saw.

And the Spirit said unto me: Believest thou that thy father saw the tree of which he hath spoken?

And I said: Yea, thou knowest that I believe all the words of my father.

And when I had spoken these words, the Spirit cried with a loud voice, saying: Hosanna to the Lord, the most high God; for he is God over all the earth, yea, even above all. And blessed art thou, Nephi, because thou believest in the Son of the most high God; wherefore, thou shalt behold the things which thou hast desired.

And behold this thing shall be given unto thee for a sign, that after thou hast beheld the tree which bore the fruit which thy father tasted, thou shalt also behold a man descending out of heaven, and him shall ye witness; and after ye have witnessed him ye shall bear record that it is the Son of God.

And it came to pass that the Spirit said unto me: Look! And I looked and beheld a tree; and it was like unto the tree which my father had seen; and the beauty thereof was far beyond, yea, exceeding of all beauty; and the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

And it came to pass after I had seen the tree, I said unto the Spirit: I behold thou hast shown unto me the tree which is precious above all.

And he said unto me: What desirest thou?

11     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a ia: Kia mōhio ai ki tōna māramatanga—nā te mea i kōrero ahau ki a ia me te mea nei he tangata e kōrero ana; nā te mea i kite atu ahau i te āhua o tētahi tangata ia; hei aha koa, i mōhio ahau ko te Wairua o te Atua ia; ā, ka kōrero mai ia ki ahau anō nei he tangata e kōrero ana ki te tangata.

12     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai ia ki ahau: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau kia kite ai i a ia, ā, kāore au i kite i a ia; nā te mea kua wehe atu ia i mua i tōku aroaro.

13     Ā, i pahawa ake, i titiro, ā, ka kite i te pā nui whakaharahara o Hiruharama, ā, me ētahi atu pā anō hoki. Ā, ka kite ahau i te pā o Nahareta; ā, kei roto i te pā o Nahareta i kite ai au i tētahi puhi, ā, he ātaahua rawa atu, he kiritea rawa atu ia.

14     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite au i ngā rangi e tūwhera ana; ā, ka heke iho mai tētahi anahera, ā, ka tū i mua i ahau; ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: E Nīwhai, he aha tāu e kite nei?

15     Ā, Ka kī atu ahau ki a ia: He puhi, he ātaahua rawa ake, ā, he kiritea rawa ake i ērā atu puhi katoa.

16     Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: E mōhio ana rānei koe i te tapatuhanga a te Atua?

17     Ā, ka kī atu au ki a ia: E mōhio ana ahau kei te aroha ia i āna tamariki; hei aha koa, kāore au e mōhio ana te tikanga o ngā mea katoa.

18     Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Nana, ko te puhi e kite nā koe ko ia te whaea o te Tama a te Atua, i runga i te ritenga o te kikokiko.

19     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i a ia e kahakina atu ana i roto i te Wairua; ā, i muri iho i tōna kahakitanga atu i roto i te Wairua mō tētahi wā ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Titiro!

20     Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite anō i te puhi, e okooko ana i tētahi tamaiti i ōna ringaringa.

21     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Tirohia te Reme a te Atua, āe rā, ko te Tama pū anō a te Matua Ora Tonu! E mōhio ana rānei koe te tikanga o te rākau i kite ai tō matua?

22     Ā, ka whakautu au i a ia, e mea ana: Āe rā, ko te aroha o te Atua, e riringi whānui atu ai i a ia anō ki roto ki ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata; nā reira, he mea e hiahia nuitia ana i runga i ngā mea katoa.

And I said unto him: To know the interpretation thereof—for I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; yet nevertheless, I knew that it was the Spirit of the Lord; and he spake unto me as a man speaketh with another.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look! And I looked as if to look upon him, and I saw him not; for he had gone from before my presence.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities. And I beheld the city of Nazareth; and in the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, and she was exceedingly fair and white.

And it came to pass that I saw the heavens open; and an angel came down and stood before me; and he said unto me: Nephi, what beholdest thou?

And I said unto him: A virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins.

And he said unto me: Knowest thou the condescension of God?

And I said unto him: I know that he loveth his children; nevertheless, I do not know the meaning of all things.

And he said unto me: Behold, the virgin whom thou seest is the mother of the Son of God, after the manner of the flesh.

And it came to pass that I beheld that she was carried away in the Spirit; and after she had been carried away in the Spirit for the space of a time the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the Lamb of God, yea, even the Son of the Eternal Father! Knowest thou the meaning of the tree which thy father saw?

And I answered him, saying: Yea, it is the love of God, which sheddeth itself abroad in the hearts of the children of men; wherefore, it is the most desirable above all things.

23     Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau, e mea ana: Āe rā, he whakakoa rawa atu anō hoki ki te wairua.

24     Ā, i muri iho i tana kīanga i ēnei kupu, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite au i te Tama a te Atua e haere whakamua ana ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata; ka kite anō ahau i te tokomaha e tāpapa iho ana ki ōna waewae, ā, koropiko ana ki a ia.

25     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i te tokotoko rino, i kite ai tōku matua, ko te kupu ia a te Atua, e ārahina atu ana ki te mātāpuna o ngā wai ora, ki te rākau rānei o te ora; ko aua wai rā he tohu mō te aroha o te Atua; ka kite anō ahau ko te rākau o te ora he tohu mō te aroha o te Atua.

26     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Titiro, tirohia te tapatuhanga a te Atua!

27     Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i te Kaihoko o te Ao, ko ia nei i kōrerotia ai e tōku matua; ā, ka kite anō ahau i te poropiti māna nei te huarahi e whakarite i mua i a ia. Ā, ka haere whakamua te Reme a te Atua, ā, ka rumakina e ia; ā, i muri iho i tana rumakitanga, ka kite au i te tūwheratanga o ngā rangi, ā, ka heke iho mai te Wairua Tapu mai i te rangi, ā, ka tau iho ki runga i a ia i te āhuatanga o te kererū.

28     Ā, ka kite ahau, nā, ka haere whakamua ia e minita ana ki te iwi, i runga i te kaha me te korōria nui; ā, ka huihuia ngā mano ki te whakarongo ki a ia; ā, ka kite ahau, nā, ka panaia atu ia e rātou i waenganui i a rātou.

29     Ā, ka kite anō ahau i ētahi atu tekau mā rua e aru ana i a ia. Ā, i pahawa ake, i kahakina atu rātou i roto i te Wairua Tapu mai i te aroaro o tōku kanohi, ā, tē kitea rātou e ahau.

30     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai anō te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Titiro! Ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite ahau i ngā rangi e tūwhera ana anō, ā, ka kite ahau i ngā anahera e heke iho ana ki runga i ngā tamariki a te tangata; ā, ka minita rātou ki a rātou.

And he spake unto me, saying: Yea, and the most joyous to the soul.

And after he had said these words, he said unto me: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Son of God going forth among the children of men; and I saw many fall down at his feet and worship him.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the rod of iron, which my father had seen, was the word of God, which led to the fountain of living waters, or to the tree of life; which waters are a representation of the love of God; and I also beheld that the tree of life was a representation of the love of God.

And the angel said unto me again: Look and behold the condescension of God!

And I looked and beheld the Redeemer of the world, of whom my father had spoken; and I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him. And the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him; and after he was baptized, I beheld the heavens open, and the Holy Ghost come down out of heaven and abide upon him in the form of a dove.

And I beheld that he went forth ministering unto the people, in power and great glory; and the multitudes were gathered together to hear him; and I beheld that they cast him out from among them.

And I also beheld twelve others following him. And it came to pass that they were carried away in the Spirit from before my face, and I saw them not.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the heavens open again, and I saw angels descending upon the children of men; and they did minister unto them.

- 31     Ā, ka kī mai anō ia ki ahau, e mea ana: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite ahau i te Reme a te Atua e haere whakamua ana ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata. Ā, ka kite ahau i ngā mano tāngata e māuiui ana, e mamae ana i ngā tūmomo mate katoa, ā, i ngā rēwera me ngā wairua poke; ā, ka kī mai te anahera me te whakaatu mai i ēnei mea katoa ki ahau. Ā, ka whakaorangia rātou e te mana o te Reme a te Atua; ka peia atu anō hoki ngā rēwera me ngā wairua poke.
- 32     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai anō te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite ahau i te Reme a te Atua, nā, kua kawea ia e te iwi; āe rā, te Tama a te Atua ora tonu kua whakawākia e te ao; ā, i kite ai ahau, e whakaaturia ana anō hoki.
- 33     Ā, ko au, ko Nīwhai, i kite i a ia e whakairia ana ki runga ki te rīpeka, ā, ka whakamatea mō ngā hara o te ao.
- 34     Ā, i muri iho i tana whakamatenga ka kite ahau i ngā mano o te ao, nā, kua huihuia tahitia kia whawhai atu ki ngā āpotoro a te Reme; nā te mea koirā te tekau mā rua i karangahia ai e te anahera o te Ariki.
- 35     Ā, kua oti ngā mano tini o te ao te huihui tahi; ā, ka kite ahau, nā, kei roto rātou i tētahi whare nui whakaharahara, e rite ana ki te whare e kite ai tōku matua. Ā, ka kī mai anō te anahera a te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana: Tirohia te ao me tō reira mātauranga; āe rā, tirohia te whare o Ihairaira kua huihuia tahitia kia whawhai ai ki ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme.
- 36     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kite ahau, ā, e whakaaturia ana anō hoki, ko te whare nui whakaharahara ko te whakapehapeha o te ao; ā, i hinga ia, he nunui rawa atu nei tōna hinganga. Ā, ka kī mai anō te anahera a te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana: Koirā te whakangaromanga o ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā tāngata, e whawhai ai ki ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme.

And he spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked, and I beheld the Lamb of God going forth among the children of men. And I beheld multitudes of people who were sick, and who were afflicted with all manner of diseases, and with devils and unclean spirits; and the angel spake and showed all these things unto me. And they were healed by the power of the Lamb of God; and the devils and the unclean spirits were cast out.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me again, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld the Lamb of God, that he was taken by the people; yea, the Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world; and I saw and bear record.

And I, Nephi, saw that he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

And after he was slain I saw the multitudes of the earth, that they were gathered together to fight against the apostles of the Lamb; for thus were the twelve called by the angel of the Lord.

And the multitude of the earth was gathered together; and I beheld that they were in a large and spacious building, like unto the building which my father saw. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Behold the world and the wisdom thereof; yea, behold the house of Israel hath gathered together to fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And it came to pass that I saw and bear record, that the great and spacious building was the pride of the world; and it fell, and the fall thereof was exceedingly great. And the angel of the Lord spake unto me again, saying: Thus shall be the destruction of all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, that shall fight against the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

## 1 Nīwhai 12

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Titiro, ā, tirohia ō uri, me ngā uri o ō tuākana. Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i te whenua whakaari; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā mano tini tāngata, āe rā, me te mea nei ko ngā onepū rā anō o te moana tōna tokomaha.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ngā mano tini e huihui ana ki te whawhai, tētahi ki tētahi; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā pakanga, me ngā pūrongo pakanga, me ngā parekura nunui ki te hoari i waenganui i tōku iwi.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ngā whakatipuranga maha e pahure atu ana, i runga i ngā ritenga o te pakanga me ngā tautohetohe i runga i te whenua; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā pā maha, āe rā, koia kihai nei i taturia e ahau.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i tētahi kohu pōuri i runga i te mata o te whenua whakaari; ā, i kite ahau i ngā uira, ā, ka rongo ahau i ngā whaitiri, me ngā rū, me ngā tūmomo turituri kikino; ā, ka kite ahau i te whenua me ngā toka, kua wāwāhia, ā, ka kite ahau i ngā maunga e tanuku iho ana kia kongakonga noa; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā mānia o te whenua, kua pākarukaru; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā pā maha kua toremi iho; ā, ka kite ahau he mea maha kua tahuna ki te ahi; ā, ka kite ahau he maha kua tanuku iho ki te whenua, nā ngā ngāueuetanga o reira.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i taku kitenga i ēnei mea, ka kite ahau i te kapua pōuri, nā, ka mimiti atu mai i te mata o te whenua; ā nana, ka kite ahau i ngā mano tini kihai i hinga nā ngā whakawākanga nui whakamataku a te Ariki.
- 6 Ā, ka kite ahau i ngā rangi e tūwhera ana, me te Reme a te Atua e heke iho ana mai i te rangi; ā, ka heke iho mai ia, ā, ka whakaatu atu ia i a ia anō ki a rātou.
- 7 Ā, ka kite anō ahau, ā, e whakaaturia ana anō hoki, nā, i tau iho te Wairua Tapu ki runga i ētahi atu tekau mā rua; ā, kua whakamanahia rātou e te Atua, ā, kua whiriwhiria.
- 8 Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Tirohia ngā ākonga a te Reme, kua whiriwhiria nei kia minita atu ki ō uri.

## 1 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Look, and behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren. And I looked and beheld the land of promise; and I beheld multitudes of people, yea, even as it were in number as many as the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass that I beheld multitudes gathered together to battle, one against the other; and I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.

And it came to pass that I beheld many generations pass away, after the manner of wars and contentions in the land; and I beheld many cities, yea, even that I did not number them.

And it came to pass that I saw a mist of darkness on the face of the land of promise; and I saw lightnings, and I heard thunderings, and earthquakes, and all manner of tumultuous noises; and I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up; and I saw many cities that they were sunk; and I saw many that they were burned with fire; and I saw many that did tumble to the earth, because of the quaking thereof.

And it came to pass after I saw these things, I saw the vapor of darkness, that it passed from off the face of the earth; and behold, I saw multitudes who had not fallen because of the great and terrible judgments of the Lord.

And I saw the heavens open, and the Lamb of God descending out of heaven; and he came down and showed himself unto them.

And I also saw and bear record that the Holy Ghost fell upon twelve others; and they were ordained of God, and chosen.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the twelve disciples of the Lamb, who are chosen to minister unto thy seed.

- 9     Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: E mahara ana rānei koe ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme? Nana ko rātou te hunga ka whakawā i ngā iwi tekau mā rua o Iharaira; nā reira, ko ngā minita tekau mā rua o ō uri ka whakawākia e rātou; nā te mea nō te whare o Iharaira koutou.
- 10    Ā, ko ēnei tekau mā rua e kite nei koe ka whakawā i ō uri. Ā, nana, he tika anō rātou āke ake ake; nā te mea nā tō rātou whakapono i te Reme a te Atua kua whakamākia ō rātou kākahu mā roto i ōna toto.
- 11    Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i ngā whakatipuranga e toru e pahure atu ana i te tika; ā, kua mā ō rātou kākahu kia rite pū ki te Reme a te Atua. Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Kua whakamākia ēnei mā roto i te toto o te Reme a te Atua, nā tō rātou whakapono i a ia.
- 12    Ā ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka kite anō he tokomaha nō te whakatipuranga tuawhā i pahure atu ai i te tika.
- 13    Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ngā mano tini o te ao kua huihuia tahitia.
- 14    Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Tirohia ō uri, me ngā uri o ō tuākana.
- 15    Ā, i pahawa ake, i titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i te iwi o ōku uri e huihuia tahitia ana i ngā mano tini e tū atu ana ki ngā uri o ōku tuākana; ā, kua huihuia tahitia rātou ki te whawhai.
- 16    Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Tirohia te mātāpuna o ngā wai poke kua kitea e tō matua; āe rā, ko te awa pū anō i kōrero ai ia; ā, ko ngā hōhonutanga o reira ko ngā hōhonutanga o te ao rēwera.
- 17    Ā, ko te kohu pōuri ko ngā whakawainga a te rēwera, nāna i whakakāpō ngā karu, me te whakapakeke i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata, me te ārahi atu i a rātou ki roto ki ngā huarahi whārahi, kia mate ai rātou, ā, ka ngaro.
- 18    Ā, ko te whare nui whakaharahara, i kite ai tōku matua, ko ngā whakaaro horihori me te whakapehapa o ngā tamariki a te tangata. Ā, he tawhā nui whakaharahara e wehe ai i a rātou; āe rā, ko te kupu pū anō o te manatika a te Atua Ora Tonu, me te Mīhaia koia te Reme a te Atua, ko ia anō i whakaaturia e te Wairua Tapu, mai i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao ā mohoa noa nei, ā, nō nāianei ā muri ake nei, ā, āke tonu atu.

And he said unto me: Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? Behold they are they who shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel; wherefore, the twelve ministers of thy seed shall be judged of them; for ye are of the house of Israel.

And these twelve ministers whom thou beholdest shall judge thy seed. And, behold, they are righteous forever; for because of their faith in the Lamb of God their garments are made white in his blood.

And the angel said unto me: Look! And I looked, and beheld three generations pass away in righteousness; and their garments were white even like unto the Lamb of God. And the angel said unto me: These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him.

And I, Nephi, also saw many of the fourth generation who passed away in righteousness.

And it came to pass that I saw the multitudes of the earth gathered together.

And the angel said unto me: Behold thy seed, and also the seed of thy brethren.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the people of my seed gathered together in multitudes against the seed of my brethren; and they were gathered together to battle.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the fountain of filthy water which thy father saw; yea, even the river of which he spake; and the depths thereof are the depths of hell.

And the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, that they perish and are lost.

And the large and spacious building, which thy father saw, is vain imaginations and the pride of the children of men. And a great and a terrible gulf divideth them; yea, even the word of the justice of the Eternal God, and the Messiah who is the Lamb of God, of whom the Holy Ghost beareth record, from the beginning of the world until this time, and from this time henceforth and forever.



- 19     Ā, i te anahera e kōrero ana i ēnei kupu, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i ngā uri o ōku tuākana e whawhai ana ki ōku uri, e ai ki te kupu a te anahera; ā, nā te whakapehapeha o ōku uri, me ngā whakawainga a te rēwera, i kite ahau i taea e ngā uri o ōku tuākana ngā tangata o ōku uri.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake, i titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i ngā tangata o ngā uri o ōku tuākana kua taea e rātou ōku uri; ā, i haere whakamua atu i ngā mano tini i runga i te mata o te whenua.
- 21     Ā, ka kite ahau i a rātou kua huihuia tahitia i roto i ngā mano tini; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā pakanga me ngā tūrongo pakanga i waenganui i a rātou; ā, i roto i ngā pakanga me ngā tūrongo pakanga i kite ahau i ngā whakatipuranga maha i mate ai.
- 22     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Nana ka memeha haere ēnei i te whakapono kore.
- 23     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau, i muri iho i tā rātou memeha haeretanga i te whakapono kore ka meinga rātou he uriuri, he weriweri, he iwi poke anō hoki, e kiki ana i te māngere me ngā tūmomo whakarihariha katoa.

And while the angel spake these words, I beheld and saw that the seed of my brethren did contend against my seed, according to the word of the angel; and because of the pride of my seed, and the temptations of the devil, I beheld that the seed of my brethren did overpower the people of my seed.

And it came to pass that I beheld, and saw the people of the seed of my brethren that they had overcome my seed; and they went forth in multitudes upon the face of the land.

And I saw them gathered together in multitudes; and I saw wars and rumors of wars among them; and in wars and rumors of wars I saw many generations pass away.

And the angel said unto me: Behold these shall dwindle in unbelief.

And it came to pass that I beheld, after they had dwindled in unbelief they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations.

## 1 Nīwhai 13

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Titiro! Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i ngā iwi maha me ngā kīngitanga.
- 2 Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: He aha tāu e kite nei? Ā, ka kī atu ahau: Kei te kite ahau i ngā iwi maha me ngā kīngitanga.
- 3 Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Koinei ngā iwi me ngā kīngitanga o ngā Tauīwi.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i waenganui i ngā iwi o ngā Tauīwi ko te whakatūnga o tētahi hāhi nui.
- 5 Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Tirohia te whakapūmautanga o tētahi hāhi e tino whakarihariha ake ana i ērā atu hāhi katoa, koia e whakamate ana i te hunga tapu o te Atua, āe rā, e whakamamae ana i a rātou me te herehere iho i a rātou, ā, ka whakaiokangia ki te ioka rino, ā, ka whakarau iho i a rātou ki roto i te hereherenga.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i tēnei hāhi nui mōrikarika; ā, ka kite ahau i te rēwera ko ia tōna kaihanga.
- 7 Ā, ka kite anō ahau i te kōura, me te hiriwā, me ngā hiraka, me ngā kahu whero, me ngā rīnena miro pai, me ngā tūmomo kākahu utu nui katoa; ā, ka kite ahau i ngā wahine pūremu tokomaha.
- 8 Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Tirohia te kōura, me te hiriwā, me ngā hiraka, me ngā kahu whero, me ngā rīnena miro pai, me ngā kākahu utu nui, me ngā wahine pūremu, koia ngā hiahia o tēnei hāhi nui mōrikarika.
- 9 Ā, ka whakangaromia te hunga tapu o te Atua mō ngā whakamoemiti o te ao, ā, ka whakarau iho i a rātou ki roto i te hereherenga.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, i titiro ahau, ā, ka kite atu i ngā wai maha; ā, ka wehewehea e aua wai ngā Tauīwi i ngā uri o ōku tuākana.
- 11 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Tirohia te riri o te Atua i runga i ngā uri o ō tuākana.

## 1 Nephi 13

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look! And I looked and beheld many nations and kingdoms.

And the angel said unto me: What beholdest thou? And I said: I behold many nations and kingdoms.

And he said unto me: These are the nations and kingdoms of the Gentiles.

And it came to pass that I saw among the nations of the Gentiles the formation of a great church.

And the angel said unto me: Behold the formation of a church which is most abominable above all other churches, which slayeth the saints of God, yea, and tortureth them and bindeth them down, and yoketh them with a yoke of iron, and bringeth them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I beheld this great and abominable church; and I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

And I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing; and I saw many harlots.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold the gold, and the silver, and the silks, and the scarlets, and the fine-twined linen, and the precious clothing, and the harlots, are the desires of this great and abominable church.

And also for the praise of the world do they destroy the saints of God, and bring them down into captivity.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld many waters; and they divided the Gentiles from the seed of my brethren.

And it came to pass that the angel said unto me: Behold the wrath of God is upon the seed of thy brethren.

- 12     Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i tētahi tangata i waenganui i ngā Tauwiwi, ko ia kua māwehehia mai i ngā uri o ōku tuākana e ngā wai maha; ā, ka kite ahau i te Wairua o te Atua, nā, i heke iho mai ia, ā, ka pā iho ki runga i te tangata; ā, ka haere whakamua atu ia ki runga i ngā wai maha, tae atu anō ki ngā uri o ōku tuākana, e noho ana i te whenua whakaari.
- 13     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i te Wairua a te Atua, nā, ka pā iho ki runga i ētahi atu Tauwiwi; ā, ka haere whakamua rātou i waho atu i te hereherenga, ki runga i ngā wai maha.
- 14     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ngā Tauwiwi mano tini i runga i te whenua whakaari; ā, ka kite ahau i te riri o te Atua, nā, kei runga ia i ngā uri o ōku tuākana; ā, ka whakamararatia atu i mua i ngā tauwiwi, ā, ka patua.
- 15     Ā, ka kite ahau i te Wairua o te Atua, nā, kei runga ia i ngā Tauwiwi, ā, ka whaioranga rātou me te whiwhi i te whenua hei whenua tuku iho mō rātou; ā, ka kite ahau he kiritea, he pūrotu rawa atu, he ātaahua anō hoki, he rite ki tōku iwi i mua i tō rātou whakamatenga.
- 16     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kite atu i ngā Tauwiwi kua haere whakamua atu i waho i te hereherenga ka whakaiti rātou i a rātou anō i te aroaro o te Ariki; i a rātou anō te mana o te Ariki.
- 17     Ā, ka kite ahau kua huihuia tahitia ō rātou whaea Tauwiwi i runga i ngā wai, i runga hoki i te whenua, kia whawhai atu ai ki a rātou.
- 18     Ā, ka kite ahau, nā, i a rātou te mana o te Atua, ā, ko te riri o te Atua i runga i te hunga katoa kua huihuia tahitia ki te whawhai atu ki a rātou.
- 19     Ā ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka kite i ngā Tauwiwi kua haere whakamua atu i waho i te hereherenga he mea whakarauora nā te mana o te Atua i ngā ringaringa o ērā atu iwi katoa.
- 20     Ā, ka pahawa noa atu nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kite i tō rātou whaioranga i te whenua; ā, ka kite ahau i tētahi pukapuka, ā, kua kawea whakamuatia atu ki waenganui i a rātou.
- 21     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: E mōhio ana rānei koe te tikanga o te pukapuka?
- 22     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a ia: Kāore ahau i te mōhio.

And I looked and beheld a man among the Gentiles, who was separated from the seed of my brethren by the many waters; and I beheld the Spirit of God, that it came down and wrought upon the man; and he went forth upon the many waters, even unto the seed of my brethren, who were in the promised land.

And it came to pass that I beheld the Spirit of God, that it wrought upon other Gentiles; and they went forth out of captivity, upon the many waters.

And it came to pass that I beheld many multitudes of the Gentiles upon the land of promise; and I beheld the wrath of God, that it was upon the seed of my brethren; and they were scattered before the Gentiles and were smitten.

And I beheld the Spirit of the Lord, that it was upon the Gentiles, and they did prosper and obtain the land for their inheritance; and I beheld that they were white, and exceedingly fair and beautiful, like unto my people before they were slain.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles who had gone forth out of captivity did humble themselves before the Lord; and the power of the Lord was with them.

And I beheld that their mother Gentiles were gathered together upon the waters, and upon the land also, to battle against them.

And I beheld that the power of God was with them, and also that the wrath of God was upon all those that were gathered together against them to battle.

And I, Nephi, beheld that the Gentiles that had gone out of captivity were delivered by the power of God out of the hands of all other nations.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld that they did prosper in the land; and I beheld a book, and it was carried forth among them.

And the angel said unto me: Knowest thou the meaning of the book?

And I said unto him: I know not.

23     Ā, ka kī mai ia: Tirohia e puta mai ana ia i te māngai o tētahi Hūrai. Ā ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka tirohia ia; ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Ko te pukapuka e tirohia nei e koe tētahi tuhinga mō ngā Hūrai, kua mau nei ngā kawenata a te Ariki, kua meatia e ia ki te whare o Iharaira; e mau ana anō hoki ngā poropititanga maha a ngā poropiti tapu; ā, he tuhinga ia e rite ana ki ngā whaowhaonga kei runga i ngā papa parāhe, heoi kāore e pērā rawa ana te maha; hei aha koa, kua mau i a ia ngā kawenata a te Ariki, kua meatia e ia ki te whare o Iharaira; nā reira, he nui tōna painga ki ngā Tauwiwi.

24     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera a te Ariki ki ahau: Kua kite nei koe i puta mai ai te pukapuka i te māngai o tētahi Hūrai; ā, i tōna putanga mai i te māngai o tētahi Hūrai i a ia te rāneatanga o te rongopai o te Ariki, koia tēnei e whakaaturia nei e ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua; ā, ka whakaaturia e rātou e ai ki te pono i roto nei i te Reme a te Atua.

25     Nā reira, ka puta whakamuatia atu ēnei mea mai i ngā Hūrai i runga i te tika ki ngā Tauwiwi, e ai ki te pono i roto nei i te Atua.

26     Ā, i muri i tō rātou putanga whakamuatanga atu nā te ringaringa o ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme, mai i ngā Hūrai ki ngā Tauwiwi, ka kite koe i te hanganga o te hāhi nui mōrikarika, he mea mōrikarika rawa ake i ērā atu hāhi katoa; nana rā, kua tangohia atu e rātou mai i te rongopai a te Reme ngā wāhanga mārāma utu nui maha; me ngā kawenata maha anō hoki a te Ariki kua tangohia atu e rātou.

27     Ā, koinei katoa kua mahia e rātou e rāweke kino nei pea rātou i ngā mahinga a te Ariki, nā, me kore pea e whakakāpō i ngā karu me te whakapakeke i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata.

28     Nā reira, ka kite nei koe i muri iho i te putanga whakamuatanga atu i te pukapuka i ngā ringaringa o te hāhi nui mōrikarika, he maha ngā mea mārāma utu nui kua tangohia atu mai i te pukapuka, koia te pukapuka a te Reme a te Atua.

And he said: Behold it proceedeth out of the mouth of a Jew. And I, Nephi, beheld it; and he said unto me: The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; and it also containeth many of the prophecies of the holy prophets; and it is a record like unto the engravings which are upon the plates of brass, save there are not so many; nevertheless, they contain the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; wherefore, they are of great worth unto the Gentiles.

And the angel of the Lord said unto me: Thou hast beheld that the book proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew; and when it proceeded forth from the mouth of a Jew it contained the fulness of the gospel of the Lord, of whom the twelve apostles bear record; and they bear record according to the truth which is in the Lamb of God.

Wherefore, these things go forth from the Jews in purity unto the Gentiles, according to the truth which is in God.

And after they go forth by the hand of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, from the Jews unto the Gentiles, thou seest the formation of that great and abominable church, which is most abominable above all other churches; for behold, they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious; and also many covenants of the Lord have they taken away.

And all this have they done that they might pervert the right ways of the Lord, that they might blind the eyes and harden the hearts of the children of men.

Wherefore, thou seest that after the book hath gone forth through the hands of the great and abominable church, that there are many plain and precious things taken away from the book, which is the book of the Lamb of God.

29     Ā, i muri iho i te tangohanga atu i ēnei mea mārama utu nui ka puta whakamuahia atu ki ngā iwi katoa o ngā Tauīwi; ā, i muri iho i tana putanga whakamuatanga atu ki ngā iwi katoa o ngā Tauīwi, āe rā, ka whakawhiti pū anō i ngā wai maha kua kite nei koe i ngā Tauīwi kua haere whakamua atu i waho i te hereherenga, e kite nei koe—nā ngā mea mārama utu nui maha kua tangohia atu i te pukapuka, kua mārama ki tō ngā tamariki a te tangata māramatanga, e ai ki te māramatanga i roto nei i te Reme a te Atua—nā ēnei mea kua tangohia atu i te rongopai a te Reme, he tokomaha rawa atu nei e tūtuki ana, āe rā, nā konā ka whaikaha nui nei a Hātana i runga i a rātou.

30     Hei aha koa, ka kite nei koe ko ngā Tauīwi kua haere whakamua atu i waho i te hereherenga, ā, kua hāpaingia ake e te mana o te Atua i runga ake i ērā atu iwi katoa, i runga i te mata o te whenua he whenua ia kua whiriwhiria i runga ake i ērā atu whenua, koia te whenua kua kawenatatia e te Ariki te Atua me tō matua hei whenua tuku iho mō ōna uri; nā reira, ka kite koe e kore te Ariki te Atua e tuku kia whakangaromia katoatia e ngā Tauīwi te hanumitanga o ō uri, i waenganui nei i ō tuākana.

31     E kore rānei ia e tuku kia whakangaromia e ngā Tauīwi ngā uri o ō tuākana.

32     E kore rānei te Ariki te Atua e tuku kia noho āke tonu ai ngā Tauīwi i taua āhuetanga weriwere o te kāpōtanga, e kite nei koe e pērā ana rātou, nā ngā wāhanga mārama utu nui rawa atu o te rongopai a te Reme kua kaiponuhia e taua hāhi mōrikarika, ko tōna hanganga kua kite nei koe.

33     Nā reira e ai tā te Reme a te Atua: Ka whakaaroha atu ahau ki ngā Tauīwi, tae atu ana ki te karawhiunga i ngā mōrehu o te whare o Ihairaira i te whakawākanga nui.

And after these plain and precious things were taken away it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles; and after it goeth forth unto all the nations of the Gentiles, yea, even across the many waters which thou hast seen with the Gentiles which have gone forth out of captivity, thou seest—because of the many plain and precious things which have been taken out of the book, which were plain unto the understanding of the children of men, according to the plainness which is in the Lamb of God—because of these things which are taken away out of the gospel of the Lamb, an exceedingly great many do stumble, yea, insomuch that Satan hath great power over them.

Nevertheless, thou beholdest that the Gentiles who have gone forth out of captivity, and have been lifted up by the power of God above all other nations, upon the face of the land which is choice above all other lands, which is the land that the Lord God hath covenanted with thy father that his seed should have for the land of their inheritance; wherefore, thou seest that the Lord God will not suffer that the Gentiles will utterly destroy the mixture of thy seed, which are among thy brethren.

Neither will he suffer that the Gentiles shall destroy the seed of thy brethren.

Neither will the Lord God suffer that the Gentiles shall forever remain in that awful state of blindness, which thou beholdest they are in, because of the plain and most precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, whose formation thou hast seen.

Wherefore saith the Lamb of God: I will be merciful unto the Gentiles, unto the visiting of the remnant of the house of Israel in great judgment.

34     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera a te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana: Nana, e ai tā te Reme a te Atua, hei muri iho i taku karawhiunga i ngā mōrehu o te whare o Iharaira—ko ēnei mōrehu e kōrero nei ahau ko ngā uri o tō matua—nā reira, hei muri iho i taku karawhiunga i a rātou i te whakawākanga, ā, ka patua rātou e te ringaringa o ngā Tauīwi, ā, hei muri iho i te tirikohutanga nui a ngā Tauīwi, nā ngā mea tino mārama utu nui o te rongopai a te Reme kua kaiponuhia e taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, koia te whaea o ngā kaikairau katoa, e ai tā te Reme—Ka aroha au ki ngā Tauīwi hei taua rā, nā konā rā ka kawea atu ki a rātou, i tōku ake mana, te nuinga o tōku rongopai, koia he mārama utu nui, e ai tā te Reme.

35     Nana rā, e ai tā te Reme: Māku ahau e whakakite atu ki ō uri, nā, ka tuhituhi rātou i ngā mea maha e minita ai ahau ki a rātou, koia he mea mārama utu nui; ā, hei muri atu i te whakangaromanga o ō uri, me te memeha haeretanga i te whakapono kore, me ngā uri anō o ō tuākana, nana, ka hunai ake ēnei mea, kia puta mai ai ki ngā Tauīwi, mā te takohatanga me te mana o te Reme.

36     Ā, i roto i ēnei ka tuhia taku rongopai, e ai tā te Reme, me tōku toka me tōku whakaoranga.

37     Ā, ka manaakitia rātou e ngana ai ki te whakaputa whakamua mai tōku Hiona hei taua rā, ā, i a rātou te takohatanga me te mana o te Wairua Tapu; ā, ki te ū tonu rātou tae atu ki te mutunga ka whakateiteingia ake rātou hei te rā whakamutunga, ā, ka whakaorangia i roto i te kīngitanga mutunga kore a te Reme; ā, ko ia e kauhau i te rongomau, āe rā, i ngā rongo whakahari nui, anō tō rātou ātaahua i runga i ngā maunga.

38     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ngā mōrehu o ngā uri o ōku tuākana, me te pukapuka anō hoki a te Reme a te Atua, koia kua puta whakamua mai i te māngai o tētahi Hūrai, nā, i puta whakamua mai i ngā Tauīwi ki ngā mōrehu o ngā uri o ōku tuākana.

And it came to pass that the angel of the Lord spake unto me, saying: Behold, saith the Lamb of God, after I have visited the remnant of the house of Israel—and this remnant of whom I speak is the seed of thy father—wherefore, after I have visited them in judgment, and smitten them by the hand of the Gentiles, and after the Gentiles do stumble exceedingly, because of the most plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb which have been kept back by that abominable church, which is the mother of harlots, saith the Lamb—I will be merciful unto the Gentiles in that day, insomuch that I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious, saith the Lamb.

For, behold, saith the Lamb: I will manifest myself unto thy seed, that they shall write many things which I shall minister unto them, which shall be plain and precious; and after thy seed shall be destroyed, and dwindle in unbelief, and also the seed of thy brethren, behold, these things shall be hid up, to come forth unto the Gentiles, by the gift and power of the Lamb.

And in them shall be written my gospel, saith the Lamb, and my rock and my salvation.

And blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day, for they shall have the gift and the power of the Holy Ghost; and if they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, and shall be saved in the everlasting kingdom of the Lamb; and whoso shall publish peace, yea, tidings of great joy, how beautiful upon the mountains shall they be.

And it came to pass that I beheld the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the book of the Lamb of God, which had proceeded forth from the mouth of the Jew, that it came forth from the Gentiles unto the remnant of the seed of my brethren.

39     Ā, i muri iho i tana putanga whakamuatanga ki a rātou ka kite ahau i ētahi atu pukapuka, koia i puta whakamua ai nā te mana o te Reme, mai i ngā Tauīwi ki a rātou, tae atu ana ki te whakapakepaketanga o ngā Tauīwi me ngā mōrehu o ngā uri o ōku tuākana, ā, ko ngā Hūrai anō hoki kua whakamararatia atu ki runga katoa i te mata o te ao, nā, ko ngā tuhinga a ngā poropiti me ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme, āna, he pono.

40     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Koinei tuhinga whakamutunga, kua kite nei koe i waenganui i ngā Tauīwi, ka whakapūmau i te pono o te tuatahi, koia nā ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme, ā, ka whakamōhiohia atu ngā mea mārāma utu nui kua tangohia atu i a rātou; ā, ka whakamōhiohia atu ki ngā iwi katoa, ngā reo, ngā tāngata, nā, ko te Reme a te Atua ko ia te Tama a te Atua Ora Tonu, me te Kaiwhakaora o te ao; nā, me haere mai ngā tāngata katoa ki a ia, tē taea rānei rātou te whakaora.

41     Ā, me haere mai rātou e ai ki ngā kupu e whakapūmautia ai e te māngai o te Reme; ā, ka whakamōhiohia ngā kupu a te Reme i roto i ngā tuhinga a ō uri, i roto anō i ngā tuhinga a ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme; nā reira ka whakapūmautia ngā mea e rua kia kotahi; nā te mea kotahi te Atua, ā, kotahi te Hēpara i runga i te ao katoa.

42     Ā, kei te haere mai te wā e whakakite ia i a ia anō ki ngā iwi katoa, ki ngā Hūrai tahi me ngā Tauīwi anō hoki; ā, hei muri iho i tana whakakitenga atu i a ia anō ki ngā Hūrai me ngā Tauīwi anō hoki, kātahi ia ka whakakite i a ia anō ki ngā Tauīwi me ngā Hūrai anō hoki, ā, ko muri hei mua, ā, ko mua hei muri.

And after it had come forth unto them I beheld other books, which came forth by the power of the Lamb, from the Gentiles unto them, unto the convincing of the Gentiles and the remnant of the seed of my brethren, and also the Jews who were scattered upon all the face of the earth, that the records of the prophets and of the twelve apostles of the Lamb are true.

And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first, which are of the twelve apostles of the Lamb, and shall make known the plain and precious things which have been taken away from them; and shall make known to all kindreds, tongues, and people, that the Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world; and that all men must come unto him, or they cannot be saved.

And they must come according to the words which shall be established by the mouth of the Lamb; and the words of the Lamb shall be made known in the records of thy seed, as well as in the records of the twelve apostles of the Lamb; wherefore they both shall be established in one; for there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

And the time cometh that he shall manifest himself unto all nations, both unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles; and after he has manifested himself unto the Jews and also unto the Gentiles, then he shall manifest himself unto the Gentiles and also unto the Jews, and the last shall be first, and the first shall be last.

## 1 Nīwhai 14

- 1 Ā, ka pahawa ake, ki te whakarongo ngā Tauīwi ki te Reme a te Atua i taua rā ka whakakite atu ia i a ia anō ki a rātou i roto i te kupu, ā, i roto i te mana anō hoki, i roto i te mahi pū anō, tae atu ana ki te tangohanga atu i ō rātou tūtukitanga waewae—
- 2 Ā, ki te whakapakeke kore rātou i ō rātou ngākau ki te Reme a te Atua, ka tatauria rātou i waenganui i ngā uri o tō matua; āe rā, ka tatauria rātou i waenganui i te whare o Iharaira; ā, ka meinga rātou he iwi manaakitia i runga i te whenua whakaari mō āke tonu atu; kua kore anō e whakaraua iho ki roto i te hereherenga; ā, kua kore anō te whare o Iharaira e whakapōauautia.
- 3 Ā, ko taua rua nui, kua kēria nei mō rātou e taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, kua hangaia e te rēwera rātou ko ana tamariki, me kore pea ia e arataki iho i ngā wairua o te tangata ki te ao rēwera—āe rā, ko taua rua nui kua kēria mō te whakangaromanga o te tangata ka whakakīa ki te hunga nāna ia i kēria, e ai tā te Reme; ehara i te whakangaromanga o te wairua, engari ko te makanga iho i a ia ki roto i taua ao rēwera koia kāore tōna mutunga.
- 4 Nana rā, e ai tēnei ki te hereherenga a te rēwera, ā, e ai anō hoki tā te Atua tika, i runga i te hunga katoa e mahi whakarihariha me ngā mahi mōrikarika i tōna aroaro.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera ki ahau, a Nīwhai, e mea ana: Kua kite nei koe ki te rīpenata ngā Tauīwi ka pai te tukunga ihotanga ki a rātou; ā, e mōhio ana anō koe e pā ana ki ngā kawenata a te Ariki ki te whare o Iharaira; ā, kua rongo anō koe ko ia e rīpenata kore, me mate.
- 6 Nō reira, auē te mate ki ngā Tauīwi mēnā ka ai tā rātou whakapakeke ngākau ki te Reme a te Atua.

## 1 Nephi 14

And it shall come to pass, that if the Gentiles shall hearken unto the Lamb of God in that day that he shall manifest himself unto them in word, and also in power, in very deed, unto the taking away of their stumbling blocks—

And harden not their hearts against the Lamb of God, they shall be numbered among the seed of thy father; yea, they shall be numbered among the house of Israel; and they shall be a blessed people upon the promised land forever; they shall be no more brought down into captivity; and the house of Israel shall no more be confounded.

And that great pit, which hath been digged for them by that great and abominable church, which was founded by the devil and his children, that he might lead away the souls of men down to hell—yea, that great pit which hath been digged for the destruction of men shall be filled by those who digged it, unto their utter destruction, saith the Lamb of God; not the destruction of the soul, save it be the casting of it into that hell which hath no end.

For behold, this is according to the captivity of the devil, and also according to the justice of God, upon all those who will work wickedness and abomination before him.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, Nephi, saying: Thou hast beheld that if the Gentiles repent it shall be well with them; and thou also knowest concerning the covenants of the Lord unto the house of Israel; and thou also hast heard that whoso repenteth not must perish.

Therefore, wo be unto the Gentiles if it so be that they harden their hearts against the Lamb of God.



- 7 Nā te mea kei te haere mai te wā, e ai tā te Reme a te Atua, nā, māku e mahi tētahi mahi nui whakamiharo i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata; he mahi pūmau tonu, kei tēnei ringa, kei tērā atu ringa rānei—ki te whakapakepaketanga i a rātou rānei ki te rongomau me te oranga mutunga kore, ki te tukunga rānei i a rātou ki te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau me te kāpōtanga o ō rātou hinengaro tae atu ana ki tō rātou whakarauhanga iho ki roto i te hereherenga, ā, ki roto i te whakangaromanga anō hoki, ā-tīnana, ā-wairua tahi, e ai ki te hereherenga a te rēwera, mōna kua kōrerotia e ahau.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i oti i te anahera te kōrero ēnei kupu, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: E mahara ana rānei koe i ngā kawenata a te Matua ki te whare o Iharaira? Ka kī atu ahau ki a ia, Āe rā.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai ia ki ahau: Titiro, ā, tirohia taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, koia te whaea o ngā mōrikarika katoa, ko tōna kaihanganga ko te rēwera.
- 10 Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Nana e rua tonu ngā hāhi anake; ko tētahi ko te hāhi a te Reme a te Atua, ko tētahi atu ko te hāhi a te rēwera; nā reira, ko ia ehara nō te hāhi a te Reme a te Atua nō taua hāhi nui, koia te whaea o ngā mōrikarika; ā, ko ia te wahine pūremu o te ao katoa.
- 11 Ā, i pahawa ake, i titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i te wahine pūremu o te ao, ā, ka noho ia ki runga i ngā wai maha; ā, kua whaimana ia ki runga i te ao katoa, i waenganui i ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā tāngata.
- 12 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i te hāhi a te Reme a te Atua, ā, he ruarua noa āna tatauranga, nā ngā whakarihariha me ngā mōrikarika o te wahine pūremu ko ia e noho nei i runga i ngā wai maha; hei aha koa, i kite ahau ko te hāhi a te Reme, ko ia ngā hunga tapu a te Atua, i runga anō hoki rātou i te mata katoa o te ao; ā, ko ō rātou tōminiana i runga i te mata o te ao he itiiti, nā te whakarihariha o te wahine pūremu nui i kite ai ahau.

For the time cometh, saith the Lamb of God, that I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; a work which shall be everlasting, either on the one hand or on the other—either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil, of which I have spoken.

And it came to pass that when the angel had spoken these words, he said unto me: Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel? I said unto him, Yea.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Look, and behold that great and abominable church, which is the mother of abominations, whose founder is the devil.

And he said unto me: Behold there are save two churches only; the one is the church of the Lamb of God, and the other is the church of the devil; wherefore, whoso belongeth not to the church of the Lamb of God belongeth to that great church, which is the mother of abominations; and she is the whore of all the earth.

And it came to pass that I looked and beheld the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters; and she had dominion over all the earth, among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people.

And it came to pass that I beheld the church of the Lamb of God, and its numbers were few, because of the wickedness and abominations of the whore who sat upon many waters; nevertheless, I beheld that the church of the Lamb, who were the saints of God, were also upon all the face of the earth; and their dominions upon the face of the earth were small, because of the wickedness of the great whore whom I saw.

- 13     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau, nā, ka huihuia tahitia e te whaea nui o ngā mōrikarika ngā mano tini i runga i te mata katoa o te ao, i waenganui i ngā iwi o ngā Tauwiwi, kia whawhai ai ki te Reme a te Atua.
- 14     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kite i te mana o te Reme a te Atua, nā, i heke iho ai ki runga i ngā hunga tapu o te hāhi a te Reme, ki runga anō hoki i ngā iwi kawenata a te Ariki, kua whakamararatia nei ki runga i te mata katoa o te ao; ā, kua whakawhītikiria ki te tika me te mana o te Atua i runga i te korōria nui.
- 15     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i te riri o te Atua i riringihia ai ki runga i taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, nā konā i maha ngā pakanga me ngā tūrongo pakanga i waenganui i ngā iwi katoa me ngā hapū o te ao.
- 16     Ā, i te tīmatanga o ngā pakanga me ngā pūrongo pakanga i waenganui i ngā iwi katoa koia nō te whaea o ngā mōrikarika, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Nana, ko te riri o te Atua kei runga i te whaea o ngā kaikairau; ā nana, kei te kite nei koe i ēnei mea katoa—
- 17     Ā, ina haere mai te rā e riringi ai te riri o te Atua ki runga i te whaea o ngā kaikairau, koia te hāhi nui mōrikarika o te ao katoa, ko tōna kaihangā ko te rēwera, hei konā, hei taua rā, ka tīmata ngā mahi a te Matua, hei whakapai i te huarahi mō te whakatutukitanga o ana kawenata, koia kua mahia e ia ki tana iwi ko rātou nei te whare o Iharaira.
- 18     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te anahera ki ahau, e mea ana: Tītiro!
- 19     Ā, ka titiro ahau, ā, ka kite i tētahi tangata, ā, kua kākahuria ki tētahi kahu mā.
- 20     Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau: Tirohia tētahi o ngā āpotoro tekau mā rua a te Reme.
- 21     Nana, ka kite ia me te tuhituhi i te toenga atu o ēnei mea; āe rā, me ngā mea maha anō hoki kua pahawa nei.
- 22     Ā, ka tuhituhi anō ia e pā ana ki te whakamutunga o te ao.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the great mother of abominations did gather together multitudes upon the face of all the earth, among all the nations of the Gentiles, to fight against the Lamb of God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the power of the Lamb of God, that it descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

And it came to pass that I beheld that the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

And as there began to be wars and rumors of wars among all the nations which belonged to the mother of abominations, the angel spake unto me, saying: Behold, the wrath of God is upon the mother of harlots; and behold, thou seest all these things—

And when the day cometh that the wrath of God is poured out upon the mother of harlots, which is the great and abominable church of all the earth, whose founder is the devil, then, at that day, the work of the Father shall commence, in preparing the way for the fulfilling of his covenants, which he hath made to his people who are of the house of Israel.

And it came to pass that the angel spake unto me, saying: Look!

And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe.

And the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

Behold, he shall see and write the remainder of these things; yea, and also many things which have been.

And he shall also write concerning the end of the world.

- 23 Nā reira, ko ngā mea ka tuhia e ia he tika, ā, he pono; ā nana kua tuhia ēnā i roto i te pukapuka i kite ai koe e puta atu ana i te māngai o te Hūrai; ā, i te wā i puta atu ai i te māngai o te Hūrai, i te wā rānei i puta atu ai te pukapuka i te māngai o te Hūrai, he mārama, ā, ko ngā mea kua tuhia he mārama, ā, he nanu kore, ā, he tino utu nui, he ngāwari anō ki tō te māramatanga o te tangata.
- 24 Ā nana, ko ngā mea ka tuhia e tēnei āpotoro a te Reme ko ngā mea kua kitea nei e koe; ko te toenga atu ka kitea e koe.
- 25 Engari ko ngā mea ka kitea e koe ā muri ake nei e kore koe e tuhi; nā te mea kua whakamana te Ariki te Atua i te āpotoro a te Reme a te Atua kia tuhituhi ai ia i ēnā mea.
- 26 Ā, ko ētahi atu anō kua ora, ki a rātou kua whakaatu ia i ngā mea katoa, ā, kua tuhia ēnā; ā, kua hīria ake kia puta whakamua ai i tō ēnā nanu koretanga, e ai ki te pono i roto nei i te Reme, i te wā e tika ana e ai ki tā te Ariki, ki te whare o Iharaira.
- 27 Ā ko au, ko Nīwhai, i rongo, ā, ka whakaaturia nei, ko te ingoa o te āpotoro a te Reme ko Hōani, e ai ki te kupu a te anahera.
- 28 Ā nana, ko au, ko Nīwhai, kua whakahaua kia kaua au e tuhi i te toenga o ngā mea i kitea ai, ā, i rangona ai; nā reira, kāti anō māku ngā mea kua tuhia nei e ahau; ā, kua tuhi ahau i tētahi wāhanga iti noa mō ngā mea i kite ai ahau.
- 29 Ā, e whakaaturia ana e ahau i kite ahau i ngā mea i kite ai tōku matua, ā, nā te anahera pū anō a te Ariki i whakamōhio mai i ēnā ki ahau.
- 30 Ā, hei konei whakamutu ai ahau aku kōrero e pā ana ki ngā mea i kite ai au i ahau e kahakina atu ana i te Wairua; ā, ahakoa kāore i tuhia katoatia ngā mea i kite ai au, he pono ngā mea kua tuhia nei e ahau. Ā, koia anō tēnei. Āmine.

Wherefore, the things which he shall write are just and true; and behold they are written in the book which thou beheld proceeding out of the mouth of the Jew; and at the time they proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, or, at the time the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things which were written were plain and pure, and most precious and easy to the understanding of all men.

And behold, the things which this apostle of the Lamb shall write are many things which thou hast seen; and behold, the remainder shalt thou see.

But the things which thou shalt see hereafter thou shalt not write; for the Lord God hath ordained the apostle of the Lamb of God that he should write them.

And also others who have been, to them hath he shown all things, and they have written them; and they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord, unto the house of Israel.

And I, Nephi, heard and bear record, that the name of the apostle of the Lamb was John, according to the word of the angel.

And behold, I, Nephi, am forbidden that I should write the remainder of the things which I saw and heard; wherefore the things which I have written sufficeth me; and I have written but a small part of the things which I saw.

And I bear record that I saw the things which my father saw, and the angel of the Lord did make them known unto me.

And now I make an end of speaking concerning the things which I saw while I was carried away in the Spirit; and if all the things which I saw are not written, the things which I have written are true. And thus it is. Amen.

## 1 Nīwhai 15

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tōku, tō Nīwhai, kawenga atu i roto i te Wairua, me te kitenga atu i ēnei mea katoa, ka hoki atu ahau ki te tēneti o taku matua.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite ahau i ōku tuākana, ā, i te tautohetohe tētahi ki tētahi e pā ana ki ngā mea i kōrero ai tōku matua ki a rātou.
- 3 Nā te mea i tino kōrero ia i ngā mea nui maha ki a rātou, e uaua nei kia mārāma ai, hāunga te tangata e uiui ake ki te Ariki; ā, i te pakeke rātou i ō rātou ngākau, nō reira kāore rātou i titiro atu ki te Ariki e ai ki te mea tika mā rātou.
- 4 Ā ināianei au, a Nīwhai, i te pōuri nā te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau, ā waihoki, nā ngā mea i kite ai ahau, me te mōhio ka tino pahawa rawa atu nei ēnā mea nā te whakarihariha nui o ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i warea ahau nā ōku mamae, nā te mea i whakaaro ahau he tino nui kē ake ōku mamaetanga i te katoa, nā te whakangaromanga o tōku iwi, nā te mea i kite ahau i tō rātou hinganga.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i taku whiwhinga kaha ka kōrero ahau ki ōku tuākana, e hiahia ana kia mōhio ai i a rātou te pūtake o ā rātou tautohetohe.
- 7 Ā, ka kī mai rātou: Nana, kāore mātou i te mārāma ki ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei e tō tātou matua e pā ana ki ngā manga tupu o te rākau ōriwa, ā, e pā ana anō hoki ki ngā Tauīwi.
- 8 Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou: Kua uiui ake rānei koutou ki te Ariki?
- 9 Ā, ka kī mai rātou ki ahau: Kīhai mātou; nā te mea kāore te Ariki e whakamōhiohia mai tētahi mea pēnei ki a mātou.
- 10 Nana, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou: E pēhea nei koutou e kore ai e pupuri ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki? Me pēhea rā koutou e mate ai, nā te pakeketanga o ō koutou ngākau?
- 11 E mahara ana rānei koutou i ngā mea kua kōrerotia e te Ariki?—Ki te kore koutou e whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau, me te uiui mai i te whakapono, e whakapono ana ka whiwhi koutou, me te ū anō ki te pupuri i aku whakahaunga, kāore e kore ka whakamōhiohia atu ēnei mea ki a koutou.

## 1 Nephi 15

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been carried away in the Spirit, and seen all these things, I returned to the tent of my father.

And it came to pass that I beheld my brethren, and they were disputing one with another concerning the things which my father had spoken unto them.

For he truly spake many great things unto them, which were hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord; and they being hard in their hearts, therefore they did not look unto the Lord as they ought.

And now I, Nephi, was grieved because of the hardness of their hearts, and also, because of the things which I had seen, and knew they must unavoidably come to pass because of the great wickedness of the children of men.

And it came to pass that I was overcome because of my afflictions, for I considered that mine afflictions were great above all, because of the destruction of my people, for I had beheld their fall.

And it came to pass that after I had received strength I spake unto my brethren, desiring to know of them the cause of their disputations.

And they said: Behold, we cannot understand the words which our father hath spoken concerning the natural branches of the olive tree, and also concerning the Gentiles.

And I said unto them: Have ye inquired of the Lord?

And they said unto me: We have not; for the Lord maketh no such thing known unto us.

Behold, I said unto them: How is it that ye do not keep the commandments of the Lord? How is it that ye will perish, because of the hardness of your hearts?

Do ye not remember the things which the Lord hath said?—If ye will not harden your hearts, and ask me in faith, believing that ye shall receive, with diligence in keeping my commandments, surely these things shall be made known unto you.

- 12 Nana, ka kī atu ahau ki a koutou, nā, kua whakataurititia te whare o Ihairaira ki te rākau ōriwa, nā runga i te Wairua o te Ariki i roto nei i tō tātou matua; ā nana kāore rānei i whatia atu tātou i te whare o Ihairaira, ā, kāore rānei tātou i tētahi manga o te whare o Ihairaira?
- 13 Ā ināianeī, ko te mea e whakaaro nei tō tātou matua e pā ana ki te whakahonotanga mai o ngā manga tupu mā roto i te rāneatanga a ngā Tauīwi, ko tēnei, nā, hei ngā rā o muri, ina memeha haere ō tātou uri i te whakapono kore, āe rā, mō te wā o ngā tau maha, me ngā whakatipuranga maha i muri iho i tā te Mīhaia whakakitenga atu ā-tīnana ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, hei reira haere mai ai te rāneatanga o te rongopai a te Mīhaia ki ngā Tauīwi, ā, mai i ngā Tauīwi ki ngā mōrehu o ō tātou uri—
- 14 Ā, hei taua rā anō e mōhio ai ngā mōrehu o ō tātou uri nō te whare o Ihairaira rātou, ā, ko rātou anō te iwi kawenata a te Ariki; kātahi rātou ka mōhio, ā, ka tae rātou ki te mātauranga o ō rātou mātua tīpuna, me te mātauranga anō o te rongopai o tō rātou Kaihoko, koia i minitatia ki ō rātou mātua tīpuna e ia; nā reira, ka tae rātou ki te mātauranga o tō rātou Kaihoko me ngā tino wāhanga o tana whakaakoranga, nā, kia mōhio ai rātou me pēhea e haere ai ki a ia, ā, kia whakaorangia ai.
- 15 Ā, hei reira i taua rā ka kore rānei rātou e hari me te tuku whakamoemiti atu ki tō rātou Atua ora tonu, tō rātou toka me tō rātou whakaoranga? Āe rā, hei taua rā, ka kore rānei rātou e whiwhi kaha me te oranga mai i te aka pono? Āe rā, ka kore rānei rātou e haere mai ki te kāhui tūturu o te Atua?
- 16 Nana, ko tāku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, Āe rā; ka mahara anō rātou i waenganui i te whare o Ihairaira; ka whakahonoa mai rātou, ko ia he manga tupu nō te rākau ōriwa, ki roto ki te rākau ōriwa tūturu.
- 17 Ā, koinei te whakaaro o tō tātou matua; ā, e whakaaro ana ia ka kore e pahawa ake kia whakamararatia rā anō ai rātou e ngā Tauīwi; ā, e whakaaro ana ia ka puta mai mā ngā Tauīwi, kia whakaatu atu ai te Ariki i tōna mana ki ngā Tauīwi, nā te take pū anō ka whakaparahakongia ia e ngā Hūrai, e te whare o Ihairaira rānei.

Behold, I say unto you, that the house of Israel was compared unto an olive tree, by the Spirit of the Lord which was in our father; and behold are we not broken off from the house of Israel, and are we not a branch of the house of Israel?

And now, the thing which our father meaneth concerning the grafting in of the natural branches through the fulness of the Gentiles, is, that in the latter days, when our seed shall have dwindled in unbelief, yea, for the space of many years, and many generations after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, then shall the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, and from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed—

And at that day shall the remnant of our seed know that they are of the house of Israel, and that they are the covenant people of the Lord; and then shall they know and come to the knowledge of their forefathers, and also to the knowledge of the gospel of their Redeemer, which was ministered unto their fathers by him; wherefore, they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer and the very points of his doctrine, that they may know how to come unto him and be saved.

And then at that day will they not rejoice and give praise unto their everlasting God, their rock and their salvation? Yea, at that day, will they not receive the strength and nourishment from the true vine? Yea, will they not come unto the true fold of God?

Behold, I say unto you, Yea; they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel; they shall be grafted in, being a natural branch of the olive tree, into the true olive tree.

And this is what our father meaneth; and he meaneth that it will not come to pass until after they are scattered by the Gentiles; and he meaneth that it shall come by way of the Gentiles, that the Lord may show his power unto the Gentiles, for the very cause that he shall be rejected of the Jews, or of the house of Israel.

- 18 Nā reira, kāore i kōrero tō tātou matua mō ō tātou uri anake, engari mō te katoa hoki o te whare o Iharaira, e aro ana ki te kawenata e whakatutukihia ai i ngā rā o muri; koia te kawenata i mahi ai te Ariki ki tō tātou matua a Aperahama, e mea ana: Mā ō uri ngā hapū katoa o te ao e manaakitia ai.
- 19 Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kaha kōrero ki a rātou e pā ana ki ēnei mea; āe rā, i kōrero atu ahau ki a rātou e pā ana ki te whakahounga o ngā Hūrai i ngā rā o muri.
- 20 Ā, i whakahua au ki a rātou i ngā kupu a Ihāia, nāna i kōrero e pā ana ki te whakahounga o ngā Hūrai, o te whare o Iharaira rānei; ā, i muri iho i tō rātou whakahounga kua kore tonu e whakapōauautia, kua kore rānei e whakamararatia anōtia. Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero ai ahau i ngā kupu maha ki ōku tuākana, nā, ka whakamārietia rātou, ā, ka whakaiti i a rātou anō ki te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 21 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai anō rātou ki ahau, e mea ana: He aha te tikanga o tēnei mea i kite ai tō tātou matua i roto i tētahi moemoeā? He aha te tikanga o te rākau i kite ai ia?
- 22 Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou: He tohu ia mō te rākau o te ora.
- 23 Ā, ka kī mai rātou ki ahau: He aha te tikanga o te tokotoko rino i kite ai tō tātou matua, nā, i ārahina atu ai ki te rākau?
- 24 Ā, ka kī atu au ki a rātou ko ia te kupu a te Atua; ā, ko ia e whakarongo ai ki te kupu a te Atua, me te ū ki te pupuri ki a ia, kua kore rawa e mate; kua kore rānei e taea e ngā whakawainga me ngā pere muramura a te hoariri ki te whakamatapō i a rātou, ki te ārahi atu i a rātou ki te whakangaromanga.
- 25 Nā reira, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i akiaki ki a rātou kia āta aro atu ki te kupu a te Ariki; āe rā, nāku i whakahau ki a rātou i runga i ngā kaha katoa o tōku wairua, me ngā atamai katoa i ahau, kia āta aro atu ai rātou ki te kupu a te Atua me te mahara ki te pupuri i āna whakahaunga i ngā wā katoa i roto i ngā mea katoa.
- 26 Ā, ka kī mai rātou ki ahau: He aha te tikanga o te awa i kite ai tō tātou matua?

Wherefore, our father hath not spoken of our seed alone, but also of all the house of Israel, pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake much unto them concerning these things; yea, I spake unto them concerning the restoration of the Jews in the latter days.

And I did rehearse unto them the words of Isaiah, who spake concerning the restoration of the Jews, or of the house of Israel; and after they were restored they should no more be confounded, neither should they be scattered again. And it came to pass that I did speak many words unto my brethren, that they were pacified and did humble themselves before the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did speak unto me again, saying: What meaneth this thing which our father saw in a dream? What meaneth the tree which he saw?

And I said unto them: It was a representation of the tree of life.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the rod of iron which our father saw, that led to the tree?

And I said unto them that it was the word of God; and whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish; neither could the temptations and the fiery darts of the adversary overpower them unto blindness, to lead them away to destruction.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did exhort them to give heed unto the word of the Lord; yea, I did exhort them with all the energies of my soul, and with all the faculty which I possessed, that they would give heed to the word of God and remember to keep his commandments always in all things.

And they said unto me: What meaneth the river of water which our father saw?

- 27     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou ko te wai i kite ai tōku matua ko te pokenga; ā, anō te horomitanga ake o tana hinengaro i ētahi atu mea kīhai ia i kite atu i te pokenga o te wai.
- 28     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou he tawhā whakamataku ia, koia i whakawehe nei i te hunga kino mai i te rākau o te ora, me te hunga tapu o te Atua anō hoki.
- 29     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou he tohu ia mō taua ao rēwera whakamataku, koia i kī mai ai te anahera ki ahau i whakaritea mō te hunga kino.
- 30     Ā, ka kī atu ahau ki a rātou i kite anō tō tātou matua ko te tika o te Atua anō i whakawehe i te hunga kino mai i te hunga tika; ā, ko te kānapatanga o reira e rite nei ki te kānapatanga o tētahi ahi muramura, e kake ake ana ki te Atua mō āke tonu atu, ā, kāore tōna mutunga.
- 31     Ā, ka kī mai rātou ki ahau: Ko te tikanga o tēnei mea ko te whakamamaetanga o te tīnana i ngā rā o te poropeihana, ko te tikanga rānei ko te āhuatanga whakamutunga o te wairua a muri i te matenga o te tīnana kikokiko, kei te kōrero rānei ia mō ngā mea ā-kikokiko?
- 32     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī atu ahau ki a rātou, nā, he tohu ia mō ngā mea ā-kikokiko me ngā mea ā-wairua anō; nā te mea ka haere mai te rā me whakawā rātou mō ā rātou mahinga, āe rā, ko ngā mahi pū anō i mahia e te tīnana kikokiko i ōna rā poropeihana.
- 33     Nā reira, ki te mate rātou i roto i ō rātou whakarihariha me maka atu rātou anō hoki, e ai ki ngā mea ā-wairua, koia e pā ana ki te tika; nā reira, me kawe mai kia tū ai ki te aroaro o te Atua, kia whakawākia ai ā rātou mahinga; ā, mehemea he poke āna mahinga me poke ka tika ia; ā, mehemea he poke ana rātou ka whakatakotoria te tikanga kia kore ai rātou e noho ki roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua; ki te pērāhia, ka poke pū anō te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 34     Engari nana, ko tāku ki a koutou, kāore te kīngitanga o te Atua i te poke, ā, tē taea e tētahi mea poke te kuhu ki roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua; nā reira me whakarite tētahi wāhi poke mō ērā e poke ana.

And I said unto them that the water which my father saw was filthiness; and so much was his mind swallowed up in other things that he beheld not the filthiness of the water.

And I said unto them that it was an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, and also from the saints of God.

And I said unto them that it was a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

And I said unto them that our father also saw that the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; and the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming fire, which ascendeth up unto God forever and ever, and hath no end.

And they said unto me: Doth this thing mean the torment of the body in the days of probation, or doth it mean the final state of the soul after the death of the temporal body, or doth it speak of the things which are temporal?

And it came to pass that I said unto them that it was a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; for the day should come that they must be judged of their works, yea, even the works which were done by the temporal body in their days of probation.

Wherefore, if they should die in their wickedness they must be cast off also, as to the things which are spiritual, which are pertaining to righteousness; wherefore, they must be brought to stand before God, to be judged of their works; and if their works have been filthiness they must needs be filthy; and if they be filthy it must needs be that they cannot dwell in the kingdom of God; if so, the kingdom of God must be filthy also.

But behold, I say unto you, the kingdom of God is not filthy, and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God; wherefore there must needs be a place of filthiness prepared for that which is filthy.

35     Ā, he wāhi anō kua whakaritea, āe rā, ko taua ao  
rēwera whakamataku pū anō kua kōrero nei ahau, ā,  
ko te rēwera te kaiwhakarite i a ia; nā reira ko te  
āhuatanga whakamutunga o ngā wairua a te tangata  
ko te noho i roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua, ko te  
makanga atu rānei nā taua tika kua kōrero nei ahau.

36     Nā reira, ka whakaparahakongia te hunga  
whakarihariha mai i te hunga tika, ā, mai i taua  
rākau o te ora anō hoki, ko ōna hua he mea hiahiatia  
ake i runga i ērā atu hua rākau katoa; āe rā, ko ia te  
tākoha nui anō o ngā tākoha katoa o te Atua. Ā, i  
pēnei taku kōrero atu ki ōku tuākana. Āmine.

And there is a place prepared, yea, even that awful  
hell of which I have spoken, and the devil is the  
preparator of it; wherefore the final state of the souls  
of men is to dwell in the kingdom of God, or to be  
cast out because of that justice of which I have spo-  
ken.

Wherefore, the wicked are rejected from the right-  
eous, and also from that tree of life, whose fruit is  
most precious and most desirable above all other  
fruits; yea, and it is the greatest of all the gifts of God.  
And thus I spake unto my brethren. Amen.



## 1 Nīwhai 16

- 1 Āianeī, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tāku, tā Nīwhai, whakakapi kōrero ki ōku tuākana, nana i kī mai rātou ki ahau: Kua whakapuakina e koe ngā mea mārō maha, he nui kē atu i tō mātou āhei ki te amo.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī atu ahau ki a rātou, nā, i mōhio ahau kua kōrero ahau i ngā mea mārō maha ki te hunga whakarihariha, e ai ki ngā kōrero pono; ā, ko te hunga tika kua whakatikaia e ahau, ā, kua whakaaturia nei ka whakateiteihia ake hei te rā whakamutungā; nā reira, ka mārō ngā kōrero pono ki te hunga hara, nā te mea ka wero pū anō ia i a rātou ki te tino pokapū.
- 3 Ā ināianeī ōku tuākana, mehemea i tika koutou me te hia whakarongo atu ki ngā kōrero pono, me te aro atu ki a ia, kia hīkoi tōtika i mua i te Atua, kua kore ā koutou amuamu nā ngā kōrero pono, me te kī: Kei te kōrero koe i ngā mea mārō ki a mātou.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i akiaki i ōku tuākana, i runga i te kaha nui, kia pupuri ai i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakaiti pū rātou i a rātou anō i mua i te Ariki; nā konā i nui tōku hari me ōku manako mō rātou, nā, ka hīkoi rātou i ngā ara o te tika.
- 6 Inakuanei, i kōrerohia, i mahia ēnei mea katoa i tōku matua e noho tēneti ana i te raorao kua huaina ko Remuere.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i taumau tētahi o ngā tamāhine a Ihimaera hei hoa wahine māku; ā waihoki, ka taumau ōku tuākana i ngā tamāhine a Ihimaera hei hoa wahine.
- 8 Ā, pēnei kua tutuki i tōku matua ngā whakahaunga katoa a te Ariki kua tukuna atu nei ki a ia. Ā waihoki, ko au, ko Nīwhai, kua manaakitia nuitia e te Ariki.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai te reo o te Atua ki tōku matua i te pō, ā, ka whakahau ia hei āpōpō me haere ia ki roto i te koraha.

## 1 Nephi 16

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of speaking to my brethren, behold they said unto me: Thou hast declared unto us hard things, more than we are able to bear.

And it came to pass that I said unto them that I knew that I had spoken hard things against the wicked, according to the truth; and the righteous have I justified, and testified that they should be lifted up at the last day; wherefore, the guilty taketh the truth to be hard, for it cutteth them to the very center.

And now my brethren, if ye were righteous and were willing to hearken to the truth, and give heed unto it, that ye might walk uprightly before God, then ye would not murmur because of the truth, and say: Thou speakest hard things against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did exhort my brethren, with all diligence, to keep the commandments of the Lord.

And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord; insomuch that I had joy and great hopes of them, that they would walk in the paths of righteousness.

Now, all these things were said and done as my father dwelt in a tent in the valley which he called Lemuel.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also, my brethren took of the daughters of Ishmael to wife; and also Zoram took the eldest daughter of Ishmael to wife.

And thus my father had fulfilled all the commandments of the Lord which had been given unto him. And also, I, Nephi, had been blessed of the Lord exceedingly.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord spake unto my father by night, and commanded him that on the morrow he should take his journey into the wilderness.

- 10     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tōku matua e ara ana i te ata, ā, ka haere whakamua atu i te whatitoka o tana tēneti, ki tōna mīharo nunui i kite iho ia i runga i te papa tētahi pōro pōtakataka he whakamīharo tōna mahinga; ā, he parāhe horomata ia. Ā, kei roto i te pōro e rua ngā pīnara; ka tuhi atu tētahi i te huarahi me haere ai mātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 11     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kohikohi mātou i ngā mea e tika ana hei mauhanga mā mātou ki roto i te koraha, me ērā atu toenga o kua homai e te Atua ki a mātou; ā, ka haria e mātou ngā kākano o ia tū, o ia tū kia kawea atu ai e mātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 12     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haria o mātou tēneti, ā, ka wehe atu ki roto i te koraha, whakawhiti ana i te awa o Rāmana.
- 13     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere mātou mō te takiwā o ngā rā e whā, e āhua tonga-tonga mā rāwhiti te aronga, ā, ka whakatū anō mātou i o mātou tēneti; ā, ka huaina e mātou ko te ingoa o taua wāhi ko Heiha.
- 14     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haria e mātou ā mātou kōpere me ā mātou pere, ā, ka haere whakamua atu ki roto i te koraha kia patu kai mā o mātou whānau; ā, i muri iho i tā mātou patu kai mā o mātou whānau ka hoki anō mātou ki o mātou whānau i roto i te koraha, ki te wāhi o Heiha. Ā, ka haere whakamua atu anō mātou ki roto i te koraha, e whai ana i taua aronga anō, e pūmau ana ki ngā wāhi mōmona o te koraha, koia i ngā rohe e pātata ana ki te Moana Whero.
- 15     Ā, i pahawa ake, i haere mātou mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha, e patu kai ana i te huarahi, ki ā mātou kōpere me ā mātou pere me ā mātou kōhatu me ā mātou kōtaha.
- 16     Ā, i whaiwhai mātou i ngā tohutohu a te pōro, koia i ārahina ai mātou ki ngā wāhi mōmona rawa o te koraha.
- 17     Ā, i muri iho i tā mātou haere mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha, i whakatū mātou i o mātou tēneti mō tētahi wā, kia whakatā ai mātou me te hopu kai mā o mātou whānau.
- 18     Ā, i pahawa ake, i ahau, a Nīwhai, e haere whakamua atu ana ki te patu kai, nana, i whati au i taku kōpere, i hangaia ai ki te maitai pai rawa; ā, i muri iho i taku whatinga i taku kōpere, nana, i riri ōku tuākana ki ahau nā te ngaronga o taku kōpere, nā te mea kāore mātou i hopu kai.

And it came to pass that as my father arose in the morning, and went forth to the tent door, to his great astonishment he beheld upon the ground a round ball of curious workmanship; and it was of fine brass. And within the ball were two spindles; and the one pointed the way whither we should go into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did gather together whatsoever things we should carry into the wilderness, and all the remainder of our provisions which the Lord had given unto us; and we did take seed of every kind that we might carry into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that we did take our tents and depart into the wilderness, across the river Laman.

And it came to pass that we traveled for the space of four days, nearly a south-southeast direction, and we did pitch our tents again; and we did call the name of the place Shazer.

And it came to pass that we did take our bows and our arrows, and go forth into the wilderness to slay food for our families; and after we had slain food for our families we did return again to our families in the wilderness, to the place of Shazer. And we did go forth again in the wilderness, following the same direction, keeping in the most fertile parts of the wilderness, which were in the borders near the Red Sea.

And it came to pass that we did travel for the space of many days, slaying food by the way, with our bows and our arrows and our stones and our slings.

And we did follow the directions of the ball, which led us in the more fertile parts of the wilderness.

And after we had traveled for the space of many days, we did pitch our tents for the space of a time, that we might again rest ourselves and obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that as I, Nephi, went forth to slay food, behold, I did break my bow, which was made of fine steel; and after I did break my bow, behold, my brethren were angry with me because of the loss of my bow, for we did obtain no food.

- 19     Ā, i pahawa ake, i hoki kai kore atu mātou ki ō mātou whānau, ā, nō te ruha nui, nā tā rātou haerenga, i mate nui ai rātou i te hiakai.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tīmata a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere me ngā tama a Ihimaera ki te kaha amuamu, nā ngā matenga me ō rātou mamaetanga i roto i te koraha; ā, i tīmata anō hoki tōku matua ki te amuamu ki te Ariki tōna Atua; āe rā, i tino pōuri rawa atu anō hoki rātou katoa, tae atu ana ki tā rātou amuamu atu ki te Ariki.
- 21     Nā, i pahawa ake, ko au, ko Nīwhai, nā taku mamae tahi me ōku tuākana nā te ngaronga o taku kōpere, ā, me te ngaronga i ā rātou kōpere ōna turapa, ka tīmata tōna uaua haere, āe rā, nā konei rā kīhai i taea e mātou te hopu kai.
- 22     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kaha kōrero ki ōku tuākana, nā te mea kua whakapakekehia anōtia ō rātou ngākau, tae atu ana ki te amuamu atu ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua.
- 23     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i hanga ki te rākau he kōpere, ā, ki te rākau torotika he pere; nā reira, i whakawhītikiria ahau e ahau anō ki tētahi kōpere me tētahi pere, ki tētahi kōtaha me ngā kōhatu. Ā, i kī atu ahau ki tōku matua: Me haere rānei au ki hea ki te hopu kai?
- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, i uiui atu ia ki te Ariki, nā te mea kua whakaitia rātou e rātou anō nā aku kupu; nā te mea he maha ngā mea i kōrero ai au ki a rātou i runga i te kaha o tōku wairua.
- 25     Ā, i pahawa ake, i pā mai te reo o te Ariki ki tōku matua; ā, i tino kohetehia ia nā ana amuamu atu ki te Ariki, tae atu ana ki tana hekenga iho ki te hōhonutanga o te pōuri.
- 26     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī atu te reo o te Ariki ki a ia: Titiro ki runga i te pōro, ā, tirohia ngā mea kua tuhia.
- 27     Ā, i pahawa ake, i te tirohanga a tōku matua i ngā mea kua tuhia i runga i te pōro, i nui tōna wehi me tōna tūioi, ā, ko ōku tuākana me ngā tama a Ihimaera me ā mātou hoa wāhine anō hoki.
- 28     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kite atu i ngā kaiaro i roto nei i te pōro, nā, i mahi ai rāua e ai ki tō mātou whakapono, ki tō mātou ū me tō mātou aro i tukuna e mātou ki a rāua.

And it came to pass that we did return without food to our families, and being much fatigued, because of their journeying, they did suffer much for the want of food.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael did begin to murmur exceedingly, because of their sufferings and afflictions in the wilderness; and also my father began to murmur against the Lord his God; yea, and they were all exceedingly sorrowful, even that they did murmur against the Lord.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, having been afflicted with my brethren because of the loss of my bow, and their bows having lost their springs, it began to be exceedingly difficult, yea, insomuch that we could obtain no food.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did speak much unto my brethren, because they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow; wherefore, I did arm myself with a bow and an arrow, with a sling and with stones. And I said unto my father: Whither shall I go to obtain food?

And it came to pass that he did inquire of the Lord, for they had humbled themselves because of my words; for I did say many things unto them in the energy of my soul.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father; and he was truly chastened because of his murmuring against the Lord, insomuch that he was brought down into the depths of sorrow.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord said unto him: Look upon the ball, and behold the things which are written.

And it came to pass that when my father beheld the things which were written upon the ball, he did fear and tremble exceedingly, and also my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and our wives.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, beheld the pointers which were in the ball, that they did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which we did give unto them.

29     Ā, i reira anō he tuinga hou kua tuhituhia ki runga i a rāua, koia he mārama kia pānuitia ai, nāna i homai māramatanga ki a mātou e pā ana ki ngā huarahi o te Ariki; ā, ka tuhituhia, ā, ka tīnia mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā, e ai ki tō mātou whakapono me tō mātou ū i tukuna atu e mātou ki a ia. Ā, nō konei tātou kite ai mā ngā mea iti ka taea e te Ariki ngā mea nunui te whakaputa mai.

30     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i haere whakamua ake ki te kōtihi o te maunga, e ai ki ngā tohutohu i homai mā runga i te pōro.

31     Ā, i pahawa ake, i patu ahau i ngā kararehe mohoa, nā konā au i hopu kai ai mā ō mātou whānau.

32     Ā, i pahawa ake, i hoki atu ahau ki ō mātou tēneti, e waha ana i ngā kararehe kua patua nei e ahau; nā, kite ana rātou i taku hopuranga kai, anō te nui o tō rātou koa! Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakaiti rātou i a rātou anō i mua i te Ariki, me te tuku whakamoemiti ki a ia.

33     Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakatika atu anō i tā mātou haere, e tata haere ana i taua huarahi pū anō i tō te tīmatanga; ā, i muri iho i tō mātou haere mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha ka whakatū mātou i ō mātou tēneti anō, kia noho ai mātou mō te takiwā o tētahi wā.

34     Ā, i pahawa ake, i mate a Ihimaera, ā, ka tanumia i te wāhi i huaina nei ko Nāhoma.

35     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tangi hotuhotu ngā tamāhine a Ihimaera, nā te ngaronga o tō rātou matua, ā, nā ō rātou mamaetanga i roto i te koraha; ā, ka amuamu atu rātou ki tōku matua, nā te mea nāna rātou i kawē mai i waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, e mea ana: Kua mate tō mātou matua; āe rā, kua kāewaewa nui mātou i roto i te koraha, ā, kua mate mātou i ngā mamaetanga nui, matekaitanga, mawaitanga, me te ruhatanga; ā, i muri iho i ēnei matenga katoa ka hemo mātou i te koraha i te matekai.

36     Ā, i pēnei tā rātou amuamu atu ki tōku matua, ā, ki ahau anō hoki; ā, i te hiahia rātou kia hoki atu anō ai ki Hiruharama.

37     Ā, ka kī atu a Rāmāna ki a Remuere me ngā tama a Ihimaera: Nana, tēnā me patu e tātou tō tātou matua, me tā tātou teina anō hoki a Nīwhai, nāna ake anō te tikanga i hāpai i runga i a ia kia noho ai hei rangatira, hei kaiako mō tātou ōna tuākana.

And there was also written upon them a new writing, which was plain to be read, which did give us understanding concerning the ways of the Lord; and it was written and changed from time to time, according to the faith and diligence which we gave unto it. And thus we see that by small means the Lord can bring about great things.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, according to the directions which were given upon the ball.

And it came to pass that I did slay wild beasts, in-somuch that I did obtain food for our families.

And it came to pass that I did return to our tents, bearing the beasts which I had slain; and now when they beheld that I had obtained food, how great was their joy! And it came to pass that they did humble themselves before the Lord, and did give thanks unto him.

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey, traveling nearly the same course as in the beginning; and after we had traveled for the space of many days we did pitch our tents again, that we might tarry for the space of a time.

And it came to pass that Ishmael died, and was buried in the place which was called Nahom.

And it came to pass that the daughters of Ishmael did mourn exceedingly, because of the loss of their father, and because of their afflictions in the wilderness; and they did murmur against my father, because he had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, saying: Our father is dead; yea, and we have wandered much in the wilderness, and we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue; and after all these sufferings we must perish in the wilderness with hunger.

And thus they did murmur against my father, and also against me; and they were desirous to return again to Jerusalem.

And Laman said unto Lemuel and also unto the sons of Ishmael: Behold, let us slay our father, and also our brother Nephi, who has taken it upon him to be our ruler and our teacher, who are his elder brethren.

38 Nā, e kī ana ia kua kōrero tahi te Ariki me ia, ā, kua minita anō ngā anahera ki a ia. Engari nana, e mōhio nei tātou kei te rūkahu ia ki a tātou; ā, ka kōrero mai ia i ēnei mea, ā, ka mahi ia i ngā mea maha mā ana tinihanga, kia whakapōhēhē i ō tātou karu, e whakaaro ana, tērā pea, ka ārahi atu ia i a tātou ki roto i tētahi koraha kē; ā, i muri iho i tana ārahitanga atu i a tātou, kua whakaaro ia kia whakatūria ia e ia anō hei kīngi, hei rangatira i runga i a tātou, kia mahi ia ki a tātou e ai ki tāna e pai ai. Ā, nō tēnei āhuatanga i whakaohoho ai tōku tuakana a Rāmāna i ō rātou ngākau ki te whakatakariri.

39 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a mātou te Ariki, āe rā, i tau rawa mai te reo o te Ariki me te kōrero i ngā kupu maha ki a rātou, ā, i kohetehia rawatia rātou; ā, i muri iho i tā rātou kohetehanga e te reo o te Ariki ka tahuri kē atu tō rātou whakatakariri, ā, ka rīpeneta rātou mō ō rātou hara, nā konei i manaakitia anōtia mātou e te Ariki ki te kai, nā, kāore mātou i hemo.

Now, he says that the Lord has talked with him, and also that angels have ministered unto him. But behold, we know that he lies unto us; and he tells us these things, and he worketh many things by his cunning arts, that he may deceive our eyes, thinking, perhaps, that he may lead us away into some strange wilderness; and after he has led us away, he has thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us, that he may do with us according to his will and pleasure. And after this manner did my brother Laman stir up their hearts to anger.

And it came to pass that the Lord was with us, yea, even the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words unto them, and did chasten them exceedingly; and after they were chastened by the voice of the Lord they did turn away their anger, and did repent of their sins, insomuch that the Lord did bless us again with food, that we did not perish.

## 1 Nīwhai 17

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakatika anō mātou i tā mātou haere i te koraha; ā, ka ahu tata anō whaka-te-rāwhiti mai i taua wā haere ake nei. Ā, i haere, i kautū mātou i ngā mamaetanga maha i te koraha; ā, i whakawhānau tamariki ā mātou wāhine i te koraha.
- 2 Ā, anō te nui o ngā manaakitanga a te Ariki i runga i a mātou, nā, i a mātou i te kai i ngā kikokiko mata i te koraha, i ranea ai te whakangote a ā mātou wāhine mā ā rātou tamariki, ā, i kaha anō hoki, āe rā, i rite ai ki ngā tāne; ā, i tīmata anō rātou ki te amo ake i ā rātou haerenga i runga i te amuamu kore.
- 3 Ā, pēnei tātou kite ai me whakatutuki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua. Ā, ki te mea ka pupuri ngā tamariki a te tangata i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua ka whāngaia rātou, ka whakakahangia anōtia rātou, ā, ka tukuna ngā mea mā reira rātou e taea ai te whakatutuki i te mea kua whakahau ia i a rātou; nā reira, i tuku ia i ngā mea mō mātou i a mātou e noho taupua ana i te koraha.
- 4 Ā, i noho taupua mātou mō te takiwā o ngā tau maha, āe rā, e waru pū anō ngā tau i te koraha.
- 5 Ā, i tae atu mātou ki te whenua kua huaina ko Mōmona, nā ana hua rākau maha me ana miere koraha; ā, ko ēnei mea katoa i whakaritea e te Ariki kei noho ka mate mātou. Ā, i kite mātou i te moana, ko ia i huaina e mātou ko Iriatuma, ko tōna whakamāoritanga, ko ngā wai maha.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakatū mātou i ō mātou tēneti ki tātahi; ā, ahakoa i mate nui mātou i ngā mamaetanga maha me ngā uauatanga nui, āe rā, anō te nui tē taea e mātou te tuhituhi i te katoa, i tino hari nui mātou i tā mātou taenga atu ki tātahi; ā, ka huaina e mātou te wāhi ko Mōmona, nā ana hua rākau maha.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tāku, tā Nīwhai, nohoanga i te whenua o Mōmona mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha, ka tau mai te reo o te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana: E ara, hoatu koe ki roto i te maunga. Ā, i pahawa ake, i ara ahau, ā, ka haere ake ki roto i te maunga, ā, ka karanga atu ki te Ariki.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana: Māu e hanga he kaupuke, i runga i te ritenga ka whakaatu atu au ki a koe, kia kawea atu ai e ahau tō iwi ki tua i ēnei wai.

## 1 Nephi 17

And it came to pass that we did again take our journey in the wilderness; and we did travel nearly eastward from that time forth. And we did travel and wade through much affliction in the wilderness; and our women did bear children in the wilderness.

And so great were the blessings of the Lord upon us, that while we did live upon raw meat in the wilderness, our women did give plenty of suck for their children, and were strong, yea, even like unto the men; and they began to bear their journeyings without murmurings.

And thus we see that the commandments of God must be fulfilled. And if it so be that the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, and strengthen them, and provide means whereby they can accomplish the thing which he has commanded them; wherefore, he did provide means for us while we did sojourn in the wilderness.

And we did sojourn for the space of many years, yea, even eight years in the wilderness.

And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord that we might not perish. And we beheld the sea, which we called Irreantum, which, being interpreted, is many waters.

And it came to pass that we did pitch our tents by the seashore; and notwithstanding we had suffered many afflictions and much difficulty, yea, even so much that we cannot write them all, we were exceedingly rejoiced when we came to the seashore; and we called the place Bountiful, because of its much fruit.

And it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had been in the land of Bountiful for the space of many days, the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying: Arise, and get thee into the mountain. And it came to pass that I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto me, saying: Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee, that I may carry thy people across these waters.

- 9     Ā, ka kī atu ahau: E te Ariki, me haere ahau ki hea  
kia kite ai ahau he oa hei whakarewahia, kia hanga  
taputapu ai ahau hei waihanga i te kaupuke i runga i  
te ritenga kua whakaatu mai koe ki ahau?
- 10    Ā, i pahawa ake, i kōrero mai te Ariki ki ahau ki  
hea haere ai ahau kia kite ai he oa, kia hanga  
taputapu ai ahau.
- 11    Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i hanga i tētahi  
mea pupuhi ahi hei pupuhi i te ahi, ki ngā kiri  
kararehe; ā, i muri iho i taku waihanga mea pupuhi  
ahi, kia whai mea ai ahau hei pupuhi i te ahi, ka patu  
au i ngā kōhatu e rua tētahi ki tētahi hei tahu ai ahau  
i te ahi.
- 12    Nā te mea kīhai te Ariki i whakaae i mua kia tahu  
ai mātou i ngā ahi maha, i a mātou e haere ana i te  
koraha; nā te mea i kī ai ia: Māku ā koutou kai e  
meinga kia reka ai, nā, kia kore ai koutou e tunu;
- 13    Ā, māku anō hei rama mōu i te koraha; ā, māku e  
whakarite te huarahi kei mua i a koe, ki te mea ka  
pupuri koe i aku whakahaunga; nā reira, ina pupuri  
koe i aku whakahaunga ka ārahina koe whaka-te-  
whenua whakaari; ā, ka mōhio koe nāku anō koe i  
ārahi.
- 14    Āe rā, ka kī anō te Ariki ki ahau: Hei muri i tō  
taenga atu ki te whenua whakaari, ka mōhio koe ko  
ahau, te Ariki, ko te Atua; ā, nāku anō, nā te Ariki,  
koe i whakaputa mai i te whakangaromanga; āe rā,  
nāku anō koe i kawē mai i waho atu i te whenua o  
Hiruharama.
- 15    Nā reira ahau, a Nīwhai, i tohetohe tonu ai ki te  
pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki, ā, nāku anō i  
akiaki i ōku tuākana kia ū, ā, kia tākare tonu ai.
- 16    Ā, i pahawa ake, i hanga ahau i ngā taputapu ki te  
oa i whakarewaina e ahau i te toka.
- 17    Ā, ka kite ōku tuākana, whano ka hanga ahau i  
tētahi kaupuke, ka tīmata rāua ki te amuamu mai ki  
ahau, e mea ana: He wairangi tā tāua teina, nā te mea  
e whakaaro ana ia e taea ana e ia te hanga kaupuke;  
āe rā, e whakaaro anō hoki e taea ana e ia ngā wai  
nunui te whakawhiti atu.
- 18    Ā, i pēnei te amuamu a ōku tuākana ki ahau, me te  
hiahia anō kia kore rāua e mahi, nā te mea kīhai rāua  
i whakapono ka taea e ahau te hanga kaupuke; kāore  
hoki rāua e whakapono kua whakaakona au e te  
Ariki.

And I said: Lord, whither shall I go that I may find  
ore to molten, that I may make tools to construct the  
ship after the manner which thou hast shown unto  
me?

And it came to pass that the Lord told me whither I  
should go to find ore, that I might make tools.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did make a bel-  
lows wherewith to blow the fire, of the skins of  
beasts; and after I had made a bellows, that I might  
have wherewith to blow the fire, I did smite two  
stones together that I might make fire.

For the Lord had not hitherto suffered that we  
should make much fire, as we journeyed in the  
wilderness; for he said: I will make thy food become  
sweet, that ye cook it not;

And I will also be your light in the wilderness; and  
I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye  
shall keep my commandments; wherefore, inas-  
much as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall be  
led towards the promised land; and ye shall know  
that it is by me that ye are led.

Yea, and the Lord said also that: After ye have ar-  
rived in the promised land, ye shall know that I, the  
Lord, am God; and that I, the Lord, did deliver you  
from destruction; yea, that I did bring you out of the  
land of Jerusalem.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did strive to keep the com-  
mandments of the Lord, and I did exhort my  
brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

And it came to pass that I did make tools of the ore  
which I did molten out of the rock.

And when my brethren saw that I was about to  
build a ship, they began to murmur against me, say-  
ing: Our brother is a fool, for he thinketh that he can  
build a ship; yea, and he also thinketh that he can  
cross these great waters.

And thus my brethren did complain against me,  
and were desirous that they might not labor, for they  
did not believe that I could build a ship; neither  
would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

19     Ā ināianeī, i pahawa ake, ko au, a Nīwhai, i tino hinapōuri nā te pakeketanga o ō rāua ngākau; ā ināianeī, ka kite rāua i ahau e pōuri haere ana ka koa rāua i ō rāua ngākau, nā konā rāua i whakahari i runga i a ahau, e mea ana: I mōhio māua kāore e taea e koe te hanga kaipuke, nā te mea i mōhio māua i tō mātauranga kore; nā reira, tē taea e koe te tutuki he mahi pēnei rawa te nui.

20     Ā, e rite ana koe ki tō tātou matua, e ārahina ana e ngā whakaaro kūare o tōna ngākau; āe rā, nāna mātou i ārahi mai i waho atu i te whenua o Hiruharama, ā, kua kāewaewa haere mātou i roto i te koraha mō ēnei tau maha; ā, kua whakarirā ā mātou wāhine, e nui ana i te hapū; ā, kua whānau tamariki rātou i te koraha, ā, kua mamae i ngā whakamamaetanga katoa, hāunga ko te mate; kua pai ake mehemea i mate atu rātou i mua i tā rātou putanga mai i Hiruharama, tēnā, i te mamae i ēnei whakamamaetanga katoa.

21     Nana, ko ēnei tau maha kua mamae tātou i roto i te koraha, ko te wā ia kua āhei tātou ki te noho hari i runga i ō tātou taonga me tō tātou whenua tuku iho; āe rā, kua harikoa anō pea tātou.

22     Ā, e mōhio ana mātou ko ngā tāngata i te whenua o Hiruharama he tāngata tika; nā te mea i pupuri rātou i ngā ture me ngā whakawākanga a te Ariki, me ana whakahaunga katoa, e ai ki te ture a Mohi, nā reira, e mōhio ana mātou he iwi tika rātou; ā, kua whakawākia rātou e tō tātou matua, ā, kua ārahina atu tātou nā tā tātou whakarongo atu ki ana kupu; āe rā, he pērā anō tā tātou teina ki a ia. Koinei te āhua o te reo i amuamu ai i whakahē ai ōku tuākana ki a māua.

23     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kōrero atu ki a rāua, e mea ana: E whakaponu ana rānei kōrua ki ō tātou tīpuna, ko rātou nei ngā tamariki a Iharaira, kua ārahina atu i waho atu i ngā ringaringa o ngā Ihipiana mehemea kihai i whakarongo atu ki ngā kupu a te Ariki?

24     Āe rā, e whakaaro ana rānei kōrua kua ārahina atu rātou i waho atu i te ponongatanga, mehemea kihai te Ariki i whakahau i a Mohi kia ārahi mai i a rātou i waho atu i te ponongatanga?

And now it came to pass that I, Nephi, was exceedingly sorrowful because of the hardness of their hearts; and now when they saw that I began to be sorrowful they were glad in their hearts, insomuch that they did rejoice over me, saying: We knew that ye could not construct a ship, for we knew that ye were lacking in judgment; wherefore, thou canst not accomplish so great a work.

And thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart; yea, he hath led us out of the land of Jerusalem, and we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; and our women have toiled, being big with child; and they have borne children in the wilderness and suffered all things, save it were death; and it would have been better that they had died before they came out of Jerusalem than to have suffered these afflictions.

Behold, these many years we have suffered in the wilderness, which time we might have enjoyed our possessions and the land of our inheritance; yea, and we might have been happy.

And we know that the people who were in the land of Jerusalem were a righteous people; for they kept the statutes and judgments of the Lord, and all his commandments, according to the law of Moses; wherefore, we know that they are a righteous people; and our father hath judged them, and hath led us away because we would hearken unto his words; yea, and our brother is like unto him. And after this manner of language did my brethren murmur and complain against us.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, spake unto them, saying: Do ye believe that our fathers, who were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

Yea, do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses that he should lead them out of bondage?



- 25 Nā, e mōhio ana kōrua i noho ngā tamariki a Iharaira i te ponongatanga; ā, e mōhio ana anō kōrua i utaina rātou ki ngā mahi taumaha, koia he mea uaua rawa hei pīkau; nā reira, e mōhio ana kōrua he mea tino pai rawa mō rātou, kia whakaputaina mai ai rātou i te ponongatanga.
- 26 Nā, e mōhio ana kōrua i whakahaua a Mohi e te Ariki kia meatia taua mahi nui; ā, e mōhio ana anō kōrua nā tana kupu ngā wai o te Moana Whero i wehewehe ki tētahi taha, ki tētahi taha, ā, haere ana rātou mā runga i te whenua maroke.
- 27 Engari e mōhio ana kōrua i toromi iho ngā Ihipiana i te Moana Whero, ko rātou nei ngā tauā a Parao.
- 28 Ā, e mōhio ana anō hoki kōrua i whāngaia rātou ki te mana i te koraha.
- 29 Āe rā, e mōhio ana anō kōrua ko Mohi, nā runga i tana kupu mā runga i te mana o te Atua i roto nei i a ia, ka patua te toka, ā, i konā pakaru mai ngā wai, kia ngata ai ngā tamariki a Iharaira i tō rātou matewai.
- 30 Ahakoa rā i ārahina rātou, ko te Ariki tō rātou Atua, tō rātou Kaihoko, e haere ana ki mua i a rātou, e ārahina ana rātou i te awatea me te tuku iho i te mārāma ki a rātou i te pō, me te mahi anō i ngā mea katoa e pai ana hei whakawhiwhinga mō te tangata, i whakapakeke rātou i ō rātou ngākau me te whakamatapō i ō rātou hinengaro, ā, ka taunu rātou ki a Mohi, ā, ki te Atua pono hoki e ora ana.
- 31 Ā, i pahawa ake, e ai ki tāna kupu i whakangaro ia i a rātou; ā, e ai ki tāna kupu i ārahi ia i a rātou; ā, e ai ki tāna kupu i mahi ia i ngā mea katoa mō rātou; ā, kāore he mea kotahi i mahia hāunga i runga i tāna kupu.
- 32 Ā, i muri iho i tā rātou whakawhiti atu i te awa o Hōrana ka whakamārohirohi ia i a rātou tae atu ana ki te pananga atu i ngā tamariki o te whenua, āe rā, tae atu ana ki te whakamararatanga atu i a rātou ki te whakangaromanga.
- 33 Ā ināianeī, e whakaaro ana kōrua ko ngā tamariki o tēnei whenua, ko rātou i te whenua whakaari, ko rātou i panaia atu e ō tātou tīpuna, e whakaaro ana kōrua i tika rātou? Nana, tāku ki a kōrua, Kāo.
- 34 E whakaaro ana kōrua he mea whiriwhiri ake ō tātou tīpuna i a rātou mehemea i tika ai rātou? Ko tāku ki a kōrua, Kāo.

Now ye know that the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne; wherefore, ye know that it must needs be a good thing for them, that they should be brought out of bondage.

Now ye know that Moses was commanded of the Lord to do that great work; and ye know that by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither, and they passed through on dry ground.

But ye know that the Egyptians were drowned in the Red Sea, who were the armies of Pharaoh.

And ye also know that they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Yea, and ye also know that Moses, by his word according to the power of God which was in him, smote the rock, and there came forth water, that the children of Israel might quench their thirst.

And notwithstanding they being led, the Lord their God, their Redeemer, going before them, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night, and doing all things for them which were expedient for man to receive, they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

And it came to pass that according to his word he did destroy them; and according to his word he did lead them; and according to his word he did do all things for them; and there was not any thing done save it were by his word.

And after they had crossed the river Jordan he did make them mighty unto the driving out of the children of the land, yea, unto the scattering them to destruction.

And now, do ye suppose that the children of this land, who were in the land of promise, who were driven out by our fathers, do ye suppose that they were righteous? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Do ye suppose that our fathers would have been more choice than they if they had been righteous? I say unto you, Nay.

35 Nana, ki tā te Ariki he kikokiko kotahi te katoa; ko ia e tika ana ka whakamakauria e te Atua. Engari nana, kua whakapararahakohia e tēnei iwi ngā kupu katoa a te Atua, ā, i pakari rātou i te hara; ā, i runga anō i a rātou te raneatanga o te riri o te Atua; ā, ka kangaia e te Ariki te whenua ki a rātou, ā, i manaakitia ia e ia ki ō tātou tīpuna tae atu ana ki tō rātou whai mana i runga i a ia.

36 Nana, kua hanga te Ariki i te ao kia nohoia ai ia; ā, kua hanga ia i ana tamariki kia whakanoho ai i a ia.

37 Ā, ka whakaarahia ake e ia he iwi tika, ā, ka whakangaromia iho ngā iwi whakarihariha.

38 Ā, ka ārahina atu e ia te hunga tika ki ngā whenua taurikura, ā, ko te hunga whakarihariha ka whakangaromia iho, ā, ka kangaia te whenua ki a rātou nō rātou anō te take.

39 Ka whakahaere ikeike ia i ngā rangi, nā te mea koia tōna torona, ā, ko tēnei ao tōna tūrangawaewae.

40 Ā, e aroha ana ia ki te hunga e whakaae ana ki a ia hei Atua mō rātou. Nana, i aroha ia ki ō tātou tīpuna, ā, i kawenata tahi ia ki a rātou, āe rā, ki a Aperahama, ki a Īhaka rātou ko Hākopa; ā, i maumahara ia ki ngā kawenata i kawenata ai ia; nā reira, i whakaputaina mai ai rātou e ia i waho i te whenua o Ihipa.

41 Ā, i whakatikaia rātou e ia i te koraha ki tana tokotoko; nā te mea i whakapakeke rātou i ō rātou ngākau pēnā pū anō i a kōrua, ā, i whakatikaia ai rātou nā ō rātou hara. I tukua ai e ia ngā nākahi rērere muramura ki waenganui i a rātou; ā, oti ana te ngau i a rātou ka whakatakotoria e ia he huarahi kia whakaorangia ai rātou; ā, ko te mahi hei meatia e rātou ko te titiro; ā, nā te māmā o te huarahi, ko tōna ngāwari rānei, he tokomaha i mate ai.

42 Ā, i whakapakeke rātou i ō rātou ngākau mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā, ā, ka taunu anō rātou ki a Mohi, ki te Atua anō hoki; hei aha koa, e mōhio ana kōrua i ārahina rātou e tōna mana taurite kore ki roto i te whenua whakaari.

Behold, the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God, and they were ripe in iniquity; and the fulness of the wrath of God was upon them; and the Lord did curse the land against them, and bless it unto our fathers; yea, he did curse it against them unto their destruction, and he did bless it unto our fathers unto their obtaining power over it.

Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; and he hath created his children that they should possess it.

And he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

And he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, and the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne, and this earth is his footstool.

And he loveth those who will have him to be their God. Behold, he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, yea, even Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob; and he remembered the covenants which he had made; wherefore, he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

And he did straiten them in the wilderness with his rod; for they hardened their hearts, even as ye have; and the Lord straitened them because of their iniquity. He sent fiery flying serpents among them; and after they were bitten he prepared a way that they might be healed; and the labor which they had to perform was to look; and because of the simple-ness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

And they did harden their hearts from time to time, and they did revile against Moses, and also against God; nevertheless, ye know that they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

43     Ā ināianeī, i muri iho i ēnei mea katoa, kua tae mai te wā kua meinga whakarihariha rātou, āe rā, tata ana ki te pakaritanga; ā, kāore au e mōhio ana engari i tēnei rangi tonu pea whano ka whakangaromia rātou; nā te mea e mōhio ana ahau tērā me tae mai te rā me whakangaro rātou, hāunga he tokoiti anake, ko rātou nei ka ārahina atu ki roto i te hereherenga.

44     Nā reira, i whakahau ai te Ariki i tōku matua kia wehe atu ia ki roto i te koraha; ā, i whai anō ngā Hūrai kia murua ai tōna oranga; āe rā, kua whai anō kōrua kia murua ai tōna oranga; nā reira, he kaikōhuru kōrua i roto i ō kōrua ngākau, ā, he pērā kōrua ki a rātou.

45     E hohoro ana kōrua ki te mahi haututū engari he pūhoi ki te mahara ki te Ariki tō kōrua Atua. Kua kite kōrua i tētahi anahera, ā, i kōrero ai ia ki a kōrua; kua rangona tōna reo mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā; ā, kua kōrero ia ki a kōrua i te reo kōhimuhimu mārie, engari i tua noa atu kōrua i te rongonga, nā, kihai i taea e kōrua ana kupu te rongongā; nā reira, kua kōrero ia ki a kōrua kia rite ai ki te reo whatitiri, nāna nei te whenua i ngāueue me te mea nei ka wāwahi ai ki tētahi taha, ki tētahi taha.

46     Ā, e mōhio ana anō koutou mā te kaha o tana kupu mana rawa e āhei ana i a ia te mea i te ao kia pāhemo ai; āe rā, e mōhio ana koutou mā tana kupu e āhei ana i a ia te mea i ngā wāhi taratara kia papatairite ai, me ngā wāhi papatairite kia pākarukaru ai. Auē, tēnā, he aha rā ia koutou i pēnei ai te pakeke i roto i ō koutou ngākau?

47     Nana, e haea nei tōku wairua e te mamae mō koutou, e mamae nei anō hoki tōku ngākau; e wehi ana ahau kei makaia atu koutou mō āke tonu atu. Nana, e kī tonu ana ahau i te Wairua o te Atua, nā konā kāore he kaha ō tōku tinana.

And now, after all these things, the time has come that they have become wicked, yea, nearly unto ripeness; and I know not but they are at this day about to be destroyed; for I know that the day must surely come that they must be destroyed, save a few only, who shall be led away into captivity.

Wherefore, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness; and the Jews also sought to take away his life; yea, and ye also have sought to take away his life; wherefore, ye are murderers in your hearts and ye are like unto them.

Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God. Ye have seen an angel, and he spake unto you; yea, ye have heard his voice from time to time; and he hath spoken unto you in a still small voice, but ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words; wherefore, he has spoken unto you like unto the voice of thunder, which did cause the earth to shake as if it were to divide asunder.

And ye also know that by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away; yea, and ye know that by his word he can cause the rough places to be made smooth, and smooth places shall be broken up. O, then, why is it, that ye can be so hard in your hearts?

Behold, my soul is rent with anguish because of you, and my heart is pained; I fear lest ye shall be cast off forever. Behold, I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

48     Ā, i pahawa ake, i te wā i kōrero ai ahau i ēnei kupu i riri rāua ki ahau, ā, i te hiahia rāua kia makaia atu ahau ki roto ki ngā rīre o te moana; ā, i a rāua e haere mai ana kia pā ai ō rāua ringa ki ahau ka kōrero ahau ki a rāua, e mea ana: I runga i te ingoa o te Atua Kaha Rawa, e whakahau ana au i a kōrua kia kaua e pā mai ki ahau, nā te mea e kī ana au i te mana o te Atua, ā, tae atu ana ki te kaitanga i tōku kikokiko; ā, ko ia e pā ai ōna ringaringa ki runga i ahau ka memenge ia anō nei he kākaho maroke; ka kore noa iho ia i mua i te mana o te Atua, nā te mea ka patua ia e te Atua.

49     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kōrero atu ki a rāua kia kaua e amuamu anō ki tō rāua matua; me kaua anō e kaiponu i ā rātou mahi i ahau, nā te mea kua whakahau ahau e te Atua kia hangaia ai he kaipuke.

50     Ā, ka kī atu au ki a rāua: Me i whakahau ahau e te Atua kia meatia ngā mea katoa ka taea ērā e ahau. Mēnā ka whakahau ia ki ahau kia kī atu ai ki tēnei wai, me whenua koe, ka whenua anō ia; ā, mēnā ka kī atu au i a ia, ka meatia anō ia.

51     Ā ināiane, mehemea kei te Ariki tēnei mana nui, ā, kua oti anō ngā merekara maha i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, e pēhea nei e kore ai ia e āhei ki te whakahau i ahau, kia hanga ai au he kaipuke?

52     Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kōrero atu i ngā mea maha ki ōku tuākana, nā konā i pōauau rāua, ā, tē taea e rāua te tautohetohe mai ki ahau; kāore hoki rāua i ngana ki te whakapā i ō rāua ringaringa ki runga i ahau, ō rāua matimati rānei ki te whāwhā i ahau, mō te takiwā pū anō o ngā rā maha. Nā, kāore i ngana kia pēneihia ai e rāua kei memenge rāua i tōku aroaro, anō te mana nui o te Wairua o te Atua; ā, i pēnei ai te mahinga ki runga ki a rāua.

53     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te Ariki ki ahau: Torona atu anō tō ringa ki ō tuākana, e kore rāua e memenge i tō aroaro, engari ka whakaoioia rāua, e ai tā te Ariki, ā, koinei tāku e mea ai, e mōhio ai rāua ko ahau te Ariki tō rāua Atua.

54     Ā, i pahawa ake, i toro atu ahau i tōku ringa ki ōku tuākana, ā, kīhai i memenge i tōku aroaro; engari i whakaoioi te Ariki i a rāua, e ai pū anō ki te kupu kua kōrerotia nei e ia.

And now it came to pass that when I had spoken these words they were angry with me, and were desirous to throw me into the depths of the sea; and as they came forth to lay their hands upon me I spake unto them, saying: In the name of the Almighty God, I command you that ye touch me not, for I am filled with the power of God, even unto the consuming of my flesh; and whoso shall lay his hands upon me shall wither even as a dried reed; and he shall be as naught before the power of God, for God shall smite him.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said unto them that they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, for God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

And I said unto them: If God had commanded me to do all things I could do them. If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth; and if I should say it, it would be done.

And now, if the Lord has such great power, and has wrought so many miracles among the children of men, how is it that he cannot instruct me, that I should build a ship?

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, said many things unto my brethren, insomuch that they were confounded and could not contend against me; neither durst they lay their hands upon me nor touch me with their fingers, even for the space of many days. Now they durst not do this lest they should wither before me, so powerful was the Spirit of God; and thus it had wrought upon them.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, and they shall not wither before thee, but I will shock them, saith the Lord, and this will I do, that they may know that I am the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that I stretched forth my hand unto my brethren, and they did not wither before me; but the Lord did shake them, even according to the word which he had spoken.

Ā ināianeī, ka kī mai rāua: E mōhio pū ana māua i a koe te Ariki, nā te mea e mōhio ana māua koia te mana o te Ariki kua whakaoioia nei māua. Ā, ka hinga iho rāua ki tōku aroaro, whano rāua kia koropiko iho ki ahau, engari kīhai i tukua e ahau, e mea ana: Ko au tō teina, āe rā, ko tā kōrua teina pū anō ahau; nā reira, koropikotia te Ariki tō kōrua Atua, ā, whakahōnoretia tō kōrua matua me tō kōrua whaea, kia roa ai ō kōrua rā i runga i te whenua e homai nei e te Ariki tō kōrua Atua ki a kōrua.

And now, they said: We know of a surety that the Lord is with thee, for we know that it is the power of the Lord that has shaken us. And they fell down before me, and were about to worship me, but I would not suffer them, saying: I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; wherefore, worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God shall give thee.

## 1 Nīwhai 18

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i koropiko rātou ki te Ariki, ā, ka haere tahi me au; ā, ka whakamahi mātou i ngā mahinga rākau whakamīharo. Ā, ka whakaatu mai te Ariki ki ahau mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā i te āhuatanga me mahi ai ahau i ngā rākau o te kaupuke.
- 2 Ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, kāore i whakamahia ngā rākau i runga i te ritenga i ākona ai e te tangata, kāore hoki au i hanga ai i te kaupuke i runga i ritenga o te tangata; engari i hangaia ia e ahau i runga i te ritenga o te Ariki i whakaatu mai ai ki ahau; nā reira, e hara ia i runga i te ritenga o te tangata.
- 3 Ā, ko au, ko Nīwhai, i haere putuputu atu ai ki te maunga, ā, ka inoi putuputu atu ki te Ariki; nā reira te Ariki i whakaatu mai ai i ngā mea nui ki ahau.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i taku whakaotinga i te kaupuke, e ai ki tā te kupu a te Ariki, ka kite atu ōku tuākana i tōna pai, ā, ko te whakamahinga anō hoki he nui rawa atu tōna pai; nā reira, i whakaiti anō rātou i a rātou anō i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, i pā atu te reo o te Ariki ki tōku matua, kia ara ake mātou, ā, kia haere iho ki roto i te kaupuke.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, i te aonga ake o te rā, i muri iho i tā mātou whakaritehanga i ngā mea katoa, he nui te hua rākau me ngā kikokiko nō te koraha, he nui anō te mīere me ngā ō e ai ki ērā i whakahau mai ai te Ariki ki a mātou, i haere iho mātou ki roto i te kaupuke, me ā mātou utanga katoa me ā mātou purapura, me ērā atu mea katoa i haria mai me mātou, tēnā me tēnā e ai ki tana pakeke; nā reira, i haere katoa iho mātou ki roto i te kaupuke, me ā mātou wāhine, me ā mātou tamariki.
- 7 Ā ināianeī, kua whānau mai i ngā tama tokorua ā tōku matua i te koraha; i huaina te tōmua ko Hākopa, ko te tōmuri ko Hōhepa.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā mātou haerenga katoatanga iho ki roto i te kaupuke, me te mauranga atu i a mātou ā mātou ō me ngā mea kua whakahau nei mātou, ka rere atu mātou ki te moana, ā, ka āia whakamua atu e te hau whaka-te-whenua whakaari.

## 1 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that they did worship the Lord, and did go forth with me; and we did work timbers of curious workmanship. And the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

Now I, Nephi, did not work the timbers after the manner which was learned by men, neither did I build the ship after the manner of men; but I did build it after the manner which the Lord had shown unto me; wherefore, it was not after the manner of men.

And I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, and I did pray oft unto the Lord; wherefore the Lord showed unto me great things.

And it came to pass that after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord, my brethren beheld that it was good, and that the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine; wherefore, they did humble themselves again before the Lord.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came unto my father, that we should arise and go down into the ship.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did go down into the ship, with all our loading and our seeds, and whatsoever thing we had brought with us, every one according to his age; wherefore, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

And now, my father had begat two sons in the wilderness; the elder was called Jacob and the younger Joseph.

And it came to pass after we had all gone down into the ship, and had taken with us our provisions and things which had been commanded us, we did put forth into the sea and were driven forth before the wind towards the promised land.

- 9     Ā, i muri iho i tā mātou āinga atu e te hau mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha, nana, i tīmata haere ōku tuākana me ngā tama a Ihimaera me ā rātou wāhine anō hoki ki te whakaharihari i a rātou anō, nā konā ka tīmata rātou ki te kanikani, me te waiata, me te kōrero whakaharihari, āe rā, ka wareware pū anō i a rātou nā tēhea mana rātou i kawē mai ai, āe rā, ka hīkina ake rātou i runga i te harehare nui.
- 10     Ā ko au, ko Nīwhai, ka tīmata ki te wehi nui kei riri mai te Ariki ki a mātou, me te patu i a mātou nā ō mātou mahi haututū, kia horomia ake mātou i ngā rire o te moana; nā reira ahau, a Nīwhai, i tīmata ki te kōrero atu ki a rātou i runga i te whaiwhakaaro nui; engari nana, i riri rātou ki ahau, e mea ana: Engari mātou e tuku kia noho ai tā mātou teina hei rangatira i runga i a mātou.
- 11     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kawea au e Rāmana rāua ko Remuere, ā, ka herea au ki ngā aho, ā, ka kaha tūkino rāua ki ahau; hei aha koa, i tukua tēnei e te Ariki kia whakakitea atu ai e ia tōna mana, hei whakatutukitanga i tana kupu i kōrerohia e ia e pā ana ki te hunga whakaharihari.
- 12     Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā rāua herenga i a au nā konā kāore i taea e ahau te korikori, ko te kāpehu, kua whakaritea nei e te Ariki, ka mutu te mahi.
- 13     Nā reira, kāore rātou i mōhio ki hea whakahaere ai i te kaupuke, nā konā ara ake ai he tūpuhi nui, āe rā, he tūpuhi nui whakawehi, ā, ka āia whakamuritia mātou i runga i ngā wai mō te takiwā o ngā rā e toru; ā, ka matakū haere rātou kei toromi iho i te moana; hei aha koa kīhai rātou i wewete i ahau.
- 14     Ā, i te rā tuawhā, kua āia whakamuritia mātou, ka kino haere rawa te tūpuhi.
- 15     Ā, i pahawa ake, whano mātou ka horomia ake i ngā rire o te moana. Ā, i muri iho i tā mātou āinga whakamuritanga i runga i ngā wai mō te takiwā o ngā rā e whā, ka tīmata ōku tuākana ki te kite atu i ngā whakawākanga a te Atua kua tau ki runga i a rātou, ā, me mate rātou ki te kore e rīpeneta i ā rātou mahi haututū; nā reira, i haere mai rātou ki ahau, ā, ka wetekina ngā aho kua mau nei ki ōku pona ringa, ā nana kua nui rawa atu tōna pupuhitanga; ā, ko ōku pona waewae anō i nui te pupuhitanga, ā, i nui rawa tō reira mamae.

And after we had been driven forth before the wind for the space of many days, behold, my brethren and the sons of Ishmael and also their wives began to make themselves merry, insomuch that they began to dance, and to sing, and to speak with much rudeness, yea, even that they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; yea, they were lifted up unto exceeding rudeness.

And I, Nephi, began to fear exceedingly lest the Lord should be angry with us, and smite us because of our iniquity, that we should be swallowed up in the depths of the sea; wherefore, I, Nephi, began to speak to them with much soberness; but behold they were angry with me, saying: We will not that our younger brother shall be a ruler over us.

And it came to pass that Laman and Lemuel did take me and bind me with cords, and they did treat me with much harshness; nevertheless, the Lord did suffer it that he might show forth his power, unto the fulfilling of his word which he had spoken concerning the wicked.

And it came to pass that after they had bound me insomuch that I could not move, the compass, which had been prepared of the Lord, did cease to work.

Wherefore, they knew not whither they should steer the ship, insomuch that there arose a great storm, yea, a great and terrible tempest, and we were driven back upon the waters for the space of three days; and they began to be frightened exceedingly lest they should be drowned in the sea; nevertheless they did not loose me.

And on the fourth day, which we had been driven back, the tempest began to be exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that we were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea. And after we had been driven back upon the waters for the space of four days, my brethren began to see that the judgments of God were upon them, and that they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; wherefore, they came unto me, and loosed the bands which were upon my wrists, and behold they had swollen exceedingly; and also mine ankles were much swollen, and great was the soreness thereof.

- 16 Hei aha koa, i titiro ahau ki tōku Atua, ā, ka whakamoemiti atu au ki a ia i te roanga katoatanga o te rā; ā, kāore au i amuamu atu ki te Ariki nā ōku whakamamaetanga.
- 17 Ināianeī ko tōku matua, a Rīhai, i kōrero ia i ngā mea maha ki a rāua, ki ngā tama anō hoki a Ihimaera; engari, nana, i nui ngā kupu whakawehiwehi i tā ai rātou ki tētahi e kōrero ai mōku; ā, ko ōku mātua kua pāngia i ngā tau, ā, kua mamae nui i te pōuri nā ā rāua tamariki, ka whakahekea rāua ki raro, āe rā, ki runga pū anō i ō rāua moenga-tūroro.
- 18 Nā tō rāua hinapōuri me tō rāua pōuri, me te haututū o ōku tuākana, i whakatatangia rāua kia kawea pūtia atu i waho i tēnei wā kia tūtaki ai i tō rāua Atua; āe rā, whano ka kawea iho ō rāua makawe hina kia takoto iho ki raro i te puehu; āe rā, whano pū anō ka makaia pōuritia rāua ki roto i te urupā wai.
- 19 Ā, ko Hākopa rāua ko Hōhepa anō hoki, e tamariki ana, e tika ana kia atawhaitia nuitia, i whakahinapōuri nā ngā whakamamaetanga o tō rāua whaea; ā, ko taku hoawahine anō hoki me ana roimata me ana inoi, ā, ko aku tamariki anō, kāore i whakangāwarihia ngā ngākau o ōku tuākana kia wetekina ai ahau e rāua.
- 20 Ā, karekau he mea hāunga ko te mana o te Atua, nāna rāua i whakawehi ki te whakangaromanga, i taea ō rāua ngākau te whakangāwari; nā reira, i tā rāua kitenga atu whano ka horomia ake i ngā rire o te moana ka ripeneta rāua i te mea i mahi ai rāua, nā konā rāua i wewete i ahau.
- 21 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā rāua wewetetanga i ahau, nana, i tiki au i te kāpehu, ā, ka mahi ia ki tāku i hiahia ai. Ā, i pahawa ake, i inoi ahau ki te Ariki; ā, i muri iho i taku inoitanga ka tau ngā hau, ā, ka tau te tūpuhi, ā, he nui te āio.
- 22 Ā, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i ārahi te kaupuke, nā, ka rere anō mātou whaka-te-whenua whakaari.
- 23 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā mātou rere atu mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha ka tae atu mātou ki te whenua whakaari; ā, ka haere whakamua atu ki runga i te whenua, ā, ka whakatūria ō mātou tēneti; ā, ka huaina e mātou ko te whenua whakaari.

Nevertheless, I did look unto my God, and I did praise him all the day long; and I did not murmur against the Lord because of mine afflictions.

Now my father, Lehi, had said many things unto them, and also unto the sons of Ishmael; but, behold, they did breathe out much threatenings against any one that should speak for me; and my parents being stricken in years, and having suffered much grief because of their children, they were brought down, yea, even upon their sick-beds.

Because of their grief and much sorrow, and the iniquity of my brethren, they were brought near even to be carried out of this time to meet their God; yea, their grey hairs were about to be brought down to lie low in the dust; yea, even they were near to be cast with sorrow into a watery grave.

And Jacob and Joseph also, being young, having need of much nourishment, were grieved because of the afflictions of their mother; and also my wife with her tears and prayers, and also my children, did not soften the hearts of my brethren that they would loose me.

And there was nothing save it were the power of God, which threatened them with destruction, could soften their hearts; wherefore, when they saw that they were about to be swallowed up in the depths of the sea they repented of the thing which they had done, insomuch that they loosed me.

And it came to pass after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work whither I desired it. And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord; and after I had prayed the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did guide the ship, that we sailed again towards the promised land.

And it came to pass that after we had sailed for the space of many days we did arrive at the promised land; and we went forth upon the land, and did pitch our tents; and we did call it the promised land.



24     Ā, i pahawa ake, i tīmata mātou ki te ngaki i te whenua, ka tīmata anō mātou ki te whakatō katoa i ā mātou purapura ki roto i te whenua, i mauria mai nei e mātou mai i te whenua o Hiruharama. Ā, i pahawa ake, i nui rawa atu tō ēnā tupu; nā reira, i manaakitia nuitia mātou.

25     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kite mātou i runga i te whenua whakaari, i a mātou e haere ana i te koraha, nā, i reira ngā kararehe katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua i te ngahere, ko te kau me te ōkiha, me te kaihe me te hoiho, me te koati me te koati mohoao, me ngā tū kararehe mohoao katoa, koinei hei painga mō te tangata. Ā, i kite mātou i ngā tūmomo oa katoa, ko te koura tahi, me te hiriwā, me te kapa.

And it came to pass that we did begin to till the earth, and we began to plant seeds; yea, we did put all our seeds into the earth, which we had brought from the land of Jerusalem. And it came to pass that they did grow exceedingly; wherefore, we were blessed in abundance.

And it came to pass that we did find upon the land of promise, as we journeyed in the wilderness, that there were beasts in the forests of every kind, both the cow and the ox, and the ass and the horse, and the goat and the wild goat, and all manner of wild animals, which were for the use of men. And we did find all manner of ore, both of gold, and of silver, and of copper.

## 1 Nīwhai 19

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, i whakahau te Ariki i ahau, nā reira au i hanga ai i ngā papa ki te oa kia whaowhao ai au i runga i ērā te tuhinga mō tōku iwi. Ā, i whaowhaoa e ahau i runga i ngā papa i hanga ai au te tuhinga o tōku matua, me ā mātou haerenga i roto i te koraha, me ngā poropititanga a tōku matua; me āku ake poropititanga maha anō hoki kua whaowhaoa nei ki runga i ērā e ahau.
- 2 Ā, kāore au i mōhio i te wā i hanga ai ahau i ērā, nā, ka whakahaua ahau e te Ariki kia hangaia ai ēnei papa; nā reira, ko te tuhinga o tōku matua, me ngā whakapapa o ōna tīpuna, me te wāhi nui o ā mātou mahi i roto i te koraha kua whaowhaoa ki runga i ērā papa tuatahi kua kōrerotia ake nei e ahau; nā reira, ko ngā mea i puta pū i mua i taku hanganga i ēnei papa, he pono ia, kua kōrerotia pūtia i runga i ngā papa tuatahi.
- 3 Ā, i muri iho i taku hanganga i ēnei papa mā runga i te whakahaunga, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i whiwhi tētahi whakahaunga, nā, ko te minitanga me ngā poropititanga, ko ngā wāhi mārāma utu nui o reira, me tuhituhi ki runga i ēnei papa; ā, ko ngā mea kua tuhia me mau mō te whakaakoranga i tōku iwi, ko rātou e whakanoho ai i te whenua, ā, mō ngā take whaimōhio tanga anō hoki, ko aua take e mōhio ana e te Ariki.
- 4 Nā reira, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i hanga tētahi tuhinga ki runga i ētahi atu papa, e tuku kōrero ana ia, e tuku kōrero nui ake ana rānei ia mō ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga me ngā whakangaromanga o tōku iwi. Ā, nāku tēnei i mahi, me te whakahau i tōku iwi me aha rātou hei muri i tōku rironga atu; ā, me tuku iho ēnei papa mai i tētahi whakatupuranga ki tētahi whakatupuranga, mai i tētahi poropiti rānei ki tētahi poropiti, ā, kia whakahau mai rā anō ai te Ariki.
- 5 Ā, ka tukuna tētahi kōrero mō taku hanganga i ēnei papa a muri ake nei; ā kātahi rā, nana, ka haere tonu e ai ki tāku kua kōrerotia ake nei; ā, ka mahia tēnei e ahau kia puritia ai ngā mea tino tapu mō te mātauranga o tōku iwi.

## 1 Nephi 19

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded me, wherefore I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. And upon the plates which I made I did engraven the record of my father, and also our journeyings in the wilderness, and the prophecies of my father; and also many of mine own prophecies have I engraven upon them.

And I knew not at the time when I made them that I should be commanded of the Lord to make these plates; wherefore, the record of my father, and the genealogy of his fathers, and the more part of all our proceedings in the wilderness are engraven upon those first plates of which I have spoken; wherefore, the things which transpired before I made these plates are, of a truth, more particularly made mention upon the first plates.

And after I had made these plates by way of commandment, I, Nephi, received a commandment that the ministry and the prophecies, the more plain and precious parts of them, should be written upon these plates; and that the things which were written should be kept for the instruction of my people, who should possess the land, and also for other wise purposes, which purposes are known unto the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, did make a record upon the other plates, which gives an account, or which gives a greater account of the wars and contentions and destructions of my people. And this have I done, and commanded my people what they should do after I was gone; and that these plates should be handed down from one generation to another, or from one prophet to another, until further commandments of the Lord.

And an account of my making these plates shall be given hereafter; and then, behold, I proceed according to that which I have spoken; and this I do that the more sacred things may be kept for the knowledge of my people.

6 Hei aha koa, kāore au mō te tuhi i tētahi mea ki runga i ngā papa hāunga ngā mea e whakaaro ana au he tapu ia. Ā ināianei, mēnā ka hē ahau, i hē pū anō rātou i onamata; kua kore ahau e whakawātea i ahau anō nā ētahi atu tangata, engari nō te ngoikoretanga kei roto i ahau, e ai tō te kikokiko, ka whakawātea ahau i ahau anō.

7 Nā te mea ko ngā mea e whakaaro nuitia ana e ētahi tangata, ki te tīnana tahi me te wairua, e whakakorehia ana e ētahi atu, ā, e takatakahia iho ana e ō rātou waewae. Āe rā, ko te Atua pū anō o Iharaira e takatakahia iho ana e ō ngā tangata waewae; ko tāku, takatakahia iho e ō rātou waewae engari me pēnei kē hei kōrero māku—ka whakakore rātou i a ia, ā, tē whakarongo ki te reo o ōna whakangārahu.

8 Ā nana ka haere mai ia, e ai tā ngā kupu a te anahera, hei ngā tau e ono rau mai i te wā i wehe ai tōku matua i Hiruharama.

9 Ā, ko te ao, nā tā rātou mahi haututū, ka whakawākia ia he mea kore noa iho; nā reira ka whakawhiua ia e rātou, ā, ka whakaririka kau ia; ā, ka patua ia e rātou, ā, ka whakaririka kau ia. Āe rā, ka tūhaina ia e rātou, ā, ka whakaririka kau ia, nā tōna atawhai aroha me tōna manawa-nui ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.

10 Ā ko te Atua o ō mātou matua, i ārahina mai nei rātou ki waho o Ihipa, ki waho o te hereherenga, ā, i tiakina anōtia i te koraha e ia, āe rā, ko te Atua o Aperahama, o Ihaka hoki, ko te Atua hoki o Hākopa, ka tukua ia e ia anō, e ai tā ngā kupu a te anahera, anō he tangata, ki roto ki ngā ringaringa o ngā tāngata whakarihariha, kia whakaarahia ake, e ai tā ngā kupu a Henoka, ā, kia rīpekatiā ai, e ai tā ngā kupu a Neuma, ā, ka tāpuketia i tētahi ana, e ai tā ngā kupu a Henohi, i kōrerohia ake nei e ia e pā ana ki ngā rangi e toru o te pōuritanga, e hoatu nei hei tohu ki te hunga e noho ana i ngā motu o te moana, e hoatu pū anō ake nei ki te hunga ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira.

Nevertheless, I do not write anything upon plates save it be that I think it be sacred. And now, if I do err, even did they err of old; not that I would excuse myself because of other men, but because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would excuse myself.

For the things which some men esteem to be of great worth, both to the body and soul, others set at naught and trample under their feet. Yea, even the very God of Israel do men trample under their feet; I say, trample under their feet but I would speak in other words—they set him at naught, and hearken not to the voice of his counsels.

And behold he cometh, according to the words of the angel, in six hundred years from the time my father left Jerusalem.

And the world, because of their iniquity, shall judge him to be a thing of naught; wherefore they scourge him, and he suffereth it; and they smite him, and he suffereth it. Yea, they spit upon him, and he suffereth it, because of his loving kindness and his long-suffering towards the children of men.

And the God of our fathers, who were led out of Egypt, out of bondage, and also were preserved in the wilderness by him, yea, the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, according to the words of the angel, as a man, into the hands of wicked men, to be lifted up, according to the words of Zenock, and to be crucified, according to the words of Neum, and to be buried in a sepulchre, according to the words of Zenos, which he spake concerning the three days of darkness, which should be a sign given of his death unto those who should inhabit the isles of the sea, more especially given unto those who are of the house of Israel.

- 11 Nā i pēnei tā te poropiti: Ka toro mārika mai te Ariki te Atua ki te whare o Iharaira katoa hei taua rā, ko ētahi ki tōna reo, nā tō rātou tika, tae atu ana ki tō rātou hari nui me tō rātou whakaoranga, ā, ko ētahi atu ki ngā whatitiri me ngā uira o tōna mana, mā te tūpuhi, mā te ahi, mā te paoa hoki, me te kohu pōuri, mā te tūwheratanga hoki o te whenua, mā ngā maunga hoki e kahakina ake ai.
- 12 Ā, ka puta mārika mai ēnei mea katoa, tā te poropiti Henohi. Ā, me pakaru ngā kōhatu o te whenua; ā, nā ngā ngungurutanga o te whenua, he tokomaha ngā kīngi o ngā motu o te moana e meinga ai e te Wairua o te Atua, kia hāmama ai: E whakaririka ana te Atua o te ao māori.
- 13 Ā, mō te hunga kei Hiruharama, tā te poropiti, ka whakawhiua rātou e ngā tāngata katoa, nā te mea e rīpeka ana rātou i te Atua o Iharaira, ā, e tahuri kē atu ana ō rātou ngākau, e whakaparahako tohu ana me ngā mea whakamīharo, me te mana me te korōria o te Atua o Iharaira.
- 14 Ā, nā te mea e tahuri kē atu ana rātou i ō rātou ngākau, tā te poropiti, ā, kia whakahāweatia te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, ka kāewaewa rātou i te kikokiko, ā, ka mate, ā, ka meinga he mūrau whakahihī, ā, ka mauāharatia i waenganui i ngā iwi katoa.
- 15 Hei aha koa, ina haere mai ai taua rā, tā te poropiti, tē tahuri kē atu rātou i ō rātou ngākau ki te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, i reira ia e maumahara ai ki ngā kawenata i mea ai ia ki ō rātou matua.
- 16 Āe rā, i reira ia e maumahara ai ki ngā motu o te moana; ā, ko ngā tāngata katoa ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira, māku e whakahui mai, tā te Ariki, e ai ki tā ngā kupu a Henohi, mai i ngā tōpito e whā o te ao.
- 17 Āe rā, ka kite te ao katoa i te whakaoranga a te Ariki, tā te poropiti; ka manaakitia ia iwi, hapū, reo me ngā tāngata.
- 18 Ā nāku, nā Nīwhai, i tuhi ēnei tuinga ki tōku iwi, me kore pea ahau e whakapakepake i a rātou kia mahara ai rātou ki te Ariki tō rātou Kaihoko.
- 19 Nā reira, kei te kōrero ahau ki te whare o Iharaira, mēnā rā ia e whiwhi ai i ēnei mea.

For thus spake the prophet: The Lord God surely shall visit all the house of Israel at that day, some with his voice, because of their righteousness, unto their great joy and salvation, and others with the thunderings and the lightnings of his power, by tempest, by fire, and by smoke, and vapor of darkness, and by the opening of the earth, and by mountains which shall be carried up.

And all these things must surely come, saith the prophet Zenos. And the rocks of the earth must rend; and because of the groanings of the earth, many of the kings of the isles of the sea shall be wrought upon by the Spirit of God, to exclaim: The God of nature suffers.

And as for those who are at Jerusalem, saith the prophet, they shall be scourged by all people, because they crucify the God of Israel, and turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

And because they turn their hearts aside, saith the prophet, and have despised the Holy One of Israel, they shall wander in the flesh, and perish, and become a hiss and a byword, and be hated among all nations.

Nevertheless, when that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers.

Yea, then will he remember the isles of the sea; yea, and all the people who are of the house of Israel, will I gather in, saith the Lord, according to the words of the prophet Zenos, from the four quarters of the earth.

Yea, and all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, saith the prophet; every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed.

And I, Nephi, have written these things unto my people, that perhaps I might persuade them that they would remember the Lord their Redeemer.

Wherefore, I speak unto all the house of Israel, if it so be that they should obtain these things.

- 20 Nana rā, he mahinga ōku i te wairua, e whakangenge nei i ahau tae atu ana ki te ngoikoretanga o ōku pona katoa, mō te hunga kei Hiruharama; nā te mea me i kore te Ariki i aroha mai, kia whakaatu mai ai ki ahau e pā ana ki a rātou, pēnā ki tāna mō ngā poropiti onamata, kua mate anō hoki ahau.
- 21 Ā, i whakaatu mārika atu ia ki ngā poropiti onamata i ngā mea katoa e pā ana ki a rātou; ā, i whakaatu atu anō ia ki te hunga tokomaha e pā ana ki a mātou; nā reira, e tika ana kia mōhio ai mātou e pā ana ki a rātou nā te mea kua tuhia ēnā ki runga i ngā papa parāhe.
- 22 I pahawa ianei ake nāku, nā Nīwhai, i whakaako i ōku tuākana i ēnei mea; ā, i pahawa ake, i pānui au i ngā mea maha ki a rātou, kua whaowhaoa nei i runga i ngā papa parāhe, kia mōhio ai rātou e pā ana ki ngā mahinga a te Ariki i ētahi atu whenua, i waenganui i ngā iwi onamata.
- 23 Ā, i pānui ahau i ngā mea maha ki a rātou kua tuhia nei i roto i ngā pukapuka a Mohi; otirā, kia tino whakapakepake i a rātou kia whakaponu ai i te Ariki tō rātou Kaihoko i pānui ai ahau ērā kua tuhia nei e te poropiti Ihāia; nā te mea i whakataurite ahau i ngā karaipiture katoa ki a mātou, hei painga, hei akoranga mō mātou.
- 24 Nā reira ahau i kōrero atu ki a rātou, e mea ana: Whakarongo ki ngā kupu a te poropiti, e koutou ngā mōrehu o te whare o Iharaira, he manga kua whatia atu; whakarongo ki ngā kupu a te poropiti, kua tuhia nei ki te whare katoa o Iharaira, ā, whakatauritetia rātou ki a koutou anō, kia whai tūmanako ai koutou pērā i ō koutou huānga kua whatia mai nei koutou i a rātou; nā tēnei āhuetanga kua tuhi nei te poropiti.

For behold, I have workings in the spirit, which doth weary me even that all my joints are weak, for those who are at Jerusalem; for had not the Lord been merciful, to show unto me concerning them, even as he had prophets of old, I should have perished also.

And he surely did show unto the prophets of old all things concerning them; and also he did show unto many concerning us; wherefore, it must needs be that we know concerning them for they are written upon the plates of brass.

Now it came to pass that I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; and it came to pass that I did read many things to them, which were engraven upon the plates of brass, that they might know concerning the doings of the Lord in other lands, among people of old.

And I did read many things unto them which were written in the books of Moses; but that I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer I did read unto them that which was written by the prophet Isaiah; for I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning.

Wherefore I spake unto them, saying: Hear ye the words of the prophet, ye who are a remnant of the house of Israel, a branch who have been broken off; hear ye the words of the prophet, which were written unto all the house of Israel, and liken them unto yourselves, that ye may have hope as well as your brethren from whom ye have been broken off; for after this manner has the prophet written.

## 1 Nīwhai 20

- 1 Whakarongo mai kia rongō ai i tēnei, E te whare o Hākopa, e te hunga kua karangatia nei ki te ingoa o Iharaira, ā, kua puta mai i ngā wai o Hura, kua puta rānei i ngā wai o te rūmakitanga, e whakaoatitia ana ki te ingoa o te Ariki, me te whakahua ake i te Atua o Iharaira, engari kāore e whakaoatitia ana i runga i te pono me te tika.
- 2 Hei aha koa, ko tā rātou e karanga nei nō te pā tapu rātou, engari kāore rātou e whakawhirinaki ana ki runga i te Atua o Iharaira, ko ia te Ariki o ngā Mano, āe rā, ko te Ariki o ngā Mano tōna ingoa.
- 3 Nana, kua whakapuakina ake e ahau ngā mea o mua mai i te tīmatanga; ā, i puta whakamua atu ērā i tōku māngai, ā, nāku rātou i whakaatu. Nāku rātou i whakaatu whakarere.
- 4 Ā, i mahi ahau nā te mea i mōhio ahau he taikaha koe, ā, ko tō kakī he uaua rino, ā, he parāhe tō rae;
- 5 Ā, nāku pū anō i whakapuaki atu mai i te tīmatanga ki a koe; i mua rā anō i tōna pahawatanga nāku ērā i whakaatu atu ki a koe; ā, nāku ērā i whakaatu atu he wehi nōku kei kī mai koe—Nā taku hautipua ērā i mahi, nā taku whakapakoko anō, ā, nā taku whakaahua whakarewanga ērā i whakahau.
- 6 Kua kitea, kua rangona tēnei katoa e koe; ā, kua kore e whakapuakina atu ērā e koe? Kua whakaaturia atu e ahau ngā mea hou ki a koe mai i tēnei wā, ko ngā mea huna pū anō, ā, kīhai i mōhioia ērā e koe.
- 7 Kua hangaia ērā ināiane, ā, ehara mai i te tīmatanga, i mua pū anō i te rā i rongō kore ai koe i ērā kua whakapuakina ērā ki a koe, kei kī ake koe—Nana i mōhio ahau.
- 8 Āe rā, kīhai koe i rongō; āe rā, kīhai koe i mōhio; āe rā, nō taua wā kīhai tō taringa i puarehia; nā te mea i mōhio au ka mahi tino tinihanga koe, ā, kua karangatia ake he kaihara nō te kōpū.
- 9 Hei aha koa, ka whakaaro au ki tōku ingoa, ka tārewa au i tōku riri, ā, ka whakaaro ki taku whakamoemititanga ka pupuri mai i a koe, kia kaua au e hātepe atu i a koe.
- 10 Nā, nana, nāku koe i whakapakari, nāku koe i whiriwhiri i roto i te ahi o te whakamamaetanga.

## 1 Nephi 20

Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and are come forth out of the waters of Judah, or out of the waters of baptism, who swear by the name of the Lord, and make mention of the God of Israel, yet they swear not in truth nor in righteousness.

Nevertheless, they call themselves of the holy city, but they do not stay themselves upon the God of Israel, who is the Lord of Hosts; yea, the Lord of Hosts is his name.

Behold, I have declared the former things from the beginning; and they went forth out of my mouth, and I showed them. I did show them suddenly.

And I did it because I knew that thou art obstinate, and thy neck is an iron sinew, and thy brow brass;

And I have even from the beginning declared to thee; before it came to pass I showed them thee; and I showed them for fear lest thou shouldst say—Mine idol hath done them, and my graven image, and my molten image hath commanded them.

Thou hast seen and heard all this; and will ye not declare them? And that I have showed thee new things from this time, even hidden things, and thou didst not know them.

They are created now, and not from the beginning, even before the day when thou heardest them not they were declared unto thee, lest thou shouldst say—Behold I knew them.

Yea, and thou heardest not; yea, thou knewest not; yea, from that time thine ear was not opened; for I knew that thou wouldst deal very treacherously, and wast called a transgressor from the womb.

Nevertheless, for my name's sake will I defer mine anger, and for my praise will I refrain from thee, that I cut thee not off.

For, behold, I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

- 11 He whakaaro hoki ki ahau, āe rā, he whakaaro ki ahau e meatia ai tēnei e ahau, nā te mea kua kore au e tuku kia whakapokea tōku ingoa, ā, kua kore e hoatu e ahau tōku korōria ki tētahi atu.
- 12 Whakarongo mai ki ahau, E Hākopa, me Iharaira tāku i karangahia ai, nā te mea ko au ia; ko au te tuatahi, ā, ko au hoki te whakamutunga.
- 13 Nā tōku ringa anō i whakatakoto te tūranga o te ao, ā, nā tōku ringa matau ngā rangi i whanganga. Ka karanga atu au ki a rātou, ā, ka tū tahi ake rātou.
- 14 Koutou katoa, huihui koutou anō, rongo mai anō hoki; nā wai o rātou i whakapuaki ēnei mea ki a rātou? Kua arohaina rātou e te Ariki; āe rā, kua whakatutukihia anōtia e ia tana kupu kua whakapuakina e ia mā roto i a rātou; ā, māna tāna e pai ai ki Papurona, ā, ka pā iho tōna ringa ki ngā Karari.
- 15 Waihoki, e kī ana te Ariki; ko ahau te Ariki, āe rā, nāku i kōrero; āe rā, nāku ia i karanga kia whakapuaki ai, nāku ia i kawe, ā, māna anō tōna huarahi e whakahoukura.
- 16 Whakatata mai koe ki ahau; kāore au i kōrero puku; mai i te tīmatanga, mai i te wā i whakapuakina ai nāku i kōrero; ā, nā te Ariki te Atua, me tōna Wairua, ahau i tono mai.
- 17 Ā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, tō Kaihoko, ko te Mea Tapu o Iharaira; nāku ia i tono, ko te Ariki tō Atua ko ia e whakaakongia nei koe kia whai painga mōu, ko ia e ārahina nei koe mā te ara e haere ai, i mahi ai.
- 18 Auē me i whakarongo koe ki aku whakahau—i konā, kua rite ki tētahi awa te mau o tō rongo, ā, ko ngā ngaru o te moana te mau o tō tika.
- 19 Kua rite ō uri ki te onepū; ko ngā āti o ō whēkau he rite ki ngā kirikiri o reira; me kore tōna ingoa i hātepea atu, whakangaromia rānei i tōku aroaro.
- 20 Haere whakamua atu koe i Papurona, tahuti atu i ngā Karari, i runga i te reo waiata e whakapuaki ai koe, kōrerotia tēnei, whakatauākīhia ki te pito o te whenua; kī atu koe: Kua hokona e te Ariki tana pononga a Hākopa.

For mine own sake, yea, for mine own sake will I do this, for I will not suffer my name to be polluted, and I will not give my glory unto another.

Hearken unto me, O Jacob, and Israel my called, for I am he; I am the first, and I am also the last.

Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, and my right hand hath spanned the heavens. I call unto them and they stand up together.

All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; who among them hath declared these things unto them? The Lord hath loved him; yea, and he will fulfil his word which he hath declared by them; and he will do his pleasure on Babylon, and his arm shall come upon the Chaldeans.

Also, saith the Lord; I the Lord, yea, I have spoken; yea, I have called him to declare, I have brought him, and he shall make his way prosperous.

Come ye near unto me; I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning, from the time that it was declared have I spoken; and the Lord God, and his Spirit, hath sent me.

And thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I have sent him, the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit, who leadeth thee by the way thou shouldst go, hath done it.

O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments—then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea.

Thy seed also had been as the sand; the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before me.

Go ye forth of Babylon, flee ye from the Chaldeans, with a voice of singing declare ye, tell this, utter to the end of the earth; say ye: The Lord hath redeemed his servant Jacob.

21     Ā, i matewai kore rātou; nāna rātou i ārahi i roto i  
ngā tuakau; nāna i mea kia rere mai ngā wai i te  
toka; nāna hoki te toka i wāwahi, ā, ka pupū mai ngā  
wai.

22     Ā, ahakoa kua oti i a ia tēnei katoa, me tōna nui  
noa atu anō hoki, kāore he maungārongo, tā te Ariki,  
ki te hunga whakarihariha.

And they thirsted not; he led them through the  
deserts; he caused the waters to flow out of the rock  
for them; he clave the rock also and the waters  
gushed out.

And notwithstanding he hath done all this, and  
greater also, there is no peace, saith the Lord, unto  
the wicked.



## 1 Nīwhai 21

- 1 Tēnā anō: Whakarongo, e koutou te whare o Iharaira, koutou katoa kua whatia atu, ā, kua āia atu nā te whakarihariha o ngā kaiārahi o tōku iwi; āe rā, koutou katoa kua whatia atu, kua whakamararatia whānuitia atu, nō tōku iwi anō, E te whare o Iharaira. Whakarongo, E ngā motu, ki ahau, whakarongo mai koutou nō tawhiti; kua karangatia ahau e te Ariki mai i te kōpū; nō nga whēkau o tōku whaea i whakahua ai ia i tōku ingoa.
- 2 Ā, kua meinga e ia tōku māngai anō nei he hoari koi; i te taumarumarū o tōna ringa i huna ai ia i ahau, ā, kua meinga ahau e ia he pere pīata; i tana pūkoro pere i huna ai ia i ahau;
- 3 Ā, kua kī mai ki ahau: Ko koe taku pononga, E Iharaira, mā roto i a koe ahau e whakakorōria ai.
- 4 Kātahi au ka kī, kua whakarirā parau noa iho ahau, kua whakapaua tōku kaha mō te kore, ā, mō te parau noa iho; kāore e kore kei te Ariki tōku whakawākanga, ā, kei tōku Atua taku mahi.
- 5 Ā ināianeī, tā te Ariki—nāna nei ahau i whakaahua i te kōpū hei pononga māna, kia haria anōtia ai a Hākopa ki a ia—ahakoa kāore anō a Iharaira kia whakahuia, ka whai korōria tonu ahau i ngā karu o te Ariki, ā, ko tōku Atua tōku whakakaha.
- 6 Ā, ka kī ia: He mea māmā kia tū ai koe hei pononga māku kia whakarewa ake ai i ngā iwi o Hākopa, me te whakahou i te tiakanga o Iharaira. Ka hoatu anō koe e ahau hei rama ki ngā Tauuiwi, kia ai koe hei whakaoranga māku ki ngā tōpito o te ao.
- 7 He pēnei tā te Ariki, ko te kaihoko o Iharaira, tōna Mea Tapu, ki a ia e whakahāweatia nei e te tangata, ki a ia e whakariharihatia nei e ngā iwi, ki te pononga o ngā rangatira: Ka kite ngā Kīngi, ā, ka ara ake, ka koropiko anō ngā wheao, nā te Ariki e ū pono ana.
- 8 He pēnei tā te Ariki: I tētahi wā pai ahau i rongu atu ai i a koe, E ngā motu o te moana, ā, i tētahi rā whakaoranga ahau i āwhina atu ai i a koe; ā, māku koe e tiaki, ā, ka hoatu ki a koe taku pononga hei kawenata nō te iwi, kia whakapūmautia ai te whenua, kia meinga e whakanohioia ai ngā kāinga kua ururuatia;

## 1 Nephi 21

And again: Hearken, O ye house of Israel, all ye that are broken off and are driven out because of the wickedness of the pastors of my people; yea, all ye that are broken off, that are scattered abroad, who are of my people, O house of Israel. Listen, O isles, unto me, and hearken ye people from far; the Lord hath called me from the womb; from the bowels of my mother hath he made mention of my name.

And he hath made my mouth like a sharp sword; in the shadow of his hand hath he hid me, and made me a polished shaft; in his quiver hath he hid me;

And said unto me: Thou art my servant, O Israel, in whom I will be glorified.

Then I said, I have labored in vain, I have spent my strength for naught and in vain; surely my judgment is with the Lord, and my work with my God.

And now, saith the Lord—that formed me from the womb that I should be his servant, to bring Jacob again to him—though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength.

And he said: It is a light thing that thou shouldst be my servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved of Israel. I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

Thus saith the Lord, the Redeemer of Israel, his Holy One, to him whom man despiseth, to him whom the nations abhorreth, to servant of rulers: Kings shall see and arise, princes also shall worship, because of the Lord that is faithful.

Thus saith the Lord: In an acceptable time have I heard thee, O isles of the sea, and in a day of salvation have I helped thee; and I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people, to establish the earth, to cause to inherit the desolate heritages;

- 9 Kia taea ai e koe te kōrero atu ki ngā mauhere:  
Haere whakamua atu; ki a rātou e noho ana i te  
pōuritanga: Puta mai koutou. Ka kai rātou i ngā  
huarahi, ā, ko ō rātou pātiki kei ngā wāhi tiketike  
katoa.
- 10 E kore rātou e hiakai, e hiawai rānei, e kore hoki  
te wera, te rā rānei e patu i a rātou; nā te mea ko ia e  
whai aroha ana ki runga i a rātou māna rātou e ārahi,  
mā ngā puna wai ia e ārahi ai i a rātou.
- 11 Ā, ka meinga e ahau ngā maunga hei ara, ā, ko aku  
ara matua ka whakateiteitia.
- 12 Ā tēnā, E te whare o Iharaira, nana, ka haere mai  
ēnei i tawhiti; ā titiro, ko ēnei mai i te nōta, ā, mai i te  
uru anō hoki; ā, ko ēnei mai i te whenua o Hinimi.
- 13 Waiata, E ngā rangi; kia harikoa, E te ao; nā, ko  
ngā waewae o te hunga i te rāwhiti ka whakatūria; ā,  
ka pakaru mai i te waiatahanga, E ngā maunga; nā,  
kāore rātou e patua anōtia; nā te mea kua  
whakamārie te Ariki i tana iwi, ā, ka aroha ki runga i  
āna whakamamaetanga.
- 14 Engari, nana, kua kī a Hiona: Kua whakarērea  
ahau e te Ariki, ā, kua wareware ahau i tōku Ariki—  
engari māna e whakaatu kāore ia i pēnā.
- 15 Nā, ka taea e te wahine te wareware i tana  
kōhungahunga ngotengote, nā konei e kore ōna  
aroha ki runga i te tama o tana kōpū? Āe rā, ka  
wareware pea ia, heoi kua kore au e wareware ki a  
koe, E te whare o Iharaira.
- 16 Nana, kua whaoa koe ki runga i ngā pāoro o ōku  
ringaringa; kei tōku aroaro tonu ō pakitara.
- 17 Ka hohoro āu tamariki ki ō kaiwhakangaro; ā, ko  
rātou nāna koe i whakamōti e haere whakamua atu  
ai i a koe.
- 18 Hīkina ake ō karu taiawhio noa ka kite; ka huihui  
tahi katoa ēnei, ā, ka haere mai ki a koe. Ā, e ora ana  
ahau, tā te Ariki, māu pū anō koe e whakakākahu ki  
ērā katoa, anō nei he whakakai, ā, ka whakaherea  
rātou me he wahine mārena pū anō.
- 19 Nā, ko ō ururua me ō wāhi tūhea, me te whenua o  
tō whakangaromanga, ka whāiti rawa pū anō ināia  
tonu nei nā ngā kainoho; ā, ko rātou nāna koe i  
horomi ake ka matara atu.

That thou mayest say to the prisoners: Go forth; to  
them that sit in darkness: Show yourselves. They  
shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in  
all high places.

They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the  
heat nor the sun smite them; for he that hath mercy  
on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water  
shall he guide them.

And I will make all my mountains a way, and my  
highways shall be exalted.

And then, O house of Israel, behold, these shall  
come from far; and lo, these from the north and from  
the west; and these from the land of Sinim.

Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; for the  
feet of those who are in the east shall be established;  
and break forth into singing, O mountains; for they  
shall be smitten no more; for the Lord hath com-  
forted his people, and will have mercy upon his af-  
flicted.

But, behold, Zion hath said: The Lord hath for-  
saken me, and my Lord hath forgotten me—but he  
will show that he hath not.

For can a woman forget her sucking child, that she  
should not have compassion on the son of her  
womb? Yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget  
thee, O house of Israel.

Behold, I have graven thee upon the palms of my  
hands; thy walls are continually before me.

Thy children shall make haste against thy destroy-  
ers; and they that made thee waste shall go forth of  
thee.

Lift up thine eyes round about and behold; all  
these gather themselves together, and they shall  
come to thee. And as I live, saith the Lord, thou shalt  
surely clothe thee with them all, as with an orna-  
ment, and bind them on even as a bride.

For thy waste and thy desolate places, and the land  
of thy destruction, shall even now be too narrow by  
reason of the inhabitants; and they that swallowed  
thee up shall be far away.

20 Ko ngā tamariki e riro i a koe, i muri i tō ngaronga i te tuatahi, ka kī anō ia ki tō taringa: He kīkī rawa atu te wāhi mōku; whakawāteahia atu kia noho ai ahau.

21 I konā koe e kī ai i tō ngākau: Nā wai ēnei i whānau ai ki ahau, tā te mea kua ngaro i ahau aku tamariki, ā, he moke ahau, he parau, ā, he kaikōpikopiko? Ā, nā wai ēnei i whakatupu ake? Nana, i waiho mokemoke ahau; ko ēnei, i hea kē rātou?

22 He pēnei tā te Ariki te Atua: Nana, ka ara ake tōku ringa ki ngā Tauīwi, ā, ka whakatū i taku kara ki ngā iwi; ā, ka kawea mai tō tama i tō rātou ringaringa, ā, ka kawea mai tō tamāhine i runga i tō rātou pokohiwi.

23 Ā, ka tū ngā kīngi hei matua atawhai mōu, ā, ko ngā kuini hei whaea whakangote mōu; ka piko iho rātou ki a koe e tāpapa ana tō rātou kanohi ki te whenua, ā, ka mitimiti i te puehu o tō waewae; ā, ka mōhio koe ko ahau te Ariki; nā te mea kua kore e whakamā te hunga e tatari ai mōku.

24 Nā, ka tangohia ngā taonga parau i te tangata kaha, ka whakaorangia rānei te herehere kua tika nei tōna hereherenga?

25 Engari he pēnei tā te Ariki, ka tangohia pū atu anō ngā herehere a te tangata kaha, ka whakaorangia ngā taonga parau o te nanakia; nā te mea ka ngangare au ki te tangata e ngangare ai ki a koe, ā, māku tō tamariki e whakaora.

26 Ā, ka whāngai au i a rātou e ngangare ana ki a koe ki tō rātou ake kikokiko; ka haurangi rātou ki tō rātou ake toto me he waina reka; ā, ka mōhio katoa ngā kikokiko katoa ko au, te Ariki, ko tō Kaiwhakaora me tō Kaihoko, ko te Mea Kaha o Hākopa.

The children whom thou shalt have, after thou hast lost the first, shall again in thine ears say: The place is too strait for me; give place to me that I may dwell.

Then shalt thou say in thine heart: Who hath begotten me these, seeing I have lost my children, and am desolate, a captive, and removing to and fro? And who hath brought up these? Behold, I was left alone; these, where have they been?

Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their face towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captives delivered?

But thus saith the Lord, even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for I will contend with him that contendeth with thee, and I will save thy children.

And I will feed them that oppress thee with their own flesh; they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

## 1 Nīwhai 22

- 1 Ā, ka pahawa ianei ake i muri iho i tāku, tā Nīwhai, pānuitanga i ēnei mea kua whaowhaoa ki runga i ngā papa parāhe, i haere mai ōku tuākana me te kōrero mai ki ahau: He aha rā te tikanga o ēnei mea kua pānuitia e koe? Nana, me mārāma ērā e ai ki ngā mea ā-wairua, ka pahawa ake nei, e ai tō te wairua ehara tō te kikokiko?
- 2 Ā nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kī atu ki a rāua: Nana, i whakaaturia ērā ki ngā poropiti e te reo o te Wairua; nā te mea mā te Wairua ngā mea katoa e whakamōhio atu ki ngā poropiti, ka tau nei ki runga i ngā tamariki a te tangata e ai tō te kikokiko.
- 3 Nā reira, ko ngā mea kua pānuitia nei e ahau he mea anō e pā ana ki ngā mea o tēnei ao me ngā mea o te wairua; nā te mea ko te āhua nei ko te whare o Iharaira, ākuanei, ā taihoa rānei, ka whakamararatia atu ki te mata katoa o te ao, ki ngā iwi katoa anō hoki.
- 4 Ā nana, kua ngaro kē te tokomaha i te mātauranga o te hunga kei Hiruharama. Āe rā, ko te wāhi nui o ngā iwi katoa kua ārahina atu; ā, kua whakamararatia atu rātou ki wīwī ki wāwā ki runga i ngā motu o te moana; ā, kāore tētahi o tātou e mōhio ana kei hea rātou, hāunga tā tātou mōhio kua ārahina atu rātou.
- 5 Ā, nā te mea kua ārahina atu rātou, kua poropititia ēnei mea e pā ana ki a rātou, ā, e pā ana anō hoki ki te hunga katoa e whakamararatia atu ai, e whakapōauautia atu ai a muri ake nei, nā te Mea Tapu o Iharaira; nā te mea ki a ia ō rātou ngākau e whakapakekehia ai; nā reira, ka whakamararatia rātou ki waenga i ngā iwi katoa, ā, ka mauāharatia rātou e ngā tāngata katoa.
- 6 Hei aha koa, i muri iho i tā rātou atawhainga e ngā Tauiwī, ā, ka ara ake te Ariki i tōna ringa ki runga i ngā Tauiwī me te whakatū ake i a rātou hei kara, ā, kua kawea ō rātou tamariki i ō rātou ringaringa, me ō rātou tamāhine i runga i ō rātou pokohiwi, nana ko ēnei mea kua kōrerotia ake nei he mea nō tēnei ao; nā te mea he pēnei ngā kawenata a te Ariki ki ō tātou matua; ā, mō tātou te tikanga i ngā rā e haere ake nei, ā, mō ō tātou tuākana ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira.

## 1 Nephi 22

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass, my brethren came unto me and said unto me: What meaneth these things which ye have read? Behold, are they to be understood according to things which are spiritual, which shall come to pass according to the spirit and not the flesh?

And I, Nephi, said unto them: Behold they were manifest unto the prophet by the voice of the Spirit; for by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, which shall come upon the children of men according to the flesh.

Wherefore, the things of which I have read are things pertaining to things both temporal and spiritual; for it appears that the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth, and also among all nations.

And behold, there are many who are already lost from the knowledge of those who are at Jerusalem. Yea, the more part of all the tribes have been led away; and they are scattered to and fro upon the isles of the sea; and whither they are none of us knoweth, save that we know that they have been led away.

And since they have been led away, these things have been prophesied concerning them, and also concerning all those who shall hereafter be scattered and be confounded, because of the Holy One of Israel; for against him will they harden their hearts; wherefore, they shall be scattered among all nations and shall be hated of all men.

Nevertheless, after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, behold these things of which are spoken are temporal; for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers; and it meaneth us in the days to come, and also all our brethren who are of the house of Israel.

- 7     Ā, ko tōna tikanga, nā, kei te haere mai te wā i muri iho i te whakamararatanga me te whakapōauautanga o te whare o Iharaira, ka whakaara ake te Ariki te Atua i tētahi iwi kaha rawa i waenganui i ngā Tauwiwi, āe rā, i runga pū anō i te mata o tēnei whenua; ā, mā rātou ō tātou uri e whakamarara atu.
- 8     Ā, i muri iho i te whakamararatanga atu i ō tātou uri ka tīmata atu te Ariki te Atua ki te mahi whakamīharo ki waenganui i ngā Tauwiwi, he mea utu nui ia ki ō tātou uri; nā reira, he rite ki tā ngā Tauwiwi whāngaitanga i a rātou, ā, ki te kawenga i ō rātou ringaringa, i runga hoki i ō rātou pokohiwi.
- 9     Ā, ka utu nui anō ia ki ngā Tauwiwi; ā, ehara i te mea ki ngā Tauwiwi anake, engari ki te whare o Iharaira katoa, tae atu ana ki te whakamōhiotanga atu i ngā kawenata a te Matua o te rangi ki a Aperahama, e mea ana: Mā roto i ō uri ngā hapū katoa o te ao e manaakitia ai.
- 10    Ā ko tāku, e ōku tuākana, kia mōhio ai kōrua e kore e taea ngā hapū katoa o te ao te manaaki ki te kore e huraina e ia tōna ringa i ō ngā karu o ngā iwi.
- 11    Nā reira, ka tīmata atu te Ariki te Atua ki te whakahura i tōna ringa i ō ngā karu o ngā iwi, i runga i te whakaputanga i ana kawenata me tōna rongopai ki te hunga ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira.
- 12    Nā reira, ka kawea anōtia mai ia ki waho i te hereherenga, ā, ka huihuia tahitia rātou ki ō rātou whenua tuku iho; ā, ka kawea mai rātou ki waho i te wāhi ngaro, ā, ki waho hoki i te pōuritanga; ā, ka mōhio rātou ko te Ariki tō rātou Kaiwhakaora me tō rātou Kaihoko, ko te Mea Kaha o Iharaira.
- 13    Ā, ko te toto o taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, koia te wahine pūremu o te ao, ka tahuri ake ki runga ki ō rātou upoko ake; nā te mea ka pakanga rātou i waenganui i a rātou anō, ā, ka taka iho te hoari o ō rātou ake ringaringa ki runga i ō rātou ake upoko, ā, ka haurangi anō rātou i ō rātou ake toto.

And it meaneth that the time cometh that after all the house of Israel have been scattered and confounded, that the Lord God will raise up a mighty nation among the Gentiles, yea, even upon the face of this land; and by them shall our seed be scattered.

And after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, which shall be of great worth unto our seed; wherefore, it is likened unto their being nourished by the Gentiles and being carried in their arms and upon their shoulders.

And it shall also be of worth unto the Gentiles; and not only unto the Gentiles but unto all the house of Israel, unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

And I would, my brethren, that ye should know that all the kindreds of the earth cannot be blessed unless he shall make bare his arm in the eyes of the nations.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

Wherefore, he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be gathered together to the lands of their inheritance; and they shall be brought out of obscurity and out of darkness; and they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer, the Mighty One of Israel.

And the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, and they shall be drunken with their own blood.

- 14     Ā, ko ia iwi e pakanga atu ai ki a koe, E te whare o Iharaira, ka whakatahuritia tētahi ki tētahi, ā, ka taka iho rātou ki tētahi rua kua keria kia mau ai ngā tāngata o te Ariki. Ā, ka whakangaromia te hunga katoa e whawhai ai kia Hīona, ā, ko taua wahine pūremu nui, kua rāwekehia e ia ngā huarahi tika o te Ariki, āe rā, ko taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, ka tanuku iho ki te puehu, ā, ka nui tōna hinganga.
- 15     Nana rā, tā te poropiti, e tere haere mai ana te wā e kore a Hātana e whaimana anō i runga i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata; nā te mea e tata haere mai ana te rā ko te hunga whakahīhi me te hunga anō e mahi whakarihariha ana ka meinga me he kakau witi; ā, e haere mai ana te rā me tahu rātou.
- 16     Nā te mea e tata haere mai ana te wā ka maringi iho te raneatanga o te riri o te Atua ki runga i ngā tamariki katoa a te tangata; nā te mea e kore ia e tuku kia whakangaro ai te hunga whakarihariha i te hunga tika.
- 17     Nā reira, māna te hunga tika e tiaki mā tōna mana, ahakoa mēnā ka ai he putanga mai o te raneatanga o tana riri, ā, ka tiakina te hunga tika, tae atu ana ki te whakangaromanga i ō rātou hoariri ki te ahi. Nā reira, kāore he take e wehi ai te hunga tika; nā te mea he pēnei tā te poropiti, ka whakaorangia rātou, ahakoa mēnā rānei mā te ahi.
- 18     Nana, e ōku tuākana, tāku ki a kōrua, me puta wawe mai ēnei mea; āe rā, ko te toto pū anō me te ahi, me te kohu nō te paoa e puta mai ai; ā, me tau mai anō ki runga i te mata o tēnei ao; ā, ka puta mai ki ngā tāngata e ai ki tō te kikokiko mehemea rānei ka whakapakekehia ō rātou ngākau ki te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 19     Nana rā, kua kore te hunga tika e mate; nā te mea me haere mai te wā e hātepea atu ai te hunga katoa e whawhai ai ki a Hīona.
- 20     Ā, ka whakarite pū anō te Ariki i te huarahi mō tana iwi, tae atu ana ki te whakatutukitanga i ngā kupu a Mohi, nāna i kī, e mea ana: Ka whakaarahia ake e te Ariki tō Atua tētahi poropiti ki a koutou, he rite tahi ki ahau; koia tāu e rongō ai i ngā mea katoa he aha rawa tāna ki a koutou. Ā, ka pahawa ake, ko te hunga katoa e kore nei e rangona taua poropiti ka hātepea atu mai i waenganui i tana iwi.

And every nation which shall war against thee, O house of Israel, shall be turned one against another, and they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. And all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, and that great whore, who hath perverted the right ways of the Lord, yea, that great and abominable church, shall tumble to the dust and great shall be the fall of it.

For behold, saith the prophet, the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; for the day soon cometh that all the proud and they who do wickedly shall be as stubble; and the day cometh that they must be burned.

For the time soon cometh that the fulness of the wrath of God shall be poured out upon all the children of men; for he will not suffer that the wicked shall destroy the righteous.

Wherefore, he will preserve the righteous by his power, even if it so be that the fulness of his wrath must come, and the righteous be preserved, even unto the destruction of their enemies by fire. Wherefore, the righteous need not fear; for thus saith the prophet, they shall be saved, even if it so be as by fire.

Behold, my brethren, I say unto you, that these things must shortly come; yea, even blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; and it must needs be upon the face of this earth; and it cometh unto men according to the flesh if it so be that they will harden their hearts against the Holy One of Israel.

For behold, the righteous shall not perish; for the time surely must come that all they who fight against Zion shall be cut off.

And the Lord will surely prepare a way for his people, unto the fulfilling of the words of Moses, which he spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that all those who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

- 21     Ā, māku ianei, mā Nīwhai, e whakapuaki atu ki a kōrua, ko taua poropiti i kōrerotia ai e Mohi ko ia te Mea Tapu o Iharaira; nā reira, māna e whakawā i runga i te tika.
- 22     Ā, kāore he aha e wehi ai te hunga tika, nā te mea ko rātou te hunga e kore nei e whakapōauautia. Engari ko ia ko te kīngitanga o te rēwera, koia ka hangaia ake i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, ko taua kīngitanga i whakapūmautia ai i waenganui i a rātou ko rātou nei nō roto i te kikokiko—
- 23     Nā, ka tere haere mai te wā, ko ngā hāhi katoa kua hangaia ake nei kia whaitaonga ai, ā, ko te hunga katoa kua whakatūria ake kia whaimana ai i runga i te kikokiko, ā, ko te hunga i whakatūria ake kia rongonui ai i ngā karu o te ao, ā, ko te hunga e kimihia ana ngā hiahia o te kikokiko me ngā mea o te ao, me te mahi i ngā momo tutu katoa; āe rā, hei whakapoto, ko te hunga katoa nō te kīngitanga o te rēwera ko rātou te hunga me wehi, me te wiri, me te tūioioi; ko rātou te hunga me kukume iho ki roto i te puehu; ko rātou te hunga me pau me he kakau witi; ā, e ai tēnei ki ngā kupu a te poropiti.
- 24     Ā, ka tere haere mai te wā ka ārahina ake te hunga tika me he kūao kau i te wharau kau, ā, me whakahaere e te Mea Tapu o Iharaira i runga i te tikanga rangatira, me te kaha, me te mana, me te korōria nui.
- 25     Ā, ka huihuia e ia ana tamariki mai i ngā tōpito e whā o te ao; ā, ka tatauria e ia ana hipi, ā, e mōhio ana rātou ki a ia; ā, kotahi te kāhui, ā, kotahi te hēpara; ā, māna anō ana hipi e whāngai, ā, mā roto i a ia rātou e kimi pātiki ai.
- 26     Ā, nā te tika o tana iwi, kāore ō Hātana mana; nā reira, tē taea ia te wewete atu mō te takiwā o ngā tau maha; nā te mea kāore ōna mana i runga i ngā ngākau o te iwi, nā te mea e noho ana rātou i te tika, ā, e whakahaere ana te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 27     Ā, nana ianei, māku, mā Nīwhai, e kī atu nei ki a koutou me puta katoa mai ēnei mea e ai tō te kikokiko.
- 28     Engari, nana, ka noho haumarutia ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā tāngata i roto i te Mea Tapu o Iharaira mēnā rānei ka ai tā rātou rīpenata.
- 29     Ā, māku ināiane, mā Nīwhai, e whakamutu ai; nā te mea kei noho anō ahau ka kōrero i tua atu e pā ana ki ēnei mea.

And now I, Nephi, declare unto you, that this prophet of whom Moses spake was the Holy One of Israel; wherefore, he shall execute judgment in righteousness.

And the righteous need not fear, for they are those who shall not be confounded. But it is the kingdom of the devil, which shall be built up among the children of men, which kingdom is established among them which are in the flesh—

For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world, and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble; and this is according to the words of the prophet.

And the time cometh speedily that the righteous must be led up as calves of the stall, and the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory.

And he gathereth his children from the four quarters of the earth; and he numbereth his sheep, and they know him; and there shall be one fold and one shepherd; and he shall feed his sheep, and in him they shall find pasture.

And because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; wherefore, he cannot be loosed for the space of many years; for he hath no power over the hearts of the people, for they dwell in righteousness, and the Holy One of Israel reigneth.

And now behold, I, Nephi, say unto you that all these things must come according to the flesh.

But, behold, all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

And now I, Nephi, make an end; for I durst not speak further as yet concerning these things.

30 Nā reira, e ōku tuākana, e manako ana ahau kia mōhio ai koutou he pono ngā mea kua tuhia i runga i ngā papa parāhe; ā, e whakaaturia me ngohengohe te tangata ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.

31 Nā reira, ehara i te mea me whakaaro koutou ko māua ko tōku matua anake kua whakaaturia, ā, kua whakaakona anō hoki rātou. Nā reira, mehemea koutou e ngohengohe ai ki ngā whakahaunga, ā, me te ū anō ki te mutunga, ka whakaorangia koutou a te rā whakamutunga. Ā, koia anō tēnei. Āmine.

Wherefore, my brethren, I would that ye should consider that the things which have been written upon the plates of brass are true; and they testify that a man must be obedient to the commandments of God.

Wherefore, ye need not suppose that I and my father are the only ones that have testified, and also taught them. Wherefore, if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day. And thus it is. Amen.



# Ko te Pukapuka Tuarua a Nīwhai

*He tubinga mō te matenga o Rīhai. Ka baututū ngā tuākana o Nīwhai ki a ia. Ka whakatūpato te Ariki i a Nīwhai kia webe atu ai ki te koraba. Ko ōna haerenga i roto i te koraba, me ērā atu hoki.*

## 2 Nīwhai 1

- 1 Ā ināianeī, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tāku, tā Nīwhai, whakamutu i taku whakaako i ōku tuākana, ko tō mātou matua, a Rīhai, i kōrero anō hoki i ngā mea maha ki a rātou, ā, i whakaharatau ia ki a rātou, anō te nui o ngā mea i mahia ai e te Ariki mō rātou i tana kawenga mai i a rātou i waho i te whenua o Hiruharama.
- 2 Ā, i kōrero anō ia ki a rātou e pā ana ki ō rātou tutū i runga i ngā wai, me ngā whakaarohatanga o te Atua i tana tohu i ō rātou oranga, nā konā kihai rātou i horomia ake i te moana.
- 3 Ā, ka kōrero anō ia ki a rātou e pā ana ki te whenua whakaari, kua whiwhi nei rātou—anō te aroha nui o te Ariki nāna mātou i whakatūpato kia tahuti atu mātou i te whenua o Hiruharama.
- 4 Nana, rā, i kī ai ia, kua kite au i tētahi kitenga, nō konei e mōhio ana ahau kua whakangaromia a Hiruharama, ā, mehemea kua noho tonu tātou i Hiruharama kua hemo anō hoki tātou.
- 5 Engari, i kī ai ia, ahakoa ō tātou mamaetanga, kua whiwhi tātou i tētahi whenua whakaari, he whenua e kōwhiringia ake i runga i ērā atu whenua katoa; he whenua kua kawenatatia tahitia e te Ariki te Atua me ahau, ka noho hei whenua tuku iho mō ōku uri. Āe rā, kua kawenatatia e te Ariki tēnei whenua ki ahau, me aku tamariki mō āke tonu atu, ā, ki te hunga katoa e ārahina atu ai i ērā atu whenua e te ringa o te Ariki.
- 6 Nā reira, ahau, a Rīhai, e poropiti nei e ai ki ngā whakamahinga a te Wairua kei roto nei i ahau, nā, kua kore tētahi e haere mai ai ki tēnei whenua hāunga rātou e ārahina mai nei e te ringa o te Ariki.

# The Second Book of Nephi

*An account of the death of Lehi. Nephi's brethren rebel against him. The Lord warns Nephi to depart into the wilderness. His journeyings in the wilderness, and so forth.*

## 2 Nephi 1

And now it came to pass that after I, Nephi, had made an end of teaching my brethren, our father, Lehi, also spake many things unto them, and rehearsed unto them, how great things the Lord had done for them in bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

And he spake unto them concerning their rebellions upon the waters, and the mercies of God in sparing their lives, that they were not swallowed up in the sea.

And he also spake unto them concerning the land of promise, which they had obtained—how merciful the Lord had been in warning us that we should flee out of the land of Jerusalem.

For, behold, said he, I have seen a vision, in which I know that Jerusalem is destroyed; and had we remained in Jerusalem we should also have perished.

But, said he, notwithstanding our afflictions, we have obtained a land of promise, a land which is choice above all other lands; a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed. Yea, the Lord hath covenanted this land unto me, and to my children forever, and also all those who should be led out of other countries by the hand of the Lord.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that there shall none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

7 Nā reira, kua whakatapua tēnei whenua ki ērā e mau mai ai ia. Ā, ki te mea ka koropiko rātou ki a ia e ai ki ngā whakahaunga kua homai nei e ia, ka noho hei whenua herekore ki a rātou; nā reira, e kore rawa rātou e whakaraua iho ki te hereheretanga; ki te pērā, ka pērā nā te haututū; nā te mea mēnā ka nui te haututū ka kangaia te whenua mō rātou, engari ki te hunga tika, ka manaakitia ia mō āke tonu atu.

8 Ā nana, he mōhiotanga ia kia hunaia ai tēnei whenua i tēnei wā i te mātauranga o ērā atu iwi; nana rā, mēnā rānei he maha ngā iwi kua horapangia te whenua, nā, kua kore he wāhi hei tuku ihotanga.

9 Nā reira, ahau, a Rīhai, kua whiwhi i tētahi kupu whakaari, nā, ina pupuri te hunga e ārahina mai ai e te Ariki i waho i te whenua o Hiruharama i ana whakahaunga, ka whai oranga rātou i runga i te mata o tēnei whenua; ā, ka hunaia rātou i ērā atu iwi katoa, kia nohoia ai tēnei whenua e rātou anake. Ā, ki te mea ka pupuri rātou i āna whakahaunga ka manaakitia rātou i runga i te mata katoa o tēnei whenua, ā, kua kore tētahi hei raweke i a rātou, hei muru atu rānei i te whenua o tō rātou tukunga ihotanga; ā, ka noho haumaruru rātou mō āke tonu atu.

10 Engari nana, ina tae mai te wā e memeha atu i te whakapono kore, i muri iho i ngā manaakitanga maha kua whakawhiwhia nei rātou e te ringa o te Ariki—e mau ana tētahi mātauranga o te hanganga o te ao, me ngā tāngata katoa, e mōhio ana ki ngā mahi nui whakamiharo a te Ariki mai i te hanganga rā anō o te ao; i a rātou te mana kua hoatu nei ki a rātou kia mahi ai i ngā mea katoa mā runga i te whakapono; i a rātou ngā whakahaunga katoa mai i te tīmatanga, ā, kua kawea mai e tōna painga mutunga kore ki roto i tēnei whenua tongarewa o te whakaari—nana, ko tāku, mēnā ka tae mai te rā e whakaparahako ai rātou i te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, te Mīhaia pono, tō rātou kaihoko me tō rātou Atua, nana, ka tau iho ngā whakawākanga a te mea e tika ana ki runga i a rātou.

11 Āe rā, māna ētahi atu iwi e kawea mai ki a rātou, ā, māna he kaha e hoatu ki a rātou, ā, māna ō rātou whenua me ō rātou rawa e muru atu, ā, māna rātou e meinga ai kia whakamararatia ai, kia patua ai anō hoki.

Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. And if it so be that they shall serve him according to the commandments which he hath given, it shall be a land of liberty unto them; wherefore, they shall never be brought down into captivity; if so, it shall be because of iniquity; for if iniquity shall abound cursed shall be the land for their sakes, but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

And behold, it is wisdom that this land should be kept as yet from the knowledge of other nations; for behold, many nations would overrun the land, that there would be no place for an inheritance.

Wherefore, I, Lehi, have obtained a promise, that inasmuch as those whom the Lord God shall bring out of the land of Jerusalem shall keep his commandments, they shall prosper upon the face of this land; and they shall be kept from all other nations, that they may possess this land unto themselves. And if it so be that they shall keep his commandments they shall be blessed upon the face of this land, and there shall be none to molest them, nor to take away the land of their inheritance; and they shall dwell safely forever.

But behold, when the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, after they have received so great blessings from the hand of the Lord—having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, and all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world; having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, and having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise—behold, I say, if the day shall come that they will reject the Holy One of Israel, the true Messiah, their Redeemer and their God, behold, the judgments of him that is just shall rest upon them.

Yea, he will bring other nations unto them, and he will give unto them power, and he will take away from them the lands of their possessions, and he will cause them to be scattered and smitten.

- 12     Āe rā, i tētahi whakatipuranga e pahemo atu ana ki tētahi atu ka ai he whakahekenga toto, me ngā torotoronga nui i waenganui i a rātou; nā reira, e aku tama, e mea ana ahau kia mahara koutou; āe rā, e mea ana ahau kia whakarongo mai koutou ki aku kupu.
- 13     Auē kia oho rā pea koutou; kia oho ake i te moe au, āe rā, i te moe pū anō o te ao rēwera, me te ruirui iho i ngā meka whakarihariha e herea nei koutou, koia nei ngā mekameka e herea nei ngā tamariki a te tangata, nā, ka kahakina iho rātou ki te tawhā mutunga kore o te pōuri me te auē.
- 14     E oho! me te ara ake i te puehu, me te rongo i ngā kupu a tētahi mātua wiriwiri, ko ōna iwi meāke whakatakotoria iho e koutou ki roto i te rua wahangū, makariri hoki, tē taea e tētahi te hoki mai i reira; he ruarua anō ngā rā kātahi ka haere au i te huarahi o te ao katoa.
- 15     Engari nana, kua hokona e te Ariki tōku wairua i te rēinga; kua kite au i tōna korōria, ā, kua karapotia āke tonu atu au i ngā ringa o tōna aroha.
- 16     Ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara ai koutou kia ngohengohe ai ki ngā ture me ngā whakawākanga a te Ariki; nana, koinei te mānukanuka o tōku wairua mai i te tīmatanga.
- 17     Kua pēhia iho tōku ngākau e te pōuri mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā, he wehi nōku, kei puta mai te Ariki tō koutou Atua i runga i te raneatanga o tōna riri ki runga i a koutou nā te pakeketanga o ō koutou ngākau, nā, kia hātepea atu koutou, ā, ka whakangaromia āke, ake ake;
- 18     Ka tau iho rānei tētahi kanga ki runga i a koutou mō te takiwā o ngā whakatipuranga maha; ā, ka torongia koutou ki te hoari, ā, ki te hemokai, ā, ka mauāharatia, ā, ka ārahina e ai ki te hiahia me te hereherenga a te rēwera.
- 19     Auē e aku tama, kia kore ai e tau iho ēnei mea ki runga i a koutou, engari kia meinga koutou hei iwi kōwhiria, ā, hei iwi makau nō te Ariki. Engari nana, ka meatia tāna e pai ai; nā te mea ko ōna huarahi he tika āke, ake, ake.
- 20     Ā, kua kī mai ia: Ina pupuri koutou i aku whakahaunga ka whaioranga koutou i te whenua; engari ina kore koutou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga ka hātepea atu koutou i tōku aroaro.

Yea, as one generation passeth to another there shall be bloodsheds, and great visitations among them; wherefore, my sons, I would that ye would remember; yea, I would that ye would hearken unto my words.

O that ye would awake; awake from a deep sleep, yea, even from the sleep of hell, and shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, which are the chains which bind the children of men, that they are carried away captive down to the eternal gulf of misery and woe.

Awake! and arise from the dust, and hear the words of a trembling parent, whose limbs ye must soon lay down in the cold and silent grave, from whence no traveler can return; a few more days and I go the way of all the earth.

But behold, the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, and I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

And I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord; behold, this hath been the anxiety of my soul from the beginning.

My heart hath been weighed down with sorrow from time to time, for I have feared, lest for the hardness of your hearts the Lord your God should come out in the fulness of his wrath upon you, that ye be cut off and destroyed forever;

Or, that a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; and ye are visited by sword, and by famine, and are hated, and are led according to the will and captivity of the devil.

O my sons, that these things might not come upon you, but that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord. But behold, his will be done; for his ways are righteousness forever.

And he hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; but inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

21 Ā, kia hari ai ianei tōku wairua i roto i a koe, ā, kia wehe atu ai tōku ngākau i tēnei ao i runga i te koa i a koe, kia kore ai au e kumea iho ai e te huamo me te pōuri ki te rua kōiwi, e ara ake i te puehu, e aku tama, ā, kia tū tāne ai, ā, kia ū ai i runga i te whakaaro kotahi me te manawa kotahi, e kotahi ana i ngā mea katoa, nā, kia kore ai koutou e heke iho ai ki roto i te hereherenga;

22 Kia kore ai koutou e kangaia ai ki te kanga nui; ā, waihoki, kia kore ai koutou e kukume mai ai i te riri o te Atua tika ki runga i a koutou, tae atu ana ki te whakangaromanga, āe rā, ko te whakangaromanga tonutanga o te wairua tahi me te tinana.

23 E oho, e aku tama; kākahuria ki ngā kahu whawhai o te tika. Ruiruia iho ngā mekameka e herea nei koutou, ā, puta mai ki waho i te pōuritanga, ā, ara ake i te puehu.

24 Whakamutua atu te haututū ki tā kōrua teina, kua whaikorōria ōna kitenga, ā, kua pupuri ia i ngā whakahaunga mai i te wā i wehe tātou i Hiruharama; ā, kua noho ia hei taputapu i roto i ngā ringaringa o te Atua, i te mauranga mai i a tātou ki roto i te whenua whakaari; nā, me i kore ia, kua mate rawa tātou i te hemokai i te koraha; hei aha koa, i whai kōrua ki te muru atu i tōna oranga; āe rā, he nui anō ōna pōuritanga i a kōrua.

25 Ā, he nui tōku wehi me taku wiri i a kōrua, kei pāmamae anō ia; nana rā, kua whakapaea ia e kōrua i te whai atu ia kia whaimana ai, kia whaikaha ai ia i runga i a kōrua; engari e mōhio ana ahau kāore ia i whai atu ai kia whaimana ai, kia whaikaha ai rānei ia i runga i a kōrua, engari kua whai atu ia i te korōria o te Atua, me ō kōrua ake painga tonutanga.

26 Ā, kua amuamu kōrua nā te mea he mārāma tāna ki a kōrua. Kei te kī mai kōrua he mea koi tāna; kei te kī mai kōrua i riri ai ia ki a kōrua; engari nana, ko tōna koi ko te koi o te mana o te kupu a te Atua, koia i roto nei i a ia; ā, ko tā kōrua e kī nei he riri, ko te pono ia e ai ki tērā kei roto nei i te Atua, kihai i taea e ia te pēhi, e whakaatu māia atu ana e pā ana ki ō kōrua hara.

And now that my soul might have joy in you, and that my heart might leave this world with gladness because of you, that I might not be brought down with grief and sorrow to the grave, arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, and be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, that ye may not come down into captivity;

That ye may not be cursed with a sore cursing; and also, that ye may not incur the displeasure of a just God upon you, unto the destruction, yea, the eternal destruction of both soul and body.

Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

Rebel no more against your brother, whose views have been glorious, and who hath kept the commandments from the time that we left Jerusalem; and who hath been an instrument in the hands of God, in bringing us forth into the land of promise; for were it not for him, we must have perished with hunger in the wilderness; nevertheless, ye sought to take away his life; yea, and he hath suffered much sorrow because of you.

And I exceedingly fear and tremble because of you, lest he shall suffer again; for behold, ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but I know that he hath not sought for power nor authority over you, but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

And ye have murmured because he hath been plain unto you. Ye say that he hath used sharpness; ye say that he hath been angry with you; but behold, his sharpness was the sharpness of the power of the word of God, which was in him; and that which ye call anger was the truth, according to that which is in God, which he could not restrain, manifesting boldly concerning your iniquities.

27     Ā, me tika pū ia kia waiho rawa te mana o te Atua i a ia, tae atu ana ki tana whakahau pū anō i a kōrua kia whakarongo ai kōrua. Engari nana, e hara i a ia, engari ko te wairua o te Ariki i roto nei i a ia, nāna nei tana māngai i whakatūwhera hei whakapuakanga, nā, kīhai i taea e ia te kokopi iho.

28     Ā, ināianeī e taku tama, e Rāmana, koutou ko Remuere, ko Hāmi, ko aku tama anō hoki koia nei ngā tama a Ihimaera, nana, ki te whakarongo koutou ki te reo o Nīwhai e kore koutou e ngaro. Ā, ki te whakarongo koutou ki a ia ka waiho e au tētahi manaakitanga, āe rā, ko tōku manaakitanga tuatahi pū anō.

29     Engari ki te kore koutou e whakarongo ki a ia ka tangohia taku manaakitanga tuatahi, āe rā, ko tōku manaakitanga pū anō, ā, ka tau iho ki runga i a ia.

30     Ā ināianeī, e Hōrama, ka kōrero au ki a koe: Nana, ko koe te pononga a Rāpana; hei aha koa, kua kawea mai koe ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, ā, e mōhio ana au he hoa pūmau koe nō taku tama, a Nīwhai, āke tonu atu.

31     Nā reira, nā tō ū, ka manaakitia ngātahitia ō uri me ōna uri, kia noho roa ai i te pai i runga i te mata o tēnei whenua; ā kāore he mea, hāunga te hara i waenganui i a rātou, e whakakino, e whakararuraru rānei i tō rātou whaioranga i runga i te mata o tēnei whenua āke, ake, ake.

32     Nā reira, ki te pupuri koutou i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki, kua whakatapu te Ariki i tēnei whenua hei whenua haumarau mō ō uri tahi me ngā uri o taku tama.

And it must needs be that the power of God must be with him, even unto his commanding you that ye must obey. But behold, it was not he, but it was the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance that he could not shut it.

And now my son, Laman, and also Lemuel and Sam, and also my sons who are the sons of Ishmael, behold, if ye will hearken unto the voice of Nephi ye shall not perish. And if ye will hearken unto him I leave unto you a blessing, yea, even my first blessing.

But if ye will not hearken unto him I take away my first blessing, yea, even my blessing, and it shall rest upon him.

And now, Zoram, I speak unto you: Behold, thou art the servant of Laban; nevertheless, thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and I know that thou art a true friend unto my son, Nephi, forever.

Wherefore, because thou hast been faithful thy seed shall be blessed with his seed, that they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land; and nothing, save it shall be iniquity among them, shall harm or disturb their prosperity upon the face of this land forever.

Wherefore, if ye shall keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed with the seed of my son.

## 2 Nīwhai 2

- 1 Ā ināianeī, e Hākopa, ka kōrero au ki a koe: Ko koe taku mātāmua i ngā rā o ōku mamaetanga i te koraha. Ā nana, he nui ō mamaetanga me ō pōuritanga i tō taitamarikihanga, nā te tūkino a ō tuākana.
- 2 Hei aha koa, e Hākopa, e taku mātāmua i te koraha, e mōhio ana koe ki te inati o te Atua; ā, māna ō mamaetanga e whakatapu hei painga mōu.
- 3 Nā reira, ka manaakitia tō wairua, ā, ka noho hūmārie kōrua ko tō tuakana, a Nīwhai; ā, ka whakapaua ō rā i te mahi mō tō Atua. Nā reira, e mōhio ana ahau kua hokona koe, nā te tika o tō kaihoko; nā te mea kua kite nei koe hei te tutukitanga o te wā ka haere mai ia ki te kawē mai i te whakaoranga ki te tangata.
- 4 Ā, kua kite nei koe i tō tamarikihanga i tōna korōria; nā reira, e manaakitia nei koe pērā i a rātou te hunga e minitatia ai e ia i te kikokiko; nā te mea he ōrite te Wairua, inānahi, ināianeī, āke, ake, ake. Ā, kua whakaritea te huarahi mai i te takanga a te tangata, ā, kāore he utu tō te whakaoranga.
- 5 Ā, kua whakaakona rawatia te tangata kia mōhio ai rātou ki te pai i te kino. Ā, kua tukuna te ture ki te tangata. Ā, mā te ture kāore te kikokiko e whakahara korehia; mā te ture rānei, ka hātepea atu ngā tāngata katoa; Āe rā, mā te ture māori i hātepea atu rātou; ā waihoki, mā te ture wairua ka hemo rātou i ērā e pai ana, ā, ka meinga he hinapōuri āke, ake, ake.
- 6 Nā reira, ka puta mai te whakaoranga i roto, mā roto hoki i te Mīhaia Tapu; nā te mea e kī ana ia i te aroha noa me te pono.
- 7 Nana, e tāpae ana ia i a ia anō hei patunga mō te hara, hei whakaea i te pūtaka nui o te ture, ki te hunga katoa he ngākau marū, he wairua iro anō ōna; ā, kāore he hunga kē atu e taea ana e te pūtaka nui o te ture te whakaea.

## 2 Nephi 2

And now, Jacob, I speak unto you: Thou art my first-born in the days of my tribulation in the wilderness. And behold, in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow, because of the rudeness of thy brethren.

Nevertheless, Jacob, my firstborn in the wilderness, thou knowest the greatness of God; and he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

Wherefore, thy soul shall be blessed, and thou shalt dwell safely with thy brother, Nephi; and thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God. Wherefore, I know that thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer; for thou hast beheld that in the fulness of time he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

And thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory; wherefore, thou art blessed even as they unto whom he shall minister in the flesh; for the Spirit is the same, yesterday, today, and forever. And the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

And men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil. And the law is given unto men. And by the law no flesh is justified; or, by the law men are cut off. Yea, by the temporal law they were cut off; and also, by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good, and become miserable forever.

Wherefore, redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; for he is full of grace and truth.

Behold, he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, unto all those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit; and unto none else can the ends of the law be answered.

- 8 Nā reira, anō te hiranga nui kia whakamōhiotia atu ai ēnei mea ki ngā tangata whenua o te ao, kia mōhio ai rātou kore kau he kikokiko e āhei ana ki te noho i te aroaro o te Atua, hāunga mā roto i ngā mahi tika, me te aroha, me te atawhai o te Mīhaia Tapu, e whakatakotoria ana e ia tōna orange e ai ki tō te kikokiko, ā, ka kapohia anōtia ia mā runga i te mana o te Wairua, nā, kia pahawa ake ai i a ia te aranga mai o te hunga mate, ko ia te tuatahi e ara ai.
- 9 Nā reira, ko ia te mātāmua ki te Atua, ina wawao ia mō ngā tamariki katoa a te tangata; ā, ka whakaorangia rātou e whakapono ai ki a ia.
- 10 Ā, nā te wawaotanga mō te katoa, ka haere mai ngā tāngata katoa ki te Atua; nā reira, e tū ana rātou i tōna aroaro, kia whakawākia ai e ia e ai ki te pono me te tapu kei roto nei i a ia. Nā reira, ko te pūtake nui o te ture kua homai nei e te Mea Tapu, tae atu ana ki te whakapānga i te whakawhiu kua whakarapangia nei, ko taua whakawhiu kua whakarapangia nei e tauaro ana ki te hari kua whakarapangia nei, kia whakaea ai te pūtake nui o te whakamārietanga—
- 11 Nā te mea me tika pū ia, kia tū ai he tauarotanga i ngā mea katoa. Ki te kore e pērā, e taku mātāmua i te koraha, tē taea te tika te whakaputa mai, te whakarihariha rānei, te tapu rānei, te hinapōuri rānei, te pai, te kino rānei. Nā reira, me tika pū ia kia pūhui tahi ai ngā mea katoa; nā reira, mehemea i tahatahi ai ia e tika ana kia mate tonu ai ia, kāore ōna ora, mate rānei, pirau rānei, pirau kore rānei, hari, hinapōuri rānei, whakaaro rānei, whakaaro kore rānei.
- 12 Nā reira, me tika i hangaia ai ia hei mea noa iho; nā reira kāore pū ōna take i te otinga o tōna hanganga. Nā reira, me tika tēnei mea e whakangaro ai i te mōhiotanga o te Atua me ōna take mau tonu, me te mana anō hoki, me te whakaaroha, me te tika o te Atua.

Wherefore, how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth, that they may know that there is no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, who layeth down his life according to the flesh, and taketh it again by the power of the Spirit, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, being the first that should rise.

Wherefore, he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men; and they that believe in him shall be saved.

And because of the intercession for all, all men come unto God; wherefore, they stand in the presence of him, to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him. Wherefore, the ends of the law which the Holy One hath given, unto the inflicting of the punishment which is affixed, which punishment that is affixed is in opposition to that of the happiness which is affixed, to answer the ends of the atonement—

For it must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things. If not so, my firstborn in the wilderness, righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness, neither holiness nor misery, neither good nor bad. Wherefore, all things must needs be a compound in one; wherefore, if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having no life neither death, nor corruption nor incorruption, happiness nor misery, neither sense nor insensibility.

Wherefore, it must needs have been created for a thing of naught; wherefore there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation. Wherefore, this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his eternal purposes, and also the power, and the mercy, and the justice of God.

13 Ā, mēnā ka kī koutou kāore he ture, ka kī anō koutou kāore he hara. Mēnā ka kī koutou kāore he hara, ka kī koutou kāore he tika. Ā, mēnā kāore he tika, kāore he hari. Ā, mēnā kāore he tika, he hari rānei, kāore he whakawhiunga, he hinapōuri rānei. Ā, mēnā kāore ēnei mea, kāore hoki he Atua. Ā, mēnā kāore he Atua, kāore tātou, he ao rānei; nā te mea kua kore e taea tētahi mea te hanga, ki te mahi rānei, ki te whakamahia rānei; nā reira, kua memeha tika atu ngā mea katoa.

14 Ā ināianeī, e aku tama, e kōrero ana ahau i ēnei mea ki a koutou hei painga, hei akoranga mō koutou; nā te mea he Atua pū anō, ā, nāna ngā mea katoa i hanga, ko ngā rangi me te whenua tahi, me ngā mea katoa kua ai i roto, ko ngā mea hei mahi me ngā mea hei whakamahia tahi anō.

15 Ā, kia pahawa ake anō ōna take mau tonu i te mutunga iho o te tangata, i muri iho i tana hanga i ō tātou mātua tuatahi, me ngā kararehe o te pārae, me ngā manu o te rangi, arā, ko ngā mea katoa kua hangaia nei, me tika pū ia kia tū ai he tauarotanga; ko te hua i rāhuitia pū anō e tauaro ana ki te rākau o te ora; he reka tētahi, ā, he kawa tērā atu.

16 Nā reira, kua hoatu e te Ariki te Atua ki te tangata e whiriwhiria ai mōna ake anō. Nā reira, kāore i taea e te tangata te whiriwhiri mōna ake anō hāunga pū ia kua whakawaia ia e tētahi, e tērā atu rānei.

17 Ā ko au, ko Rīhai, e ai ki ngā mea kua pānui nei ahau, me tika pū taku mōhio, tērā tētahi anahera o te Atua, e ai ki ērā kua tuhia nei, kua taka iho mai i te rangi; nā reira, i whakarēweratia ai ia, nā tana whai atu i ērā e kino nei i te aroaro o te Atua.

18 Ā, nā te mea i taka iho ia mai i te rangi, ā, kua meinga he pōuri āke, ake, ake, i whai atu anō ai ia i te whakapōuritanga o ngā tāngata katoa. Nā reira, i kī atu ia ki a Iwi, āe rā, ko taua nākahi onamata pū anō, koia te rēwera, te matua o ngā rŭkahu katoa, nā reira i kī ai ia: E kai i te hua i rāhuitia ai, ā, e kore koe e mate, engari ka rite koe ki te Atua, e mōhio ana ki te pai me te kino.

19 Ā, i muri iho i te kainga a Ārama rāua ko Iwi i te hua i rāhuitia ai, ka panaia atu rāua ki waho i te kāri o Erene, ki te ngaki i te whenua.

20 Ā, kua whānau tamariki mai rāua; āe rā, ko te whānau pū anō o te ao katoa.

And if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin. If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no righteousness. And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness. And if there be no righteousness nor happiness there be no punishment nor misery. And if these things are not there is no God. And if there is no God we are not, neither the earth; for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act nor to be acted upon; wherefore, all things must have vanished away.

And now, my sons, I speak unto you these things for your profit and learning; for there is a God, and he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are, both things to act and things to be acted upon.

And to bring about his eternal purposes in the end of man, after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being sweet and the other bitter.

Wherefore, the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself. Wherefore, man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed by the one or the other.

And I, Lehi, according to the things which I have read, must needs suppose that an angel of God, according to that which is written, had fallen from heaven; wherefore, he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before God.

And because he had fallen from heaven, and had become miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind. Wherefore, he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil, who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God, knowing good and evil.

And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

And they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the earth.



- 21     Ā, i whakaroahia ngā rā o ngā tamariki o te tangata, e ai ki te hiahia o te Atua, kia rīpenetā ai rātou i a rātou i te kikokiko; nā reira, i meinga iho tā rātou āhuatanga hei āhuatanga whakamātautau, ā, i whakaroahia tō rātou wā, e ai ki ngā whakahaunga i hoatu ai e te Ariki te Atua ki ngā tamariki a te tangata. Nā te mea, i tuku whakahaunga ai ia kia rīpenetā ai ngā tāngata katoa; nā te mea i whakaatu ai ki ngā tāngata katoa kua ngaro rātou, nō ngā hē o ō rātou mātua.
- 22     Ā ināianeī, nana, mehemea kīhai a Arami i hē kua kore ia i taka, engari kua noho tonu ia i te kāri o Erene. Ā, ko ngā mea katoa kua oti nei te hanga me tika kua noho tonu i taua āhuatanga i muri iho nei i tōna hanganga; ā, me tika kua waiho tonu ērā mō āke tonu atu.
- 23     Ā, kua kore ā rāua tamariki; nā reira kua noho tonu rāua i tētahi āhuatanga hē kore, kāore ōna hari, nā te mea kāore rāua i mōhio ki te hinapōuri; kāore he mahi pai, nā te mea kāore rāua i mōhio ki te hara.
- 24     Engari nana, kua mahia ngā mea katoa i runga i tō te mōhiotanga o te mea e mōhio ana ki ngā mea katoa.
- 25     I taka ai a Ārama kia ai he tangata; ā, kua ai ngā tangata, e hari ai rātou.
- 26     Ā, ka haere mai te Mihaia i te tutukitanga o te wā, kia hokona ai e ia ngā tamariki a te tangata i te takanga. Ā, nā te mea kua hokona rātou i te takanga kua meinga here kore rātou mō āke tonu atu, e mōhio ana ki te pai me te kino; kia mahi ai rātou mō rātou ake anō, ā, kia kua rātou e whakamahia ai, hāunga ko te whakawhiunga a te ture hei te rā nui whakamutunga, e ai ki ngā whakahaunga kua homai nei e te Atua.
- 27     Nā reira, e herekore ana ngā tāngata e ai ki tō te kikokiko; ā, e homai ana ki a rātou ngā mea katoa e tika ana mā te tangata. Ā, e wātea ana rātou ki te whiriwhiri i te herekoretanga me te oranga tonutanga, mā roto i te Kaitakawaenga nui o ngā tāngata katoa, ki te whiriwhiri rānei i te hereherenga me te matenga, e ai ki te hereherenga me te kaha o te rēwera; nā te mea e whai ana ia kia hinapōuri ai ngā tāngata katoa pērā ki a ia anō.

And the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh; wherefore, their state became a state of probation, and their time was lengthened, according to the commandments which the Lord God gave unto the children of men. For he gave commandment that all men must repent; for he showed unto all men that they were lost, because of the transgression of their parents.

And now, behold, if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he would have remained in the garden of Eden. And all things which were created must have remained in the same state in which they were after they were created; and they must have remained forever, and had no end.

And they would have had no children; wherefore they would have remained in a state of innocence, having no joy, for they knew no misery; doing no good, for they knew no sin.

But behold, all things have been done in the wisdom of him who knoweth all things.

Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have joy.

And the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem the children of men from the fall. And because that they are redeemed from the fall they have become free forever, knowing good from evil; to act for themselves and not to be acted upon, save it be by the punishment of the law at the great and last day, according to the commandments which God hath given.

Wherefore, men are free according to the flesh; and all things are given them which are expedient unto man. And they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death, according to the captivity and power of the devil; for he seeketh that all men might be miserable like unto himself.

28     Ā, ināianeī, e aku tama, e hiahia ana ahau kia titiro ai koutou ki te Kaitakawaenga nui, me te whakarongo ki āna whakahaunga nui; me te ū ki āna kupu, me te whiriwhiri i te oranga tonutanga, e ai ki te hiahia o tana Wairua Tapu.

29     Ā, kia kaua e whirwhiri i te matenga tonutanga, e ai ki te hiahia o te kikokiko me te kino i roto nei, kua tuku kaha nei ia ki te wairua o te rēwera hei whakahereheretia, kia whakaraua iho koe ki te ao rēwera, kia tū ai ia hei kīngi i runga i a koutou i tōna kīngitanga.

30     Kua kōrero ahau i ēnei kupu ruarua ki a koutou katoa, e aku tama, i ngā rā whakamutunga o tōku whakamātautauranga; ā, kua whiriwhiri ahau i te wāhi pai, e ai ki ngā kupu a te poropiti. Ā, kāore he take kē atu hāunga ko te painga mau tonu o ō koutou wairua. Āmine.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should look to the great Mediator, and hearken unto his great commandments; and be faithful unto his words, and choose eternal life, according to the will of his Holy Spirit;

And not choose eternal death, according to the will of the flesh and the evil which is therein, which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own kingdom.

I have spoken these few words unto you all, my sons, in the last days of my probation; and I have chosen the good part, according to the words of the prophet. And I have none other object save it be the everlasting welfare of your souls. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 3

- 1 Ā ināianeī ka kōrero au ki a koe, e Hōhepa, e taku pōtiki. Kua whānau mai koe i te koraha o aku whakamamaetanga; āe rā, i ngā rā o ōku pōuritanga nui i whānau mai ai koe i tō whaea.
- 2 Ā, kia whakatapu anō rā koa te Ariki i tēnei whenua mōu, koia he whenua tongarewa, hei tukunga ihotanga mōu, ā, hei tukunga ihotanga mō ō uri me ō tuākana, hei haumarutanga mōu āke, ake, ake, ki te mea ka pupuri koutou i ngā whakahaunga a te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 3 Ā ināianeī, e Hōhepa, e taku pōtiki, kua haria mai ki waho i te koraha o aku whakamamaetanga, kia manaaki anō rā koa te Ariki i a koe mō āke tonu atu, nā te mea kua kore e whakangaromia katoatia atu ō uri.
- 4 Nā te mea nana, ko koe te hua o ōku hope; ā, he uri ahau nā Hōhepa i kawea hereherehia atu i Īhipa. Ā, he nui ngā kawenata a te Ariki i mea ai ia ki a Hōhepa.
- 5 Nā reira, i kite pono mai a Hōhepa i ō tātou rā. Ā, i whiwhi ia i tētahi kupu whakaari nō te Ariki, nā, mai i ngā hua o ōna hope ka whakaara ake te Ariki te Atua i tētahi manga tika ki te whare o Iharaira; ehara i te Mīhaia, engari he manga ka whatia atu nei, hei aha koa, kia maumaharatia i roto i ngā kawenata a te Ariki, nā, ka whakakitea mai te Mīhaia ki a rātou i ngā rā whakamutunga, i te wairua o te mana, tae atu ana ki te kawenga i a rātou i te pōuritanga ki te māramatanga—āe rā, i te pōuritanga huna me te hereherenga ki te herekoretanga.
- 6 Nā te mea i whakaatu pono a Hōhepa, e mea ana: Mā te Ariki tōku Atua tētahi matakite e whakaara ake, koia hei matakite kōwhiria ki ngā hua o ōku hope.
- 7 Āe rā, i kī pono a Hōhepa: E pēnei ana tā te Ariki ki ahau: Māku tētahi matakite kōwhiria e whakaara ake i ngā hua o ō hope; ā, ka whakamihatia nuitia i waenganui i ngā hua o ō hope. Ā, ka hoatu tētahi whakahaunga e au ki a ia kia mahi ai ia i tētahi mahi mō ngā hua o ō hope, ōna tuākana, koia hei mea utu nui ki a rātou, tae atu pū anō ki te kawenga i a rātou ki te mātauranga o ngā kawenata kua meatia nei e ahau me ō rātou mātua.

## 2 Nephi 3

And now I speak unto you, Joseph, my last-born. Thou wast born in the wilderness of mine afflictions; yea, in the days of my greatest sorrow did thy mother bear thee.

And may the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land, which is a most precious land, for thine inheritance and the inheritance of thy seed with thy brethren, for thy security forever, if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy One of Israel.

And now, Joseph, my last-born, whom I have brought out of the wilderness of mine afflictions, may the Lord bless thee forever, for thy seed shall not utterly be destroyed.

For behold, thou art the fruit of my loins; and I am a descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt. And great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto Joseph.

Wherefore, Joseph truly saw our day. And he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the house of Israel; not the Messiah, but a branch which was to be broken off, nevertheless, to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord that the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter days, in the spirit of power, unto the bringing of them out of darkness unto light—yea, out of hidden darkness and out of captivity unto freedom.

For Joseph truly testified, saying: A seer shall the Lord my God raise up, who shall be a choice seer unto the fruit of my loins.

Yea, Joseph truly said: Thus saith the Lord unto me: A choice seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins. And unto him will I give commandment that he shall do a work for the fruit of thy loins, his brethren, which shall be of great worth unto them, even to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants which I have made with thy fathers.

- 8     Ā, ka hoatu au ki a ia tētahi whakahaunga kia kua e mahi i tētahi mahi kē atu, hāunga ko ngā mahi ka whakahaua ia e ahau. Ā, māku ia e whakanui i te tirohanga a ōku karu; nā te mea māna aku mahi e mahi.
- 9     Ā, ka mārohirohi ia pērā ki a Mohi, koia kua kī au māku e whakaara ake ki a koutou, hei whakaputa i tōku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.
- 10    Ā, ko Mohi tāku e whakaara ake ai, kia whakaputaina ai tō iwi i te whenua o Īhipa.
- 11    Engari māku tētahi matakite e whakaara ake i ngā hua o ō hope; ā, ka hoatu ki a ia e au he mana kia kawea whakamuahia mai ai tōku kupu ki ngā uri o ō hope—ā, ehara i te kawenga whakamuatanga o tōku kupu anake, e ai tā te Ariki, engari ki te whakapakepaketanga i a rātou ki taku kupu, koia ka riro whakamua kē atu ki waenganui i a rātou.
- 12    Nā reira, mā ngā hua o ō hope e tuhi; ā, mā ngā hua o ō Hura hope e tuhi; ā, koirā mea ka tuhia e ngā hua o ō hope, me ngā mea ka tuhia e ngā hua o ō Hura hope, ka tupu ngātahi, tae atu ana ki te whakapōauautanga i ngā whakaakoranga teka me te whakatakotoranga iho i ngā tautohetohenga, me te whakapūmutanga i te maungārongo ki waenganui i ngā hua o ō hope, me te whakamōhiohio i a rātou ki te mātauranga o ō rātou mātua hei ngā rā whakamutunga, ki te mātauranga hoki o aku kawenata, e ai tā te Ariki.
- 13    Ā, mā roto i te ngoikoretanga ia e whakakahangia ai, hei taua rā e tīmata ai aku mahi i waenganui i aku iwi katoa, tae atu ana ki te whakahokinga mai i a koe, E te whare o Iharaira, e ai tā te Ariki.
- 14    Ā, i pēnei te poropititanga a Hōhepa, e mea ana: Nana, ka manaakitia taua matakite e te Ariki; ā, ka whakapōauautia rātou e whai ana ki te whakangaro i a ia; nā te mea ko tēnei kupu whakaari, kua whiwhi nei ahau i te Ariki, mō ngā hua o ōku hope, ka whakatutukihia. Nana, e tino mōhio ana ahau ki te whakatutukitanga i tēnei kupu whakaari;
- 15    Ā, ka huaina tōna ingoa mōku; ā, koia nei te ingoa o tōna matua. Ā, ka rite tahi ia ki ahau; nā te mea, ka kawea whakamuahia mai nei e te Ariki ki tōna ringa ake, mā te mana o te Ariki e kawea ai tōku iwi ki te whakaoranga.

And I will give unto him a commandment that he shall do none other work, save the work which I shall command him. And I will make him great in mine eyes; for he shall do my work.

And he shall be great like unto Moses, whom I have said I would raise up unto you, to deliver my people, O house of Israel.

And Moses will I raise up, to deliver thy people out of the land of Egypt.

But a seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins; and unto him will I give power to bring forth my word unto the seed of thy loins—and not to the bringing forth my word only, saith the Lord, but to the convincing them of my word, which shall have already gone forth among them.

Wherefore, the fruit of thy loins shall write; and the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write; and that which shall be written by the fruit of thy loins, and also that which shall be written by the fruit of the loins of Judah, shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines and laying down of contentions, and establishing peace among the fruit of thy loins, and bringing them to the knowledge of their fathers in the latter days, and also to the knowledge of my covenants, saith the Lord.

And out of weakness he shall be made strong, in that day when my work shall commence among all my people, unto the restoring thee, O house of Israel, saith the Lord.

And thus prophesied Joseph, saying: Behold, that seer will the Lord bless; and they that seek to destroy him shall be confounded; for this promise, which I have obtained of the Lord, of the fruit of my loins, shall be fulfilled. Behold, I am sure of the fulfilling of this promise;

And his name shall be called after me; and it shall be after the name of his father. And he shall be like unto me; for the thing, which the Lord shall bring forth by his hand, by the power of the Lord shall bring my people unto salvation.

- 16 Āe rā, i pēnei te poropititanga a Hōhepa: E tino mōhio ana ahau ki tēnei mea, pēnei pū anō ki taku mōhio ki te kupu whakaari a Mohi; nā te mea kua kī mai te Ariki ki ahau, māku ō uri e tiaki āke, ake, ake.
- 17 Ā, kua kī mai te Ariki: Māku he Mohi e whakaara ake; ā, māku he mana e tuku ki a ia i tētahi tokotoko; ā, māku he whakawākanga e hoatu ki a ia mā roto i te tuhituhinga. Hei aha koa e kore au e whakatangatanga i tōna arero, kia nui ai ana kōrero, nā te mea e kore au e whakamārohirohi i a ia mā roto i te kōrerotanga. Engari māku taku ture e tuhituhi atu ki a ia, mā te matihao o tōku ake ringa; ā, māku tētahi kaikōrero e whakarite māna.
- 18 Ā, i kī mai anō te Ariki ki ahau: Māku e whakaara ake ki ngā hua o ō hope; ā, māku tētahi kaikōrero e whakarite māna. Ā, māku, nana, māku e hoatu ki a ia kia tuhi ai ia i ngā tuhinga mō ngā hua o ō hope, ki ngā hua o ō hope; ā, mā te kaikōrero a ō hope e whakapuaki ai.
- 19 Ā, ko ngā kupu ka tuhia e ia, ko ngā kupu e tika ana ki taku mōhiotanga me riro whakamua atu ki ngā hua o ō hope. Ā, ka pēnāhia me i karanga ake ngā hua o ō hope ki a rātou mai i te puehu; nā te mea e mōhio ana ahau ki tō rātou whakapono.
- 20 Ā, ka karanga rātou mai i te puehu; āe rā, ko te rīpenetātanga pū anō ki ō rātou tuākana, hei muri iho pū anō i te pahuretanga o ngā whakatupuranga maha i a rātou. Ā, ka pahawa ake, ka rere atu tā rātou karanga, e ai pū anō ki te māramatanga o ā rātou kupu.
- 21 Nā tō rātou whakapono ā rātou kupu e riro whakamua ai i tōku māngai ki ō rātou tuākana ko rātou ngā hua o ōku hope; ā, ko te ngoikoretanga o ā rātou kupu e whakakahangia ai e ahau i tō rātou whakapono, tae atu ana ki te maharatanga i taku kawenata i mea ai ahau ki ō mātua.
- 22 Ā ināianeī, nana, e taku tama a Hōhepa, nā tēnei āhuatanga i poropiti ai tōku matua onamata.
- 23 Nā reira, nā tēnei kawenata e manaakitia nei koe; nā te mea e kore ō uri e whakangaromia, nā te mea ka whakarongo rātou ki ngā kupu o te pukapuka.

Yea, thus prophesied Joseph: I am sure of this thing, even as I am sure of the promise of Moses; for the Lord hath said unto me, I will preserve thy seed forever.

And the Lord hath said: I will raise up a Moses; and I will give power unto him in a rod; and I will give judgment unto him in writing. Yet I will not loose his tongue, that he shall speak much, for I will not make him mighty in speaking. But I will write unto him my law, by the finger of mine own hand; and I will make a spokesman for him.

And the Lord said unto me also: I will raise up unto the fruit of thy loins; and I will make for him a spokesman. And I, behold, I will give unto him that he shall write the writing of the fruit of thy loins, unto the fruit of thy loins; and the spokesman of thy loins shall declare it.

And the words which he shall write shall be the words which are expedient in my wisdom should go forth unto the fruit of thy loins. And it shall be as if the fruit of thy loins had cried unto them from the dust; for I know their faith.

And they shall cry from the dust; yea, even repentance unto their brethren, even after many generations have gone by them. And it shall come to pass that their cry shall go, even according to the simplicity of their words.

Because of their faith their words shall proceed forth out of my mouth unto their brethren who are the fruit of thy loins; and the weakness of their words will I make strong in their faith, unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy fathers.

And now, behold, my son Joseph, after this manner did my father of old prophesy.

Wherefore, because of this covenant thou art blessed; for thy seed shall not be destroyed, for they shall hearken unto the words of the book.

24     Ā, ka ara ake tētahi mea mārohirohi i waenganui i  
a rātou, ka nui ana mahi pai, ā-kupu, ā-mahi hoki,  
hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua, i te  
whakapono nui, kia mahi ai i ngā mea whakamīharo  
nui, me te mahi i tērā mea e nui ana i te tirohanga a  
te Atua, tae atu ana ki te whakapahawatanga i ngā  
whakahokinga nui ki te whare o Iharaira, ki ngā uri  
o ōku tuākana anō hoki.

25     Ā ināianei, kua manaakitia koe, e Hōhepa. Nana,  
he nohinohi koe; nā reira whakarongo ki ngā kupu a  
tō tuakana, a Nīwhai, ka pērāhia ki a koe e ai pū anō  
ki ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei e au. Maumaharatia  
ngā kupu a tō matua e mate ana. Āmine.

And there shall rise up one mighty among them,  
who shall do much good, both in word and in deed,  
being an instrument in the hands of God, with ex-  
ceeding faith, to work mighty wonders, and do that  
thing which is great in the sight of God, unto the  
bringing to pass much restoration unto the house of  
Israel, and unto the seed of thy brethren.

And now, blessed art thou, Joseph. Behold, thou  
art little; wherefore hearken unto the words of thy  
brother, Nephi, and it shall be done unto thee even  
according to the words which I have spoken.  
Remember the words of thy dying father. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 4

- 1 Nā, ko ahau, ko Nīwhai, ka kōrero mō ngā poropititanga i kōrerotia e tōku matua, mō Hōhepa i mauria atu rā ki roto i Ihipa:
- 2 Nana rā, i poropiti pono ia e pā ana ki ōna uri katoa. Ā, ko ngā poropititanga i tuhi ai ia, kāore he maha i tua atu. Nā, i poropiti ia e pā ana ki a tātou, me ō tātou whakatupuranga anamata; ā, i tuhia aua mea ki runga i ngā papa parāhe.
- 3 Nā reira, i muri iho i te whakakapinga kōrero a tōku matua e pā ana ki nga poropititanga a Hōhepa, i karanga ia ki ngā tamariki a Rāmana, ki āna tama, me āna tamāhine, ā, ka kī atu ki a rātou: Nana, e aku tama, me aku tamāhine, koia nei ngā tama me ngā tamāhine a taku mātāmua, e hiahia ana ahau kia whaitaringa mai koutou ki aku kupu;
- 4 Nā te mea, kua kī mai te Ariki te Atua: Ina pupuri koutou i aku whakahaunga ka whaioranga koutou i runga i te whenua; ā, ina kore koutou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga, ka hātepea atu koutou i mua i tōku aroaro.
- 5 Engari nana, e aku tama me aku tamāhine, kāore ahau e kaha ki te heke iho ki taku rua kōiwi ki te kore e waiho e ahau he manaakitanga ki runga i a koutou; nana rā, e mōhio ana ahau ki te whakatupuria ake koutou i te huarahi e haere ai koutou, e kore koutou e mawehe atu.
- 6 Nā reira, mehemea kua kangaia koutou, nana, ka waiho e ahau taku manaakitanga ki runga i a koutou, kia tangohia mai ai te kanga i runga i a koutou, ā, ka utaina ki runga ki ngā upoko o ō koutou mātua.
- 7 Nā reira, nā taku manaakitanga e kore ai koutou e tukua e te Ariki te Atua kia mate ai koutou; nā reira, ka whakaaro ia ki a koutou, ki ō koutou uri anō hoki, āke ake tonu atu.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i te whakakapinga kōrero a tōku matua ki nga tama me ngā tamāhine a Rāmana, ka meinga e ia kia kawea ai ngā tama me ngā tamāhine a Remuere ki tōna aroaro.

## 2 Nephi 4

And now, I, Nephi, speak concerning the prophecies of which my father hath spoken, concerning Joseph, who was carried into Egypt.

For behold, he truly prophesied concerning all his seed. And the prophecies which he wrote, there are not many greater. And he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations; and they are written upon the plates of brass.

Wherefore, after my father had made an end of speaking concerning the prophecies of Joseph, he called the children of Laman, his sons, and his daughters, and said unto them: Behold, my sons, and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my firstborn, I would that ye should give ear unto my words.

For the Lord God hath said that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

But behold, my sons and my daughters, I cannot go down to my grave save I should leave a blessing upon you; for behold, I know that if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart from it.

Wherefore, if ye are cursed, behold, I leave my blessing upon you, that the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the heads of your parents.

Wherefore, because of my blessing the Lord God will not suffer that ye shall perish; wherefore, he will be merciful unto you and unto your seed forever.

And it came to pass that after my father had made an end of speaking to the sons and daughters of Laman, he caused the sons and daughters of Lemuel to be brought before him.

- 9     Ā, i kōrero atu ia ki a rātou, e mea ana: Nana, e aku tama me aku tamāhine, koia nei ngā tama me ngā tamāhine a taku tama tuarua; nana, ka waiho e ahau ki a koutou taua manaakitanga anō i waiho nei e ahau ki ngā tama me ngā tamāhine a Rāmana; nā reira, e kore koe e whakangaromia katoatia, engari hei te mutunga iho ka manaakitia ō uri.
- 10    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te whakakapinga kōrero a tōku matua ki a ratou, nana, ka kōrero atu ia ki ngā tama a Ihimaera, āe rā, ki tōna whare katoa.
- 11    Ā, i muri iho i tana whakakapinga kōrero ki a rātou, ka kōrero ia ki a Hāmi, e mea ana: Kua manaakitia koe, me ō uri; nā te mea ka tukuna iho te whenua ki a koe pērā ki tō teina a Nīwhai. Ā, ka taturia ngātahitia ō uri me ōna uri; ā, ka pērā koe ki tō teina; ka pērā anō hoki ō uri ki ōna uri, ā, ka manaakitia koe i ō rā katoa.
- 12    Ā, i pahawa ake, i muri iho i tā tōku matua, tā Rihai, kōrero ki tōna whare katoa, e ai ki ngā kare ā-roto o tōna ngākau me te Wairua o te Ariki i roto nei i a ia, ka koroheketia ia. Ā, i pahawa ake, ka mate ia, ā, ka tāpuketia.
- 13    Ā, i pahawa ake, kāore i maha ngā rā i muri iho i tōna matenga, ka riri a Rāmana rātou ko Remuere, ko ngā tama a Ihimaera ki a au nā ngā kohetetanga a te Ariki;
- 14    Nāku rā, nā Nīwhai, i akiakina ai kia kōrero atu ai ki a rātou, e ai ki tana kupu; nā te mea he maha nga mea i kōrero ai ahau ki a rātou, me tōku matua anō hoki, i mua i tōna matenga; ā, he maha o ērā mea kua tuhia ki runga i ērā atu papa āku; nā te mea kua tuhia te wāhi nui o te hītori ki runga i ērā atu papa.
- 15    Ā, e tuhituhi ana ahau ki runga i ēnei nga mea o tōku wairua, me nga karaipiture maha kua whaongia ki runga ki ngā papa parāhe. Nō te mea, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i ngā karaipiture, ā, e whakaaroarohia ana e tōku ngākau, me te tuhituhi anō hei akoranga, hei painga mō aku tamariki.
- 16    Nana, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i ngā mea o te Ariki; me tōku ngākau anō e whakaaroaro tonu ana i ngā mea i kite ai, i rongu ai ahau.

And he spake unto them, saying: Behold, my sons and my daughters, who are the sons and the daughters of my second son; behold I leave unto you the same blessing which I left unto the sons and daughters of Laman; wherefore, thou shalt not utterly be destroyed; but in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

And it came to pass that when my father had made an end of speaking unto them, behold, he spake unto the sons of Ishmael, yea, and even all his household.

And after he had made an end of speaking unto them, he spake unto Sam, saying: Blessed art thou, and thy seed; for thou shalt inherit the land like unto thy brother Nephi. And thy seed shall be numbered with his seed; and thou shalt be even like unto thy brother, and thy seed like unto his seed; and thou shalt be blessed in all thy days.

And it came to pass after my father, Lehi, had spoken unto all his household, according to the feelings of his heart and the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, he waxed old. And it came to pass that he died, and was buried.

And it came to pass that not many days after his death, Laman and Lemuel and the sons of Ishmael were angry with me because of the admonitions of the Lord.

For I, Nephi, was constrained to speak unto them, according to his word; for I had spoken many things unto them, and also my father, before his death; many of which sayings are written upon mine other plates; for a more history part are written upon mine other plates.

And upon these I write the things of my soul, and many of the scriptures which are engraven upon the plates of brass. For my soul delighteth in the scriptures, and my heart pondereth them, and writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

Behold, my soul delighteth in the things of the Lord; and my heart pondereth continually upon the things which I have seen and heard.



17 Hei aha koa, ahakoa te atawhainga nui a te Ariki, i tana whakaaturanga mai ki ahau i āna mahi nunui whakamīharo, e whakapāha ana tōku ngākau: Auē e tūreikura ana ahau! Āe rā, e pōuri ana tōku ngākau mō tōku kikokiko; e mōteatea ana tōku wairua mō ōku hē.

18 E karapotia ana ahau, nā ngā whakawainga me ngā hara e whakararu noa iho nei i ahau.

19 Ā, ina hiahia ahau ki te whakamanamana, ka ngunguru ake tōku ngākau nā ōku hara; hei ahakoa, e mōhio ana ahau ki tāku i whakawhirinaki ai.

20 Kua waiho ko te Atua hei whakawhirinakitanga mōku; nāna ahau i ārahi i runga i ōku mamaetanga i te koraha; nāna ahau i tiaki i runga i ngā wai o te rire nui.

21 Kua whakakīa ahau e ia ki tōna aroha, tae atu ana ki te whakapaunga ake i ōku kikokiko.

22 Kua whakapōauau ia i ōku hoa riri, nā konā ka tūioioi rātou i tōku aroaro.

23 Nana, kua whakarongo mai ia ki taku tangi i te ao, ā, kua homai he mātauranga mā ngā whakakitenga ki ahau i te pō.

24 Ā, kua māia haere ahau ki te inoi kaha i te rā; āe rā, kua tukua ake tōku reo ki runga ki ngā ikeike; ka heke iho mai nei ngā anahera, ā, ka minititia mai ahau.

25 Kua kahakina atu tōku tinana i runga i ngā parirau o tōna Wairua ki runga i ngā maunga tiketike rawa. Kua kite ōku karu i ngā mea nunui, āe rā, he nui rawa atu nei mō te tangata; nō reira i whakahau ahau kia kaua ai au e tuhi.

26 Ā tēnā, mehemea kua kite ahau i ēnei mea nunui; mehemea ko te Ariki i runga i tōna tapatuhanga ki ngā tamariki a te tangata kua toro ki ngā tangata i runga i te aroha nui; he aha e tangi ai tōku ngākau, e whakawhēauau ai tōku wairua i te whārua o te pōuri, e memeha ai ōku kikokiko, e ngoikore ai tōku kaha, nā ōku mamaetanga?

27 Ā, he aha ahau e tuku ai ki te hara, nā ōku kikokiko? Āe rā, he aha ahau e tuohu ai i ngā whakawainga kia whai wahi ai te mea kino ki roto i tōku ngākau, e whakangaro ai i tōku rangimārie, ā, hei whakamamae i tōku wairua? He aha au e riri ai i tōku hoariri?

Nevertheless, notwithstanding the great goodness of the Lord, in showing me his great and marvelous works, my heart exclaimeth: O wretched man that I am! Yea, my heart sorroweth because of my flesh; my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

I am encompassed about, because of the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

And when I desire to rejoice, my heart groaneth because of my sins; nevertheless, I know in whom I have trusted.

My God hath been my support; he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness; and he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

He hath filled me with his love, even unto the consuming of my flesh.

He hath confounded mine enemies, unto the causing of them to quake before me.

Behold, he hath heard my cry by day, and he hath given me knowledge by visions in the night-time.

And by day have I waxed bold in mighty prayer before him; yea, my voice have I sent up on high; and angels came down and ministered unto me.

And upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away upon exceedingly high mountains. And mine eyes have beheld great things, yea, even too great for man; therefore I was bidden that I should not write them.

O then, if I have seen so great things, if the Lord in his condescension unto the children of men hath visited men in so much mercy, why should my heart weep and my soul linger in the valley of sorrow, and my flesh waste away, and my strength slacken, because of mine afflictions?

And why should I yield to sin, because of my flesh? Yea, why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul? Why am I angry because of mine enemy?

28 Maranga, e tōku wairua! Kāti noa te pōuri i runga i te hara. Kia hari, E tōku ngākau, kaua e tuku wāhi atu mō te hoariri o tōku wairua.

29 Kaua e riri anō i ōku hoariri. Kaua e ngoikore tōku kaha i ōku mamaetanga.

30 Kia hari, E tōku ngākau, ā, karanga ake ki te Ariki, ā, me kī ake: E te Ariki, ka whakamoemiti ahau ki a koe ake tonu atu; āe rā, ka hari tōku wairua i roto i a koe, e tōku Atua, ā, e te toka o tōku whakaoranga.

31 E te Ariki, ka hokona rānei e koe tōku wairua? Ka whakaputaina rānei e koe ahau i roto i nga ringaringa o ōku hoariri? Ka meinga rānei e koe ahau kia tūoioi ai i te āhuetanga o te hara?

32 Kia tūtakina tonutia atu ngā kūwaha o te ao rēwera i mua i ahau, nō te mea, he ngākau marū tōku, he wairua iro! E te Ariki, kia kaua koe e tūtaki i ngā kūwaha o tō tika i mua i ahau, kia haere ai ahau i te ara o te whārua whakararo, kia tōtika ahau i te huarahi papatairite!

33 E te Ariki, kia karapoti koe i a au ki te kahu o tō tika! E te Ariki, kia meinga e koe he whakaputanga mōku i te aroaro o ōku hoariri! Kia whakatikaia e koe tōku huarahi i mua i ahau! Kia kaua e waiho e koe he tūtukitanga waewae i tōku ara—engari kia whakawātea koe i tōku huarahi, ā, kaua e ārai i tōku huarahi, engari ko ngā huarahi o tōku hoariri.

34 E te Ariki, kua whakawhirinaki ahau ki a koe, ā, ka whakawhirinaki anō ahau ki a koe, āke tonu atu. E kore ahau e whakawhirinaki atu ki te ringaringa o te kikokiko; nō te mea e mōhio ana ahau kua kangaia te tangata e whakawhirinaki ana ki te ringaringa o te kikokiko. Āe rā, kua kangaia ia e whakawhirinaki ana ki te tangata, ā, e meinga ana rānei te kikokiko hei ringaringa mōna.

35 Āe rā, e mōhio ana ahau ka hoatu noa iho nei e te Atua ki te tangata e inoi ana. Āe rā, ka homai e tōku Atua ki ahau, ki te kore e hē taku inoi; nō reira ka hāmama ake tōku reo ki a koe; āe rā, ka karanga ake ahau ki a koe, e tōku Atua, e te toka o tōku tika. Nana, ka kake ake tōku reo ki a koe, ake tonu atu, e tōku toka, e tōku Atua Ora Tonu. Āmine.

Awake, my soul! No longer droop in sin. Rejoice, O my heart, and give place no more for the enemy of my soul.

Do not anger again because of mine enemies. Do not slacken my strength because of mine afflictions.

Rejoice, O my heart, and cry unto the Lord, and say: O Lord, I will praise thee forever; yea, my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul? Wilt thou deliver me out of the hands of mine enemies? Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin?

May the gates of hell be shut continually before me, because that my heart is broken and my spirit is contrite! O Lord, wilt thou not shut the gates of thy righteousness before me, that I may walk in the path of the low valley, that I may be strict in the plain road!

O Lord, wilt thou encircle me around in the robe of thy righteousness! O Lord, wilt thou make a way for mine escape before mine enemies! Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place a stumbling block in my way—but that thou wouldst clear my way before me, and hedge not up my way, but the ways of mine enemy.

O Lord, I have trusted in thee, and I will trust in thee forever. I will not put my trust in the arm of flesh; for I know that cursed is he that putteth his trust in the arm of flesh. Yea, cursed is he that putteth his trust in man or maketh flesh his arm.

Yea, I know that God will give liberally to him that asketh. Yea, my God will give me, if I ask not amiss; therefore I will lift up my voice unto thee; yea, I will cry unto thee, my God, the rock of my righteousness. Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock and mine everlasting God. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 5

- 1 Nana, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Nīwhai, i karanga ake ki te Ariki, ki tōku Atua, nā te riri o ōku tuākana.
- 2 Engari nana, ka nui haere tō rātou riri ki ahau; nā konā ka whai rātou ki te muru i tōku orangea.
- 3 Āe rā, ka amuamu mai rātou ki ahau, e mea ana: E whakaaro ana tā tātou teina ki te whakahaere tikanga ki runga i a tātou; ā, he nui anō ō tātou mamae i a ia; nā reira, tukua ianei tātou kia patua ai ia, kia kore ai tātou e mamae anō i ana kupu. Nana rā, e kore tātou e pai ai ki a ia hei rangatira mō tātou; nō tātou kē, nō ngā tuākana nei te tikanga mō te whakahaere tikanga i runga i tenei iwi.
- 4 Kāore ianei ahau e tuhituhi ki runga i ēnei papa i ngā kupu katoa i amuamu mai ai rātou ki ahau. Engari, kāti noa māku e kī, i whai rātou ki te muru i tōku orangea.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, ka whakatūpato te Ariki ki ahau, me mawehe ahau, a Nīwhai, i a rātou, ā, ka rere atu ki roto i te koraha, me te hunga katoa i pai ai kia haere tahi ai me ahau.
- 6 Nā reira, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Nīwhai, i mau ki tōku whānau, ko Hōrama anō hoki me tōna whānau, ā, ko Hāmi tōku tuakana me tōna whānau, ā, ko Hākopa rāua ko Hōhepa, ōku teina, me ōku tuāhine anō hoki, me ngā tāngata katoa i pai ai kia haere tahi ai me ahau. Ā, ko te hunga katoa i pai ai kia haere tahi me ahau, koia anō te hunga i whakapono ai ki ngā whakatūpatoranga me ngā whakakitenga a te Atua; nā reira, i whakarongo mai rātou ki aku kupu.
- 7 Ā, ka kawē mātou i ō mātou tēneti me ngā mea katoa i taea ai e mātou te kawē, ā, i haere ai mātou i te koraha mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha. Ā, nō muri mai i tā mātou haeretanga mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha ka whakatū mātou i ō mātou tēneti.
- 8 Ā, ka hiahia tōku iwi kia whakahua ai mātou i te ingoa o taua wāhi ko Nīwhai; nā reira, i whakahua ai mātou i a ia ko Nīwhai.
- 9 Ā, ko te hunga katoa i ahau i hiahia kia whakahua ai rātou i a rātou anō ko te iwi o Nīwhai.
- 10 Ā, ka ū mātou ki te pupuri i ngā whakawākanga, me ngā ture, me ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki i ngā mea katoa, e ai ki te ture a Mohi.

## 2 Nephi 5

Behold, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cry much unto the Lord my God, because of the anger of my brethren.

But behold, their anger did increase against me, insomuch that they did seek to take away my life.

Yea, they did murmur against me, saying: Our younger brother thinks to rule over us; and we have had much trial because of him; wherefore, now let us slay him, that we may not be afflicted more because of his words. For behold, we will not have him to be our ruler; for it belongs unto us, who are the elder brethren, to rule over this people.

Now I do not write upon these plates all the words which they murmured against me. But it sufficeth me to say, that they did seek to take away my life.

And it came to pass that the Lord did warn me, that I, Nephi, should depart from them and flee into the wilderness, and all those who would go with me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that I, Nephi, did take my family, and also Zoram and his family, and Sam, mine elder brother and his family, and Jacob and Joseph, my younger brethren, and also my sisters, and all those who would go with me. And all those who would go with me were those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God; wherefore, they did hearken unto my words.

And we did take our tents and whatsoever things were possible for us, and did journey in the wilderness for the space of many days. And after we had journeyed for the space of many days we did pitch our tents.

And my people would that we should call the name of the place Nephi; wherefore, we did call it Nephi.

And all those who were with me did take upon them to call themselves the people of Nephi.

And we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and the commandments of the Lord in all things, according to the law of Moses.

11     Ā, i a mātou anō te Ariki; i nui rawa anō tō mātou whaioranga; nā te mea i rui purapura mātou, ā, i ranea anō tā mātou kotinga. Ā, i tīmata mātou ki te whakatupu rāngai, me ngā kāhui, me ia tū kararehe, me ia tū kararehe.

12     Ā, ko au, ko Nīwhai, i mauria anōtia mai ngā tuhinga kua whaohia i runga i ngā papa parāhe; me te poi anō hoki, arā, te kāpehu, i whakaritea nei mō tōku matua e te ringa o te Ariki, e ai ki tērā kua tuhia nei.

13     Ā, i pahawa ake, i nui haere tō matou whaioranga, ā, ka tokomaha haere mātou i runga i te whenua.

14     Ā nāku, nā Nīwhai, i tiki atu i te hoari a Rāpana, ā, e ai ki tana āhuatanga ka hangaia ngā hoari maha, kei tūpono noa mai te iwi kua huaina ināiane ko ngā Rāmāna e whakaeke mai ai, ā, ka whakamate i a mātou; nā taku mōhio ki tō rātou mauāhara ki ahau, ki aku tamariki, ki te hunga anō hoki kua huaina nei ko tōku iwi.

15     Ā, ka whakaako ahau i tōku iwi ki te waihanga whare, me te mahi i ngā mahinga katoa o te rākau, o te rino, o te kapa, o te parāhe, o te maitai, o te koura, o te hiriwa, o ngā oa utu nui anō, koia nei e ranea nui ana.

16     Ā, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i hanga tētahi temepera; ā, i rite taku hanganga ki te whakamahinga o te temepara a Horomona, heoi, kāore i hangaia ki ngā mea utu nui maha; kāore hoki ērā i kitea i runga i te whenua, nā reira, kīhai i taea te hanga kia rite ai ki tā Horomona temepara; engari, ko te whakamahinga o te hanganga e pērā ana anō ki te temepara o Horomona; ā, he tino pai rawa atu hoki tō reira whakamahinga.

17     Ā, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Nīwhai, i mea i tōku iwi hei iwi mamahi, ā, kia mahi ai ki ō rātou ringaringa.

18     Ā, i pahawa ake, i hiahia rātou ko ahau hei kīngi mō rātou. Engari nāku, nā Nīwhai, i hiahia ai kia kore rātou e whai kīngi; hei ahakoa, i mahi ahau i ērā i taea ai e ahau.

And the Lord was with us; and we did prosper exceedingly; for we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance. And we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

And I, Nephi, had also brought the records which were engraven upon the plates of brass; and also the ball, or compass, which was prepared for my father by the hand of the Lord, according to that which is written.

And it came to pass that we began to prosper exceedingly, and to multiply in the land.

And I, Nephi, did take the sword of Laban, and after the manner of it did make many swords, lest by any means the people who were now called Lamanites should come upon us and destroy us; for I knew their hatred towards me and my children and those who were called my people.

And I did teach my people to build buildings, and to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious ores, which were in great abundance.

And I, Nephi, did build a temple; and I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon save it were not built of so many precious things; for they were not to be found upon the land, wherefore, it could not be built like unto Solomon's temple. But the manner of the construction was like unto the temple of Solomon; and the workmanship thereof was exceedingly fine.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor with their hands.

And it came to pass that they would that I should be their king. But I, Nephi, was desirous that they should have no king; nevertheless, I did for them according to that which was in my power.

- 19     Ā nana, kua ea ngā kupu a te Ariki ki ōku tuākana, i kōrerotia e ia e pā ana ki a rātou, kia waiho ko ahau tō rātou kaiwhakahaere, tō rātou kaiwhakaako hoki. Nā reira, kua waiho ko ahau tō rātou kaiwhakahaere, to rātou kaiwhakaako, e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki, ā, tae noa ki te wā i whai ai rātou ki te muru i tōku orange.
- 20     Nā reira, i ea te kupu a te Ariki i kōrero ai ia ki ahau, e mea ana: Ina kore rātou e whakarongo ki ō kupu, ka hātepea atu rātou i te aroaro o te Ariki. Ā nana, i hātepea atu rātou i tōna aroaro.
- 21     Ā, kua meinga e ia te kanga kia tau ai ki runga i a rātou, āe rā, he kanga nanakia, nā ō rātou kino. Nana rā, i whakapakeke ratou i ō rātou ngākau ki a ia, kua taurite haere rātou ki te kiripaka; nā reira, i te mea he kiritea rātou, he ātaahua rawa anō, he āhuareka rawa anō, kia kua noa mai ai e whakapoapoa ai ki tōku iwi ka meinga rātou e te Ariki te Atua kia tau ai he kiri mangu ki runga i a rātou.
- 22     Ā, e pēnei ai tā te Ariki te Atua: Ka meinga anō rātou e ahau he mea whakarihariha ki tō iwi, māna, ka rīpenetā rātou i ō rātou hara.
- 23     Ā, ka kanga hoki te uri o te tangata e hanumi ana ki ō rātou uri; nā te mea ka kangaia rātou ki taua kanga anō. Ā, i kīa ake e te Ariki, ā, i tutuki.
- 24     Ā, nā te kanga i runga nei i a rātou ka meinga he iwi māngere rātou, e kī katoa ana i te tinihanga me te nukarau, ā, ka rapu kararehe pāpurenga i te koraha.
- 25     Ā, ka kī mai te Ariki te Atua ki ahau: Ka waiho rātou hei whakawhiu ki ō uri, hei whakaoho ake i a rātou kia mahara mai ki ahau; ā, ki te kore rātou e mahara i ahau me te whakarongo mai ki aku kupu ka whakawhiu rātou i a rātou tae noa ki te whakangaromanga.
- 26     Ā, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Nīwhai, i whakatapua ai a Hākopa rāua ko Hōhepa hei tohunga, hei kaiwhakaako i runga i te whenua o tōku iwi.
- 27     Ā, ka noho mātou i te āhuetanga o te harikoa.
- 28     Ā, kua pahemo atu ngā tau e toru tekau mai i te wā i mawehe atu ai mātou i Hiruharama.

And behold, the words of the Lord had been fulfilled unto my brethren, which he spake concerning them, that I should be their ruler and their teacher. Wherefore, I had been their ruler and their teacher, according to the commandments of the Lord, until the time they sought to take away my life.

Wherefore, the word of the Lord was fulfilled which he spake unto me, saying that: Inasmuch as they will not hearken unto thy words they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And behold, they were cut off from his presence.

And he had caused the cursing to come upon them, yea, even a sore cursing, because of their iniquity. For behold, they had hardened their hearts against him, that they had become like unto a flint; wherefore, as they were white, and exceedingly fair and delightsome, that they might not be enticing unto my people the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon them.

And thus saith the Lord God: I will cause that they shall be loathsome unto thy people, save they shall repent of their iniquities.

And cursed shall be the seed of him that mixeth with their seed; for they shall be cursed even with the same cursing. And the Lord spake it, and it was done.

And because of their cursing which was upon them they did become an idle people, full of mischief and subtlety, and did seek in the wilderness for beasts of prey.

And the Lord God said unto me: They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in remembrance of me; and inasmuch as they will not remember me, and hearken unto my words, they shall scourge them even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

And it came to pass that we lived after the manner of happiness.

And thirty years had passed away from the time we left Jerusalem.

- 29     Ā, nāku, nā Nīwhai, i mau ngā tuhituhinga ki  
runga i aku papa, i hangaia nei e ahau, mō tōku iwi ā  
mohoa noa nei.
- 30     Ā, i pahawa ake, i kī mai te Ariki te Atua ki ahau:  
Hangaia anōtia ētahi papa; ā, ka whaohia e koe ngā  
mea maha ki runga e pai nei ki taku titiro, hei painga  
mō tō iwi.
- 31     Nā reira ahau, a Nīwhai, kia ngohengohe ai ki ngā  
whakahaunga a te Ariki, i haere ahau, ā, i hangaia  
ēnei papa kua whaohia nei e ahau ēnei mea ki runga.
- 32     Nā, i whao ahau i tērā e āhuareka nei ki te Atua. Ā,  
mehemea e āhuareka ana tōku iwi ki ngā mea o te  
Atua, ka āhuareka anō hoki rātou ki aku  
whaowhaonga i runga nei i ēnei papa.
- 33     Ā, mehemea e hiahia ana tōku iwi kia mōhio ai ki  
te tino wāhi o te hītori o tōku iwi, me rapu ērā atu  
papa āku.
- 34     Ā kāti anō māku te kī, kua pahemo ngā tau e whā  
tekau, ā, kua tū kē atu ngā pakanga me ngā  
tautohenga ki ō mātou tuākana.

And I, Nephi, had kept the records upon my  
plates, which I had made, of my people thus far.

And it came to pass that the Lord God said unto  
me: Make other plates; and thou shalt engraven  
many things upon them which are good in my sight,  
for the profit of thy people.

Wherefore, I, Nephi, to be obedient to the com-  
mandments of the Lord, went and made these plates  
upon which I have engraven these things.

And I engraved that which is pleasing unto God.  
And if my people are pleased with the things of God  
they will be pleased with mine engravings which are  
upon these plates.

And if my people desire to know the more particu-  
lar part of the history of my people they must search  
mine other plates.

And it sufficeth me to say that forty years had  
passed away, and we had already had wars and con-  
tentions with our brethren.

## 2 Nīwhai 6

- 1 Ko ngā kupu a Hākopa, te teina o Nīwhai, koirā i kōrerotia e ia ki te iwi o Nīwhai:
- 2 Nana, e aku teina aroha, ko ahau, ko Hākopa, kua karangatia nei e te Atua, ā, kua whakaritea nei ki te ritenga o tōna ritenga tapu, ā, kua whakatapua e tōku tuakana, e Nīwhai, e titiro nei koutou ki a ia hei kīngi, hei kaitiaki rānei, ā, e whakawhirinaki ana koutou ki a ia hei orange mā koutou, nana, e mōhio ana koutou he tino maha ngā mea kua kōrerotia e ahau ki a koutou.
- 3 Hei aha koa, ka kōrero anō ahau ki a koutou; nā te mea e hihiri nuitia ana e ahau te orange o ō koutou wairua. Āe rā, he nui tōku mānukanuka mā koutou; ā, e mōhio ana anō koutou kua roa e pēnei katoa ana. He kaha nui nōku ki te whakahauhau i a koutou; ā, i whakaakona koutou e ahau ki ngā kupu a tōku matua; i kōrero ano hoki ahau ki a koutou mā ngā mea katoa kua tuhituhia nei, nō te hanganga rā anō o te ao.
- 4 Ā ināianeī, nana, ka kōrero atu ahau ki a koutou mā ngā mea o nāianeī me ngā mea e takoto ake nei; nā reira, ka pānui ahau ki a koutou i ngā kupu a Īhāia. Ā, ko ngā kupu ēnei i hiahia ai tōku tuakana kia kōrerotia ai e ahau ki a koutou. Ā, ka kōrero ahau ki a koutou mā ō koutou orange, kia ako ai koutou, kia whakakorōria ai anō hoki i te ingoa o tō koutou Atua.
- 5 Ā ināianeī, ko ngā kupu e pānui atu nei ahau koinā ngā mea i kōrero ai a Īhāia e pā ana ki te whare katoa o Ihairaira; nā reira, e taea ana kia whakatauritehia ai ki a koutou, nō te mea nō te whare koutou o Ihairaira. Ā, he maha anō ngā mea i kōrerotia ai e Īhāia e taea ana te whakataurite atu ki a koutou, nō te mea nō te whare koutou o Ihairaira.
- 6 Ā ināianeī, koinei ngā kupu: Ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: Nana, ka ara ake tōku ringa ki ngā Tauīwi, ka whakatūria ake hoki tōku kara ki ngā iwi; ā, ka mauria mai e rātou ō tama i roto i ō rātou ringaringa; ka kawea mai hoki ō tamāhine i runga i ō rātou pokohiwi.

## 2 Nephi 6

The words of Jacob, the brother of Nephi, which he spake unto the people of Nephi:

Behold, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, having been called of God, and ordained after the manner of his holy order, and having been consecrated by my brother Nephi, unto whom ye look as a king or a protector, and on whom ye depend for safety, behold ye know that I have spoken unto you exceedingly many things.

Nevertheless, I speak unto you again; for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls. Yea, mine anxiety is great for you; and ye yourselves know that it ever has been. For I have exhorted you with all diligence; and I have taught you the words of my father; and I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

And now, behold, I would speak unto you concerning things which are, and which are to come; wherefore, I will read you the words of Isaiah. And they are the words which my brother has desired that I should speak unto you. And I speak unto you for your sakes, that ye may learn and glorify the name of your God.

And now, the words which I shall read are they which Isaiah spake concerning all the house of Israel; wherefore, they may be likened unto you, for ye are of the house of Israel. And there are many things which have been spoken by Isaiah which may be likened unto you, because ye are of the house of Israel.

And now, these are the words: Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

- 7     Ā, ko ngā kīngi ō rātou matua atawhai, ā, ko ō rātou kuini ngā whaea atawhai; ka piko iho rātou ki a koe e tāpapa iho ana ō rātou mata ki te whenua, ā, ka mitimiti i te puehu o ō waewae; ā, ka mōhio koe ko ahau te Ariki; nō te mea e kore e whakamā te hunga e tatari mai ana ki ahau.
- 8     Ā ināianeī au, a Hākopa, ka kōrero e pā ana ki ēnei kupu: Nā te mea kua whakakitea mai e te Ariki ki ahau ko te hunga i noho ai i Hiruharama, te wāhi i ahu mai ai tātou, kua whakamatea, kua kahakina mauheretia atu.
- 9     Hei aha koa, kua whakaatu mai te Ariki ki ahau ka hoki anō rātou. Ā, nāna hoki i whakaatu mai ki a au, ka puta te Ariki te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, ki a rātou i te kikokiko; ā i muri iho i tana putanga, ka whakawhiua ia e rātou, ka rīpekatiā ia, e ai ki ngā kupu a te anahera nāna ia i kōrero mai ki ahau.
- 10    Ā, i muri i tā rātou whakapakeketanga i ō rātou ngākau me tā rātou whakamārōtanga i ō rātou kakī ki te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, nana, ko ngā whakawākanga a te Mea Tapu o Iharaira ka tau ki runga i a rātou. Ā, ka haere mai te rā, e patua ai, e whakamamaetia ai rātou.
- 11    Nā reira, a muri iho i tā rātou ainga ki wī, ki wā, e ai tā te anahera, he tokomaha ka whakamamaetia i te kikokiko, ā, e kore rātou e tukua kia mate ai, nā ngā inoi a te hunga whakapono; ka whakamararatia rātou, ka whakawhiua, ka mauāharatia; Hei aha koa, ka whakaaroa te Ariki ki a rātou, nā, ina tae rātou ki te mātauranga ki tō rātou Kaihoko, ka whakaminea ngātahitia anō rātou ki ō rātou whenua tuku iho.
- 12    Ā, e manaakitia nei ngā Tauīwi, ko rātou ērā kua tuhituhia ai e te poropiti; nā te mea nana, ki te rīpenetā rātou me te whawhai kore ki a Hiona, me te kore e whakahono ki taua hāhi nui whakarihariha, ka whakaorangia rātou; nā te mea ka whakatutuki te Ariki te Atua i āna kawenata i mahi ai ia ki āna tamariki; ko te take tēnei i tuhituhia ai ēnei mea e te poropiti.

And kings shall be thy nursing fathers, and their queens thy nursing mothers; they shall bow down to thee with their faces towards the earth, and lick up the dust of thy feet; and thou shalt know that I am the Lord; for they shall not be ashamed that wait for me.

And now I, Jacob, would speak somewhat concerning these words. For behold, the Lord has shown me that those who were at Jerusalem, from whence we came, have been slain and carried away captive.

Nevertheless, the Lord has shown unto me that they should return again. And he also has shown unto me that the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh; and after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

And after they have hardened their hearts and stiffened their necks against the Holy One of Israel, behold, the judgments of the Holy One of Israel shall come upon them. And the day cometh that they shall be smitten and afflicted.

Wherefore, after they are driven to and fro, for thus saith the angel, many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful; they shall be scattered, and smitten, and hated; nevertheless, the Lord will be merciful unto them, that when they shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, they shall be gathered together again to the lands of their inheritance.

And blessed are the Gentiles, they of whom the prophet has written; for behold, if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church, they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants which he has made unto his children; and for this cause the prophet has written these things.



- 13 Nā reira, ko rātou e whawhai nei ki a Hiona me te iwi kawenata a te Ariki ka mitimiti ake i te puehu o ō rātou waewae; ā, e kore te iwi o te Ariki e whakamākia. Nā te mea ko te iwi a te Ariki ko te hunga rātou e tatari ana ki a ia; kei te tatari tonu rātou ki te haerenga mai o te Mīhaia.
- 14 Ā nana, e ai ki ngā kupu a te poropiti, ka anga mai anō te Mīhaia mō te wā tuarua ki te whakahoki i a rātou; nā reira, ka puta mai ia ki a rātou i runga i te mana me te korōria nui, tae atu ana ki te whakangaromanga o ō rātou hoariri, ina puta mai taua rā e whakapono ai rātou ki a ia; ā, kua kore ia e whakangaro i tētahi e whakapono ana ki a ia.
- 15 Ā, ko te hunga kāore e whakapono ki a ia, ka whakangaromia tahitia e te ahi, e te tūpuhi hoki, e ngā rū hoki, e ngā whakahekenga toto hoki, e te mate urutā hoki, e te hemokai hoki. Ā, ka mōhio rātou ko te Ariki te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 16 Nā te mea tērā rānei e tangohia ai ngā taonga parau i te tangata kaha, e whakaorangia rānei te tangata kua tika nei tana hereherenga?
- 17 Engari, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki: Ka tangohia pū anō atu ngā herehere a te tangata kaha, ka whakaputaina ngā taonga parau a te nanakia; nā te mea ka whakaputa te Atua kaha i tana iwi kawenata. Nā te mea e pēnei ana te kupu a te Ariki; ka ngangare ahau ki a rātou e ngangare ana ki a koe—
- 18 Ā, ka whāngaia atu rātou e ahau e whakatupu kino ana ki a koe, ki ō rātou ake kikokiko; ā, ka haurangi rātou i ō ratou ake toto me te mea nei ko te waina reka; ā, ka mōhio ngā kikokiko katoa ko ahau ko te Ariki tō Kaiwhakaora me tō Kaihoko, te Mea Kaha o Hākopa.

Wherefore, they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord shall lick up the dust of their feet; and the people of the Lord shall not be ashamed. For the people of the Lord are they who wait for him; for they still wait for the coming of the Messiah.

And behold, according to the words of the prophet, the Messiah will set himself again the second time to recover them; wherefore, he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory, unto the destruction of their enemies, when that day cometh when they shall believe in him; and none will he destroy that believe in him.

And they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by pestilence, and by famine. And they shall know that the Lord is God, the Holy One of Israel.

For shall the prey be taken from the mighty, or the lawful captive delivered?

But thus saith the Lord: Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken away, and the prey of the terrible shall be delivered; for the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people. For thus saith the Lord: I will contend with them that contendeth with thee—

And I will feed them that oppress thee, with their own flesh; and they shall be drunken with their own blood as with sweet wine; and all flesh shall know that I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

## 2 Nīwhai 7

- 1 Āe rā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki: Kua whakarērea rānei koe, kua makaia atu rānei koe mō āke tonu atu? Ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki: Kei hea te pira o tā tō koutou whaea whakarereanga? Kua whakarērea koutou ki a wai, kua hokona atu rānei koutou ki tēhea kaituku moni āku? Āe rā, kua hokona atu koutou ki a wai? Nana, nā ō koutou hara kua hokona atu koutou i a koutou anō.
- 2 Nā reira, i taku haerenga mai, kāore he tangata; i taku karangatanga atu, āe rā, kāore i reira tētahi tangata kotahi hei whakautu. E te whare o Iharaira, kua whakapotongia rā tōku ringa, tē taea te hoko mai, kāore rānei ōku kaha ki te whakaora? Nana, i taku kohete e whakamaroke au i te moana, ka meinga ō rātou awa he koraha, ā, ka pirau ā rātou ika nā te whakamaroketanga o ō rātou wai, ā, ka mate rātou nā te hemowai.
- 3 E whakakākahu nei au i ngā rangi ki te mangumangu, ā, e mahi nei au i te kahu taratara hei uhi mō rātou.
- 4 Kua homai nei e te Ariki te Atua ki ahau te arero o te hunga matatau, e mōhio ai au me pēhea te kōrero atu i te kupu hei te wā e tika ana ki a koe, E te whare o Iharaira. I a koe e ngenge ana ka oho ia i ia ata, i ia ata. Ka whakaoho ia i tōku taringa kia rongu ai pērā i tā te hunga matatau.
- 5 Kua whakatūwhera te Ariki te Atua i tōku taringa, ā, kīhai au i tutū, kīhai rānei i tahuri atu.
- 6 I tuku atu au i tōku tuarā ki te kaipatu, me ōku pāpāringa ki te hunga e hutihuti atu i ngā makawe. Kīhai au i huna i tōku kanohi i te whakamā me te tuhanga.
- 7 Nā te mea mā te Ariki te Atua au e āwhina, nō reira kua kore pea au e whakapōauautia. Nō reira kua waiho nei e au tōku kanohi hei kiripaka, ā, e mōhio ana au kua kore au e whakamā.
- 8 Ā, e tata ana te Ariki, ā, e whakatikatika ana ia i ahau. Ko wai e tohe mai ki ahau? Tukuna kia tū tahi ai tātou. Ko wai tōku hoariri? Tukuna kia haere tata mai ia ki ahau, ā, māku ia e patu ki te kaha o tōku māngai.

## 2 Nephi 7

Yea, for thus saith the Lord: Have I put thee away, or have I cast thee off forever? For thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother's divorcement? To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have I sold you? Yea, to whom have I sold you? Behold, for your iniquities have ye sold yourselves, and for your transgressions is your mother put away.

Wherefore, when I came, there was no man; when I called, yea, there was none to answer. O house of Israel, is my hand shortened at all that it cannot redeem, or have I no power to deliver? Behold, at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they die because of thirst.

I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their covering.

The Lord God hath given me the tongue of the learned, that I should know how to speak a word in season unto thee, O house of Israel. When ye are weary he waketh morning by morning. He waketh mine ear to hear as the learned.

The Lord God hath opened mine ear, and I was not rebellious, neither turned away back.

I gave my back to the smiter, and my cheeks to them that plucked off the hair. I hid not my face from shame and spitting.

For the Lord God will help me, therefore shall I not be confounded. Therefore have I set my face like a flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

And the Lord is near, and he justifieth me. Who will contend with me? Let us stand together. Who is mine adversary? Let him come near me, and I will smite him with the strength of my mouth.

9 Nā te mea mā te Ariki te Atua au e āwhina. Ā, ko te hunga katoa e whakahē ai i ahau, nana, ka tawhitohia katoatia rātou ānō he kākahu, ā, ka kai te pūrehurehu i a rātou.

10 Ko wai i waenga i a koutou e wehi nei i te Ariki, nā, e whakarongo ana ki te reo o tana pononga, e hīkoi ana i te pōuritanga, ā, kāore ōna māramatanga?

11 Nana koutou e tahu ana i te ahi, e karapoti ana i a koutou ki ngā korakora, hīkoia i te māramatanga o tō ahi, i ngā korakora hoki i whakangihaia nei e koutou. Koinei tā tōku ringa mō koutou—ka takoto iho koutou i te pōuri.

For the Lord God will help me. And all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of his servant, that walketh in darkness and hath no light?

Behold all ye that kindle fire, that compass yourselves about with sparks, walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks which ye have kindled. This shall ye have of mine hand—ye shall lie down in sorrow.

## 2 Nīwhai 8

- 1 Whakarongo mai ki ahau, e koutou e whai ana i te tika. Titiro ki te toka i hau mai ai koutou, ki te kōhao hoki o te rua i kēria mai ai koutou.
- 2 Titiro ki a Aperahama, tō koutou matua, ki a Hera hoki, nāna koutou i whānau ai; nā te mea i karanga ahau i a ia anake, ā, i manaakitia ia.
- 3 Nā, ka whakaāio te Ariki i a Hīona, ka whakaāio ia i ōna wāhi ururua; ā, ka meinga e ia ōna koraha kia rite ki Erene, me ōna wāhi tītōhea kia rite ki te kāri o te Ariki. Ka kitea te koa me te hari i reira, te whakawhetai me te reo waiata.
- 4 Whakarongo mai ki ahau, e ōku tāngata; ā, kia whai taringa mai ki ahau, E tōku iwi; nā te mea ka puta atu tētahi ture i ahau, ā, ka meinga e au taku whakawākanga kia tau ai hei māramatanga mō ngā tāngata.
- 5 Kua tata mai tōku tika; kua puta whakamua atu tōku whakaoranga, mā tōku ringa ngā tāngata e whakawā. Ka tatari mai ngā motu ki ahau, ā, hei runga i tōku ringa tō rātou whakawhirinakitanga.
- 6 Hikina ake ō koutou karu ki ngā rangi, ā, tirohia iho te whenua i raro; nā te mea ka memeha atu ngā rangi ānō nei he pawa, ā, ka tawhitohia te whenua ānō nei he kākahu; ā, ka mate pērā anō te hunga e noho ana i reira. Engari ka mau tonu tōku whakaoranga, ā, kāore tōku tika e whakakorengia.
- 7 Whakarongo mai ki ahau, e koutou e mōhio ana ki te tika, ko ngā tāngata i tuhia nei e ahau tōku ture i ō rātou ngākau, kaua e wehi i te tāwai a te tangata, kaua e mataku rānei i ā rātou taunutanga.
- 8 Nā te mea ka kainga ake rātou e te pūrehurehu ānō nei he kahu, ā, ka kainga ake rātou e te huhu ānō nei he wūru. Engari ka mau tonu tōku tika, me tōku whakaoranga mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga.
- 9 E oho, e oho! Whakakākahuria te kaha, E te ringa o te Ariki; E oho, kia rite ki ngā rā onamata. Ehara oti i a koe nāna a Rahapa i kokoti, ā, i whara te tarakona?
- 10 Ehara oti i a koe nāna te moana i whakamaroke, ngā wai o te hōhonutanga nui; nāna ngā hōhonutanga o te moana hei huarahi e whakawhiti atu ai te hunga kua oti te hoko?

## 2 Nephi 8

Hearken unto me, ye that follow after righteousness. Look unto the rock from whence ye are hewn, and to the hole of the pit from whence ye are digged.

Look unto Abraham, your father, and unto Sarah, she that bare you; for I called him alone, and blessed him.

For the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places; and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of the Lord. Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the voice of melody.

Hearken unto me, my people; and give ear unto me, O my nation; for a law shall proceed from me, and I will make my judgment to rest for a light for the people.

My righteousness is near; my salvation is gone forth, and mine arm shall judge the people. The isles shall wait upon me, and on mine arm shall they trust.

Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and the earth shall wax old like a garment; and they that dwell therein shall die in like manner. But my salvation shall be forever, and my righteousness shall not be abolished.

Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

For the moth shall eat them up like a garment, and the worm shall eat them like wool. But my righteousness shall be forever, and my salvation from generation to generation.

Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake as in the ancient days. Art thou not he that hath cut Rahab, and wounded the dragon?

Art thou not he who hath dried the sea, the waters of the great deep; that hath made the depths of the sea a way for the ransomed to pass over?

- 11 Nō reira, ka hoki mai te hunga hokona a te Ariki, ā, ka haere mai me te waiata ki a Hīona; ā, ka tau iho te koa mau tonu me te tapu i runga i ō rātou upoko; ā, ka whiwhi rātou i te hari me te koa; ka rere atu te pōuri me te auē.
- 12 Ko au ia; āe rā, ko au ia e whakaāio ana i a koe. Nana, ko wai rā koe, e wehi ai i te tangata, koia ka mate, ā, i te tama a te tangata, ka meinga ia ānō nei he pātītī?
- 13 Ā, ka wareware ki te Ariki tō kaihangā, nāna ngā rangi i hora atu, ā, i whakatakatoria ngā tūāpapa o te ao, ā, kua pāwera tonu koe ia rā, ia rā, nā te riri o te kaiwhakapēhi, me te mea nei e rite ana ia ki te whakangaro? Ā, kei hea te riri o te kaiwhakapēhi?
- 14 E tākare tonu ana te whakapakohanga a te herehere, kia wetekina ai ia, ā, kia kaua ia e mate i te rua, kia kaua rānei tana paraoa e whakakorea.
- 15 Engari ko au te Ariki tō Atua, i haruru nei āna ngaru; ko te Ariki o ngā Mano tōna ingoa.
- 16 Ā, nāku aku kupu i puru i tō māngai, ā, kua uhia koe i te maru o tōku ringaringa, nā, kia whakatōkia ai ngā rangi me te whakatakoto i ngā tūāpapa o te ao, me te kī atu ki a Hīona: Nana, ko koe tōku iwi.
- 17 E oho, e oho, e tū ake, E Hiruharama, kua inumia nei nā te ringaringa o te Ariki te kapu o tōna riri—kua inumia ngā para o te kapa kōtētē ihotanga o te wiri—
- 18 Ā, kāore kau tētahi o ana tama katoa kua whānau mai i a ia hei arataki i a ia; kāore rānei tētahi hei pupuri atu i tana ringa, o ana tama katoa kua whakatupuria e ia.
- 19 Kua haere mai nei ēnei tama tokorua ki a koe, ko wai e pōuri mōu—tō ururuatanga me tō whakangaromanga, ā, ko te matekai me te hoari—ā, ko wai tōku hei whakaāio i a koe?
- 20 Kua hemo ō tama, hāunga tēnei tokorua; e takoto ana rāua i te ahunga mai o ngā huarahi katoa; ānō nei he puru mohoa i te kupenga, e kī ana rāua i te riri o te Ariki, te kohete a tō Atua.
- 21 Nō reira whakarongo ianei ki tēnei, e koe, e whakamamaetia ana, ā, e haurangi ana, ā, e hara i te waina.

Therefore, the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads; and they shall obtain gladness and joy; sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

I am he; yea, I am he that comforteth you. Behold, who art thou, that thou shouldst be afraid of man, who shall die, and of the son of man, who shall be made like unto grass?

And forgettest the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and laid the foundations of the earth, and hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the oppressor, as if he were ready to destroy? And where is the fury of the oppressor?

The captive exile hasteneth, that he may be loosed, and that he should not die in the pit, nor that his bread should fail.

But I am the Lord thy God, whose waves roared; the Lord of Hosts is my name.

And I have put my words in thy mouth, and have covered thee in the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay the foundations of the earth, and say unto Zion: Behold, thou art my people.

Awake, awake, stand up, O Jerusalem, which hast drunk at the hand of the Lord the cup of his fury—thou hast drunken the dregs of the cup of trembling wrung out—

And none to guide her among all the sons she hath brought forth; neither that taketh her by the hand, of all the sons she hath brought up.

These two sons are come unto thee, who shall be sorry for thee—thy desolation and destruction, and the famine and the sword—and by whom shall I comfort thee?

Thy sons have fainted, save these two; they lie at the head of all the streets; as a wild bull in a net, they are full of the fury of the Lord, the rebuke of thy God.

Therefore hear now this, thou afflicted, and drunken, and not with wine:

22 Ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, e whakakuene te Ariki,  
ā, tō Atua i te kaupapa o tana iwi; nana, kua tangohia  
atu e au i tō ringa te kapu wiriwiri, ngā para o te  
kapu o tōku riri, e kore koe e inu anō i tēnā.

23 Engari ka puru atu au i tō te ringaringa o te hunga  
whakawhiu i a koe; kua mea nei ki tō wairua: E piko  
iho nei ki raro, kia haere mātou i runga—ā, kua  
takotohia e koe tō tīnana ki raro, ā, hei huarahi atu  
mō te hunga i haere atu rā.

24 E oho, e oho, whakamaua tō kaha, E Hiona;  
whakamaua ō kākahu ātaahua, E Hiruharama, te pā  
tapu; nā te mea kua kore e haere mai ki a koe te  
hunga kokoti kore me te hunga poke ināianeī, ā,  
haere ake nei.

25 Ruia iho te puehu i a koe; e ara, e noho ki raro, E  
Hiruharama; wetekina koe mai i ngā here o tō kakī,  
E te tamāhine herehere o Hiona.

Thus saith thy Lord, the Lord and thy God plead-  
eth the cause of his people; behold, I have taken out  
of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the  
cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

But I will put it into the hand of them that afflict  
thee; who have said to thy soul: Bow down, that we  
may go over—and thou hast laid thy body as the  
ground and as the street to them that went over.

Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on  
thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city;  
for henceforth there shall no more come into thee  
the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O  
Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck,  
O captive daughter of Zion.

## 2 Nīwhai 9

- 1 Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, kua pānui au i ēnei mea e mōhio pea ana koutou e pā ana ki ngā kawenata a te Ariki kua kawenatatia e ia ki te whare o Iharaira—
- 2 Kua kōrero nei ia ki ngā Hūrai, mā te māngai o ana poropiti tapu, mai i te tīmatanga pū anō heke iho nei, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga, tae atu ana ki te wā e whakahokia ai rātou ki te hāhi pono me te kāhui o te Atua; hei te wā e huihuia ai rātou ki tō rātou kāinga ki ngā whenua tuku iho, ā, ka whakatūria i runga i ō rātou whenua whakaari.
- 3 Nana, e aku teina aroha, e kōrero ana au i ēnei mea ki a koutou e hari ai koutou, me te hiki ake i ō koutou upoko āke tonu atu, nā ngā manaakitanga ka whakataui iho te Ariki te Atua i runga i ō tamariki.
- 4 Nā, e mōhio ana au he nui tā koutou rapu, te tokomaha o koutou, kia mōhio ai ki ngā mea e haere mai nei; nā reira e mōhio nei au e mōhio ana koutou ka memeha atu ō tātou kikokiko, ā, ka mate; hei aha koa, i roto i ō tātou tīnana ka kite tātou i te Atua.
- 5 Āe rā, e mōhio nei au e mōhio ana koutou ka whakaatu atu ia i a ia anō ki te hunga kei Hiruharama, i te wāhi i ahu mai ai tātou; nā te mea e tika ana me pēnā i waenganui i a rātou; nā te mea e tika pū ana mā te kaihanganga nui kia tuku ai i a ia anō hei mea e taea nei e ngā tāngata i te kikokiko, ā, kia mate anō mō ngā tāngata katoa, nā, kia meinga ai ngā tāngata katoa hei mea e taea nei e ia.
- 6 Nā, kua pā te mate ki runga i ngā tāngata katoa, kia tutuki ai i te mahere aroha o te Kaihanganga nui, me puta mai he mana aranga, ā, me puta mai anō te aranga ki te tangata nā runga i te takanga; ā, i puta mai te takanga i te hara; ā, nā te mea i meinga ai te tangata hei mea taka kua hātepea atu rātou i te araro o te Ariki.
- 7 Nā reira, me tika pū ia hei whakamārietanga mutunga kore—ki te kore hei whakamārietanga mutunga kore kua kore tēnei pokenga e huri ai hei pokenga korenga. Nā reira, ko te whakawākanga tuatahitanga i tau ai ki runga i te tangata he mea tau iho mō tētahi wā mutunga kore. Ā, me i pērā, kua takoto iho tēnei kikokiko kia pirau ai, kia horo ai ki tōna whaea oneone, nōhea e ara anō.

## 2 Nephi 9

And now, my beloved brethren, I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord that he has covenanted with all the house of Israel—

That he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down, from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God; when they shall be gathered home to the lands of their inheritance, and shall be established in all their lands of promise.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I speak unto you these things that ye may rejoice, and lift up your heads forever, because of the blessings which the Lord God shall bestow upon your children.

For I know that ye have searched much, many of you, to know of things to come; wherefore I know that ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

Yea, I know that ye know that in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, from whence we came; for it is expedient that it should be among them; for it behooveth the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men, that all men might become subject unto him.

For as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall; and the fall came by reason of transgression; and because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement—save it should be an infinite atonement this corruption could not put on incorruption. Wherefore, the first judgment which came upon man must needs have remained to an endless duration. And if so, this flesh must have laid down to rot and to crumble to its mother earth, to rise no more.

- 8 Anō te mātauranga o te Atua, tana atawhai me tōna aroha noa! Nana rā, mehemea e kore te kikokiko e ara anō e tika ana kia meinga ai ō tātou wairua hei mea e taea nei ki tērā anahera i taka iho mai i te aroaro o te Atua Ora Tonu, ā, ka meinga he rēwera, nōhea e ara anō.
- 9 Ā, ka meinga rawa ō tātou wairua kia rite ki a ia, ā, ka meinga tātou hei rēwera, he anahera ki tētahi rēwera, kia kōpania atu i te aroaro o tō tātou Atua, ā, kia noho tonu atu ki te matua o ngā rūkahu, i te hinapōuri, pērā ki a ia; āe rā, ki taua mea nāna ō tātou mātua tuatahi i māminga, e whakapanoni ia i a ia anō hei anahera mārama, ā, ka whakaohohongia ake ngā tamariki a te tangata ki ngā whakahaeretanga muna o te kōhuru me ērā atu mahinga muna katoa o te pōuritanga.
- 10 Anō te nui o te pai o tō tātou Atua, e whakarite ana i tētahi huarahi hei putanga atu i te kapohanga o tēnei taniwhā weriweri; āe rā, ko taua taniwhā, o te mate me te ao rēwera, e huaina nei ahau ko te matenga o te tinana me te matenga hoki o te wairua.
- 11 Ā, nā te huarahi whakaora a te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, tēnei mate, koia kua kōrero nei au, koia he mea mau poto, ka tukuna ake ōna mate; ko taua mate ko te rua kōiwi.
- 12 Ā, ko tēnei mate kua kōrero nei au, koia te matenga ā-wairua, ka tukuna ake ōna mate; ko taua matenga ā-wairua ko te ao rēwera; nā reira, me tuku ake e te mate, e te ao rēwera ō rāua mate, ā, me tuku ake e te ao rēwera ōna wairua herehere, ā, me tuku ake e te rua kōiwi ōna tinana herehere, ā, ka whakahokia ngā tinana me ngā wairua o ngā tāngata tētahi ki tētahi; ā, he mea nā te mana o te aranga mai o te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 13 Anō te nui o tā te Atua mahere; Nā te mea hei tērā atu ringaringa, me tuku ake e te pararaiha o te Atua i ngā wairua o te hunga tika, ā, ko te rua kōiwi te tinana o te hunga tika; ā, ka whakahokia te wairua me te tinana ki a ia anō, ā, ka meinga ngā tāngata katoa kia piraukore, kia matekore, ā, he wairua ora rātou, e mau ana ki tētahi tino mōhiotanga pēnei i a tātou i te kikokiko, hāunga ia he tino tika rawa atu tō tātou mātauranga.

O the wisdom of God, his mercy and grace! For behold, if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

And our spirits must have become like unto him, and we become devils, angels to a devil, to be shut out from the presence of our God, and to remain with the father of lies, in misery, like unto himself; yea, to that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

O how great the goodness of our God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster; yea, that monster, death and hell, which I call the death of the body, and also the death of the spirit.

And because of the way of deliverance of our God, the Holy One of Israel, this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

And this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell; wherefore, death and hell must deliver up their dead, and hell must deliver up its captive spirits, and the grave must deliver up its captive bodies, and the bodies and the spirits of men will be restored one to the other; and it is by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

O how great the plan of our God! For on the other hand, the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again, and all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh, save it be that our knowledge shall be perfect.



- 14 Nā reira, ka mau tātou ki tētahi tino mōhiotanga o  
ō tātou kaniawhea, me ō tātou pokenga, me ō tātou  
tahangatanga; ā, ka mau te hunga tika ki tētahi  
mōhiotanga o ō rātou haringa, me ō rātou tika, e  
kākahuria ana ki te pokekore, āe rā, ki te kahu pū  
anō o te tika.
- 15 Ā ka pahawa ake, nā, ina pahure atu ngā tāngata  
katoa i tēnei mate tuatahi ki te ora, nā konā kua  
meinga he mea matekore, me puta rātou ki mua i te  
nohonga-whakawā o te Mea Tapu o Ihairaira; ā, hei  
reira puta mai ai ko te whakawākanga, kātahi rātou  
me whakawā e ai ki te whakawākanga tapu a te Atua.
- 16 Ā, e tika pū ana, e ora ana te Ariki, nā, kua  
kōrerohia ia e te Ariki te Atua, ā, ko tana kupu mau  
tonu, koia e kore rawa e pahure atu, nā, ko rātou e  
tika ana ka tika tonu, ā, ko rātou e poke ana ka poke  
tonu; nā reira, ko rātou e poke ana ko te rēwera me  
ana anahera; ā, ka haere atu rātou ki roto i te ahi  
mura tonu, kua whakaritea mō rātou; ā, ko tō rātou  
whakamamaetanga ānō nei he roto ahi whānāriki,  
ko tōna mura e kake ake ana āke tonu atu, ā, kāore  
ōna mutunga.
- 17 Anō te nui o te tika o tō tātou Atua! Nā te mea ka  
mahia katoatia ana kupu, ā, kua puta whakamua atu  
i tōna māngai, ā, me ea tana ture.
- 18 Engari, nana, ko te hunga tika, ko te hunga tapu o  
te Mea Tapu o Ihairaira, ko rātou kua whakapono ki  
roto i te Mea Tapu o Ihairaira, ko rātou kua  
whakamanawanui ki ngā rīpeka o te ao, ā, kua  
whakahāweatia tōna whakamā, ka whiwhi rātou i te  
kīngitanga o te Atua, kua whakaritea nei mō rātou i  
te orokohanganga o te ao, ā, ka toitū tō rātou hari āke  
tonu atu.
- 19 Anō te nui o te aroha o te Atua, te Mea Tapu o  
Ihairaira! Nā te mea e whakaputaina ana āna hunga  
tapu i taua taniwhā weriweri, te rēwera, me te mate,  
me te ao rēwera, me taua roto ahi whānāriki, koia te  
whakamamaetanga mutunga kore.
- 20 Anō te nui o te tapu o te Atua! Nā te mea e mōhio  
ana ia i ngā mea katoa, kāore he mea kotahi, engari e  
mōhio ana ia.

Wherefore, we shall have a perfect knowledge of  
all our guilt, and our uncleanness, and our naked-  
ness; and the righteous shall have a perfect knowl-  
edge of their enjoyment, and their righteousness, be-  
ing clothed with purity, yea, even with the robe of  
righteousness.

And it shall come to pass that when all men shall  
have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch  
as they have become immortal, they must appear be-  
fore the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel; and  
then cometh the judgment, and then must they be  
judged according to the holy judgment of God.

And assuredly, as the Lord liveth, for the Lord  
God hath spoken it, and it is his eternal word, which  
cannot pass away, that they who are righteous shall  
be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be  
filthy still; wherefore, they who are filthy are the  
devil and his angels; and they shall go away into ev-  
erlasting fire, prepared for them; and their torment  
is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascen-  
deth up forever and ever and has no end.

O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he  
executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out  
of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

But, behold, the righteous, the saints of the Holy  
One of Israel, they who have believed in the Holy  
One of Israel, they who have endured the crosses of  
the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall in-  
herit the kingdom of God, which was prepared for  
them from the foundation of the world, and their joy  
shall be full forever.

O the greatness of the mercy of our God, the Holy  
One of Israel! For he delivereth his saints from that  
awful monster the devil, and death, and hell, and  
that lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless tor-  
ment.

O how great the holiness of our God! For he  
knoweth all things, and there is not anything save he  
knows it.

- 21     Ā, ka haere mai ia ki tēnei ao kia whakaora ai i ngā tāngata katoa mehemea ka whakarongo rātou ki tōna reo; nana rā, ka mamae ia i ngā mamae o ngā tāngata katoa, āe rā, ko ngā mamae o ia tangata, o ia tangata, tāne mai, wahine mai, me ngā tamariki, ko rātou nō te whānau o Ārama.
- 22     Ā, ka mamae pēnei ia kia tau ai te aranga ki runga i ngā tāngata katoa, kia tū katoa ai i mua i tōna aroaro hei te rā whakawā nui.
- 23     Ā, e whakahau ana i ngā tāngata katoa kia rīpenetā ai rātou, kia rūmakina i tōna ingoa, e mau ana ki tētahi tino whakapono ki roto i te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, e kore rānei rātou e whakaorangia i roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 24     Ā, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā me te whakapono i tōna ingoa, me te rūmaki i tōna ingoa, me te ū tonu ki te mutunga, ka pāpunitia rātou; nā te mea kua kōrerotia nei ia e te Ariki te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 25     Nā reira, kua homai ia i tētahi ture; ā, ki te kore he ture kua homai nei kāore he whakawhiunga; ā, ki te kore he whakawhiunga kāore he whakahēnga; ā, ki te kore he whakahēnga ka whai tikanga ngā arohatanga o te Mea Tapu o Iharaira ki runga i a rātou, nā te whakamārietanga; nā te mea e whakaorangia nei rātou e tōna mana.
- 26     Nā, mā te whakamārietanga e ea ai ngā tono o tōna tika ki runga i te hunga katoa kāore i hoatu ai te ture ki a rātou, nā konei rātou e whakaorangia ai i taua taniwhā weriweri, i te mate me te ao rēwera, me te rēwera, me te roto ahi whānārīki, koia ko te whakamamaetanga mutunga kore; ā, ka whakahokia rātou ki taua Atua nāna rātou i whakaueue hā, koia ko te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 27     Engari auē te mate mō te tangata kua hoatu nei te ture ki a ia, āe rā, mō te tangata i a ia ngā whakahaunga katoa a te Atua, pērā ki a tātou, kātahi ērā ka takahia, me te moumou i ngā rā o tōna poropeihana, nā te mea he weriweri tōna āhuetanga!

And he cometh into the world that he may save all men if they will hearken unto his voice; for behold, he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

And he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

And he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel, or they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God.

And if they will not repent and believe in his name, and be baptized in his name, and endure to the end, they must be damned; for the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, has spoken it.

Wherefore, he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment; and where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement; for they are delivered by the power of him.

For the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil, and the lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment; and they are restored to that God who gave them breath, which is the Holy One of Israel.

But wo unto him that has the law given, yea, that has all the commandments of God, like unto us, and that transgresseth them, and that wasteth the days of his probation, for awful is his state!

28 Anō te mahere tinihanga o te mea kino! Anō te horihori, me te hangahanga, me te kuaretanga o te tangata! Ina ākona rātou ka pōhēhē he whaimōhio, ā, kāore rātou e whakarongo ki ngā kōrero tohutohu a te Atua, nā te mea ka whakatahangia, e pōhēhē ana nō rātou anō te mōhiohio, nā reira, he kuare tō rātou whaimōhiohio, ā, kāore ōna painga mō rātou. Ā, ka mate rātou.

29 Engari he pai kia ākona ai ki te whakarongo rātou ki ngā kōrero tohutohu a te Atua.

30 Engari auē te mate mō te hunga whairawa e ai ki ngā mea o te ao. Nā te mea rā he whairawa rātou, e whakahāwea ana rātou i te hunga rawakore, ā, e whakatoi ana rātou i te hunga ngākau māhaki, ā, e whai ana ō rātou ngākau i ō rātou taonga; nā reira, ko tō rātou taonga tō rātou atua. Ā nana, ka ngaro atu ō rātou taonga me rātou anō hoki.

31 Ā, auē te mate mō te turi e kore nei e rongorongo; nā te mea ka ngaro rātou.

32 Auē te mate mō te hunga kāpō e kore nei e kite; nā te mea ka ngaro rātou anō hoki.

33 Auē te mate mō te hunga ngākau kokoti kore, nā te mea ka patua rātou e tō rātou mōhiohio ki ō rātou hara a te rā whakamutunga.

34 Auē te mate mō te kairūkahu, nā te mea ka makaia iho ia ki te ao rēwera.

35 Auē te mate mō te kaikōhuru e kōhuru mārire ana, nā te mea ka mate ia.

36 Auē te mate mō te hunga e pūremu ana, nā te mea ka makaia iho rātou ki te ao rēwera.

37 Āe rā, auē te mate mō te hunga e koropiko ana ki ngā whakapakoko, nā te mea ka kaingākau te rēwera o ngā rēwera i a rātou.

38 Ā, hei whakakapi, auē te mate mō te hunga e mate i roto i ō rātou hara; nā te mea ka hoki atu rātou ki te Atua, ā, ka kitea tōna kanohi, ā, ka noho tonu i roto i ō rātou hara.

39 Auē, e aku teina aroha, kia mahara i te weriweritanga o te hara ki taua Atua Tapu, ā, ki te weriweritanga hoki o te tuku ki ngā whakawainga a te mea tinihanga. Kia mahara, ki te anga ngā whakaaro ki tō te kikokiko ko te mate, ā, ki te anga ngā whakaaro ki tō te wairua ko te oranga tonutanga.

O that cunning plan of the evil one! O the vainness, and the frailties, and the foolishness of men! When they are learned they think they are wise, and they hearken not unto the counsel of God, for they set it aside, supposing they know of themselves, wherefore, their wisdom is foolishness and it profiteth them not. And they shall perish.

But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world. For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their god. And behold, their treasure shall perish with them also.

And wo unto the deaf that will not hear; for they shall perish.

Wo unto the blind that will not see; for they shall perish also.

Wo unto the uncircumcised of heart, for a knowledge of their iniquities shall smite them at the last day.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell.

Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

Yea, wo unto those that worship idols, for the devil of all devils delighteth in them.

And, in fine, wo unto all those who die in their sins; for they shall return to God, and behold his face, and remain in their sins.

O, my beloved brethren, remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God, and also the awfulness of yielding to the enticings of that cunning one. Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

40 Auē, e aku teina aroha, kia whai taringa mai ki aku kupu. Kia mahara ki te nui o te Mea Tapu o Iharaira. Kaua e kī he pakeke āku kua kōrero atu nei ki a koutou; nā te mea ki te pērā koutou, ka taunu atu ki te pono; nā te mea kua kōrero au i ngā kupu a tō Kaihanga. E mōhio ana au he pakeke ngā kupu pono ki ngā pokenga katoa; engari kāore te hunga tika e wehi i ērā, nā te mea e aroha nei rātou ki te pono, ā, kāore e tūioiohia ana.

41 Mō konei, e aku teina aroha, haere mai ki te Ariki, te Mea Tapu. Kia mahara he tika ōna huarahi. Nana, he whāiti te huarahi mō te tangata, engari e takoto tōtika ana ki mua i a ia, ā, ko te Mea Tapu o Iharaira te kaitiaki o te kēti; ā, kāore e tonoa ana he pononga i reira; ā, kāore he huarahi kē atu hāunga ia mā te kēti; nā te mea tē taea ia te nukarau, nā te mea ko te Ariki te Atua tōna ingoa.

42 Ā, ko ia e pātōtō ai, ka huakina e ia ki a ia; me te hunga whaimōhio, me te hunga ākona, me te hunga e whairawa ana, kua neke ake nā ō rātou akoranga, me ō rātou whaimōhioranga, me ō rātou whairawatanga—āe rā, ko rātou te hunga e whakahāweatia ana e ia; ā, ki te kore rātou e maka atu i ēnei mea, me te whakatau iho he kuare rātou i te aroaro o te Atua, me te heke iho ki te hōhonutanga o te whakaiti, kua kore e huakina e ia ki a rātou.

43 Engari ka hunaia ngā mea a te hunga whaimōhio me te hunga whaiwhakaaro i a rātou āke tonu atu—āe rā, ko taua haringa kua whakaritea nei mō te hunga tapu.

44 Auē, e aku teina aroha, kia mahara i aku kupu. Nana, ka unuhia e au aku kākahu, ā, ka ruiruia ēnā i mua i a koe; E inoi ana au ki te Atua o tōku whakaoranga, kia tirohia au e tōna karu kimihanga-whānui; nā reira, ka mōhio koutou a te rā whakamutunga, ina whakawākia ngā tāngata katoa mō ā rātou mahinga, nā, i kitea ai e te Atua o Iharaira, nāku ō koutou hara i ruirui iho i tōku wairua, ā, e tū pīata ana au ki mua i a ia, ā, kua makere nei ō koutou toto i ahau.

45 Auē, e aku teina aroha, tahuri atu i ō koutou hara; ruiruia iho ngā mekameka o te mea e hiahia ana kia pūmau ai tana herehere i a koutou; haere mai ki te Atua koia te toka o tō koutou whakaoranga.

O, my beloved brethren, give ear to my words. Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel. Do not say that I have spoken hard things against you; for if ye do, ye will revile against the truth; for I have spoken the words of your Maker. I know that the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness; but the righteous fear them not, for they love the truth and are not shaken.

O then, my beloved brethren, come unto the Lord, the Holy One. Remember that his paths are righteous. Behold, the way for man is narrow, but it lieth in a straight course before him, and the keeper of the gate is the Holy One of Israel; and he employeth no servant there; and there is none other way save it be by the gate; for he cannot be deceived, for the Lord God is his name.

And whoso knocketh, to him will he open; and the wise, and the learned, and they that are rich, who are puffed up because of their learning, and their wisdom, and their riches—yea, they are they whom he despiseth; and save they shall cast these things away, and consider themselves fools before God, and come down in the depths of humility, he will not open unto them.

But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever—yea, that happiness which is prepared for the saints.

O, my beloved brethren, remember my words. Behold, I take off my garments, and I shake them before you; I pray the God of my salvation that he view me with his all-searching eye; wherefore, ye shall know at the last day, when all men shall be judged of their works, that the God of Israel did witness that I shook your iniquities from my soul, and that I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

O, my beloved brethren, turn away from your sins; shake off the chains of him that would bind you fast; come unto that God who is the rock of your salvation.

46 Whakaritea ō koutou wairua mō taua rā  
whaikorōria ina whakamahia te tika ki te hunga tika,  
ko te rā pū anō o te whakawākanga, kia kaua ai  
koutou e whakamaoko ai i te wehi weriwēri; kia  
kaua ai koutou e mahara i ō koutou kaniawhea  
weriwēri i runga i te tino tika, me te ākina ki te  
karanga: He tapu, he tapu ō whakawākanga, E te  
Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa—engari e mōhio ana au i  
tōku kaniawhea; nāku tō ture i takahi, ā, nōku anō  
ōku hara; ā, kua whakamaua ahau e te rēwera, nā, he  
pāpurenga au nā tana hinapōuri weriwēri.

47 Engari nana, e aku teina, e tika ana kia  
whakaohongia ai koutou e ahau ki tētahi āhuetanga  
tūturu mō ēnei mea? Kua rakaraka ake au i ō koutou  
wairua mehemea kua mā ō koutou hinengaro? Kua  
mārama atu au ki a koutou e ai ki te māramatanga o  
te pono mehemea kua mawheto koutou i te hara?

48 Nana, mehemea kua tapu koutou kua kōrero atu  
ahau ki a koutou mō te tapu; engari nā te mea kāore  
koutou e tapu ana, me te titiro mai koutou ki ahau  
hei kaiako, kāore e kore me tika pū ia kia whakaako  
au i a koutou i ngā utu mō te hara.

49 Nana, e whakarihariha ana tōku wairua ki te hara,  
ā, e hari ana tōku ngākau i te tika; ā, ka  
whakamoemiti au i te ingoa tapu o tōku Atua.

50 Haere mai, e aku teina, ko ngā mea katoa e  
matewai ana, haere mai koutou ki ngā wai; ā, ko ia  
kāore āna moni, haere mai ki te hoko, ā, ki te kai; āe  
rā, haere mai ki te hoko waina me te miraka, kaua he  
moni, ā, kaua he utu.

51 Nā reira, kaua e whakapau moni mō ngā mea  
kāore ōna painga, kaua rānei tō koutou kaha mō  
taua mea kāore e taea te whakaea. Whakarongo rawa  
mai ki ahau, me te mahara i ngā kupu kua kōrero nei  
au; me te haere mai ki te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, me te  
kai i taua mea e kore nei e ngaro, e kore rānei e  
pokea, ā, tukuna ō koutou wairua kia hari ai i runga i  
te mōmonatanga.

52 Nana, e aku teina aroha, kia mahara i ngā kupu a  
tō koutou Atua; kia inoi tonu ki a ia i te awatea, me te  
tuku whakawhetai ki tōna ingoa tapu i te pō. Tukuna  
ō koutou ngākau kia hari ai.

Prepare your souls for that glorious day when jus-  
tice shall be administered unto the righteous, even  
the day of judgment, that ye may not shrink with aw-  
ful fear; that ye may not remember your awful guilt  
in perfectness, and be constrained to exclaim: Holy,  
holy are thy judgments, O Lord God Almighty—but I  
know my guilt; I transgressed thy law, and my trans-  
gressions are mine; and the devil hath obtained me,  
that I am a prey to his awful misery.

But behold, my brethren, is it expedient that I  
should awake you to an awful reality of these things?  
Would I harrow up your souls if your minds were  
pure? Would I be plain unto you according to the  
plainness of the truth if ye were freed from sin?

Behold, if ye were holy I would speak unto you of  
holiness; but as ye are not holy, and ye look upon me  
as a teacher, it must needs be expedient that I teach  
you the consequences of sin.

Behold, my soul abhorreth sin, and my heart de-  
lighteth in righteousness; and I will praise the holy  
name of my God.

Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come  
ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come  
buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without  
money and without price.

Wherefore, do not spend money for that which is  
of no worth, nor your labor for that which cannot  
satisfy. Harken diligently unto me, and remember  
the words which I have spoken; and come unto the  
Holy One of Israel, and feast upon that which per-  
isheth not, neither can be corrupted, and let your  
soul delight in fatness.

Behold, my beloved brethren, remember the  
words of your God; pray unto him continually by  
day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night.  
Let your hearts rejoice.

53      Ā nana, anō te nui o ngā kawenata a te Ariki, ā, anō te nui o ana tapatuhanga iho ki ngā tamariki a te tangata; ā, nā tōna nui, me tōna atawhai me tōna aroha, kua whakaaria mai e ia ki a tātou kia kore ai ō tātou uri e whakangaromia katoatia, e ai ki tō te kikokiko, engari māna rātou e tiaki; ā, ka meinga rātou ngā whakatipuranga anamata he manga tika nō te whare o Iharaira.

54      Ā ināianei, e aku teina, kei te hiahia au kia kōrero tonu ki a koutou; engari hei āpōpō ka whakapuaki au i te toenga atu o aku kupu. Āmine.

And behold how great the covenants of the Lord, and how great his condescensions unto the children of men; and because of his greatness, and his grace and mercy, he has promised unto us that our seed shall not utterly be destroyed, according to the flesh, but that he would preserve them; and in future generations they shall become a righteous branch unto the house of Israel.

And now, my brethren, I would speak unto you more; but on the morrow I will declare unto you the remainder of my words. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 10

- 1 Ā ināianeī au, a Hākopa, e kōrero nei ki a koutou, e aku teina aroha, e pā ana ki tēnei manga tika kua kōrerotia nei e au.
- 2 Nana rā, ko ngā kupu whakaari kua whiwhi nei tātou he kupu whakaari ki a tātou e ai ki tō te kikokiko; nā reira, ahakoa kua whakaatuhia mai nei ki ahau, nā, ka ngaro ō tātou tamariki tokomaha i te kikokiko nā te whakapono kore, hei aha koa, ka whaiaroha te Atua ki te tokomaha; ā, ka whakahokia ā tātou tamariki, kia haere mai ai rātou ki taua mea e hoatu ai ki a rātou te mātauranga pono o tō rātou Kaihoko.
- 3 Nā reira, pērā i tāku ki a koutou, kāore e kore me tika pū ia ko te Karaiti—nā, i te pō whakamutunga i kōrero nei te anahera ki ahau me pēnei tōna ingoa—ka haere mai ki waenganui i ngā Hūrai, ki waenganui i te hunga ko rātou nei te wāhi kino ake o te ao; ā, ka rīpekatiā ia e rātou—nā konei e tika pū ana mā tō tātou Atua, ā, kāore he iwi atu anō i tēnei ao e rīpekatiā ai tō rātou Atua.
- 4 Nā te mea mēnā ka mahia ngā merekara nui i waenganui i ērā atu iwi kua rīpenetā rātou, me te mōhio ko ia tō rātou Atua.
- 5 Engari nā ngā tohungatanga teka me ngā haututū, ka whakamārō te hunga i Hiruharama i ō rātou kakī ki a ia, kia rīpekatiā ia.
- 6 Nā reira, nā ō rātou hara, whakangaromanga, matekaitanga, mate urutāhanga, ka tau iho te whakahēkenga toto ki runga i a rātou; ā, ko te hunga e kore nei e whakangaromia atu, ka whakamararatiā atu ki waenganui i ngā iwi katoa.
- 7 Engari nana, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: Ina tae mai te rā e whakapono ai rātou i ahau, nā, ko au te Karaiti, hei reira ahau kua kawenatatia ai ki ō rātou mātua ka whakahokia rātou i te kikokiko, i runga i te whenua, ki ō rātou whenua tuku iho.
- 8 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka huihuia rātou mai i tā rātou whakamararatanga roa, mai i ngā moutere o te moana, ā, mai i ngā wāhi e whā o te ao; ā, ka nui ngā iwi Tauīwi i ōku karu, e ai tā te Atua, i te kawenga atu i a rātou ki ō rātou whenua tuku iho.

## 2 Nephi 10

And now I, Jacob, speak unto you again, my beloved brethren, concerning this righteous branch of which I have spoken.

For behold, the promises which we have obtained are promises unto us according to the flesh; wherefore, as it has been shown unto me that many of our children shall perish in the flesh because of unbelief, nevertheless, God will be merciful unto many; and our children shall be restored, that they may come to that which will give them the true knowledge of their Redeemer.

Wherefore, as I said unto you, it must needs be expedient that Christ—for in the last night the angel spake unto me that this should be his name—should come among the Jews, among those who are the more wicked part of the world; and they shall crucify him—for thus it behooveth our God, and there is none other nation on earth that would crucify their God.

For should the mighty miracles be wrought among other nations they would repent, and know that he be their God.

But because of priestcrafts and iniquities, they at Jerusalem will stiffen their necks against him, that he be crucified.

Wherefore, because of their iniquities, destructions, famines, pestilences, and bloodshed shall come upon them; and they who shall not be destroyed shall be scattered among all nations.

But behold, thus saith the Lord God: When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers that they shall be restored in the flesh, upon the earth, unto the lands of their inheritance.

And it shall come to pass that they shall be gathered in from their long dispersion, from the isles of the sea, and from the four parts of the earth; and the nations of the Gentiles shall be great in the eyes of me, saith God, in carrying them forth to the lands of their inheritance.

- 9 Āe rā, ka tū ngā kīngi Tauīwi hei matua atawhai ki a rātou, ā, ka meīnga ō rātou kuini hei whaea atawhai; nā reira, he nui ngā whakaari a te Ariki ki ngā Tauīwi, nā te mea kua kōrerotia nei e ia, ā, ko wai e taea te tautohe atu?
- 10 Engari nana, ko tēnei whenua, tā te Atua, ka tū hei whenua tuku iho mō koutou, ā, ka manaakitia ngā Tauīwi i runga i te whenua.
- 11 Ā, ka tū tēnei whenua hei whenua herekore ki ngā Tauīwi, ā, kua kore he kīngi i runga i te whenua, hei ara ake ki ngā Tauīwi.
- 12 Ā, māku tēnei whenua e whakamaioro ki ērā atu iwi.
- 13 Ā, ka mate ia e whawhai ai ki a Hīona, tā te Atua.
- 14 Nā, ka mate ia e whakaara ake ai i tētahi kīngi ki ahau, nā te mea au, te Ariki, te kīngi o te rangi, ka tū hei kīngi mō rātou, ā, ka tū au hei rama mō rātou āke tonu atu, te hunga e whakarongo ai ki aku kupu.
- 15 Nā reira, nā tēnei take, kia whakaea ai i ōku kawenata kua meatia atu ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, ka meatia nei e ahau ki a rātou i a rātou i te kikokiko, me tika pū ia taku whakangaro i ngā mahinga pōuriuri, me ngā kōhuru, me ngā mea mōrikarika.
- 16 Nā reira, ko ia e whawhai ana ki a Hīona, Hūrai mai, Tauīwi mai, herehere mai, herekore mai, tāne mai, wahine mai, ka mate; nā te mea ko rātou te wahine puremu o te ao; nā te mea ko te hunga kāore e tautoko ana i ahau he hoariri ki ahau, tā te Atua.
- 17 Nā, ka whakaea au i ōku whakaari kua meatia nei e au ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, ērā ka meatia e au ki a rātou i a rātou i te kikokiko—
- 18 Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, ko te kupu tēnei a tō tātou Atua: Māku ō koutou uri e whakamamae ki te ringa o ngā Tauīwi; hei aha koa, ka whakangāwari au i ngā ngākau o ngā Tauīwi, kia rite ai rātou ki tētahi matua ki a rātou; nā reira, ka manaakitia ngā Tauīwi, ā, ka taua ngātahitia rātou me te whare o Ihairaira.

Yea, the kings of the Gentiles shall be nursing fathers unto them, and their queens shall become nursing mothers; wherefore, the promises of the Lord are great unto the Gentiles, for he hath spoken it, and who can dispute?

But behold, this land, said God, shall be a land of thine inheritance, and the Gentiles shall be blessed upon the land.

And this land shall be a land of liberty unto the Gentiles, and there shall be no kings upon the land, who shall raise up unto the Gentiles.

And I will fortify this land against all other nations.

And he that fighteth against Zion shall perish, saith God.

For he that raiseth up a king against me shall perish, for I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king, and I will be a light unto them forever, that hear my words.

Wherefore, for this cause, that my covenants may be fulfilled which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh, I must needs destroy the secret works of darkness, and of murders, and of abominations.

Wherefore, he that fighteth against Zion, both Jew and Gentile, both bond and free, both male and female, shall perish; for they are they who are the whore of all the earth; for they who are not for me are against me, saith our God.

For I will fulfil my promises which I have made unto the children of men, that I will do unto them while they are in the flesh—

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, thus saith our God: I will afflict thy seed by the hand of the Gentiles; nevertheless, I will soften the hearts of the Gentiles, that they shall be like unto a father to them; wherefore, the Gentiles shall be blessed and numbered among the house of Israel.



19 Nā reira, ka whakatapungia tēnei whenua ki ō uri, ā, ki te hunga e taua ngātahitia me ō uri, āke tonu atu, nā ko tō rātou whenua tuku iho; nā, he whenua kōwhiria, tā te Atua ki ahau, i runga i ērā atu whenua, nā reira ka meinga ahau ngā tāngata katoa e noho ana i reira kia koropiko ai ki ahau, tā te Atua.

20 Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, kitea ana kua homai nei e tō tātou Atua aroha ki a tātou he mātauranga nui e pā ana ki ēnei mea, kia mahara tātou i a ia, me te whakatakoto iho i ō tātou hara, ā, kua e tuohu i ō tātou upoko, nā te mea kāore tātou i te makaia atu; hei aha koa, kua āia atu tātou ki waho i tō tātou whenua tuku iho; engari kua ārahina tātou ki tētahi whenua pai ake, nā te mea kua whakamahia e te Ariki te moana hei ara mō tātou, ā, kei runga tātou i tētahi moutere o te moana.

21 Engari he nui ngā whakaari a te Ariki ki te hunga kei runga i ngā moutere o te moana; nā reira i te mea e kīa nei ko ngā moutere, me tika pū ia he maha ake i tēnei, ā, kua nohoia anōtia nei e ō tātou tuākana.

22 Nana rā, kua ārahina atu e te Ariki te Atua mai i te whare o Iharaira mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā, e ai ki tōna hiahia me tōna kaingākau. Ā nana ianei, e maumahara ana te Ariki i ngā mea katoa kua whatia atu, nā reira e maumahara anō ia i a tātou.

23 Nō reira, kia hari ō koutou ngākau, me te mahara e wātea ana koutou ki te mahi mō koutou ake anō—ki te whiriwhiri i te huarahi o te matenga mau tonu, i te huarahi rānei o te oranga tonutanga.

24 Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, houhia e koutou te rongo ki tā te Atua hiahia, ā, kua ki te hiahia o te rēwera me te kikokiko; me te mahara, hei muri i tā koutou hohou rongo ki te Atua, nā, mā roto anake, mā te atawhai o te Atua koutou e whakaorangia ai.

25 Nā reira, mā te Atua rā koutou e whakaara ake i te mate mā te mana o te aranga, ā, mai i te matenga mau tonu anō hoki mā te mana o te whakamārietanga, kia whakawhiwhia koutou ki roto i te kīngitanga mutunga kore o te Atua, kia whakamoemititia ia mā tōna atawhai atu. Āmine.

Wherefore, I will consecrate this land unto thy seed, and them who shall be numbered among thy seed, forever, for the land of their inheritance; for it is a choice land, saith God unto me, above all other lands, wherefore I will have all men that dwell thereon that they shall worship me, saith God.

And now, my beloved brethren, seeing that our merciful God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things, let us remember him, and lay aside our sins, and not hang down our heads, for we are not cast off; nevertheless, we have been driven out of the land of our inheritance; but we have been led to a better land, for the Lord has made the sea our path, and we are upon an isle of the sea.

But great are the promises of the Lord unto them who are upon the isles of the sea; wherefore as it says isles, there must needs be more than this, and they are inhabited also by our brethren.

For behold, the Lord God has led away from time to time from the house of Israel, according to his will and pleasure. And now behold, the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off, wherefore he remembereth us also.

Therefore, cheer up your hearts, and remember that ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, reconcile yourselves to the will of God, and not to the will of the devil and the flesh; and remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

Wherefore, may God raise you from death by the power of the resurrection, and also from everlasting death by the power of the atonement, that ye may be received into the eternal kingdom of God, that ye may praise him through grace divine. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 11

- 1 Ā ināianeī, i nui anō ngā mea i kōrero ai a Hākopa ki tōku iwi i taua wā; hei aha koa koinei anake ngā mea kua meinga e au kia tuhia ai, nā te mea ko ngā mea kua tuhia e au e ranea ana i ahau.
- 2 Ā ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, e tuhi atu anō i ngā kupu a Īhāia, nā te mea e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i ana kupu. Nā, māku ana kupu e whakataurite atu ki tōku iwi, ā, māku ērā e tuku atu ki āku tamariki katoa, nā, i tino kite ia i tōku Kaihoko, pērā i taku kitenga atu i a ia.
- 3 Ā, ko taku teina, a Hākopa, i kite anō i a ia pērā i taku kitenga atu i a ia; nā reira, māku ā rāua kupu e tuku atu ki āku tamariki kia whakaatu atu ki a rātou e pono ana aku kupu. Nā reira, mā ngā kupu a te tokotoru, kua kī te Atua, māku taku kupu e whakapūmau. Hei aha koa, e tonono mai ana te Atua i ngā kaiwhakaatu anō, ā, e whakaatuhia ana e ia āna kupu katoa.
- 4 Nana, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i te whakaaturanga atu ki ngā tāngata i te pono o te haerenga mai a te Karaiti; nā te mea, mō tēnei take i homai ai te ture a Mohi; me ngā mea katoa kua homai nei e te Atua mai i te tīmatanga rā anō o te ao, ki te tangata, e tohu ana mōna.
- 5 Ā, e kaingākau anō ana tōku wairua i ngā kawenata a te Ariki kua meatia nei ki ō tātou matua; āe rā, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i tōna atawhai, me tōna tika, me tōna mana, me tōna aroha i roto i te mahere nui mau tonu mō te whakaoranga i te mate.
- 6 Ā, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i te whakaatu atu ki tōku iwi, nā, hāunga te Karaiti e haere mai ai ka mate ngā tāngata katoa.
- 7 Nā te mea ki te kore he Karaiti kāore he Atua; ā, ki te kore he Atua kāore tātou, nā te mea kua kore i taea he hanganga. Engari he Atua, ā, he Karaiti, ā, ka haere mai ia i te tutukitanga o tōna ake wā.
- 8 Ā ināianeī, e tuhi ana au i ētahi o ngā kupu a Īhāia, kia ara ake ai ngā ngākau o te hunga o tōku iwi e kite ai i ēnei kupu, ā, kia whakahari ai mō ngā tāngata katoa. Ināianeī, koinei ngā kupu, ā, e pai ana kia whakatauritetia ai ēnā ki a koe me ngā tāngata katoa.

## 2 Nephi 11

And now, Jacob spake many more things to my people at that time; nevertheless only these things have I caused to be written, for the things which I have written sufficeth me.

And now I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah, for my soul delighteth in his words. For I will liken his words unto my people, and I will send them forth unto all my children, for he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

And my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him; wherefore, I will send their words forth unto my children to prove unto them that my words are true. Wherefore, by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word. Nevertheless, God sendeth more witnesses, and he proveth all his words.

Behold, my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ; for, for this end hath the law of Moses been given; and all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

And also my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord which he hath made to our fathers; yea, my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

And my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

For if there be no Christ there be no God; and if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation. But there is a God, and he is Christ, and he cometh in the fulness of his own time.

And now I write some of the words of Isaiah, that whoso of my people shall see these words may lift up their hearts and rejoice for all men. Now these are the words, and ye may liken them unto you and unto all men.

## 2 Nīwhai 12

- 1 Ko te kupu i kitea ai e Īhāia, te tama a Amoho, e pā ana ki a Hura me Hiruharama:
- 2 Ā, ka pahawa ake hei ngā rā whakamutunga, ina whakapūmautia te maunga o tō te Ariki whare i te kōtihi o ngā maunga, ā, ka whakateiteitia i runga ake i ngā puke, ā, ka rere ngā iwi katoa ki a ia.
- 3 Ā, ka haere ngā tāngata tokomaha me te kī, Haere mai koutou, ā, tukua tātou kia haere ake ki te maunga o te Ariki, ki te whare o te Atua o Hākopa; ā, māna tātou e whakaako mō ana tikanga, ā, ka hīkoi tātou i ana ara; nā, atu i a Hiona te ture e puta atu ai, me te kupu a te Ariki mai i Hiruharama.
- 4 Ā, ka whakawā ia i waenganui i ngā iwi, ā, ka kohete i ngā tāngata tokomaha: ā, ka patupatua e rātou ā rātou hoari hei hea-parau, ā, ko ā rātou tao hei perehūka manga—e kore tētahi iwi e hāpai hoari ki tētahi iwi, e kore rānei rātou e ako tonu ki te pakanga.
- 5 E te whare o Hākopa, haere mai koutou, ā, tukua tātou kia hīkoi ai i te māramatanga o te Ariki; āe rā, haere mai, nā te mea kua kōtiti katoa atu koutou, tēnā me tēnā i ana ara whakarihariha.
- 6 Nō reira, E te Ariki, kua whakarērea tō iwi, te whare o Hākopa, nā te mea kua whakakahangia rātou mai i te rāwhiti, me te whakarongo ki ngā tohunga matakite pērā i ngā Pirihitini, ā, e whakakoa ana rātou i a rātou anō ki ngā tamariki a tangata kē.
- 7 E kī ana anō hoki tō rātou whenua ki te hiriwā me te koura, kāore rānei he mutunga o ā rātou taonga; e kī ana tō rātou whenua i ngā hōiho, kāore hoki he mutunga o ō rātou hāriata.
- 8 E kī ana tō rātou whenua i ngā whakapakoko; e koropiko ana rātou ki te whakamahinga a ō rātou ake ringaringa, ki tērā i hangaia nei e ō rātou matihao.
- 9 Ā, kāore te ware e tuohu iho ki raro, ā, kāore te tangata kaha e whakaiti i a ia anō, nō reira, kaua e muru i a ia.
- 10 E te hunga whakarihariha, kuhuna atu te toka, ā, hunaia koe i te puehu, nā te mea ka patua koe e te wehi o te Ariki me tōna korōria.

## 2 Nephi 12

The word that Isaiah, the son of Amoz, saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

And it shall come to pass in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths; for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plow-shares, and their spears into pruning-hooks—nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

O house of Jacob, come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord; yea, come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked ways.

Therefore, O Lord, thou hast forsaken thy people, the house of Jacob, because they be replenished from the east, and hearken unto soothsayers like the Philistines, and they please themselves in the children of strangers.

Their land also is full of silver and gold, neither is there any end of their treasures; their land is also full of horses, neither is there any end of their chariots.

Their land is also full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

And the mean man boweth not down, and the great man humbleth himself not, therefore, forgive him not.

O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for the fear of the Lord and the glory of his majesty shall smite thee.

11     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka whakaitia iho ngā tirohanga whakapehapeha a te tangata, ā, ka whakapikoa iho te whakakaketanga a te tangata ki raro, ā, ka whakateiteingia te Ariki anake hei taua rā.

12     Nā, e whakatata wawe mai ana te rā o te Ariki o ngā Mano ki ngā iwi katoa, āe rā, ki runga i ngā mea katoa; āe rā, ki runga i te hunga whakahihī me te hunga whakapehapeha, ā, ki runga i ngā tāngata katoa kua neke ake, ā, ka whakaitia iho ia ki raro.

13     Āe rā, ka tae mai hoki te rā o te Ariki ki runga i ngā hīta o Repanona, nā te mea kua tiketike rātou, ā, kua neke ake rātou; ā, kei runga i ngā ōki katoa o Pahana;

14     Ā, i runga i ngā maunga tiketike katoa, ā, i runga i ngā puke katoa, i runga hoki i ngā iwi kua neke ake, ā, i runga i ia iwi, ia iwi;

15     Ā, i runga i ia pourewa tiketike, ia pourewa tiketike, ā, i runga i ia taiapa kaha, ia taiapa kaha;

16     Ā, i runga i ngā kaipuke katoa o te moana, ā, i runga i ngā kaipuke katoa o Tarahihi, ā, i runga i ngā whakaahua āhuareka katoa.

17     Ā, ka whakapikoa iho te whakapehapatanga o te tangata ki raro, ā, ka whakaitia iho te whakakakenga o te tangata; ā, ka whakateiteingia te Ariki anake hei taua rā.

18     Ā, ka whakakorehia katoatia e ia ngā whakapakoko.

19     Ā, ka kuhu atu rātou i ngā kōhao toka, ā, ki roto i ngā ana o te whenua, nā te mea ka tau iho te wehi o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka patua rātou e te nui o tōna korōria, ina ara ake ia ki te whakangāueue kino nei i te whenua.

20     Hei taua rā ka whiū tētahi tangata i ana whakapakoko hiriwā, me ana whakapakoko koura, kua hangaia nei e ia hei koropikotanga mōna, ki ngā kiore, ā, ki ngā pekapeka;

21     Kia kuhu atu ai i ngā kapiti o ngā toka, ā, ki roto i ngā tihi o ngā toka taratara, nā te mea ka tau iho te wehi o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka patua rātou ki te nui o tōna korōria, ina ara ake ia ki te whakangāueue kino nei i te whenua.

22     Kāti tāu i te tangata, kei ōna ponaihu tōna ngā; ka pēhea rā ia te whakaaro mōna?

And it shall come to pass that the lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

For the day of the Lord of Hosts soon cometh upon all nations, yea, upon every one; yea, upon the proud and lofty, and upon every one who is lifted up, and he shall be brought low.

Yea, and the day of the Lord shall come upon all the cedars of Lebanon, for they are high and lifted up; and upon all the oaks of Bashan;

And upon all the high mountains, and upon all the hills, and upon all the nations which are lifted up, and upon every people;

And upon every high tower, and upon every fenced wall;

And upon all the ships of the sea, and upon all the ships of Tarshish, and upon all pleasant pictures.

And the loftiness of man shall be bowed down, and the haughtiness of men shall be made low; and the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

And the idols he shall utterly abolish.

And they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of the earth, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles and to the bats;

To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake terribly the earth.

Cease ye from man, whose breath is in his nostrils; for wherein is he to be accounted of?

## 2 Nīwhai 13

- 1 Nana rā, ko tā te Ariki, te Ariki o ngā Mano, he muru atu mai i Hiruharama, mai i Hura anō hoki, te tītoko me te tokotoko, te tokotoko paraoa katoa, me te tītoko wai katoa—
- 2 Te tangata mārohirohi, me te tangata pakanga, te kaiwhakawā, me te poropiti, me te ruānuku, me te kaumātua;
- 3 Te rangatira o te rima tekau, me te tangata whakahōnore, me te kaunihēra, me te tohunga māminga, me te kaikōrero matatau.
- 4 Ā, ka hoatu e ahau he tamariki ki a rātou hei wheao, ā, ka whakahaere tikanga ngā kōhungahunga i runga i a rātou.
- 5 Ā, ka whakapēhia ngā tāngata, tētahi tangata e tētahi tangata, ā, tētahi tangata e tōna kiritata; ka whakahīhi te tamaiti ki te kaumātua, ā, ka tū atu te mea e whakahāweatia ana ki te mea whakahōnore.
- 6 Ina mau i tētahi tangata tōna tuakana nō te whare o tōna matua, me te kī ake: He kākahu ōu, māu hei kaiwhakahaere mō mātou, ā, kaua e tukuna tēnei ngaronga i raro i tō ringa—
- 7 Ka kī taurangi ia hei taua rā, e mea ana: E kore au hei kaitākai; nā te mea kāore he parāoa rānei, he kākahu rānei i tōku whare; kaua e meinga ahau hei kīngi mō tōku iwi.
- 8 Nā, kua turakina a Hiruharama, ā, kua hinga a Hura, nā te mea kua whawhai ō rātou arero me ā rātou mahinga ki te Ariki, hei whakapātaritari i ngā karu o tōna korōria.
- 9 E whakaatu tauaro atu ana te āhuetanga o ō rātou kanohi ki a rātou, ā, e whakapūaki ana i ō rātou hara e pērā ana ki ō Horoma, ā, e kore e taea e rātou te huna i a ia. Auē te mate mō ō rātou wairua, nā te mea kua whakautua rātou e rātou anō ki te kino!
- 10 E kī atu ki te hunga tika e pai ana mō rātou; nā te mea ka kai rātou i te hua o ā rātou mahinga.
- 11 Auē te mate mō te hunga whakarihariha, nā te mea ka mate rātou; nā te mea ka tau iho te utu a ō rātou ringaringa ki runga i a rātou!
- 12 Ā, ko tōku iwi, ko ngā tamariki ō rātou kaipēhi, ā, ka whakahaere tikanga ngā wāhine i runga i a rātou. E tōku iwi, nā te hunga e ārahi nei i a koutou te hunga e whakararu ana, ā, e whakangaro ana i te āhuetanga o ō koutou huarahi.

## 2 Nephi 13

For behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the whole stay of water—

The mighty man, and the man of war, the judge, and the prophet, and the prudent, and the ancient;

The captain of fifty, and the honorable man, and the counselor, and the cunning artificer, and the eloquent orator.

And I will give children unto them to be their princes, and babes shall rule over them.

And the people shall be oppressed, every one by another, and every one by his neighbor; the child shall behave himself proudly against the ancient, and the base against the honorable.

When a man shall take hold of his brother of the house of his father, and shall say: Thou hast clothing, be thou our ruler, and let not this ruin come under thy hand—

In that day shall he swear, saying: I will not be a healer; for in my house there is neither bread nor clothing; make me not a ruler of the people.

For Jerusalem is ruined, and Judah is fallen, because their tongues and their doings have been against the Lord, to provoke the eyes of his glory.

The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it. Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

Say unto the righteous that it is well with them; for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

And my people, children are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, they who lead thee cause thee to err and destroy the way of thy paths.

13 E tū ake ana te Ariki ki te totohe, ā, e tū ake ana ki te whakawā i te iwi.

14 Ka tīmata tā te Ariki whakawā i ngā kaumātua o tōna iwi me ngā wheao o reira; nā te mea kua kainga ake e koutou te māra waina me te pāhuatanga o ngā rawakore i ō koutou whare.

15 He aha tā koutou? Ka kurua kongakongahia nei e koutou tōku iwi, ā, ka kauorohia ngā kanohi o ngā rawakore, e ai tā te Ariki te Atua o ngā Mano.

16 Waihoki, e kī ana te Ariki: Nā te mea e whakakake ana ngā tamāhine a Hīona, me te hīkoi kakī toromua me ngā karu karihika, e hīkoi ana, ā, e hīkoi ririki ana, i a rātou e haere ana, ā, e tatangi ana ō rātou waewae—

17 Nō reira ka haua e te Ariki ki te pātito, te tumuaki o ngā upoko o ngā tamāhine a Hīona, ā, ka kitea e te Ariki ō rātou wāhi ngaro.

18 Hei taua rā ka muru atu te Ariki i te ātaahua o ā rātou whakakai tatangi, me ngā mea whakapaipai mähunga, me ngā mea porowhita e rite ana ki te marama;

19 Ngā mekameka me ngā poroporo, me ngā ārai kanohi;

20 Ngā pōtae, me ngā whakakai waewae, me ngā tīpare, me ngā mea whakakakara, me ngā mau taringa;

21 Ngā rīngi, me ngā taonga whakapaipai ihu;

22 Ngā kākahu whitihiti whakapaipai, me ngā koraka, me ngā pōtae wahine, me ngā pine whakamingi makawe;

23 Ngā whakaata, me ngā rinena pai, ngā pōtae huri, me ngā ārai.

24 Ā, ka pahawa ake, mahue he kakara reka ka pirau kē; ā, mahue he whītiki, he tawhetawhe; ā, mahue ngā makawe papai, he pākirahanga; ā, mahue he tātua whakapaipai, he kahu taratara; mahue te ātaahua he weranga.

25 Ka hinga ō tangata i te hoari, me ō mārohirohi i te pakanga.

26 Ā, ka tangi hotuhotu, ka mōteatea ōna kēti; ā, ka mokemoke kau ia, ā, ka noho iho i runga i te papa.

The Lord standeth up to plead, and standeth to judge the people.

The Lord will enter into judgment with the ancients of his people and the princes thereof; for ye have eaten up the vineyard and the spoil of the poor in your houses.

What mean ye? Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

Moreover, the Lord saith: Because the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet—

Therefore the Lord will smite with a scab the crown of the head of the daughters of Zion, and the Lord will discover their secret parts.

In that day the Lord will take away the bravery of their tinkling ornaments, and caul, and round tires like the moon;

The chains and the bracelets, and the mufflers;

The bonnets, and the ornaments of the legs, and the headbands, and the tablets, and the ear-rings;

The rings, and nose jewels;

The changeable suits of apparel, and the mantles, and the wimples, and the crisping-pins;

The glasses, and the fine linen, and hoods, and the veils.

And it shall come to pass, instead of sweet smell there shall be stink; and instead of a girdle, a rent; and instead of well set hair, baldness; and instead of a stomacher, a girding of sackcloth; burning instead of beauty.

Thy men shall fall by the sword and thy mighty in the war.

And her gates shall lament and mourn; and she shall be desolate, and shall sit upon the ground.

## 2 Nīwhai 14

- 1 Ā, i taua rā, ka mau ngā wāhine tokowhitu i te tangata kotahi, e mea ana: Ka kai mātou i tā mātou ake parāoa, ā, ka mau ō mātou ake kākahu; engari tukua mātou kia karangatia ki tō ingoa kia murua atu tō mātou whakamā.
- 2 I taua rā ka ātaahua, ā, ka whaikorōria te manga o te Ariki; he tino pai rawa atu, ā, he ātaahua ngā hua o te whenua, ki te hunga i puta atu i Iharaira.
- 3 Ā, ka pahawa ake, ka karangatia te hunga e mahue tonutia iho nei i Hiruharama he tapu, ko ngā tāngata katoa kua tuhia nei i te hunga ora i Hiruharama—
- 4 Ina horoia atu e te Ariki te paru o ngā tamāhine o Hiona, ina tahia anōtia ngā toto o Hiruharama i tō reira aroaro e te wairua o te whakawākanga, ā, e te wairua o te tahunga.
- 5 Ā, ka hanga te Ariki i runga i ia wāhi-noho o maunga Hiona, ā, i runga i ōna huihuinga, he kapua, ā, he pawa i te rā me te kanaputanga o te muranga ahi i te pō; nā, ka tau ki runga i ngā korōria katoa o Hiona tētahi waonga.
- 6 Ā, ka ai he tihokahoka hei whakamarumaruru i te rā mō te werawera, hei wāhi haumaruru, hei whakaruruhau mō te tūpuhi, ā, mō te ua.

## 2 Nephi 14

And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

In that day shall the branch of the Lord be beautiful and glorious; the fruit of the earth excellent and comely to them that are escaped of Israel.

And it shall come to pass, they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy, every one that is written among the living in Jerusalem—

When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion, and shall have purged the blood of Jerusalem from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment and by the spirit of burning.

And the Lord will create upon every dwelling-place of mount Zion, and upon her assemblies, a cloud and smoke by day and the shining of a flaming fire by night; for upon all the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

And there shall be a tabernacle for a shadow in the daytime from the heat, and for a place of refuge, and a covert from storm and from rain.

## 2 Nīwhai 15

- 1 Kātahi au ka waiata ki taku tino-tau he waiata mō taku tau, e pā ana ki tana māra waina. He māra waina tō taku tino-tau i tētahi puke tino mōmona.
- 2 Ā, i taiapatia e ia, ā, i kohia atu ngā kōhatu o reira, ā, ka whakatōkia iho e ia ki te waina tino pai rawa atu, ā, ka hangaia tētahi pourewa i waenganui, ā, i hangaia anōtia e ia he whakapēhinga-waina i konā; ā, i tāria e ia kia whakatururia mai ai he kerepe, ā, i whakatururia mai ai he kerepe puihi.
- 3 Ā ināianeī, E ngā kainoho o Hiruharama, me ngā tāne o Hura, whakawākia, tāku e inoi nei ki a koe, ko ahau me taku māra waina.
- 4 He aha kē atu hei mahi māku ki taku māra waina kāore anō au kia mahi? Nā reira, i taku tatarihanga atu kia whakatururia he kerepe i whakatururia he kerepe puihi.
- 5 Ā, tīmata ināianeī; ka kōrero atu au ki a koutou he aha rā ia tāku ki taku māra waina—ka tango atu au i tō reira taiapa tātarāmoa, ā, ka kainga ake; ā, ka turaki au i tō reira pātū, ā, ka takahia iho;
- 6 Ā, māku ia e whakamōwai hei ururua; e kore ia e tapatapahia, e ngakia rānei; engari ka tupu ake he tātarāmoa me te tūmatakuru; māku anō ngā kapua e whakahau kia kaua e uaina he ua ki runga i a ia.
- 7 Nā, ko te māra waina o te Ariki o ngā Mano, ko te whare o Iharaira, ā, ko ngā tāne o Hura tana tupu āhuareka; ā, i tāria e ia te whakawākanga, ā nana, aupēhitanga; mō te tika, engari nana, he tangi auē.
- 8 Auē te mate mō te hunga e hono ana i tētahi whare ki tētahi whare, kia kore ai e taea he wāhi, kia whakanohoia ai rātou anake i waenganui i te whenua!
- 9 I ōku taringa, i kī ai te Ariki o ngā Mano, mō tētahi ponotanga ka mokemoke kau ngā whare maha, ā, he pā nui, he pā ātaahua kāore he kainoho.
- 10 Āe rā, kotahi te kauranga e puta ai i ngā eka tekau o te māra waina, ā, he epa anō e puta ai i te kākano o tētahi homa.
- 11 Auē te mate mō te hunga e maranga moata ake ai i te ata, kia whai atu ai rātou i te inu kaha, nā, e haere tonu ana ki te pō, ā, e mumura ana rātou i te waina!

## 2 Nephi 15

And then will I sing to my well-beloved a song of my beloved, touching his vineyard. My well-beloved hath a vineyard in a very fruitful hill.

And he fenced it, and gathered out the stones thereof, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in the midst of it, and also made a wine-press therein; and he looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes.

And now, O inhabitants of Jerusalem, and men of Judah, judge, I pray you, betwixt me and my vineyard.

What could have been done more to my vineyard that I have not done in it? Wherefore, when I looked that it should bring forth grapes it brought forth wild grapes.

And now go to; I will tell you what I will do to my vineyard—I will take away the hedge thereof, and it shall be eaten up; and I will break down the wall thereof, and it shall be trodden down;

And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor digged; but there shall come up briers and thorns; I will also command the clouds that they rain no rain upon it.

For the vineyard of the Lord of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the men of Judah his pleasant plant; and he looked for judgment, and behold, oppression; for righteousness, but behold, a cry.

Wo unto them that join house to house, till there can be no place, that they may be placed alone in the midst of the earth!

In mine ears, said the Lord of Hosts, of a truth many houses shall be desolate, and great and fair cities without inhabitant.

Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

Wo unto them that rise up early in the morning, that they may follow strong drink, that continue until night, and wine inflame them!



12 Ā, kei ā rātou hākari anō hoki te hāpa, me te hatere, te timipera, te pūtōrino, me te waina; engari kāore ā rātou whakaarotanga ki te mahi a te Ariki, kāore he whakaarotanga rānei ki ngā mahinga o ōna ringaringa.

13 Nō reira, kua haere iho tōku iwi ki roto i te hereherenga, nā te mea kāore ō rātou mōhiotanga; ā, e matekai ana ō rātou tāngata mārohirohi, ā, kua maroke ake ō rātou tini i te matewai.

14 Nō reira, kua whakanui a te ao rēwera i a ia anō, kua huakina whānuitia tōna māngai; ā, ko tō rātou korōria, me ō rātou tini, me tō rātou whakahirahira, ā, ko ia e whakamanamana ana, ka heke iho ki roto i a ia.

15 Ā, ka kūmea iho te ware, ā, ka whakaitia te tangata kaha, ā, ka whakaitia ngā karu o te hunga whakahihī.

16 Engari ka whakateiteihia te Ariki o ngā Mano i te whakawākanga, ā, ka whakatapua te Atua e tapu ana i te tika.

17 Hei konā ngā reme e kai ai i runga i tō rātou āhua, ā, ka kainga ngā wāhi ururua o ngā mea mōmona e te hunga tauhou.

18 Auē te mate mō te hunga e kumea ana te hē ki ngā aho horihori, me te hara ki te taura kāta;

19 E mea ana: Tukuna ia kia hohoro, kia wawe tana mahi, kia kitea ai e tātou; ā, tukuna te tohutohu a te Mea Tapu o Iharaira kia whakatata mai ai, ā, kia haere mai ai, e mōhio ai tātou ki a ia.

20 Auē te mate mō te hunga e kī ana he pai te kino, ā, he kino te pai, e whakataua ana te pōuritanga mō te māramatanga, me te māramatanga mō te pōuritanga, e whakataua ana te kawa mō te reka, me te reka mō te kawa!

21 Auē te mate mō te hunga matatau i ō rātou ake karu, ā, e whaimōhio ana i ō rātou ake tirohanga atu!

22 Auē te mate mō te hunga kaha ki te inu waina, me ngā tāngata kaha ki te whakaranu i te inu kaha;

23 E whakatau hē kore ana i te hunga whakariharaha mō te utu, me te muru atu i te tika o te hunga tika i a ia!

And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine are in their feasts; but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of his hands.

Therefore, my people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge; and their honorable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

Therefore, hell hath enlarged herself, and opened her mouth without measure; and their glory, and their multitude, and their pomp, and he that rejoiceth, shall descend into it.

And the mean man shall be brought down, and the mighty man shall be humbled, and the eyes of the lofty shall be humbled.

But the Lord of Hosts shall be exalted in judgment, and God that is holy shall be sanctified in righteousness.

Then shall the lambs feed after their manner, and the waste places of the fat ones shall strangers eat.

Wo unto them that draw iniquity with cords of vanity, and sin as it were with a cart rope;

That say: Let him make speed, hasten his work, that we may see it; and let the counsel of the Holy One of Israel draw nigh and come, that we may know it.

Wo unto them that call evil good, and good evil, that put darkness for light, and light for darkness, that put bitter for sweet, and sweet for bitter!

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes and prudent in their own sight!

Wo unto the mighty to drink wine, and men of strength to mingle strong drink;

Who justify the wicked for reward, and take away the righteousness of the righteous from him!

- 24 Nō reira, e rite ana ki tā te ahi horo i te kakau wīti, me tā te kāpura whakapau i te pāpapa, ko tō rātou aka he pirautanga, ā, ka rere ake o rātou puāwai he rite ki te puehu; nā te mea kua makaia atu e rātou te ture o te Ariki o ngā Mano, ā, kua whakahāweatia te kupu a te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 25 Nō reira, e tahutahu ana te riri o te Ariki ki tana iwi, ā, kua torona atu tōna ringa ki a rātou, ā, kua patua rātou; ā, i ngāueue ai ngā puke, i haehaea o rātou tūpāpaku i waenganui i ngā tiriti. Nā tēnei katoa kāore i tāhuritia atu tōna riri, engari kei te torongia tonutia atu tōna ringa.
- 26 Ā, ka hāpai ake ia i tētahi kara ki ngā iwi i tawhiti, ā, ka whakahihī atu ia ki a rātou mai i te pito o te whenua; ā nana, ka haere wawe mai rātou i runga i te kakama; kua kore tētahi e ngenge, e tapepa rānei i waenganui i a rātou.
- 27 Kua kore tētahi e moeau, e moe rānei; kua kore rānei te whītiki o o rātou hope e mawhetohia, e pakaru rānei ngā here o o rātou hū;
- 28 Ka koi ā rātou pere, he piko anō ā rātou kōpere, ka whakaarohia ngā waewae o o rātou hōiho he rite ki te kiripaka, ko o rātou wīra he rite ki te āwhiowhio, ko ā rātou whēoroortanga he rite ki tā te raiona.
- 29 Ka whēorooro rātou kia rite ai ki te kūao raiona; ka whēorooro rātou, ā, ka whakamau i te pārenga, ā, ka haria paitia atu, ā, kua kore tētahi hei whakaora.
- 30 Ā, i taua rā ka whēorooro rātou ki a rātou kia rite ki te whēoroortanga o te moana; ā, ki te titiro atu rātou ki te whenua, nana, ko te pōuritanga me te hinapōuri, ā, ka whakapōurihia te maramatanga i ngā rangi o reira.

Therefore, as the fire devoureth the stubble, and the flame consumeth the chaff, their root shall be rottenness, and their blossoms shall go up as dust; because they have cast away the law of the Lord of Hosts, and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

Therefore, is the anger of the Lord kindled against his people, and he hath stretched forth his hand against them, and hath smitten them; and the hills did tremble, and their carcasses were torn in the midst of the streets. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

And he will lift up an ensign to the nations from far, and will hiss unto them from the end of the earth; and behold, they shall come with speed swiftly; none shall be weary nor stumble among them.

None shall slumber nor sleep; neither shall the girdle of their loins be loosed, nor the latchet of their shoes be broken;

Whose arrows shall be sharp, and all their bows bent, and their horses' hoofs shall be counted like flint, and their wheels like a whirlwind, their roaring like a lion.

They shall roar like young lions; yea, they shall roar, and lay hold of the prey, and shall carry away safe, and none shall deliver.

And in that day they shall roar against them like the roaring of the sea; and if they look unto the land, behold, darkness and sorrow, and the light is darkened in the heavens thereof.

## 2 Nīwhai 16

- 1 I te tau i mate ai a kīngi Ūtia, i kite au i te Ariki e noho ana i runga i tōna torona, he tiketike, ā, he mea hāpai ake ki runga, ā, i kī ai te temepara i tōna tapanga kahu.
- 2 I tū ai te herapima i runga; e ono ngā parirau tō tētahi, tō tētahi; i hīpokina e ia tōna mata ki ngā mea e rua, ā, i hīpokina e ia ōna waewae ki ngā mea e rua, ā, i rere ai ia ki ngā mea e rua.
- 3 Ā, i tangi tētahi ki tētahi atu, ā ka kī: He tapu, he tapu, he tapu, te Ariki o ngā Mano; kua kī te ao katoa i tōna korōria.
- 4 Ā, i hūnuku ngā pou o te kūaha i tō te reo nāna i karanga, ā, ka kī te whare i te pawa.
- 5 Kātahi au ka kī: Auē te mate mōku! nā te mea kua ngaro au; nā te mea he tangata ngutu poke au; ā, e noho ana au i waenganui i tētahi iwi ngutu poke; nā, kua kite ōku karu i te Kīngi, te Ariki o ngā Mano.
- 6 Kātahi ka rere mai tētahi o te herapima ki ahau, e pupuri ana i tētahi waro mura i tōna ringa, kua tangohia e ia ki ngā kokopi mai i te āta;
- 7 Ā, i whakatakotohia e ia i runga i tōku māngai, ā ka kī: anana, kua pā tēnei i ōku ngutu; ā, kua murua atu ō hē, ā, kua whakamākia ō hara.
- 8 I rongo anō hoki au i te reo o te Ariki, e mea ana: Ko wai tāku e tonono ai, ā, ko wai e haere ai mō tātou? Kātahi au ka kī: Kei konei au; ngarea au.
- 9 Ā ka kī mai ia: Haere me te kī atu ki tēnei iwi—e rongo mārika koutou, engari kāore rātou i mārāma; ā, e kite mārika koutou, engari kāore rātou i aro.
- 10 Whakamōmonahia te ngākau o te iwi, ā, whakataumahahia ō rātou taringa, ā, katia ō rātou karu—kei kite rātou ki ō rātou karu, me te rongo ki ō rātou taringa, me te mārāma ki tō rātou ngākau, ā, ka tahiruria, ā, ka whakaorangia.
- 11 Kātahi au ka kī: E te Ariki, kia pēhea te roa? Ā, ka kī ia: Kia ururuatia rā anō ngā pā kua kore he kainoho, ā, kia kore rā anō he tangata mā roto i ngā whare, ā, ka tino mōwai rawa te whenua.
- 12 Ā, kia whakamatarahia ngā tāngata e te Ariki, nā, ka ai he whakarēnga nui i waenganui i te whenua.

## 2 Nephi 16

In the year that king Uzziah died, I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

Above it stood the seraphim; each one had six wings; with twain he covered his face, and with twain he covered his feet, and with twain he did fly.

And one cried unto another, and said: Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts; the whole earth is full of his glory.

And the posts of the door moved at the voice of him that cried, and the house was filled with smoke.

Then said I: Wo is unto me! for I am undone; because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of a people of unclean lips; for mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.

Then flew one of the seraphim unto me, having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the tongs from off the altar;

And he laid it upon my mouth, and said: Lo, this has touched thy lips; and thine iniquity is taken away, and thy sin purged.

Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send, and who will go for us? Then I said: Here am I; send me.

And he said: Go and tell this people—Hear ye indeed, but they understood not; and see ye indeed, but they perceived not.

Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes—lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted and be healed.

Then said I: Lord, how long? And he said: Until the cities be wasted without inhabitant, and the houses without man, and the land be utterly desolate;

And the Lord have removed men far away, for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.

13 Engari ka ai he whakatekau, ā, ka hoki atu rātou, ā, ka kaingia rātou, ānō nei he rākau teira, ā, ānō nei he oka ko tōna matū kei roto nei i a rātou inā māturū atu ō rātou rau; kia tū ai te kākano tapu hei matū mō reira.

But yet there shall be a tenth, and they shall return, and shall be eaten, as a teil tree, and as an oak whose substance is in them when they cast their leaves; so the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.

## 2 Nīwhai 17

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake i ngā rā o Ahata te tama a Iotama, te tama a Utia, te kīngi o Hura, nā, i haere ake a Retini, kīngi o Hiria, me Peka te tama a Remāria, kīngi o Iharaira, ki a Hiruharama ki te pakanga atu ki a ia, engari kīhai te wikitōria i taea ai ki a ia.
- 2 Ā, i kīa atu te whare o Rāwiri, e mea ana: He hoa tahi a Hiria ki a Eparaima. Ā, i whakaohongia tana ngākau, me te ngākau o tōna iwi, e pērā ana ki te oioitanga o ngā rākau o te ngahere i te hau.
- 3 Kātahi te Ariki ka kī atu ki a Īhāia: Haere whakamua atu kia tūtaki atu ki a Āhata, kōrua ko Hearatahupu tō tama, i te pito awa keri o tō runga puna wai i te huarahi i te pārae o te kaihoroi kākahu;
- 4 Ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: Kia mataara, ā, kia ngū; kaua e wehi, kaua rānei e ngākau-pāwera mō ngā whiore e rua nō ēnei ngotungotu e pawa ana, nā te mea ko te riri nui o Retini ki a Hiria, me tā te tama a Remāria.
- 5 Nā te mea kua whakatapeha kino nei a Hiria rātou ko Eparaima, me te tama a Remāria ki a koe, e mea ana:
- 6 Tukuna tātou kia haere ake ki a Hura me te whakatupu kino i a ia, ā, tukuna tātou kia pākaru atu ai hei wāhi i reira mō tātou, me te whakatū kīngi i tōna pokapū, āe rā, te tama a Tapeara.
- 7 Ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: E kore ia e tū, e kore rānei e pahawa ake.
- 8 Nā, ko te upoko o Hiria ko Ramahiku, ā, ko te upoko o Ramahiku, ko Retini; ā, i ēnei tau e torukoa me te rima ka pakaru a Eparaima kia kore ai ia hei iwi.
- 9 Ā, ko te upoko o Eparaima ko Hamāria, ā, ko te upoko o Hamāria ko tā Remāria tama. Ki te kore koutou e whakapono e kore pū anō koutou e whakapūmautia.
- 10 Waihoki, i kōrero anō te Ariki ki a Ahata, e mea ana:
- 11 Inoia tētahi tohu nā te Ariki tō Atua; inoia rānei i ngā hōhonutanga, i ngā ikeiketanga rānei o runga.
- 12 Engari i kī ai a Ahata: E kore au e inoi, e kore rānei au e whakawai i te Ariki.
- 13 Ā, ka kī ia: Whakarongo koutou ināiane, E te whare o Rāwiri; he mea iti ki a koutou kia whakahōhā ai i te tangata, engari ka whakahōhā koutou i tōku Atua anō hoki?

## 2 Nephi 17

And it came to pass in the days of Ahaz the son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, king of Judah, that Rezin, king of Syria, and Pekah the son of Remaliah, king of Israel, went up toward Jerusalem to war against it, but could not prevail against it.

And it was told the house of David, saying: Syria is confederate with Ephraim. And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people, as the trees of the wood are moved with the wind.

Then said the Lord unto Isaiah: Go forth now to meet Ahaz, thou and Shearjashub thy son, at the end of the conduit of the upper pool in the highway of the fuller's field;

And say unto him: Take heed, and be quiet; fear not, neither be faint-hearted for the two tails of these smoking firebrands, for the fierce anger of Rezin with Syria, and of the son of Remaliah.

Because Syria, Ephraim, and the son of Remaliah, have taken evil counsel against thee, saying:

Let us go up against Judah and vex it, and let us make a breach therein for us, and set a king in the midst of it, yea, the son of Tabeal.

Thus saith the Lord God: It shall not stand, neither shall it come to pass.

For the head of Syria is Damascus, and the head of Damascus, Rezin; and within threescore and five years shall Ephraim be broken that it be not a people.

And the head of Ephraim is Samaria, and the head of Samaria is Remaliah's son. If ye will not believe surely ye shall not be established.

Moreover, the Lord spake again unto Ahaz, saying:

Ask thee a sign of the Lord thy God; ask it either in the depths, or in the heights above.

But Ahaz said: I will not ask, neither will I tempt the Lord.

And he said: Hear ye now, O house of David; is it a small thing for you to weary men, but will ye weary my God also?

14 Nō reira, Ka tukuna e te Ariki ake tētahi tohu ki a koutou—Nana, ka hapū tētahi puhi, ā, ka whānau i tētahi tama, ā, ka huaina tōna ingoa ko Emanuera.

15 He pata me te mīere hei kai māna, nā, ka mōhio ia ki te whakakore i te kino me te whiriwhiri i te pai.

16 Nā, i mua i te mōhio tanga a te tamaiti kia whakakore ai i te kino me te whiriwhiri i te pai, ka whakarērea te whenua e mauāhara nei koe e ōna kīngi e rua.

17 Ka tō mai te Ariki ki runga i a koe, i runga anō i tō iwi, i runga anō i tō matua whare, ngā rā kāore i ahu mai i te rā i wehe atu ai a Eparaima i Hura, te kīngi o Ahiria.

18 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ka whakahihī te Ariki ki te ngaro kei te wāhi whakarunga o Ihipa, ki te pī anō hoki kei te whenua o Ahiria.

19 Ā, ka haere mai rātou, ā, ka whakatāngia katoatia rātou i ngā raorao mōwai, ā, i ngā kōhao o ngā toka, ā, i runga i ngā taratara katoa, ā, i runga i ngā urupuia rākau katoa.

20 I taua rangi anō ka heua e te Ariki ki tana heu kua utua nei, e rātou kei tua atu i te awa, e te kīngi o Ahiria, te upoko, me ngā huruhuru o ngā waewae; ā, ka heua anōtia te pāhau.

21 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, ka whāngai tētahi tangata i tētahi kūao kau me ngā hipi e rua;

22 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā te nui o te waiū ka tukuna e rātou ka kai pata ia; nā, ka kainga e ngā tangata katoa te pata me te mīere kua mahue nei i roto i te whenua.

23 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, ka ai ngā wāhi katoa, i reira ngā waina kotahi mano mō ngā hiriwā kotahi mano, koia kē nei mō ngā tūmatakuru me ngā tātārāmoa.

24 He pere, he kōpere ā ngā tāngata ka haere ki reira, nā te mea ka riro haere te whenua katoa i te tūmatakuru, i te tātārāmoa.

25 Ā, me ngā puke katoa ka keria ki te karaone, ka kore te wehi ki te tūmatakuru me te tātārāmoa e haere mai ai; engari koinei mō te tukunga atu i te kau, me te takahitanga i ngā kau itiiti iho.

Therefore, the Lord himself shall give you a sign— Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.

Butter and honey shall he eat, that he may know to refuse the evil and to choose the good.

For before the child shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that thou abhorrest shall be forsaken of both her kings.

The Lord shall bring upon thee, and upon thy people, and upon thy father's house, days that have not come from the day that Ephraim departed from Judah, the king of Assyria.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall hiss for the fly that is in the uttermost part of Egypt, and for the bee that is in the land of Assyria.

And they shall come, and shall rest all of them in the desolate valleys, and in the holes of the rocks, and upon all thorns, and upon all bushes.

In the same day shall the Lord shave with a razor that is hired, by them beyond the river, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet; and it shall also consume the beard.

And it shall come to pass in that day, a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;

And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one eat that is left in the land.

And it shall come to pass in that day, every place shall be, where there were a thousand vines at a thousand silverlings, which shall be for briers and thorns.

With arrows and with bows shall men come thither, because all the land shall become briers and thorns.

And all hills that shall be digged with the mattock, there shall not come thither the fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending forth of oxen, and the treading of lesser cattle.

## 2 Nīwhai 18

- 1 Waihoki, i kī mai te kupu a te Ariki ki ahau: Tikina atu e koe tētahi rōra nui, ā, tuhia i roto ki tētahi pene tangata, e pā ana ki a Mahere-harara-ha-paha.
- 2 Kātahi au ka tiki i ngā kaiwhakaatu pono kia tuhia ai, ko Ūria te tohunga, me Hakaraia te tama a Teperekia.
- 3 Kātahi au ka haere ki te poropiti wahine; ā, ka hapū ia, ā, ka whānau tama ia. Kātahi te Ariki ka kī mai ki ahau: Karangahia tōna ingoa, ko Mahere-harara-ha-paha.
- 4 Nana rā, kāore he mōhioranga tō te tamaiti ki te karanga, E tōku matua, e tōku whaea, i mua i te tangohanga atu i ngā rawa o Ramahiku me ngā parakete o Hamāria i te kīngi o Ahiria.
- 5 I kī anō mai te Ariki ki ahau, e mea ana:
- 6 Nō te mea e pēnei ana ki tēnei iwi e whakakore ana i ngā wai o Hiroa e āta rere ana, ā, e koa i a Rētini me tā Remāria tama;
- 7 Nō reira ināianeī, nana, ka takina mai nei e te Ariki i runga i ngā wai o te awa, he kaha, ā, he maha, ko te kīngi o Ahiria pū anō me ōna korōria katoa; ā, ka puhake ake ki runga i ōna whakatakere, ā, ka rere iho ki tua i ōna tahatika katoa.
- 8 Ā, ka haere mā roto i a Hura; ka puhake ia, ā, ka rere iho ki tua, ka toro atu pū anō ia ki te kakī; ā, ka kī te whānuitanga o tō whenua i te toronga atu o ōna parirau, E Emanuera.
- 9 Huihui koutou, E koutou ngā iwi, ā, ka pakaru iho koutou hei kongakonga; ā, kia whai taringa koutou katoa nō ngā whenua tawhiti; whītikiria koutou, ā, ka pakaru iho koutou hei kongakonga; whītikiria koutou, ā, ka pakaru iho koutou hei kongakonga.
- 10 Whakatakotoria he whakaaro, ā, ka kore he aha e pahawa; kōrerotia te kupu, ā, kua kore ia e tū; nā te mea i a tātou te Atua.
- 11 Nā te mea i kōrero pēnei mai te Ariki ki ahau i runga i te ringa kaha, ā, i tohua mai ahau kia kaua au e hīkoi i te āhuatanga o tēnei iwi, e mea ana:
- 12 Kaua koe e kī, He haumitanga, ki te hunga katoa e kīa nei e tēnei iwi, He haumitanga; kaua rānei koe e wehi i tō rātou wehi, kaua rānei e mataku.
- 13 Whakatapua te Ariki o ngā Mano ko ia ake, ā, tukuna ia hei tā koutou e wehi ai, ā, tukuna ia hei tā koutou e pāwera ai.

## 2 Nephi 18

Moreover, the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and write in it with a man's pen, concerning Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

And I took unto me faithful witnesses to record, Uriah the priest, and Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.

And I went unto the prophetess; and she conceived and bare a son. Then said the Lord to me: Call his name, Maher-shalal-hash-baz.

For behold, the child shall not have knowledge to cry, My father, and my mother, before the riches of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria shall be taken away before the king of Assyria.

The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly, and rejoice in Rezin and Remaliah's son;

Now therefore, behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many, even the king of Assyria and all his glory; and he shall come up over all his channels, and go over all his banks.

And he shall pass through Judah; he shall overflow and go over, he shall reach even to the neck; and the stretching out of his wings shall fill the breadth of thy land, O Immanuel.

Associate yourselves, O ye people, and ye shall be broken in pieces; and give ear all ye of far countries; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces; gird yourselves, and ye shall be broken in pieces.

Take counsel together, and it shall come to naught; speak the word, and it shall not stand; for God is with us.

For the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people, saying:

Say ye not, A confederacy, to all to whom this people shall say, A confederacy; neither fear ye their fear, nor be afraid.

Sanctify the Lord of Hosts himself, and let him be your fear, and let him be your dread.

- 14 Kātahi ka ai ia hei āhurutanga; engari hei toka tatutatu, ā, hei kōhatu kōkiri ki ngā whare e rua o Iharaira, hei rore, ā, hei māhanga ki ngā kainoho o Hiruharama.
- 15 Ā, he tokomaha i waenganui i a rātou ka tatutatu, ā, ka hinga, ā, ka pakaru, ā, ka māhangatia, ā, ka whakamaua.
- 16 Takaia ake te whakaaturanga, hīria te ture i waenganui i aku ākongā.
- 17 Ā, ka tatari au ki te Ariki, e huna nei i tōna mata i te whare o Hākopa, ā, ka kimi au mōna.
- 18 Nana, ko mātou ko ngā tamariki i homai nei e te Ariki ki ahau hei tohu, ā, hei mea whakamiharo i Iharaira nō te Ariki o ngā Mano, e noho nei i Maunga Hīona.
- 19 Ā, ina kī mai rātou ki a koe: Whāia te hunga he wairua taunga o rātou, ā, ki ngā tohunga e kōwhetewhete ana, ā, e ngurunguru ana—me kore rānei te iwi e whai atu ai i te Atua mō te hunga ora kia rongō ai i te hunga mate?
- 20 Ki te ture me te whakaaturanga; ā, ki te kore rātou e kōrero e ai ki tana kupu, he mea nā te mārāma kore i roto i a rātou.
- 21 Ā, ka haere mā roto i a ia e tino ruha ana, ā, e hiakai ana; ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ina hiakai rātou, ka whakawhererei rātou anō, ā, ka kangaia tō rātou kīngi me tō rātou Atua, ā, ka titiro whakarunga.
- 22 Ā, ka titiro atu rātou ki te ao, ā, ka kitea te whakapāweratanga, me te pōuritanga, te makarotanga o te auhi, ā, ka aia atu ki te pōuritanga.

And he shall be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling, and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

And I will wait upon the Lord, that hideth his face from the house of Jacob, and I will look for him.

Behold, I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

And when they shall say unto you: Seek unto them that have familiar spirits, and unto wizards that peep and mutter—should not a people seek unto their God for the living to hear from the dead?

To the law and to the testimony; and if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

And they shall pass through it hardly bestead and hungry; and it shall come to pass that when they shall be hungry, they shall fret themselves, and curse their king and their God, and look upward.

And they shall look unto the earth and behold trouble, and darkness, dimness of anguish, and shall be driven to darkness.



## 2 Nīwhai 19

- 1 Hei aha koa, ka kore te makarotanga e rite ki tōna whakamamaetanga, i te wā i paku whakamamae ia i te whenua o Hepuruna, me te whenua o Napatari, ā, a muri ake i tino whakamamaetia rawatia ake mā te ara o te Moana Whero i tua atu o Hōrano i Kariri o ngā iwi.
- 2 Kua kitea te māramatanga nui e ngā tāngata i hīkoi ai i te pōuritanga; ko te hunga e noho ana i te whenua o te ātārangi o te mate, kua whiti te mārama ki runga i a rātou.
- 3 Kua whakarea koe i te iwi, ā, kua whakanuia te koa—e koa ana rātou i mua i a koe e ai ki te koa i te hauhakenga, ā, ānō nei ngā tāne e koa ana i a rātou e whakawehewehe ana i ngā parakete.
- 4 Nā, kua whati koe i te ioka o tana kawenga, me te rākau o tōna pokohiwi, te tokotoko o tōna kaiwhakapēhi.
- 5 Nā, e ai ana ngā whawhai katoa a te toa ki te ngangau rangirua, ā, ko ngā kākahu kua whakatītakatakahia i roto i te toto; engari ka pēnei tēnei ki te tahunga me te kai nā te ahi.
- 6 Nā, kua whānau mai ki a tātou he tamaiti, kua homai nei ki a tātou he tama; ā, kei runga i tōna pokohiwi ko te kāwana; ā, ka karangatia tōna ingoa, Mīharo, Kaiwhakatakoto Whakaaro, Te Atua Kaha Rawa, Te Matua Ora Tonu, Te Wheao o te Rongo.
- 7 Kāore he mutunga tō te whakanuitanga o te kāwana me te rongomau, i runga i te torōna o Rāwiri, ā, i runga i tōna kīngitanga hei whakahaua atu ia, ā, ki te whakapūmauhia ia i runga i te whakawākanga me te tika nō nāianeī tonu atu, mō āke tonu atu pū anō. Mā te matangareka o te Ariki o ngā Mano tēnei e mahi.
- 8 Kua tuku te Ariki i tana kupu ki a Hākopa, ā, kua whakamāramatia i runga o Iharaira.
- 9 Ā, ka mōhio ngā tāngata katoa, ko Eparaima pū anō me ngā kainoho o Hamāria, e kī ana i runga i te whakapehapeha me te ngākau whakakake:
- 10 Kua taka iho ngā pereki, engari ka hanga mātou ki te kohatu tārai; kua poroa iho ngā hikamō, engari ka tīni mātou hei hīra.
- 11 Nō reira ka whakaarahia ake e te Ariki ngā hoariri o Rētini ki a ia, ā, ka whakakotahi i ōna hoariri;

## 2 Nephi 19

Nevertheless, the dimness shall not be such as was in her vexation, when at first he lightly afflicted the land of Zebulun, and the land of Naphtali, and afterwards did more grievously afflict by the way of the Red Sea beyond Jordan in Galilee of the nations.

The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy—they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest, and as men rejoice when they divide the spoil.

For thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

For every battle of the warrior is with confused noise, and garments rolled in blood; but this shall be with burning and fuel of fire.

For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Of the increase of government and peace there is no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth, even forever. The zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.

The Lord sent his word unto Jacob and it hath lighted upon Israel.

And all the people shall know, even Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria, that say in the pride and stoutness of heart:

The bricks are fallen down, but we will build with hewn stones; the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

Therefore the Lord shall set up the adversaries of Rezin against him, and join his enemies together;

12 Ko ngā Hiriana i mua me ngā Pirihitini i muri; ka horomia a Iharaira e rātou ki te māngai tūwhera. Nā tēnei katoa kāore tōna riri e taurititia atu nei, engari e torona tonutia ana tōna ringa.

13 Nā te mea kāore te iwi e tauri atu ki a ia e patua ana rātou, kāore rānei rātou e whai atu ai i te Ariki o ngā Mano.

14 Nō reira ka tapahia e te Ariki mai i Iharaira te upoko me te whiore, te pēka me te wīwī i te rā kotahi.

15 Te kaumātua, ko ia te upoko; ā, ko te poropiti e whakaako teka ana, ko ia te whiore.

16 Nā, ka kōtiti rātou i ngā kaiārahi o tēnei iwi; ā, ka whakangaromia te hunga e ārahina ai e rātou.

17 Nō reira kāore he koa tō te Ariki i ā rātou taiohi tāne, kāore rānei he aroha mō ngā mea matua kore me ngā pouaru; nā te mea he ngutu kau, ā, he kaimahi kino rātou katoa, ā, he wairangi ngā kōrero a ngā māngai katoa. Nā tēnei katoa kāore tōna riri e taurititia atu, engari e torona tonutia ana tōna ringa.

18 Nā, ka tahuna te whakariharihatanga ānō nei te ahi; ka horomia ngā tūmatakuru me ngā tātarāmoa, ā, ka kā anō i ngā rākau pūruru o te ngahere, ā, ka kake ake ānō nei te rerenga ake o te pawa.

19 Mā te riri o te Ariki o ngā Mano te whenua e whakapōurihia nei, ā, ka ai ngā tāngata ānō nei te kai nā te ahi; kāore tētahi tangata e tohu i tōna tuakana.

20 Ā, ka katohia e ia ki te ringa matau, ā, ka hiakai ia; ā, ka kai ia i te ringa mauī, ā, ka kore e mākona; ka kai ngā tāngata katoa i te kikokiko o tōna ake ringa—

21 Ko Manahe, ko Eparaima; ā, ko Eparaima, ko Manahe; ko rāua tahi ki a Hura. Nā tēnei katoa kāore tōna riri e taurititia atu, engari e torona tonutia ana tōna ringa.

The Syrians before and the Philistines behind; and they shall devour Israel with open mouth. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For the people turneth not unto him that smiteth them, neither do they seek the Lord of Hosts.

Therefore will the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed.

Therefore the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows; for every one of them is a hypocrite and an evildoer, and every mouth speaketh folly. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

For wickedness burneth as the fire; it shall devour the briars and thorns, and shall kindle in the thickets of the forests, and they shall mount up like the lifting up of smoke.

Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man shall spare his brother.

And he shall snatch on the right hand and be hungry; and he shall eat on the left hand and they shall not be satisfied; they shall eat every man the flesh of his own arm—

Manasseh, Ephraim; and Ephraim, Manasseh; they together shall be against Judah. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

## 2 Nīwhai 20

- 1 Auē te mate mō te hunga e whakapuaki nei i ngā whakapuakitanga hē, ā, e tuhituhi nei i te tinihanga kua whakaritea nei e rātou;
- 2 Hei whakapeau atu i te hunga tuakoka mai i te whakawākanga, me te muru atu i te tikanga mai i te rawakore o tōku iwi, kia noho ai ngā pouaru hei pāpurenga mō rātou, ā, kia taea ai e rātou te hunga matua kore te pāhua!
- 3 Ā, ka aha koutou i te rā o tana toronga, ā, i te whakangaromanga ka pā mai i tawhiti? ka tahuti atu koutou ki a wai hei āwhina? ā, ka mahue i a koutou tō koutou korōria ki hea?
- 4 Ki te kore au ka tuohu iho rātou ki raro iho i ngā mauhere, ā, ka hinga iho rātou ki raro i te hunga kua patua. Nā tēnei katoa kāore tōna riri i tauritia atu, engari e torona tonutia atu tōna ringa.
- 5 E te Ahiriana, ko te tokotoko o taku riri, me te rākau i tō rātou ringa ko tō rātou whakatakariri tika.
- 6 Māku ia e tuku atu ki tētahi iwi ngutu kau, ā, māku ia e tuku tohu atu kia tīkina ai te parakete, me te tiki i te pāhua, me te takahi iho i a rātou pērā ki te paru o ngā tiriti.
- 7 Heoi anō kāore e pēnā ana ōna whakaaro, kāore rānei tōna ngākau e whakaaro pērā ana; engari kei tā tōna ngākau he whakangaro, he hātepe atu i ngā iwi, ehara i te ruarua.
- 8 Nā, e kī ana ia: Ehara rānei aku wheao katoa i te kīngi?
- 9 Ehara rānei a Karano i te rite ki a Karakemihi? Ehara rānei a Hamata i te rite ki a Arapara? Ehara rānei a Hamāria i te rite ki a Ramahiku?
- 10 E rite ana ki tā tōku ringa whakatū i ngā kīngitanga o ngā whakapakoko, ā, i nui ake ō rātou whakaahua tārai i ō rātou i Hiruharama me Hamāria;
- 11 Me kore rānei au, e pērā ki tāku ki Hamāria me ōna whakapakoko, pērā anō ki Hiruharama me ōna whakapakoko?
- 12 Nā reira ka pahawa ake, nā, ina whakamahia e te Ariki i tana mahi katoa i runga o Maunga Hiona, i runga anō i Hiruharama, māku e whakawhiu ngā hua o te ngākau kaha o te kīngi o Ahiria, me te korōria o ana tirohanga whakakake.

## 2 Nephi 20

Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

And what will ye do in the day of visitation, and in the desolation which shall come from far? to whom will ye flee for help? and where will ye leave your glory?

Without me they shall bow down under the prisoners, and they shall fall under the slain. For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

O Assyrian, the rod of mine anger, and the staff in their hand is their indignation.

I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets.

Howbeit he meaneth not so, neither doth his heart think so; but in his heart it is to destroy and cut off nations not a few.

For he saith: Are not my princes altogether kings?

Is not Calno as Carchemish? Is not Hamath as Arpad? Is not Samaria as Damascus?

As my hand hath founded the kingdoms of the idols, and whose graven images did excel them of Jerusalem and of Samaria;

Shall I not, as I have done unto Samaria and her idols, so do to Jerusalem and to her idols?

Wherefore it shall come to pass that when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

- 13 Nā, e kī ana ia: Nā te kaha o tōku ringa, ā, nā tōku mōhiotanga au i mahi ai i ēnei mea; nā te mea he matatau ahau; ā, nāku ngā rohenga o tōku iwi i nuku, ā, kua tāhaetia ō rātou taonga, ā, nāku te hunga kainoho i turaki iho e rite ana ki tētahi tangata mārohirohi;
- 14 Ā, kua kimihia e tōku ringa ngā rawa o te iwi ānō nei he kōhanga; ā, ānō nei tētahi e kohikohi hua manu ana nāku te rohe katoa i whakakao; ā, karekau tētahi i oraora ai i te parirau, i huakina rānei te māngai, i tioro rānei.
- 15 Ka whakahihī te toki i a ia anō ki te tangata nāna nei ia i whakamahi ai? Ka whakanui te kani i a ia anō ki te tangata nāna nei ia i whakaoreore ai? Me te mea nei me oreore te tokotoko i a ia anō ki te hunga e hāpai ake ai i a ia, me te mea nei rānei me hāpai ake te rākau i a ia anō me te mea nei ehara ia i te rākau!
- 16 Nō reira me tuku e te Ariki, te Ariki o ngā Mano, ki waenganui i ōna mea mōmona, te whirokitanga; ā, ka whakakāhia e ia o raro i tōna korōria tētahi muranga e rite ana ki te muranga o tētahi ahi.
- 17 Ā, ka ai te māramatanga o Iharaira kia rite ki tētahi ahi, ā, ko tōna Mea Tapu kia rite ki tētahi kāpura, ā, ka tahutahu, ā, ka horohoro i ana tūmatakuru me ana tātarāmoa i te rangi kotahi;
- 18 Ā, ka whakapaua te korōria o tana ngahere, me ō tana māra mōmona, ko te wairua me te tūnana tahi; ā, ka pērā ana ki tētahi kaihapai-kara kua ngohe te ngākau.
- 19 Ā, ka ruarua noa ngā toenga rākau o tana ngahere, he pērā rawa, ka taea rātou te tuhi e tētahi tamaiti.
- 20 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ko ngā toenga o Iharaira, ā, me te hunga pērā kua puta atu i te whare o Hākopa, kua kore anō rātou e whakawhirinaki ki a ia nāna rātou i patu, engari ka whakawhirinaki ki te Ariki, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, i roto i te pono.
- 21 Ka hoki mai te toenga, āe rā, ko te toenga pū anō o Hākopa, ki te Atua Kaha Rawa.
- 22 Nā, ahakoa he pērā tō iwi a Iharaira ki te onepū o te moana, ka hoki rawa mai tētahi toenga o rātou; ka puhaketia te whakapaunga kua whakatauhia i runga i te tika.
- 23 Nā, ka whakamahia e te Ariki te Atua o ngā Mano tētahi whakapaunga, ka whakatauhia pū anō ki te whenua katoa.

For he saith: By the strength of my hand and by my wisdom I have done these things; for I am prudent; and I have moved the borders of the people, and have robbed their treasures, and I have put down the inhabitants like a valiant man;

And my hand hath found as a nest the riches of the people; and as one gathereth eggs that are left have I gathered all the earth; and there was none that moved the wing, or opened the mouth, or peeped.

Shall the ax boast itself against him that heweth therewith? Shall the saw magnify itself against him that shaketh it? As if the rod should shake itself against them that lift it up, or as if the staff should lift up itself as if it were no wood!

Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

And shall consume the glory of his forest, and of his fruitful field, both soul and body; and they shall be as when a standard-bearer fainteth.

And the rest of the trees of his forest shall be few, that a child may write them.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that the remnant of Israel, and such as are escaped of the house of Jacob, shall no more again stay upon him that smote them, but shall stay upon the Lord, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

The remnant shall return, yea, even the remnant of Jacob, unto the mighty God.

For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

For the Lord God of Hosts shall make a consumption, even determined in all the land.

24 Nō reira, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua o ngā Mano: E tōku iwi e noho ana i Hīona, kua e wehi i te Ahiriana; māna koe e patu ki tētahi tokotoko, ā, ka hāpaingia tana rākau ki a koe, i runga i te āhuatanga o Ihipa.

25 Nā, mō tētahi wā tino iti, ā, ka mutu te whakatakariri tika, me taku riri i tō rātou whakangaromanga.

26 Ā, ka whakatutū ake te Ariki o ngā Mano i tētahi whakawhiunga mōna e ai ki te parekura o Miriana i te toka o Orepe; ā, he pērā ki tana tokotoko i runga i te moana, ina, ka pērā anō tana hāpai ake i a ia i runga i te āhuatanga o Ihipa.

27 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ka tangohia atu tana pikaunga i tō pokohiwi, ā, ko tana ioka i tōna kakī, ā, ka whakangaromia te ioka nā te whakawāhinga.

28 Kua haere mai ia ki Aiata, kua hipa atu ia ki Mikirono; kua whakatakotohia ōna hāriata i Mikimaha;

29 Kua whakawhiti atu rātou i te whakawhitinga; kua whakanohoia e rātou a Kepa; e mataku ana a Rama; kua tahuti atu nei a Kipea o Haora.

30 Hikina ake tō reo, E te tamāhine a Karimi; meinga kia rangona atu i Raihi, Ka aroha hoki e Anatoto.

31 Kua tangohia a Maramena; e hui tahi ana ngā tangata o Kepimi i a rātou anō kia tahuti atu ai.

32 Nō naia tonu nei ka noho ia i Nopo hei taua rā; ka rūrū tōna ringa ki te maunga o te tamāhine o Hīona, te puke o Hiruharama.

33 Nana, ka tapahi te Ariki, te Ariki o ngā Mano i te peka ki te whakawehi; ā, ka tuaina iho ngā mea e whakatiketike ana; ā, ka whakaitia te hunga whakakake.

34 Ā, māna ngā rākau pūruru o ngā ngahere e poro iho ki te rino, ā, ka hinga a Repanona i te mea kaha rawa.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid of the Assyrian; he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

For yet a very little while, and the indignation shall cease, and mine anger in their destruction.

And the Lord of Hosts shall stir up a scourge for him according to the slaughter of Midian at the rock of Oreb; and as his rod was upon the sea so shall he lift it up after the manner of Egypt.

And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

He is come to Aiath, he is passed to Migron; at Michmash he hath laid up his carriages.

They are gone over the passage; they have taken up their lodging at Geba; Ramath is afraid; Gibeah of Saul is fled.

Lift up the voice, O daughter of Gallim; cause it to be heard unto Laish, O poor Anathoth.

Madmenah is removed; the inhabitants of Gebim gather themselves to flee.

As yet shall he remain at Nob that day; he shall shake his hand against the mount of the daughter of Zion, the hill of Jerusalem.

Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

And he shall cut down the thickets of the forests with iron, and Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

## 2 Nīwhai 21

- 1 Ā, ka puta mai tētahi tokotoko i te kakau o Hehe, ā, ka whanake mai tētahi peka i ana aka.
- 2 Ā, ka tau iho te Wairua o te Ariki ki runga i a ia, te wairua o te mōhiotanga me te māramatanga, te wairua o te whakatakoto whakaaro me te kaha, te wairua o te mātauranga, ā, o te wehi ki te Ariki;
- 3 Ā, ka meinga ia kia mārama wawe ai i te wehi ki te Ariki; ā, ka kore ia e whakawā i runga i te āhuatanga o ōna karu, ka kore rānei e kohete i runga i te āhuatanga o ōna taringa.
- 4 Engari i runga i te tika tāna whakawā i te hunga rawakore, me te kohete i runga i te tika i te hunga māhaki o te ao; ā, ka patu ia i te ao ki te tokotoko o tōna māngai, ā, mā te hā o ana ngutu ia e whakamate ai i te hunga whakarihariha.
- 5 Ā, ka ai te tika hei whītiki mō ōna hope, ā, ko te whakaponohanga hei whītiki mō ōna whatumanawa.
- 6 Ka noho tahi te wuruhi me te reme, ā, ka takoto tahi te reparo me te kuaō koti, ā, ko te kuaō kau me te kuaō raiona me te mea mōmona tahi; ā, ka ārahi te tamaiti i a rātou.
- 7 Ā, ka kai tahi te kau me te pea; ka takoto tahi iho ā rāua kuaō; ā, ka kai kakau witi te raiona e rite ana ki te kau.
- 8 Ā, ka tākaro te tamaiti ngote ū i runga i te rua o te nākahi, ā, ka toro atu te ringa o te tamaiti kua whakamutua tana ngote ū ki runga i tō te neke rua.
- 9 E kore rātou e tūkinō, e whakangaro rānei i tōku maunga tapu katoa, nā te mea ka kī te ao i te mōhiotanga o te Ariki, e rite ana ki te wai e taupoki nei i te moana.
- 10 Ā, ka ai tētahi kakau o Hehe i taua rā, ka tū nei hei kara mō te iwi; ki a ia e rapu ai ngā Tauiwī; ā, ka whaikorōria tōna okiokinga.
- 11 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ka tau atu te Ariki i tōna ringa mō te wā tuarua ki te whakahoki i te toenga o tōna iwi ka mahue iho, mai i Ahiria, ā, mai i Ihīpa, ā, mai i Patoro, ā, mai i Kuhu, ā, mai i Erama, ā, mai i Hīnara, ā, mai i ngā moutere o te moana.

## 2 Nephi 21

And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

And in that day there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall set his hand again the second time to recover the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Cush, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the islands of the sea.

- 12     Ā, māna e whakarite tētahi kara mō ngā iwi, ā, ka whakatōpū i ngā rāwaho o Iharaira, ā, ka whakatōpū tahi te hunga i whakamararatia o Hura mai i ngā kokonga e whā o te ao.
- 13     Ka wehe atu te pūhaehae o Eparaima, ā, ka hātepea atu ngā hoariri o Hura; kua kore a Eparaima e pūhaehae ki a Hura, ā, ka kore a Hura e tūkinu i a Eparaima.
- 14     Engari ka rere rātou i runga i ngā pokohiwi o ngā Pirihitini ki te uru; ka pāhuatia tahitia rātou i te rāwhiti; ka tau atu tō rātou ringa ki runga i a Eroma me Moapa; ā, ka whakarongo mai ngā tamariki a Amona ki a rātou.
- 15     Ā, ka whakangaromia rawatia te arero o te moana Ihipiana; ā, mā tōna hau kaha ka rūrū i tōna ringa ki runga i te awa, ā, ka patua ia i roto i ngā manga e whitu, ā, ka meinga ngā tāngata kia whakawhiti maroke atu ai.
- 16     Ā, ka ai tētahi huarahi matua mō te toenga o tōna iwi ka mahue nei, mai i Ahiria, e pērā ana i tāna ki a Iharaira i te rā i puta mai ai ia i te whenua o Ihipa.

And he shall set up an ensign for the nations, and shall assemble the outcasts of Israel, and gather together the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.

The envy of Ephraim also shall depart, and the adversaries of Judah shall be cut off; Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not vex Ephraim.

But they shall fly upon the shoulders of the Philistines towards the west; they shall spoil them of the east together; they shall lay their hand upon Edom and Moab; and the children of Ammon shall obey them.

And the Lord shall utterly destroy the tongue of the Egyptian sea; and with his mighty wind he shall shake his hand over the river, and shall smite it in the seven streams, and make men go over dry shod.

And there shall be a highway for the remnant of his people which shall be left, from Assyria, like as it was to Israel in the day that he came up out of the land of Egypt.

## 2 Nīwhai 22

- 1 Ā, i taua rā ka kī ake koe: E te Ariki, māku koe e whakamoemiti; ahakoa i riri mai koe ki a au kua taurita atu tō riri, ā, nāu au i whakaāio.
- 2 Nana, Ko te Atua tōku whakaoranga; Māku e whakawhirinaki, ā, kāore e mataku; Nā te mea ko te Ariki IHOWA tōku kaha me tōku waiata; kua meinga hoki ia tōku whakaoranga.
- 3 Nō reira, ka utu wai koutou i ngā puna whakaoranga i runga i te koa.
- 4 Ā, i taua rā ka kī ake koe: Whakamoemititia te Ariki, karangatia tōna ingoa, whakapuakina ana mahinga i waenganui i te iwi, kauhautia atu kua whakateiteitia tōna ingoa.
- 5 Waiatatia atu ki te Ariki; nā te mea kua mīharo rawa ana mea i mahia ai e ia; e mōhiotia ana tēnei puta noa atu i te ao katoa.
- 6 Karangahia atu, ā, hāmamatia atu, e te kainoho o Hīona; nā te mea he mārohirohi te Mea Tapu o Ihairaira i tō aroaro.

## 2 Nephi 22

And in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

Behold, God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.

And in that day shall ye say: Praise the Lord, call upon his name, declare his doings among the people, make mention that his name is exalted.

Sing unto the Lord; for he hath done excellent things; this is known in all the earth.

Cry out and shout, thou inhabitant of Zion; for great is the Holy One of Israel in the midst of thee.



## 2 Nīwhai 23

- 1 Ko te pīkaunga o Papurona, i kitea nei e Ihāia te tama a Amoho.
- 2 Hāpainga ake e koe tētahi kara ki runga i te maunga tiketike, whakakahangia te reo ki a rātou, rūrūhia te ringa, kia kuhu atu ai rātou i ngā kēti o ngā ariki.
- 3 Kua whakahaua aku mea kua whakatapuhia, kua karangatia hoki aku mea mārohirohi, nā te mea kāore tōku riri e tau ai ki runga i a rātou e whakakoa ana i tōku teiteitanga.
- 4 E rite ana te pāoroortanga a te tini i ngā maunga ki tā tēnā o tētahi iwi nui, he pāoroortanga nui o ngā kīngitanga kua whakatōpū tahitia, e whakakao ana te Ariki o ngā Mano i ngā ope tauā mō te whawhai.
- 5 E haere mai nei rātou mai i tētahi whenua tawhiti, mai i te pito whakamutunga o te rangi, āe rā, ko te Ariki, me ana tū rākau whawhai o tōna whakatariri tika, ki te whakangaro i te whenua katoa.
- 6 E auē koutou, nā te mea e tata mai ana te rā o te Ariki; ka tae mai ānō nei he whakangaromanga mai i te Mea Kaha Rawa.
- 7 Nō reira ka ngoikore ngā ringaringa katoa, ka rewa tō ia tangata ngākau;
- 8 Ā, ka matakū rātou; ka mau pū rātou i ngā pākinitanga me ngā pāpōuritanga; ka mīharo rātou ki a rātou anō; ka ai ō rātou mata ānō nei he kāpura ahi.
- 9 Nana, e haere mai ana te rā o te Ariki, he nanakia i runga i te pukuriri me te tino riri nui, kia whakamōwai i te whenua; ā, māna ngā kaihora o reira e whakangaro atu i reira.
- 10 Nā, kāore ngā whetū o te rangi me ō reira kāhui e tuku i ō rātou māramatanga; ka whakapōurihia te rā i tana putanga atu, ā, kāore te marama e mea ai kia whiti ai tōna māramatanga.
- 11 Ā, māku te ao e whakawhiu mō te kino, ā, e te hunga whakarihariha mō ō rātou hara; ka meinga e au te whakahihitanga o te hunga whakahihī kia mutu ai, ā, ka whakatakotohia iho e au te whakakakenga o te hunga tūkinō.

## 2 Nephi 23

The burden of Babylon, which Isaiah the son of Amoz did see.

Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand, that they may go into the gates of the nobles.

I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

The noise of the multitude in the mountains like as of a great people, a tumultuous noise of the kingdoms of nations gathered together, the Lord of Hosts mustereth the hosts of the battle.

They come from a far country, from the end of heaven, yea, the Lord, and the weapons of his indignation, to destroy the whole land.

Howl ye, for the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

Therefore shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

Behold, the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

For the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth, and the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

And I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity; I will cause the arrogancy of the proud to cease, and will lay down the haughtiness of the terrible.

12 Ka meinga e au te utu o te tangata kia nui kē ake i tō te kōura pai; te tangata pū anō i tō te ora kōura o Opira.

13 Nō reira, māku ngā rangi e whakaoioi, ā, ka nuku atu te ao i tōna tūranga, i te pukuriri o te Ariki o ngā Mano, ā, i te rā o tōna tino riri nui.

14 Ā, ka pērā ia ki te aneterope e whāia ana, ā, pērā ki te hipi kāore tētahi hei whakahuihui ake; ā, ka tahuri atu rātou i ia tangata, ia tangata ki tōna ake iwi, ā, ka tahuti atu ngā tāngata katoa ki tōna ake whenua.

15 Ka werohia rawatia te hunga whakapehapeha katoa; āe rā, ka hinga ngā mea katoa e hono tahi ana ki te hunga kino i te hoari.

16 Ka taia kongakongahia ā rātou tamariki i mua i ō rātou karu; ka pāhuatia ō rātou whare, ā, ka pāwheratia ā rātou hoawahine.

17 Nana, ka whakatutū ake au i ngā Meri ki a rātou, he hunga kāore nei e whaiwhakaaro ana mō te hiriwā me te kōura, kāore rānei rātou i koa i a ia.

18 Ka taia kongakongahia ā rātou taiohi tāne i ā rātou kōpere; ā, kāore rātou e aroha atu ki te hua o te kōpū; kāore ō rātou karu e tohu i ngā tamariki.

19 Ā, ko Papurona, te korōria o ngā kīngitanga, te ātaahua o tō ngā Karari hiranga, ka pērā ki te wā i turaki te Atua i Horoma me Komora.

20 Kua kore rawa ia e whakanohoia āke tonu atu, kua kore rānei ia e nōhia mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga: kua kore rānei te Arapiana e whakatū tēneti i reira; kua kore rānei ngā hēpara e whakatū pātiki i reira.

21 Engari ka takoto iho ngā kararehe mohoa o reira; ā, ka kī ō rātou whare i ngā kararehe kino; ā, ka noho ngā rūrū i reira, ā, ka kanikani ngā hataia i reira.

22 Ā, ka tangi ngā kararehe mohoa o ngā motu i roto i ō rātou whare, me ngā tarakona i ō rātou wāhi āhuareka; ā, kua tata mai tōna wā, ā, kāore e whakaroahia tōna rā. Nā, ka whakangaro wawe au i a ia; āe rā, nā, ka whakaaroa atu au ki tōku iwi, engari ka mate te hunga kino.

I will make a man more precious than fine gold; even a man than the golden wedge of Ophir.

Therefore, I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place, in the wrath of the Lord of Hosts, and in the day of his fierce anger.

And it shall be as the chased roe, and as a sheep that no man taketh up; and they shall every man turn to his own people, and flee every one into his own land.

Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

Behold, I will stir up the Medes against them, which shall not regard silver and gold, nor shall they delight in it.

Their bows shall also dash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eyes shall not spare children.

And Babylon, the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldees' excellency, shall be as when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah.

It shall never be inhabited, neither shall it be dwelt in from generation to generation: neither shall the Arabian pitch tent there; neither shall the shepherds make their fold there.

But wild beasts of the desert shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of doleful creatures; and owls shall dwell there, and satyrs shall dance there.

And the wild beasts of the islands shall cry in their desolate houses, and dragons in their pleasant palaces; and her time is near to come, and her day shall not be prolonged. For I will destroy her speedily; yea, for I will be merciful unto my people, but the wicked shall perish.

## 2 Nīwhai 24

- 1 Nā, ka aroha te Ariki ki a Hākopa, ā, ka whiriwhiri tonu i a Ihairaira, ā, ka whakatau iho i a rātou i tō rātou ake whenua; ā, ka whakahonoa ngā tangata kē ki a rātou, ā, ka piri ki te whare o Hākopa.
- 2 Ā, ka ārahina rātou e te iwi, ā, ka haria rātou ki tō rātou wāhi; āe rā, mai i tawhiti ki ngā pito whakamutunga o te ao; ā, ka hoki rātou ki ō rātou whenua whakaari. Ā, ka nohoia ērā e te whare o Ihairaira, ā, mā ngā pononga tāne me ngā pononga wahine te whenua o te Ariki; ā, ka whakarau rātou i te hunga nāna nei rātou i whakarau; ā, ka whakahaere tikanga rātou i runga i ō rātou kaiwhakapēhi.
- 3 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ka tuku okiokinga te Ariki ki a koe, mai i tō pōuritanga, ā, mai i tō wehinga, ā, mai i tō hereherenga taumaha i konā koe i whakaponongatia.
- 4 Ā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, māu tēnei whakataukī e kawe ake ki te kīngi o Papurona, ā, ka kī ake: Nā te aha i mutu ai te kaiwhakapēhi, i mutu ai te pā kōura!
- 5 Kua whati te Ariki i te tokotoko o te hunga kino, ngā hepeta o ngā kaiwhakahaere tikanga.
- 6 Ko ia nāna te iwi i patu i runga i te pukuriri ki tētahi patunga tonutanga, ko ia nāna ngā iwi i whakahaere i runga i te riri, e whakahāweatia ana, ā, kāore tētahi e ārai atu.
- 7 Kei te okioki te ao katoa, ā, e ngū ana; pakaru mai ana te waiata.
- 8 Āe rā, e whakakoa ana ngā puakarimu ki a koe, me ngā hira anō hoki o Repanona, e mea ana: Nō te mea kua whakatakotohia koe kāore tētahi kaitope i haere mai ki a tātou.
- 9 Kua whakaohongia te ao rēwera i raro mōu kia tūtaki ai ki a koe i tō haerenga mai; e whakatutūngia ake e ia te hunga mate mōu, ko te hunga rangatira katoa pū anō o te ao; kua whakaarahia ake mai i ō rātou torona ngā kīngi katoa o ngā iwi.
- 10 Ka kōrero rātou katoa me te kī atu ki a koe: Kua ngoikore anō koe pēnei i a mātou? Kua meinga koe kia rite ai ki a mātou?

## 2 Nephi 24

For the Lord will have mercy on Jacob, and will yet choose Israel, and set them in their own land; and the strangers shall be joined with them, and they shall cleave to the house of Jacob.

And the people shall take them and bring them to their place; yea, from far unto the ends of the earth; and they shall return to their lands of promise. And the house of Israel shall possess them, and the land of the Lord shall be for servants and handmaids; and they shall take them captives unto whom they were captives; and they shall rule over their oppressors.

And it shall come to pass in that day that the Lord shall give thee rest, from thy sorrow, and from thy fear, and from the hard bondage wherein thou wast made to serve.

And it shall come to pass in that day, that thou shalt take up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How hath the oppressor ceased, the golden city ceased!

The Lord hath broken the staff of the wicked, the scepters of the rulers.

He who smote the people in wrath with a continual stroke, he that ruled the nations in anger, is persecuted, and none hindereth.

The whole earth is at rest, and is quiet; they break forth into singing.

Yea, the fir trees rejoice at thee, and also the cedars of Lebanon, saying: Since thou art laid down no feller is come up against us.

Hell from beneath is moved for thee to meet thee at thy coming; it stirreth up the dead for thee, even all the chief ones of the earth; it hath raised up from their thrones all the kings of the nations.

All they shall speak and say unto thee: Art thou also become weak as we? Art thou become like unto us?

11 Kua tōia iho tō korōria ki te rua kōiwi; kāore e rangona ana te tangi o āu hātere; kua whakawhārikitia te noke ki raro i a koe, ā, e uhia ana koe e ngā noke.

12 Nā te aha koe i taka ai i te rangi, E Rutiwha, te tama o te ata! Kua tapahia iho koe ki te papa, nō konā i whakangoikore ai i ngā iwi!

13 Nā, kua kī koe i tō ngākau: Ka kake ake au ki roto i te rangi, ka whakateiteitia tōku torona i runga ake i ngā whetū o te Atua; ka noho anō ahau i runga i te maunga o te whakaminenga, i ngā taha o te raki;

14 Ka kake ake au i runga ake i ngā tiketiketanga o ngā kapua; ka rite au ki te Mea Tike Rawa.

15 Heoi, ka tōia iho koe ki te ao rēwera, ki ngā taha o te rua.

16 Ko te hunga e kite ai i a koe, ka āta mātaihia koe, ā, ka āta tirohia atu koe, ā, ka kī ake: Ko te tangata tēnei nāna te whenua i whakaoioi, i whakangāueue i ngā kīngitanga?

17 Ā, i mea ai i te ao hei koraha, ā, i whakangaromia ngā pā o reira, ā, kāore i huakina te whare o āna herehere?

18 Ko ngā kīngi o ngā iwi, āe rā, ko rātou katoa, e takoto ana i te korōria, ko ia tangata o rātou i tōna ake whare.

19 Engari kua makaia atu koe i tō rua kōiwi ānō nei he manga mōrikarika, ā, ko te toenga o rātou kua whakamatea, kua werohia ki tētahi hoari, nā, e heke iho ana ki ngā kōhatu o te rua; ānō nei he tūpāpaku e takahia ana e te waewae.

20 Kāore koe e tanumia tahitia me rātou, nā te mea kua whakangaro koe i tō whenua, ā, kua whakamatea tō iwi; kua kore rawa te kākano o ngā kaimahi-kino e rongonuitia.

21 Whakaritea he parekura mō āna tamariki nō ngā hara o ō rātou matua, kia kore ai rātou e ara ake, kia kore rānei e nōhia te whenua, kia kore rānei e whakakapi i te mata o te whenua ki ngā pā.

22 Nā ka ara ake au ki a rātou, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, ā, ka hātepea atu te ingoa mai i Papurona, me te toenga, me te tama, me te irāmutu, e ai tā te Ariki.

23 Ka meinga anōtia ia e au hei kāinga mō te matuku, me ngā hārotoroto wai; ā, ka tahitahia ia e au ki te tahitahi o te whakangaromanga, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.

Thy pomp is brought down to the grave; the noise of thy viols is not heard; the worm is spread under thee, and the worms cover thee.

How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! Art thou cut down to the ground, which did weaken the nations!

For thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

All the kings of the nations, yea, all of them, lie in glory, every one of them in his own house.

But thou art cast out of thy grave like an abominable branch, and the remnant of those that are slain, thrust through with a sword, that go down to the stones of the pit; as a carcass trodden under feet.

Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land and slain thy people; the seed of evil-doers shall never be renowned.

Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquities of their fathers, that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.

For I will rise up against them, saith the Lord of Hosts, and cut off from Babylon the name, and remnant, and son, and nephew, saith the Lord.

I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the besom of destruction, saith the Lord of Hosts.

24 Kua kī taurangi te Ariki o ngā Mano, e mea ana:  
Inā tāku i whakaaro ai, ka pahawa pērā ake; ā, e pērā  
ana ki tāku i whakarite ai, ka tū pērā ia—

25 Nā, ka haria mai e au te Ahiriana ki roto i tōku  
whenua, ā, ka takahia ia e te waewae i runga i ōku  
maunga; kātahi tana ioka ka wehe atu i a rātou, ā, ka  
wehe atu tana pīkaunga i ōna pokohiwi.

26 Koinei te take kua whakaritea nei mō runga i te ao  
katoa; ā, koinei te ringa kua torona atu nei ki runga i  
ngā iwi katoa.

27 Nā, kua whakaritea e te Ariki o ngā Mano, ā, mā  
wai e whakakore? Ā, kei te torona tonutia atu tōna  
ringa, ā, mā wai ia e kaupare atu?

28 I puta tēnei matakitenga mate i te tau i mate ai a  
kīngi Ahata.

29 Kaua koe e whakakoa, Pirihitia katoa, nā te mea  
kua whatia tō te tangata tokotoko nāna koe i patu;  
nā, atu i tō te nākahi pū e puta mai ai tētahi neke, ā,  
ka ai tētahi nākahi rērere muramura tana hua.

30 Ā, ka kai te mātāmua o te rawakore, ā, ka takoto  
haumaruru iho te hunga tuakoka; ā, māku tō pū e  
whakamate ki te hemokai, ā, māna tō toenga e  
whakamate.

31 E auē, E te kēti; hāmama, E te pā; e koe, Pirihitia  
katoa, kua memehatia; nā, ka rere mai tētahi pawa  
mai i te raki, ā, kāore tētahi e taratahi i ōna wā i  
whakataua.

32 He aha tā ngā karere o ngā iwi e whakautu atu?  
Nā, kua whakapōauau te Ariki i a Hīona, ā, ka  
whakawhirinaki te hunga rawakore o tōna iwi i a ia.

The Lord of Hosts hath sworn, saying: Surely as I  
have thought, so shall it come to pass; and as I have  
purposed, so shall it stand—

That I will bring the Assyrian in my land, and  
upon my mountains tread him under foot; then shall  
his yoke depart from off them, and his burden depart  
from off their shoulders.

This is the purpose that is purposed upon the  
whole earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out  
upon all nations.

For the Lord of Hosts hath purposed, and who  
shall disannul? And his hand is stretched out, and  
who shall turn it back?

In the year that king Ahaz died was this burden.

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod  
of him that smote thee is broken; for out of the ser-  
pent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his  
fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.

And the firstborn of the poor shall feed, and the  
needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root  
with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

Howl, O gate; cry, O city; thou, whole Palestina,  
art dissolved; for there shall come from the north a  
smoke, and none shall be alone in his appointed  
times.

What shall then answer the messengers of the na-  
tions? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the  
poor of his people shall trust in it.

## 2 Nīwhai 25

- 1 Ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, e āhua kōrero nei e pā ana ki ngā kupu kua tuhi nei au, kua kōrerotia e te māngai o Īhāia. Nana rā, i kōrero a Īhāia i ngā mea maha i uaua mō te tokomaha o tōku iwi ki te mārāma; nā te mea kāore rātou e mōhio ana e pā ana ki te āhua o te poropititanga i waenganui i ngā Hūrai.
- 2 Nā te mea kāore ahau, a Nīwhai i whakaako i a rātau e pā ana ki te āhua o ngā Hūrai; nā te mea ko ā rātau mahinga he mahinga pōuri, ā, ko ā rātau meatanga he meatanga mōrikarika.
- 3 Nā reira, e tuhi nei au ki tōku iwi, ki te hunga katoa e whiwhi ai i ēnei mea e tuhi nei au a tōna wā, kia mōhio ai rātou ki ngā whakawākanga a te Atua, nā, ka tau iho ki runga i ngā iwi katoa, e ai ki te kupu kua kōrerotia nei.
- 4 Nā reira, whakarongo, E tōku iwi, koinei nō te whare o Iharaira, ā, kia anga mai ō koutou taringa ki aku kupu; nā te mea kāore e mārāma ana ngā kupu a Īhāia ki a koutou, hei aha koa e mārāma ana ēnā ki te hunga katoa e kī ana i te wairua poropititanga. Engari kei te tuku atu ahau i tētahi poropititanga ki a koutou, e ai ki te wairua kei roto nei i ahau; nā reira māku e poropiti e ai ki te māramatanga i ahau nei mai i te wā i puta mai au i Hiruharama me taku matua; nana rā, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i te māramatanga ki tōku iwi, kia ako ai rātou.
- 5 Āe rā, e kaingākau ana anō tōku wairua i ngā kupu a Īhāia, nā te mea i puta mai au i Hiruharama, ā, kua kitea e aku karu ngā mea o ngā Hūrai, ā, e mōhio ana au kei te mārāma pū ngā Hūrai ki ngā mea a ngā poropiti, ā, korekau he iwi anō e mārāma ana ki ngā mea i kōrerotia ki ngā Hūrai pērā ki a rātou, hāunga ia kua whakaakona rātou i runga i te āhuatanga o ngā mea Hūrai.
- 6 Engari nana, ko au, ko Nīwhai, kua whakaako i aku tamariki i runga i te āhuatanga o ngā Hūrai; engari nana, ko au, i au anō, kua noho i Hiruharama, nā reira e mōhio ana au e pā ana ki ngā rohe huri noa; ā, kua kī atu au ki aku tamariki e pā ana ki ngā whakawākanga o te Atua, kua pahawa ake nei i waenganui i ngā Hūrai, ki aku tamariki, e ai ki ērā kua kōrero nei a Īhāia, ā, kāore au i te tuhituhi i ērā mea.

## 2 Nephi 25

Now I, Nephi, do speak somewhat concerning the words which I have written, which have been spoken by the mouth of Isaiah. For behold, Isaiah spake many things which were hard for many of my people to understand; for they know not concerning the manner of prophesying among the Jews.

For I, Nephi, have not taught them many things concerning the manner of the Jews; for their works were works of darkness, and their doings were doings of abominations.

Wherefore, I write unto my people, unto all those that shall receive hereafter these things which I write, that they may know the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

Wherefore, hearken, O my people, which are of the house of Israel, and give ear unto my words; for because the words of Isaiah are not plain unto you, nevertheless they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy. But I give unto you a prophecy, according to the spirit which is in me; wherefore I shall prophesy according to the plainness which hath been with me from the time that I came out from Jerusalem with my father; for behold, my soul delighteth in plainness unto my people, that they may learn.

Yea, and my soul delighteth in the words of Isaiah, for I came out from Jerusalem, and mine eyes hath beheld the things of the Jews, and I know that the Jews do understand the things of the prophets, and there is none other people that understand the things which were spoken unto the Jews like unto them, save it be that they are taught after the manner of the things of the Jews.

But behold, I, Nephi, have not taught my children after the manner of the Jews; but behold, I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about; and I have made mention unto my children concerning the judgments of God, which hath come to pass among the Jews, unto my children, according to all that which Isaiah hath spoken, and I do not write them.

7 Engari nana, ka kōkiri ake au i tāku ake poropititanga, e ai ki tōku māramatanga; nō konā rā e mōhio ana au kāore e taea e tētahi tangata te pōhēhē; hei aha koa, hei ngā rā e whakatutuki ai i ngā poropititanga a Īhāia ka mōhio pū ngā tāngata, hei ngā wā e pahawa ake ai ēnei mea.

8 Nā reira, he mea utu nui ēnei ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, ko te tangata e mea ana kua kore he aha ēnei mea, ka hāngai pū atu taku kōrero ki a rātou, ka whakawhāiti haere au i ngā kupu ki tōku ake iwi; nā te mea kei te mōhio ahau ka tino utu nui ēnei ki a rātou hei ngā rā whakamutunga; nā te mea ka mārama rātou ki ēnei hei taua rā; nā reira, mō tō rātou painga au i tuhituhi ai i ēnei.

9 Ā, nā te mea kua whakangaromia tētahi whakatipuranga i waenganui i ngā Hūrai, ahakoa tonu kua whakangaromia mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga e ai ki ō rātou hara; ā, kihai rawa i whakangaromia tētahi hāunga i poropititia rātou e ngā poropiti a te Ariki.

10 Nā reira, kua kōrerotia rātou e pā ana ki te whakangaromanga ka tau iho ki runga i a rātou, whai muri tata pū i te wehenga atu a tōku matua; hei aha koa, i whakapakekehia ō rātou ngākau; ā, kua whakangaromia rātou e ai ki taku poropititanga, hāunga te hunga kua kahakina hereheretia atu ki Papurona.

11 Ā, e kōrero nei ianei au i tēnei nā te wairua kei roto nei i ahau. Ā, ahakoa kua kahakina atu rātou ka hoki mai anō rātou, ā, ka nohoia te whenua o Hiruharama; nā reira, ka whakahokia anōtia rātou ki tō rātou whenua tuku iho.

12 Engari, nana, ka ai ngā pakanga, me ngā pūrongo pakanga; ā, ina tata mai te rā e whakaatu atu ai te Tama Kotahi a te Matua, āe rā, ko te Matua pū anō o te rangi me te whenua i a ia anō i roto i te kikokiko, nana, ka whakaparahako rātou i a ia, nā ō rātou hara, me te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau, me te mārō o ō rātou kaki.

But behold, I proceed with mine own prophecy, according to my plainness; in the which I know that no man can err; nevertheless, in the days that the prophecies of Isaiah shall be fulfilled men shall know of a surety, at the times when they shall come to pass.

Wherefore, they are of worth unto the children of men, and he that supposeth that they are not, unto them will I speak particularly, and confine the words unto mine own people; for I know that they shall be of great worth unto them in the last days; for in that day shall they understand them; wherefore, for their good have I written them.

And as one generation hath been destroyed among the Jews because of iniquity, even so have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities; and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

Wherefore, it hath been told them concerning the destruction which should come upon them, immediately after my father left Jerusalem; nevertheless, they hardened their hearts; and according to my prophecy they have been destroyed, save it be those which are carried away captive into Babylon.

And now this I speak because of the spirit which is in me. And notwithstanding they have been carried away they shall return again, and possess the land of Jerusalem; wherefore, they shall be restored again to the land of their inheritance.

But, behold, they shall have wars, and rumors of wars; and when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

- 13 Nana, ka rīpekātia ia e rātou; ā, whai muri iho i tana whakatakotoranga iho ki roto i tētahi ana tūpāpaku mō te takiwā o ngā rā e toru ka ara ake ia mai i te mate, he whakaoranga i ōna parirau; ā, ka whakaorangia te hunga katoa e whakapono ai ki a ia i roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua. Nā reira, e kaingākau ana tōku wairua ki te poropiti atu e pā ana ki a ia, nā te mea kua kite au i tēnei rā, ā, kei te whakanui tōku ngākau i tōna ingoa tapu.
- 14 Ā nana, ka pahawa ake, nā, hei muri i te aranga ake o te Mīhaia mai i te mate, me te whakaatu atu i a ia anō ki tōna iwi, ki te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki tōna ingoa, nana, ka whakangaromia anōtia a Hiruharama; nā te mea, auē mō te hunga e whawhai nei ki te Atua me ngā iwi o tōna hāhi.
- 15 Nā reira, ka whakamararatia atu ngā Hūrai ki waenganui i ngā iwi katoa; āe rā, ka whakangaromia anō hoki a Papurona; nā reira, ka whakamararatia atu ngā Hūrai e ngā iwi kē atu.
- 16 Ā, whai muri i tā rātou whakamararatanga, me tā te Ariki te Atua whakawhiunga i a rātou mā ngā iwi kē atu mō te takiwā o ngā whakatipuranga maha, āe rā, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga tae atu ana ki tā rātou whakapakepaketanga kia whakapono ai ki te Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua, me te whakamārietanga, koia he mea mutunga kore mō ngā tāngata katoa—ā, ina tae mai taua rā e whakapono ai rātou i te Karaiti, me te koropikotia te Matua i tōna ingoa, i runga anō i te ngākau mā me ngā ringaringa mā, me te aro kore atu rātou ki mua mō tētahi Mīhaia kē atu, hei reira, hei taua wā, ka tae mai te rā me tika pū ia kia whakapono ai rātou i ēnei mea.
- 17 Ā, ka whakatau iho te Ariki i tōna ringa mō te wā tuarua kia whakahokia ai tōna iwi mai i tō rātou āhuatanga ngaro, ā, i tō rātou āhuatanga taka. Nā reira, ka haere tonu ia ki te mahi i ngā mahi nui whakamiharo ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata.

Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God. Wherefore, my soul delighteth to prophesy concerning him, for I have seen his day, and my heart doth magnify his holy name.

And behold it shall come to pass that after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again; for wo unto them that fight against God and the people of his church.

Wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered among all nations; yea, and also Babylon shall be destroyed; wherefore, the Jews shall be scattered by other nations.

And after they have been scattered, and the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind—and when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be expedient that they should believe these things.

And the Lord will set his hand again the second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.



18 Nā reira, māna āna kupu e kawē atu ai ki a rātou, koinei kupu e whakawākia ai rātou hei te rā whakamutunga, nā te mea ka tukuna ērā ki a rātou mō te take o te whakapakepake i a rātou ki te Mīhaia pono, i whakaparahakotia e rātou; hei whakapakepake anō i a rātou me kore tonu rātou e titiro ki mua kia haere mai ai tētahi Mīhaia, nā te mea me kore tētahi e haere mai, hāunga tētahi Mīhaia teka hei tinihanga i te iwi; nā te mea kotahi anake te Mīhaia kua kōrerotia e ngā poropiti, ā, ko taua Mīhaia te mea ka whakaparahakotia e ngā Hūrai.

19 Nā, e ai ki ngā kupu a ngā poropiti, ka haere mai te Mīhaia i ngā tau e ono rau mai i te wā i wehe atu taku matua i Hiruharama; ā, e ai ki ngā kupu a ngā poropiti, me ngā kupu anō hoki a te anahera a te Atua, ko Ihu Karaiti tōna ingoa, te Tama a te Atua.

20 Ā ināianei, e aku teina, kua mārāma tāku kia kaua ai koutou e pōhēhē. Ā, e ora ana te Ariki te Atua nāna a Iharaira i kawē ake i waho i te whenua o Īhipa, ā, i hoatu ki a Mohi te mana kia rongoātia ai ngā iwi whai muri iho i tā ngā nākahi paitini ngaunga i a rātou, ki te titiro atu ō rātou karu ki te nākahi nāna i hāpai ake ki mua i a rātou, i hoatu mana hoki ki a ia kia patua ai te toka e puta mai ai te wai; āe rā, nana tāku e kī atu nei ki a koutou, nā, e pērā ana ki te pono o ēnei mea, ā, e ora ana te Ariki te Atua, kāore he ingoa kē atu kua tukuna i raro i te rangi hāunga ia ko tēnei Ihu Karaiti, koia nei tāku i kōrero ai, mā reira whakaorangia ai te tangata.

21 Nā reira, mō tēnei take i whakaaria mai ai e te Ariki te Atua ki ahau, nā, ka puritia, ā, ka tiakina ēnei mea e tuhituhi atu nei ahau, ā, ka tukuna iho ki ōku uri, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga, kia ea ai te kupu whakaari ki a Hōhepa, kia kore ai ōna uri e hemo atu mō ngā wā katoa e toitū ana te whenua.

22 Nā reira, ka tukuna atu ēnei mea mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga mō ngā wā katoa e toitū ana te whenua; ā, ka tukuna ēnā e ai ki te hiahia me te kōingo o te Atua; ā, ka whakawākia ngā iwi e mau ai ēnā e ēnā mea e ai ki ngā kupu kua tuhituhia nei.

Wherefore, he shall bring forth his words unto them, which words shall judge them at the last day, for they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them; and unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

For according to the words of the prophets, the Messiah cometh in six hundred years from the time that my father left Jerusalem; and according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken plainly that ye cannot err. And as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth; yea, behold I say unto you, that as these things are true, and as the Lord God liveth, there is none other name given under heaven save it be this Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

Wherefore, for this cause hath the Lord God promised unto me that these things which I write shall be kept and preserved, and handed down unto my seed, from generation to generation, that the promise may be fulfilled unto Joseph, that his seed should never perish as long as the earth should stand.

Wherefore, these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand; and they shall go according to the will and pleasure of God; and the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

- 23 Nā, e kaha ana tā mātou ngana ki te tuhi, kia whakapakepake i ā mātou tamariki, me ō mātou huānga, kia whakapono ai i te Karaiti, ā, kia houhia ai te rongō ki te Atua; nā, e mōhio ana mātou mā te aroha noa tātou e whakaora ai, nō muri rawa mai i ā tātou e taea ai te mahi.
- 24 Ā, ahakoa e whakapono ana mātou i te Karaiti, e puritia ana e mātou te ture a Mohi, ā, e ū ana tā mātou titiro whakamua ki te Karaiti, tae atu ana ki te whakatutukitanga i te ture.
- 25 Nā te mea, mō konei rā te ture i homai ai; nā reira kua meinga te ture kia mate ki a mātou, ā, kua meinga mātou kia ora i te Karaiti nā tō mātou whakapono; heoi, e puritia ana e mātou te ture nā ngā whakahaunga.
- 26 Ā, e kōrerorero mātou mō te Karaiti, e hari ana mātou i te Karaiti, e kauhau ana mātou mō te Karaiti, e poropiti mātou mō te Karaiti, ā, e tuhituhi ana mātou e ai ki ā mātou poropititanga, kia mōhio ai ā mātou tamariki ki tēhea puna e kimi ai hei murunga i ō rātou hara.
- 27 Nā reira, e kōrero ana mātou e pā ana ki te ture kia mōhio ai ā mātou tamariki ki te matenga o te ture; mā konei rātou, e mōhio ana ki te matenga o te ture, ka taea te titiro whakamua ki te oranga kei roto nei i te Karaiti, ā, ka mōhio he aha te take i tukuna mai ai te ture. Ā, nō muri mai i te whakatutukitanga i te Karaiti, nā, me kore rawa rātou e whakapakeke i ō rātou ngākau ki a ia i te mea e tika ana kia whakakorehia atu te ture.
- 28 Ā, nana ināianeī, e tōku iwi, he iwi kakī mārō koutou; nā reira, kua mārāma tāku ki a koutou, kia kore ai koutou e pōhēhē. Ā, ka tū ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei e ahau hei whakaaturanga ki a koutou; nā te mea kua rānei ēnei hei whakaako i te tangata i te huarahi tika; nā te mea ko te huarahi tika, ko te whakapono i te Karaiti me te whakaparahako kore i a ia; nā te mea mā te whakaparahako i a ia, ka whakaparahako anō koutou i ngā poropiti me te ture.

For we labor diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, and to be reconciled to God; for we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do.

And, notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

For, for this end was the law given; wherefore the law hath become dead unto us, and we are made alive in Christ because of our faith; yet we keep the law because of the commandments.

And we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

Wherefore, we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given. And after the law is fulfilled in Christ, that they need not harden their hearts against him when the law ought to be done away.

And now behold, my people, ye are a stiffnecked people; wherefore, I have spoken plainly unto you, that ye cannot misunderstand. And the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you; for they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

29     Ā, nana ianei, ko tāku ki a koutou ko te huarahi tika, ko te whakapono i te Karaiti, me te whakaparahako kore i a ia; ā, ko te Karaiti te Mea Tapu o Iharaira; nā reira me tuohu iho koutou i tōna aroaro, me te koropiko i a ia i runga katoa i ō ngoi, ō whakaaro, me ō kaha, me ō wairua katoa; ā, ki te pēnei koutou kua kore rawa koutou e peia atu.

30     Ā, inā hoki me tika pū ia, me pupuri e koutou ngā meatanga me ngā karakia tapu o te Atua tae atu ana ki te wā e tūtuki ai i te ture kua hoatu nei ki a Mohi.

And now behold, I say unto you that the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not; and Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul; and if ye do this ye shall in nowise be cast out.

And, inasmuch as it shall be expedient, ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God until the law shall be fulfilled which was given unto Moses.

## 2 Nīwhai 26

- 1 Ā, whai muri iho i te aranga ake o te Karaiti i te mate ka whakaatu atu ia i a ia anō ki a koutou, e aku tamariki, me aku huānga aroha; ā, ko ngā kupu e kōrerotia atu ai e ia ki a koutou ko te ture me mahi e koutou.
- 2 Nana rā, tāku ki a koutou kua kite au ka pahure atu ngā whakatipuranga maha, ā, ka nui ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga i waenganui i tōku iwi.
- 3 Ā, whai muri iho i te haerenga mai a te Mīhaia ka hoatu he tohu ki tōku iwi mō tana whānautanga mai, ā, mō tana matenga hoki me tana aranga; ā, he nui whakarihariha taua rā mō te hunga kino, nā te mea ka hemo rātou; ā, ka hemo nei rātou nā tā rātou makanga atu i ngā poropiti, me te hunga tapu, ā, ka ākina ki te kōhatu, ā, ka whakamate i a rātou; nā reira ka kake ake ngā toto o te hunga tapu ki te Atua mai i te whenua hei whakahē i a rātou.
- 4 Nā reira, ko te hunga whakakake katoa, e mahi nei i te kino, ka tahuna ake rātou i taua rā e haere mai ana, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, nā, ka rite rātou ki te kakau wīti.
- 5 Ā, ko rātou e whakamate nei i ngā poropiti, me te hunga tapu, ka horomia ake rātou e te hōhonutanga o te whenua, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano; ā, ka ūhia rātou e ngā maunga, ā, ka kahakina atu rātou e ngā hau āwhiowhio, ā, ka hinga iho ngā pourangi ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka mongamonga rātou hei kongakonga, ā, ka kauorohia rātou hei puehu.
- 6 Ā, ka torongia rātou ki ngā whatitiri, me ngā uira, me ngā rū, me ngā tūmomo aituā katoa, nā te mea ka tahutahungia te ahi o te riri o te Atua hei whakahē i a rātou, ā, ka rite rātou ki te kakau wīti, ā, ka pau rātou i taua rā e haere mai ana, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.
- 7 Auē te mamae, me te pōuri o tōku wairua i te ngaronga o te hunga mate o tōku iwi! Nā nāku, nā Nīwhai, i kite atu ai i a ia, ā, e tata pau ana ahau i a ia i te aroaro o te Ariki; engari me karanga atu au ki tōku Atua: E tika ana ō huarahi.

## 2 Nephi 26

And after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you, my children, and my beloved brethren; and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

For behold, I say unto you that I have beheld that many generations shall pass away, and there shall be great wars and contentions among my people.

And after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth, and also of his death and resurrection; and great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked, for they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them; wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to God from the ground against them.

Wherefore, all those who are proud, and that do wickedly, the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, for they shall be as stubble.

And they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts; and mountains shall cover them, and whirlwinds shall carry them away, and buildings shall fall upon them and crush them to pieces and grind them to powder.

And they shall be visited with thunderings, and lightnings, and earthquakes, and all manner of destructions, for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them, and they shall be as stubble, and the day that cometh shall consume them, saith the Lord of Hosts.

O the pain, and the anguish of my soul for the loss of the slain of my people! For I, Nephi, have seen it, and it well nigh consumeth me before the presence of the Lord; but I must cry unto my God: Thy ways are just.

- 8 Engari nana, ko te hunga tika e whakarongo ana ki ngā kupu a ngā poropiti, me te whakangaro kore i a rātou, engari ka ū te titiro whakamua ki te Karaiti mō ngā tohu kua hoatu nei, ahakoa ngā whakahāweatanga katoa—nana, ko rātou te hunga e kore nei e hemo.
- 9 Engari ka puta mai te Tama o te Tika ki a rātou; māna rātou e whakaora, ā, ka āio tahi rātou me ia, kia pahure atu ai ngā whakatipuranga e toru, ā, ka nui anō te hunga nō te whakatipuranga tuawhā e pahure atu ai i runga i te tika.
- 10 Ā ina pahure atu ēnei mea ka tae mai te whakangaromanga wawetanga ki tōku iwi; nā, ahakoa ngā mamae o tōku wairua, nāku ia i kite; nā reira, e mōhio ana ahau ka pahawa ake; ā, ka hoko atu rātou i a rātou anō mō te kore; nā te mea, ka rongorongo rātou i te whakangaromanga hei utu mō tō rātou whakapehapeha me tō rātou kuaretanga; nā, nā tā rātou tukunga atu ki te rēwera me te whiriwhiri i ngā mahinga pōuri kē atu i te mārāma, nō reira me haere iho rātou ki te ao rēwera.
- 11 Nā, kāore te Wairua o te Ariki e totohe tonu ki te tangata. Ā, ina mutu tā te Wairua totohe ki te tangata hei reira tae mai ai te whakangaromanga wawetanga, ā, he mea pōuri tēnei ki tōku wairua.
- 12 Ā, he pēnei anō ki tāku i kōrero ai e pā ana ki te whakapakepaketainga i ngā Hūrai, nā, ko Ihu te tino Karaiti, me tika pū ia kia whakapakepakehia anōtia ngā Tauwiwi ko Ihu te Karaiti, te Atua Ora Tonu;
- 13 Ā, ka whakaatu ia i a ia anō ki te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki a ia, mā te mana o te Wairua Tapu; āe rā, ki ngā iwi katoa, ngā hapū, ngā reo, me ngā tāngata, e mahi merekara nunui ana, ngā tohu, me ngā whakamīharotanga, i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata e ai ki tō rātou whakapono.
- 14 Engari nana, e poropiti ana ahau ki a koutou e pā ana ki ngā rā whakamutunga; e pā ana ki ngā rā e whakaputa mai ai te Ariki te Atua i ēnei mea ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.

But behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ with steadfastness for the signs which are given, notwithstanding all persecution—behold, they are they which shall not perish.

But the Son of Righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall heal them, and they shall have peace with him, until three generations shall have passed away, and many of the fourth generation shall have passed away in righteousness.

And when these things have passed away a speedy destruction cometh unto my people; for, notwithstanding the pains of my soul, I have seen it; wherefore, I know that it shall come to pass; and they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light, therefore they must go down to hell.

For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man. And when the Spirit ceaseth to strive with man then cometh speedy destruction, and this grieveth my soul.

And as I spake concerning the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ, the Eternal God;

And that he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost; yea, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, working mighty miracles, signs, and wonders, among the children of men according to their faith.

But behold, I prophesy unto you concerning the last days; concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

- 15 Whai muri iho i tā ōku uri me ngā uri o ōku tuākana memeha haeretanga i te whakapono kore, ā, ka oti hoki te patupatu a ngā Tauwiwi i a rātou; āe rā, hei muri i tā te Ariki te Atua karapotinga huri noa i a rātou me tana whakapaenga i a rātou ki te parepare, me te whakarewa ake i ngā taiapa ki a rātou; ā, hei muri iho i tā rātou kukume ihotanga ki raro iho i te puehu, kia kore noa iho rātou he aha, heoi anō, ka tuhituhia ngā kupu a te hunga tika, ā, ka rangona ngā inoi a te hunga whakapono, ā, kāore e warewaretia te hunga katoa kua memeha haere i te whakapono kore.
- 16 Nā, ka kōrero mai te hunga ka whakangaromia i te whenua, ā, ka puta pū tā rātou kōrerotanga i raro iho i te puehu, ā, ka rite anō tō rātou reo ki tētahi he wairua taunga tōna; nā, ka tuku mana atu te Ariki te Atua ki a ia, kia taea e ia te kōhimuhimu e pā ana ki a rātou, me te mea nei i te whenua; ā, ka kōhimuhimu tā rātou kōrerotanga i te puehu.
- 17 Nā, ko te kōrero tēnei nā te Ariki te Atua: Ka tuhituhi rātou i ngā mea ka oti te mahi i waenganui i a rātou, ā, ka tuhia, ā, ka hīria ake i tētahi pukapuka, ā, kāore e riro ēnei mea ki te hunga kua memeha haere i te whakapono kore, nā te mea e whai ana rātou kia whakangaromia ai ngā mea o te Atua.
- 18 Nā reira, e pērā ana ki te hunga kua whakangaromia, kua whakangaromia wawetia; ā, ka rite te marea o te hunga nanakia ki te pāpapa e ngaro atu ana—āe rā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: Ka ai pū i tētahi wā poto rawa atu, ka ohore—
- 19 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka patua te hunga kua memeha haere i te whakapono kore e te rīnga o ngā Tauwiwi.
- 20 Ā, ka neke ake ngā Tauwiwi i runga i te whakapēhapa o ō rātou karu, ā, kua tatutatu, nā te nui o tō rātou tutukitanga waewae, nā konā kua hangaia ake ngā hāhi maha; hei aha koa, e whakapēhi iho ana i te mana me ngā merekara a te Atua, ā, e kauhau atu ana ki a rātou anō i ā rātou ake mōhiotanga me ā rātou ake mātauranga, kia whai pūtea ai rātou, ā, kia kauoro atu i runga i te mata o te hunga rawakore.
- 21 Ā, he maha ngā hāhi kua hangaia ake nāna i hua ai ngā pūhaehae, me ngā tohenga, me te mauāhara.

After my seed and the seed of my brethren shall have dwindled in unbelief, and shall have been smitten by the Gentiles; yea, after the Lord God shall have camped against them round about, and shall have laid siege against them with a mount, and raised forts against them; and after they shall have been brought down low in the dust, even that they are not, yet the words of the righteous shall be written, and the prayers of the faithful shall be heard, and all those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not be forgotten.

For those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit; for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them, even as it were out of the ground; and their speech shall whisper out of the dust.

For thus saith the Lord God: They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book, and those who have dwindled in unbelief shall not have them, for they seek to destroy the things of God.

Wherefore, as those who have been destroyed have been destroyed speedily; and the multitude of their terrible ones shall be as chaff that passeth away—yea, thus saith the Lord God: It shall be at an instant, suddenly—

And it shall come to pass, that those who have dwindled in unbelief shall be smitten by the hand of the Gentiles.

And the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

- 22     Ā, i reira hoki ngā huihuinga muna, e pērā ana ki ngā rā o mua, e ai ki ngā huihuinga a te rēwera, nā, ko ia te pūtake o ēnei mea katoa; āe rā, ko te pūtake o te kōhuru me ngā mahinga a te pōuritanga; āe rā, e ārahina ana rātou e ia mā te kakī ki te aho muka, tae atu ana ki te wā ka hereherea rātou ki ngā aho kaha mō āke tonu atu.
- 23     Nana rā, e aku teina aroha, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kāore te Ariki te Atua e mahi i roto i te pōuritanga.
- 24     Kāore ia mō te mahi i tētahi mea hāunga ia hei painga mō te ao; nā te mea e arohaina ana te ao e ia, nō konā pū anō ka whakatakotoria iho tōna ake oranga kia kukume katoa mai ai i ngā tāngata katoa ki a ia. Nā reira, kāore ia mō te whakahau i tētahi kia kaua rātou e pā ai ki tōna whakaoranga.
- 25     Nana, e karanga ana ia ki ētahi, e mea ana: Mawehe atu i ahau? Nana, ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo; engari ko tāna: Haere mai ki ahau e ngā tōpito katoa o te ao, hokona he waiū me te mīere, kaua he moni, kaua he utu.
- 26     Nana, kua whakahau rānei ia i ētahi kia mawehe atu ai i ngā whare karakia Hūrai, i ngā whare koropiko rānei? Nana, ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo.
- 27     Kua whakahau rānei ia i ētahi kia kaua e pā atu ki tōna whakaoranga? Nana ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo; engari kua homai noa e ia mō ngā tāngata katoa; ā, kua whakahau ia i tana iwi, nā, me whakapakepake rātou i ngā tāngata katoa kia rīpeneta ai.
- 28     Nana, kua whakahau rānei te Ariki i ētahi kia kaua e pā atu ki tōna painga? Nana ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo; engari e arohaina ana ngā tāngata katoa, e rite ana tētahi ki tētahi, ā, kāore tētahi e whakakāhoretia atu.
- 29     E whakahau nei ia kia kore ai he tohungatanga teka; nana rā, ko tā te tohungatanga teka he kauwhau atu te tangata me te whakatū i a ia anō hei māramatanga mō te ao, kia whai pūtea ai, ā, kia whai hōnora ai i te ao; engari kāore rātou i te whaiwhai atu i te painga o Hīona.

And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

For behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you that the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

He doeth not anything save it be for the benefit of the world; for he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him. Wherefore, he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

Behold, doth he cry unto any, saying: Depart from me? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

Behold, hath he commanded any that they should depart out of the synagogues, or out of the houses of worship? Behold, I say unto you, Nay.

Hath he commanded any that they should not partake of his salvation? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but he hath given it free for all men; and he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

Behold, hath the Lord commanded any that they should not partake of his goodness? Behold I say unto you, Nay; but all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

- 30 Nana, kua whakakāhoretia e te Ariki tēnei mea; nā reira, kua homai nei e te Ariki te Atua he whakahaunga kia aroha noa ai ngā tāngata katoa, ko taua aroha noa koia anō te aroha. Ā, ki te kore tō rātou aroha noa kua kore noa iho rātou. Nā reira, ki te whai aroha noa rātou kua kore rātou e tuku kia mate ai te kaimahi i Hīona.
- 31 Engari ka mahi te kaimahi i Hīona mō Hīona; nā te mea ki te mahi rātou mō te moni ka mate rātou.
- 32 Ā, waihoki, kua whakahau te Ariki te Atua kia kaua te tangata e kōhuru; kia kaua e rūkahu; kia kaua rātou e tāhae; kia kaua rātou e whakahua noa i te ingoa o te Ariki tō rātou Atua; kia kaua rātou e pūhaehae; kia kaua rātou e mauāhara; kia kaua rātou e totohe atu tētahi ki tētahi; kia kaua rātou e mahi pūremu; ā, kia kaua rātou e mahi i tētahi o ēnei mea; nā te mea ka mate te hunga e mahi ai i ēnei mea.
- 33 Nā, kāore tētahi o ēnei hara i ahu mai i te Ariki; nā te mea ka mahi ia i ngā mea pai i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata; ā, kāore ia e mahi nei i tētahi mea hāunga ia he mārama ki ngā tamariki a te tangata; ā, e pōhiri ana ia i a rātou kia haere mai ai rātou ki a ia kia pā ai ki tōna painga; ā, kāore ia mō te whakakore i tētahi e haere mai nei ki a ia, te mangumangu me te kiritea, te herehere me te herekore, te tāne me te wahine; ā, ka maumahara ia ki te tangata mohoa; ā, e rite ana te katoa ki te Atua, Hūrai mai, Tauwiwi mai.

Behold, the Lord hath forbidden this thing; wherefore, the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love. And except they should have charity they were nothing. Wherefore, if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

But the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

And again, the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things; for whoso doeth them shall perish.

For none of these iniquities come of the Lord; for he doeth that which is good among the children of men; and he doeth nothing save it be plain unto the children of men; and he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness; and he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.



## 2 Nīwhai 27

- 1 Engari, nana, i ngā rā whakamutunga, i ngā rā rānei o ngā Tauīwi—āe rā, nana ko ngā iwi katoa o ngā Tauīwi me ngā Hūrai anō hoki, ko ngā mea ka tau mai ki runga i tēnei whenua me te hunga kei runga i ērā atu whenua, āe rā, i runga pū anō i ngā whenua katoa o te ao, nana, ka haurangi rātou i te hara me ngā tūmomo āhuatanga mōrikarika katoa—
- 2 Ā, ina tae mai taua rā ka torohia mai e te Ariki o ngā Mano, ki te whatitiri me te rū whenua, ā, ki te haruru nui, ā, ki te paroro, ā, ki te tūpuhi, ā, ki te mura ahi o te ahi horohoro.
- 3 Ā, ko ngā iwi katoa e whawhai ai ki a Hīona, ā, e ngangare ai ki a ia, ka rite ki tētahi moemoeā nō tētahi whakakitenga pō; āe rā, ka pērā atu ki a rātou, kia rite anō ki tētahi tangata matekai e moemoeā ana, ā nana, ka kai ia engari ka oho ia, ā, kua kautahanga tōna wairua; kia rite rānei ki tētahi tangata matewai e moemoeā ana, ā nana, ka inu ia engari ka oho, ā nana e ngoikore ana ia, ā, e minamina ana tōna wairua; āe rā, ka pēnei pū anō ngā marea o ngā iwi e whawhai ai ki a Maunga Hīona.
- 4 Nana rā, ko koutou katoa e mahi kino ana, e tū koutou kia mīharo ai, nā te mea ka tangi atu koutou, ā, ka tangi; āe rā, ka haurangi koutou engari ehara i te waina, ka hūrorirori koutou engari ehara i te inu kaha.
- 5 Nana rā, kua maringi iho te Ariki i te wairua o te moe au ki runga i a koutou. Nana rā, kua kopia ō koutou karu, ā, kua whakaparahakotia ngā poropiti; me ō koutou kaiwhakahaere tikanga, ā, kua uhia e ia ngā matakite nā tō koutou kino.
- 6 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka mauria mai e te Ariki te Atua ki a koutou ngā kupu o tētahi pukapuka, ā, ko ngā kupu ērā a te hunga kua moe.
- 7 Ā nana, ka hīria te pukapuka; ā, kei roto i te pukapuka tētahi whakakitenga nō te Atua, mai i te ōrokotimatanga o te ao tae atu ki tōna whakamutunga.
- 8 Nā reira, nā ngā mea kua hīria ake, kua kore ngā mea kua hīria ake e whakaputaina atu ai i te rā whakarihariha me ngā mōrikarika o te iwi. Nā reira ka kaiponuhia te pukapuka i a rātou.

## 2 Nephi 27

But, behold, in the last days, or in the days of the Gentiles—yea, behold all the nations of the Gentiles and also the Jews, both those who shall come upon this land and those who shall be upon other lands, yea, even upon all the lands of the earth, behold, they will be drunken with iniquity and all manner of abominations—

And when that day shall come they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision; yea, it shall be unto them, even as unto a hungry man which dreameth, and behold he eateth but he awaketh and his soul is empty; or like unto a thirsty man which dreameth, and behold he drinketh but he awaketh and behold he is faint, and his soul hath appetite; yea, even so shall the multitude of all the nations be that fight against Mount Zion.

For behold, all ye that doeth iniquity, stay yourselves and wonder, for ye shall cry out, and cry; yea, ye shall be drunken but not with wine, ye shall stagger but not with strong drink.

For behold, the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

And behold the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

Wherefore, because of the things which are sealed up, the things which are sealed shall not be delivered in the day of the wickedness and abominations of the people. Wherefore the book shall be kept from them.

- 9 Engari ka tukuna te pukapuka ki tētahi tangata, ā, māna ngā kupu a te pukapuka e tuku, koia ngā kupu o te hunga kua moe nei i te puehu, ā, māna ēnei kupu e tuku ki tētahi atu;
- 10 Engari kāore ia e tuku atu i ngā kupu kua hīria ake nei, kāore rānei ia e tuku atu i te pukapuka. Nā te mea ka hīria te pukapuka e te mana o te Atua, ā, ka mau tonu te whakakitenga kua hīria nei i pukapuka tae atu ana ki te wā e tika ana i tā te Ariki, kia puta mai ai; nana rā, ka whakakitea atu ngā mea katoa mai i te tūāpapa o te ao tae atu ki tōna whakamutunga.
- 11 Ā, ka tae mai te rā e pānuitia ai ngā kupu o te pukapuka kua hīria i runga i ngā tuanui whare; ā, ka pānuitia e te mana o te Karaiti; ā, ka whakakitea ki ngā tamariki a te tangata ngā mea katoa kua heipū i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata me ngā mea e puta mai ai tae pū anō ki te whakamutunga o te ao.
- 12 Nā reira, hei taua rā e tukua ai te pukapuka ki te tangata kua kōrerotia nei e ahau, ka hunia te pukapuka i ngā karu o te ao, nā, kua kore e kitea e ngā karu o ētahi hāunga ko ngā kaiwhakaatu tokotoru anake e tirohia ai ia, mā te mana o te Atua, hei āpiti atu i te tangata e tukua ai ki a ia te pukapuka; ā, ka whakaatu rātou i te pono o te pukapuka me ngā mea kei roto.
- 13 Ā, kāore tētahi atu e tirohia ai ia, hāunga ngā mea torotoru e ai tā te Atua e pai ai, hei whakaatu atu i tana kupu ki ngā tamariki a te tangata; nā, kua mea mai te Ariki ka kōrerohia ngā kupu a te hunga tika me te mea nei nā te hunga mate.
- 14 Nā reira, ka haere tonu tā te Ariki te Atua whakaputa mai i ngā kupu a te pukapuka; ā, mā te māngai o ngā kaiwhakaatu tokomaha e pai ai ki a ia e whakapūmautia ai e ia tana kupu; ā, auē te mate mō te hunga e whakaparahako i te kupu a te Atua!
- 15 Engari nana, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka kōrero atu te Ariki te Atua ki a ia, koia te tangata e tukuna ki a ia te pukapuka: Kawea ēnei kupu kāore nei i te hīri, ā, tukuna atu ki tētahi atu, kia whakaatuhia atu ērā e ia ki te hunga matatau, e mea ana: Tēnā koa, pānuitia tēnei. Ā, ka mea te hunga matatau: Kawea mai te pukapuka, ā, māku ēnā e pānui.

But the book shall be delivered unto a man, and he shall deliver the words of the book, which are the words of those who have slumbered in the dust, and he shall deliver these words unto another;

But the words which are sealed he shall not deliver, neither shall he deliver the book. For the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord, that they may come forth; for behold, they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

And the day cometh that the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ; and all things shall be revealed unto the children of men which ever have been among the children of men, and which ever will be even unto the end of the earth.

Wherefore, at that day when the book shall be delivered unto the man of whom I have spoken, the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God, besides him to whom the book shall be delivered; and they shall testify to the truth of the book and the things therein.

And there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God, to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men; for the Lord God hath said that the words of the faithful should speak as if it were from the dead.

Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good will he establish his word; and wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

But behold, it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall say unto him to whom he shall deliver the book: Take these words which are not sealed and deliver them to another, that he may show them unto the learned, saying: Read this, I pray thee. And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

16     Ā ināianeī, ka kōrero rātou i tēnei nā te korōria o te ao, ā, kia whai taonga ai, ā, ehara i te mea mō te korōria o te Atua.

17     Ā, ka kī te tangata: Kāore e taea e au te hari mai i te pukapuka, nā te mea kua hīria ia.

18     Kātahi ka mea te hunga matatau: Kāore e taea e au te pānui i a ia.

19     Nā reira ka pahawa ake, nā, ka whakaputa atu anō te Ariki te Atua i te pukapuka me ōna kupu ki a ia kāore i te matatau; ā, ka mea te tangata kāore i te matatau: Ehara au i te matatau.

20     Kātahi ka mea te Ariki te Atua ki a ia: Kāore te hunga matatau e pānui i ēnā, nā te mea kua whakaparահakotia ēnā, ā, e taea ana e au tāku ake mahi te mahi; nā reira ka pānuitia e koe ngā kupu māku e tuku ki a koe.

21     Kaua e pā ki ngā mea kua hīria, nā, māku ēnā e kawe mai hei te wā e tika ana; nā, ka whakaatu atu au ki ngā tamariki a te tangata e taea ana e au tāku ake mahi te mahi.

22     Nā reira, ina mutu i a koe te pānui i ngā kupu kua whakahaua koe e ahau me tāu whiwhinga i ngā kaiwhakaatu kua whakaari nei au ki a koe, hei konā koe e hīri ake anō i te pukapuka, ā, ka hunaia ake ki ahau, kia tiaki au i ngā kupu kāore i pānuitia nei e koe, tae atu ana ki te wā e tika ana ki ahau i tōku ake mātauranga kia whakakitea atu ai ngā mea katoa ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.

23     Nana rā, ko te Atua ahau; ā, he Atua merekara ahau; ā, māku e whakaatu atu ki te ao he rite au inānahi, ināianeī, ā, āke tonu atu; ā, kāore au e mahi ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata hāunga ia e ai tā tō rātou whakapono.

24     Ā, ka pahawa ake anō, nā, ka kī atu te Ariki ki te tangata māna e pānui ngā kupu e tukuna atu ai ki a ia:

25     Inā hoki rā e whakatata mai nei tēnei iwi ki ahau i tō rātou māngai, ā, ka whakahōnoretia au i ō rātou ngutu, engari he matara atu i a au ō rātou ngākau; ā, he mea whakaako tō rātou wehi ki ahau e ngā tikanga o te tangata—

And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

And the man shall say: I cannot bring the book, for it is sealed.

Then shall the learned say: I cannot read it.

Wherefore it shall come to pass, that the Lord God will deliver again the book and the words thereof to him that is not learned; and the man that is not learned shall say: I am not learned.

Then shall the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work; wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time; for I will show unto the children of men that I am able to do mine own work.

Wherefore, when thou hast read the words which I have commanded thee, and obtained the witnesses which I have promised unto thee, then shalt thou seal up the book again, and hide it up unto me, that I may preserve the words which thou hast not read, until I shall see fit in mine own wisdom to reveal all things unto the children of men.

For behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles; and I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and I work not among the children of men save it be according to their faith.

And again it shall come to pass that the Lord shall say unto him that shall read the words that shall be delivered him:

Forasmuch as this people draw near unto me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their hearts far from me, and their fear towards me is taught by the precepts of men—

26 Nō reira, ka haere tonu taku mahi merekara i waenganui i tēnei iwi, āe rā, he mahi nui whakamīharo, nā, ka mimiti te mātauranga o ō rātou ruānuku me ō rātou tangata matatau, ā, ka hunaia te māramatanga o ō rātou tangata mōhio.

27 Ā, auē te mate mō rātou e ngana hohonu ai ki te huna i ā rātou whakatakotoranga whakaaro mai i te Ariki! Ā, e mahi nei ā rātou mahinga i te pōuritanga; ā, ka kī rātou: Ko wai e kite nei i a tātou? Ā, e kī ana anō rātou: Kāore e kore ka kīa tāu hurihanga i ngā mea he rite ki te uku nā te kaihanga rihi. Engari nana, māku e whakaatu atu ki a rātou, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, nā, e mōhio ana au i ā rātou mahinga katoa. Nā, ka kī ake rānei te mahi mō tōna kaihanga, kāore i hangaia ahau e ia? Ka kī ake rānei te mea kua taitapaia ki tōna kaitaitapa, kāore ōna māramatanga?

28 Engari nana, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano: Māku e whakaatu atu ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, tēnā ko tēnei, he wā iti rawa ka tahuritia a Repanona hei māra whai hua; ā, ka kīa te māra whai hua he ngahere.

29 Ā, ka rongo te hunga turi i ngā kupu a te pukapuka, ā, ka kite ngā karu o te hunga kāpō i waho atu i te matapōrehutanga, ā, i te pōuritanga.

30 Ā, ka nui haere te hunga māhaki, ā, kei roto i te Ariki tō rātou koa, ā, ka koa te hunga rawakore i waenganui i ngā tāngata i te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.

31 Nā te mea he pono e ora ana te Ariki, ka kite rātou i te mea nanakia kua mōtī, ā, kua pau te mea whakahāwea, ā, kua hātepea atu te hunga mātakitaki katoa i te kino;

32 Ā, ko te hunga e whakatau i te tangata he kaihara mō te kupu kotahi, me te whakatakoto māhanga mō te tangata e whakatika tangata ana i te tomokanga, me te whakapeau i te hunga tika me te mea he mea kore noa iho.

33 Nō reira, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, nāna nei a Aperahama i hoko, e pā ana ki te whare o Iharaira: E kore ianei a Hākopa e whakamā, e kore rānei e kōmā tōna mata.

34 Engari ina kite ia i āna tamariki, te mahi a ōku ringaringa, i tōna aroaro, ka whakatapua e rātou tōku ingoa, ā, ka whakatapua te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, ā, ka wehi anō ki te Atua o Iharaira.

Therefore, I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea, a marvelous work and a wonder, for the wisdom of their wise and learned shall perish, and the understanding of their prudent shall be hid.

And wo unto them that seek deep to hide their counsel from the Lord! And their works are in the dark; and they say: Who seeth us, and who knoweth us? And they also say: Surely, your turning of things upside down shall be esteemed as the potter's clay. But behold, I will show unto them, saith the Lord of Hosts, that I know all their works. For shall the work say of him that made it, he made me not? Or shall the thing framed say of him that framed it, he had no understanding?

But behold, saith the Lord of Hosts: I will show unto the children of men that it is yet a very little while and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be esteemed as a forest.

And in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

For assuredly as the Lord liveth they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught, and the scorner is consumed, and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;

And they that make a man an offender for a word, and lay a snare for him that reproveth in the gate, and turn aside the just for a thing of naught.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord, who redeemed Abraham, concerning the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not now be ashamed, neither shall his face now wax pale.

But when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

35      Ka tae anō te hunga wairua kōtiti ki tētahi  
māramatanga, ā, ka ako te hunga amuamu i ngā  
whakaakoranga.

They also that erred in spirit shall come to under-  
standing, and they that murmured shall learn doc-  
trine.

## 2 Nīwhai 28

- 1 Ā ināianeī, nana, e aku teina, kua kōrero atu nei ahau ki a koutou, e ai ki tā te Wairua akiaki i ahau; nā reira, e mōhio ana ahau kāore e kore ka pahawa ake ēnā.
- 2 Ā, ka nui te utu o ngā mea ka tuhia atu mai i te pukapuka ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, ki ō tātou uri pū anō, koia he mōrehu nō te whare o Iharaira.
- 3 Nā, ka pahawa ake i taua rā, nā, ko ngā hāhi kua hangaia ake nei, ā, kāore ki te Atua, ka kī atu tētahi ki tētahi atu: Nana, ko au, ko au tā te Ariki; ā, ka kī ake ērā atu: Ko au, ko au tā te Ariki; ā, ka pēnei te kōrero o ia mea, o ia mea kua hangaia ake ngā hāhi, ā, kāore ki te Ariki—
- 4 Ā, ka ngangare tētahi ki tētahi; ā, ka ngangare ō rātou tohunga tētahi ki tētahi, ā, ka whakaako rātou i runga i tō rātou mātauranga, ā, ka whakakore i te Wairua Tapu, māna nei e whakapuakina ai.
- 5 Ā, e whakakore nei rātou i te mana o te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira; ā, ka mea atu rātou ki te iwi: Whakarongo mai ki a mātou, ā, whakarongo ki tā mātou tohutohu; nā te mea nana, kāore he Atua i tēnei rā, nā, kua oti i te Ariki, ā, i te Kaihoko tāna mahi, ā, kua hoatu tana mana ki ngā tāngata;
- 6 Nana, whakarongo koutou ki taku tohutohu; mehemea ka kī ake rātou kua puta he merekara i te ringa o te Ariki, kua e whakaponono; nā te mea kāore ia i te Atua merekara i tēnei rā; kua oti i a ia tāna mahi.
- 7 Āe rā, ka tokomaha ngā mea e kī ake ai: E kai, e inu, kia hari, nā te mea hei āpōpō tātou mate ai; ā, ka pai tēnā mō tātou.
- 8 Ā, ka tokomaha ngā mea e kī ake ai: E kai, e inu, kia hari; hei aha koa, e wehi ki te Atua—ka whakamurua e ia tētahi hara iti; āe rā, me rūkahu iti, me tinihanga i tētahi nā runga i āna kupu, me kerī i tētahi rua mō tō hoa nohotata; kāore he hē i tēnei; ā, me mahi ēnei mea katoa, nā te mea hei āpōpō tātou mate ai; ā, mehemea rā ia kua hē tātou, ka patua tātou e te Atua ki ngā whiunga torutoru, ā, hei te mutunga iho ka whakaorangia tātou i te kīngitanga o te Atua.

## 2 Nephi 28

And now, behold, my brethren, I have spoken unto you, according as the Spirit hath constrained me; wherefore, I know that they must surely come to pass.

And the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of great worth unto the children of men, and especially unto our seed, which is a remnant of the house of Israel.

For it shall come to pass in that day that the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord, when the one shall say unto the other: Behold, I, I am the Lord's; and the others shall say: I, I am the Lord's; and thus shall every one say that hath built up churches, and not unto the Lord—

And they shall contend one with another; and their priests shall contend one with another, and they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost, which giveth utterance.

And they deny the power of God, the Holy One of Israel; and they say unto the people: Hearken unto us, and hear ye our precept; for behold there is no God today, for the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work, and he hath given his power unto men;

Behold, hearken ye unto my precept; if they shall say there is a miracle wrought by the hand of the Lord, believe it not; for this day he is not a God of miracles; he hath done his work.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry, for tomorrow we die; and it shall be well with us.

And there shall also be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry; nevertheless, fear God—he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little, take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this; and do all these things, for tomorrow we die; and if it so be that we are guilty, God will beat us with a few stripes, and at last we shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

- 9 Āe rā, ka tokomaha ngā mea e whakaako ai i runga i tēnei āhuatanga, he teka, ā, he parau, ā, he whakaakoranga rorirori, ā, ka kiki ake o rātou manawa, ā, ka ngana hōhonu nei kia hunaia ā rātou whakatakotoranga whakaaro i te Ariki; ā, kei roto i te pōuritanga ā rātou mahinga.
- 10 Ā, ka karanga ngā toto o te hunga tapu mai i te whenua hei whakahē i a rātou.
- 11 Āe rā, kua haere katoa atu rātou i te huarahi; kua meinga nei rātou he mea tūkinohia.
- 12 Nā te whakapehapeha, ā, nā ngā kaiako teka, me ngā whakaakoranga teka, kua pokea o rātou hāhi, ā, kua neke ake o rātou hāhi; nā te whakapehapeha kua kiki ake rātou.
- 13 E pāhuatia ana e rātou te hunga rawakore nā o rātou whare karakia papai; e pāhuatia ana e rātou te hunga rawakore nā o rātou kākahu papai; ā, e whakahāweatia e rātou te hunga māhaki me te hunga ngākau whakaiti, nā te mea e kiki ake ana rātou i tō rātou whakapehapeha.
- 14 E mau ana i a rātou ngā kaki mārō me ngā māhunga tiketike; āe rā, nā te whakapehapeha, me te whakarihariha, me ngā mahi mōrikarika, kua kōtiti kē atu rātou katoa hāunga ētahi mea torutoru, ko rātou ngā kaiaru māhaki o te Karaiti; hei aha koa, e ārahina ana rātou, nā, he maha ā rātou kōtiritanga nā te mea e whakaakona ana rātou e ngā tohutohu o te tangata.
- 15 E te hunga mōhio, me te hunga matatau, me te hunga whairawa, e kiki ake ana i te whakapehapehatanga o o rātou ngākau, me te hunga katoa e kauhau ana i ngā whakaakoranga teka, me te hunga katoa e mahi pūremu ana, me te rāweke kino nei i te huarahi tika o te Ariki, auē, auē, auē te mate mō rātou, e ai tā te Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa, nā te mea ka makaia iho rātou ki te ao rēwera!
- 16 Auē te mate mō te hunga e whakapeau i te hunga tika me te mea he mea kore noa iho, ā, e tāwai ana i ērā e pai ana, me te kī ake he mea kāore ōna pai! Nā te mea ka tae mai te rā e torona wawetia ai te Ariki te Atua ki ngā tāngata o te ao; ā, ka mate rātou i taua rā e pakari katoa ana rātou i te hara.
- 17 Engari nana, mēnā ka ripenetā ngā tāngata o te ao i o rātou whakarihariha me ā rātou mahi mōrikarika ka kore rātou e whakangaromia, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.

Yea, and there shall be many which shall teach after this manner, false and vain and foolish doctrines, and shall be puffed up in their hearts, and shall seek deep to hide their counsels from the Lord; and their works shall be in the dark.

And the blood of the saints shall cry from the ground against them.

Yea, they have all gone out of the way; they have become corrupted.

Because of pride, and because of false teachers, and false doctrine, their churches have become corrupted, and their churches are lifted up; because of pride they are puffed up.

They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray save it be a few, who are the humble followers of Christ; nevertheless, they are led, that in many instances they do err because they are taught by the precepts of men.

O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

Wo unto them that turn aside the just for a thing of naught and revile against that which is good, and say that it is of no worth! For the day shall come that the Lord God will speedily visit the inhabitants of the earth; and in that day that they are fully ripe in iniquity they shall perish.

But behold, if the inhabitants of the earth shall repent of their wickedness and abominations they shall not be destroyed, saith the Lord of Hosts.

18 Engari nana, ko taua hāhi nui mōrikarika, ko te wahine pūremu o te ao katoa, me tātūku iho ki te whenua, ā, me nui anō tō reira hinganga.

19 Anā, me tūoi i te kīngitanga o te rēwera, ā, me tika pū ia kia whakaohokia ake te hunga nō konā ki te rīpenetātanga, ka mau rānei rātou i te rēwera me ana mekameka mau tonu, ā, ka whakaohokia rātou ki te riri, ā, ka mate;

20 Nana rā, ka haruru ia i taua rā i roto i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, ka whakaohokia rātou ki te riri ki ērā mea pai.

21 Ā, ka whakamārietia ētahi atu e ia, ka whakaoriorihia atu rātou i roto i te āhurutanga o te ao, kia kī ake ai rātou: He pai katoa ngā mea i Hiona; āe rā, kei te whai pai a Hiona, kei te pai katoa—ā, e pēnei ana tā te rēwera tinihanga i ō rātou wairua, ā, e āta ārahina iho rātou ki te ao rēwera.

22 Ā nana, ka whakapatipatihia atu ētahi, ā, ka mea atu ki a rātou kāore he ao rēwera; ā, ka kī ake ia ki a rātou: Ehara au i tētahi rēwera, nā te mea kārekau tētahi—ā, e pēnei ana tana kōhimuhimu i ō rātou taringa, tae atu ana ki tana whakamaui i a rātou ki āna mekameka mōrikarika, kāore he whakaputanga mai i reira.

23 Āe rā, kua mau rātou i te mate, me te ao rēwera; ā, me tū te mate, me te ao rēwera, me te rēwera me ērā mea katoa kua murua i reira ki mua i te torona o te Atua, ā, ka whakawākia e ai ki ā rātou mahi, mai i reira ka haere rātou ki roto i te wāhi kua whakaritea mō rātou, arā, ki tētahi roto ahi whānāriki, koia anō ko te mamae mutunga kore.

24 Nō reira, auē te mate mō te tangata e noho noa iho ana i Hiona!

25 Auē te mate mō te tangata e hāmama atu ana: Kei te pai katoa!

26 Āe rā, auē te mate mō te tangata e whakarongo ana ki ngā tohutohu a te tangata, me te whakaparāhako i te mana o te Atua, me te takohatanga o te Wairua Tapu!

27 Āe rā, auē te mate mō te tangata e kī ake ana: Kua whiwhi mātou, ā, kāore he mea anō e hiahia nei mātou!

But behold, that great and abominable church, the whore of all the earth, must tumble to the earth, and great must be the fall thereof.

For the kingdom of the devil must shake, and they which belong to it must needs be stirred up unto repentance, or the devil will grasp them with his everlasting chains, and they be stirred up to anger, and perish;

For behold, at that day shall he rage in the hearts of the children of men, and stir them up to anger against that which is good.

And others will he pacify, and lull them away into carnal security, that they will say: All is well in Zion; yea, Zion prospereth, all is well—and thus the devil cheateth their souls, and leadeth them away carefully down to hell.

And behold, others he flattereth away, and telleth them there is no hell; and he saith unto them: I am no devil, for there is none—and thus he whispereth in their ears, until he grasps them with his awful chains, from whence there is no deliverance.

Yea, they are grasped with death, and hell; and death, and hell, and the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must stand before the throne of God, and be judged according to their works, from whence they must go into the place prepared for them, even a lake of fire and brimstone, which is endless torment.

Therefore, wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion!

Wo be unto him that crieth: All is well!

Yea, wo be unto him that hearkeneth unto the precepts of men, and denieth the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, wo be unto him that saith: We have received, and we need no more!



- 28     Ā kāti, auē te mate mō te hunga e wiri ana, ā, e riri ana nā te pono o te Atua! Nana rā, ka hari pū te whiwhinga o te tangata kua waihanga ki runga i te toka; ā, ka wiri te tangata kua waihanga ki runga i tētahi tūāpapa onepū kei hinga ia.
- 29     Auē te mate mō te tangata ka kī ake: Kua whiwhi mātou i te kupu a te Atua, ā, kāore ō mātou hiahia mō te kupu a te Atua, nā te mea he nui kei a mātou!
- 30     Nana rā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: Māku e hoatu ki ngā tamariki a te tangata he akoranga i runga i te akoranga, he tohutohu i runga i te tohutohu, he iti i konei, he iti i konā; ā, ka manaakitia te hunga e whakarongo nei ki aku tohutohu, me te tuku taringa ki aku whakatakotoranga whakaaro, nā te mea ka ako rātou i te mōhioranga; nā, māku e hoatu anō ki te tangata e whiwhi; ā, mai i te hunga e kī ake ana, He nui kei a mātou, ka murua pū anō mai i a rātou ērā mea kei a rātou.
- 31     Ka kangaia te tangata e whakawhirinaki ana ki te tangata, e mea ana rānei i te kikokiko hei ringaringa mōna, e whakarongo ana rānei ki ngā tohutohu a te tangata, hāunga ā rātou tohutohu e tohua ai e te mana o te Wairua Tapu.
- 32     Auē te mate mō ngā Tauiwī, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano! Nā te mea ahakoa taku whakaroatanga atu i taku ringa ki a rātou mai i tētahi rā ki tētahi rā, ka whakaparahako rātou i ahau; hei aha koa, ka ngākau aroha au ki a rātou, e ai tā te Ariki te Atua, ki te rīpenetā rātou me te haere mai ki ahau; nā, kua whakaroahia taku ringa i te rā katoa, e ai tā te Ariki te Atua o ngā Mano.

And in fine, wo unto all those who tremble, and are angry because of the truth of God! For behold, he that is built upon the rock receiveth it with gladness; and he that is built upon a sandy foundation trembleth lest he shall fall.

Wo be unto him that shall say: We have received the word of God, and we need no more of the word of God, for we have enough!

For behold, thus saith the Lord God: I will give unto the children of men line upon line, precept upon precept, here a little and there a little; and blessed are those who hearken unto my precepts, and lend an ear unto my counsel, for they shall learn wisdom; for unto him that receiveth I will give more; and from them that shall say, We have enough, from them shall be taken away even that which they have.

Cursed is he that putteth his trust in man, or maketh flesh his arm, or shall hearken unto the precepts of men, save their precepts shall be given by the power of the Holy Ghost.

Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me; nevertheless, I will be merciful unto them, saith the Lord God, if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

## 2 Nīwhai 29

- 1 Engari nana, ka tokomaha rawa—hei taua rā ina haere tonu taku mahi i ngā mahi nui whakamīharo i waenganui i a rātou, kia mahara ai au i aku whakahaunga kua meatia nei e au ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, kia tau anō ai taku ringa kia whakahokia tuaruatia ai tōku iwi; ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira;
- 2 Waihoki, kia mahara au i ngā whakaari kua whakaaria nei e au ki a koe, e Nīwhai, ā, ki tō matua anō hoki, kia mahara au i ō uri; ā, kia puta atu ngā kupu a ō uri i tōku māngai ki ō uri; ā, ka whakahihī atu aku kupu ki ngā tōpito o te ao, hei kara ki taku iwi, ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira;
- 3 Ā, nā te mea ka whakahihī atu aku kupu—ka kī ake ngā Tauīwi tokomaha: He Paipera! He Paipera! Kei a mātou he Paipera, ā, kāore e taea he Paipera atu anō.
- 4 Engari, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki te Atua: E te hunga kūare; ka whai Paipera rātou; ā, ka puta atu i ngā Hūrai, ko tōku iwi kawenata onamata. Ā, ka pēhea tā rātou whakawhetai i ngā Hūrai mō te Paipera kua whiwhi nei i a rātou? Āe rā, he aha tā ngā Tauīwi tikanga? E mahara ana rātou i ngā ngaukinotanga, me ngā mahinga, me ngā mamaetanga o ngā Hūrai, me tō rātou ū pono ki ahau, i te whakaputanga mai i te whakaoranga ki ngā Tauīwi?
- 5 E koutou ngā Tauīwi, kua mahara koutou i ngā Hūrai, ko taku iwi kawenata onamata? Kāo; engari nāu rātou i kanga, nāu anō rātou i mauāhara, ā, kāore i whai kia whakahokia mai ai rātou. Engari nana, māku katoa ēnei e whakahoki atu ki runga i ō koutou ake upoko; nā te mea kāore ahau te Ariki kia wareware noa i taku iwi.
- 6 E te kūare, ka kī ake: He Paipera, kei a mātou tētahi Paipera, ā, kāore ō mātou hiahia anō ki tētahi Paipera. Kua whiwhi Paipera koutou hāunga e ngā Hūrai?

## 2 Nephi 29

But behold, there shall be many—at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men, that I may set my hand again the second time to recover my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And also, that I may remember the promises which I have made unto thee, Nephi, and also unto thy father, that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed; and my words shall hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, for a standard unto my people, which are of the house of Israel;

And because my words shall hiss forth—many of the Gentiles shall say: A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, and there cannot be any more Bible.

But thus saith the Lord God: O fools, they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people. And what thank they the Jews for the Bible which they receive from them? Yea, what do the Gentiles mean? Do they remember the travails, and the labors, and the pains of the Jews, and their diligence unto me, in bringing forth salvation unto the Gentiles?

O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people? Nay; but ye have cursed them, and have hated them, and have not sought to recover them. But behold, I will return all these things upon your own heads; for I the Lord have not forgotten my people.

Thou fool, that shall say: A Bible, we have got a Bible, and we need no more Bible. Have ye obtained a Bible save it were by the Jews?

7 Kāore koutou e mōhio ana he nui kē atu ngā iwi i te mea kotahi? Kāore koutou e mōhio ana nāku, te Ariki tō Atua, i hangaia ai ngā tāngata katoa, ā, e mahara ana anō au i te hunga kei ngā moutere o te moana; ā, e kīngi ana au i ngā rangi o runga me te whenua o raro; ā, e kawea mai ana e au taku kupu ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, āe rā, ki runga i ngā iwi pū anō o te ao?

8 He aha koutou e amuamu ai, nā te mea ka nui ake tā koutou whiwhi i taku kupu? Kāore koutou e mōhio ana he kaiwhakaatu te whakaaturanga o ngā iwi e rua ki a koutou ko au te Atua, nā, e mahara ana au i tētahi iwi pērā i tētahi atu? Nā reira, e rite ana ngā kupu e kōrero nei au ki tētahi iwi ki ngā kupu e kōrero nei au ki tētahi atu. Ā, ina haere ngātahi ngā iwi e rua ka haere ngātahi ngā whakaaturanga o ngā iwi e rua anō hoki.

9 Ā, e pēnei ana ahau kia whakaatu atu ki te tokomaha ko au tonu ahau inānahi, ināianei, ā, āke tonu atu; ā, e kōrero ana ahau i ngā kupu e ai ki tāku e āhuareka ai. Ā, nā te mea kua kōrero nei ahau i te kupu kotahi me kua koutou e whakapono kāore e taea e au te kōrero i tētahi atu; nā, kāore anō kia oti taku mahi; e kore rānei e pēnā kia tae rā anō ki te mutunga o te tangata, e kore rānei i taua wā āke tonu atu.

10 Nā reira, nā te mea kei a koutou tētahi Paipera me kore koutou e whakapono e mau nei i a ia aku kupu katoa; me kore rānei koutou e whakapono kīhai i meatia e au kia tuhia ake ai he kupu anō.

11 Nā, e whakahau ana au i ngā tāngata katoa, i te rāwhiti ngātahi me te uru, i te raki anō, i te tonga anō, ā, i ngā moutere o te moana, kia tuhia ai ngā kupu e whakahau ai e ahau ki a rātou; nā, ka whakawā au i te ao mai i ngā pukapuka e tuhia ai, ko ia tangata, ia tangata e ai ki āna mahinga, e ai ki ērā kua tuhituhia nei.

12 Nana rā, māku e kōrero ki ngā Hūrai, ā, ka tuhia ia e rātou; ā, ka kōrero anō ahau ki ngā Nīwhai, ā, ka tuhia ia e rātou; ā, ka kōrero anō au ki ērā atu iwi nō te whare o Ihairaira, kua ārahina atu nei e au, ā, ka tuhia ia e rātou; ā, ka kōrero atu au ki ngā iwi katoa o te ao, ā, ka tuhia ia e rātou.

Know ye not that there are more nations than one? Know ye not that I, the Lord your God, have created all men, and that I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea; and that I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath; and I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

Wherefore murmur ye, because that ye shall receive more of my word? Know ye not that the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God, that I remember one nation like unto another? Wherefore, I speak the same words unto one nation like unto another. And when the two nations shall run together the testimony of the two nations shall run together also.

And I do this that I may prove unto many that I am the same yesterday, today, and forever; and that I speak forth my words according to mine own pleasure. And because that I have spoken one word ye need not suppose that I cannot speak another; for my work is not yet finished; neither shall it be until the end of man, neither from that time henceforth and forever.

Wherefore, because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words; neither need ye suppose that I have not caused more to be written.

For I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them; for out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works, according to that which is written.

For behold, I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it; and I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

13     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka mau i ngā Hūrai ngā kupu a ngā Nīwhai, ā, ka mau i ngā Nīwhai ngā kupu a ngā Hūrai; ā, ka mau i ngā Nīwhai me ngā Hūrai ngā kupu a ngā iwi ngaro o Iharaira; ā, ka mau i ngā iwi ngaro o Iharaira ngā kupu a ngā Nīwhai me ngā Hūrai.

14     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ko taku iwi, ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira, ka huihuia ki tō rātou kāinga ki ngā whenua o ō rātou tuku ihotanga; ā, ka huihuia anōtia taku kupu kia kotahi ai. Ā, māku e whakaatu atu ki te hunga e whawhai ana ki taku kupu, ki taku iwi anō hoki, ko rātou nei nō te whare o Iharaira, ko te Atua ahau, ā, nāku i kawenata ki a Aperahama ka mahara au i ōna uri āke tonu atu.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews shall have the words of the Nephites, and the Nephites shall have the words of the Jews; and the Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel; and the lost tribes of Israel shall have the words of the Nephites and the Jews.

And it shall come to pass that my people, which are of the house of Israel, shall be gathered home unto the lands of their possessions; and my word also shall be gathered in one. And I will show unto them that fight against my word and against my people, who are of the house of Israel, that I am God, and that I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

## 2 Nīwhai 30

- 1 Ā, nana ianei, e aku teina aroha, e hiahia ana ahau ki te kōrero ki a koutou; nā tōku, tō Nīwhai, hiahia kia kore ai koutou e whakapono ka nui ake tō koutou tika i tō ngā Tauīwi. Nana rā, ki te kore koutou e pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua ka rite tahi tā koutou matenga; ā, me kore koutou e whakapono nā ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei, nā, ka whakangaromia katoatia ngā Tauīwi.
- 2 Nana rā, ko tāku ki a koutou, nā, ko ngā Tauīwi katoa e rīpenetā ana, he iwi kawenata rātou nō te Ariki; ā, ko ngā Hūrai katoa e kore nei e rīpenetā, ka makaia atu; nā te mea kāore te Ariki e kawenata ki tētahi hāunga ia te hunga e rīpenetā ai me te whakapono i tana Tama, ko ia te Mea Tapu o Ihairaira.
- 3 Ā ināianeī, ka āhua poropiti atu anō au e pā ana ki ngā Hūrai me ngā Tauīwi. Nā, nō muri i te whakaputanga o te pukapuka kua kōrerotia nei e au, ā, ka tuhia ki ngā Tauīwi, ā, ka hīria ake anō ki te Ariki, he tokomaha ngā mea e whakapono ai ki ngā kupu kua tuhia nei; ā, mā rātou ēnā e kawē atu ki ngā mōrehu o ō tātou uri.
- 4 Kātahi ngā mōrehu o ō tātou uri e mōhio e pā ana ki a tātou, i pēhea tā tātou putanga mai i Hiruharama, ā, he uri rātou nō ngā Hūrai.
- 5 Ā, ka whakapuakina te rongopai a Ihu Karaiti ki waenganui i a rātou; nā reira, ka whakamōhioitia anōtia rātou ki te mātauranga ki ō rātou mātua tīpuna, ā, ki te mātauranga anō o Ihu Karaiti, i mau ai i ō rātou mātua tīpuna.
- 6 Kātahi rātou ka hari; nā te mea ka mōhio rātou he manaakitanga ia nā te ringa o te Atua; ā, ka marere iho ngā unahi pōuriuri i ō rātou karu; ā, kāore he maha ngā whakatupuranga e pahure ai i a rātou, engari ka meinga rātou hei iwi urutapu, hei iwi āhuareka anō.
- 7 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata ngā Hūrai kua whakamararatia atu nei ki te whakapono i te Karaiti; ā, ka tīmata tā rātou huihui ki runga i te mata o te whenua; ā, ko te hunga katoa e whakapono ai i te Karaiti ka meinga he āhuareka anō hoki.

## 2 Nephi 30

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you; for I, Nephi, would not suffer that ye should suppose that ye are more righteous than the Gentiles shall be. For behold, except ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall all likewise perish; and because of the words which have been spoken ye need not suppose that the Gentiles are utterly destroyed.

For behold, I say unto you that as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord; and as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off; for the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

And now, I would prophesy somewhat more concerning the Jews and the Gentiles. For after the book of which I have spoken shall come forth, and be written unto the Gentiles, and sealed up again unto the Lord, there shall be many which shall believe the words which are written; and they shall carry them forth unto the remnant of our seed.

And then shall the remnant of our seed know concerning us, how that we came out from Jerusalem, and that they are descendants of the Jews.

And the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them; wherefore, they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ, which was had among their fathers.

And then shall they rejoice; for they shall know that it is a blessing unto them from the hand of God; and their scales of darkness shall begin to fall from their eyes; and many generations shall not pass away among them, save they shall be a pure and a delightful people.

And it shall come to pass that the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in Christ; and they shall begin to gather in upon the face of the land; and as many as shall believe in Christ shall also become a delightful people.

- 8     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata te Ariki te Atua i ana mahi ki waenganui i ngā iwi katoa, i ngā hapū, i ngā reo, me ngā huihuinga tāngata, kia whakatakotoria ai he putanga mō te whakahokinga o tana iwi i runga i te whenua.
- 9     Ā, mā runga i te tika te Ariki te Atua e whakawā ai i te hunga rawakore, me te tātā i runga i te mana taurite hei painga mō te hunga māhaki o te whenua. Ā, māna te ao e patu ki te tokotoko o tōna māngai; ā, mā te hā o ōna ngutu ia e whakamate i te hunga whakarihariha.
- 10    Nā, e hohoro mai ana te wā e meatia ai e te Ariki te Atua he wehenga nui i waenganui i te iwi, ā, ko te hunga whakarihariha māna e whakangaro; ā, māna tana iwi e tohu, āe rā, ahakoa mēnā rā ia e tika ana me whakangaro te hunga whakarihariha e ia ki te ahi.
- 11    Ā, ko te tika hei whītiki mō ōna hope, ko te whakapono hei whītiki mō ōna whatumanawa.
- 12    Kātahi ka noho tahi te wūruhi rāua ko te reme; ā, ka takoto tahi te reparo rāua ko te kūao koti, me te kūao kau, me te kūao raiona, me te mea mōmona, hei kāhui kotahi; ā, mā tētahi tamaiti nohinohi rātou e ārahi.
- 13    Ā, ka kai tahi te kau me te pea; ka takoto tahi iho ā rāua kūao; ā, ka kai kakau wīti te raiona e rite ana ki te ōkiha.
- 14    Ā, ka tākaro te tamaiti ngote ū i runga i te rua o te nākahi iti, ā, ka pā atu te ringa o te tamaiti kua whakamutua te kai ū i runga i te nohonga o te neke paitini.
- 15    Kua kore rātou e whakamamae, e whakangaro rānei i tōku maunga tapu katoa; nā, ka kiki te ao i te mātauranga o te Ariki e pērā ana ki te wai e uhia ana te moana.
- 16    Nā reira, ka whakamōhiotia ngā mea o ngā iwi katoa; āe rā, ka whakamōhiotia ngā mea katoa ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 17    Kāore he mea muna engari ia ka huraina atu; kāore he mahinga pōuriuri engari ia ka whakakitea i roto i te māramatanga; ā, kāore he mea hīria ake i runga i te whenua engari ia ka wetekina atu.

And it shall come to pass that the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of his people upon the earth.

And with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth. And he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

For the time speedily cometh that the Lord God shall cause a great division among the people, and the wicked will he destroy; and he will spare his people, yea, even if it so be that he must destroy the wicked by fire.

And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

And then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice's den.

They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters cover the sea.

Wherefore, the things of all nations shall be made known; yea, all things shall be made known unto the children of men.

There is nothing which is secret save it shall be revealed; there is no work of darkness save it shall be made manifest in the light; and there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be loosed.

18 Nā reira, ko ngā mea katoa kua huraina nei ki ngā tamariki a te tangata e huraina ake ai hei taua rā; ā, kāore tonu ō Hātana kaha i runga i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata, mō tētahi wā roa. Ā ināianei, e aku teina aroha, ka whakamutu au i aku kōrero.

Wherefore, all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed; and Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more, for a long time. And now, my beloved brethren, I make an end of my sayings.

## 2 Nīwhai 31

- 1 Ā ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, e whakamutu nei i taku poropititanga ki a koutou, e aku teina aroha. Ā, kāore e taea e au te tuhi hāunga he mea ruarua, koia he mea e mōhio nei au ka pahawa pū ake anō; kāore rānei e taea e au te tuhi atu i ngā kupu ruarua a taku teina a Hākopa.
- 2 Nā reira, kāti noa māku ngā mea kua oti nei i a au te tuhi, hāunga rā ia ngā kupu ruarua nei me kōrero nei e au e pā ana ki te whakaakoranga a te Karaiti; nā reira, ka mārāma noa taku kōrero ki a koutou, e ai ki te māramatanga o taku poropititanga.
- 3 Nā te mea e kaingākau ana tōku wairua i te māramatanga; nā, nō tēnei āhuetanga e mahi ai te Ariki te Atua i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata. Nā, ka tuku māramatanga te Ariki te Atua ki te hinengaro; nā, ka kōrero ia ki te tangata e ai ki tō rātou reo, tae atu ana ki tō rātou māramatanga.
- 4 Nā reira, e hiahia ana au kia mahara koutou kua kōrero au e pā ana ki taua poropiti kua whakaatu mai nei te Ariki ki ahau, nā, māna te Reme a te Atua e rumaki, ka murua atu nei i ngā hara o te ao.
- 5 Ā ināianeī, mehemea te Reme a te Atua, e tapu ana ia, e whai take ana tana rumaki ki te wai, kia whakaea ai i ngā tika katoa, āna, e pēhea ake ana te nui o tō tātou whai take, e tapu kore ana, kia rumakina ai, āe rā, ki te wai pū anō!
- 6 Ā ināianeī, ka ui atu au ki a koutou, e aku teina aroha, nā runga i te aha te Reme a te Atua i whakaea ai i ngā tika katoa i tana rumakitanga ki te wai?
- 7 Kāore koutou e mōhio ana i tapu ia? Engari ahakoa tōna tapu, ka whakaatu ia ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, nā, ka whakaiti ia i a ia anō i te aroaro o te Matua e ai ki tō te kikokiko, ā, ka whakaatuhia ki te Matua ka ngohengohe ia ki a ia i runga i te pupuri i ana whakahaunga.
- 8 Nā reira, i muri iho i tana rumakitanga ki te wai ka tau iho te Wairua Tapu ki runga i a ia i te āhua o tētahi kūkupa.
- 9 Waihoki rā, e whakaatu ana ki ngā tamariki a te tangata i te tōtika o te ara, me te whāiti o te kēti, mā konā rātou e kuhu ai, nāna nei te tauira i whakatauirahia ai i mua i a rātou.

## 2 Nephi 31

And now I, Nephi, make an end of my prophesying unto you, my beloved brethren. And I cannot write but a few things, which I know must surely come to pass; neither can I write but a few of the words of my brother Jacob.

Wherefore, the things which I have written sufficient me, save it be a few words which I must speak concerning the doctrine of Christ; wherefore, I shall speak unto you plainly, according to the plainness of my prophesying.

For my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men. For the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; for he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

Wherefore, I would that ye should remember that I have spoken unto you concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

And now, if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

And now, I would ask of you, my beloved brethren, wherein the Lamb of God did fulfil all righteousness in being baptized by water?

Know ye not that he was holy? But notwithstanding he being holy, he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

Wherefore, after he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

And again, it showeth unto the children of men the straitness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.



- 10     Ā, i kī ake ia ki ngā tamariki a te tangata: Whai mai i ahau. Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, e taea ana rānei e tātou te whai atu i a Ihu hāunga tātou e hiahia ana ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Matua?
- 11     Ā, i kī ake te Matua: E rīpenetā koutou, e rīpenetā koutou, me te rumaki i runga i te ingoa o taku Tama Aroha.
- 12     Waihoki, i pā mai te reo o te Tama ki ahau, e mea ana: Ko te tangata e rumakina ai i runga i tōku ingoa, ki a ia e tuku atu ai te Matua i te Wairua Tapu, pēnei i ahau; nā reira, whai mai i ahau, ā, mahia ngā mea kua kite nei koutou i ahau e mahi ana.
- 13     Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, e mōhio ana au ki te whai atu koutou i te Tama, i runga i te tino ngākau ū, tē arero rua, ā, tē tīnīhanga i te aroaro o te Atua, engari ki te ngākau pono, e rīpenetā ana i ō koutou hara, e whakaatuhia atu ana ki te Matua e hiahia ana koutou kia mau ai ki runga i a koutou te ingoa o te Karaiti, mā te rumakitanga—āe rā, mā te whai atu i tō koutou Ariki, ā, i tō koutou Atua ki roto i te wai, e ai ki tana kupu, nana, kātahi koutou ka whiwhi i te Wairua Tapu; āe rā, kātahi ka tae mai te rumakitanga o te ahi me te Wairua Tapu; kātahi ka taea e koutou te kōrero ki te arero anahera, me te hāmama i ngā whakamoemiti ki te Mea Tapu o Iharaira.
- 14     Engari nana, e aku teina aroha, i pēnei te pātanga mai o te reo o te Tama ki ahau, e mea ana: Hei muri i tā koutou rīpenetātanga i ō koutou hara, me te whakaatu atu ki te Matua e hiahia ana koutou ki te pupuri i aku whakahaunga, mā te rumakitanga ki te wai, me te whiwhi i te rumakitanga o te ahi me te Wairua Tapu, me te āhei ki te kōrero ki tētahi arero hou, āe rā, ki te arero pū anō o ngā anahera, ka mutu, kātahi ka whakaparahakongia au, kua pai kē ake mō koutou mehemea kīhai koutou i mōhio ki ahau.
- 15     Ā, i rongo au i tētahi reo mai i te Matua, e mea ana: Āe rā, e tika ana, ā, e pono ana ngā kupu a taku Mea Aroha. Ko ia e ū ana ki te mutunga, ko ia anō e whakaorangia ai.
- 16     Ā ināianei, e aku teina aroha, nā konei au e mōhio ana ki te kore te tangata e ū ki te mutunga, i te whaitanga atu i te tauira a te Tama a te Atua e ora ana, tē taea ia te whakarauora.

And he said unto the children of men: Follow thou me. Wherefore, my beloved brethren, can we follow Jesus save we shall be willing to keep the commandments of the Father?

And the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

And also, the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me; wherefore, follow me, and do the things which ye have seen me do.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I know that if ye shall follow the Son, with full purpose of heart, acting no hypocrisy and no deception before God, but with real intent, repenting of your sins, witnessing unto the Father that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ, by baptism—yea, by following your Lord and your Savior down into the water, according to his word, behold, then shall ye receive the Holy Ghost; yea, then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

But, behold, my beloved brethren, thus came the voice of the Son unto me, saying: After ye have repented of your sins, and witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water, and have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost, and can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels, and after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

And I heard a voice from the Father, saying: Yea, the words of my Beloved are true and faithful. He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

And now, my beloved brethren, I know by this that unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

17 Nā reira, mahia ngā mea kua kīa atu e au ki a koutou, nā, kua kite au ka mahia e tō koutou Ariki, ā, e tō koutou Kaihoko; nā te mea mō tēnei take kua whakaatuhia mai nei ēnā ki ahau, kia mōhio ai koutou i te kēti mā reira koutou kuhu ai. Nā te mea ko te kēti e kuhu ai koutou ko te rīpenetātanga me te rumakitanga ki te wai; kātahi ka puta mai tētahi murunga i ō koutou hara ki te ahi me te Wairua Tapu.

18 Kātahi koutou kei te ara tōtika whāiti e ārahina ana ki te orange tonutanga; āe rā, kua kuhu atu koutou mā te kēti; kua mahi koutou e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Matua rāua ko te Tama; ā, kua whiwhi koutou i te Wairua Tapu, e whakaatuhia ana te Matua rāua ko te Tama, tae atu ana ki te whakaeatanga i tana whakaari kua meatia nei e ia, nā, ka whiwhi koutou mehemea ka kuhu atu koutou mā te huarahi.

19 Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, hei muri i tā koutou kuhutanga ki roto i tēnei ara tōtika whāiti, ka ui atu au mehemea kua oti ngā mea katoa? Nana, ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo; kāore koutou i haere pēnei mai hāunga nā te kupu a te Karaiti me te whakapono kaha i a ia, e whakawhirinaki katoa ana ki runga i ngā mahi aroha ā te mea e kaha ana ki te whakaora.

20 Nā reira, me tāruke whakamua koutou i runga i te ngākau pūmau i roto i te Karaiti, e mau ana tētahi manako kānapanapa, me tētahi aroha ki te Atua me ngā tāngata katoa. Nā reira, mēnā ka tāruke whakamua, e hākari ana i runga i te kupu a te Karaiti, me te ū pono atu ki te mutunga, nana, ko te kupu tēnei a te Matua: Ka whiwhi koutou i te orange tonutanga.

21 Ā ināianeī, nana, e aku teina aroha, koinei te huarahi; ā, kāore he huarahi kē atu, he ingoa kē atu rānei kua tukuna i raro i te rangi mā reira taea ai te whakarauora i te tangata i roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua. Ā ināianeī, nana, ko te whakaakoranga tēnei a te Karaiti, me te whakaakoranga pono anake a te Matua, a te Tama, me te Wairua Tapu, koia he Atua kotahi, kāore ōna mutunga. Āmine.

Wherefore, do the things which I have told you I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do; for, for this cause have they been shown unto me, that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter. For the gate by which ye should enter is repentance and baptism by water; and then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost.

And then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal life; yea, ye have entered in by the gate; ye have done according to the commandments of the Father and the Son; and ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father and the Son, unto the fulfilling of the promise which he hath made, that if ye entered in by the way ye should receive.

And now, my beloved brethren, after ye have gotten into this strait and narrow path, I would ask if all is done? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of him who is mighty to save.

Wherefore, ye must press forward with a steadfastness in Christ, having a perfect brightness of hope, and a love of God and of all men. Wherefore, if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have eternal life.

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, this is the way; and there is none other way nor name given under heaven whereby man can be saved in the kingdom of God. And now, behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, which is one God, without end. Amen.

## 2 Nīwhai 32

- 1 Ā ināianeī, nana, e aku teina aroha, e whakapono ana au kei te āhua whakaaroaro koutou i roto i ō koutou ngākau e pā ana ki tērā e mahi ai ina kuhu atu koutou i runga i te huarahi. Engari, nana, he aha koutou e whakaaroaro ai i ēnei mea i roto i ō koutou ngākau?
- 2 Kāore rānei koutou e mahara ana ki tāku ki a koutou, nā, hei muri iho i tā koutou whiwhi i te Wairua Tapu ka taea e koutou te kōrero ki te arero anahera? Ā ināianeī, me pēhea e taea ai e koutou te kōrero ki te arero anahera hāunga ia mā te Wairua Tapu?
- 3 E kōrero ana ngā anahera mā te mana o te Wairua Tapu; nā reira, e kōrero ana rātou i ngā kupu a te Karaiti. Nā reira, i kī ake au ki a koutou, e hākari koutou i ngā kupu a te Karaiti; nana rā, ka whakamōhio atu ngā kupu a te Karaiti ki a koutou he aha ngā mahi me mahi e koutou.
- 4 Nā reira, anā, hei muri i taku kōrerotanga atu i ēnei kupu, mehemea kāore e taea ana ēnā te mārama e koutou, ka pēnāhia nā te mea kāore koutou e pātai ai, kāore rānei e pātōtō atu; nā reira, kāore koutou e kumea mai ki roto i te māramatanga, engari me mate i roto i te pōuritanga.
- 5 Nana rā, ka kī atu anō au ki a koutou mēnā ka kuhu atu koutou mā te huarahi, me te whiwhi i te Wairua Tapu, māna e whakaatu ki a koutou ngā mea katoa e mahi ai koutou.
- 6 Nana, koinei te whakaakoranga a te Karaiti, ā, kāore he whakaakoranga anō e tukuna ai kia mutu ai tana whakakitenga i a ia anō i roto i te kikokiko. Ā, ina whakakite i a ia anō ki a koutou i roto i te kikokiko, ko ngā mea e kī ake ai ia ki a koutou ka mahia rawatia e koutou.
- 7 Ā ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, tē taea he kōrero i tua atu; kua kati te Wairua Tapu i taku puakitanga, ā, kua waiho nei au kia tangi ai nā te whakapono kore, me te whakarihariha, me te kūaretanga, me te kakī mārōtanga o te tangata; nā te mea e kore rātou e rapu mātauranga, e mārama rānei i ngā mātauranga nui, ina tukuna atu ki a rātou i runga i te mārama, ko te mārama pū anō e taea ana e te kupu.

## 2 Nephi 32

And now, behold, my beloved brethren, I suppose that ye ponder somewhat in your hearts concerning that which ye should do after ye have entered in by the way. But, behold, why do ye ponder these things in your hearts?

Do ye not remember that I said unto you that after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the tongue of angels? And now, how could ye speak with the tongue of angels save it were by the Holy Ghost?

Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they speak the words of Christ. Wherefore, I said unto you, feast upon the words of Christ; for behold, the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

Wherefore, now after I have spoken these words, if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not, neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

For behold, again I say unto you that if ye will enter in by the way, and receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

Behold, this is the doctrine of Christ, and there will be no more doctrine given until after he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh. And when he shall manifest himself unto you in the flesh, the things which he shall say unto you shall ye observe to do.

And now I, Nephi, cannot say more; the Spirit stoppeth mine utterance, and I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

8      Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, kei te kite au e whakaaroaro tonutia ana e koutou i roto i ō koutou ngākau; ā, e pōuri ana au i te mea me kōrero atu anō au e pā ana ki tēnei mea. Nā te mea mēnā ka whakarongo koutou ki te Wairua e whakaakona ana te tangata ki te inoi, kua mōhio koutou me inoi koutou; nā te mea kāore te wairua kino e whakaako ana i te tangata ki te inoi, engari e whakaakona ana ia me kua e inoi.

9      Engari nana, ko tāku atu ki a koutou me inoi i ngā wā katoa, ā, kua e ngoikore; nā, kia kua koe e mahi i tētahi mahi ki te Ariki hāunga tuatahi ia ka inoi ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o te Karaiti, kia whakatapua e ia tāu meatanga mōu, nā, hei painga tō meatanga mō tō wairua.

And now, my beloved brethren, I perceive that ye ponder still in your hearts; and it grieveth me that I must speak concerning this thing. For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

But behold, I say unto you that ye must pray always, and not faint; that ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

## 2 Nīwhai 33

- 1 Ā ināianeī au, a Nīwhai, tē taea te tuhituhi i ngā mea katoa i whakaakona i waenganui i taku iwi; kāore hoki au e kaha ana ki te tuhi, pērā ana ki te kōrero; nā te mea ina kōrero te tangata e te mana o te Wairua Tapu ka kawea atu ia e te mana o te Wairua Tapu ki ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 2 Engari nana, he tokomaha e whakapakeke ana i ō rātou ngākau ki te Wairua Tapu, kia kore ai e whai wāhi ia i roto i a rātou; nā reira, ka makaia atu ngā mea maha kua tuhia nei, ā, ka kīa ēnā he mea kore noa iho.
- 3 Engari au, a Nīwhai, kua tuhia nei tāku i tuhi ai, ā, ka kīa ia e au he mea utu nui, ā, ki tōku iwi pū anō. Nā, e inoi tonu ana au mō rātou i te awatea, ā, ka whakamākū ōku karu i tōku urunga i te pō, nō rātou te take; ā, e karanga ake ana au ki tōku Atua i runga i te whakapono, ā, e mōhio ana au ka rongoi ia i taku karanga.
- 4 Ā, e mōhio ana au ka whakatapu te Ariki te Atua i aku inoi hei painga mō tōku iwi. Ā, ko ngā kupu kua tuhia e au i runga i te ngoikoretanga e meinga ai he mea kaha ki a rātou; nā te mea e whakapakepake ana i a rātou ki te mahi pai; e whakamōhiohia ana rātou ō rātou mātua; ā, e kōrero ana ia mō Ihu, me te whakapakepake i a rātou ki te whakapono ki a ia, me te ū ki te mutunga, koia ko te oranga tonutanga.
- 5 Ā, e kōrero pakeke ana mō te hara, e ai ki te māramatanga o te pono; nā reira, kua kore he tangata e riri ki ngā kupu kua tuhia nei e au hāunga ia nā te wairua o te rēwera.
- 6 E korōria ana au i te māramatanga; e korōria ana au i te pono, e korōria ana au i tōku Ihu, nā te mea kua hokona e ia tōku wairua mai i te ao rēwera.
- 7 He aroha noa tōku mō taku iwi, me te whakapono nui i te Karaiti, nā, ka tūtaki au i ngā wairua tokomaha e koha kore ana ki tōna nohonga-whakawā.
- 8 He aroha noa tōku mō te Hūrai—ka kī Hūrai au, nā te mea e kōrero ana au mō rātou nō te wāhi i puta mai ai au.

## 2 Nephi 33

And now I, Nephi, cannot write all the things which were taught among my people; neither am I mighty in writing, like unto speaking; for when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

But behold, there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them; wherefore, they cast many things away which are written and esteem them as things of naught.

But I, Nephi, have written what I have written, and I esteem it as of great worth, and especially unto my people. For I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them; and I cry unto my God in faith, and I know that he will hear my cry.

And I know that the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people. And the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them; for it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers; and it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, and to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

And it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth; wherefore, no man will be angry at the words which I have written save he shall be of the spirit of the devil.

I glory in plainness; I glory in truth; I glory in my Jesus, for he hath redeemed my soul from hell.

I have charity for my people, and great faith in Christ that I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

I have charity for the Jew—I say Jew, because I mean them from whence I came.

9 He aroha noa anō hoki tōku mō ngā Tauīwi.  
Engari nana, kua kore noa ēnei e taea e au te manako  
ki te kore rātou e houhia ai te rongo ki te Karaiti, me  
te kuhu atu i te kēti whāiti, me te hīkoi i te ara tōtika  
e ārahina ana ki te oranga, me te ū tonu i taua ara tae  
atu ana ki te mutunga o te rā poropeihana.

10 Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, me te Hūrai anō  
hoki, me koutou ngā tōpito katoa o te ao,  
whakarongo mai ki ēnei kupu me te whakapono i te  
Karaiti; ā, ki te kore koutou e whakapono i ēnei  
kupu, e whakapono i te Karaiti. Ā, ki te whakapono  
koutou i te Karaiti ka whakapono koutou i ēnei  
kupu, nā te mea ko ngā kupu ēnei a te Karaiti, ā, kua  
homai ēnā ki ahau e ia; ā, e whakaako ana ēnā ki ngā  
tāngata katoa kia mahi pai ai.

11 Ā, mehemea ehara ēnā i te kupu a te Karaiti,  
whakawākia e koe—nā, ka whakaatu te Karaiti ki a  
koe, mā te mana me te korōria nui, nā, koinā āna  
kupu, hei te rā whakamutunga; ā, ka tū kanohi ki te  
kanohi tātou i te aroaro o tana pae; ā, ka mōhio  
koutou kua whakahaua ahau e ia ki te tuhituhi i ēnei  
mea, ahakoa ōku ngoikoretanga.

12 Ā, e inoi ana au ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o te  
Karaiti kia tokomaha o tātou, ki te kore te katoa, e  
whakaorangia ai i tōna kīngitanga hei taua rā nui  
whakamutunga.

13 Ā ināianeī, e aku teina aroha, ko te hunga katoa nō  
te whare o Iharaira, me koutou ngā tōpito katoa o te  
ao, e kōrero ana au ki a koutou anō nei nō tētahi e  
karanga ana i te puehu: Hei konei rā kia tae rā anō  
mai taua rā nui.

14 Ā, ko koutou e kore nei e kai i te painga o te Atua,  
me te whakaaro nui ki ngā kupu a ngā Hūrai, me āku  
kupu anō hoki, me ngā kupu e puta atu ai i te māngai  
o te Reme a te Atua, nana, he poroporoaki mau tonu  
tāku ki a koutou, nā te mea ka whakahēngia koutou  
e ēnei kupu hei te rā whakamutunga.

15 Nā te mea ko tāku e hīri nei i runga i te whenua,  
ka mauria mai hei whakahē i a koutou hei te pae  
whakawā; nā te mea ko te whakahau tēnei nā te  
Ariki ki ahau, ā, me whakarongo au. Āmine.

I also have charity for the Gentiles. But behold, for  
none of these can I hope except they shall be recon-  
ciled unto Christ, and enter into the narrow gate,  
and walk in the strait path which leads to life, and  
continue in the path until the end of the day of pro-  
bation.

And now, my beloved brethren, and also Jew, and  
all ye ends of the earth, hearken unto these words  
and believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these  
words believe in Christ. And if ye shall believe in  
Christ ye will believe in these words, for they are the  
words of Christ, and he hath given them unto me;  
and they teach all men that they should do good.

And if they are not the words of Christ, judge ye—  
for Christ will show unto you, with power and great  
glory, that they are his words, at the last day; and you  
and I shall stand face to face before his bar; and ye  
shall know that I have been commanded of him to  
write these things, notwithstanding my weakness.

And I pray the Father in the name of Christ that  
many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at  
that great and last day.

And now, my beloved brethren, all those who are  
of the house of Israel, and all ye ends of the earth, I  
speak unto you as the voice of one crying from the  
dust: Farewell until that great day shall come.

And you that will not partake of the goodness of  
God, and respect the words of the Jews, and also my  
words, and the words which shall proceed forth out  
of the mouth of the Lamb of God, behold, I bid you  
an everlasting farewell, for these words shall con-  
demn you at the last day.

For what I seal on earth, shall be brought against  
you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord com-  
manded me, and I must obey. Amen.

# Ko te Pukapuka a Hākopa te Teina a Nīwhai

*Ko ngā kupu o tana poropititanga ki ana teina. Ka whakapōauau ia i tētahi tangata i whai nei ki te whakangaro i te whakaakoranga a te Karaiti. He kupu ruarua e pā ana ki te hītori o te iwi o Nīwhai.*

## Hākopa 1

- 1 Nana rā, i pahawa ake te pahuretanga atu i ngā tau e rima tekau mā rima mai i te wā i wehe atu ai a Rīhai i Hiruharama; nā reira, i homai e Nīwhai ki ahau, a Hākopa, tētahi whakahaunga e pā ana ki ngā papa iti, kua whaowhaoa ēnei mea i runga rā.
- 2 Ā, i homai e ia ki ahau, a Hākopa, tētahi whakahaunga kia tuhi ai au i ētahi mea ruarua i runga i ngā papa iti e whakaarohia ana e au he mea tino utu nui; kia kua au e pā atu, hāunga he mea pakupaku noa, e pā ana ki te hītori o tēnei iwi kua huaina nei ko te iwi o Nīwhai.
- 3 Nā te mea i kī ai ia me whaowhao te hītori o tana iwi ki runga i ērā atu o ana papa, ā, kia tiaki ai au i ēnei papa me te tuku iho i ēnā ki ōna uri, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga.
- 4 Ā, mehemea he kauhautanga e tapu ana, he whakakitenga rānei e nui ana, he poropititanga rānei, kia whaowhaoa ngā upoko o ēnā e au ki runga i ēnei papa, me te whakapā atu i ēnā e ai ki tāku e taea ai, hei painga mō te Karaiti, ā, hei painga mō tō mātou iwi.
- 5 Nā, nā te whakapono me te mānukanuka nui, i tino whakakitea mai ki a mātou e pā ana ki tō mātou iwi, he aha ngā mea e pā ai ki a rātou.
- 6 Ā, i nui anō ō mātou whakakitenga, me te wairua o te poropititanga nui; nā reira, i mātau mātou ki a te Karaiti me tōna kīngitanga, e haere mai nei.
- 7 Nā reira i kaha tā mātou mahi i waenganui i tō mātou iwi, kia whakapakepake ai mātou i a rātou kia whakatata mai ki te Karaiti, me te tango atu i te painga o te Atua, kia kuhu atu ai rātou ki roto i tōna okiokinga, kei noho kau noa ia e oati ai i runga i tōna riri kia kua rātou e kuhu ai ki roto, pēnā i te whakapātaritanga i roto i ngā rā whakawai i ngā tamariki a Iharaira e noho ana i te koraha.

# The Book of Jacob the Brother of Nephi

*The words of his preaching unto his brethren. He foundeth a man who seeketh to overthrow the doctrine of Christ. A few words concerning the history of the people of Nephi.*

## Jacob 1

For behold, it came to pass that fifty and five years had passed away from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; wherefore, Nephi gave me, Jacob, a commandment concerning the small plates, upon which these things are engraven.

And he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious; that I should not touch, save it were lightly, concerning the history of this people which are called the people of Nephi.

For he said that the history of his people should be engraven upon his other plates, and that I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

And if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates, and touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ's sake, and for the sake of our people.

For because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

And we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; wherefore, we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

Wherefore we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in, as in the provocation in the days of temptation while the children of Israel were in the wilderness.

8 Nā reira, ko tā māua inoi ki te Atua kia whakapakepake māua i ngā tāngata katoa kia kauhā e haututū ki te Atua, kia whakapātarihia ai ia kia riri ai, engari kia whakapono mai ai ngā tāngata katoa i te Karaiti, ā, kia tirohia tōna matenga, ā, kia mamae i tōna rīpeka me te waha i te whakamā o te ao; nā reira, nāku, nā Hākopa, i tikina atu ai i runga i ahau kia whakatutukihia ai te whakahau a tōku tuakana a Nīwhai.

9 Ināianeī ā, ka koroheke haere a Nīwhai, ā, ka kite ia ākuanei mate ai ia; nā reira, i whakawāhia he tangata hei kīngi mō runga i tōna iwi i tēnei wā, e ai ki ngā whakahaeretanga a ngā kīngi.

10 Kua arohaina rawatia a Nīwhai e te iwi, kua tū ia hei kaitiaki nui mō rātou, kua hāpaingia e ia te hoari o Rāpana hei tiaki i a rātou, ā, kua mahia e ia hei painga mō rātou i ōna rā katoa—

11 Nā reira, i te hiahia te iwi kia mau tonu i a rātou tōna ingoa i runga i te whakamaumaharatanga. Ā, ka whakahuatia te tangata e whakahaere ai i tōna tūranga e te iwi, ko Nīwhai tuarua, ko Nīwhai tuatoru, ā, haere ake nei, e ai ki ngā whakahaeretanga a ngā kīngi; ā, i pēneitia tā te iwi karanga ki a rātou, ahakoa he aha kē atu ō rātou ingoa.

12 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mate a Nīwhai.

13 Ināianeī, ko te hunga ehara nei i ngā Rāmana he Nīwhai; hei aha koa, kua huaina rātou ko ngā Nīwhai, ko ngā Hākopa, ko ngā Hōhepa, ko ngā Hōrama, ko ngā Rāmana, ko ngā Remuere, me ngā Ihimaera.

14 Engari māku, mā Hākopa, e kore nei e karanga i a rātou ki ēnei ingoa ā muri ake nei, engari ka karangatia rātou e au ko ngā Rāmana, nā, ko te hunga e whai ana ki te whakangaro i te iwi o Nīwhai, ā, ka karangatia e au te hunga e pai ana ki a Nīwhai ko ngā Nīwhai, ko te iwi rānei o Nīwhai, e ai ki ngā whakahaeretanga a ngā kīngi.

15 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko te iwi o Nīwhai, i raro iho i te whakahaere o te kīngi tuarua, i tīmata te pakeke haeretanga i roto i ō rātou ngākau, me te āhua torotoro atu rātou ki ngā mahinga whakarihariha, e pērā ana ki a Rāwiri onamata e hiahia ana ki ngā hoa wahine me ngā hoa wahine tūtūā tokomaha, me Horomona anō hoki, tana tama.

Wherefore, we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God, to provoke him to anger, but that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world; wherefore, I, Jacob, take it upon me to fulfil the commandment of my brother Nephi.

Now Nephi began to be old, and he saw that he must soon die; wherefore, he anointed a man to be a king and a ruler over his people now, according to the reigns of the kings.

The people having loved Nephi exceedingly, he having been a great protector for them, having wielded the sword of Laban in their defence, and having labored in all his days for their welfare—

Wherefore, the people were desirous to retain in remembrance his name. And whoso should reign in his stead were called by the people, second Nephi, third Nephi, and so forth, according to the reigns of the kings; and thus they were called by the people, let them be of whatever name they would.

And it came to pass that Nephi died.

Now the people which were not Lamanites were Nephites; nevertheless, they were called Nephites, Jacobites, Josephites, Zoramites, Lamanites, Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites.

But I, Jacob, shall not hereafter distinguish them by these names, but I shall call them Lamanites that seek to destroy the people of Nephi, and those who are friendly to Nephi I shall call Nephites, or the people of Nephi, according to the reigns of the kings.

And now it came to pass that the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.



- 16     Āe rā, i tīmata anō hoki rātou ki te rapurapu i ngā  
kōura me ngā hiriwā maha, ā, ka āhua tīmata tā  
rātou nekenga ake i runga i te whakapehapa.
- 17     Nā reira nāku, nā Hākopa, i hoatu ki a rātou ēnei  
kupu i a au e whakaako ana i a rātou i te temepara, i  
whiwhi tuatahi au i taku mahi mai i te Ariki.
- 18     Nā te mea au, a Hākopa, māua ko taku teina a  
Hōhepa i whakatapu ai i ngā tohunga me ngā kaiako  
mō tēnei iwi, he mea nā te ringa o Nīwhai.
- 19     Ā, i whakanuia mārīka e māua tō māua tūranga  
tapu ki te Ariki, e pīkauria ana e māua te haepapa, e  
utaina ana ki runga i ō māua upoko ake ngā hara o te  
iwi mehemea kihai māua i ū ki te whakaako i a  
rātou; nā reira, mā te mahi i runga i ō māua kaha e  
kore ō rātou toto e tau ai ki runga i ō māua kākahu; ā  
ki te kore ka tau ō rātou toto ki runga i ō māua  
kākahu, ā, kua kore māua e kitea koha koretia hei te  
rā whakamutunga.

Yea, and they also began to search much gold and  
silver, and began to be lifted up somewhat in pride.

Wherefore I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as  
I taught them in the temple, having first obtained  
mine errand from the Lord.

For I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been con-  
secrated priests and teachers of this people, by the  
hand of Nephi.

And we did magnify our office unto the Lord, tak-  
ing upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of  
the people upon our own heads if we did not teach  
them the word of God with all diligence; wherefore,  
by laboring with our might their blood might not  
come upon our garments; otherwise their blood  
would come upon our garments, and we would not  
be found spotless at the last day.

## Hākopa 2

- 1 Ko ngā kupu nā Hākopa, te teina a Nīwhai, i kōrero atu ai ki te iwi o Nīwhai, whai muri iho i te matenga o Nīwhai:
- 2 Ināianei, e aku teina aroha, ko ahau, ko Hākopa, e ai ki te haepapa kei runga i ahau hei mahi māku ki te Atua, kia whakanuia ai tōku tūranga i runga i te whakaaro nui, ā, kia wātea ai ōku kākahu i ō koutou hara, ka kuhu ake au ki roto i te temepara i tēnei rā ki te whakapuaki atu i te kupu a te Atua ki a koutou.
- 3 Ā, e mōhio ana koutou anō kua ū ahau tae noa mai ki tēnei wā i te tūranga o tōku karangatanga; engari, i tēnei rā tonu, kei te pēhia iho au e te hiahia nui rawa me te mānukanuka mō te painga o ō koutou wairua, he mea nui ake i ō ngā wā o mua, tae noa mai ki tēnei wā.
- 4 Nana rā, hei a mohoā noa nei, kua ngohengohe koutou ki te kupu a te Ariki, kua hoatu nei e au ki a koutou.
- 5 Engari nana, whakarongo mai koutou ki ahau, me te mōhio mā te āwhina a te Kaihanga kaha-katoa o te rangi me te whenua e taea ana e au te kōrero atu ki a koe e pā ana ki ō koutou whakaaro, mō tā koutou tūmata ki te mahi hara, he tino mōrikarika nei te āhuatanga o te hara ki ahau, āe rā, he mōrikarika anō ki te Atua.
- 6 Āe rā, e whakapōurihia ana e ia tōku wairua, ā, i mea ai kia memenge ai ahau i te aroaro o tōku Kaihanga, kia whakaatu atu au ki a koutou e pā ana ki te whakarihariha o ō koutou ngākau.
- 7 Waihoki, e whakapōurihia ana ahau e ia, nā, me māia rawa taku kōrerotanga atu e pā ana ki a koutou, i te aroaro o ā koutou wahine me ā koutou tamariki, he tokomaha nei o rātou e tino ngāwari ana, ā, e tino hē kore ana, ā, e tūoi ana ō rātou kare ā-roto i mua i te Atua, he mea āhuareka tēnā ki te Atua;
- 8 Ā, ki aku whakaaro kua haere mai rātou ki runga nei ki te whakarongo ki te kupu āhuareka a te Atua, āe rā, ko te kupu e mahu ai i te wairua mamae.

## Jacob 2

The words which Jacob, the brother of Nephi, spake unto the people of Nephi, after the death of Nephi:

Now, my beloved brethren, I, Jacob, according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

And ye yourselves know that I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling; but I this day am weighed down with much more desire and anxiety for the welfare of your souls than I have hitherto been.

For behold, as yet, ye have been obedient unto the word of the Lord, which I have given unto you.

But behold, hearken ye unto me, and know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts, how that ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

Yea, it grieveth my soul and causeth me to shrink with shame before the presence of my Maker, that I must testify unto you concerning the wickedness of your hearts.

And also it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children, many of whose feelings are exceedingly tender and chaste and delicate before God, which thing is pleasing unto God;

And it supposeth me that they have come up hither to hear the pleasing word of God, yea, the word which healeth the wounded soul.

- 9 Nā reira, he mea taumaha ki tōku wairua kia meinga rawatia ai au, nā te whakahau uaua kua whiwhi nei au i te Atua, kia whakatūpatoria koutou e ai ki ā koutou taihara, hei whakanui i ngā tūnga o te hunga kua taotū kē, e mahue ana te whakamārie me te mahu i ō rātou tūnga; ā, ko te hunga kāore i taotūhia, mahue te hākari i te kupu whakaāhuareka a te Atua, he oka kē i konā e wero ana i ō rātou ngākau me te taotū i ō rātou hinengaro tūoi.
- 10 Engari, ahakoa te nui o te mahi, me mahi au e ai ki ngā whakahau uaua a te Atua, me te kōrero atu ki a koutou mō ā koutou whakariharihatanga me ā koutou mōrikarikatanga, i te aroaro o te hunga ngākau urutapu, me te hunga ngākau marū, i raro anō hoki i te tirohanga o te karu wewero o te Atua Kaha Rawa.
- 11 Nā reira, me kōrero atu e ahau ki a koutou te pono e ai ki te māramatanga o te kupu a te Atua. Nana rā, i a au e inoi ana ki te Ariki, he pēnei mai te kupu ki ahau, e mea ana: E Hākopa, me haere ake koe ki te temepara hei āpōpō, ā, whakapuakina ki tēnei iwi te kupu e hoatu ai e au ki a koe.
- 12 Ā nana ināianeī, e aku teina, koinei te kupu e whakapuaki atu nei au ki a koutou, nā, he tokomaha koutou kua tīmata ki te kimi atu i te kōura, i te hiriwā, me ngā tūmomo oa utu nui katoa, koia rā hoki tēnei whenua, he whenua whakaari ki a koutou me ō koutou uri, e ranea nuitia ana.
- 13 Ā, kua āhuareka te menemenetanga iho o te ringa whakarawe ki runga i a koutou, nā, kua riro i a koutou ngā taonga maha; ā, nā te mea kua nui ake ō ētahi ō koutou rironga i ō ētahi atu o ā koutou teina, kua neke ake koutou i runga i te whakapehapeha o ō koutou ngākau, ā, he kakī mārō, ā, he mähunga tiketike nā te utu nui o ō koutou kākahu, ā, e whakatoi ana koutou i ā koutou teina nā tō koutou whakaaro he pai ake koutou i a rātou.
- 14 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, e whakaaro ana koutou ka parahau te Atua i a koutou i roto i tēnei mea? Nana, ko tāku ki a koutou, Kāo. Engari e whakahē ana ia i a koutou, ā, mēnā ka ū tonu atu i ēnei mea ka tau wawe mai āna whakawākanga ki runga i a koutou.
- 15 Auē kia whakaatu ia ki a koutou e taea ana e ia te wero i a koutou, ā, i te tirohanga kotahi o tana karu ka patua koutou ki te puehu!

Wherefore, it burdeneth my soul that I should be constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God, to admonish you according to your crimes, to enlarge the wounds of those who are already wounded, instead of consoling and healing their wounds; and those who have not been wounded, instead of feasting upon the pleasing word of God have daggers placed to pierce their souls and wound their delicate minds.

But, notwithstanding the greatness of the task, I must do according to the strict commands of God, and tell you concerning your wickedness and abominations, in the presence of the pure in heart, and the broken heart, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

Wherefore, I must tell you the truth according to the plainness of the word of God. For behold, as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying: Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

And now behold, my brethren, this is the word which I declare unto you, that many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and for all manner of precious ores, in the which this land, which is a land of promise unto you and to your seed, doth abound most plentifully.

And the hand of providence hath smiled upon you most pleasingly, that you have obtained many riches; and because some of you have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better than they.

And now, my brethren, do ye suppose that God justifieth you in this thing? Behold, I say unto you, Nay. But he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his judgments must speedily come unto you.

O that he would show you that he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite you to the dust!

- 16 Auē kia wātea ia i a koutou mai i tēnei hara me tēnei mōrikarika. Ā, Auē kia whakarongo koutou ki te kupu o āna whakahaunga, ā, kia kaua e tukuna tēnei whakapehapa o ō koutou ngākau e whakangaro ai i ō koutou wairua!
- 17 Whakaarohia atu ā koutou teina kia rite ki a koutou, ā, me whakahoahoa atu ki te katoa, ā, kia kaua e kaiponuhia ō koutou rawa, kia whairawa anō ai rātou pērā i a koutou.
- 18 Engari i mua i tā koutou whai atu i te taonga, whaia e koutou te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 19 Ā, hei muri iho i tō koutou whiwhinga i tētahi tūmanako i roto i te Karaiti ka whiwhi taonga koutou, mehemea ka whai atu koe i ēnā; ā, ka whai atu koe i ēnā i runga i te hiahia kia mahi pai—kia whakakākahuria te hunga tahanga, me te whāngai i te hunga hiakai, me te whakaora i te herehere, me te tautoko i te hunga tūroro me te hunga e mamae ana.
- 20 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, kua kōrero atu au ki a koutou e pā ana ki te whakapehapa; ā, ki a koutou hoki kua whakamamaetia ō koutou hoa nohotata, ā, kua whakahāweatia ia nā te whakapehapa i roto i ō koutou ngākau, i runga i ngā mea kua homai nei e te Atua ki a koutou, he aha tā koutou mō tēnei?
- 21 Kāore nei koutou i te whakaaro he mea mōrikarika aua tū mea ki a ia nāna nei ngā kikokiko katoa i hanga? Ā, he ōrite te utu mō tētahi tangata ki tētahi atu i tana titiro. Ā, nō te puehu ngā kikokiko katoa; ā, mō te tikanga kotahi i hangaia ai rātou e ia, kia pupuri rātou i āna whakahaunga me te whakakorōriatia ia mō āke tonu atu.
- 22 Ināianeī ā, ka whakamutu au i taku kōrero e pā ana ki te whakapehapa. Ā, me i kore he tikanga kia kōrero atu ai au ki a koutou e pā ana ki tētahi taihara kino ake, kua harikoa rawa taku ngākau mō koutou.
- 23 Engari e taimaha ana au i te kupu a te Atua nā ō koutou taihara kino ake. Nana rā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki: E anga ana tēnei iwi ki te tupu i te kino; kāore rātou i te mārāma ki ngā karaipiture, nā te mea e whai ana rātou kia whakawātea i a rātou anō mō ā rātou mahi pūremu, nā ngā mea i tuhia ai e pā ana ki a Rāwiri, me tana tama a Horomona.
- 24 Nana, he tokomaha mārīka ngā hoa wahine me ngā hoa wahine tūtūā ā Rāwiri rāua ko Horomona, he mea mōrikarika i tōku aroaro, e ai tā te Ariki.

O that he would rid you from this iniquity and abomination. And, O that ye would listen unto the word of his commands, and let not this pride of your hearts destroy your souls!

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto you.

But before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

And after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good—to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

And now, my brethren, I have spoken unto you concerning pride; and those of you which have afflicted your neighbor, and persecuted him because ye were proud in your hearts, of the things which God hath given you, what say ye of it?

Do ye not suppose that such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh? And the one being is as precious in his sight as the other. And all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

And now I make an end of speaking unto you concerning this pride. And were it not that I must speak unto you concerning a grosser crime, my heart would rejoice exceedingly because of you.

But the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes. For behold, thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures, for they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

Behold, David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

25 Nā reira, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, kua ārahina tēnei iwi e ahau ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, nā runga i te kaha o tōku ringa, kia whakaturia ai e ahau he manga tika nō ngā hua o ngā hope o Hōhepa.

26 Nā reira, kua kore tēnei iwi e tukuna e au, e te Ariki te Atua kia pērā ki a rātou o nehe.

27 Nā reira, e aku teina, whakarongo mai ki ahau, me te āta whakarongo mai ki te kupu a te Ariki: Nā, kua kore tētahi tāne i waenganui i a koutou e tokomaha ake nei i te hoa wahine kotahi; ā, kua kore āna hoa wahine tūtūā;

28 Nā te mea au, te Ariki te Atua, e āhuareka ana ki te tapunga o te tīnana o ngā wāhine. Ā, he mōrikarika ngā pūremu i tōku aroaro; e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.

29 Nā reira, ka pupuri tēnei iwi i aku whakahaunga, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, ka kangaia rānei te whenua mō rātou.

30 Nā te mea ki te hiahia ahau, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, ki te whakaturu uri ki ahau, ka whakahau au i tōku iwi; ā, ki te kore ka āta whakarongo kē atu rātou ki ēnei mea.

31 Nana rā, nāku, nā te Ariki te pōuri i kite, ā, kua rangona ngā tangi a ngā tamāhine o tōku iwi i te whenua o Hiruharama, āe rā, i ngā whenua katoa o tōku iwi, nā te whakarihariha me ngā mōrikarika o ā rātou hoa tāne.

32 Ā, kua kore au e tuku, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano, nā, ko ngā tangi a ngā tamāhine ātaahua o tēnei iwi, kua ārahina e au ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, ka ara ake ki ahau hei tauaro ki ngā tāne o tōku iwi, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.

33 Nā te mea e kore rātou e ārahi herehere atu i ngā tamāhine o tōku iwi nā tō rātou hūmārietanga, hāunga taku toro atu ki a rātou me tētahi kanga mamae, tae atu pū anō ki te whakangaromanga; nā te mea e kore rātou e mahi pūremu, kia pērā ki a rātou o nehe, e ai tā te Ariki o ngā Mano.

34 Ā nana ināianeī, e aku teina, e mōhio ana koutou kua homai ēnei whakahaunga e tō tātou matua, a Rīhai; nā reira, kua mōhio koutou ki ēnā i mua; ā, kua tae koutou ki te whakahēnga nuitanga; nā te mea kua mahia e koutou ēnei mea kāore e tika ana kia mahia e koutou.

Wherefore, thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

Wherefore, I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

Wherefore, my brethren, hear me, and hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women. And whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

Wherefore, this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

For if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

For behold, I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

And I will not suffer, saith the Lord of Hosts, that the cries of the fair daughters of this people, which I have led out of the land of Jerusalem, shall come up unto me against the men of my people, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For they shall not lead away captive the daughters of my people because of their tenderness, save I shall visit them with a sore curse, even unto destruction; for they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And now behold, my brethren, ye know that these commandments were given to our father, Lehi; wherefore, ye have known them before; and ye have come unto great condemnation; for ye have done these things which ye ought not to have done.

35 Nana, kua nui ake ā koutou mahi kino i ā ngā Rāmana, ō tātou tuākana. Kua whatia e koutou ngā ngākau mārie o ā koutou hoa wahine, ā, kua ngaro i a koutou te whakapono o ā koutou tamariki, nā ā koutou tauira kino i mua i a rātou; ā, e kake ake ana a rātou tangi hotuhotu o ō rātou ngākau ki te Atua hei whakahē i a koutou. Ā, nā te uaua o te kupu a te Atua, e tau iho ana ki runga i a koutou, i mate ai ngā ngākau maha, i ngoto ai ki ngā taotūnga hōhonu.

Behold, ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren. Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them; and the sobbings of their hearts ascend up to God against you. And because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died, pierced with deep wounds.

## Hākopa 3

- 1 Engari nana, ko tāku, tā Hākopa, e hiahia ana ki te kōrero atu ki a koutou te hunga e ngākau urutapu ana. Titiro atu ki te Atua i runga i te hinengaro ū, me te inoi atu ki a ia i runga i te whakapono nui, ā, māna koutou e whakaāio i roto i ō koutou mamaetanga, ā, māna tō koutou whakawākanga e tohe atu, ka whakatau iho hoki i te mea tika ki runga i te hunga e whai ana i tō koutou whakangaromanga.
- 2 E koutou, te hunga e ngākau urutapu ana, kia ara ake ō koutou māhunga me te whiwhi i te kupu āhuareka a te Atua, me te hākari i tōna aroha; nā te mea e pai ana mō koutou, mehemea e ū ana ō koutou hinengaro, āke tonu atu.
- 3 Engari, auē, auē, mō koutou kāore nei i te ngākau urutapu, nā, e pokea ana i te aroaro o te Atua i tēnei rā; nō te mea ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā ka kangaia te whenua mō koutou; ā, ko ngā Rāmāna, kāore nei i te pokea pērā me koutou, hei ahakoa kua kangaia rātou ki tētahi kanga mamae, ka whiua koutou tae atu anō ki te whakangaromanga.
- 4 Ā, e wawe mai ana te wā, nā, ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā ka roiro i a rātou te whenua o ō koutou tuku ihotanga, ā, ka ārahina atu e te Ariki te Atua te hunga tika i waenganui i a koutou.
- 5 Nana, ko ō koutou tuākana ko ngā Rāmāna, e mauāharatia ana e koutou nā tō rātou pokenga me taua kanga kua tau ki runga i ō rātou kiri, he tika ake rātou i a koutou; nā te mea kāore rātou i wareware ki te whakahaunga a te Ariki, kua homai nei ki tō tātou matua—kia kaua e tokomaha ake i te hoa wahine kotahi, ā, kua kore ā rātou hoa wahine tūtūā, ā, kua kore tētahi mahinga pūremu e mahia ai i waenganui i a rātou.
- 6 Ināianei ā, e puritia ana e rātou tēnei whakahaunga; nā reira, nā tēnei tirohanga, i te puritanga i tēnei whakahaunga, kāore te Ariki te Atua e whakangaro i a rātou, engari ka whakaaroha ki a rātou; ā, ka meinga rātou he iwi manaakitia hei tōna rā.

## Jacob 3

But behold, I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart. Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith, and he will console you in your afflictions, and he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

O all ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, and feast upon his love; for ye may, if your minds are firm, forever.

But, wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes; and the Lamanites, which are not filthy like unto you, nevertheless they are cursed with a sore cursing, shall scourge you even unto destruction.

And the time speedily cometh, that except ye repent they shall possess the land of your inheritance, and the Lord God will lead away the righteous out from among you.

Behold, the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you; for they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our father—that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none, and there should not be whoredoms committed among them.

And now, this commandment they observe to keep; wherefore, because of this observance, in keeping this commandment, the Lord God will not destroy them, but will be merciful unto them; and one day they shall become a blessed people.

- 7 Nana, e aroha ana ā rātou hoa tāne i ā rātou hoa wāhine, ā, e aroha ana ā rātou hoa wāhine i ā rātou hoa tāne; ā, e aroha ana ā rātou hoa tāne me ā rātou hoa wāhine i ā rātou tamariki; ā, nō ngā hē o ō rātou mātua tō rātou mauāhara ki a koutou; nā reira, he pēhea ake te nui o tō koutou pai i tō rātou, i te tirohanga a tō koutou Kaihanga?
- 8 E aku teina, e wehi ana ahau, nā, ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā i ō koutou hara ka mā ake ō rātou kiri i ō koutou, ina kumea tahitia koutou me rātou ki te araro o te torōna o te Atua.
- 9 Nā reira, e hoatu nei e ahau tētahi whakahaunga ki a koutou, koia te kupu a te Atua, kia kua tonu koutou e taunu i a rātou nā te kerekere o ō rātou kiri; kua rānei koutou e taunu i a rātou nā tō rātou pokenga; engari ka mahara koutou i tō koutou ake pokenga, me te mahara, nā ō rātou mātua tō rātou pokenga i tau ai.
- 10 Nā reira, ka mahara koutou i ā koutou tamariki, anō tā koutou whakapōuri i ō rātou ngākau nā tā koutou tauira i whakatauirahia ai e koutou i mua i a rātou; hei āpiti, kia mahara, mā koutou pea, nā tō koutou pokenga, ā koutou tamariki e kukume iho ki te whakangaromanga, ā, ka pūrangatia ō rātou hara ki runga i ō koutou mähunga hei te rā whakamutunga.
- 11 E aku teina, whakarongo ki aku kupu; whakaohokia ngā kaha o ō koutou wairua; whakaoioia koutou e koutou anō kia ara ake koutou i te moe o te mate; ā, wetekina koutou i ngā whakamamaetanga o te ao rēwera kia kua e meinga hei anahera ki te rēwera, kia makaia ki roto i te roto ahi whānāriki, koia ko te matenga tuarua.
- 12 Ināianeī ā, nāku, nā Hākopa, i kōrero atu anō i ngā mea maha ki te iwi o Nīwhai, e whakatūpatoria ana rātou mō te mahi pūremu me te mahi tūkari, me ngā tūmomo hara katoa, e kōrerohia atu ana ki a rātou te tukunga ihotanga whakariharaha o aua mea.
- 13 Ā, ko te wāhi whakaterau o ngā whakahaeretanga o tēnei iwi, koia kua anga tokomaha haere ināianeī, kāore e taea ana te tuhituhi ki runga i ēnei papa; engari, kua tuhia atu anō ā rātou whakahaeretanga ki runga i ngā papa nui, me ō rātou pakanga, me ā rātou tautohetohenga, me ngā whakahaeretanga a ō rātou kīngi.

Behold, their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers; wherefore, how much better are you than they, in the sight of your great Creator?

O my brethren, I fear that unless ye shall repent of your sins that their skins will be whiter than yours, when ye shall be brought with them before the throne of God.

Wherefore, a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness; but ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

Wherefore, ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them; and also, remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

O my brethren, hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

And now I, Jacob, spake many more things unto the people of Nephi, warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

And a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, which now began to be numerous, cannot be written upon these plates; but many of their proceedings are written upon the larger plates, and their wars, and their contentions, and the reigns of their kings.



14 Kua huaina ēnei papa ko ngā papa a Hākopa, ā, i hangaia e te ringa o Nīwhai. Ā, ka whakamutu ahau i taku kōrero i ēnei kupu.

These plates are called the plates of Jacob, and they were made by the hand of Nephi. And I make an end of speaking these words.

## Hākopa 4

- 1 Nana ināianeī, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Hākopa, kua mahi nui ki tōku iwi i runga i te kupu, (ā, kāore e taea ana e au te tuhituhi hāunga he ruarua noa o aku kupu, nā te uaua o te whao i ā mātou kupu ki runga i ngā papa) ā, e mōhio ana mātou me mau tonu ngā mea e tuhituhi nei mātou i runga i ngā papa;
- 2 Engari ka memeha atu, ā, ka ngaro atu ngā mea e tuhia nei e mātou ki runga i tētahi mea hāunga i runga i ngā papa; engari e taea ana e mātou ngā kupu ruarua te tuhi i runga i ngā papa, e tuku ai ki ā mātou tamariki, me ā mātou teina aroha, he mātauranga iti e pā ana ki a mātou, e pā ana rānei ki ō rātou tūpuna matua—
- 3 E hari ana mātou ināianeī i tēnei mea; ā, e kaha mahi ana mātou ki te whao i ēnei kupu ki runga i ngā papa, e manako ana ka whiwhi ō mātou teina aroha me ā mātou tamariki i ēnā i runga i te ngākau whakawhetai, me te titiro iho rātou ki ēnā e ako ai rātou i runga i te koa, kua i te pōuri, kua rānei i te whakahāwea, e pā ana ki ō rātou mātua tuatahi.
- 4 Nā te mea, nō tēnei take i tuhituhi ai i ēnei mea, kia mōhio ai rātou i mātau mātou ki a te Karaiti, ā, he nui hoki tō mātou tūmanako mō tōna korōria i ngā rau tau maha i mua i tana haerenga mai; ā, ehara i te mea ko mātou anake i tūmanako ai mō tōna korōria, engari ko ngā poropiti tapu katoa anō hoki i mua i a mātou.
- 5 Nana, i whakapono rātou i te Karaiti, ā, i koropikohia e rātou te Matua i runga i tōna ingoa, ā, e koropiko ana anō hoki mātou i te Matua i runga i tōna ingoa. Ā, koinei te take e pupuri ana mātou i te ture a Mohi, e tuhi atu ana ia i ō mātou wairua ki a ia; ā, koia te take i whakatapua ai ia hei tika mō mātou, he pērā anō me te whakatau ki a Aperahama i te koraha kia ngohengohe ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua i tana tāpaenga atu i tana tama a Ihaka, koia tētahi tauritenga i tā te Atua me tāna Tama Kotahi Anake.

## Jacob 4

Now behold, it came to pass that I, Jacob, having ministered much unto my people in word, (and I cannot write but a little of my words, because of the difficulty of engraving our words upon plates) and we know that the things which we write upon plates must remain;

But whatsoever things we write upon anything save it be upon plates must perish and vanish away; but we can write a few words upon plates, which will give our children, and also our beloved brethren, a small degree of knowledge concerning us, or concerning their fathers—

Now in this thing we do rejoice; and we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates, hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

For, for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming; and not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

Behold, they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, and also we worship the Father in his name. And for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him; and for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

6 Nā reira, e rapu ana mātou i tā ngā poropiti, ā, he maha ō mātou whakakitenga me te wairua poropititanga; ā, ka whiwhi mātou i tētahi tūmanako i ēnei whakaatuhanga katoa, ā, ka meinga tō mātou whakapono hei mea tē taea te whakangāueue, nā konā e tino taea ana e mātou te whakahau i runga i te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti, ā, ka whakarongo pū anō ngā rākau ki a mātou, ngā maunga rānei, ngā ngaru rānei o te moana.

7 Hei ahakoa, ka whakaatuhia e te Ariki te Atua ō mātou ngoikoretanga ki a mātou kia mōhio ai mātou mā tōna aroha noa, me ana tapatuhanga nui ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, kia whai kaha ai mātou ki te mahi i ēnei mea.

8 Nana, he mea whakamīharo nui ngā mahi a te Ariki. Anō te hōhonutanga o ana mea ngaro tē taea te kimi; ā, tē taea ōna huarahi katoa e te tangata te kite. Ā, kāore he tangata e mōhio ana mō ōna huarahi hāunga ia e whakakitea ai ki a ia; nā reira, e ngā teina, kei whakahāwea koutou i ngā whakakitenga a te Atua.

9 Nana rā, nā te mana o tana kupu i tau ai te tangata ki runga i te mata o te whenua, ko taua whenua i hangaia ai e te mana o tana kupu. Nā reira, mēnā e taea ana e te Atua te kōrero kātahi ka ai te ao, me te kōrero kātahi ka hangaia te tangata, auē ki te pēnā, he aha e kore ai e taea te whakahau i te ao, i ngā mahinga rānei a ōna ringaringa i runga i tōna mata, e ai ki tāna e hiahia ai, e āhuareka ai anō?

10 Nā reira, e ngā teina, kua e whai ki te whakatakoto whakaaro ki te Ariki, engari ki te whiwhi i te whakatakotoranga whakaaro mai i tōna ringa. Nana rā, e mōhio ana koutou anō kei te whakatakoto whakaaro ia i runga i te mātauranga, ā, i te tika, ā, i te whakaaro nui, i runga i āna mahinga katoa.

11 Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, houhia te rongō ki a ia mā roto i te whakamārietanga o te Karaiti, tana Tama Kotahi Anake, ā, kia whiwhi ai koutou i tētahi aranga, e ai ki te mana o te aranga kei roto nei i te Karaiti, ā, kia tāpaea ai hei hua-mātāmua nā te Karaiti ki te Atua, e whakapono ana, ā, kua whiwhi i tētahi tūmanako korōria pai i roto i a ia i mua i tāna whakakitenga i a ia anō i roto i te kikokiko.

Wherefore, we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy; and having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken, insomuch that we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness that we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

Behold, great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is impossible that man should find out all his ways. And no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him; wherefore, brethren, despise not the revelations of God.

For behold, by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word. Wherefore, if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

Wherefore, brethren, seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand. For behold, ye yourselves know that he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

Wherefore, beloved brethren, be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

- 12 Ināianeī ā, e te mea aroha, kaua e mīharo i taku kōrerotanga atu i ēnei mea; nā te mea he aha e kore ai e kōrero mō te whakamārietanga o te Karaiti, me te whiwhinga ki tētahi tino mātauranga mōna, e pērā ana ki te whiwhinga ki tētahi mōhiotanga mō tētahi aranga me tētahi ao ka puta mai?
- 13 Nana, e aku teina, ko te tangata e poropiti ana, tukuna ia kia poropiti ai i runga i tō te tangata māramatanga; nā te mea e kōrero pono ana te Wairua, ā, kāore āna teka. Nā reira, e kōrero ana ia i te āhuatanga tūturu o ngā mea ināianeī, ā, i te āhuatanga tūturu o ngā mea ka puta mai; nā reira, e whakakitea māramahia ana ēnei mea ki a tātou, mō te whakaoranga o ō tātou wairua. Engari nana, ehara i te mea ko tātou anake i te kaiwhakaatu i ēnei mea; nā te mea i kōrero anō te Atua i ēnei ki ngā poropiti onamata.
- 14 Engari nana, he iwi kakī mārō ngā Hūrai; ā, i whakahāwea rātou i ngā kupu mārāma, ā, i whakamatea ngā poropiti, ā, i whai atu i ngā mea kīhai i taea e rātou te mārāma. Nā reira, nā tō rātou matapōtanga, ko taua matapōtanga i ahu mai ai i tā rātou titiro atu ki tua o te māka, me tika pū tā rātou takanga; nā te mea kua tangohia atu e te Atua tana māramatanga mai i a rātou, ā, kua tukuna atu ki a rātou ngā mea maha kāore e taea ana e rātou te mārāma, nā tō rātou hiahia. Ā, nā te mea i hiahia rātou, kua meatia e te Atua, kia tatutatu ai rātou.
- 15 Ināianeī ā, ko ahau, a Hākopa, e ārahina atu ana e te Wairua tae atu ana ki te poropititanga; nā, e mōhio ana ahau nā runga i ngā mahinga a te Wairua kei roto nei i ahau, nā, mā te tatutatunga a ngā Hūrai ka whakaparahako rātou i te toka mā runga nei e taea ai te hanga me te whai tūāpapa pūmau.
- 16 Engari nana, e ai ki ngā karaipiture, ka meinga tēnei toka ko te mea nui, me te mea whakamutunga, me te tūāpapa tūturu anake, e taea ai e ngā Hūrai te hanga ki runga.
- 17 Ināianeī ā, e āku e aroha nei, me pēhea e taea ai e ēnei, i muri iho i tā rātou whakaparahakotanga i te tūāpapa tūturu, te hanga noa ki runga i a ia, kia meinga ai ia ko te upoko o tō rātou kokonga?

And now, beloved, marvel not that I tell you these things; for why not speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him, as to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

Behold, my brethren, he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men; for the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not. Wherefore, it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they really will be; wherefore, these things are manifested unto us plainly, for the salvation of our souls. But behold, we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

But behold, the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand. Wherefore, because of their blindness, which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall; for God hath taken away his plainness from them, and delivered unto them many things which they cannot understand, because they desired it. And because they desired it God hath done it, that they may stumble.

And now I, Jacob, am led on by the Spirit unto prophesying; for I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

But behold, according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

And now, my beloved, how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

18 Nana, e aku teina aroha, māku tēnei mea ngaro e  
māroha atu ki a koutou; ki te kore au e  
whakangāueuetia noatia atu mai i taku pūmautanga  
i roto i te Wairua, me te tatutatu iho nā taku tino  
mānukanuka nui mō koutou.

Behold, my beloved brethren, I will unfold this  
mystery unto you; if I do not, by any means, get  
shaken from my firmness in the Spirit, and stumble  
because of my over anxiety for you.

## Hākopa 5

- 1 Nana, e aku teina, kāore ianei koutou e mahara ana ki tā koutou pānuitanga i ngā kupu a te poropiti a Henohi, i kōrerotia nei ki te whare o Iharaira, e mea ana:
- 2 Whakarongo, E koutou te whare o Iharaira, me te whakarongo ki aku kupu, he poropiti nā te Ariki.
- 3 Nana rā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, māku koe e whakataurite, E te whare o Iharaira, kia rite ki tētahi rākau ōriwa whakatupu, i tīkina, ā, i whakatupuria e tētahi tangata i roto i tana māra wāina; ā, i tupu, ā, i pakari haere, ā, i pirau haere.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere atu te rangatira o te māra wāina, ā, i kite ia i tā te rākau ōriwa pirau haeretanga; ā, ka kī ia: Māku ia e tapatapahi, māku anō ōna taha e kerī, māku anō ia e whāngai, me kore pea e pihi ake ngā manga hou me ngā manga ngāwari, ā, kia kore e mate.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tapatapahia e ia, ā, i keria ngā taha, ā, i whāngaia e ia e ai ki tana kupu.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i ngā rā maha ka āhua paku tupu haere, ngā manga hou me ngā manga ngāwari; engari nana, i tīmata te matenga haeretanga o te kauru.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kitea tēnā e te rangatira o te māra wāina, ā, ka kī atu ia ki tana pononga: He pōuri nōku ka mate tēnei rākau; nā reira, haere me te whawhati i ngā manga nō tētahi rākau ōriwa ngahere, ā, haria mai nei ki ahau; ā, ka whawhati atu i aua manga kua tīmata tō reira memenge haeretanga atu, ā, ka makaia atu ērā e tāua ki roto i te ahi kia tahuna ai ērā.
- 8 Ā nana, e ai tā te Ariki o te māra wāina, he maha o ēnei manga hou me ēnei manga ngāwari ka tangohia atu e au, ā, māku e whakahono atu ki taku wāhi e pai ai; ā, kāore he raru ki ahau mēnā pū ia e mate ai te pakiaka o tēnei rākau, kia taea ai e ahau te rongoā mōku ngā hua o reira; nā reira, māku ēnei manga hou me ngā manga ngāwari e hari, ā, māku ēnā e whakahono atu ki taku wāhi e pai ai.

## Jacob 5

Behold, my brethren, do ye not remember to have read the words of the prophet Zenos, which he spake unto the house of Israel, saying:

Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

For behold, thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive tree, which a man took and nourished in his vineyard; and it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard went forth, and he saw that his olive tree began to decay; and he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

And it came to pass that he pruned it, and digged about it, and nourished it according to his word.

And it came to pass that after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

And it came to pass that the master of the vineyard saw it, and he said unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, go and pluck the branches from a wild olive tree, and bring them hither unto me; and we will pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

And behold, saith the Lord of the vineyard, I take away many of these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will; and it mattereth not that if it so be that the root of this tree will perish, I may preserve the fruit thereof unto myself; wherefore, I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

- 9 Haria e koe ngā manga nō te rākau ōriwa ngahere, me te whakahonoa mai ērā ki roto, hei whakakī i ō reira wāhi; ā, ka makaia atu ēnei manga kua whawhatia nei e ahau ki roto i te ahi kia tahuna ai, kia kaua e maumauria ai te whenua o tōku māra wāina.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mahia e te pononga a te Ariki o te māra wāina e ai ki te kupu a te Ariki o te māra wāina, ā, i whakahonoa iho ngā manga nō te rākau ōriwa ngahere.
- 11 Ā, ka meatia e te Ariki o te māra wāina kia keria ai ngā taha, ā, kia tapatapahia, ā, kia whāngaia, e mea ana ki tana pononga: He pōuri nōku ka mate tēnei rākau; nā reira, i mahi au i tēnei mea kia rongoā pea au i ngā pakiaka o reira kia kaua e mate, kia rongoā pea au i ēnā mōku.
- 12 Nā reira, haere i runga i tō huarahi; tirohia te rākau, ā, whāngaia, e ai ki aku kupu.
- 13 Ā, ka waiho ēnei e ahau ki te wāhi i raro rawa iho o tōku māra, ki te wāhi e pai ai ki ahau, kāore he tikanga ki a koe; ā, e meatia ana tēnei e ahau kia tiakina mōku anō ngā manga tupu o te rākau; waihoki, kia pūrangatia ai i reira e ahau he hua mō tērā tau, mōku ake anō; nā te mea he pōuri rawa ki ahau mēnā ka ngaro i ahau tēnei rākau me ō reira hua.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere te Ariki o te māra i runga i tōna huarahi, ā, i hunia ngā manga tupu o te rākau ōriwa whakatupu i ngā wāhi i raro rawa iho o te māra wāina, ētahi i tētahi, me ētahi atu i tētahi atu, e ai ki tōna hiahia me tāna i āhuareka ai.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i pahure tētahi wā roa, ā, ka kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki tana pononga: Haere mai, ka haere iho tāua ki raro iho o te māra wāina, kia mahi ai tāua i roto i te māra wāina.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i heke iho te Ariki o te māra wāina, me tana pononga anō hoki, ki roto i te māra wāina ki te mahi. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī ake te pononga ki tōna māhita: Nana, titiro mai; tirohia te rākau.
- 17 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i titiro atu te Ariki o te māra wāina, ā, ka tirohia te rākau i whakahonoa iho ngā manga ōriwa ngahere; ā, kua pihi ake ia, ā, kua anga te hua i ngā hua. Ā, i tirohia e ia, nā, he pai ia; ā, i rite ō reira hua ki ngā hua tupu.

Take thou the branches of the wild olive tree, and graft them in, in the stead thereof; and these which I have plucked off I will cast into the fire and burn them, that they may not cumber the ground of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did according to the word of the Lord of the vineyard, and grafted in the branches of the wild olive tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished, saying unto his servant: It grieveth me that I should lose this tree; wherefore, that perhaps I might preserve the roots thereof that they perish not, that I might preserve them unto myself, I have done this thing.

Wherefore, go thy way; watch the tree, and nourish it, according to my words.

And these will I place in the nethermost part of my vineyard, whithersoever I will, it mattereth not unto thee; and I do it that I may preserve unto myself the natural branches of the tree; and also, that I may lay up fruit thereof against the season, unto myself; for it grieveth me that I should lose this tree and the fruit thereof.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard, some in one and some in another, according to his will and pleasure.

And it came to pass that a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard, and also the servant, went down into the vineyard to labor. And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Behold, look here; behold the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard looked and beheld the tree in the which the wild olive branches had been grafted; and it had sprung forth and begun to bear fruit. And he beheld that it was good; and the fruit thereof was like unto the natural fruit.

18     Ā, i kī atu ia ki te pononga: Nana, kua mau i ngā manga nō te rākau ngahere te wai o te pakiaka i reira, nā konā i nui ai te kaha i puta i te pakiaka i reira; ā, nā te nui o te kaha o te pakiaka i reira kua hua mai ngā manga ngahere i ngā hua whakatupu. Nā, mehemea kīhai tāua i whakahonohono iho i ēnei manga, kua mate te rākau i reira. Ināianei ā, nana, māku ngā hua maha e pūranga, ngā mea kua puta mai nei i te rākau i reira; ā, māku ō reira hua e pūranga ake mō tērā tau, mōku ake anō.

19     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki te pononga: Haere mai, ka haere iho tāua ki te wāhi i raro rawa iho o te māra wāina, ā, kia tirohia ai mehemea kāore rānei kua hua mai anō ngā manga tupu o te rākau i ngā hua maha, kia taea ai e ahau te pūranga ake i ō reira hua mō tērā tau, mōku ake anō.

20     Ā i pahawa ake, nā, i haere atu rāua ki te wāhi i hunai ai e te māhita ngā manga tupu o te rākau, ā, i kī atu ia ki te pononga: Tirohia ēnei; ā, i tirohia e ia te tuatahi kua hua mai i ngā hua maha rawa; i kite anō ia he pai ēnā. Ā, i kī atu ia ki te pononga: Tangohia ētahi o ō reira hua, ā, pūrangatia mō tērā tau, kia tiakina ai mōku ake anō; nana rā, ko tāna i kī ai, mō tēnei wā roa au i whāngaia ai, ā, kua hua mai i ngā hua maha rawa.

21     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te pononga ki tōna māhita: He aha koe i haere mai ai ki konei ki te whakatō i tēnei rākau, i tēnei manga rānei o te rākau? Nā te mea nana, ko te pito pōhara rawa ia i te whenua katoa o tō māra wāina.

22     Ā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki a ia: Kaua e whakatakoto whakaaro ki ahau; i mōhio au koia tētahi pito whenua pōhara; nā reira, i kī atu au ki a koe, nāku ia i whāngai mō tēnei wā roa, ā, kua kite koe kua hua mai i a ia ngā hua maha rawa.

23     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki tana pononga: Titiro mai; nana kua whakatō au i tētahi atu manga anō hoki o te rākau; ā, e mōhio ana koe koinei tētahi pito whenua pōhara rawa ake i te tuatahi. Engari, tirohia te rākau. Nāku ia i whāngai mō tēnei wā roa, ā, kua hua mai i ngā hua maha rawa; nō reira, kohikohia, ā, pūrangatia mō tērā tau, kia whakapātakahia ai e ahau mōku ake anō.

And he said unto the servant: Behold, the branches of the wild tree have taken hold of the moisture of the root thereof, that the root thereof hath brought forth much strength; and because of the much strength of the root thereof the wild branches have brought forth tame fruit. Now, if we had not grafted in these branches, the tree thereof would have perished. And now, behold, I shall lay up much fruit, which the tree thereof hath brought forth; and the fruit thereof I shall lay up against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Come, let us go to the nethermost part of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches of the tree have not brought forth much fruit also, that I may lay up of the fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that they went forth whither the master had hid the natural branches of the tree, and he said unto the servant: Behold these; and he beheld the first that it had brought forth much fruit; and he beheld also that it was good. And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: How comest thou hither to plant this tree, or this branch of the tree? For behold, it was the poorest spot in all the land of thy vineyard.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto him: Counsel me not; I knew that it was a poor spot of ground; wherefore, I said unto thee, I have nourished it this long time, and thou beholdest that it hath brought forth much fruit.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Look hither; behold I have planted another branch of the tree also; and thou knowest that this spot of ground was poorer than the first. But, behold the tree. I have nourished it this long time, and it hath brought forth much fruit; therefore, gather it, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self.



24     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki tana pononga: Titiro mai, ā, tirohia he manga atu anō, kua whakatōkia e au; tirohia, nā, kua whāngaia anō hoki e ahau, ā, kua hua mai he hua.

25     Ā, i kī atu ia ki te pononga: Titiro mai, ā, kia tirohia ai te mea whakamutunga. Nana, kua whakatōkia tēnei e au ki tētahi pito whenua pai; ā, nāku i whāngai mō tēnei wā roa, ā, kua hua noa tētahi wāhi o te rākau i ngā hua whakatupu, ā, kua hua mai i tērā atu wāhi o te rākau ngā hua ngahere; nana, nāku tēnei rākau i whāngai pērā i ērā atu.

26     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki te pononga: Hutia atu ngā manga kāore i hua mai i ngā hua pai, ā, makaia ērā ki roto i te ahi.

27     Engari nana, i kī atu te pononga ki a ia: Kia tapatapahia e tāua, ā, kia keria ngā tahataha, ā, kia whāngaia tonutia mō tētahi wā poto, me kore pea ia e hua mai i ngā hua pai ki a koe, kia pūrangatia ake mō tērā tau.

28     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whāngaia e te Ariki o te māra wāina rāua ko te pononga a te Ariki o te māra wāina i ngā hua katoa o te māra wāina.

29     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i pahure atu tētahi wā roa, ā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki tana pononga: Haere mai, ka haere iho tāua ki raro i te māra wāina, kia mahi anō ai tāua i roto i te māra wāina. Nana rā, e whakatata mai ana te wā, ā, meake puta mai ai te mutunga; nā reira, me pūranga ake e au he hua mō tērā tau, mōku ake anō.

30     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere iho te Ariki o te māra wāina rāua ko te pononga ki roto i te māra wāina; ā, i tae ki te rākau kua whatia atu nei ōna manga, ā, kua whakahonoa iho ngā manga ngahere ki roto; ā nana, i pēhipēhia te rākau e ngā tūmomo hua katoa.

31     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kai te Ariki o te māra wāina i te hua, o ia tū, o ia tū e rite ana ki tōna tau. Ā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina: Nana, tēnei wā roa i whāngai ai tāua i tēnei rākau, ā, kua pūrangatia e au mōku ake anō ngā hua maha rawa mō tērā tau.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth fruit.

And he said unto the servant: Look hither and behold the last. Behold, this have I planted in a good spot of ground; and I have nourished it this long time, and only a part of the tree hath brought forth tame fruit, and the other part of the tree hath brought forth wild fruit; behold, I have nourished this tree like unto the others.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

But behold, the servant said unto him: Let us prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it a little longer, that perhaps it may bring forth good fruit unto thee, that thou canst lay it up against the season.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant of the Lord of the vineyard did nourish all the fruit of the vineyard.

And it came to pass that a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh; wherefore, I must lay up fruit against the season, unto mine own self.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard and the servant went down into the vineyard; and they came to the tree whose natural branches had been broken off, and the wild branches had been grafted in; and behold all sorts of fruit did cumber the tree.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard did taste of the fruit, every sort according to its number. And the Lord of the vineyard said: Behold, this long time have we nourished this tree, and I have laid up unto myself against the season much fruit.

32 Engari nana, kua hua mai i ngā hua maha rawa i tēnei wā, ā, kāore tētahi mea e pai ana i reira. Ā nana, he nui ngā momo hua kino i reira; kāore he painga ōna ki ahau, ahakoa ā tāua mahi katoa; ināianei ā, e pōuri ana au ka ngaro i ahau tēnei rākau.

33 Ā, ka kī atu te Ariki o te mārā wāina ki te pononga: Me aha tāua ki te rākau, kia tiaki anō au i ngā hua pai o reira mōku ake anō?

34 Ā, ka kī atu te pononga ki tōna mähita: Nana, nā te mea i whakahonohono iho koe i ngā manga nō te rākau ōriwa ngahere kua whakakahangia ngā pakiaka, nā, e ora ana ēnā, ā, kāore ēnā i mate; nā reira e kite ana koe, nā, e pai ana ēnā.

35 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te mārā wāina ki tana pononga: Kāore he painga tō te rākau mōku, ā, kāore he painga tō ngā pakiaka o reira mōku ki te hua tonu mai i ngā hua kino.

36 Hei aha koa, e mōhio ana au he pai ngā pakiaka, ā, mō tōku ake tikanga anō nāku ēnā i tiaki; ā, nā tō ēnā kaha nui kua hua mai ā mohoa noa nei, mai i ngā manga ngahere, he hua pai.

37 Engari nana, kua tupu ngā manga ngahere, ā, kua popoki i ngā pakiaka o reira; ā, nā te mea kua popoki ngā manga ngahere i ngā pakiaka o reira kua hua mai i ngā hua kino maha; ā, nā te mea kua hua mai i ngā hua kino maha kei te kite koe kua anga tōna matenga; ā, meake ka pakari, kia makaia atu i te ahi, ki te kore tāua hei tiaki i a ia.

38 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te mārā wāina ki tana pononga: Ka haere iho tāua ki te wāhi i raro rawa iho o tōku mārā, kia kite ai mehemea kua hua mai i ngā manga tupu anō he hua kino.

39 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere iho rāua ki ngā wāhi i raro rawa iho o te mārā wāina. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kite rāua kua kino anō ngā hua o ngā manga tupu; āe rā, te tuatahi me te tuarua, ā, tae atu ana ki te mea whakamutunga; ā, kua kino haere katoa.

40 Ā, kua pōkia te wāhi o te rākau i hua ai i ngā hua pai e ngā hua ngahere o te mea whakamutunga, nō konā rawa, ka memenge te manga, ā, ka mate.

41 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tangi te Ariki o te mārā wāina, ā, ka kī atu ki te pononga: He aha kē atu anō nāku mō tōku mārā wāina?

But behold, this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good. And behold, there are all kinds of bad fruit; and it profiteth me nothing, notwithstanding all our labor; and now it grieveth me that I should lose this tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: What shall we do unto the tree, that I may preserve again good fruit thereof unto mine own self?

And the servant said unto his master: Behold, because thou didst graft in the branches of the wild olive tree they have nourished the roots, that they are alive and they have not perished; wherefore thou beholdest that they are yet good.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Let us go down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard, and behold if the natural branches have also brought forth evil fruit.

And it came to pass that they went down into the nethermost parts of the vineyard. And it came to pass that they beheld that the fruit of the natural branches had become corrupt also; yea, the first and the second and also the last; and they had all become corrupt.

And the wild fruit of the last had overcome that part of the tree which brought forth good fruit, even that the branch had withered away and died.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

- 42 Nana, i mōhio au ko ngā hua katoa o te māra wāina, hāunga ia ēnei, kua kino haere. Ā, ināianeī ko ēnei mea kua hua mai i ngā hua pai i mua, kua kino haere anō hoki; ā, ināianeī kāore he painga tō ngā rākau katoa o tōku māra wāina hāunga ia ko te tua me te maka ki roto i te ahi.
- 43 Ā, tirohia tēnei mea whakamutunga, kua memenge atu tōna manga, i whakatōkia e ahau ki te pito pai o te whenua; āe rā, ki te wāhi pai rawa ake i ērā atu wāhi katoa o te whenua o tōku māra wāina.
- 44 Ā, i kite koe, nā, i tua iho au i te mea i pēhipēhia ai tēnei pito o te whenua, kia whakatō ai au i tēnei rākau i tōna wāhi i reira.
- 45 Ā, i kite anō koe i hua mai he hua pai i tētahi wāhi o te rākau o reira, ā, i hua mai tētahi wāhi o reira he hua ngahere; ā, nā te mea kīhai au i huhuti atu i ngā manga o reira me te maka atu ki roto i te ahi, nana, kua warea e ēnā te manga pai, nā, kua memenge atu ia.
- 46 Ināianeī ā, nana, ahakoa ā tāua poipoitanga katoa i taku māra wāina, kua kino haere ngā manga o reira, kāore he hua pai e hua ai i a ia; ā, i tūmanako au kia tiakina, kia pūrangatia ake he hua mō tērā tau, mōku ake anō. Engari, nana, kua meinga ēnā kia rite ki te rākau ōriwa ngahere, ā, kāore tō ēnā painga hāunga kia tuakina, ā, kia makaia ki roto i te ahi; ā, he pōuri nōku ka ngaro i ahau ēnā.
- 47 Engari, he aha kē atu anō nāku mō taku māra wāina? kua tangatanga rānei tōku ringa, kīhai i whāngaia e au? Kāo, kua whāngaia e au, ā, kua keria ngā taha, ā, kua tapatapahia, ā, kua ruirua ki te wairākau; ā, kua torongia atu tōku ringa mō te roanga katoa o te rā, ā, e tata mai ana te mutunga. Ā, he mea pōuri ki ahau me tua katoa iho ngā rākau katoa o tōku māra wāina, me te maka iho ki roto i te ahi kia tahuna ai. Ko wai ia nāna nei taku māra wāina i whakakino?
- 48 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te pononga ki tōna māhita: Ehara ianei i te tiketiketanga o tō māra wāina—kāore ianei ngā manga o reira kia popoki i ngā pakiaka e pai ana? Ā, nā te mea kua popoki ngā manga i ngā pakiaka o reira, nana, i tere ake tōna tupu i tō te kaha o ngā pakiaka, i riro anō te kaha ki konā anō. Nana, ko tāku, ehara koinei rānei te take kua kino haere ngā rākau o tō māra wāina?

Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted; and now all the trees of my vineyard are good for nothing save it be to be hewn down and cast into the fire.

And behold this last, whose branch hath withered away, I did plant in a good spot of ground; yea, even that which was choice unto me above all other parts of the land of my vineyard.

And thou beheldest that I also cut down that which cumbered this spot of ground, that I might plant this tree in the stead thereof.

And thou beheldest that a part thereof brought forth good fruit, and a part thereof brought forth wild fruit; and because I plucked not the branches thereof and cast them into the fire, behold, they have overcome the good branch that it hath withered away.

And now, behold, notwithstanding all the care which we have taken of my vineyard, the trees thereof have become corrupted, that they bring forth no good fruit; and these I had hoped to preserve, to have laid up fruit thereof against the season, unto mine own self. But, behold, they have become like unto the wild olive tree, and they are of no worth but to be hewn down and cast into the fire; and it grieveth me that I should lose them.

But what could I have done more in my vineyard? Have I slackened mine hand, that I have not nourished it? Nay, I have nourished it, and I have digged about it, and I have pruned it, and I have dunged it; and I have stretched forth mine hand almost all the day long, and the end draweth nigh. And it grieveth me that I should hew down all the trees of my vineyard, and cast them into the fire that they should be burned. Who is it that has corrupted my vineyard?

And it came to pass that the servant said unto his master: Is it not the loftiness of thy vineyard—have not the branches thereof overcome the roots which are good? And because the branches have overcome the roots thereof, behold they grew faster than the strength of the roots, taking strength unto themselves. Behold, I say, is not this the cause that the trees of thy vineyard have become corrupted?

49     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki te pononga: Ka haere iho tāua kia tua iho ai i ngā rākau o te māra wāina me te maka iho ki roto i te ahi, kia kore ai e pēhipēhi i te whenua o tōku māra wāina, nā te mea nāku ngā mea katoa i mahi. He aha kē atu anō nāku mō tōku māra wāina?

50     Engari, nana, i kī atu te pononga o te Ariki o te māra wāina: Tohungia ia mō tētahi wā poto anō.

51     Ā, i kī ake te Ariki: Āe rā, māku ia e tohu mō tētahi wā poto anō, nā te mea he pōuri nōku ka ngaro i a au ngā rākau o tōku māra wāina.

52     Nā reira, kia tīkina e tāua ētahi manga o ēnei kua whakatōkia e ahau ki ngā wāhi i raro rawa iho o tōku māra wāina, ā, ka whakahonoa iho ēnā e tāua ki te rākau i ahu mai ai ēnā; ā, ka huhuti tāua mai i te rākau ēnā manga ko ōna hua he kawa rawa atu, ā, ka whakahonoa iho ngā manga tupu o te rākau ki te wāhi o reira.

53     Ā, māku tēnei e mahi kia kore ai te rākau e mate, me kore pea, e tiakina ai ngā pakiaka o reira mōku ake anō.

54     Ā, nana, kei te ora tonu nei ngā pakiaka o ngā manga tupu o te rākau kua whakatōkia e au ki ngā wāhi katoa e pai ai ki ahau; nā reira, kia tiakina ai mō toku ake tikanga, māku e tango i ngā manga o tēnei rākau, ā, māku ēnā e whakahono iho ki konā. Āe rā, māku e whakahono iho ki konā ngā manga nō te rākau whaea, kia tiakina anōtia ai ngā pakiaka mōku ake anō, nā, ina pakari rawa ēnā ka hua mai pea i ngā hua pai mōku, ā, ka whai korōria anō au i tōku māra wāina.

55     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tangohia e rāua mai i te rākau tupu kua ngahere haere nei, ā, i whakahono iho ki ngā rākau tupu, kua ngahere haere nei anō hoki.

56     Ā, i tangohia anōtia mai i ngā rākau tupu kua ngahere haere nei, ā, i whakahonoa iho ki tō ēnā rākau whaea.

57     Ā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki te pononga: Kaua e huhuti i ngā manga ngahere i ngā rākau, hāunga ēnā e tino kawa rawa atu ana; ā, ka whakahonoa iho ki reira e ai ki tāku i kī ai.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Let us go to and hew down the trees of the vineyard and cast them into the fire, that they shall not cumber the ground of my vineyard, for I have done all. What could I have done more for my vineyard?

But, behold, the servant said unto the Lord of the vineyard: Spare it a little longer.

And the Lord said: Yea, I will spare it a little longer, for it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my vineyard.

Wherefore, let us take of the branches of these which I have planted in the nethermost parts of my vineyard, and let us graft them into the tree from whence they came; and let us pluck from the tree those branches whose fruit is most bitter, and graft in the natural branches of the tree in the stead thereof.

And this will I do that the tree may not perish, that, perhaps, I may preserve unto myself the roots thereof for mine own purpose.

And, behold, the roots of the natural branches of the tree which I planted whithersoever I would are yet alive; wherefore, that I may preserve them also for mine own purpose, I will take of the branches of this tree, and I will graft them in unto them. Yea, I will graft in unto them the branches of their mother tree, that I may preserve the roots also unto mine own self, that when they shall be sufficiently strong perhaps they may bring forth good fruit unto me, and I may yet have glory in the fruit of my vineyard.

And it came to pass that they took from the natural tree which had become wild, and grafted in unto the natural trees, which also had become wild.

And they also took of the natural trees which had become wild, and grafted into their mother tree.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck not the wild branches from the trees, save it be those which are most bitter; and in them ye shall graft according to that which I have said.

58 Ā, ka whāngai anō tāua i ngā rākau o te māra wāina, ā, ka tapatapahia ake hoki ngā manga o reira; ā, ka huhuti mai i ngā rākau i ērā manga kua pakari, ngā mea me mate, ā, ka makaia ki roto i te ahi.

59 Ā, ka meatia tēnei e au, me kore pea, ngā pakiaka o reira e whai kaha ai nā tō ēnā painga; ā, nā te whakawhitiwhitinga i ngā manga, kia taea ai te kino e te pai.

60 Ā, nā konā i tiakina ai e au ngā manga tupu me ngā pakiaka tupu o reira, ā, kua whakahonoa iho anō ngā manga tupu ki tō ēnā rākau whaea, ā, kua tiakina ngā pakiaka o tō ēnā rākau whaea, nā, me kore pea, ngā rākau o tōku māra wāina e hua mai anō i ngā hua pai; ā, kia whai koa anō ai au i ngā hua o tōku māra wāina, ā, me kore pea, kia rahi rawa atu tōku koa mōku i tiaki ngā pakiaka me ngā manga o te hua tuatahi—

61 Nā reira, haere atu, me te karanga atu ki ngā pononga, kia kaha rawa tā tātou mahi i te māra wāina, kia whakarite tātou i te huarahi, kia whakaputaina mai ai anō e au te hua tupu, ko te hua tupu nei he pai, ā, he nui noa atu tōna utu i ō ērā atu hua katoa.

62 Nā reira, ka haere tātou me te mahi i runga i tō tātou kaha mō tēnei wā whakamutunga, nā te mea, nana te mutunga e tata mai ana, ā, koinei te wā whakamutunga e tapatapahi au i tōku māra wāina.

63 Whakahonoa iho ngā manga; tīmataria i te mea tōmuri kia tōmua ai, ā, kia tōmuri ai ngā mea tōmua, ā, keria ngā taha o ngā rākau, kōhure mai, māhuri mai, te tōmua me te tōmuri; ā, te tōmuri me te tōmua, kia whāngaia ngātahitia ai anō mō te wā whakamutunga.

64 Nā reira, keria ngā taha o ēnā, tapahia ēnā, me te ruirui anō ki runga i ēnā te wairākau, mō te wā whakamutunga, nā te mea kei te tata mai te wā. Ā, ki te tupu pēnei ngā mea whakahono, me te hua mai i ngā hua tupu, kātahi koe ka whakarite i te huarahi mō ēnā, kia tupu ai ēnā.

And we will nourish again the trees of the vineyard, and we will trim up the branches thereof; and we will pluck from the trees those branches which are ripened, that must perish, and cast them into the fire.

And this I do that, perhaps, the roots thereof may take strength because of their goodness; and because of the change of the branches, that the good may overcome the evil.

And because that I have preserved the natural branches and the roots thereof, and that I have grafted in the natural branches again into their mother tree, and have preserved the roots of their mother tree, that, perhaps, the trees of my vineyard may bring forth again good fruit; and that I may have joy again in the fruit of my vineyard, and, perhaps, that I may rejoice exceedingly that I have preserved the roots and the branches of the first fruit—

Wherefore, go to, and call servants, that we may labor diligently with our might in the vineyard, that we may prepare the way, that I may bring forth again the natural fruit, which natural fruit is good and the most precious above all other fruit.

Wherefore, let us go to and labor with our might this last time, for behold the end draweth nigh, and this is for the last time that I shall prune my vineyard.

Graft in the branches; begin at the last that they may be first, and that the first may be last, and dig about the trees, both old and young, the first and the last; and the last and the first, that all may be nourished once again for the last time.

Wherefore, dig about them, and prune them, and dung them once more, for the last time, for the end draweth nigh. And if it be so that these last grafts shall grow, and bring forth the natural fruit, then shall ye prepare the way for them, that they may grow.

65     Ā, i ngā rākau e pihi ake ana mā koutou ngā  
manga e hua ai i ngā hua kawa e whakawātea atu, e  
ai ki te kaha o ngā mea pai me te rahi o reira; ā, e  
kore koutou e whakawātea atu i ngā mea kino o reira  
i te wā kotahi, kei kaha rawa ngā pakiaka o reira mō  
te whakahono, ā, ka mate te mea whakahono o reira,  
ā, ka ngaro i a au ngā rākau o tōku māra wāina.

66     Nā te mea he pōuri nōku ka ngaro i ahau ngā  
rākau o tōku māra wāina; nā reira mā koutou ngā  
mea kino e whakawātea atu kia rite ki te āhuatanga o  
tā ngā mea pai tupu, kia taurite ai te kaha o te kauru  
me te pakiaka, kia tae atu ki te wā e taea ai te kino e  
te pai, ā, kia tuakina iho te kino me te makaia iho ki  
roto i te ahi, kia kore ai e pēhia e ēnā te whenua o  
tōku māra wāina; ā, ka pēnei taku tahinga atu i te  
kino i taku māra wāina.

67     Ā, māku anō ngā manga o te rākau tupu e  
whakahono iho ki te rākau tupu;

68     Ā, māku ngā manga o te rākau tupu e whakahono  
iho ki ngā manga tupu o te rākau; ā, ka pēnei anō  
taku whakahuihui i ngā manga, kia hua ai i ngā hua  
tupu, ka kotahi anō ēnā.

69     Ā, ka makaia atu ngā mea kino, āe rā, ki waho pū  
anō i te whenua o tōku māra wāina; nana rā, māku  
tōku māra wāina e tapatapahi mō tēnei wā anake.

70     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tonoa atu e te Ariki o te māra  
wāina tana pononga; ā, ka haere te pononga me te  
mahi i tā te Ariki i whakahau ai ki a ia, ā, i haria mai  
ētahi atu pononga; ā, he mea ruarua noa rātou.

71     Ā, i kī atu te Ariki o te māra wāina ki a rātou:  
Haere, me te mahi i tōku māra wāina, i runga i tō  
koutou kaha. Nana rā, koinei te wā whakamutunga  
māku e whāngai tōku māra wāina; nā te mea kua tata  
tae mai te mutunga, ā, e wawe mai ana te wā; ā, ki te  
mahi koutou i runga i tō koutou kaha me au ka whai  
koa koutou i ngā hua māku e pūranga ake mōku ake  
anō mō te wā meake ka tae mai.

72     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere ngā pononga me te  
mahi i runga i tō rātou kaha; ā, i mahi tahi anō te  
Ariki o te māra wāina me rātou; ā, i whakarongo  
katoa rātou ki ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki o te māra  
wāina i roto i ngā mea katoa.

And as they begin to grow ye shall clear away the  
branches which bring forth bitter fruit, according to  
the strength of the good and the size thereof; and ye  
shall not clear away the bad thereof all at once, lest  
the roots thereof should be too strong for the graft,  
and the graft thereof shall perish, and I lose the trees  
of my vineyard.

For it grieveth me that I should lose the trees of my  
vineyard; wherefore ye shall clear away the bad ac-  
cording as the good shall grow, that the root and the  
top may be equal in strength, until the good shall  
overcome the bad, and the bad be hewn down and  
cast into the fire, that they cumber not the ground of  
my vineyard; and thus will I sweep away the bad out  
of my vineyard.

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft in  
again into the natural tree;

And the branches of the natural tree will I graft  
into the natural branches of the tree; and thus will I  
bring them together again, that they shall bring forth  
the natural fruit, and they shall be one.

And the bad shall be cast away, yea, even out of all  
the land of my vineyard; for behold, only this once  
will I prune my vineyard.

And it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard  
sent his servant; and the servant went and did as the  
Lord had commanded him, and brought other ser-  
vants; and they were few.

And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go  
to, and labor in the vineyard, with your might. For  
behold, this is the last time that I shall nourish my  
vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and the season  
speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might  
with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall  
lay up unto myself against the time which will soon  
come.

And it came to pass that the servants did go and la-  
bor with their might; and the Lord of the vineyard  
labored also with them; and they did obey the com-  
mandments of the Lord of the vineyard in all things.

73     Ā, ka tīmata anō te mārā wāina ki te whai hua tupu; ā, i tīmata anō ngā manga tupu ki te tupu me te tino matomato; ā, i tīmata te huhuti i ngā manga ngahere me te makaia atu; ā, i whakataurite rātou i te pakiaka kia rite tonu ki te kauru, e ai ki tō reira kaha.

74     Ā, i pēnei tā rātou mahinga, i runga i te ū katoa, e ai ki ngā whakahaunga katoa a te Ariki o te mārā wāina, tae atu ana ki te makanga atu i ngā mea kino ki waho i te mārā wāina, ā, i tiakina mōna ake anō, nā, kua meinga anō ngā rākau ko te hua tupu; ā, i meinga ēnā kia rite ki te tīnana kotahi; ā, i whakapātakahia e te Ariki o te mārā wāina mōna ake anō te hua tupu, koinei te mea utu nui rawa ki a ia mai i te tīmatanga.

75     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i kite atu te Ariki o te mārā wāina kua pai ana hua, ā, kāore tonu tana mārā wāina i te kino, i karangatia ake āna pononga, ā, ka kī atu ki a rātou: Nana, mō tēnei wā whakamutunga tātou i whāngai ai tōku mārā wāina; ā, kei te kite koe kua mahi au i tāku i pai ai; ā, kua whakapātaka au i ngā hua tupu, he mea pai ia, he pērā pū anō ia ki tō te tīmatanga. Ā, e manaakitia nei koe; nā te mea, nā tō ū ki te mahi tahi me au i roto i tōku mārā wāina, ā, kua puritia aku whakahaunga, ā, kua whakahokia mai anō ki ahau te hua tupu, nā konā kāore tonu taku mārā wāina i te kino, ā, kua makaia atu ngā mea kino, nana, ka koa tahi tāua nā ngā hua o tōku mārā wāina.

76     Nana rā, ka pūrangatia mōku ake anō ngā hua o tōku mārā wāina mō tētahi wā roa, koia nei e wawe mai ana; ā, mō te wā whakamutunga nāku tōku mārā wāina i whāngai, me te tapatapahi, me te keri i ngā taha, me te ruirui i te wairākau; nā reira māku ngā hua e pūranga mōku ake anō, mō tētahi wā roa, e ai ki tāku kua kōrerotia ake nei e au.

77     Ā, ina tae mai te wā e kuhu mai anō ngā hua kino ki roto i tōku mārā wāina, kātahi au ka meatia te whakahuihui i ngā mea pai me ngā mea kino; ā, māku ngā mea pai e tiaki mōku ake anō, ā, ka makaia atu ngā mea kino ki roto i tōna ake wāhi. Ā, kātahi nei ka tae mai te tau me te whakamutunga; ā, ka meinga e au tōku mārā wāina kia tahuna ai ki te ahi.

And there began to be the natural fruit again in the vineyard; and the natural branches began to grow and thrive exceedingly; and the wild branches began to be plucked off and to be cast away; and they did keep the root and the top thereof equal, according to the strength thereof.

And thus they labored, with all diligence, according to the commandments of the Lord of the vineyard, even until the bad had been cast away out of the vineyard, and the Lord had preserved unto himself that the trees had become again the natural fruit; and they became like unto one body; and the fruits were equal; and the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when the Lord of the vineyard saw that his fruit was good, and that his vineyard was no more corrupt, he called up his servants, and said unto them: Behold, for this last time have we nourished my vineyard; and thou beholdest that I have done according to my will; and I have preserved the natural fruit, that it is good, even like as it was in the beginning. And blessed art thou; for because ye have been diligent in laboring with me in my vineyard, and have kept my commandments, and have brought unto me again the natural fruit, that my vineyard is no more corrupted, and the bad is cast away, behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my vineyard.

For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my vineyard unto mine own self against the season, which speedily cometh; and for the last time have I nourished my vineyard, and pruned it, and dug about it, and duned it; wherefore I will lay up unto mine own self of the fruit, for a long time, according to that which I have spoken.

And when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire.

## Hākopa 6

- 1 Ināianeī ā, nana, e aku teina, he pērā ki tāku i kī ai ki a koutou ka poropiti au, nana, koinei taku poropititanga—nā, ko ngā mea i kōrerotia ai e te poropiti a Henohi, e pā ana ki te whare o Iharaira, i konā ia i whakataurititia ai rātou ki tētahi rākau ōriwa whakatupu, me pahawa rawa ake.
- 2 Ā, ko te rā māna anō tana ringa e whakatau iho mō te wā tuarua ki te whakahoki i tana iwi, koia te rā, āe rā, ko te wā whakamutunga pū anō, e haere atu ai ngā pononga a te Ariki i runga i tōna mana, kia whāngai me te tapatapahi i tōna mārā wāina; ā, hei muri atu i tēnā meake tae mai te mutunga.
- 3 Ā, anō te nui o te manaaki i te hunga kua ū ki te mahi i roto i tana mārā wāina; ā, anō te nui o te kanga ki runga i te hunga ka makaia atu ki roto i tō rātou ake wāhi! Ā, ka tahuna te ao ki te ahi.
- 4 Ā, anō te nui o te whakaaro o tō tātou Atua ki a tātou, nā te mea e mahara nei ia i te whare o Iharaira, pakiaka mai, manga mai; ā, e toro atu ana ia i ōna ringa mō te roanga atu o te rā; ā, he iwi kakī mārō, he iwi upoko mārō hoki; engari ko te hunga kāore nei e whakapakeke i ō rātou ngākau ka whakaoranga i roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 5 Nā reira, e aku teina aroha, e inoi atu ana au ki a koutou i runga i te whai whakaaro kia rīpenetā ai koutou, ā, kia haere mai i runga i te ngākau tino ū, me te piri ki te Atua e pērā ana ki tana piritanga ki a koe. Ā, i tōna ringa tohu e torona atu ana ki a koe i te mārāma o te rā, kua e whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau.
- 6 Āe rā, i tēnei rā, ki te whakarongo koutou ki tōna reo, kua e whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau; nā, he aha koutou e mate ai?
- 7 Nana rā, hei muri i tāu whāngaitanga e te kupu pai a te Atua mō te roanga o te rā, ka hua mai koutou i ngā hua kino, kia tuakina iho koutou ki raro me te makaia iho ki roto i te ahi?

## Jacob 6

And now, behold, my brethren, as I said unto you that I would prophesy, behold, this is my prophecy—that the things which this prophet Zenos spake, concerning the house of Israel, in the which he likened them unto a tame olive tree, must surely come to pass.

And the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

And how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place! And the world shall be burned with fire.

And how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches; and he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long; and they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people; but as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, I beseech of you in words of soberness that ye would repent, and come with full purpose of heart, and cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you. And while his arm of mercy is extended towards you in the light of the day, harden not your hearts.

Yea, today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts; for why will ye die?

For behold, after ye have been nourished by the good word of God all the day long, will ye bring forth evil fruit, that ye must be hewn down and cast into the fire?



- 8 Nana, ka whakaparahako rānei koutou i ēnei kupu? Ka whakaparahako rānei koutou i ngā kupu a ngā poropiti; ā, ka whakaparahako hoki koutou i ngā kupu katoa e pā ana ki te Karaiti, nō muri i ngā mea tokomaha kua kōrerotia e pā ana ki a ia; me te whakaparahako i te kupu pai a te Karaiti, me te mana o te Atua, me te tākohatanga o te Wairua Tapu, me te aukati i te awenga o te Wairua Tapu, me te taunu i te mahere nui o te hokonga, kua whakatakotoria mō koutou?
- 9 Kāore rānei koutou e mōhio ana mēnā ka mahi koutou i ēnei mea, nā, ko te kaha o te hokonga me te aranga, koia i roto nei i te Karaiti, e kūmea mai ai koutou kia tū ai i runga i te whakamā me te kaniawhea nui i mua i te nohonga whakawā o te Atua?
- 10 Ā, e ai ki te kaha o te tika, nā, kāore te tika e taea te whakaparahako, me haere atu koutou ki roto i tērā roto ahi whānāriki, ko ōna muramura kāore e taea nei te tinei, ā, ko tōna auahi e kake ake ana mō āke tonu atu, ko taua roto ahi whānāriki nei, ko te whakamamaetanga mutunga kore.
- 11 Nō konei, e aku teina aroha, e rīpenetā koutou, me te kuhu atu ki roto i te kūaha tōtika, me te haere i te ara e whāiti nei, tae atu ana ki tō koutou whiwhi i te oranga tonutanga.
- 12 E, kia whai whakaaro; he aha kē atu anō tāku?
- 13 Hei whakakapinga, e poroporoaki nei au ki a koutou, kia tae ki te wā e tūtaki anō ai au ki a koutou i te nohonga whakawā āhuareka o te Atua, ko taua nohonga e whakapāngia ai te hunga kino ki te matakū nui me te wehi nui. Āmine.

Behold, will ye reject these words? Will ye reject the words of the prophets; and will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ, after so many have spoken concerning him; and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

Know ye not that if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

And according to the power of justice, for justice cannot be denied, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

O then, my beloved brethren, repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

O be wise; what can I say more?

Finally, I bid you farewell, until I shall meet you before the pleasing bar of God, which bar striketh the wicked with awful dread and fear. Amen.

## Hākopa 7

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake i muri i te pahuretanga atu o ētahi tau, i haere mai tētahi tangata ki waenganui i te iwi o Nīwhai, ko tōna ingoa, ko Herema.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tūmata tana kauhau ki waenganui i te iwi, me te whakapuaki atu ki a rātou karekau tētahi Karaiti e puta mai. Ā, he maha ngā mea whakapatipati i kauhau ai ia ki te iwi; ā, i meatia tēnei e ia kia tūraki ai ia i te akoranga a te Karaiti.
- 3 Ā, i mahi ia i runga i te ngākau ū me kore pea ia e ārahi atu i ngā ngākau o te iwi, nā konei ia i ārahi atu i ngā ngākau maha; me tana mōhio anō ko au, a Hākopa, he mea whakapono i te Karaiti e haere mai ai, i kaha whai ia kia haere mai ai ia ki au.
- 4 Ā, he matatau ia, nā, he tino nui rawa atu tōna matatau ki te reo o te iwi; nā reira, i taea e ia te whakapatipati nui, ā, he kaha nui ki te kōrero, e ai ki te mana o te rēwera.
- 5 Ā, he manako nōna kia whakangāueuetia au i taku whakapono, ahakoa ngā whakakitenga maha me ngā mea maha i kitea ai au e pā ana ki ēnei mea; nā te mea i tino pono taku kitenga atu i ngā anahera, ā, kua minita mai rātou ki ahau. Waihoki, i rongu ahau i tō te Ariki reo e kōrero mai ana i ngā kupu katoa, mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi wā; nā reira, kua kore au e taea te whakangāueue.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere mai ia ki ahau, ā, i runga i tēnei āhua i kōrero mai ai ia ki ahau, e mea ana: E te tuakana, e Hākopa, kua nui taku whai kia kōrero tahi ki a koe; nā te mea kua rongu au, ā, kua mōhio hoki au he nui tō hāereere, e kauhau ana i tāu e kī nei ko te rongopai, ko te akoranga rānei a te Karaiti.
- 7 Ā, kua ārahi atu koe i tētahi wāhi nui o te iwi, nā konā, e whakapeau ana rātou i te huarahi tika o te Atua, ā, kāore i te pupuri i te ture a Mohi koia nei te huarahi tika; ā, me te tīni i te ture a Mohi ki te koropikotanga atu i tētahi tangata e kī ana e koe ka haere mai hei ngā rau tau maha noa atu i tēnei wā. Ā, nana ianei, ahau, a Herema, e whakapuaki atu ana ki a koe he mea teka tēnei; nā te mea kāore he tangata e mōhio ana ki ērā momo mea; nā te mea tē taea e ia te kōrero mō ngā mea ka puta mai. Ā, nō tēnei āhuatanga i tohetohe mai a Herema ki ahau.

## Jacob 7

And now it came to pass after some years had passed away, there came a man among the people of Nephi, whose name was Sherem.

And it came to pass that he began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ. And he preached many things which were flattering unto the people; and this he did that he might overthrow the doctrine of Christ.

And he labored diligently that he might lead away the hearts of the people, insomuch that he did lead away many hearts; and he knowing that I, Jacob, had faith in Christ who should come, he sought much opportunity that he might come unto me.

And he was learned, that he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

And he had hope to shake me from the faith, notwithstanding the many revelations and the many things which I had seen concerning these things; for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me. And also, I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time; wherefore, I could not be shaken.

And it came to pass that he came unto me, and on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence. And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come. And after this manner did Sherem contend against me.

- 8 Engari nana, i maringi iho te Ariki te Atua i tōna Wairua ki roto i tōku wairua, nā konei rā i whakapōauautia ia e ahau i roto i ana kupu katoa.
- 9 Ā, ka kī atu au ki a ia: E whakaparahako ana rānei koe i te Karaiti koia ka haere mai? Ā, ka kī ia: Mēnā he Karaiti, kua kore au e whakaparahako i a ia; engari kei te mōhio au karekau he Karaiti, kīhai i mua, kāore rānei a muri.
- 10 Ā, nāku i kī atu ki a ia: E whakapono ana rānei koe i ngā karaipiture? Ā, ka kī ia, Āe rā.
- 11 Ā, i kī atu au ki a ia: Ki te pērā, kāore koe i te mārama ki ērā; nā te mea e whakaatu pono nei ērā mō te Karaiti. Nana, ko tāku ki a koe kāore tētahi poropiti kia tuhituhi, kia poropiti rānei, hāunga tā rātou kōrero e pā ana ki tēnei Karaiti.
- 12 Ā, ehara tēnei i te katoa—kua whakakitea mai tēnei ki ahau, nā te mea kua rongo, ā, kua kite au; ā, kua whakakitea mai anō hoki ki ahau e te mana o te Wairua Tapu; nā reira, e mōhio ana ahau ki te kore tētahi whakamārietanga e meatia ai kua ngaro ngā tāngata katoa.
- 13 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī mai ia ki ahau: Whakaatuhia mai ki ahau tētahi tohu nā runga i tēnei mana nō te Wairua Tapu, nōna nei koe e matatau rawa nei.
- 14 Ā, i kī atu ahau ki a ia: He aha kē ahau te whakamātau i te Atua kia whakaatuhia atu ki a koe tētahi tohu mō tētahi mea e mōhio ana koe he pono? Heoi ka whakaparahako koe i tēnā, nā te mea nō te rēwera koe. Hei aha koa, ehara tōku e meatia ai; engari mēnā ka patua koe e te Atua, me waiho tēnā hei tohu ki a koe, nā, he mana tōna, i te rangi me te whenua; waihoki, ka tae mai te Karaiti. Ā, ko tōu hiahia, E te Ariki, e meatia ai, ehara ko tōku.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, i te wā nāku, nā Hākopa, i kōrero atu ēnei kupu, ka tau iho te mana o te Ariki ki runga i a ia, nā konei ka hinga iho ia ki te whenua. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whāngaia ia mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kī atu ia ki te iwi: Whakaminemine mai āpōpō, nā te mea ka mate ahau; nā reira, kei te hiahia ahau ki te kōrero atu ki te iwi i mua i taku matenga.

But behold, the Lord God poured in his Spirit into my soul, insomuch that I did confound him in all his words.

And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come? And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

And this is not all—it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

And it came to pass that when I, Jacob, had spoken these words, the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth. And it came to pass that he was nourished for the space of many days.

And it came to pass that he said unto the people: Gather together on the morrow, for I shall die; wherefore, I desire to speak unto the people before I shall die.

- 17     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te aonga ake o te rā i whakaminemine tahi mai te tini; ā, i kōrero atu ia ki a rātou i runga i te mārāma nui, ā, i whakaparahakotia ngā mea i whakaakona rātou e ia, ā, i whākina te Karaiti, me te mana o te Wairua Tapu, me te minitatanga o ngā anahera.
- 18     Ā, i mārāma tana kōrero ki a rātou, nā, kua māmingatia ia e te mana o te rēwera. Ā, i kōrero ia mō te ao rēwera, mō te wā mutunga kore anō hoki, mō te whakawhiunga mutunga kore anō hoki.
- 19     Ā, i kī ia: E wehi ana au kua hara pea ahau i te hara tē taea te muru, nā te mea kua rūkahu atu au ki te Atua; nā te mea kua whakaparahako au i te Karaiti, ā, i kī au kua whakapono au i ngā karaipiture; ā, e whakaatu pono nei ērā mōna. Ā, mōku i rūkahu pēnei ki te Atua, e wehi nui ana au kua kino rawa taku tukunga ihotanga; engari kei te whāki atu au ki te Atua.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i kōrero ai ia i ēnei kupu kāore he kupu atu anō i taea te kōrero, ā, i tukuna atu tōna wairua.
- 21     Ā, i te wā i kitea e te tini ēnei mea i kōrerotia ai e ia nōna ka tata tukuna atu tōna wairua, ka tino mīharo nui rātou; nā konei rā te mana o te Atua i tau iho ai ki runga i a rātou, ā, i warea rātou, nā, ka hinga iho rātou ki te whenua.
- 22     Ināiane, i āhuareka tēnei ki ahau, a Hākopa, nā, i inoia tēnei e ahau ki tōku Matua i te Rangi; nā, i rongō ia i tōku tangi, ā, i whakautua tōku inoi.
- 23     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakahokia anōtia te rangimārie me te aroha o te Atua ki waenganui i te iwi; ā, i rangahaua ngā karaipiture, ā, kāore i whakarongo tonu ki ngā kupu a tēnei tangata kino.
- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he maha ngā mea i whakaarotia ai kia whakamau anō me te whakahoki i ngā Rāmana ki te mātauranga o te pono; engari auare ake, nā te mea i āhuareka ngā pakanga me te whakahekenga toto ki a rātou, ā, he mauāhara mutunga kore tō rātou ki a mātou, ā rātou teina. Ā, whai ai rātou i runga i te kaha o ā rātou mea whawhai ki te whakangaro i a mātou.
- 25     Nā reira, i whakapūioio te iwi o Nīwhai ki a rātou nā runga i ā rātou mea whawhai, me tō rātou kaha katoa, e whakawhirinaki ana i te Atua te toka o tō rātou whakaoranga; nā reira, i meinga nei rātou, ko ngā kairaupatu i runga i ō rātou hoariri.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

And he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil. And he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

And he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him. And because I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

And it came to pass that when he had said these words he could say no more, and he gave up the ghost.

And when the multitude had witnessed that he spake these things as he was about to give up the ghost, they were astonished exceedingly; insomuch that the power of God came down upon them, and they were overcome that they fell to the earth.

Now, this thing was pleasing unto me, Jacob, for I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

And it came to pass that peace and the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

And it came to pass that many means were devised to reclaim and restore the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; but it all was vain, for they delighted in wars and bloodshed, and they had an eternal hatred against us, their brethren. And they sought by the power of their arms to destroy us continually.

Wherefore, the people of Nephi did fortify against them with their arms, and with all their might, trusting in the God and rock of their salvation; wherefore, they became as yet, conquerors of their enemies.

26     Ā, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Hākopa, ka koroheke haere; ā, ko te tuhinga o tēnei iwi e mau ana i runga i ērā atu papa a Nīwhai, nā reira, e whakakapi ana au i tēnei tuhinga, e whakapuaki ana kua tuhituhi au i runga i te tiketiketanga o tōku mōhioranga, mā te kōrerotanga atu, nā, kua pahure atu te wā me tātou, ā, i pahure atu anō ō tātou orange anō nei he moemoeā ia, ko tātou tētahi iwi mokemoke, ā, he iwi whakaaro tika, he kaewa, kua panaia atu i Hiruharama, i whānau mai ai ki roto i te whakamamaetanga, i roto i te koraha, ā, kua mauāharatia e ō tātou tuākana, kua whakatupungia ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga; nā reira, i pau katoa ō mātou rā i te tangihanga.

27     Ā, nāku, nā Hākopa, i kite au meake nei ka heke iho ki tōku rua tūpāpaku; nā reira, i kī atu au ki taku tama a Īnohi: Tikina ēnei papa. Ā, i kōrero atu au i ngā mea i whakahaua ahau e tōku tuakana a Nīwhai, ā, i whakaae pono mai ia ka whakarongo ki ngā whakahaunga. Ā, ka whakakapi au i aku tuhinga i runga i ēnei papa, ko ngā tuhinga nei he mea iti; ā, hei konei rā e te kaipānui, e manako ana ka tokomaha aku huānga e pānui ai i aku kupu. E ngā huānga, atiu.

And it came to pass that I, Jacob, began to be old; and the record of this people being kept on the other plates of Nephi, wherefore, I conclude this record, declaring that I have written according to the best of my knowledge, by saying that the time passed away with us, and also our lives passed away like as it were unto us a dream, we being a lonesome and a solemn people, wanderers, cast out from Jerusalem, born in tribulation, in a wilderness, and hated of our brethren, which caused wars and contentions; wherefore, we did mourn out our days.

And I, Jacob, saw that I must soon go down to my grave; wherefore, I said unto my son Enos: Take these plates. And I told him the things which my brother Nephi had commanded me, and he promised obedience unto the commands. And I make an end of my writing upon these plates, which writing has been small; and to the reader I bid farewell, hoping that many of my brethren may read my words. Brethren, adieu.

## Ko te Pukapuka a Īnohi

- 1 Nana, i pahawa ake, nāku, nā Īnohi, e mōhio ana he tangata tika tōku matua—nā te mea i whakaako ia i a au e pā ana ki tōna reo, e pā ana anō hoki ki te poiipoitanga me te whakatūpatoranga a te Ariki—ā, kia whakapaingia te ingoa o tōku Ariki—
- 2 Ā, māku e kōrero atu ki a koutou mō taku nonoke i te aroaro o te Atua, i mua i taku whiwhinga i tētahi murunga hara.
- 3 Nana, i haere au ki te aruaru kararehe mohoa o ngā ngahere; ā, ka tirehe hohonu iho ki roto i tōku ngākau ngā kupu i rongorongo ai au i kōrerotia ai e tōku matua e pā ana ki te oranga tonutanga, me te hunga tapu.
- 4 Ā, i hiakai tōku wairua; ā, ka tūturi iho au i te aroaro o tōku Kaihanga, ā, ka karanga ake ahau ki a ia i runga i te inoi kaha me te ngākau whakaiti mō toku ake wairua; ā, ka karanga ake ahau ki a ia mō te roanga katoa o te rā; āe rā, ā, tae rawa mai te pō ka ara tiketike tonu ake tōku reo, tae noa atu ki ngā rangi.
- 5 Ā, ka tau mai tētahi reo ki ahau, e mea ana: E Īnohi, kua murua ō hara, ā, ka manaakitia koe.
- 6 Ā, i mōhio au, a Īnohi, tē taea e te Atua te rūkahu; nā reira, kua tahia atu ōku kaniawhea.
- 7 Ā, ka kī au: E te Ariki, me pēhea te meatanga?
- 8 Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau: Nā tō whakapono ki a te Karaiti, ko ia kāore nei koe i rongo, i kite rānei i mua. Ā, ka pahure atu ngā tau maha i mua i tana whakakite i a ia anō i te kikokiko; nā reira, haere, kua mā koe i tō whakapono.
- 9 Ināianeī, i pahawa ake, nā, i taku rongonga i ēnei kupu i anga taku hiahia mō te oranga o ōku huānga, ngā Nīwhai; nā reira, i poua iho tōku wairua katoa ki te Atua mō rātou.
- 10 Ā, i a au e ngangana pēnei ana i roto i te wairua, nana, ka tau mai anō te reo o te Ariki ki roto i tōku hinengaro, e mea ana: Ka toro atu au ki ō huānga e ai ki tō rātou ū ki te pupuri i aku whakahaunga. Nāku tēnei whenua i hoatu ai ki a rātou, ā, he whenua tapu ia; ā, kua kore ia e kangaia e au hāunga anake mō te hara; nā reira, ka toro atu au ki ō huānga e ai ki tāku i kī ai; ā, māku ō rātou hē e kukume iho i runga i te pōuri ki runga i ō rātou ake upoko.

## The Book of Enos

Behold, it came to pass that I, Enos, knowing my father that he was a just man—for he taught me in his language, and also in the nurture and admonition of the Lord—and blessed be the name of my God for it—

And I will tell you of the wrestle which I had before God, before I received a remission of my sins.

Behold, I went to hunt beasts in the forests; and the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

And my soul hungered; and I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul; and all the day long did I cry unto him; yea, and when the night came I did still raise my voice high that it reached the heavens.

And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie; wherefore, my guilt was swept away.

And I said: Lord, how is it done?

And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

Now, it came to pass that when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments. I have given unto them this land, and it is a holy land; and I curse it not save it be for the cause of iniquity; wherefore, I will visit thy brethren according as I have said; and their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

- 11     Ā, i muri i tāku, tā Īnohi, rongonga i ēnei kupu, ka meinga tōku whakapono i te Ariki kia tūoi kore; ā, i inoi au ki a ia i runga i ngā ngangana roa maha mō ōku tuākana, ngā Rāmana.
- 12     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i taku inoitanga me taku mahinga i runga i te kaha nui, ka kī mai te Ariki ki ahau: Māku e tuku ki a koe e ai ki ōu hiahia, nā tōu whakapono.
- 13     Ā, nana ināianeī, koinei te hiahia i hiahia ai au i a ia—nā, mēnā e tika ana, kia taka iho tōku iwi ngā Nīwhai ki roto i te hē, me whakangaro atu rānei i runga i tētahi āhuetanga, engari kāore ngā Rāmana e whakangaromia ai, nā, ka tiakina e te Ariki te Atua tētahi tuhinga e pā ana ki tōku iwi, ngā Nīwhai; ki te pērā rawa i runga i te kaha o tana ringa tapu, kia puta rawa mai hei tētahi rā anamata ki ngā Rāmana, nā, tērā pea, ka kukume mai rātou ki te whakaoranga—
- 14     Nā te mea auare ake ā mātou ngangana i tēnei wā ki te whakahoki i a rātou ki te whakapono tika. Ā, i oati ai rātou i runga i te riri, mēnā e taea ana, ka whakangaro rātou i ā mātou tuhinga, i a mātou hoki, me ngā tikanga katoa anō hoki a ō mātou tūpuna matua.
- 15     Nā reira, nā taku mōhio e taea ana e te Ariki te Atua te tiaki i ā mātou tuhinga, i karanga tonu au ki a ia, nā te mea i kī mai ia ki ahau: Ahakoa he aha te mea e tonoa ai e koe i runga i te ngākau whakapono, me te whakapono anō ka whiwhi koe i runga i te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti, ka whiwhi koe.
- 16     Ā, he whakapono tōku, ā, i karanga au ki te Atua māna ā mātou tuhinga e tiaki; ā, i kawenata ia ki ahau māna ērā e whakaputa mai ki ngā Rāmana a tōna ake wā e tika ana.
- 17     Ā, i mōhio ahau, a Īnohi, ka rite ki te kawenata i kawenata ai ia; nā reira i tau tōku wairua.
- 18     Ā, i kī mai te Ariki ki ahau: I tono anō hoki ō mātua i tēnei mea ki ahau; ā, ka meatia ki a rātou e ai ki tō rātou whakapono; nā, i rite tō rātou whakapono ki tōu.
- 19     Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Īnohi, i haere atu ki waenganui i te iwi o Nīwhai, e poropiti ana i ngā mea e puta mai ai, me te whakaatu atu i ngā mea i rongo ai, i kite ai ahau.

And after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

And now behold, this was the desire which I desired of him—that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation—

For at the present our strugglings were vain in restoring them to the true faith. And they swore in their wrath that, if it were possible, they would destroy our records and us, and also all the traditions of our fathers.

Wherefore, I knowing that the Lord God was able to preserve our records, I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records; and he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

And the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

And now it came to pass that I, Enos, went about among the people of Nephi, prophesying of things to come, and testifying of the things which I had heard and seen.

20     Ā, e whakaatu ana ahau, nā, i ū te iwi o Nīwhai ki te whakahoki i ngā Rāmana ki te whakapono tika i te Atua. Engari auare ake ā mātou mahi; i te ū kaha tō rātou mauāhara, ā, i ārahina rātou e ō rātou hiahia kino nā konā rātou i mohoa ai, i horetītī ai, ā, he iwi hiakai ki te toto, e kikī ana i te karakia whakapakoko, i te poke hoki; e kai ana i ngā kararehe pāpurenga; e noho tēneti ana, ā, e ātiutiu ana i te koraha e mau ana tētahi rāpaki kiri potu i ō rātou hope me ō rātou māhunga kua heua; e whai pūkenga ana rātou ki te kōpere, me te hemitā, me te toki. Ā, he tokomaha o rātou i kai anake i te kikokiko mata; ā, he rite tonu tā rātou whai ki te whakangaro i a mātou.

21     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i ngaki te iwi o Nīwhai i te whenua, ā, ka whakaturia ngā momo kākano kai, ngā hua rākau, me ngā kāhui maha, me ngā kāhui kararehe kai pātītī o ia āhua, o ia āhua, ngā koati, me ngā koati mohoa, me ngā hōiho anō hoki.

22     Ā, he tokomaha rawa atu ngā poropiti i waenganui i a mātou. Ā, he tāngata kakī mārō te iwi, he uaua tā rātou mārāma atu.

23     Ā, kāore he aha kē atu hāunga te pakeke nui o te kupu, te kauhautanga me te poropititanga mō ngā pakanga, me ngā tautohetohenga, me ngā whakangaromanga, me te whakamahara tonu i a rātou mō te mate, ā, mō te roanga atu o te wā mutunga kore, ā, mō ngā whakawākanga me te mana o te Atua, ā, koinei mea katoa—e whakaohoho tonu ana i a rātou kia mau tonu ai tō rātou wehi ki te Ariki. E kī ana au kāore i kō mai i ēnei mea, me te mārāma nui o te kōrero, e aukati ai tā rātou whakangaromanga wawetanga iho. Ā, nō tēnei āhuatanga au e tuhituhi nei e pā ana ki a rātou.

24     Ā, i kite au i ngā pakanga i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai me ngā Rāmana i ōku rā.

25     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka koroheke haere ahau, ā, kua pahure atu ngā tau e whitu tekau mā iwa mai i te wā i wehe atu ai tō tātou matua a Rīhai i Hiruharama.

26     Ā, i kite au meake heke iho au ki tōku rua tūpāpaku, kua mahia ake e te mana o te Atua kia kauhau ahau, kia poropiti ahau ki tēnei iwi, me te whakapuaki i te kupu e ai ki te pono kei roto nei i te Karaiti. Ā, nāku tērā i whakapuaki i ōku rā katoa, ā, kua harikoa i tērā i runga i tō te ao.

And I bear record that the people of Nephi did seek diligently to restore the Lamanites unto the true faith in God. But our labors were vain; their hatred was fixed, and they were led by their evil nature that they became wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, full of idolatry and filthiness; feeding upon beasts of prey; dwelling in tents, and wandering about in the wilderness with a short skin girdle about their loins and their heads shaven; and their skill was in the bow, and in the cimeter, and the ax. And many of them did eat nothing save it was raw meat; and they were continually seeking to destroy us.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi did till the land, and raise all manner of grain, and of fruit, and flocks of herds, and flocks of all manner of cattle of every kind, and goats, and wild goats, and also many horses.

And there were exceedingly many prophets among us. And the people were a stiffnecked people, hard to understand.

And there was nothing save it was exceeding harshness, preaching and prophesying of wars, and contentions, and destructions, and continually reminding them of death, and the duration of eternity, and the judgments and the power of God, and all these things—stirring them up continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord. I say there was nothing short of these things, and exceedingly great plainness of speech, would keep them from going down speedily to destruction. And after this manner do I write concerning them.

And I saw wars between the Nephites and Lamanites in the course of my days.

And it came to pass that I began to be old, and an hundred and seventy and nine years had passed away from the time that our father Lehi left Jerusalem.

And I saw that I must soon go down to my grave, having been wrought upon by the power of God that I must preach and prophesy unto this people, and declare the word according to the truth which is in Christ. And I have declared it in all my days, and have rejoiced in it above that of the world.



27      Ā, meake au haere ai ki te wāhi o tōku okiokinga,  
kei tōku Kaihoko; nā tēnā e mōhio nei au ka okioki  
au i roto i a ia. Ā, e hari ana au i te rā e kākahuria ai  
tōku ira tangata e te mate kore, me te tū i tōna  
aroaro; hei konā kite au i tōna mata i runga i te  
āhuareka, ā, ka mea mai ia ki ahau: Haere mai ki  
ahau, koutou kua manaakitia nei, kua whakaritea he  
wāhi mōu i roto i ngā whare nunui o tōku Matua.  
Āmine.

And I soon go to the place of my rest, which is  
with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall  
rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall  
put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then  
shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto  
me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place pre-  
pared for you in the mansions of my Father. Amen.

## Ko te Pukapuka a Haroma

- 1 Nana ināianeī, māku, mā Haroma, e tuhituhi atu nei i ētahi kupu ruarua e ai ki te whakahau a tōku matua, a Īnohi, kia puritia ai ō mātou whakapapa.
- 2 Ā, i te mea he iti ēnei papa, i te mea hoki kua tuhia ēnei mea he whakaaro hei mea pai mō ō mātou tuākana ngā Rāmāna, nā reira, me tika pū taku tuhi iti; engari ka kore au e tuhi i ngā mea e pā ana ki aku poropititanga, aku whakakitenga rānei. Nā te mea he aha kē atu ngā mea hei tuhituhi māku i tua atu i ngā mea kua tuhia e ōku tūpuna matua? Nā te mea kihai rānei i whakakitea mai e rātou te mahere o te oranga? E mea atu nei au ki a koutou, Āe rā; ā, kāti anō māku tēnei.
- 3 Nana, e tika ana kia maha ngā mea me mahi i roto i tēnei iwi, nā te pakeke o ō rātou ngākau, me te turi o ō rātou taringa, me te kāpō o ō rātou hinengaro, me te mārō o ō rātou kakī; hei aha koa, he nui te aroha o tō tātou Atua ki a rātou, ā, kāore anō kia tahia atu rātou i te mata o te whenua.
- 4 Ā, he tokomaha kei waenganui i a mātou he maha ā rātou whakakitenga, nā te mea kāore rātou katoa i te kakī mārō. Ā, ko te hunga kāore i te kakī mārō me te whakapono anō rātou, e piritata ana rātou ki te Wairua Tapu, e whakaatu mai nei ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, e ai ki tō rātou whakapono.
- 5 Ināianeī nā, nana, kua pahemo atu ngā tau e rua rau, ā, kua kaha nei te iwi o Nīwhai i runga i te whenua. I ū rātou ki te pupuri ki te ture a Mohi me te whakatapu i te rā hāpati ki te Ariki. Ā, kihai rātou i kanga; kihai hoki rātou i takahi i ngā mea tapu. Ā, i uaua rawa atu ngā ture o te whenua.
- 6 Ā, kua whakamararatia rātou i runga i te nuinga o te mata o te whenua, me ngā Rāmāna anō hoki. I tokomaha rawa ake rātou i ngā Nīwhai; ā, i aroha rātou ki te kōhuru, ā, inu ai rātou i ngā toto kararehe.

## The Book of Jarom

Now behold, I, Jarom, write a few words according to the commandment of my father, Enos, that our genealogy may be kept.

And as these plates are small, and as these things are written for the intent of the benefit of our brethren the Lamanites, wherefore, it must needs be that I write a little; but I shall not write the things of my prophesying, nor of my revelations. For what could I write more than my fathers have written? For have not they revealed the plan of salvation? I say unto you, Yea; and this sufficeth me.

Behold, it is expedient that much should be done among this people, because of the hardness of their hearts, and the deafness of their ears, and the blindness of their minds, and the stiffness of their necks; nevertheless, God is exceedingly merciful unto them, and has not as yet swept them off from the face of the land.

And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked. And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

And now, behold, two hundred years had passed away, and the people of Nephi had waxed strong in the land. They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord. And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme. And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

And they were scattered upon much of the face of the land, and the Lamanites also. And they were exceedingly more numerous than were they of the Nephites; and they loved murder and would drink the blood of beasts.

7     Ā, i pahawa ake, i maha ā rātou whakaekenga mai ki a mātou, ngā Nīwhai, ki te whawhai. Engari, he tangata mārohirohi ō mātou kīngi me ō mātou kaiwhakahaere i roto i te whakapono o te Ariki; nā reira, i taea e mātou ngā Rāmana, ā, ka whakamōtītia atu rātou i ō mātou whenua, ā, ka whakapaea ō mātou pā, ngā wāhi noho katoa rānei o ō mātou whenua tuku iho.

8     I tokomaha haere mātou hoki, i horapa haere mātou hoki, i whairawa haere mātou hoki i te kōura, te hiriwā hoki, i ngā mea utu nui hoki, i te whakamahinga rākau hoki, i ngā whare, i ngā mihini hoki, i te rino me te kapa anō hoki, te parāhe me te tīra hoki, te hanganga o ngā tūmomo taputapu katoa hei ngaki i te whenua, ngā rākau whawhai hoki—āe rā, te pere mata koi, pūkoro pere hoki, te mātia hoki, te tao hoki, ngā whakaritenga whawhai katoa hoki.

9     Ā, nā te mea i pēnei tā mātou whakarite ki te tūtaki atu ki ngā Rāmana, kīhai rātou i kake ake ki runga i a mātou. Engari i mana te kupu a te Ariki, nāna i kōrero atu ki ō mātou tūpuna, e mea ana: Ina pupuri koutou i aku whakahaunga ka whaioranga koutou i te whenua.

10    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakatūpato ngā poropiti a te Ariki i te iwi o Nīwhai, e ai ki te kupu a te Atua, nā, ki te kore rātou e pupuri i ngā whakahaunga, engari ka taka iho ki te kino, ka whakangaromia atu i te mata o te whenua.

11    Nā reira, i tākare ngā poropiti, me ngā pirihī, me ngā kaiako, ki te whakahauhau i te iwi i runga i te manawanui kia kaha ai te iwi; e whakaako ana i te ture a Mohi, me tōna pūtake i homai ai; e whakapakepake ana i a rātou kia titiro whakamua ki te Mīhaia, me te whakapono ki a ia me te mea nei kua tae kē mai ia. Ā, nō tēnei āhua tā rātou whakaako i a rātou.

12    Ā, i pahawa ake nā tēnei mahi i tiakina e rātou te iwi mai i te whakangaromanga atu i te mata o te whenua; nā te mea i werohia atu ō rātou ngākau ki te kupu, e whakaohoho tonu ana i a rātou ki te rīpenetātanga.

13    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i pahure atu ngā tau e rua rau toru tekau mā waru—i runga i ngā ritenga o te whawhai, me ngā tautohetohenga, me ngā tītorehanga, mō te wāhi nui o te taima.

And it came to pass that they came many times against us, the Nephites, to battle. But our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord; wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

And we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war—yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

And thus being prepared to meet the Lamanites, they did not prosper against us. But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

Wherefore, the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah, and believe in him to come as though he already was. And after this manner did they teach them.

And it came to pass that by so doing they kept them from being destroyed upon the face of the land; for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

And it came to pass that two hundred and thirty and eight years had passed away—after the manner of wars, and contentions, and dissensions, for the space of much of the time.

14      Ā kāore au, a Haroma, e tuhi atu anō, nā te mea he  
iti ngā papa. Engari nana, e aku teina, e āhei ana  
koutou te aro atu ki ngā papa a Nīwhai; nā te mea  
nana, kua whaowhaoa i runga rā ngā kōrero mō ā  
tātou whawhai, e ai ki ngā tuhinga a ō tātou kīngi,  
ērā rānei i meinga ai e rātou kia tuhia.

15      Ā, ka tukuna atu e au ēnei papa ki roto i ngā  
ringaringa o taku tama a Omoni, kia puritia ai ēnā e  
ai ki ngā whakahaunga a ōku tūpuna matua.

And I, Jarom, do not write more, for the plates are  
small. But behold, my brethren, ye can go to the  
other plates of Nephi; for behold, upon them the  
records of our wars are engraven, according to the  
writings of the kings, or those which they caused to  
be written.

And I deliver these plates into the hands of my son  
Omni, that they may be kept according to the com-  
mandments of my fathers.

## Ko te Pukapuka a Omoni

- 1 Nana, i pahawa ake nāku, nā Omoni, kua whakahaua nei e tōku matua, a Haroma, kia tuhituhi noa au i runga i ēnei papa, kia tiakina ō mātou whakapapa—
- 2 Nā reira, i ōku rā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mōhio mai koutou, nā, i nui taku whawhai ki te hoari ki te tiaki i tōku iwi, ngā Nīwhai, i te takanga atu ki ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri, ngā Rāmana. Engari nana, ko au anō he tangata kino, kihai hoki au i pupuri i ngā ture me ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki e rite ana ki te mea tika hei mahinga māku.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake te pahuretanga atu i ngā tau e rua rau whitu tekau mā ono, ā, i maha ō mātou tau maungārongo; ā, i maha ō mātou tau pakanga kino me te whakaheke toto. Āe rā, hei whakarāpopoto, kua pahure atu ngā tau e rua rau waru tekau mā rua, ā, nāku ngā papa i tiaki e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a ōku tūpuna matua; ā, ka tukua iho ērā e ahau ki taku tama a Amaron. Ā, ka mutu i ahau.
- 4 Ināianei ā, māku, mā Amaron, e tuhituhi āku e tuhi ai, he mea torutoru noa iho, i te pukapuka a tōku matua.
- 5 Nana, i pahawa ake te pahuretanga atu i ngā tau e toru rau rua tekau, ā, i whakangaromia atu te wāhi kino ake o ngā Nīwhai.
- 6 Nā te mea kāore te Ariki e tuku, nō muri iho i tana ārahi i a rātou ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama me te tiaki, me te whakahaumarua i a rātou kei taka i ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri, āe rā, kāore ia e tuku kia kore ai e mana ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei e ia ki ō mātou tūpuna matua, e mea ana: Ki te kore koutou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga kua kore koutou e whaioranga i te whenua.
- 7 Nā reira, i toro atu te Ariki ki a rātou i runga i te whakawākanga nui; hei aha koa, nāna te hunga tika i tohu kia kua rātou e mate, engari i whakaputaina rātou i ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, nāku ngā papa i tuku atu ki taku teina a Kemihi.

## The Book of Omni

Behold, it came to pass that I, Omni, being commanded by my father, Jarom, that I should write somewhat upon these plates, to preserve our genealogy—

Wherefore, in my days, I would that ye should know that I fought much with the sword to preserve my people, the Nephites, from falling into the hands of their enemies, the Lamanites. But behold, I of myself am a wicked man, and I have not kept the statutes and the commandments of the Lord as I ought to have done.

And it came to pass that two hundred and seventy and six years had passed away, and we had many seasons of peace; and we had many seasons of serious war and bloodshed. Yea, and in fine, two hundred and eighty and two years had passed away, and I had kept these plates according to the commandments of my fathers; and I conferred them upon my son Amaron. And I make an end.

And now I, Amaron, write the things whatsoever I write, which are few, in the book of my father.

Behold, it came to pass that three hundred and twenty years had passed away, and the more wicked part of the Nephites were destroyed.

For the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

Wherefore, the Lord did visit them in great judgment; nevertheless, he did spare the righteous that they should not perish, but did deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that I did deliver the plates unto my brother Chemish.

9 Kei te tuhituhi au ināiane, a Kemihi, i ngā mea ruarua e tuhi nei au, i taua pukapuka anō i tuhia ai e tōku tuakana, nāna i tuhi ki tōna ake ringa; nāna i tuhi i te rā tonu i tukuna mai e ia ēnā mea ki ahau. Ā, i tiakina e māua ngā papa i runga i tēnei ritenga, nā te mea e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a ō mātou tūpuna matua. Ā, ka mutu i ahau.

10 Nana, ahau, a Apinaromo, te tama a Kemihi. Nana, i pahawa ake taku kitenga atu i ngā whawhai maha me ngā tautohetohenga nui i waenganui i tōku iwi, ngā Nīwhai, me ngā Rāmana; ā nāku, ki taku hoari ake, ngā Rāmana tokomaha i whakamate hei tiaki i ōku huānga.

11 Ā nana, kua whaowhaoa ngā kōrero mō tēnei iwi i runga i ngā papa kei ngā kīngi, e ai ki ngā whakatipuranga; ā, kāore au e mōhio ana ki tētahi whakakitenga, tētahi poropititanga rānei, hāunga ērā mea kua tuhia nei; nā reira, kua tuhia ērā mea e tika ana. Ā, ka mutu i ahau.

12 Nana, ko Amareki ahau, te tama a Apinaromo. Nana, ka paku kōrero au e pā ana ki a Mōhia, kua whakakīngihia i runga i ngā whenua o Harahemera; nana rā, i whakatūpatoria ia e te Ariki kia rere atu i te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, me wehe tahi atu anō te hunga katoa e whakarongo ai ki te reo o te Ariki ki waho i te whenua, ki te koraha—

13 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka rite tāna ki tā te Ariki i whakahau ai ki a ia. Ā, i wehe atu rātou ki waho i te whenua ki roto ki te koraha, ko te hunga katoa e whakarongo ai ki te reo o te Ariki; ā, i ārahina rātou e ngā kauhautanga maha me ngā poropititanga maha. Ā, i whakaakona tonutia rātou e te kupu a te Atua; ā, i ārahina rātou e te kaha o tana ringa, mā roto i te koraha kia tae iho rātou ki roto i te whenua e huaina nei ko te whenua o Harahemera.

14 Ā, i rokohina atu e rātou tētahi iwi i karangatia nei ko te iwi o Harahemera. Nā, he nui te hari i waenganui i te iwi o Harahemera; ā, i tino hari nui anō hoki a Harahemera, nā te mea kua tukuna e te Ariki te iwi o Mōhia me ngā papa parāhe e mau nei ngā kōrero a ngā Hūrai.

15 Nana, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kite a Mōhia i haere mai ai te iwi o Harahemera i Hiruharama i te wā i kahakina hereheretia atu ai a Terekia, kīngi o Hura, ki Papurona.

Now I, Chemish, write what few things I write, in the same book with my brother; for behold, I saw the last which he wrote, that he wrote it with his own hand; and he wrote it in the day that he delivered them unto me. And after this manner we keep the records, for it is according to the commandments of our fathers. And I make an end.

Behold, I, Abinadom, am the son of Chemish. Behold, it came to pass that I saw much war and contention between my people, the Nephites, and the Lamanites; and I, with my own sword, have taken the lives of many of the Lamanites in the defence of my brethren.

And behold, the record of this people is engraven upon plates which is had by the kings, according to the generations; and I know of no revelation save that which has been written, neither prophecy; wherefore, that which is sufficient is written. And I make an end.

Behold, I am Amaleki, the son of Abinadom. Behold, I will speak unto you somewhat concerning Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; for behold, he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness—

And it came to pass that he did according as the Lord had commanded him. And they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings. And they were admonished continually by the word of God; and they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness until they came down into the land which is called the land of Zarahemla.

And they discovered a people, who were called the people of Zarahemla. Now, there was great rejoicing among the people of Zarahemla; and also Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

Behold, it came to pass that Mosiah discovered that the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

- 16     Ā, i haere rātou i roto i te koraha, ā, ka whakawhitihia mai ngā wai nunui e te ringa o te Ariki, ki roto i te whenua i kitea ai rātou e Mōhia; ā, kua noho rātou i reira mai i taua wā ake.
- 17     Ā, i te wā i kitea rātou e Mōhia, kua tino tini noa atu rātou. Hei aha koa, kua maha ā rātou whawhai me ā rātou tautohetohe nanakia, ā, kua hingahinga hoki rātou i te hoari i tētahi wā, i tētahi wā; ā, kua whakatautauheha haeretia tō rātou reo; ā, kāore i mau mai i a rātou he tuinga; ā, i whakakāhoretia e rātou te oranga o tō rātou Kaihanga; ā, kīhai a Mōhia, te iwi rānei o Mōhia, i mārāma ki a rātou.
- 18     Engari i pahawa ake, nā, i mea a Mōhia kia whakaakona rātou i roto i tōna reo. Ā, i pahawa ake nō muri iho i tā rātou whakaakoranga i te reo o Mōhia, ka tākina e Harahemera ngā whakapapa o ōna matua, e ai ki ōna mahara; ā, kua tuhia ērā, engari kāore i roto i ēnei papa.
- 19     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakakotahi te iwi o Harahemera me te iwi o Mōhia; ā, ka whakatūria a Mōhia hei kīngi mō rātou.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake i ngā rā o Mōhia, i mauria mai tētahi kōhatu nui ki a ia e mau nei ngā whaowhaonga i runga; ā, nāna ngā whaowhaonga i whakamāori i runga i te homaitanga me te mana o te Atua.
- 21     Ā, i tākina e rātou tētahi kōrero mō tētahi tangata ko Koriatuma, me te patunga o tōna iwi. Ā, i kitea a Koriatuma e te iwi o Harahemera; ā, ka noho tahi ia me rātou mō te takiwā o ngā marama e iwa.
- 22     I kōrero anō hoki i ētahi kupu ruarua e pā ana ki ōna tūpuna. Ā, i haere mai ōna mātua tuatahi i te pourewa, i te wā i whakapōauautia e te Ariki te reo o te iwi; ā, ka tau iho te riri a te Atua ki runga i a rātou e rite ana ki āna whakawākanga, koinā he mea tika; ā, e takoto mararatia ana ō rātou kōiwi i te whenua whakateraki.
- 23     Nana, ko au, ko Amareki, i whānau mai i ngā rā o Mōhia; ā, kua kite au i tōna matenga i ahau e ora ana; ā, ko Peniamine, tana tama, e noho ana hei whakakapi mōna.

And they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters, into the land where Mosiah discovered them; and they had dwelt there from that time forth.

And at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous. Nevertheless, they had had many wars and serious contentions, and had fallen by the sword from time to time; and their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator; and Mosiah, nor the people of Mosiah, could understand them.

But it came to pass that Mosiah caused that they should be taught in his language. And it came to pass that after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written, but not in these plates.

And it came to pass that the people of Zarahemla, and of Mosiah, did unite together; and Mosiah was appointed to be their king.

And it came to pass in the days of Mosiah, there was a large stone brought unto him with engravings on it; and he did interpret the engravings by the gift and power of God.

And they gave an account of one Coriantumr, and the slain of his people. And Coriantumr was discovered by the people of Zarahemla; and he dwelt with them for the space of nine moons.

It also spake a few words concerning his fathers. And his first parents came out from the tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people; and the severity of the Lord fell upon them according to his judgments, which are just; and their bones lay scattered in the land northward.

Behold, I, Amaleki, was born in the days of Mosiah; and I have lived to see his death; and Benjamin, his son, reigneth in his stead.

- 24 Nana rā, kua kite au, i ngā rā o Peniamine, tētahi pakanga whakawehi, ā, he nui anō te whakahekenga toto i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai me ngā Rāmana. Engari nana, i whiwhi ngā Nīwhai i tētahi kaha nui ki runga i a rātou; āe rā, nā konā ka aia atu rātou e kīngi Peniamine ki waho i te whenua o Harahemera.
- 25 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka koroheke haere ahau; ā, kāore kau noa ōku uri, me taku mōhio he tangata tika a kīngi Peniamine i te aroaro o te Atua, nā reira, māku ēnei papa e tuku ake ki a ia, e ākina ana ngā tāngata katoa kia haere mai ai ki te Atua, te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, me te whakapono ki ngā poropititanga, ki ngā whakakitenga hoki, ki te minitātanga a ngā anahera hoki, ki te takohatanga o te kōrero i ngā reo kē hoki, ki te takohatanga o te whakamāori i ngā reo hoki, ki ngā mea katoa e pai ana; nā te mea kua puta mai ngā mea pai katoa i te Ariki: ā, kua puta mai ngā mea kino i te rēwera.
- 26 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina aroha, e hiahia ana ahau kia haere mai ai koutou ki te Karaiti, koia te Mea Tapu o Iharaira, me te whakapā atu ki tōna whakaoranga, me te kaha o tōna hokonga. Āe rā, haere mai ki a ia me te tāpae atu i ō koutou wairua katoa ki a ia, me te ū tonu i te nohopuku me te inoi, me te ū ki te mutunga; ā, e ora ana te Ariki, ka whakaorangia koutou.
- 27 Ināianeī ā, e hiahia ana ahau ki te paku kōrero e pā ana ki tētahi hunga i haere ake ki roto i te koraha kia hoki atu ai ki te whenua o Nīwhai; nā te mea he tokomaha rawa i hiahia ki te whakanoho i tō rātou whenua tuku iho.
- 28 Nā reira, i haere ake rātou ki roto i te koraha. Ā, ko tō rātou kaiwhakahaere tētahi tangata kaha, ā, he tangata kakī mārō, nā reira ia i whakatupu i tētahi ngangaretanga i waenganui i a rātou; ā, ka whakamatea katoatia rātou, atu i ngā mea rima tekau, i te koraha, ā, ka hoki atu anō rātou ki te whenua o Harahemera.
- 29 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kawea atu e rātou ētahi atu hunga tokomaha, ā, ka haere atu anō rātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 30 Ā, he teina tāku, tā Amareki, i haere tahi anō ia me rātou; ā, kāore au i rongo nō muri mai e pā ana ki a rātou. Ā, whano au ka takoto iho i tōku rua tūpāpaku; ā, kua kī ēnei papa. Ā, ka whakamutu au i aku kōrero.

And behold, I have seen, in the days of king Benjamin, a serious war and much bloodshed between the Nephites and the Lamanites. But behold, the Nephites did obtain much advantage over them; yea, insomuch that king Benjamin did drive them out of the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that I began to be old; and, having no seed, and knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations, and in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good; for there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord: and that which is evil cometh from the devil.

And now, my beloved brethren, I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption. Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

And now I would speak somewhat concerning a certain number who went up into the wilderness to return to the land of Nephi; for there was a large number who were desirous to possess the land of their inheritance.

Wherefore, they went up into the wilderness. And their leader being a strong and mighty man, and a stiffnecked man, wherefore he caused a contention among them; and they were all slain, save fifty, in the wilderness, and they returned again to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that they also took others to a considerable number, and took their journey again into the wilderness.

And I, Amaleki, had a brother, who also went with them; and I have not since known concerning them. And I am about to lie down in my grave; and these plates are full. And I make an end of my speaking.



## Ko ngā Kupu a Moromona

- 1 Ināianeī ā, ko au, a Moromona, e tata tuku ake ana i te tuhinga kua mahia e ahau ki ngā ringaringa o taku tama a Moronai, nana, kua kite au i te nuinga o te whakangaromanga o tōku iwi, ngā Nīwhai.
- 2 Ā, he maha nei ngā rautau i muri iho i te haerenga mai a te Karaiti e tuku atu nei au i ēnei tuhinga ki ngā ringaringa o taku tama; ā, e whakapono ana ahau ka kite ia i te whakangaromanga katoatanga o tōku iwi. Engari mā te Atua rā ia e tohu kia ora tonu ai, kia paku tuhituhi ia e pā ana ki a rātou, ā, e paku pā ana anō ki te Karaiti, hei painga pea ēnā ki a rātou hei tōna rā.
- 3 Ināianeī ā, ka paku kōrero au e pā ana ki tāku i tuhi nei; nā, nō muri iho i taku whakarāpopototanga mai i ngā papa a Nīwhai, heke iho ana ki te kīngitanga o tēnei kīngi Peniamine, kua kōrerotia nei e Amareki, i tirohia e au ngā tuhinga kua tukuna mai nei ki ōku ringaringa, ā, ka kite au i ēnei papa, i mau nei tēnei kōrero iti a ngā poropiti, mai i a Hākopa heke iho ki te kīngitanga o tēnei kīngi Peniamine, me ngā kupu maha anō hoki a Nīwhai.
- 4 Ā, ko ngā mea e āhuareka ana ki ahau i runga i ēnei papa, nā ngā poropititanga mō te haerenga mai a te Karaiti; ā, i te mōhio ōku tūpuna matua kua tutuki ngā mea maha; āe rā, e mōhio ana anō ahau kua tutuki ngā mea maha kua poropititia e pā ana ki a mātou tae atu ana ki tēnei rā, ā, me pahawa rawa ake ngā mea ka meatia hei tua atu i tēnei rā—
- 5 Nā reira, nāku ēnei mea i whiriwhiri, kia whakamutua taku tuhinga i runga, ka tīkina atu e au te toenga o aku tuhinga mai i ngā papa a Nīwhai; ā, kāore e taea ana e au te tuhi i te wāhi whakaterau o ngā mea o tōku iwi.
- 6 Engari nana, māku ēnei papa e kawe, e mau nei ēnei poropititanga me ngā whakakitenga, ā, ka whakanohoia tahitia ērā ki te toenga atu o taku tuhinga, nā te mea he nui tōna utu ki ahau; ā, e mōhio ana au ka nui anō tōna utu ki ōku tuākana.

## The Words of Mormon

And now I, Mormon, being about to deliver up the record which I have been making into the hands of my son Moroni, behold I have witnessed almost all the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And it is many hundred years after the coming of Christ that I deliver these records into the hands of my son; and it supposeth me that he will witness the entire destruction of my people. But may God grant that he may survive them, that he may write somewhat concerning them, and somewhat concerning Christ, that perhaps some day it may profit them.

And now, I speak somewhat concerning that which I have written; for after I had made an abridgment from the plates of Nephi, down to the reign of this king Benjamin, of whom Amaleki spake, I searched among the records which had been delivered into my hands, and I found these plates, which contained this small account of the prophets, from Jacob down to the reign of this king Benjamin, and also many of the words of Nephi.

And the things which are upon these plates pleasing me, because of the prophecies of the coming of Christ; and my fathers knowing that many of them have been fulfilled; yea, and I also know that as many things as have been prophesied concerning us down to this day have been fulfilled, and as many as go beyond this day must surely come to pass—

Wherefore, I chose these things, to finish my record upon them, which remainder of my record I shall take from the plates of Nephi; and I cannot write the hundredth part of the things of my people.

But behold, I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record, for they are choice unto me; and I know they will be choice unto my brethren.

- 7     Ā, māku tēnei mō tētahi take whai mōhiotanga; nā te mea e kōhimuhimutia nei ahau, e ai ki ngā mahinga a te Wairua o te Ariki kei roto nei i ahau. Ināianei ā, kāore au i te mōhio ki ngā mea katoa; engari e mōhio ana te Ariki ki ngā mea katoa e tae mai ai; nā reira, e mahi ana ia i roto i ahau kia meatia tāna e pai ai.
- 8     Ā, e hāngai ana taku inoi ki te Atua ki ōku tuākana, kia hoki mai anō rātou ki te mātauranga ki te Atua, āe rā, te hokonga a te Karaiti; kia rerehua mai anō rātou.
- 9     Ināianei ā, māku, mā Moromona, e ū tonu ki te whakamutu i taku tuhinga, e tangohia mai nei e ahau mai i ngā papa a Nīwhai; ā, e tuhituhi ana ahau e ai ki te mātauranga me te māramatanga kua homai nei ki ahau e te Atua.
- 10    Nā reira, i pahawa ake nō muri iho i tā Amareki tuku ake i ēnei papa ki roto i ngā ringaringa o kīngi Peniamine, ka mauria e ia, ā, ka whakanohoia ērā ki te taha o ērā atu papa, i mau nei ngā tuhinga kua tukuna iho e ngā kīngi, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga tae noa ki ngā rā o kīngi Peniamine.
- 11    Ā, i tukuna iho mai i a kīngi Peniamine, mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga tae noa ki te wā i taka iho ki roto i ōku ringaringa. Ā, māku, mā Moromona, e inoi atu nei ki te Atua kia tiakina ēnei mai i tēnei wā haere ake nei. Ā, e mōhio ana ahau ka tiakina ēnā; nā te mea kua tuhia ngā mea nunui ki runga rā, i konā te āhuatanga e whakawākia ai tōku iwi me ō rātou tuākana hei te rā whakamutungā nui, e ai ki te kupu a te Atua kua tuhia mai nei.
- 12    Ināianei ā, mō tēnei kīngi Peniamine—i reira ētahi tautohetohenga i waenganui i tōna iwi.
- 13    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i heke iho ngā tauā a ngā Rāmāna ki waho i te whenua o Nīwhai, ki te whawhai atu ki tōna iwi. Engari nana, ka whakahuihui tahitia e kīngi Peniamine āna tauā, ā, ka tū atu ia ki a rātou; ā, ka whawhai ia i runga i te kaha o tōna ake ringa, ki te hoari o Rāpana.

And I do this for a wise purpose; for thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me. And now, I do not know all things; but the Lord knoweth all things which are to come; wherefore, he worketh in me to do according to his will.

And my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

And now I, Mormon, proceed to finish out my record, which I take from the plates of Nephi; and I make it according to the knowledge and the understanding which God has given me.

Wherefore, it came to pass that after Amaleki had delivered up these plates into the hands of king Benjamin, he took them and put them with the other plates, which contained records which had been handed down by the kings, from generation to generation until the days of king Benjamin.

And they were handed down from king Benjamin, from generation to generation until they have fallen into my hands. And I, Mormon, pray to God that they may be preserved from this time henceforth. And I know that they will be preserved; for there are great things written upon them, out of which my people and their brethren shall be judged at the great and last day, according to the word of God which is written.

And now, concerning this king Benjamin—he had somewhat of contentions among his own people.

And it came to pass also that the armies of the Lamanites came down out of the land of Nephi, to battle against his people. But behold, king Benjamin gathered together his armies, and he did stand against them; and he did fight with the strength of his own arm, with the sword of Laban.

- 14     Ā, ka kakari atu rātou ki ō rātou hoariri i runga i te kaha o te Ariki, tae atu ana ki tā rātou patupatu i ngā Rāmana manomano maha. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kakari atu rātou ki ngā Rāmana tae atu ki te wā i peia atu ai rātou i ō rātou whenua tuku iho katoa.
- 15     Ā, i pahawa ake nō muri iho i te putanga mai o ngā Karaiti teka, ā, ka katia hoki ō rātou māngai, ā, ka whiua rātou kia rite ki ō rātou hē;
- 16     Ā, whai muri iho i te putanga mai o ngā poropiti teka, me ngā kaikauhau teka me ngā kaiako teka ki waenganui i te iwi, ā, kua whiua katoatia ēnei kia rite ki ō rātou hē; ā, whai muri iho i ngā tautohetohenga nui me ngā tītorehanga maha ki ngā Rāmana, nana, i pahawa ake i a kīngi Peniamine, me te āwhina a ngā poropiti tapu i waenganui nei i tōna iwi—
- 17     Nana rā, he tangata tapu a kīngi Peniamine, ā, nāna tōna iwi i whakahaere i runga i te tika; ā, he tokomaha ngā tangata tapu i te whenua, ā, i kōrerotia e rātou te kupu a te Atua i runga i te kaha me te mana; ā, i koi rawa tā rātou nā te kakī mārō o te iwi—
- 18     Nā reira, nā tō ēnei āwhina, a kīngi Peniamine, nā tana whakapau i te kaha katoa o tōna tinana me te mauri katoa o tōna wairua, me ngā poropiti hoki, i whakatau iho anō te maungārongo ki runga i te whenua.

And in the strength of the Lord they did contend against their enemies, until they had slain many thousands of the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did contend against the Lamanites until they had driven them out of all the lands of their inheritance.

And it came to pass that after there had been false Christs, and their mouths had been shut, and they punished according to their crimes;

And after there had been false prophets, and false preachers and teachers among the people, and all these having been punished according to their crimes; and after there having been much contention and many dissensions away unto the Lamanites, behold, it came to pass that king Benjamin, with the assistance of the holy prophets who were among his people—

For behold, king Benjamin was a holy man, and he did reign over his people in righteousness; and there were many holy men in the land, and they did speak the word of God with power and with authority; and they did use much sharpness because of the stiffneckedness of the people—

Wherefore, with the help of these, king Benjamin, by laboring with all the might of his body and the faculty of his whole soul, and also the prophets, did once more establish peace in the land.

# Ko te Pukapuka a Mōhia

## Mōhia 1

- 1 Ā, kāore ianei he tautohetohenga i te whenua katoa o Harahemara, i waenganui i te iwi katoa o kīngi Peniamine, nō konei rā i tau tonu ai te maungārongo i ngā toetoenga rā katoa o kīngi Peniamine.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, tokotoru āna tama; ā, i karangatia ō rātou ingoa ko Mōhia, ko Herorumu, ko Heramana. Ā, i meatia e ia kia whakaakona rātou i roto katoa i te reo o ōna tūpuna matua, mā reira rātou e meinga he tāne mārāma; ā, kia mōhio anō rātou e pā ana ki ngā poropititanga kua kōrerotia e ngā māngai o ō rātou tūpuna matua, kua tukuna ki a rātou e te ringa o te Ariki.
- 3 Ā, i whakaakona anōtia e ia e pā ana ki ngā tuhinga kua whaowhaoa ki runga i ngā papa parāhe, e mea ana: E aku tama, kei te hiahia au kia mahara koutou me i kore ēnei papa, e mau nei ēnei tuhinga me ēnei whakahaunga, kua noho pū tonu tātou i te kūaretanga, ā mohoa noa nei anō, kāore e mōhio ana ki ngā mea ngaro a te Atua.
- 4 Nā te mea kīhai i taea e tō tātou matua, e Rīhai, te maumahara ki ēnei mea katoa, hei whakaako ki āna tamariki, mehemea kīhai ia i āwhinatia ai e ēnei papa; nā te mea i ākona ia i roto i te reo o ngā Ihipiana, nō reira, i taea e ia te pānui i ēnei whaowhaonga, me te whakaako i ērā ki āna tamariki, mā konā, ka taea e rātou te whakaako ki ā rātou tamariki, e whakatutukihia ana i reira ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, ā mohoa noa nei.
- 5 Ko tāku ki a koutou, e aku tama, me i kore ēnei mea, kua puritia, ā, kua tiakina e te ringa o te Atua, kia pānuitia ai e tātou, ā, kia māramatia ai e tātou āna mea ngaro, kia tau ai āna whakahaunga ki mua i ō tātou karu i ngā wā katoa, kua memeha pū anō te whakapono o ō tātou tūpuna matua, ā, kua pērā tātou i ō tātou tuākana, ngā Rāmana, e korekore nei rātou i te mōhio e pā ana ki ēnei mea, e kore pū nei rānei e whakapono ki ēnā i a rātou e whakaakona ana, nā ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua, kāore nei i te tika.

# The Book of Mosiah

## Mosiah 1

And now there was no more contention in all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who belonged to king Benjamin, so that king Benjamin had continual peace all the remainder of his days.

And it came to pass that he had three sons; and he called their names Mosiah, and Helorum, and Helaman. And he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

And he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, saying: My sons, I would that ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance, even at this present time, not knowing the mysteries of God.

For it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates; for he having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

I say unto you, my sons, were it not for these things, which have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes, that even our fathers would have dwindled in unbelief, and we should have been like unto our brethren, the Lamanites, who know nothing concerning these things, or even do not believe them when they are taught them, because of the traditions of their fathers, which are not correct.

6 E aku tama, e hiahia ana au kia mahara ai koutou he pono ēnei kōrero, ā, he pono anō hoki ēnei tuhinga. Ā nana, ko ngā papa a Nīwhai anō hoki, e mau nei ngā tuhinga me ngā kōrero a ō tātou tūpuna matua mai i te wā i wehe atu rātou i Hiruharama tae noa mai ki nāianeī, ā, he pono ērā; ā, ka taea e tātou te mōhio he pono aua mea nā te mea kei mua tonu ērā i ō tātou karu.

7 Ināianeī ā, e aku tama, e hiahia ana au kia mahara ai koutou kia āta tirohia ēnei mea, kia puta he painga ki a koutou i konā; ā, e hiahia ana au kia puritia e koutou ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, kia whai painga koutou i runga i te whenua e ai ki ngā kupu whakaari i whakaaria mai nei e te Ariki ki ō tātou tūpuna matua.

8 Ā, he maha atu anō ngā mea i whakaakona ai e kīngi Peniamine ki āna tama, kāore nei i tuhia i roto i tēnei pukapuka.

9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā kīngi Peniamine whakakōpani i tana whakaako i āna tama, nā ka koroheketia ia, ā, ka kite anō ia meake haere ai ia i te huarahi o te ao katoa; nō reira, i whakaaro ia e tika ana kia tuku iho i te kīngitanga ki runga i tētahi o āna tama.

10 Nō reira, ka meatia e ia kia kūmea mai a Mōhia ki tōna aroaro; ā, koinei ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e ia ki a ia, e mea ana: E taku tama, e hiahia ana au kia whakapuaki atu koe puta noa i tēnei whenua ki waenganui i tēnei iwi katoa, i te iwi rānei o Harahemara, me te iwi o Mōhia e noho ana i te whenua, mā reira rātou whakahuihuia tahitia ai; nā te mea hei āpōpō au e whakapuaki atu ai ki tōku iwi nei i tōku māngai ake māu hei kīngi, hei rangatira mō runga i tēnei iwi kua homai nei e te Ariki tō tāua Atua ki a tāua.

11 Hei āpiti atu, māku tētahi ingoa e tapa ki tēnei iwi, mā reira rātou e mōhiotia ai i tua atu i ngā iwi katoa kua kūmea mai nei e te Ariki te Atua i te whenua o Hiruharama; ā, e pēnei ana au nā te mea he iwi ū rātou ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki.

12 Ā, māku tētahi ingoa e tapa nei ki runga i a rātou kua kore rawa e murua atu, hāunga mā te mahi kino.

O my sons, I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true. And behold, also the plates of Nephi, which contain the records and the sayings of our fathers from the time they left Jerusalem until now, and they are true; and we can know of their surety because we have them before our eyes.

And now, my sons, I would that ye should remember to search them diligently, that ye may profit thereby; and I would that ye should keep the commandments of God, that ye may prosper in the land according to the promises which the Lord made unto our fathers.

And many more things did king Benjamin teach his sons, which are not written in this book.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of teaching his sons, that he waxed old, and he saw that he must very soon go the way of all the earth; therefore, he thought it expedient that he should confer the kingdom upon one of his sons.

Therefore, he had Mosiah brought before him; and these are the words which he spake unto him, saying: My son, I would that ye should make a proclamation throughout all this land among all this people, or the people of Zarahemla, and the people of Mosiah who dwell in the land, that thereby they may be gathered together; for on the morrow I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people, whom the Lord our God hath given us.

And moreover, I shall give this people a name, that thereby they may be distinguished above all the people which the Lord God hath brought out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I do because they have been a diligent people in keeping the commandments of the Lord.

And I give unto them a name that never shall be blotted out, except it be through transgression.

- 13     Āe rā, hei āpiti atu ko tāku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, nā, mēnā ka taka iho tēnei iwi tino makau nō te Ariki ki roto i ngā mahi kino, me te huri hei iwi whakarihariha me tētahi iwi pūremu nui, nā, ka tukua ake rātou e te Ariki, mā reira rātou meinga ai he iwi ngoikore pērā i ō rātou tuākana; ā, kua kore rātou e tiakina tonutia e tōna mana taurite kore, ā, e tōna mana whakamīharo, pērā i tana tiakanga i ō tātou tūpuna matua i mua ā mohoa noa nei.
- 14     Nā te mea ko tāku ki a koutou, nā, me i kore i torona atu e ia tōna ringa ki te tiaki i ō tātou tūpuna matua kua taka iho rātou ki ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana, ā, kua meinga hei marurenga nō tō rātou mauāhara.
- 15     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i tā kīngi Peniamine whakakōpani i ēnei kōrero ki tana tama, ka tukuna iho ki a ia te mana i runga i ngā āhuatanga katoa o te kīngitanga.
- 16     Ā, hei āpiti atu, i tukuna anōtia iho ki a ia te mana i runga i ngā tuhinga kua whaowhaoa ki runga i ngā papa parāhe; me ngā papa a Nīwhai anō hoki; waihoki, ko te hoari o Rāpana, me te pōtakataka, arā, te kaitohu nāna ō tātou tūpuna matua i ārahi mā roto i te koraha, kua whakaritea e te ringa o te Ariki mā reira rātou ārahina ai, e ai ki tō ia tangata āta aro me tō ia tangata ū i tukuna ki a ia.
- 17     Nō reira, i a rātou e kore nei e ū ana, kāore rātou i whai pai, kāore hoki rātou i kāneke whakamua i tō rātou haerenga, engari ka āia whakamuritia, ā, i kūmea iho e rātou te whakatakariri o te Atua ki runga i a rātou; ā, nō reira rātou i patua ai ki te hemokai me ngā whakamamaetanga kino, kia whakaohooho ai i a rātou kia mahara ki tō rātou haepapa.
- 18     Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu a Mōhia, ā, ka mahia tā tōna matua i whakahaua ai ia, ā, ka whakapuakina ki te iwi e noho ana i te whenua o Harahemara mā reira rātou whakahuihui tahi ai, kia haere ake ki te temepara ki te whakarongo ki ngā kupu e kōrerotia ai e tōna matua ki a rātou.

Yea, and moreover I say unto you, that if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he has hitherto preserved our fathers.

For I say unto you, that if he had not extended his arm in the preservation of our fathers they must have fallen into the hands of the Lamanites, and become victims to their hatred.

And it came to pass that after king Benjamin had made an end of these sayings to his son, that he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

And moreover, he also gave him charge concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi; and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

Therefore, as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in their journey, but were driven back, and incurred the displeasure of God upon them; and therefore they were smitten with famine and sore afflictions, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

And now, it came to pass that Mosiah went and did as his father had commanded him, and proclaimed unto all the people who were in the land of Zarahemla that thereby they might gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the words which his father should speak unto them.

## Mōhia 2

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake nō muri iho mai i tā Mōhia mahi i tā tōna matua i whakahau ai ki a ia, me tana whakapuaki puta noa i te whenua katoa, nā, i whakahuihui tahi te iwi i a rātou anō puta noa i te whenua katoa, kia haere ake rātou ki te temepara ki te whakarongo ki ngā kupu e kōrerotia ai e kīngi Peniamine ki a rātou.
- 2 Ā, he tatauranga nui rawa i reira, kīhai i tatauria nā tō rātou tokomaha; nā te mea kua whakatokomahatia nuitia rātou, ā, kua meinga he mea kaha i te whenua.
- 3 Ā, i kawea hoki e rātou ngā mea mātāmua o ā rātou kāhui, kia tāpaea he whakahere me ngā tāpaenga tahu e ai ki te ture a Mohi;
- 4 Ā, kia tuku whakawhetai anō hoki rātou ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, nāna rātou i kawē mai ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, nāna hoki rātou i whakaora i ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri, ā, kua whakatūria ngā tāngata tika hei kaiako mō rātou, me tētahi tangata tika hei kīngi mō rātou, nāna i mau ai te rongō i te whenua o Harahemara, nāna hoki rātou i whakaako ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, kia kikī ai rātou i te aroha ki te Atua ki ngā tāngata katoa anō hoki.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i haere ake rātou ki te temepara, i whakatūria e rātou ō rātou tēneti taiāwhio noa, tēnā tāne, tēnā tāne me tōna whānau, koia ko tana hoawahine, me āna tama, me āna tamāhine, me ā rātou tama, me ā rātou tamāhine, mai i te mātāmua heke iho ki te pōtiki, he mea motu tēnā whānau i tēnā whānau.
- 6 Ā, ka whakatūria e rātou ō rātou tēneti taiāwhio noa i te temepara, tō ia tāne tēneti, tō ia tāne tēneti e aro hāngai atu ana te whatitoka ki te temepara, mā konā e taea ai e rātou te noho tonu i roto i ō rātou tēneti me te whakarongo atu ki ngā kupu e kōrerotia ai e kīngi Peniamine ki a rātou;
- 7 Nā te tino nui o te whakaminenga kīhai i taea e kīngi Peniamine te whakaako i a rātou i roto i ngā pakitara o te temepara, nō reira, i meatia ai e ia kia whakatūria tētahi pourewa, mā konā tana iwi e rongō ai i ngā kupu e kōrerotia ai e ia ki a rātou.

## Mosiah 2

And it came to pass that after Mosiah had done as his father had commanded him, and had made a proclamation throughout all the land, that the people gathered themselves together throughout all the land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them.

And there were a great number, even so many that they did not number them; for they had multiplied exceedingly and waxed great in the land.

And they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

And also that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and had appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king, who had established peace in the land of Zarahemla, and who had taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

And it came to pass that when they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple, that thereby they might remain in their tents and hear the words which king Benjamin should speak unto them;

For the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple, therefore he caused a tower to be erected, that thereby his people might hear the words which he should speak unto them.

8     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata tana kōrero atu ki tana iwi mai i te pourewa; ā, kīhai i taea e rātou te rongō atu i ana kupu nā te tino nui o te whakaminenga; nō reira i meatia ai e ia kia tuhia ngā kupu i kōrero ai ia kātahi ka tukuna atu ki waenganui i te hunga kāore nei i raro i te tangi o tana reo, kia riro ai i a rātou ana kupu.

9     Ā, koinei ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai, i meatia ai e ia kia tuhia, e mea ana: E aku teina, e koutou katoa kua huihui tahi nei i a koutou anō, koutou e taea ana te rongō i aku kupu e kōrerotia ai e au ki a koutou i tēnei rā; nā, kāore au i whakahau atu ki a koutou kia haere mai ki konei ki te tākaro ki ngā kupu e kōrerotia ai e au, engari kia whakarongo mai koutou ki ahau, me te whakatūwhera i ō koutou taringa kia rongō ai koutou, me ō koutou ngākau kia mārāma ai koutou, me ō koutou hinengaro kia wherawherahia ngā mea ngaro a te Atua hei tirohanga mā koutou.

10    Kāore au i whakahau atu ki a koutou kia haere mai ki konei kia wehi ai i ahau, kia whakaaro rānei koutou ki ahau ko au ake tētahi mea nui ake i te ira tangata.

11    Engari, he rite au ki a koutou, e noho ana i raro i ngā ngoikoretanga katoa o te tinana me te hinengaro; heoi, kua whiriwhiria au e tēnei iwi, ā, kua whakawāhia e tōku matua, ā, kua tukuna e te ringa o te Atua kia noho au hei rangatira, hei kīngi i runga i tēnei iwi; ā, kua tiakina, ā, kua tohungia e tōna mana kāore nei ōna rite, ki te mahi whakarato ki a koutou i runga i ōku ngoi, ōku whakaaro me ōku kaha katoa kua homai nei e te Ariki ki ahau.

12    Māku e kī atu ki a koutou i te mea kua tukuna au kia whakapaua ōku rā ki te mahi whakarato mō koutou, ā mohoa noa nei, ā, kīhai au i whai atu i te kōura, i te hiriwā rānei, i tētahi tū taonga rānei i a koutou;

13    Kāore rānei au i tuku kia whakahereheretia koutou i roto i ngā poka, kia kaua rānei koutou e whakataurekareka tētahi i tētahi, kia kaua rānei koutou e kōhuru, e pāhua rānei, e whānako rānei, e mahi pūremu rānei; kāore rānei au i tuku i a koutou kia mahia tētahi tūmomo whakarihariha, ā, kua whakaakona koutou kia puritia e koutou ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki, i roto i ngā mea katoa kua whakahaua koutou e ia—

And it came to pass that he began to speak to his people from the tower; and they could not all hear his words because of the greatness of the multitude; therefore he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice, that they might also receive his words.

And these are the words which he spake and caused to be written, saying: My brethren, all ye that have assembled yourselves together, you that can hear my words which I shall speak unto you this day; for I have not commanded you to come up hither to trifle with the words which I shall speak, but that you should hearken unto me, and open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

I have not commanded you to come up hither that ye should fear me, or that ye should think that I of myself am more than a mortal man.

But I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind; yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

I say unto you that as I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness, and have taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord, in all things which he hath commanded you—



- 14     Ā, ko au nei anō, kua mahi ki ōku ringaringa ake hei mahi whakarato mō koutou, ā, kia kore ai koutou e whakataumahatia e ngā tāke, kia kore ai anō tētahi pikaunga taumaha e tau ai ki runga i a koutou—ā, koinei mea katoa kua kōrerotia nei e au, he kaiwhakaatu anō koutou i tēnei rā.
- 15     Heoi, e aku teina, kāore au i mahi i ēnei mea hei whakapehapeha māku, kāore rānei au e kōrero atu i ēnei mea ki a koutou hei whakahē i a koutou; engari, e kōrero ana au i ēnei mea ki a koutou e mōhio ai koutou ki tōku hinengaro e hē kore nei i te aroaro o te Atua i tēnei rā.
- 16     Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, i te mea kua kōrero atu au ki a koutou mō taku whakapau i ōku rā i roto i te mahi whakarato ki a koutou, kāore au i te hiahia ki te whakapehapeha, nā te mea i te mahi whakarato noa au ki te Atua.
- 17     Ā nana, e kōrero atu au i ēnei mea ki a koutou kia ako ai koutou i te mātauranga; kia ako ai koutou ina mahi whakarato koutou ki ō koutou huānga e mahi whakarato noa ana koutou ki tō koutou Atua.
- 18     Nana, kua kīa au e koutou ko au tō koutou kīngi; ā, mehemea au, e kīa nei e koutou ko tō koutou kīngi, e ū nei ki te mahi whakarato ki a koutou, tēnā, me kore rānei koutou e ū ki te mahi whakarato koutou ki a koutou anō?
- 19     Ā nana hoki, mehemea au, e kīa nei e koutou ko tō koutou kīngi, kua whakapaua e ia ōna rā i roto i te mahi whakarato ki a koutou, hei ahakoa i te mahi whakarato ia ki te Atua, e tika ana kia whakawhetai atu koutou ki a ia, Anō te tikanga nui kia whakawhetai atu koutou ki tō koutou Kīngi i te rangi!
- 20     Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e aku teina, nā, mehemea ka tukuna katoatia atu e koutou ngā whakawhetai me ngā whakamoemiti e taea nei e ō koutou wairua te pupuri, ki taua Atua nāna nei koutou i hanga, nāna hoki koutou i atawhai, i tiaki, ā, i meatia ai hoki kia hari koutou, ā, nāna hoki i tuku kia noho koutou i runga i te maungārongo tētahi me tētahi—

And even I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you, and that ye should not be laden with taxes, and that there should nothing come upon you which was grievous to be borne—and of all these things which I have spoken, ye yourselves are witnesses this day.

Yet, my brethren, I have not done these things that I might boast, neither do I tell these things that thereby I might accuse you; but I tell you these things that ye may know that I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

Behold, I say unto you that because I said unto you that I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

And behold, I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom; that ye may learn that when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

Behold, ye have called me your king; and if I, whom ye call your king, do labor to serve you, then ought not ye to labor to serve one another?

And behold also, if I, whom ye call your king, who has spent his days in your service, and yet has been in the service of God, do merit any thanks from you, O how you ought to thank your heavenly King!

I say unto you, my brethren, that if you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another—

- 21 Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea ka mahi koutou ki a ia nāna nei koutou i hanga mai i te tīmatanga, ā, e tiaki ana i a koutou i tēnei rā, i tēnei rā, mā te tuku hā ki a koutou, kia ora ai, ā, kia haere ai, ā, kia mahi ai i tōu ake hiahia, me te tautoko pū anō i a koutou mai i tētahi wā ki tētahi atu—ko tāku, mehemea ka mahi koutou ki a ia i runga i ō koutou wairua katoa hei ahakoa rā ka koretake tonu koutou hei pononga.
- 22 Ā nana, ko tāna noa iho e tono nei ki a koutou ko te pupuri i ana whakahaunga; ā, kua whakaaria mai nei e ia ki a koutou, nā, mehemea ka puritia e koutou ana whakahaunga ka whai oranga koutou i runga i te whenua; ā, kua kore rawa ia e kōtiti atu i ērā kua kōrerohia e ia; nō reira, mehemea ka puritia e koutou ana whakahaunga māna koutou e manaaki, māna koutou e kake.
- 23 Ināianei ā, i te tuatahi, nāna koutou i hanga, nāna anō ō koutou oranga i tuku iho ki a koutou, nā konā koutou e noho nama ana ki a ia.
- 24 Ā tuarua, ko tāna e tono nei ki a koutou kia mahi koutou i tāna i whakahau ai ki a koutou; nā konā ki te pērā koutou, ka manaakitia wawetia koutou e ia; nō reira rā kua utua koutou e ia. Ā, e noho nama tonu ana koutou ki a ia, ināianei, ā kō ake nei, mō āke tonu atu; nō reira, mō te aha koutou e whakamanamana ai?
- 25 Ā, ko taku pātai ināianei, ka taea e koutou te kōrero i te aha mō koutou ake anō? Ko taku whakautu, Kāo. Kāore e taea ana e koutou te kōrero he taurite koutou ki te puehu o te whenua; heoi, kua hangaia koutou i te puehu o te whenua; engari nana, nōna tonu tēnā nāna nei koutou i hanga.
- 26 Ā, ko au, ko au nei anō, e kīa ana e koutou ko tō koutou kīngi, kāore noa iho ōku painga kē ake i a koutou; nā te mea nō te puehu anō au. Ā, kei te kite koutou kua koroheketia ahau, ā, whano ka riro ake i ahau tēnei tinana māori ki tōna whaea, ki te oneone.
- 27 Nō reira, he pērā i tāku i kī atu ai ki a koutou, nā, kua mahi au mō koutou, e hīkoi ana i runga i te hinengaro hē kore i te araro o te Atua, ahakoa pērā kua mea nei au kia huihui tahi mai koutou, kia kitea harakoretia au, kia kore ai hoki ō koutou toto e tau ai ki runga i ahau, ina tū au kia whakawākia ai e te Atua mō ngā mea kua whakahaua au e ia e pā ana ki a koutou.

I say unto you that if ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning, and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath, that ye may live and move and do according to your own will, and even supporting you from one moment to another—I say, if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be unprofitable servants.

And behold, all that he requires of you is to keep his commandments; and he has promised you that if ye would keep his commandments ye should prosper in the land; and he never doth vary from that which he hath said; therefore, if ye do keep his commandments he doth bless you and prosper you.

And now, in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

And secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless you; and therefore he hath paid you. And ye are still indebted unto him, and are, and will be, forever and ever; therefore, of what have ye to boast?

And now I ask, can ye say aught of yourselves? I answer you, Nay. Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it belongeth to him who created you.

And I, even I, whom ye call your king, am no better than ye yourselves are; for I am also of the dust. And ye behold that I am old, and am about to yield up this mortal frame to its mother earth.

Therefore, as I said unto you that I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God, even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me concerning you.

- 28 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kua mea ahau i a koutou kia huihui tahi mai kia whakakorehia ō koutou toto i ōku kākahu, i tēnei wā anō whano au ka heke iho ki tōku rua tūpāpaku, kia heke iho ai au i runga i te rangimārie, ā, kia hono atu tōku wairua ora tonu ki ngā kapa waiata i runga rawa ki te waiata i ngā whakamoemitanga mō tētahi Atua tika.
- 29 Hei āpiti, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kua mea au kia huihui tahi mai koutou i a koutou anō, kia whakapuaki atu ki a koutou kāore e taea tonutia e au hei kaiako mō koutou, hei kīngi rānei mō koutou;
- 30 Nā te mea hei tēnei wā pū anō, e tino wiriwiri ana tōku tinana katoa i a au e ngana ana ki te kōrero atu ki a koutou; engari kei te tautoko te Ariki te Atua i a au, ā, kua tukuna ahau kia kōrero atu ki a koutou, ā, kua whakahau ahau kia whakapuakina atu ki a koutou i tēnei rā, nā, ko taku tama a Mōhia hei kīngi, hei rangatira i runga i a koutou.
- 31 Ināianei ā, e aku teina, e hiahia ana ahau kia pērā tonu tā koutou i tā koutou i mua. E pērā ana tā koutou pupuri i aku whakahaunga, me ngā whakahaunga anō hoki o tōku matua, ā, kua whai oranga, ā, kua tiakina kei taka ki ngā ringaringa o ō koutou hoariri, waihoki ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a tāku tama, i ngā whakahaunga rānei a te Atua ka tukuna mai nei ki a koutou e ia, ka whai oranga koutou i runga i te whenua, ā, ka kore ō koutou hoariri e whai kaha i runga i a koutou.
- 32 Engari, E tōku iwi, kia tūpato kei tupu ngā tautohetohenga i waenganui i a koutou, kātahi ka pirangi koutou ki te whakarongo ki te wairua kino, kua kōrerotia nei e tōku matua, e Mōhia.
- 33 Nana rā, kua whakatauhia tētahi whiu ki runga i te tangata e pirangi nei ki te whakarongo ki taua wairua; nā te mea ki te pirangi ia ki te whakarongo ki a ia, me te ū tonu atu tae noa atu ki tana matenga i ana hara, ka inumia e ia te whakapōuriuritanga tonutanga ki tōna ake wairua; nā, ka riro atu i a ia hei utu māna ko te whakawhiunga mutunga kore, kua takahia e ia te ture a te Atua e tauaro ana i tāna i mātau ai.

I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together that I might rid my garments of your blood, at this period of time when I am about to go down to my grave, that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

And moreover, I say unto you that I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together, that I might declare unto you that I can no longer be your teacher, nor your king;

For even at this time, my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath suffered me that I should speak unto you, and hath commanded me that I should declare unto you this day, that my son Mosiah is a king and a ruler over you.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should do as ye have hitherto done. As ye have kept my commandments, and also the commandments of my father, and have prospered, and have been kept from falling into the hands of your enemies, even so if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

But, O my people, beware lest there shall arise contentions among you, and ye list to obey the evil spirit, which was spoken of by my father Mosiah.

For behold, there is a wo pronounced upon him who listeth to obey that spirit; for if he listeth to obey him, and remaineth and dieth in his sins, the same drinketh damnation to his own soul; for he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

34 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore tētahi kei waenganui i a koutou, hāunga ā koutou tamariki kāore anō kia whakaakona e pā ana ki ēnei mea, kāore hoki e mōhio ana e noho nama ana koutou ki tō koutou Matua i te rangi, kia hoatu māna ō koutou rawa katoa me koutou anō; ā, kua whakaakona anōtia e pā ana ki ngā tuhinga e mau nei ngā poropititanga kua kōrerotia nei e ngā poropiti tapu, tae noa iho mai ki te wā i tō tātou matua, i a Rihai, i wehe atu ai i Hiruharama;

35 Waihoki anō, ko ngā mea katoa kua kōrerotia e ō tātou tūpuna matua tae noa mai ki nāianeī. Ā nana, i kōrerotia anō hoki e rātou ērā i whakahaua rātou e te Ariki; nō reira, e tika ana, ā, e pono ana aua mea.

36 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e aku teina, nō muri iho i tā koutou mōhioranga me tā koutou whakaakoranga katoatanga i ēnei mea, mēnā ka hara koutou me te kōtiti kē atu i ērā kua kōrerotia nei, nā, ka tawhiti atu koutou i te Wairua o te Ariki, kia kore ia e whai wāhi atu ki te arataki i a koutou i ngā huarahi whai whakaaro kia manaakitia ai koutou, kia angitū ai, ā, kia tiakina ai—

37 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ko te tangata e pēnei ai, ko ia tonu anō e tutū kau ana ki te Atua; nō reira ia e pirangi nei ki te whakarongo ki te wairua kino, ā, ka meinga he hoariri ki te tika katoa; nō reira, kāore e whai wāhi ana te Ariki mōna, nā te mea kāore ia e noho ana i ngā temepara tapu kore.

38 Nō reira ki te kore taua tangata e rīpenetā, me te noho ū tonu tae atu ki tōna matenga hei hoariri ki te Atua, ka whakaarahia e te manatika o te Atua tōna wairua ora tonu ki tētahi mātauranga tino nui mō tōna kaniawhea, nā konā ia nuku wehi atu i te aroaro o te Ariki, ā, ka whakakīngia tōna ngākau e te kaniawhea, me te mamae, me te pōuri, e rite nei ki tētahi ahi e kore nei e taea te tinei, e kake ake ana ōna mura mō āke tonu atu.

39 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore te aroha noa e whaitake ki taua tangata; nō reira ko tōna utu whakamutunga ko te whakamamaetanga mutunga kore.

I say unto you, that there are not any among you, except it be your little children that have not been taught concerning these things, but what knoweth that ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are; and also have been taught concerning the records which contain the prophecies which have been spoken by the holy prophets, even down to the time our father, Lehi, left Jerusalem;

And also, all that has been spoken by our fathers until now. And behold, also, they spake that which was commanded them of the Lord; therefore, they are just and true.

And now, I say unto you, my brethren, that after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths that ye may be blessed, prospered, and preserved—

I say unto you, that the man that doeth this, the same cometh out in open rebellion against God; therefore he listeth to obey the evil spirit, and becometh an enemy to all righteousness; therefore, the Lord has no place in him, for he dwelleth not in unholy temples.

Therefore if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

And now I say unto you, that mercy hath no claim on that man; therefore his final doom is to endure a never-ending torment.

40 E, koutou ngā koroua, me koutou ngā taitama anō hoki, me koutou ngā tamariki nonohi e mārama ana i aku kupu, nā te mea kua ngāwari taku kōrero atu ki a koutou kia mārama ai koutou, e inoi ana ahau kia oho ake koutou ki tētahi maharatanga e pā ana ki te hunga kua taka iho nei ki roto i te hē.

41 Hei āpiti atu, e hiahia ana ahau kia whakaarohia e koutou te āhuetanga manaaki me te koa o te hunga e pupuri nei i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua. Nana rā, kua manaakitia rātou i roto i ngā mea katoa, ā-tinana mai, ā-wairua mai; ā, mēnā ka pūmau tonu tae atu ana ki te mutunga ka whakawhiwhia rātou ki roto i te rangi, kia noho tahi ai i reira me te Atua i tētahi āhuetanga koa mutunga kore. E mahara, mahara e pono ana ēnei mea; nā te mea kua kōrerotia e te Ariki te Atua.

O, all ye old men, and also ye young men, and you little children who can understand my words, for I have spoken plainly unto you that ye might understand, I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God. For behold, they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness. O remember, remember that these things are true; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

## Mōhia 3

- 1 Waihoki rā e aku teina, me aro mai rā koutou, nā te mea he kōrero anō tāku ki a koutou; nana rā, kei ahau anō ētahi mea hei kōrero atu ki a koutou e pā ana ki ērā e haere mai ana.
- 2 Ā, kua whakamōhiotia mai ngā mea e kōrero atu nei au ki a koutou e tētahi anahera nō te Atua. Ā, ka mea mai ia ki ahau: E oho; ā, ka oho au, ā nana, i te tū ia i tōku aroaro.
- 3 Ā, ka mea mai ia ki ahau: E oho, me te whakarongo ki ngā kupu e kōrero atu ai au ki a koe; nana rā, kua haere mai au ki te whakapuaki i te rongo whakahari o te koa nui.
- 4 Nā, kua rongo te Ariki i ō inoi, ā, kua arotake nei i tōu tika, ā, kua tukuna mai au ki te whakapuaki atu ki a koe kia harikoa ai koe; ā, kia whakapuaki atu koe ki tō iwi, kia kī anō ai rātou i te harikoa.
- 5 Nana rā, e tata mai ana te wā, ā, kāore hoki i te tawhiti, ka heke iho mai te Ariki Kaha Rawa, koia anō e kīngi ana, koia i mua, ā, koia katoa nō te āke tonu atu ki te āke tonu atu, i runga i taua mana, ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, ka noho i tētahi tapenākara uku, ā, ka haere whakamua atu ki waenganui i te tangata, e mahi merekara nui ana, pērā i te whakaora i ngā tūroro, te whakaara i te hunga mate, e mea ana i ngā kōpa kia hīkoi, i ngā matapō kia kite, i ngā turi anō hoki kia rongo, ā, e whakaora ana i ngā tū mate katoa.
- 6 Ā, māna ngā rēwera e pei atu, ngā wairua kino rānei e noho nei i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 7 Anana, ka pā ngā whakawainga ki a ia, me ngā mamae o te tinana, te matekai, te mateinu, me te ruha, ka nui ake i tō te tangata e taea ana, hāunga ko te mate; nana rā, ka heke iho te toto i ngā pōnaho katoa o te kiri, nā te nui o tōna auē mō te whakarihariha me ngā mōrikarika o tēnei iwi.
- 8 Ā, ka karangatia ia ko Ihu Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua, te Matua o te rangi me te whenua, te Kaihanga o ngā mea katoa mai i te timatanga; ā, ka karangatia tōna whaea ko Mere.

## Mosiah 3

And again my brethren, I would call your attention, for I have somewhat more to speak unto you; for behold, I have things to tell you concerning that which is to come.

And the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God. And he said unto me: Awake; and I awoke, and behold he stood before me.

And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee; for behold, I am come to declare unto you the glad tidings of great joy.

For the Lord hath heard thy prayers, and hath judged of thy righteousness, and hath sent me to declare unto thee that thou mayest rejoice; and that thou mayest declare unto thy people, that they may also be filled with joy.

For behold, the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

- 9 Anana, ka haere mai ia ki tōna ake anō, kia tau mai ai te whakaoranga ki ngā tamariki a te tangata mā roto pū i te whakapono i runga i tōna ingoa; ā, nō muri katoa i tēnei ka whakaarohia ia e rātou he tangata, me te kī ake he rēwera tōna, ā, ka whakawhiua ia, ā, ka rīpekatia ia.
- 10 Ā, ka ara ake ia i te mate i runga i te rā tuatoru; ā nana, ka tū ia ki te whakawā i te ao; ā nana, e meatia ana ēnei mea katoa e tau ai tētahi whakawākanga tika ki runga i ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 11 Nana rā, e whakamārie ana anō hoki ōna toto i ngā hara o te hunga kua taka iho i te haranga o Arama, kīhai i mōhio he aha te hiahia o te Atua e pā ana ki a rātou, kua hara rānei i runga i te kuare.
- 12 Engari auē, auē te mate mō te tangata e mōhio ana kei te tutū ia ki te Atua! Nā te mea kāore e tau mai te whakaoranga ki tētahi e pēnei ana hāunga mā te rīpenetātanga me te whakapono ki runga i te Ariki Ihu Karaiti.
- 13 Ā, kua tonoa e te Ariki te Atua ana poropiti tapu ki waenganui i ngā tamariki katoa a te tangata, ki te whakapuaki i ēnei mea ki ngā hapū katoa, ki ngā iwi, ā, ki ngā reo, mā reira te hunga e whakapono ai ki te haerenga mai a te Karaiti, koia tonu e whiwahi ai tētahi murunga i ō rātou hara, ā, ka hari i runga i te hari nui rawa, me te mea nei kua tae kē mai ia ki waenganui i a rātou.
- 14 Heoi anō i kitea e te Ariki he iwi kakī mārō tana iwi, ā, ka whakatakotoria e ia tētahi ture mō rātou, arā, ko te ture a Mohi.
- 15 Ā, he maha ngā tohu, me ngā mea whakamīharo, me ngā ritenga, me ngā ātārangi i whakaatuhia e ia ki a rātou, e pā ana ki tana haerenga mai; ā, i kōrero anō hoki ngā poropiti tapu ki a rātou e pā ana ki tana haerenga mai; hei aha koa rā i whakapakekehia e rātou ō rātou ngākau, ā, kīhai i mārāma kāore he take ō te ture a Mohi hāunga mā roto i te whakamārietanga o ōna toto.
- 16 Ā, mehemea hoki i taea e ngā tamariki nonohi te hara kua kore e taea te whakaora i a rātou; engari e mea atu nei au kia koutou kua manaakitia rātou; nana rā, he pērā i a Arama, i te tikanga o te tangata rānei, e taka ai rātou, waihoki e whakamārie ana ngā toto o te Karaiti i ō rātou hara.

And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

For behold, and also his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

But wo, wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

Yet the Lord God saw that his people were a stiff-necked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

And many signs, and wonders, and types, and shadows showed he unto them, concerning his coming; and also holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; and yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

And even if it were possible that little children could sin they could not be saved; but I say unto you they are blessed; for behold, as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

- 17 Hei āpiti atu, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kua kore he ingoa kē atu e homai, he huarahi kē atu rānei, he aha noa rānei e puta mai ai te whakaoranga ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, mā roto anake i te ingoa o te Karaiti, te Ariki Kaha Rawa.
- 18 Nana rā e whakawā ana ia, ā, he tika tana whakawākanga; ā, ehara i te mea ka ngaro te wairua o te kōhungahunga e mate nei i tōna kōhungahungatanga; engari e inumia ana e te tangata te whakawākanga ki ō rātou ake wairua ki te kore rātou e whakaiti i a rātou anō me te meinga kia rite ki ngā tamariki nonohi, me te whakapono ki te whakaoranga mā roto i ngā toto whakamārie o te Karaiti, te Ariki Kaha Rawa, i mua, ināianei, ā, hei ngā rā e kainamu mai nei.
- 19 Nā te mea he hoariri te ira tangata ki te Atua, ā, kua pērātia mai i te takanga o Arama, ā, ka pērā anō mō āke tonu atu, ki te kore ia e tuku i a ia anō ki ngā whakawainga a te Wairua Tapu, me te karo atu i te ira tangata kia meinga hei tangata tapu mā roto i te whakamārietanga o te Karaiti te Ariki, ā, kia meinga kia rite ki tētahi tamaiti, e ngohengohe ana, e māhaki ana, e whakaiti ana, e manawanui ana, e kī ana i te aroha, e hiahia ana kia ngohengohe ki ngā mea katoa e tika ana ki te Ariki kia whakapā atu ki runga ki a ia, e pērā ana i tētahi tamaiti e ngohengohe ana ki tana matua.
- 20 Hei āpiti atu, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ka tae mai te wā e puta whānui atu te mātauranga mō tētahi Kaiwhakaora ki waenganui i ngā iwi katoa, i ngā hapū, i ngā reo, me ngā huihuinga tāngata.
- 21 Ā nana, ina tae mai taua wā, kāore tētahi e kitea harakoretia i te aroaro o te Atua, hāunga ko ngā tamariki nohinohi, mā roto anake i te rīpenetātanga me te whakapono i runga i te ingoa o te Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa.
- 22 Ā, hei tēnei wā tonu, ina oti i a koe te whakaako i tō iwi ngā mea kua whakahaua koe e tō Ariki te Atua, hei reira tonu kāore e kitea harakoretia atu anō i te tirohanga a te Atua, e ai ki ngā kupu anake kua kōrerotia atu e au ki a koe.
- 23 Ināianei ā, kua kōrero atu ahau i ngā kupu kua whakahaua ahau e te Ariki te Atua.

And moreover, I say unto you, that there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For behold he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever, unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

And moreover, I say unto you, that the time shall come when the knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

And behold, when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

And even at this time, when thou shalt have taught thy people the things which the Lord thy God hath commanded thee, even then are they found no more blameless in the sight of God, only according to the words which I have spoken unto thee.

And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.



- 24     Ā, e pēnei ana te kōrero a te Ariki: Ka tū rātou hei whakaaturanga pīataata ki tēnei iwi, hei te rā whakawā; mā konei rātou e whakawākia ai, ia tangata, ia tangata e ai ki āna mahinga, mehemea i pai, mehemea rānei i kino.
- 25     Ā, mehemea i kino ka whakataua rātou ki tētahi tirohanga weriwēri ki ō rātou kaniawhea me ō rātou mōrikarika, nā konā ka nuku wehi atu rātou mai i te aroaro o te Ariki ki tētahi āhuatanga pōuri, ā, ki tētahi whakamamaetanga mutunga kore, e kore nei e taea e rātou te hoki mai i reira; nō reira kua inumia e rātou te whakawākanga ki ō rātou ake wairua.
- 26     Nō reira, kua inumia e rātou mai i te kapu o te riri a te Atua, kāore tonu e taea ana e te tika te kaiponu atu i a rātou pērā anō i tōna kore i taea te kaiponu atu i te takanga a Arama nā tana kai i te hua i rāhuitia ai; nō reira, kāore te aroha e whaitake tonu ana ki runga i a rātou mō āke tonu atu.
- 27     Ā, he rite tō rātou whakamamaetanga me he roto ahi whānāriki, tē taea ōna mura te tīnei, me tōna pawa e kake tonu ake ana mō āke tonu atu. Kua whakahau pēnei mai te Ariki ki ahau. Āmine.

And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and endless torment, from whence they can no more return; therefore they have drunk damnation to their own souls.

Therefore, they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit; therefore, mercy could have claim on them no more forever.

And their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever. Thus hath the Lord commanded me. Amen.

## Mōhia 4

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i whakakōpani a kīngi Peniamine i tana kōrero i ngā kupu kua tukuna ki a ia e tētahi anahera a te Ariki, nā, ka whiua tana tītiro huri noa atu ki runga i te whakaminenga, nana, kua hinga iho rātou ki runga i te papa, nā te mea kua tau te wehi o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou.
- 2 Ā, kua kite rātou i a rātou anō i tō te kikokiko tino āhua, he iti rawa iho i te puehu o te whenua. Ā, kotahi anō tō rātou reo ki te karanga, e mea ana: Auē kia aroha mai, me te whakapā mai i ngā toto whakamārie o te Karaiti kia whiwhi ai mātou i tētahi murunga i ō mātou hara, ā, kia whakamākia ō mātou ngākau; nā te mea e whakaponono ana mātou i a Ihu Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua, nāna te rangi me te whenua i hanga, me ngā mea katoa; ko ia anō e heke iho mai ai ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tana kōrerotanga i ēnei kupu ka tau iho te Wairua o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou, ā, i kiki rātou i te hari, kua whiwhi rātou i tētahi murunga i ō rātou hara, ā, kua mārie ō rātou hinengaro, nā tō rātou tino whakaponono nui i a Ihu Karaiti ko ia ka haere mai, e ai ki ngā kupu kua kōrerotia ki a rātou e kīngi Peniamine.
- 4 Ā, ka tūwhera anō a kīngi Peniamine i tōna māngai, ā, ka tīmata tana kōrero atu ki a rātou: E aku hoa me aku teina, e aku huānga me taku iwi, kei te hiahia au kia aro mai anō koutou, kia rongō ai, ā, kia mārama ai koutou i te toenga o aku kupu e kōrero atu ai au ki a koutou.
- 5 Nana rā, mehemea kua whakaohokia koutou i tēnei wā e te mātauranga o te painga o te Atua ki tō koutou korehanga, me tō koutou āhuatanga tikanga kore me tō koutou āhuatanga taka—

## Mosiah 4

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord, that he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and behold they had fallen to the earth, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them.

And they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth. And they all cried aloud with one voice, saying: O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

And it came to pass that after they had spoken these words the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ who should come, according to the words which king Benjamin had spoken unto them.

And king Benjamin again opened his mouth and began to speak unto them, saying: My friends and my brethren, my kindred and my people, I would again call your attention, that ye may hear and understand the remainder of my words which I shall speak unto you.

For behold, if the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state—

- 6 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea kua tau mai koutou ki tētahi mātauranga o te painga o te Atua, me tōna kaha taurite kore, me tōna mātauranga, me tōna manawanui, me tōna manawaroa ki ngā tamariki a te tangata; waihoki, ko te whakamārietanga kua whakaritea mai i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao, mā reira tau ai te whakaoranga ki te tangata e whakawhirinaki ai ki te Ariki, me te ū ki te pupuri i āna whakahaunga, me te ū tonu i roto i te whakapono tae atu anō ki te mutunga o tōna oranga, ko tāku e kī nei te oranga o te tinana ira tangata—
- 7 Ko tāku, ko tēnei te tangata e whiwhi nei i te whakaoranga, mā roto i te whakamārietanga kua whakaritea mai nei mai i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao mō ngā tāngata katoa, te hunga i ora mai nei nō te takanga o Arama, te hunga rānei e ora ana ināianei, te hunga rānei meake whānau mai ai, tae atu pū anō ki te mutunga o te ao.
- 8 Ā, mā konei tonu e puta mai ai te whakaoranga. Ā, kāore he whakaoranga kē atu anō hāunga tēnei kua kōrerotia nei; kāore rānei he huarahi kē atu anō e whakaorangia ai te tangata atu i te huarahi anake kua kōrerotia atu e au ki a koutou.
- 9 Me whakapono ki te Atua; me whakapono he tūturu ia, ā, nāna ngā mea katoa i hanga, i te rangi me te whenua; me whakapono kei a ia te mātauranga katoa, te mana katoa, i te rangi me te whenua; me whakapono kāore e mārāma ana te tangata i ngā mea katoa e taea ana e te Ariki te mārāma.
- 10 Hei āpiti anō, me whakapono, nā, me rīpenetā koutou i ō koutou hara me te whakarērea anō hoki ēnā, me te whakaiti i a koutou anō i te aroaro o te Atua; me te inoi i runga i te ngākau pono kia murua koutou e ia; ināianei ā, mehemea e whakapono ana koutou i ēnei mea katoa, tēnā, mahia.

I say unto you, if ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life, I mean the life of the mortal body—

I say, that this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

And this is the means whereby salvation cometh. And there is none other salvation save this which hath been spoken of; neither are there any conditions whereby man can be saved except the conditions which I have told you.

Believe in God; believe that he is, and that he created all things, both in heaven and in earth; believe that he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth; believe that man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

And again, believe that ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you; and now, if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

- 11     Ā, koinei anō tāku kupu ki a koutou pēnā anō i tāku i mua, nā te mea kua tau mai koutou ki tētahi mātauranga o te korōria o te Atua, mehemea rānei kua mōhio koutou i tōna painga, ā, kua rongu rānei i tōna aroha, ā, kua whiwhi anō i tētahi murunga i ō koutou hara, nā konā pupū ai te harikoa tino nui rawa i ō koutou wairua, ahakoa tēnā kei te hiahia au kia mahara koutou, me te mau tonu i ngā wā katoa i te rokiroki o mahara, te tino nui o te Atua, me tō koutou ake korehanga, me tōna painga me tōna manawaroa ki a koutou, ngā tāngata tikanga kore, me te whakaiti i a koutou anō i roto pū anō i ngā hōhonutanga o te whakaiti, e karangatia ana te ingoa o te Ariki ia rā, ia rā, me te pūmau i runga i te whakapono ki taua mea e puta mai ai, kua kōrerotia e te māngai o te anahera.
- 12     Ā, nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ki te pēnei koutou ka hari tonu koutou i ngā wā katoa, ā, ka kikī anō koutou i te aroha o te Atua, me te mau tonu tētahi murunga i ō koutou hara; ā, ka tupu koutou i te mātauranga o tana korōria nāna koutou i hanga, i te mātauranga rānei o taua mea e tika ana, ā, e pono ana.
- 13     Ā, ka kore ō koutou hiahia ki te tūkinu tētahi i tētahi, engari kia noho i runga i te rangimārie, me te hoatu ki tēnā tangata, ki tēnā tangata tāna e tika ai.
- 14     Ā, kāore koutou e tuku kia matekai ā koutou tamariki, kia tahanga rānei; kāore rānei koutou e tuku kia takahia e rātou ngā ture a te Atua, kia kakari me te tautohetohe hoki tētahi ki tētahi, kia mahi mō te rēwera, koia te rangatira o te hara, koia rānei te wairua kino kua kōrerotia e ō tātou tūpuna matua, koia tētahi hoariri ki te tika katoa.
- 15     Engari mā koutou rātou e whakaako kia hīkoi ai i ngā huarahi o te pono me te whaiwhakaaro; mā koutou rātou e whakaako kia aroha tētahi i tētahi, me te mahi whakarato tētahi ki tētahi.
- 16     Hei āpiti atu, mā koutou ake anō e atawhai te hunga e hiahia ana i tā koutou atawhai; mā koutou ā koutou rawa e tuku ki te tangata e hiahia ana; ā, e kore koutou e tuku kia inoi noa ake te tangata pīnono ki a koutou, ā, kia panaia atu ia ki waho kia mate.

And again I say unto you as I have said before, that as ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

And behold, I say unto you that if ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins; and ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

And ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

And ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

But ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

And also, ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

- 17 Tērā pea ka kī ake koutou: Nā te tangata tonu tōna pōuri i tō ai; nō reira māku tōku ringa e kaiponu, ā, kāore au e hoatu ki a ia aku kai, kāore rānei au e wāwāhi atu ki a ia aku rawa kia kore ai ia e mamae, nā te mea he tika ōna whiunga—
- 18 Engari ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, E te tangata, ko te tangata e pēnei ai he take nui tāna kia rīpenetā ai; ā, ki te kore ia e rīpenetā mō ngā mea kua mahia e ia ka mate ia āke tonu atu, ā, kāore ia e whai wāhi atu ki te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 19 Nana rā, ehara rānei tātou katoa i te tangata pīnono? Kāore rānei tātou katoa e whakawhirinaki atu ki runga i te Mea kotahi anō, arā, te Atua, mō ngā rawa kei a tātou, mō te kai me te kākahu, ā, mō te kōura, ā, mō te hiriwā, ā, mō ō tātou taonga o ia āhua, o ia āhua?
- 20 Ā, nana, hei tēnei wā pū anō, i te karanga ake koutou i tōna ingoa, me te pīnono atu mō tētahi murunga i ō koutou hara. Ā, kua tukuna e ia kia pīnono noa atu koutou? Kāo; kua maringi iho tōna Wairua ki runga i a koutou, ā, kua meatia kia kīkī ō koutou ngākau i te koa, ā, kua meatia kia kōpanihia ō koutou māngai kia kore ai koutou e kuihi te waha i te tino nui o tō koutou koa.
- 21 Ināianeī ā, mehemea te Atua, nāna koutou i hanga, koia hoki te mea e whakawhirinaki nei koutou mō ō koutou orange, ā, mō ngā mea katoa kei a koutou, ā, mō koutou anō hoki, e hoatu ana ki a koutou ngā mea tika katoa e inoi nei koutou i runga i te whakapono, e whakapono ana ka whiwhi koutou, Nā konei anō, me wāwāhi atu i ō koutou rawa tētahi ki tētahi.
- 22 Ā, mehemea ka whakawākia e koutou te tangata e inoi ake ai ki a koutou mō ō koutou rawa kia kore ai ia e mate, ā, ka whakahē i a ia, tērā noa ake te tika o tā koutou whakahēnga mō koutou i kaiponu ō koutou rawa, ehara noa nei nō koutou engari kē nō te Atua, nōna anō hoki ō koutou orange; ahakoa rā tērā kāore tonu koutou e tuku inoi ake, e rīpenetā rānei mō te mea kua mahia e koutou.
- 23 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, auē te mate mō taua tangata, nā te mea ka ngaro ngātahi atu rāua ko ana rawa; ināianeī ā, ka kōrero atu au i ēnei mea ki te hunga e whairawa ana i ngā mea o te ao nei.

Perhaps thou shalt say: The man has brought upon himself his misery; therefore I will stay my hand, and will not give unto him of my food, nor impart unto him of my substance that he may not suffer, for his punishments are just—

But I say unto you, O man, whosoever doeth this the same hath great cause to repent; and except he repenteth of that which he hath done he perisheth forever, and hath no interest in the kingdom of God.

For behold, are we not all beggars? Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

And behold, even at this time, ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins. And has he suffered that ye have begged in vain? Nay; he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

And now, if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive, O then, how ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

And if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth; and yet ye put up no petition, nor repent of the thing which thou hast done.

I say unto you, wo be unto that man, for his substance shall perish with him; and now, I say these things unto those who are rich as pertaining to the things of this world.

24 Hei āpiti, ko tāku ki te hunga rawakore, koutou kāore nei ō koutou rawa engari kua ranea, kia ora tonu ia rā, ia rā; ko te tikanga o tāku, ko koutou katoa e whakaparahako atu i te tangata pīnono, nā te mea kāore ō koutou rawa; e hiahia ana ahau kia kī ake ai i ō koutou ngākau: Kāore au e hoatu nā te mea kāore aku rawa, engari mehemea he rawa ōku kua hoatu au.

25 Ināianei ā, mehemea ka kī koutou i tēnei i roto i ō koutou ngākau kua hē kore tonu koutou, ki te kore kua whakahēngia koutou; ā, e tika ana tō koutou whakahēngia nā te mea e apo ana koutou ki taua mea kāore anō kia riro atu i a koutou.

26 Ināianei ā, mō te whakaaro ki ēnei mea kua kōrero atu nei au ki a koutou—arā, mō te whakaaro kia mana tonu ai te murunga i ō koutou hara mai i tētahi rā ki tētahi rā, kia hīkoi hē kore koutou i te aroaro o te Atua—e hiahia ana ahau kia wāwāhi atu koutou i ō koutou rawa ki te hunga rawakore, tēnā tangata, tēnā tangata e ai ki ngā rawa kei a ia, pērā i te whāngai i te hunga hiakai, te whakakākahu i te hunga tahanga, te torotoro atu ki te hunga tūroro me te āwhina atu hei mauru i te mamae, ā-wairua mai, ā-tinana mai, e ai ki ō rātou hiahia.

27 Ā, kia tika te whakamahi i ēnei mea katoa i runga i te whai mātauranga me te tika; nā te mea ehara i te mea me tere ake tā te tangata oma i tāna e taea ai. Hei āpiti anō, me tika pū tana pukumahi, kia toa ai ia i reira i te taonga whakaihūwaka; nō reira, me tika te whakamahi i ngā mea katoa.

28 Ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara koutou, ko ngā tangata kei waenganui i a koutou e mino ana i tana kiritata me whakahoki atu i taua mea kua minoa nei e ia, e ai ki tāna i whakaae ai, ki te kore rānei ka hara koutou; ā, tērā pea nā tāu mahi ka hara anō hoki tō kiritata.

29 Ā, kāti ake, kāore e taea ana e au te kōrero atu ki a koutou i ngā mea katoa mā konā koutou hara ai; nā te mea he huhua ngā huarahi me ngā ara, nā, he huhua noa atu nā konā tē taea e au te tatau.

And again, I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not, but if I had I would give.

And now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

And now, for the sake of these things which I have spoken unto you—that is, for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God—I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength. And again, it is expedient that he should be diligent, that thereby he might win the prize; therefore, all things must be done in order.

And I would that ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

And finally, I cannot tell you all the things whereby ye may commit sin; for there are divers ways and means, even so many that I cannot number them.

30 Engari e taea noatia ana tēnei e au te kōrero ki a koutou, nā, ki te kore koutou e hopohopo i a koutou anō, me ō koutou whakaaro, me ā koutou kupu, me ā koutou mahinga, me te ū ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, me te ū tonu i runga i te whakapono ki aua mea kua rangona e koutou e pā ana ki te haerenga mai a te Ariki, tae atu ana ki te mutunga o ō koutou oranga, me mate koutou. Ināianei ā, E te tangata, mahara, kua hoki e ngaro.

But this much I can tell you, that if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandments of God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish. And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

## Mōhia 5

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te otinga o tā kīngi Peniamine kōrero ki tana iwi, ka tonoa e ia ki waenganui i a rātou, i runga i te hiahia kia mōhio ai i tana iwi mehemea i te whakapono rātou ki ngā kupu kua kōrerotia e ia ki a rātou.
- 2 Ā, kotahi tonu tō rātou reo ki te karanga, e mea ana: Āe rā, e whakapono ana mātou ki ngā kupu katoa kua kōrerotia nei e koe ki a mātou; waihoki, e mōhio ana mātou e tika ana, e pono ana ēnā mea nā te Wairua o te Ariki Kaha Rawa, nāna mātou i whakarerekē i roto i a mātou, i roto rānei i ō mātou ngākau, nā, kāore ō mātou hiahia ki te mahi kino, engari ki te mahi tonu i te pai.
- 3 Ā, ko mātou ake anō hoki, i runga i te painga mutunga kore o te Atua, me ngā whakakitenga a te Wairua, he tirohanga nui tō mātou ki ngā mea e puta mai ai; ā, mēnā i tika pū, kua taea e mātou te poropiti mō ngā mea katoa.
- 4 Ā, nā tō mātou whakapono ki ngā mea kua kōrerotia nei ki a mātou e tō mātou kīngi i tau mai ai tēnei mātauranga nui, mā konā mātou e hari nei i tēnei hari nui whakaharaha.
- 5 Ā, e hiahia ana mātou kia uru ki roto ki tētahi kawenata ki tō tātou Atua kia mahia tāna e pai ai, me te ngohengohe ki āna whakahaunga i ngā mea katoa ka whakahaua mātou e ia, mō te toenga katoa o ō mātou rā, kia kore ai mātou e tō mai ai ki runga i a mātou anō tētahi whakamamaetanga-mutunganga kore, kua kōrerotia e te anahera, kia kore ai mātou e inu mai i te kapu o te riri a te Atua.
- 6 Ināianeī ā, koinei ngā kupu i hiahiatia nei e kīngi Peniamine i a rātou; nō reira rā, i kī atu ia ki a rātou: Kua kōrerotia e koutou ngā kupu i hiahia ai au; ā, he kawenata tika te kawenata kua meatia e koutou.
- 7 Ināianeī ā, nā te kawenata kua meatia e koutou ka karangatia koutou ko ngā tamariki a te Karaiti, āna tama, me āna tamāhine; nana rā, kua whakatupu wairua mai ia i a koutou i tēnei rā; nā, e mea ana koutou kua whakarerekēhia ō koutou ngākau mā roto i te whakapono i runga i tōna ingoa; nō reira, kua whānau mai koutou i a ia, ā, kua meinga koutou hei tama, hei tamāhine āna.

## Mosiah 5

And now, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had thus spoken to his people, he sent among them, desiring to know of his people if they believed the words which he had spoken unto them.

And they all cried with one voice, saying: Yea, we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; and also, we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

And we, ourselves, also, through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

And it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

And we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

And now, these are the words which king Benjamin desired of them; and therefore he said unto them: Ye have spoken the words that I desired; and the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

And now, because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; for behold, this day he hath spiritually begotten you; for ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.



- 8     Ā, kua whakaherekoretia koutou i raro i tēnei māhunga, ā, kāore he māhunga kē atu mā konā koutou e whakaherekoretia ai. Kāore kē atu tētahi ingoa mā konā puta mai ai te whakaoranga; nō reira, e hiahia ana ahau kia tango ki runga i a koutou te ingoa o te Karaiti, ko koutou katoa kua uru atu ki tētahi kawenata ki te Atua kia ngohengohe koutou tae atu ki te mutunga o ō koutou oranga.
- 9     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ko te tangata e pēnei ai ka kitea i te ringa matau o te Atua, nā te mea ka mōhio ia ki te ingoa e karangatia nei ia; nā te mea ka karangatia ia ki te ingoa o te Karaiti.
- 10    Ināianeī ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, me karanga atu te tangata kāore e tango ki runga ki a ia te ingoa o te Karaiti ki tētahi atu ingoa; nō reira, ka kitea ia e ia anō i te ringa mauī o te Atua.
- 11    Ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara anō hoki koutou, nā, koinei te ingoa i kī ai au māku e hoatu ki a koutou kua kore rawa e mukua atu, hāunga mā roto i te hē; nō reira, kia tūpato kei hē koutou, kei mukua atu te ingoa i ō koutou ngākau.
- 12    Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara koutou kia mau tonu te ingoa e tuhituhi tonutia ana i roto i ō koutou ngākau, kia kore ai koutou e kitea i te ringa mauī o te Atua, engari kia rongō, ā, kia mōhio koutou ki te reo e karangatia ai koutou me te ingoa anō hoki māna koutou e karanga.
- 13    Nā te mea me pēhea hoki te tangata e mōhio ai ki te rangatira kīhai nei ia i mahi noa ki a ia, ā, koia hoki tētahi tauhou ki a ia, ā, he tawhiti noa atu i ngā whakaaro me ngā hiahia o tōna ngākau?
- 14    Hei āpiti anō, ka tango atu tētahi tangata i te kaihe o tōna kiritata, ā, ka mau tonu atu? Ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, Kāo; e kore rawa e tuku noa kia whāngaia atu i waenganui i ana kāhui, engari ka āia atu, ā, ka makaia atu ki waho. Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka pērātia i roto i a koutou ki te kore koutou e mōhio ki te ingoa e karangatia nei koutou.

And under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh; therefore, I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

And now it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name; therefore, he findeth himself on the left hand of God.

And I would that ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression; therefore, take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

I say unto you, I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

For how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served, and who is a stranger unto him, and is far from the thoughts and intents of his heart?

And again, doth a man take an ass which belongeth to his neighbor, and keep him? I say unto you, Nay; he will not even suffer that he shall feed among his flocks, but will drive him away, and cast him out. I say unto you, that even so shall it be among you if ye know not the name by which ye are called.

15 Nō reira, e hiahia ana ahau kia ū, ā, kia toka tū moana koutou, e kī ana i ngā wā katoa i ngā mahi pai, kia hīria ai koutou e taua Karaiti, te Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa, hei mea māna, kia kawea ai koutou ki te rangi, kia whiwhi ai koutou i te whakaoranga tonutanga me te oranga tonutanga, mā te mātauranga, me te mana, me te tika, me te aroha o te mea nāna nei ngā mea katoa i hanga, i te rangi me te whenua, koia te Atua i runga i ngā mea katoa. Āmine.

Therefore, I would that ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all. Amen.

## Mōhia 6

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i whakaaro ake a kīngi Peniamine e tika pū ana, nō muri iho i tana kōrerotanga atu ki te iwi, kia tuhituhia ngā ingoa o te hunga katoa i uru ai ki tētahi kawenata ki te Atua kia puritia ai ana whakahaunga.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore te wairua kotahi, atu i ngā tamariki nonohi, kāore i uru ki roto i te kawenata me te tango ki runga i a rātou te ingoa o te Karaiti.
- 3 Hei āpiti anō, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i whakakapia e kīngi Peniamine ēnei mea katoa me te whakatapu anō i tana tama a Mōhia hei kaiwhakahaere, ā, hei kīngi mō runga i tana iwi, me te tuku atu ki a ia ngā tohutohu katoa e pā ana ki te kīngitanga, ā, kua whakataua he tohunga hei whakaako i te iwi, mā konā rātou e rongoi ai i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, me te whakaohooho i a rātou kia mahara ki te oati kua meatia nei e rātou, nāna te whakaminenga i whakawātea, ā, ka hokihoki atu rātou, tēnā me tēnā, me ō rātou whānau, ki ō rātou ake kāinga.
- 4 Ā, i tīmata a Mōhia te whakahaere i te tūranga o tana matua. Ā, i tīmata ia hei kīngi i te toru tekau o ngā tau o tana pakeke, e neke atu ana ki te takiwā o ngā tau e whā rau whitu tekau mā ono mai i te wā i wehe atu ai a Rīhai i Hiruharama.
- 5 Ā, i ora tonu a kīngi Peniamine mō ngā tau e toru kātahi ka mate ia.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i hīkoi a kīngi Mōhia i ngā huarahi o te Ariki, ā, i pūmau ki ana whakawākanga me ana ture, ā, i puritia e ia ana whakahaunga i roto i ngā mea katoa ahakoa he aha tāna i whakahaua ai ia.
- 7 Ā, i meatia e kīngi Mōhia tana iwi kia ngaki ai i te whenua. Ā, ko ia ake anō, i ngaki ai i te whenua, kei taumaha ia ki tana iwi, kia pēnā anō ia e ai ki tā tōna matua i mahi ai i roto i ngā mea katoa. Ā, kāore he tautohetohenga i waenganui i tana iwi mō te takiwā o ngā tau e toru.

## Mosiah 6

And now, king Benjamin thought it was expedient, after having finished speaking to the people, that he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

And again, it came to pass that when king Benjamin had made an end of all these things, and had consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people, and had given him all the charges concerning the kingdom, and also had appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made, he dismissed the multitude, and they returned, every one, according to their families, to their own houses.

And Mosiah began to reign in his father's stead. And he began to reign in the thirtieth year of his age, making in the whole, about four hundred and seventy-six years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

And king Benjamin lived three years and he died.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe his judgments and his statutes, and did keep his commandments in all things whatsoever he commanded him.

And king Mosiah did cause his people that they should till the earth. And he also, himself, did till the earth, that thereby he might not become burdensome to his people, that he might do according to that which his father had done in all things. And there was no contention among all his people for the space of three years.

## Mōhia 7

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, nō muri iho i ngā tau e toru i mau ai i a kīngi Mōhia te rangimārie tonutanga, i te hiahia ia kia mōhio ai e pā ana ki te iwi i haere ake ai ki te noho i te whenua o Rīhai-Nīwhai, i te pā rānei o Rīhai-Nīwhai; nā te mea kīhai tana iwi i rongo ai i te kupu kotahi i a rātou mai i te wā i wehe atu ai i Harahemara; nō reira, i hōhā ia i ā rātou whakapōreareatanga.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakaaehia e kīngi Mōhia kia haere ake ngā tāne kaha tekau mā ono ki te whenua o Rīhai-Nīwhai, kia rapu kōrero ai e pā ana ki ā rātou teina.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ao ake te rā ka whakatika atu tā rātou haere ake, i tō rātou taha tētahi ko Amona, he tangata kaha ia, he tangata mārohirohi ia, ā, he uri ia nō Harahemara; ā, koia hoki tō rātou kaiwhakahaere.
- 4 Ināianeī ā, kāore rātou i mōhio he aha te huarahi e haere ai rātou i roto i te koraha kia haere ake ai ki te whenua o Rīhai-Nīwhai; nō reira i ātiutiu rātou i te koraha mō ngā rā maha, arā, e whā tekau ngā rā i ātiutiu ai rātou.
- 5 Ā, i te wā i oti ngā rā e whā tekau e ātiutiu haere ana rātou ka tae rātou ki tētahi puke, kei te raki o te whenua o Hīroma, ā, i reira rātou whakatū ai i ō rātou tēneti.
- 6 Ā, ka mauria e Amona ana teina tokotoru, ā, ko ō rātou ingoa ko Āmareki, ko Herema rātou ko Hema, ā, ka heke iho rātou ki roto i te whenua o Nīwhai.
- 7 Ā, nana, i tutaki rātou ki te kīngi o te iwi e noho ana i te whenua o Nīwhai, i te whenua o Hīroma anō hoki; ā, i karapotia rātou e ngā kaitiaki o te kīngi, ā, ka kahakina atu rātou, ā, ka herea, ā, ka panaia ki te whareherehere.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake i te rā tuarua o tā rātou noho i te whareherehere ka mauria anōtia rātou ki te aroaro o te kīngi, ā, ka wetekina ō rātou here; ā, ka tū rātou i te aroaro o te kīngi, ā, i tukuna, i whakahaua rānei, kia whakautua e rātou ngā pātai e pātaihia atu ai rātou e ia.

## Mosiah 7

And now, it came to pass that after king Mosiah had had continual peace for the space of three years, he was desirous to know concerning the people who went up to dwell in the land of Lehi-Nephi, or in the city of Lehi-Nephi; for his people had heard nothing from them from the time they left the land of Zarahemla; therefore, they wearied him with their teasings.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted that sixteen of their strong men might go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi, to inquire concerning their brethren.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they started to go up, having with them one Ammon, he being a strong and mighty man, and a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was also their leader.

And now, they knew not the course they should travel in the wilderness to go up to the land of Lehi-Nephi; therefore they wandered many days in the wilderness, even forty days did they wander.

And when they had wandered forty days they came to a hill, which is north of the land of Shilom, and there they pitched their tents.

And Ammon took three of his brethren, and their names were Amaleki, Helem, and Hem, and they went down into the land of Nephi.

And behold, they met the king of the people who were in the land of Nephi, and in the land of Shilom; and they were surrounded by the king's guard, and were taken, and were bound, and were committed to prison.

And it came to pass when they had been in prison two days they were again brought before the king, and their bands were loosed; and they stood before the king, and were permitted, or rather commanded, that they should answer the questions which he should ask them.

- 9      Ā, ko tana kupu tēnei ki a rātou: Nana, ko Rimihī ahau, te tama a Noa, koia te tama a Hinihi, nāna i haere mai i te whenua o Harahemara kia nōhia ai tēnei whenua, koia te whenua o ō rātou tūpuna matua, kua whakatūria ia hei kīngi e te reo o te iwi.
- 10      Ināianeī ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mōhio ai he aha te take i māia ai koutou ki te whakatata atu ki ngā taiapa o te pā, i ahau anō, e haere tahi ana me aku kaitiaki i waho i te tomokanga?
- 11      Ināianeī ā, nā tēnei take i tukua ai e au kia tiakina ai koutou, kia uiui atu au ki a koutou, me i kore pēnei kua meatia e au kia whakamatea koutou e aku kaitiaki. Kua tukuna koutou kia kōrero mai.
- 12      Ināianeī ā, i te kitenga atu a Amona kua tukuna ia kia kōrero ai, ka haere atu ia, ā, ka tuohu iho ia i te aroaro o te kīngi; ā, i tana aranga ake anō ka mea ia: E te kīngi, he tino nui taku whakawhetai i mua i te Atua i tēnei rā kei te ora tonu ahau, ā, kua tukuna hoki ki te kōrero; ā, māku e ngana kia māia ai taku kōrero;
- 13      Nā te mea e mōhio tūturu ana ahau mehemea i mōhio koe ki ahau kua kore rawa i tukuna e koe kia mau ahau i ēnei herehere. Nā te mea ko Amona ahau, ā, he uri ahau nō Harahemara, ā, kua haere ake nei i waho i te whenua o Harahemara ki te rapu kōrero e pā ana ki ā mātou teina, nā Hinihi i kawea ake nei i waho i taua whenua.
- 14      Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nō muri iho i tā Rimihī rongō atu i ngā kupu a Amona, ka tino hari nui ia, a, ka mea: Ināianeī, e mōhio tūturu ana ahau kei te ora tonu aku teina i te whenua o Harahemara. Ināianeī ā, ka hari ahau; ā, hei āpōpō ka meatia e ahau kia hari anō taku iwi.
- 15      Nana rā, e noho herehere ana mātou ki ngā Rāmana, ā, kua whakatākehia ki tētahi tāke taumaha rawa hei pīkau. Ināianeī ā, nana, mā ō mātou tuākana mātou e whakaputa atu i te hereheretanga, i waho rānei i ngā ringa o ngā Rāmana, ā, ka noho hei taurekareka ki a rātou; nā te mea he pai ake kia noho hei taurekareka ki ngā Nīwhai i te tuku takoha tatau pounamu ki te kīngi o ngā Rāmana.

And he said unto them: Behold, I am Limhi, the son of Noah, who was the son of Zeniff, who came up out of the land of Zarahemla to inherit this land, which was the land of their fathers, who was made a king by the voice of the people.

And now, I desire to know the cause whereby ye were so bold as to come near the walls of the city, when I, myself, was with my guards without the gate?

And now, for this cause have I suffered that ye should be preserved, that I might inquire of you, or else I should have caused that my guards should have put you to death. Ye are permitted to speak.

And now, when Ammon saw that he was permitted to speak, he went forth and bowed himself before the king; and rising again he said: O king, I am very thankful before God this day that I am yet alive, and am permitted to speak; and I will endeavor to speak with boldness;

For I am assured that if ye had known me ye would not have suffered that I should have worn these bands. For I am Ammon, and am a descendant of Zarahemla, and have come up out of the land of Zarahemla to inquire concerning our brethren, whom Zeniff brought up out of that land.

And now, it came to pass that after Limhi had heard the words of Ammon, he was exceedingly glad, and said: Now, I know of a surety that my brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla are yet alive. And now, I will rejoice; and on the morrow I will cause that my people shall rejoice also.

For behold, we are in bondage to the Lamanites, and are taxed with a tax which is grievous to be borne. And now, behold, our brethren will deliver us out of our bondage, or out of the hands of the Lamanites, and we will be their slaves; for it is better that we be slaves to the Nephites than to pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites.

- 16 Ināianeī ā, i whakahau a kīngi Rimihi kia kaua e herea tonutia ai e rātou a Amona me ana teina, engari ka meatia kia haere atu rātou ki te puke i te raki o Hīroma, me te kawē mai i ana teina ki roto i te pā, mō konā rātou e kai, me te inu, me te whakatā i a rātou anō mai i ō rātou mamae i pā ai i tō rātou haerenga; nā te mea kua mamae rātou i ngā mea maha; i mamae rātou i te matekai, te matewai, me te ngenge.
- 17 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake i te aonga ake o te rā, nā, i tukuna atu e kīngi Rimihi tētahi whakapuakitanga ki waenganui i tana iwi katoa, mā konā whakahuihui tahi ai rātou i a rātou anō ki te temepara, kia rongō ai i ngā kupu e kōrero ai ia ki a rātou.
- 18 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i whakahuihui tahi ai rātou i a rātou anō ka kōrero pēnei atu ia ki a rātou, e mea ana: E koutou, taku iwi, kia ara ake ō koutou māhunga, ā, kia tau ō koutou ngākau; nana rā, kua tae mai te wā, kāore rānei i te tawhiti, ka mutu tā tātou noho i raro i te mana o ō tātou hoariri, ahakoa ō tātou ngangana maha, kua auare ake nei; heoi, e whakapono ana ahau kei te toe tonu mai tētahi nganganatanga e whakamārie ai tātou.
- 19 Nō reira, kia ara ake ō koutou māhunga, kia hari hoki, me te whakawhirinaki atu ki te Atua, ki taua Atua koia te Atua o Aperahama, me Ihaka, me Hākopa; hei āpiti anō, ko taua Atua nāna nei ngā tamariki o Iharaira i ārahi mai i te whenua o Ihipā, ā, i meatia kia hīkoi mā roto i te Moana Whero i runga i te whenua maroke, ā, i whāngaia rātou ki te mana kia kore ai rātou e mate i te kōraha; ā, he maha noa atu ngā mea i mahia ai e ia mō rātou.
- 20 Hei āpiti anō, kua kawea mai e taua Atua anō ō tātou tūpuna matua i te whenua o Hiruharama, ā, nāna tana iwi i atawhai, i tiaki tae noa mai ki tēnei wā; ā nana, nā ō tātou hara me ō tātou mōrikarika kua kumea mai tātou e ia ki roto i te hereheretanga.

And now, king Limhi commanded his guards that they should no more bind Ammon nor his brethren, but caused that they should go to the hill which was north of Shilom, and bring their brethren into the city, that thereby they might eat, and drink, and rest themselves from the labors of their journey; for they had suffered many things; they had suffered hunger, thirst, and fatigue.

And now, it came to pass on the morrow that king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple, to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

And it came to pass that when they had gathered themselves together that he spake unto them in this wise, saying: O ye, my people, lift up your heads and be comforted; for behold, the time is at hand, or is not far distant, when we shall no longer be in subjection to our enemies, notwithstanding our many strugglings, which have been in vain; yet I trust there remaineth an effectual struggle to be made.

Therefore, lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness; and many more things did he do for them.

And again, that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now; and behold, it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

- 21     Ā, he kaiwhakaatu katoa koutou i tēnei rā, nā, ko Hinihi, te mea i whakatūria hei kīngi mō runga i tēnei iwi, i te ngākau whitawhita ia kia nōhia ai te whenua o ōna tūpuna matua, nō reira i māmingatia ia e ngā mahi tinihanga me ngā mahi nukarau a kīngi Rāmana, nāna i uru atu ki tētahi tiriti me kīngi Hinihi, ā, i tukuna atu ki roto i ōna ringaringa te mana whenua mō tētahi wahanga o te whenua, arā, ko te pā o Rīhai-Nīwhai, me te pā o Hīroma; me te whenua e karapotia ana—
- 22     Ā, nāna katoa ēnei i mahi i runga i te whakaaro kotahi kia kumea iho tēnei iwi ki raro i tōna mana, ki roto rānei i te hereheretanga. Ā nana, e tuku taonga tatau pounamu tātou ināiane ki te kīngi o ngā Rāmana, kia neke atu i te haurua o ā tātou kānga, ā tātou pāre, me ā tātou kākano katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua, me te haurua o ngā hua o ā tātou kāhui katoa; me te haurua pū anō o ngā mea katoa kei a tātou, ā, me ō tātou mea ake, e tonoa mai nei e te kīngi o ngā Rāmana mai i a tātou, ki te kore ko ō tātou oranga.
- 23     Ināiane ā, he taumaha tēnei hei pīkau? Ā, ehara rānei tēnei, tō tātou whakamamaetanga, i te nui? Ināiane ā, anō te take nui kia tangi ai tātou.
- 24     Āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, he nui ngā take kia tangi ai tātou; nana rā, tokohia ō tātou teina kua whakamatea, ā, kua whakahekea noatia ō rātou toto, ā, kua pēnei katoa nā te hara.
- 25     Nā te mea mehemea kīhai tēnei iwi i taka iho ki te hē kua kore te Ariki i tuku kia tau iho ai tēnei kino nui ki runga i a rātou. Engari nana, kīhai rātou i whakarongo ki ana kupu; engari i tupu ake he tautohetohenga ki waenganui i a rātou, tae noa atu ki te whakahekenga i te toto i waenganui i a rātou anō.
- 26     Ā, kua whakamatea e rātou tētahi poropiti nā te Atua; āe rā, he tangata i kōwhiria e te Atua, nāna rātou i whakamōhio atu e pā ana ki ō rātou whakarihariha me ō rātou mōrikarika, ā, i poropititia mō ngā mea maha ka heke mai, āe rā, ko te haerenga mai pū anō o te Karaiti.

And ye all are witnesses this day, that Zeniff, who was made king over this people, he being over-zealous to inherit the land of his fathers, therefore being deceived by the cunning and craftiness of king Laman, who having entered into a treaty with king Zeniff, and having yielded up into his hands the possessions of a part of the land, or even the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom; and the land round about—

And all this he did, for the sole purpose of bringing this people into subjection or into bondage. And behold, we at this time do pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites, to the amount of one half of our corn, and our barley, and even all our grain of every kind, and one half of the increase of our flocks and our herds; and even one half of all we have or possess the king of the Lamanites doth exact of us, or our lives.

And now, is not this grievous to be borne? And is not this, our affliction, great? Now behold, how great reason we have to mourn.

Yea, I say unto you, great are the reasons which we have to mourn; for behold how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them. But behold, they would not hearken unto his words; but there arose contentions among them, even so much that they did shed blood among themselves.

And a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

27     Ā, nā te mea i kī atu ia ki a rātou ko te Karaiti te Atua, te Matua o ngā mea katoa, ā, ka kī atu anō māna te āhua o te tangata e tango atu ki runga ki a ia, ā, ka rite ki te āhua i hangaia ai te tangata i te tīmatanga; arā, i kī ai ia kua hangaia te tangata kia rite ki tō te Atua āhua, ā, ka heke iho mai te Atua ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, me te tango ki runga ki a ia te kikokiko me te toto, ā, ka haere whakamua atu ki runga i te mata o te whenua—

28     Ināianeī ā, nā tēnei kōrero āna, i whakamatea ia e rātou; ā, he maha noa atu ngā mea i mahia ai e rātou nā konā tau iho ai te riri a te Atua ki runga i a rātou. Nō reira, ko wai e mīharo ana ki tō rātou hereheretanga, ki tō rātou patunga hoki ki te tino whakamamaetanga?

29     Nana rā, kua mea mai te Ariki: E kore ahau e atawhai i taku iwi i te rā o tō rātou haranga; engari māku ō rātou huarahi e taiapa kia kore ai rātou e whaioranga; ā, ka rite ā rātou mahinga me te mea nei he tūtukitanga waewae ki mua i a rātou.

30     Hei āpiti anō, e mea ana ia: Ki te ruirui taku iwi i te poke ka kokoti rātou i te pāpapa o reira i roto i te āwhiowhio; ā, ko tō reira hua ko te paitini.

31     Hei āpiti anō tāna e mea ai: Ki te ruirui taku iwi i te poke ka kokoti rātou i te marangai, e kawē mai ana i te whakangaromanga wawetanga.

32     Ināianeī ā, nana, kua ea te kupu whakaari a te Ariki, ā, kua patua koutou, ā, kua whakamamaetia koutou.

33     Engari, ki te tahuri koutou ki te Ariki i runga i te ngākau ū, me te whakawhirinaki atu ki a ia, me te ngohengohe ki a ia i runga i te whakaaro pūmau katoa, ki te pēnei koutou, māna, e ai ki tōna ake hiahia me tōna ake āhuareka, e whakaputa i a koutou ki waho atu i te hereheretanga.

And because he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of man, and it should be the image after which man was created in the beginning; or in other words, he said that man was created after the image of God, and that God should come down among the children of men, and take upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the earth—

And now, because he said this, they did put him to death; and many more things did they do which brought down the wrath of God upon them. Therefore, who wondereth that they are in bondage, and that they are smitten with sore afflictions?

For behold, the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block before them.

And again, he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

And again he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

And now, behold, the promise of the Lord is fulfilled, and ye are smitten and afflicted.

But if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you out of bondage.



## Mōhia 8

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i te whakakapinga kōrero a kīngi Rimihi ki tana iwi, nā te mea he maha ngā mea i kōrerotia ai e ia ki a rātou engari he ruarua noa iho aua mea kua tuhia i tēnei pukapuka, nāna katoa ngā mea e pā ana ki ō rātou teina i te whenua o Harahemara.
- 2 Ā, i meatia e ia kia tū ai a Amona i mua i te aroaro o te whakaminenga, me te taki i ngā mahi katoa i pā ai ki ā rātou teina mai i te wā i haere ake ai a Hinihi ki waho i te whenua tae atu ana ki te wā i puta anō mai ia i te whenua.
- 3 Ā, i tākina anō hoki e ia ngā kupu whakamutungā i whakaakona ai rātou e kīngi Peniamine, ā, ka whakamāramatia ērā ki te iwi o kīngi Rimihi, kia mārama ai rātou i ngā kupu katoa i kōrero ai ia.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tana mahi pēnei, ka whakawātea te whakaminenga e kīngi Rimihi, ā, ka meatia kia hokihoki atu rātou tēnā me tēnā ki tōna ake kāinga.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka meatia e ia kia haria atu ai ngā papa e mau nei ngā kōrero o tana iwi mai i te wā i wehe ai i Harahemara ki te aroaro o Amona, kia pānuitia ai e ia.
- 6 Ināianei, ka mutu kau i a Amona ngā tuhinga te pānui, ka uiuia ia e te kīngi kia mōhio ai ia mēnā e taea ana e ia ngā reo te whakamāori, ā, ka mea atu a Amona tē taea e ia.
- 7 Ā, ka mea atu te kīngi ki a ia: He pōuri nōku mō te mamae o taku iwi, nā konā au i mea ai kia haere ētahi tāngata whā tekau mā toru ki roto i te kōraha, mō konā rapua ai e rātou te whenua o Harahemara, kia tono atu ai mātou ki ō mātou tuākana kia whakaputaina ai mātou i te hereheretanga.
- 8 Ā, i ngaro atu rātou i te koraha mō te takiwā o ngā rā maha, heoi i te kaha tonu tā rātou mahi, ā, kihai i rapu atu i te whenua o Harahemara engari i hoki mai ki tēnei whenua, kua haere rātou i tētahi whenua i waenganui i ngā wai maha, kua kitea e rātou tētahi whenua e kapi ana i ngā kōiwi o ngā tangata, o ngā kararehe, ā, kua kapi anō i ngā whare kua pākarukaru o ia āhua, o ia āhua, kua kitea tētahi whenua i nōhia ai e tētahi iwi e pērā ana tōna rahi ki tō te rahi o ngā mano tini o Iharaira.

## Mosiah 8

And it came to pass that after king Limhi had made an end of speaking to his people, for he spake many things unto them and only a few of them have I written in this book, he told his people all the things concerning their brethren who were in the land of Zarahemla.

And he caused that Ammon should stand up before the multitude, and rehearse unto them all that had happened unto their brethren from the time that Zeniff went up out of the land even until the time that he himself came up out of the land.

And he also rehearsed unto them the last words which king Benjamin had taught them, and explained them to the people of king Limhi, so that they might understand all the words which he spake.

And it came to pass that after he had done all this, that king Limhi dismissed the multitude, and caused that they should return every one unto his own house.

And it came to pass that he caused that the plates which contained the record of his people from the time that they left the land of Zarahemla, should be brought before Ammon, that he might read them.

Now, as soon as Ammon had read the record, the king inquired of him to know if he could interpret languages, and Ammon told him that he could not.

And the king said unto him: Being grieved for the afflictions of my people, I caused that forty and three of my people should take a journey into the wilderness, that thereby they might find the land of Zarahemla, that we might appeal unto our brethren to deliver us out of bondage.

And they were lost in the wilderness for the space of many days, yet they were diligent, and found not the land of Zarahemla but returned to this land, having traveled in a land among many waters, having discovered a land which was covered with bones of men, and of beasts, and was also covered with ruins of buildings of every kind, having discovered a land which had been peopled with a people who were as numerous as the hosts of Israel.

- 9     Ā, i mauria mai e rātou ngā papa e rua tekau-mā whā e kiki ana i ngā whaowhaonga hei whakaaturanga he pono ngā mea kua kōrerotia e rātou, ā, he kōura parakore ēnā.
- 10    Ā, nana anō, kua mauria mai nei e rātou ngā ārai poho, he mea rahi, ā, he mea parāhe me te kapa, ā, he tino pai tonu ēnā.
- 11    Ā, hei āpiti anō, kua mauria mai e rātou ngā hoari, kua whakaerohia ngā kakau o reira, ā, kua waikuratia ngā rau o reira; ā, kāore he tangata kotahi i te whenua e taea ana ki te whakamāori i te reo, i ngā whaowhaonga rānei i runga i ngā papa. Nō reira tāku i kī ai ki a koe: Kāore rānei e taea ana e koe te whakamāori?
- 12    Ā, e mea atu nei au ki a koe: E mōhio ana rānei koe i tētahi e taea ana te whakamāori? Nā te mea e hiahia ana ahau kia whakamāoritia ai ēnei tuhinga ki roto i tō tātou reo; nā te mea, tērā pea, ka puta mai i reira ngā maramatanga e pā ana ki ngā mōrehu o te iwi kua whakangaromia nei, nō konā mai ēnei tuhinga; tērā pea, rānei, ka puta mai i reira he mātauranga ki a tātou e pā ana ki tēnei iwi pū anō kua whakangaromia nei; ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mōhio ai he aha te take i whakangaromia ai rātou.
- 13    Nā, ka mea atu a Amona ki a ia: Ka taea mārīka te kī atu ki a koe, E te kīngi, mō tētahi tangata e taea ana ngā tuhinga te whakamāori; nā te mea kei a ia tētahi mea hei tirohanga māna me te whakamāori i ngā tuhinga katoa nō ngā wā onamata; ā, he taonga nō te Atua. Ā, e kīa ana ēnā mea he mea whakamāori, ā, kāore e taea ana e tētahi te titiro ki roto ki te kore ia e whakahaua ai, kei titiro atu ia ki taua mea kāore e tika ana māna kātahi ka mate. Ā, ko te tangata e whakahaua ai kia titiro ai ki roto i ēnā mea, e kīa nei taua tangata he matakite.
- 14    Ā, nana, ko te kīngi o te iwi e noho ana i te whenua o Harahemara te tangata e whakahaua ai ki te mahi i ēnei mea, ā, kei a ia tēnei homaitanga teitei i te Atua.
- 15    Ā, i kī te kīngi kei runga noa ake te matakite i te poropiti.

And for a testimony that the things that they had said are true they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with engravings, and they are of pure gold.

And behold, also, they have brought breastplates, which are large, and they are of brass and of copper, and are perfectly sound.

And again, they have brought swords, the hilts thereof have perished, and the blades thereof were cankered with rust; and there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language or the engravings that are on the plates. Therefore I said unto thee: Canst thou translate?

And I say unto thee again: Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous that these records should be translated into our language; for, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of a remnant of the people who have been destroyed, from whence these records came; or, perhaps, they will give us a knowledge of this very people who have been destroyed; and I am desirous to know the cause of their destruction.

Now Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

And behold, the king of the people who are in the land of Zarahemla is the man that is commanded to do these things, and who has this high gift from God.

And the king said that a seer is greater than a prophet.

- 16     Ā, ka mea a Amona, nā, he kaiwhakakite, ā, he poropiti anō te matakite; ā, kāore he homaitanga i tua atu i tēnei mō te tangata, hāunga tana pūmau ki te mana o te Atua, koia nei e kore e taea ana e te tangata; ahakoa ka hoatu e te Atua he mana nui ki te tangata.
- 17     Engari ka mōhio te matakite ki ngā mea o mua, me ngā mea anō hoki e heke mai, ā, mā konā ngā mea katoa e whakakitea mai, ka huraina rānei ngā mea ngaro, ā, ka whakamāramatia mai ngā mea huna, ā, ka whakamōhiohia ngā mea kāore rātou i te mōhio, ā, ka whakamōhiohia ngā mea e rātou kua kore e taea te mōhio mā huarahi kē atu.
- 18     Kua tukuna pēneitia e te Atua tētahi huarahi e taea ai e te tangata, mā te whakapono, e mahi ai i ngā merekara nunui; nō reira ka meinga ia hei painga nui ki ōna hoa.
- 19     Ināianei ā, i te otinga i a Amona ēnei kupu te kōrero ka hari nui te kīngi, ā, ka whakawhetai atu ki te Atua, e mea ana: Kāore e kore he kura huna nui kei roto i ēnei papa, ā, kāore e kore i rite ēnei mea whakamāori mō te tikanga o te whakatūwheratanga i ēnei momo kura huna ki ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 20     Anō te mīharo o ngā mahinga a te Ariki, ā, ka pēhea te roa e manawanui ai ia ki tōna iwi; āe rā, anō te kāpō, ā, tē taea te ngoto ki ngā māramatanga o ngā tamariki a te tangata; nā te mea kāore rātou e whai i te mātauranga, kāore rānei rātou e hiahia ana ki a ia hei kaiwhakahaere mō runga i a rātou!
- 21     Āe rā, e rite ana rātou ki tētahi kāhui mohao e oma atu ana i te hēpara, ā, e marara ana, ā, e āia ana, ā, e horomia ana e ngā kararehe o te ngahere.

And Ammon said that a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

Thus God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

And now, when Ammon had made an end of speaking these words the king rejoiced exceedingly, and gave thanks to God, saying: Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

O how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men; for they will not seek wisdom, neither do they desire that she should rule over them!

Yea, they are as a wild flock which fleeth from the shepherd, and scattereth, and are driven, and are devoured by the beasts of the forest.

*TE TUHINGA A HINIHI—He kōrero mō tana iwi, mai i te wā i webe atu rātou i te whenua o Harahemara tae noa atu ki te wā i whakaputaina rātou i ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana.*

## Mōhia 9

- 1 Ko au, a Hinihi, kua ākona ki te reo katoa o ngā Nīwhai, ā, i ahau anō tētahi mātauranga mō te whenua o Nīwhai, te whenua tuku iho rānei o ō mātou tūpuna matua, ā, kua tukuna au hei tūtei ki waenganui i ngā Rāmana kia tirohia ai ō rātou tauā, kia whakaeke atu tō mātou tauā ki runga i a rātou me te whakangaro i a rātou—engari i taku tirohanga atu i ngā mea pai kei waenganui i a rātou i hiahia au kia kore ai rātou e whakangaromia ai.
- 2 Nō reira, i totohe au ki aku teina i roto i te koraha, nā te mea i te hiahia au kia whakaritea e tō mātou rangatira tētahi tiriti me rātou; engari nā te mea he tangata taikaha, ā, he tangata ia i rata ai ki te whakahaheke toto ka whakahaua kia whakamatea ahau; engari i whakaorangia au e te hekenga o ngā toto nui; nā te mea i whawhai te matua ki te matua, tuakana ki te teina, tae atu ana ki te wā kua whakangaromia atu te wāhi nui o tō mātou tauā i roto i te koraha; ā, ka hoki mātou, ko te hunga o mātou i ora ai, ki te whenua o Harahemara, kia kawea atu ērā kōrero ki ā rātou hoawahine me ā rātou tamariki.
- 3 Heoi, i te ngākau whitawhita au kia nōhia ai te whenua o ō mātou tūpuna matua, i kohikohia ngā mea e hiahia ana kia haere ake kia nōhia ai te whenua, ā, ka tīmata anō tō mātou haere ki roto i te koraha kia haere ake ki te whenua; engari i patua mātou e te matekai me ngā whakamamaetanga kino; nā te mea i te pūhoi mātou ki te mahara ake ki te Ariki tō mātou Atua.
- 4 Hei aha koa, nō muri iho i ngā rā maha e ātiutiu ana i te koraha ka whakatūria e mātou ō mātou tēneti i te wāhi i mate ai ō mātou teina, e pātata atu ana ki te whenua o ō mātou tūpuna matua.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere au me tētahi tokowhā o ōku tāngata ki roto i te pā, ki roto ki te kīngi, kia mōhio ai au ki ngā whakaaro o te kīngi, ā, kia mōhio ai ahau mehemea ka haere atu mātou ko taku iwi kia nōhia ai te whenua i runga i te rangimārie.

*THE RECORD OF ZENIFF—An account of his people, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time that they were delivered out of the hands of the Lamanites.*

## Mosiah 9

I, Zeniff, having been taught in all the language of the Nephites, and having had a knowledge of the land of Nephi, or of the land of our fathers' first inheritance, and having been sent as a spy among the Lamanites that I might spy out their forces, that our army might come upon them and destroy them—but when I saw that which was good among them I was desirous that they should not be destroyed.

Therefore, I contended with my brethren in the wilderness, for I would that our ruler should make a treaty with them; but he being an austere and a blood-thirsty man commanded that I should be slain; but I was rescued by the shedding of much blood; for father fought against father, and brother against brother, until the greater number of our army was destroyed in the wilderness; and we returned, those of us that were spared, to the land of Zarahemla, to relate that tale to their wives and their children.

And yet, I being over-zealous to inherit the land of our fathers, collected as many as were desirous to go up to possess the land, and started again on our journey into the wilderness to go up to the land; but we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

Nevertheless, after many days' wandering in the wilderness we pitched our tents in the place where our brethren were slain, which was near to the land of our fathers.

And it came to pass that I went again with four of my men into the city, in unto the king, that I might know of the disposition of the king, and that I might know if I might go in with my people and possess the land in peace.

- 6     Ā, i kuhu atu au ki te kīngi, ā, i kawenata ia ki ahau kia noho au i te whenua o Rīhai-Nīwhai, me te whenua o Hīroma.
- 7     Ā, i whakahau anō ia kia wehe atu ai tana iwi i te whenua, ā, ka haere atu au me taku iwi ki roto i te whenua kia nōhia ai e mātou.
- 8     Ā, i tīmata mātou ki te waihanga whare, me te whakatikatika i ngā taiapa o te pā, āe rā, ko ngā taiapa pū anō o te pā o Rīhai-Nīwhai, me te pā o Hīroma.
- 9     Ā, i tīmata mātou ki te ngaki i te whenua, āe rā, ki ngā tūmomo kākano katoa, ki ngā kākano kānga me te wīti, me te pāre, ā, ki te nī, ā, ki te heuma, ā, ki ngā kākano hua rākau katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua; ā, i tīmata mātou ki te whakarea me te whai oranga haere i te whenua.
- 10    Nā te tinihanga, ā, nā te nukarau o te kīngi Rāmana kia kūmea taku iwi ki roto i te hereheretanga, i tukuna ake ai e ia te whenua kia nōhia ai e mātou.
- 11    Nō reira, i pahawa ake, nō muri iho i te takiwā o ngā tau tekau mā rua i a mātou e noho ana i te whenua, nā, ka anipā haere te kīngi o ngā Rāmana kei tupu kaha taku iwi i te whenua, ā, ka kore e taea e rātou te whakapēhi i a rātou me te kukume i a rātou ki roto i te hereheretanga.
- 12    Nā, he iwi māngere rātou, ā, he iwi karakia ki ngā whakapakoko; nō reira i te hiahia rātou kia kukume i a mātou ki roto i te hereheretanga, kia kakai ai rātou i ngā mahi a ō mātou ringaringa; āe rā, kia hākari ai rātou i runga i ngā kāhui o ō mātou whīra.
- 13    Nō reira i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata te kīngi o ngā Rāmana ki te whakaohoho i tana iwi kia tautohetohe rātou ki tōku iwi; nō reira tīmata ai ngā whawhai me ngā tautohetohe i te whenua.
- 14    Nā, i te tekau mā toru o ngā tau o taku whakahaere i te whenua o Nīwhai, i tua atu, i te tonga o te whenua o Hīroma, i taku iwi e whakainu ana, e whāngai ana i ā rātou kāhui, me te ngaki i ō rātou whenua, ka whakaeke tētahi ope tauā nui o ngā Rāmana ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka tīmata ki te patupatu i a rātou, me te tāhae atu i ā rātou kāhui me ngā kānga i roto i ngā whīra.

And I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land of Lehi-Nephi, and the land of Shilom.

And he also commanded that his people should depart out of the land, and I and my people went into the land that we might possess it.

And we began to build buildings, and to repair the walls of the city, yea, even the walls of the city of Lehi-Nephi, and the city of Shilom.

And we began to till the ground, yea, even with all manner of seeds, with seeds of corn, and of wheat, and of barley, and with neas, and with sheum, and with seeds of all manner of fruits; and we did begin to multiply and prosper in the land.

Now it was the cunning and the craftiness of king Laman, to bring my people into bondage, that he yielded up the land that we might possess it.

Therefore it came to pass, that after we had dwelt in the land for the space of twelve years that king Laman began to grow uneasy, lest by any means my people should wax strong in the land, and that they could not overpower them and bring them into bondage.

Now they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

Therefore it came to pass that king Laman began to stir up his people that they should contend with my people; therefore there began to be wars and contentions in the land.

For, in the thirteenth year of my reign in the land of Nephi, away on the south of the land of Shilom, when my people were watering and feeding their flocks, and tilling their lands, a numerous host of Lamanites came upon them and began to slay them, and to take off their flocks, and the corn of their fields.

- 15     Āe rā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tahuti atu rātou, ngā  
mea katoa kīhai i whakamaui, ki roto pū anō i te pā  
o Nīwhai, ā, ka tonoa au e rātou kia tiakina rātou.
- 16     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tukuna atu e au he kōpere,  
me ngā pere, me ngā hoari, me ngā hēmita, me ngā  
patu, me ngā kōtaha, me ngā tūmomo taputapu  
whawhai katoa i taea nei e mātou te hanga, ā, ka  
haere atu mātou ko taku iwi ki te pakanga atu ki ngā  
Rāmana.
- 17     Āe rā, ka haere atu mātou ki te pakanga atu ki ngā  
Rāmana i runga i te kaha o te Ariki; nā te mea i kaha  
tā mātou ko taku iwi karanga ki te Ariki kia  
whakaorangia mātou i ngā ringaringa o ō mātou  
hoariri, nā te mea i whakaohongia mātou ki tētahi  
maharatanga ake ki te whakaputanga o ō mātou  
tūpuna matua.
- 18     Ā, i rangona e te Atua ā mātou karanga me ā  
mātou inoi; ā, i haere atu mātou i runga i tōna kaha;  
āe rā, i haere atu mātou ki te tataui atu ki ngā  
Rāmana, ā, i te rā me te pō kotahi i patupatua e  
mātou ngā mea e toru mano e whā tekau mā toru; i  
patupatua rātou e mātou tae atu ki te wā kua āia atu  
rātou ki waho i ō mātou whenua.
- 19     Ā, nāku ake anō, nā ōku ringaringa ake, i āwhina  
ki te tāpuke i ō rātou mate. Ā, nana, anō te nui o tō  
mātou pōuri me tō mātou tangi, e rua rau e whitu  
tekau mā iwa o ā mātou teina i patua ai.

Yea, and it came to pass that they fled, all that were  
not overtaken, even into the city of Nephi, and did  
call upon me for protection.

And it came to pass that I did arm them with bows,  
and with arrows, with swords, and with cimeters,  
and with clubs, and with slings, and with all manner  
of weapons which we could invent, and I and my  
people did go forth against the Lamanites to battle.

Yea, in the strength of the Lord did we go forth to  
battle against the Lamanites; for I and my people did  
cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out  
of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened  
to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

And God did hear our cries and did answer our  
prayers; and we did go forth in his might; yea, we did  
go forth against the Lamanites, and in one day and a  
night we did slay three thousand and forty-three; we  
did slay them even until we had driven them out of  
our land.

And I, myself, with mine own hands, did help to  
bury their dead. And behold, to our great sorrow and  
lamentation, two hundred and seventy-nine of our  
brethren were slain.

## Mōhia 10

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata anō mātou ki te whakapūmau i te kīngitanga, ā, ka tīmata anō mātou ki te noho i te whenua i runga i te rangimārie. Ā, ka mea ahau kia hangaia ai ngā taputapu whawhai o ia āhua, o ia āhua katoa, mā konā whai rākau whawhai ahau mō taku iwi e rite ai mō te wā e whakaeke mai anō ai ngā Rāmana ki taku iwi ki te pakanga.
- 2 Ā, i whakatūria anō hoki e au ngā kaitiaki huri noa i te whenua, kia kore ai ngā Rāmana e whakaeke huna mai anō ki runga i a mātou me te whakangaro i a mātou; ā, i pēnei taku tiakanga i taku iwi me aku kāhui, me te tiaki i a rātou kei taka iho ki ngā ringaringa o ō mātou hoariri.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka nōhia e mātou ngā whenua tuku iho o ō mātou tūpuna matua mō ngā tau maha, āe rā, mō te takiwā o te rua tekau mā rua o ngā tau.
- 4 Ā, i meatia e au kia ngakia e ngā tāne te whenua, me te whakatupu i ngā momo kākano katoa me ngā tūmomo huarākau katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua.
- 5 Ā, i meatia e au kia tāmirohia e ngā wāhine, me te whakarirā, me te mahi, me te mahi i ngā tūmomo rīnena papai, āe rā, me ngā kākahu o ia āhua, o ia āhua, kia whakakākahuria ō mātou tahangatanga; ā, i pēnei tō mātou whaioranga i runga i te whenua—i mau pēnei te rangimārie tonutanga i roto i te whenua mō te takiwā o ngā tau e rua tekau mā rua.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mate a kīngi Rāmana, ā, ka tīmata tana tama ki te whakahaere i tana tūranga. Ā, ka tīmata ia ki te whakaohooho i tana iwi kia tutū mai ki tōku iwi; nō reira rātou tīmata ai ki te whakariterite mō te pakanga me te haere mai ki te whawhai ki tōku iwi.
- 7 Engari, kua tukuna atu e au aku tūtei huri noa atu i te whenua o Hemerona, kia mōhio ai ahau i ā rātou whakaritenga, hei tiaki māku i a rātou, kia kore ai rātou e whakaeke mai ki runga i taku iwi me te whakangaro i a rātou.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere mai rātou mā te taha ki te raki o te whenua o Hīroma, me ō rātou ope tauā nui, ko ngā tangata e mau kōpere ana, me ngā pere, me ngā hoari, me ngā hēmita, me ngā kōhatu, me ngā kōtaha; ā, kua heua ō rātou māhunga, nā, kāore ō rātou makawe; ā, i whītikina ō rātou hope e tētahi whītiki hiako.

## Mosiah 10

And it came to pass that we again began to establish the kingdom and we again began to possess the land in peace. And I caused that there should be weapons of war made of every kind, that thereby I might have weapons for my people against the time the Lamanites should come up again to war against my people.

And I set guards round about the land, that the Lamanites might not come upon us again unawares and destroy us; and thus I did guard my people and my flocks, and keep them from falling into the hands of our enemies.

And it came to pass that we did inherit the land of our fathers for many years, yea, for the space of twenty and two years.

And I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

And I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness; and thus we did prosper in the land—thus we did have continual peace in the land for the space of twenty and two years.

And it came to pass that king Laman died, and his son began to reign in his stead. And he began to stir his people up in rebellion against my people; therefore they began to prepare for war, and to come up to battle against my people.

But I had sent my spies out round about the land of Shemlon, that I might discover their preparations, that I might guard against them, that they might not come upon my people and destroy them.

And it came to pass that they came up upon the north of the land of Shilom, with their numerous hosts, men armed with bows, and with arrows, and with swords, and with cimeters, and with stones, and with slings; and they had their heads shaved that they were naked; and they were girded with a leathern girdle about their loins.

- 9     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i meatia e au kia hunaiā ngā wāhine me ngā tamariki i roto i te koraha; ā, i meatia anō hoki e au ngā koroheke e taea tonutia ana te mau rākau whawhai, me aku tamatāne e taea ana te mau rākau whawhai, kia whakahuihuia tahitia rātou kia haere ake ki te whawhai ki ngā Rāmana; ā, i whakanohioia rātou e au ki roto i ngā rārangi tauā, ia tangata, ia tangata e ai ki tōna pakeke.
- 10    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere ake mātou ki te whawhai ki ngā Rāmana; ā ko au pū anō, i taku koroheketanga, i haere atu anō ki te whawhai ki ngā Rāmana. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere ake mātou i runga i te kaha o te Ariki ki te whawhai.
- 11    Nā, kāore kau o ngā Rāmana mōhioranga e pā ana ki te Ariki, ki te kaha rānei o te Ariki, nō reira, i whakawhirinaki rātou ki runga i tō rātou ake kaha. Heoi, he iwi kaha rātou, e pā ana ki te kaha o te tangata.
- 12    I matakakā rātou, i horetītī hoki, ā, he iwi mateinu-toto, e whakapono ana ki ngā whakarereanga iho a o rātou tūpuna matua, koia tēnei—E whakapono ana i āia atu rātou i te whenua o Hiruharama nō ngā hē o o rātou tūpuna matua, me te mea anō kua tūkinotia rātou i te koraha e ā rātou teina, ā, i tūkinotia anō hoki rātou i a rātou e whakawhiti ana i te moana;
- 13    Hei āpiti anō, i tūkinotia rātou i a rātou e noho ana i te whenua tuku iho tuatahi, whai muri iho i tā rātou whakawhitinga mai i te moana, ā, pēnei katoa nā te mea i kaha ake a Nīwhai ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki—nō reira, i whakamariuhia ia e te Ariki, nā te mea i rangona āna inoi e te Ariki, ā, ka whakautua ēnā, ā, nāna tō rātou haerenga i ārahi ki roto i te koraha.
- 14    Ā, i pukuriri ōna tuākana ki a ia nā te mea kīhai rātou i mārāma ki ngā mahinga a te Ariki; i pukuriri anō rātou ki a ia i runga i ngā wai nā tā rātou whakapakeketanga i o rātou ngākau ki te Ariki.
- 15    Hei āpiti anō, i te pukuriri rātou ki a ia i tō rātou taenga mai ki te whenua o te kupu whakaari, nā te mea i kī ai rātou nāna te mana whakahaeretanga i te iwi i tango atu i o rātou ringaringa; ā, ka whai rātou ki te whakamate i a ia.

And it came to pass that I caused that the women and children of my people should be hid in the wilderness; and I also caused that all my old men that could bear arms, and also all my young men that were able to bear arms, should gather themselves together to go to battle against the Lamanites; and I did place them in their ranks, every man according to his age.

And it came to pass that we did go up to battle against the Lamanites; and I, even I, in my old age, did go up to battle against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did go up in the strength of the Lord to battle.

Now, the Lamanites knew nothing concerning the Lord, nor the strength of the Lord, therefore they depended upon their own strength. Yet they were a strong people, as to the strength of men.

They were a wild, and ferocious, and a blood-thirsty people, believing in the tradition of their fathers, which is this—Believing that they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem because of the iniquities of their fathers, and that they were wronged in the wilderness by their brethren, and they were also wronged while crossing the sea;

And again, that they were wronged while in the land of their first inheritance, after they had crossed the sea, and all this because that Nephi was more faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord—therefore he was favored of the Lord, for the Lord heard his prayers and answered them, and he took the lead of their journey in the wilderness.

And his brethren were wroth with him because they understood not the dealings of the Lord; they were also wroth with him upon the waters because they hardened their hearts against the Lord.

And again, they were wroth with him when they had arrived in the promised land, because they said that he had taken the ruling of the people out of their hands; and they sought to kill him.



- 16 Hei āpiti anō, i te pukuriri rātou ki a ia nā te mea i wehe atu ia ki roto i te koraha e ai ki tā te Ariki whakahau ki a ia, ā, i kawea atu ngā tuhinga kua whaowhaoa i runga i ngā papa parāhe, nā te mea i kī ai rātou nāna rātou i pāhua.
- 17 Ā, i pēnei tā rātou whakaako i ā rātou tamariki kia mauāhara rātou ki a rātou, ā, kia kōhurutia ai rātou, ā, kia pāhuatia, kia murua rātou anō hoki, me te mahi i ngā mea katoa e taea ai e rātou te mahi kia whakangaro i a rātou; nō reira he mauāhara mutunga kore tō rātou ki ngā tamariki a Nīwhai.
- 18 Nā tēnei take pū anō i nukarauhia ai au e kīngi Rāmana, nā tana tinihanga, me tana māminga, me ana whakaari papai, kua mauria ake e au tēnei taku iwi ki roto i tēnei whenua, kia whakangaromia ai rātou e rātou; āe rā, kua whakamamaetia mātou mō ngā tau maha i te whenua.
- 19 Ināianei ā, ko ahau, a Hinihi, whai muri iho i taku kōrerotanga atu i ēnei mea katoa ki taku iwi e pā ana ki ngā Rāmana, ka akiaki au i a rātou kia haere atu ki te whawhai i runga i tō rātou kaha, e whakawhirinaki ana ki te Ariki; nō reira, i whawhai atu mātou ki a rātou, kanohi ki te kanohi.
- 20 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i āia atu rātou e mātou ki waho i te whenua; ā, i patua rātou ki tētahi patunga nui, ā, kīhai mātou i tatauria nā tō rātou tino tokomaha.
- 21 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i hoki atu anō mātou ki tō mātou whenua, ā, ka tīmata anō taku iwi ki te tiaki i ā rātou kāhui, me te ngaki i ō rātou whenua.
- 22 Ināianei ahau, e koroheke ana, i whakatau iho ki tētahi o aku tama te kīngitanga; nō reira, kāore au e kōrero anō. Ā, mā te Ariki taku iwi e manaaki. Āmine.

And again, they were wroth with him because he departed into the wilderness as the Lord had commanded him, and took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, for they said that he robbed them.

And thus they have taught their children that they should hate them, and that they should murder them, and that they should rob and plunder them, and do all they could to destroy them; therefore they have an eternal hatred towards the children of Nephi.

For this very cause has king Laman, by his cunning, and lying craftiness, and his fair promises, deceived me, that I have brought this my people up into this land, that they may destroy them; yea, and we have suffered these many years in the land.

And now I, Zeniff, after having told all these things unto my people concerning the Lamanites, I did stimulate them to go to battle with their might, putting their trust in the Lord; therefore, we did contend with them, face to face.

And it came to pass that we did drive them again out of our land; and we slew them with a great slaughter, even so many that we did not number them.

And it came to pass that we returned again to our own land, and my people again began to tend their flocks, and to till their ground.

And now I, being old, did confer the kingdom upon one of my sons; therefore, I say no more. And may the Lord bless my people. Amen.

## Mōhia 11

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakataua iho te kīngitanga e Hinihi ki runga i a Noa, tētahi o ana tama; nō reira i tūmata a Noa ki te whakahaere i runga i tōna tūranga; ā, kīhai ia i hikoi i runga i ngā huarahi o tana matua.
- 2 Nana rā, kīhai ia i pupuri ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, engari i hikoi ia i ngā hiahia o tōna ake ngākau. Ā, he tokomaha āna hoawāhine me āna hoawāhine tūtūā. Ā, i meatia e ia tana iwi kia hara me te mahi i ngā mea mōrikarika i roto i te tirohanga a te Ariki. Āe rā, i mahi pūremu rātou me ngā tūmomo āhuratanga whakarihariha katoa.
- 3 Ā, ka whakatakotohia e ia te wāhi hau rima o ō rātou rawa katoa hei tāke, he wāhi hau rima o ā rātou kōura me ā rātou hiriwā, me te wāhi hau rima o ā rātou tiwhi, me ā rātou kapa, me ā rātou parāhe me ā rātou rino; me te wāhi hau rima o ā rātou kūao mōmona; me te wāhi hau rima o ā rātou kākano.
- 4 Ā, koinei katoa i tangohia e ia hei tautoko i a ia anō, me āna hoawāhine me āna hoawāhine tūtūā; me ana tohunga, me ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou hoawāhine tūtūā anō hoki; i pēnei rā tana whakarerekē i ngā āhuratanga o te kīngitanga.
- 5 Nā, i turakina e ia ngā tohunga katoa i whakatapua e tōna matua, kātahi ka whakatapua he mea hou hei whakakapi mō reira, arā, ko ngā mea kua neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o ō rātou ngākau.
- 6 Āe rā, i pēnei te āhua i tautokona ai rātou i runga i tō rātou māngeretanga, ā, i runga i tō rātou karakia whakapakoko, me ā rātou pūremutanga, mā ngā tāke kua whakataua e kīngi Noa ki runga i tana iwi; ā, i pēnei te whakarirā kaha a te iwi ki te tautoko i te kino.
- 7 Āe rā, ka meinga anō rātou hei iwi karakia ki ngā whakapakoko, nā te mea i māmingatia rātou e ngā kupu noa, e ngā kupu whakapatipati a tō rātou kīngi me āna tohunga; nā te mea i kōrerotia e rātou ngā mea whakapatipati ki a rātou.

## Mosiah 11

And now it came to pass that Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons; therefore Noah began to reign in his stead; and he did not walk in the ways of his father.

For behold, he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart. And he had many wives and concubines. And he did cause his people to commit sin, and do that which was abominable in the sight of the Lord. Yea, and they did commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness.

And he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed, a fifth part of their gold and of their silver, and a fifth part of their ziff, and of their copper, and of their brass and their iron; and a fifth part of their fatlings; and also a fifth part of all their grain.

And all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines; thus he had changed the affairs of the kingdom.

For he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

Yea, and thus they were supported in their laziness, and in their idolatry, and in their whoredoms, by the taxes which king Noah had put upon his people; thus did the people labor exceedingly to support iniquity.

Yea, and they also became idolatrous, because they were deceived by the vain and flattering words of the king and priests; for they did speak flattering things unto them.

- 8     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hangaia e kīngi Noa ngā whare whakanikoniko maha me ngā whare nunui maha; ā, ka whakarākeihia ki ngā mahinga papai o te rākau, me ngā tūmomo mea utu nui katoa, o te kōura, o te hiriwā hoki, o te rino hoki, o te parāhe hoki, o te tiwha hoki, o te kapa hoki;
- 9     Ā, i hangaia anōtia e ia tētahi wharekīngi nunui, me tētahi torōna kei waenganui o reira, he rākau papai rawa katoa, ā, i whakarākeihia e te kōura me te hiriwā me ngā mea utu nui.
- 10    Ā, i meatia anō hoki e ia kia mahi ana kaimahi i ngā tūmomo mahinga papai katoa i roto i ngā pakitara o te temepara, he mea mahi ki ngā rākau papai, me te kapa, me te parāhe.
- 11    Ā, ko ngā nohoanga i whakaritea atu mō ngā tohunga teitei, kua whakateiteihia i runga ake i ērā atu nohoanga katoa, nāna i whakarākei ki te kōura parakore; ā, i meatia e ia kia hangaia ai tētahi parepare ki mua i ērā, kia taea ai e rātou te okioki i ō rātou tinana me ō rātou ringaringa ki runga rā i a rātou e kōrero ana i ngā kupu rūkahu, ā, i ngā kupu noa ki tana iwi.
- 12    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i hangaia e ia tētahi pourewa e tūtata ana ki te temepara; āe rā, he pourewa tino teitei, he pourewa tino tiketike pū anō kua taea e ia te tū i reira me te mātakitaki atu i te whenua o Hīroma, me te whenua o Hemerona anō hoki, kua nōhia e ngā Rāmana; ā, i taea pū anō e ia te titiro atu ki ngā whenua katoa huri noa, huri noa.
- 13    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i meatia e ia kia hangaia ngā whare maha i te whenua o Hīroma; ā, i meatia e ia kia hangaia ai tētahi pourewa nui i runga i te puke kei te taha raki o te whenua Hīroma, koia tētahi punanga mō ngā tamariki a Nīwhai i te wā i tahuti atu rātou ki waho i te whenua; ā, i pēnei tāna i mahi ai ki ngā pūtea i hopukina ai e te tāketanga i tana iwi.
- 14    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakatau atu tōna ngākau ki runga i ngā taonga, ā, i whakapaua ōna rā ki te mahi tutū me āna hoawāhine me āna hoawāhine tūtūā; ā, i whakapau pērā anō ana tohunga i ō rātou rā me ngā wāhine pūremu.
- 15    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakatō māra waina ia huri noa i te whenua; ā, i hangaia ngā pēhanga waina, ā, i ranea āna mahi waina; ā, nō reira ia i meinga ai hei wara waina, me tana iwi anō hoki.

And it came to pass that king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings; and he ornamented them with fine work of wood, and of all manner of precious things, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of brass, and of ziff, and of copper;

And he also built him a spacious palace, and a throne in the midst thereof, all of which was of fine wood and was ornamented with gold and silver and with precious things.

And he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold; and he caused a breast-work to be built before them, that they might rest their bodies and their arms upon while they should speak lying and vain words to his people.

And it came to pass that he built a tower near the temple; yea, a very high tower, even so high that he could stand upon the top thereof and overlook the land of Shilom, and also the land of Shemlon, which was possessed by the Lamanites; and he could even look over all the land round about.

And it came to pass that he caused many buildings to be built in the land Shilom; and he caused a great tower to be built on the hill north of the land Shilom, which had been a resort for the children of Nephi at the time they fled out of the land; and thus he did do with the riches which he obtained by the taxation of his people.

And it came to pass that he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

And it came to pass that he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber, and also his people.

16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata ngā Rāmana ki te whakaeke mai ki runga i tōna iwi, ki runga i ngā taturanga ruarua, me te patu i a rātou i roto i ā rātou whīra, i a rātou e tiakina ana i ā rātou kāhui.

17 Ā, i tonoa atu e kīngi Noa he kaitiaki huri noa ki te kaupare atu i a rātou; engari kīhai i rahi rawa ngā taturanga i tonoa atu e ia, ā, ka whakaeke atu ngā Rāmana ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka whakamatea rātou, ā, ka āia atu ā rātou kāhui maha i te whenua; ka tīmata pēnei ngā Rāmana ki te whakangaro i a rātou me te whakamahi i tō rātou mauāhara ki runga i a rātou.

18 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tonoa e kīngi Noa ana ope tauā kia tatau atu ki a rātou, ā, ka āia rātou ki muri, i āia rānei rātou ki muri e rātou mō tētahi wā; nō reira, ka hoki hari mai rātou i runga i ā rātou taonga parakete.

19 Ināianeī ā, nā tēnei wikitōria nui i neke ake ai rātou i runga i te whakapehapeha o ō rātou ngākau; ka whakamanamana rātou i tō rātou ake kaha, e mea ana kua taea e ō rātou rima tekau te tatau atu ki ngā Rāmana manomano; ā, i whakamanamana pēnei rātou, ā, i āhuareka rātou ki te toto, me te whakahēkenga i te toto o ā rātou teina, ā, tēnei anō nā te whakariharaha o tō rātou kīngi me ngā tohunga.

20 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i konā tētahi tangata i waenganui i a rātou ko Apinati tōna ingoa; ā, i haere atu ia ki waenganui i a rātou, ā, ka tīmata ia ki te poropiti, e mea ana: Nana, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, ko tēnei tāna i whakahau mai ai ki ahau, e mea ana, Haere atu, me te kī atu ki tēnei iwi, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki—Auē te mate mō tēnei iwi, nā te mea kua kite au i ō rātou mōrikarika, me ō rātou whakariharaha, me ō rātou pūremu, ā, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā māku rātou e toro atu i runga i taku riri.

21 Ā, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā me te tahuri ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, nana, māku rātou e tuku atu ki ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri; āe rā, ka kukume iho rātou ki roto i te hereheretanga; ā, ka whakamamaetia rātou e te ringa o ō rātou hoariri.

22 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka mōhio rātou ko au te Ariki tō rātou Atua, ā, he Atua hae, e torotoro ana ki ngā hara o taku iwi.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites began to come in upon his people, upon small numbers, and to slay them in their fields, and while they were tending their flocks.

And king Noah sent guards round about the land to keep them off; but he did not send a sufficient number, and the Lamanites came upon them and killed them, and drove many of their flocks out of the land; thus the Lamanites began to destroy them, and to exercise their hatred upon them.

And it came to pass that king Noah sent his armies against them, and they were driven back, or they drove them back for a time; therefore, they returned rejoicing in their spoil.

And now, because of this great victory they were lifted up in the pride of their hearts; they did boast in their own strength, saying that their fifty could stand against thousands of the Lamanites; and thus they did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

And it came to pass that there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy, saying: Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord—Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

And except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will deliver them into the hands of their enemies; yea, and they shall be brought into bondage; and they shall be afflicted by the hand of their enemies.

And it shall come to pass that they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

- 23     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ki te kore tēnei iwi e rīpenetā me te tahuri ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, ka kukume iho rātou ki roto i te hereheretanga; ā, kua kore e whakaorangia ai rātou e tētahi, hāunga ko te Ariki te Atua Kaha Rawa.
- 24     Āe rā, ka pahawa ake anō hoki, nā, ina karanga mai rātou ki ahau ka pūhoi taku whakarongo atu ki ā rātou karanga; āe rā, māku rātou e tuku kia patua rātou e ō rātou hoariri.
- 25     Ā, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā i roto i te kahu taratara, i te pungarehu hoki, me te karanga kaha ake ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, engari au mō te whakarongo atu ki ā rātou inoi, engari rānei au mō te whakaora i a rātou i ō rātou whakamamaetanga; ā, ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, ā, ko te whakahau tēnei i whakahau ai ia ki ahau.
- 26     Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Apinati i ēnei kupu ki a rātou ka pukuriri rātou ki a ia, ā, ka whāia e rātou te muru atu i tōna oranga; engari i whakaorangia ia e te Ariki i ō rātou ringaringa.
- 27     Nā, i te rongonga o kīngi Noa i ēnei kupu i kōrerotia ai e Apinati ki te iwi, ka pukuriri anō hoki ia; ā, ka mea ia: Ko wai a Apinati, kia whakawākia au me taku iwi e ia, ko wai rānei te Ariki, e whakataua iho ki runga i taku iwi te whakamamaetanga nui?
- 28     E whakahau ana ahau ki a koutou kia haria mai a Apinati ki konei, kia patu au i a ia, nā te mea kua kōrerotia e ia ēnei mea kia whakaohokia ai te iwi kia riri tētahi ki tētahi me te whakatupu i ngā ngangaretanga ki waenganui i taku iwi; nō reira, māku ia e patu.
- 29     Nā, i whakakāpōhia ngā karu o te iwi; nō reira, i whakapakekehia e rātou ō rātou ngākau ki ngā kupu a Apinati, ā, ka whāia e rātou i taua wā tonu ki te hopu i a ia. Ā, i whakapakekehia e kīngi Noa tōna ngākau ki te kupu a te Ariki, ā, kīhai ia i rīpenetā i āna mahinga kino.

And it shall come to pass that except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

Yea, and it shall come to pass that when they shall cry unto me I will be slow to hear their cries; yea, and I will suffer them that they be smitten by their enemies.

And except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions; and thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me.

Now it came to pass that when Abinadi had spoken these words unto them they were wroth with him, and sought to take away his life; but the Lord delivered him out of their hands.

Now when king Noah had heard of the words which Abinadi had spoken unto the people, he was also wroth; and he said: Who is Abinadi, that I and my people should be judged of him, or who is the Lord, that shall bring upon my people such great affliction?

I command you to bring Abinadi hither, that I may slay him, for he has said these things that he might stir up my people to anger one with another, and to raise contentions among my people; therefore I will slay him.

Now the eyes of the people were blinded; therefore they hardened their hearts against the words of Abinadi, and they sought from that time forward to take him. And king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

## Mōhia 12

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te otinga ake o ngā tau e rua ka puta āhua kē mai a Apinati ki waenganui i a rātou, kīhai rātou i mōhio ki a ia, ā, ka tīmata ki te poropiti ki waenganui i a rātou, e mea ana: Kua whakahaua pēneitia ahau e te Ariki, e mea ana—E Apinati, haere, poropiti atu ki tēnei taku iwi, nā te mea kua whakapakekehia e rātou ō rātou ngākau ki aku kupu; kīhai rātou i rīpenetā i ō rātou mahinga kino; nō reira, ka toro atu au ki a rātou i runga i taku riri, āe rā, ka toro atu au ki a rātou i roto i ō rātou hara me ō rātou mōrikarika i runga i taku riri nui.
- 2 Āe rā, auē te mate mō tēnei whakatipuranga! Ā, ka mea mai te Ariki ki ahau: Torona atu tō ringa me te poropiti, e mea ana: Ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, ka pahawa ake i tēnei whakatipuranga, nā ō rātou hara, ka kukume iho ki roto i te hereheretanga, ā, ka pākia te pāpāringa; āe rā, ka āia atu e te tangata, ā, ka patua; ā, mā ngā whatura o te rangi, me ngā kurī, āe rā me ngā kararehe mohoa, e kai ō rātou kikokiko.
- 3 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka rite te wāriu o te oranga o kīngi Noa ki tētahi kākahu pū anō i roto i te oumu wera; nā te mea ka mōhio ia ko au te Ariki.
- 4 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, māku taku iwi nei e patu ki ngā whakamamaetanga nui, āe rā, ki te matekai me te mate urutā; ā, māku rātou e mea kia auē rātou mō te roanga katoa o te rā.
- 5 Āe rā, ka meatia e au kia herea ai ngā pikaunga ki runga i ō rātou tuarā; ā, ka āia atu rātou anō nei he kaihe reokore.
- 6 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka tukuna atu e au te ua whatu ki waenganui i a rātou, ā, ka patua rātou; ā, ka patua anōtia rātou e te marangai; ā, ka autaiā ngā ngārara i ō rātou whenua, me te horo i ā rātou kākano.
- 7 Ā, ka patua rātou ki tētahi mate urutā nui—ā, māku katoa ēnei nā ō rātou hara me ō rātou mōrikarika.

## Mosiah 12

And it came to pass that after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me, saying—Abinadi, go and prophesy unto this my people, for they have hardened their hearts against my words; they have repented not of their evil doings; therefore, I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

Yea, wo be unto this generation! And the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy, saying: Thus saith the Lord, it shall come to pass that this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

And it shall come to pass that the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

And it shall come to pass that I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence; and I will cause that they shall howl all the day long.

Yea, and I will cause that they shall have burdens lashed upon their backs; and they shall be driven before like a dumb ass.

And it shall come to pass that I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence—and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

- 8     Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā māku rātou e whakangaro mai i te mata o te whenua; heoi, ka mahue i a rātou tētahi tūhinga i muri i a rātou, ā, māku ēnā e tiaki mō ērā atu iwi e nōhia ai te whenua; āe rā, ka pēnei pū anō au kia hura atu ai au i ngā mōrikarika o tēnei iwi ki ērā atu iwi. Ā, he maha ngā mea i poropititia ai e Apinati e tauaro ana ki tēnei iwi.
- 9     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te riri rātou ki a ia; ā, ka mau ia i a rātou, ā, ka mauria hereheretia atu ia ki te aroaro o te kīngi, ā, ka kī atu ki te kīngi: Nana, kua mauria mai tētahi tangata ki mua i tō aroaro, nāna i poropiti kino e pā ana ki tō iwi, ā, e mea ana ka whakangaro te Atua i a rātou.
- 10    Ā, e poropiti kino ana anō hoki ia e pā ana ki tō oranga, ā, e mea ana ka rite tō oranga ki tētahi kākahu i roto i te oumu ahi.
- 11    Hei āpiti anō, e mea ana ia ka rite koe ki tētahi kakau tupu, ki tētahi kakau maroke pū anō o te whīra, kua omahia nei e ngā kararehe, ā, takatakahia kau ana e te waewae.
- 12    Hei āpiti anō, e mea ana ia ka rite koe ki ngā puāwai o te tūmatakuru, ina tino pakari, ki te pupuhi te hau, ka āia atu ki runga i te mata o te whenua. Ā, kei te whakataruna ia nā te Ariki i kōrero. Ā, ka mea ia ka tau katoa iho tēnei ki runga i a koe ki te kore koe e rīpenetā, ā, ka pēneitia nā ōu hara.
- 13    Ināianeī ā, E te kīngi, he aha te kino nui kua mea nei koe, he aha rānei ngā hara nui kua meatia e tō iwi, kia whakahēngia ai tātou e te Atua, kia whakawākia ai rānei e tēnei tangata?
- 14    Ināianeī ā, E te kīngi, nana, he harakore mātou, ā, ko koe, E te kīngi, kīhai nei i hara; nō reira, kua rūkahu tēnei tangata e pā ana ki a koe, ā, auare ake ana tāna i poropiti ai.
- 15    Ā, nana, he kaha tātou, e kore tātou e heke atu ki roto i te hereheretanga, e kahakina hereheretia atu rānei e ō tātou hoariri; āe rā, kua kake koe i tēnei whenua, ā, ka kake tonu koe.
- 16    Nana, anei te tangata, e tukuna atu ana ia e mātou ki roto i ō ringaringa; māu e mahi tāu e pai ai ki a ia.

And it shall come to pass that except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them, and I will preserve them for other nations which shall possess the land; yea, even this will I do that I may discover the abominations of this people to other nations. And many things did Abinadi prophesy against this people.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him; and they took him and carried him bound before the king, and said unto the king: Behold, we have brought a man before thee who has prophesied evil concerning thy people, and saith that God will destroy them.

And he also prophesieth evil concerning thy life, and saith that thy life shall be as a garment in a furnace of fire.

And again, he saith that thou shalt be as a stalk, even as a dry stalk of the field, which is run over by the beasts and trodden under foot.

And again, he saith thou shalt be as the blossoms of a thistle, which, when it is fully ripe, if the wind bloweth, it is driven forth upon the face of the land. And he pretendeth the Lord hath spoken it. And he saith all this shall come upon thee except thou repent, and this because of thine iniquities.

And now, O king, what great evil hast thou done, or what great sins have thy people committed, that we should be condemned of God or judged of this man?

And now, O king, behold, we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

And behold, we are strong, we shall not come into bondage, or be taken captive by our enemies; yea, and thou hast prospered in the land, and thou shalt also prosper.

Behold, here is the man, we deliver him into thy hands; thou mayest do with him as seemeth thee good.

- 17     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka meatia e kīngi Noa kia panaia atu a Apinati ki roto i te whareherehere; ā, ka whakahaua e ia kia huihui tahi ai ngā tohunga i a rātou anō e wānanga tahi ai rātou me aha ki a ia.
- 18     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu rātou ki te kīngi: Haria mai ia ki konei kia uiuitia ia e mātou; ā, ka whakahau te kīngi kia haria ia ki mua i a rātou.
- 19     Ā, ka tīmata rātou ki te uiui i a ia, kia whakatapepatia ia, mā konā whai mea ai rātou hei take whakahē mōna engari i māia tana whakahoki ki a rātou, ā, me te urupare i ā rātou pātai katoa, āe rā, ka mīharo rātou; nā te mea i urupare atu ia i ā rātou pātai katoa, ā, i whakapōauautia ā rātou kupu katoa.
- 20     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu tētahi o rātou ki a ia: He aha te tikanga o ngā kupu kua tuhia, kua whakaakona hoki e ō tātou tūpuna matua, e mea ana:
- 21     Anō te ātaahua o ngā waewae kei runga i ngā maunga o te tangata e kawea mai nei i te rongopai; e kauhau ana i te maungārongo; e kawea mai ana te rongopai o te pai; e kauhau ana i te whakaoranga; e mea ana ki a Hiona, e whakahaere ana Tō Atua;
- 22     Ka whakanuia te reo o ō tūtei; kotahi tonu te reo e waiata ai rātou; nā te mea ka kite rātou kanohi ki te kanohi ina whakahoki anō te Ariki i a Hiona;
- 23     Papahū atu i te hari; waiatahia ngātahitia e koutou ngā wāhi ururua o Hiruharama; nā te mea kua whakaahuru te Ariki i tana iwi, kua hokona a Hiruharama e ia;
- 24     Kua hura te Ariki i tōna ringa tapu i ngā karu o ngā iwi katoa, ā, ka kite ngā tōpito katoa o te ao i te whakaoranga o tō tātou Atua?
- 25     Ināianeī ā, ka kī atu a Apinati ki a rātou: He tohunga koutou, engari, e whakataruna ana me te mea nei kei te whakaako i tēnei iwi, me te mārāma i te wairua o te poropititanga, engari, kei te hiahia kia mōhio ai koutou i ahau he aha te tikanga o ēnei mea?
- 26     Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, auē te mate mō koutou i whakapeau i ngā huarahi a te Ariki! Nā te mea mēnā kei te mārāma koutou i ēnei mea kāore i whakaakona ēnā e koutou; nō reira, kua whakapeau koutou i ngā huarahi a te Ariki.

And it came to pass that king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

And it came to pass that they said unto the king: Bring him hither that we may question him; and the king commanded that he should be brought before them.

And they began to question him, that they might cross him, that thereby they might have wherewith to accuse him; but he answered them boldly, and withstood all their questions, yea, to their astonishment; for he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

And it came to pass that one of them said unto him: What meaneth the words which are written, and which have been taught by our fathers, saying:

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

And now Abinadi said unto them: Are you priests, and pretend to teach this people, and to understand the spirit of prophesying, and yet desire to know of me what these things mean?

I say unto you, wo be unto you for perverting the ways of the Lord! For if ye understand these things ye have not taught them; therefore, ye have perverted the ways of the Lord.



27 Kāore koutou i whakahāngai atu i ō koutou ngākau ki te māramatanga; nō reira, kāore koutou i whaiwhakaaro. Nō reira, he aha tā koutou e whakaako nei ki tēnei iwi?

28 Ā, ka kī rātou: E whakaako ana mātou i te ture a Mohi.

29 Ā, ka kī atu anō ia ki a rātou: Mehemea kei te whakaako koutou i te ture a Mohi he aha koutou e kore ai e pupuri? He aha koutou e whakatau atu ai i ō koutou ngākau ki ngā taonga? He aha koutou e mahi pūremu ai me te whakapau i ō koutou kaha ki ngā wāhine pūremu, āe rā, me te mea anō i tēnei iwi kia hara ai, nā, kua whaitake te Ariki kia tonoa au ki te poropiti i te hē mō tēnei iwi, āe rā, i te kino nui pū anō mō tēnei iwi?

30 Kāore rānei koutou e mōhio ana he pono aku kōrero? Āe rā, e mōhio ana koutou he pono aku kōrero; ā, me tāwiriwiri koutou i te aroaro o te Atua.

31 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka patua koutou mō ō koutou hara, nā te mea kua kī mai koutou kei te whakaako koutou i te ture a Mohi. Ā, he aha tā koutou e mōhio nei e pā ana ki te ture a Mohi? Ka puta te whakaoranga i te ture a Mohi? He aha tā koutou kī?

32 Ā, ka whakautua e rātou, ā, ka kī ake, nā, ka puta te whakaoranga i te ture a Mohi.

33 Engari ka kī atu a Apinati ināianei ki a rātou: E mōhio ana ahau mēnā ka pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua ka whakaorangia koutou; āe rā, mehemea e pupuri ana koutou i ngā whakahaunga i tukuna ai e te Ariki ki a Mohi i te maunga o Hinai, e mea ana:

34 Ko au te Ariki tō Atua, nāna nei koe i hari mai ki waho i te whenua o Īhipa, ki waho i te whare o te hereheretanga.

35 Kua tētahi Atua kē atu mōu ki mua i ahau.

36 Kua koe e hanga mōu tētahi whakapakoko, tētahi ritenga rānei o ngā mea i te rangi kei runga, o ngā mea rānei i te whenua kei raro.

37 Nā, ka kī atu a Apinati ki a rātou, Kua meatia ēnei mea katoa? ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, kīhai rawa koutou. Ā, kua whakaakona e koutou tēnei iwi kia mahi ai i ēnei mea katoa? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, kīhai rawa koutou.

Ye have not applied your hearts to understanding; therefore, ye have not been wise. Therefore, what teach ye this people?

And they said: We teach the law of Moses.

And again he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

Know ye not that I speak the truth? Yea, ye know that I speak the truth; and you ought to tremble before God.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall be smitten for your iniquities, for ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses? Doth salvation come by the law of Moses? What say ye?

And they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

But now Abinadi said unto them: I know if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

Thou shalt have no other God before me.

Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

Now Abinadi said unto them, Have ye done all this? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not. And have ye taught this people that they should do all these things? I say unto you, Nay, ye have not.

## Mōhia 13

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i te rongonga o te kīngi i ēnei kupu, ka kī atu ia ki ana tohunga: Mauria atu te tangata nei, ā, whakamatea ia; nā te mea he aha tana painga mā tātou, nā, he pōrangī ia.
- 2 Ā, ka whakatika atu rātou me te ngana kia pā atu ai ō rātou ringaringa ki runga i a ia; engari i kaha tana tū atu ki a rātou, ā, ka kī atu ki a rātou:
- 3 Kei pā mai koutou ki ahau, nā te mea ka patua koutou e te Atua mēnā ka pā mai ō koutou ringaringa ki runga i ahau, nā te mea kāore anō kia tukuna atu e au te karere i tonoa ai au e te Ariki ki te whakapuaki; kāore anō rānei kia kōrerohia atu e au tāu i tonoa mai ai kia kōrerohia atu nei; nō reira, Kāore te Atua e tuku kia whakangaromia au i tēnei wā.
- 4 Engari me whakatutuki e au ngā whakahaunga kua whakahau mai nei te Atua ki ahau; ā, nā te mea kua kōrero pono atu au ki a koutou kei te riri koutou ki ahau. Hei āpiti anō, nā taku kōrero atu ki a koutou i te kupu a te Atua kua kīa au e koutou he pōrangī au.
- 5 Nā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i te kōrero a Apinati i ēnei kupu, nā, kīhai i māia te iwi o kīngi Noa ki te whakapā i ō rātou ringaringa ki runga i a ia, nā te mea kei runga i a ia te Wairua o te Ariki; ā, i tino whēriko te kānapatanga o tōna mata, e rite tonu ana ki tō Mohi i a ia i te maunga o Hinai, e kōrero ana ki te Ariki.
- 6 Ā, i kōrero ia i runga i te kaha me te mana o te Atua; ā, ka haere tonu ana kōrero, e mea ana:
- 7 E kite ana koutou kāore ō koutou kaha ki te whakamate i ahau, nō reira māku taku karere e whakaoti. Āe rā, kua kite hoki ahau e werohia ana ō koutou ngākau nā te mea e kōrero pono ana ahau ki a koutou e pā ana ki ō koutou hara.
- 8 Āe rā, e kīkī ana koutou i te māharo, i te mīharo hoki, i te riri anō nā aku kupu.
- 9 Engari ka whakaoti au i taku karere; ka mutu, kāore he tikanga ki hea au haere ai, ki te mea ka whakaorangia au.
- 10 Engari ka kōrero tēnei au ki koutou, ko tā koutou e mea ai ki ahau, a muri ake nei, ka ai hei ritenga, ā, hei ātārangi mō ngā mea e puta mai ai.

## Mosiah 13

And now when the king had heard these words, he said unto his priests: Away with this fellow, and slay him; for what have we to do with him, for he is mad.

And they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver; neither have I told you that which ye requested that I should tell; therefore, God will not suffer that I shall be destroyed at this time.

But I must fulfil the commandments wherewith God has commanded me; and because I have told you the truth ye are angry with me. And again, because I have spoken the word of God ye have judged me that I am mad.

Now it came to pass after Abinadi had spoken these words that the people of king Noah durst not lay their hands on him, for the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses' did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

And he spake with power and authority from God; and he continued his words, saying:

Ye see that ye have not power to slay me, therefore I finish my message. Yea, and I perceive that it cuts you to your hearts because I tell you the truth concerning your iniquities.

Yea, and my words fill you with wonder and amazement, and with anger.

But I finish my message; and then it matters not whither I go, if it so be that I am saved.

But this much I tell you, what you do with me, after this, shall be as a type and a shadow of things which are to come.

- 11     Ā, ka pānui atu au ki a koutou ināianeī te toenga  
atu o ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, nā te mea kei te  
kite au kāore ērā i tuhia ki roto i ō koutou ngākau;  
kei te kite au, nā, kua rangahau, kua whakaako hara  
koutou mō te wāhi nui o ō koutou oranga.
- 12     Ināianeī ā, e mahara ana koutou nāku i kōrero atu  
ki a koutou: Kua koe e hanga mōu tētahi  
whakapakoko, tētahi ritenga rānei o ngā mea i te  
rangi kei runga, i te whenua rānei kei raro, i te wai  
rānei i raro i te whenua.
- 13     Hei āpiti anō: Kua koe e tuohu iho ki ēnā mea, e  
mahi rānei ki ēnā mea; nā te mea he Atua hae ahau te  
Ariki tō Atua, e torona atu ana i ngā hara o ngā  
tūpuna matua ki runga i ngā tamariki, ki ngā  
whakatipuranga tuatoru me te tuawhā o te hunga e  
mauāhara ana ki ahau;
- 14     Ā, e whakaatu aroha ana ki ngā mano o te hunga e  
aroha ana ki ahau me te pupuri i aku whakahaunga.
- 15     Kua koe e whakahua noa i te ingoa o te Ariki tō  
Atua; nā te mea kāore te Ariki e mea ai he harakore  
te tangata e whakahua noa i tōna ingoa.
- 16     Me maumahara ki te rā hāpati, kia whakatapua.
- 17     E ono ngā rā e mahi ai koe, me te mahi i āu mahi  
katoa;
- 18     Engari ko te rā tuawhitu, te hāpati o te Ariki tō  
Atua, kua e mahia tētahi mahi e koe, e tāu tama  
rānei, e tāu tamahine rānei, e tō pononga-tāne, e tō  
pononga-wahine, e ō kararehe rānei, e tō tangata kē  
rānei kei roto i ō kētī;
- 19     Nā te mea i hangaia e te Ariki te rangi me te  
whenua, me te moana i ngā rā e ono, me ngā mea  
katoa kei roto rā; nā reira i whakapaingia e te Ariki tō  
rā hāpati, ā, whakatapua ana.
- 20     Whakahōnoretia tō matua me tō whaea, kia roa ai  
ōu rā i runga i te whenua e homai nei e te Ariki tō  
Atua ki a koe.
- 21     Kua koe e whakamate.
- 22     Kua koe e pūremu. Kua koe e tāhae.
- 23     Kua koe e whakapae teka ki tō kiritata.

And now I read unto you the remainder of the  
commandments of God, for I perceive that they are  
not written in your hearts; I perceive that ye have  
studied and taught iniquity the most part of your  
lives.

And now, ye remember that I said unto you: Thou  
shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any  
likeness of things which are in heaven above, or  
which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the  
water under the earth.

And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto  
them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a  
jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers  
upon the children, unto the third and fourth genera-  
tions of them that hate me;

And showing mercy unto thousands of them that  
love me and keep my commandments.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God  
in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that  
taketh his name in vain.

Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy  
God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son,  
nor thy daughter, thy man-servant, nor thy maid-  
servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within  
thy gates;

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth,  
and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the  
Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days  
may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God  
giveth thee.

Thou shalt not kill.

Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not  
steal.

Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy  
neighbor.

24 Kaua koe e kaiapo i te whare o tō kiritata, kaua koe e kaiapo i te hoawahine o tō kiritata, i tana pononga-tāne rānei, i tana pononga-wahine rānei, i tana ōkiha rānei, i tana kaihe rānei, i tētahi mea rānei o tō kiritata.

25 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i tā Apinati whakaoti i ēnei kōrero ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: Kua whakaako koutou i tēnei iwi kia ū rātou ki te mahi i ēnei mea katoa kia pupuri ai i ēnei whakahaunga?

26 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo; nā te mea mehemea i pērātia, kua kore te Ariki i mea kia haere mai au ki te poropiti i te kino e pā ana ki tēnei iwi.

27 Ā, kua kī mai ianei koutou ka puta te whakaoranga i te ture a Mohi. Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou e tika pū anō kia pupuri koutou i te ture a Mohi mō nāianei; engari ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka tae mai te wā kāore e tika tonu ana kia pupuri i te ture a Mohi.

28 Ā, waihoki, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore te whakaoranga e puta mai i te ture anake; ā, me i kore te whakamārietanga e meatia ai e te Atua ake anō mō ngā hē me ngā hara o tana iwi, nā, kua tino ngaro rawa atu rātou, ahakoa te ture a Mohi.

29 Ināianei ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, na, i tika pū anō kia hoatu ai tētahi ture ki ngā tamariki o Iharaira, āe rā, he ture tino uaua pū anō; nā te mea he iwi kakī mārō rātou, he tere ki te hara, ā, he pūhoi ki te maumahara ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua;

30 Nō reira tētahi ture i hoatu ai ki a rātou, āe rā, he ture mahi, ā, he ture whai tikanga, he ture kia āta whaiwhai kaha atu mai i tētahi rā ki tētahi rā, kia mau ai ēnā kia mahara ai ki te Atua me tō rātou haepapa ki a ia.

31 Engari nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, he ritenga katoa ēnei mō ngā mea e puta mai ai.

32 Ināianei ā, i mārāma rātou ki te ture? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, kāore rātou katoa i mārāma ki te ture; ā, i pēnei nā te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau; nā te mea kāore rātou i mārāma korekau tētahi tangata e whakaorangia ai hāunga mā roto i te hokonga a te Atua.

Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor's.

And it came to pass that after Abinadi had made an end of these sayings that he said unto them: Have ye taught this people that they should observe to do all these things for to keep these commandments?

I say unto you, Nay; for if ye had, the Lord would not have caused me to come forth and to prophesy evil concerning this people.

And now ye have said that salvation cometh by the law of Moses. I say unto you that it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet; but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

And moreover, I say unto you, that salvation doth not come by the law alone; and were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

And now I say unto you that it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day, to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

But behold, I say unto you, that all these things were types of things to come.

And now, did they understand the law? I say unto you, Nay, they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts; for they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

- 33 Nana rā, kihai rānei a Mohi i poropiti atu ki a rātou e pā ana ki te haerenga mai a te Mīhaia, ā, ka hoko anō te Atua i tana iwi? Āe rā, ko ngā poropiti katoa kua poropititia mai i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao—kāore rānei rātou i kōrero nui, i kōrero iti rānei e pā ana ki ēnei mea?
- 34 Kāore rānei rātou i kī ai ka heke iho mai te Atua ake anō ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, me te mau ki runga i a ia te āhua o te tangata, me te haere whakamua i runga i te mana nui ki runga i te mata o te whenua?
- 35 Āe rā, kāore rānei rātou i kī ai anō hoki, nā, māna e whakaputa te aranga o te hunga mate, ā, ka tūkinotia, ā, ka whakamamaetia ia anō?

For behold, did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people? Yea, and even all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began—have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

## Mōhia 14

- 1 Āe rā, kīhai rānei a Īhāia i kī: Ko wai i whakapono mai ki tā mātou pūrongo, ā, ka whakakitea atu rānei te ringa o te Ariki ki a wai?
- 2 Nā, ka tupu ake i tōna aroaro anō nei he rākau wana, ā, anō nei he aka i te oneone maroke; kāore ōna ātaahua, ōna āhuareka rānei; ā, ina kite tātou i a ia kāore ōna rerehua e minamina atu ai mātou ki a ia.
- 3 Ka whakahāweatia ia, ā, ka whakaparahakotia ia e te tangata; he tangata pōuri, ā, e mōhiō ana ki te auwhi; ā, i huna mātou me te mea nei ko ō mātou kanohi i a ia; i whakahāweatia ia, ā, kīhai mātou i whakaaro ki a ia.
- 4 Kāore e kore kua pīkauria e ia ō tātou auwhi, ā, kua waha i ō tātou pōuritanga; heoi, i whakaarotia ia e mātou he mea pākia ia, kua patua e te Atua, ā, kua whakamamaetia.
- 5 Engari, i taotūhia ia mō ō tātou hē, i marū ia mō ō tātou hara; i tau ki runga i a ia te whiunga mō tō tātou maungārongo; ā, mā ōna nawe e mahu ai tātou.
- 6 Kua kōtiti kē tātou katoa, anō nei he hipi, kua tahuri atu tātou, tēnā me tēnā ki tōna ake huarahi; ā, kua whakatakoto te Ariki i ō tātou hara katoa ki runga i a ia.
- 7 I whakapēhia ia, ā, i whakawhiua ia, heoi, kīhai tonu ia i tūwhera i tōna māngai; kua mauria mai ia anō nei he reme ki tōna matenga, ā, e pērā ana me tētahi hipi i te aroaro o tana kaikutikuti e wahangū ana kīhai ia i tūwhera i tōna māngai.
- 8 I tangohia ia i te whareherehere, i te whakawākanga hoki; ā, mā wai tana whakatipuranga e whakapuaki? Nā te mea kua poroa atu ia ki waho i te whenua o te hunga ora; nā te mea mō ngā hara o tōku iwi i pākia ai ia.
- 9 Ā, i meatia e ia tana rua tūpāpaku i te taha o te hunga whakarihariha, ā, i te taha o te hunga whai taonga i tana matenga; nā te mea kīhai ia i mea ai i te kino, kāore rānei he tinihanga i tōna māngai.
- 10 Heoi, i pai anō te Ariki kia marū i a ia; nāna ia i mamae ai; ina mea i tana wairua hei tāpaenga mō te hara ka kite ia i tana uri, māna ōna rā e whakaroa, ā, ka kake ake te āhuareka o te Ariki i tōna ringa.

## Mosiah 14

Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

11 Ka kite ia i te mamaetanga o tōna wairua, ā, ka ngata ia; mā tana mātauranga taku pononga tika e parahau i te tini; nā te mea māna ō rātou hara e waha.

12 Nō reira, māku tētahi wāhi e wāwāhia ai mōna ki te taha o te hunga nunui, ā, māna te parakete e wāwāhi tahi me te hunga kaha; nā te mea i riringitia atu e ia tōna wairua ki te mate; ā, i taturia ia me te hunga hara; ā, nāna ngā hara o te tini i waha, ā, i meatia e ia tētahi wawaotanga mō te hunga hara.

He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

## Mōhia 15

- 1 Ināianeī ā, ka kī atu a Apinati ki a rātou: E hiahia ana ahau kia mārāma ai koutou, nā, ka heke iho mai te Atua pū anō ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, ka hokona tana iwi.
- 2 Ā, nā te mea e noho ana ia i te kikokiko ka karangatia ia ko te Tama a te Atua, ā, nā tana tuku i te kikokiko ki te hiahia a te Matua, ko ia te Matua me te Tama—
- 3 Ko te Matua, nā te mea i whakatōngia ia e te mana o te Atua; ā, ko te Tama, nā te kikokiko; e meinga pēnei ana ko te Matua me te Tama—
- 4 Ā, he Atua kotahi rāua, āe rā, ko te tino Matua Ora Tōnu o te rangi me te whenua;
- 5 Ā, i meinga pēnei te kikokiko ki raro i te mana o te Wairua, te Tama rānei ki te Matua, he Atua kotahi nei, e whakamamaetia ana e ngā whakawai, ā, kāore e tautuku ana ki te whakawai, engari ka tukuna ia e ia anō kia tāwaia, ā, kia whakawhiua, ā, kia makaia atu, ā, kia whakakāhoretia e tōna ake iwi.
- 6 Ā, nō muri iho i tēnei katoa, nō muri i te mahinga o ngā merekara nunui maha i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, ka ārahina ia, āe rā, e pērā pū anō i tā Ihāia i kī ai, me he hipi i te aroaro o te kaikutikuti e wahangū ana, kīhai i kuihi tōna māngai.
- 7 Āe rā, ka ārahina pēneitia ia, ka rīpekātia, ā, ka whakamatea, ka meinga haere te kikokiko ki raro i te mana o te mate, e horomia ana te hiahia o te Tama e te hiahia o te Matua.
- 8 Ā, ka motuhia pēneitia ngā herehere o te mate e te Atua, kua riro te wikitōria i runga i te mate; e tukuna ana te mana ki te Tama kia meatia tētahi wawaotanga mō ngā tamariki a te tangata—
- 9 Kua kake nei i te rangi, ko ngā piropiro o te aroha; kua kiki nei i te aroha ki ngā tamariki a te tangata; e tū ana i waenganui i a rātou me te tika; kua motuhia ngā herehere o te mate, kua pīkauria e ia ō rātou hara me ō rātou hē, kua hokona rātou, ā, kua ea nei ngā tono a te tika.
- 10 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mā wai tōna whakatipuranga e whakapuaki? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ina meatia tōna wairua hei tāpaenga mō te hara e kitea ai e ia ōna uri. Ā, he aha tā koutou ināianeī? Ā, mā wai hei uri mōna?

## Mosiah 15

And now Abinadi said unto them: I would that ye should understand that God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son—

The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son—

And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men—

Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

And now I say unto you, who shall declare his generation? Behold, I say unto you, that when his soul has been made an offering for sin he shall see his seed. And now what say ye? And who shall be his seed?



- 11 Nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ko te tangata e rongō ai i ngā kupu a ngā poropiti, āe rā, ko ngā poropiti tapu katoa kua poropititia e pā ana ki te haerenga mai o te Ariki—ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ko te hunga katoa kua whakarongo nei ki ā rātou kupu, me te whakapono anō mā te Ariki tana iwi e hoko, me te aro whakamua atu ki taua rā e murua ai ō rātou hara, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, koinei ōna uri, ko rātou rānei ngā kaiwhiwhi o te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 12 Nā te mea koinei te hunga i waha ai ia i ō rātou hara; koinei te hunga i mate ai ia mō rātou, kia hokona ai rātou i ō rātou hē. Ināianei ā, ehara noa rānei ēnei i ōna uri?
- 13 Āe rā, ehara rānei ngā poropiti, ia mea kua kuihi tōna māngai ki te poropiti, kāore i taka iho ki roto i te hē, ko te tikanga o tāku ko ngā poropiti tapu katoa mai i te orokotimatanga o te ao? ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ko ōna uri rātou.
- 14 Ā, koinei te hunga nā rātou i kauhau i te maungārongo, kua kawea mai te rongō whakahari o te pai, kua kauhau i te whakaoranga; ā, kua mea atu ki a Hiona: E whakahaere ana tō Atua!
- 15 Ā, anō te ātaahua o ō rātou waewae i runga i ngā maunga!
- 16 Hei āpiti anō, anō te ātaahua o ngā waewae i runga i ngā maunga o te hunga e kauhau tonu ana i te maungārongo!
- 17 Hei āpiti, anō te ātaahua o ngā waewae i runga i ngā maunga o te hunga e kauhau ai i te maungārongo a muri ake nei, āe rā, mai i tēnei wā haere ake mō āke tonu atu!
- 18 Ā nana, ko tāku tēnei ki a koutou, kāore e mutu i konei. Nā, Anō te ātaahua o ngā waewae i runga i ngā maunga o te tangata e kawea mai nei i te rongō pai, koia te kaiwhakapūmau i te maungārongo, āe rā, ko te Ariki pū anō, nāna tana iwi i hoko; āe rā, ko ia nāna nei te whakaoranga i homai ki tana iwi;
- 19 Nā te mea me i kore ake te hokonga nāna i mea ai mō tana iwi, i whakaritea rā anō mai i te orokohanganga o te ao, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, me i kore ake tēnei, kua ngaro ngā tāngata katoa.

Behold I say unto you, that whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord—I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions. And now, are they not his seed?

Yea, and are not the prophets, every one that has opened his mouth to prophesy, that has not fallen into transgression, I mean all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation; and said unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

And again, how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

And behold, I say unto you, this is not all. For O how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace, yea, even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, I say unto you, were it not for this, all mankind must have perished.

20 Nana rā, ka motuhia ngā herehere o te mate, ā, e whakahaere ana te Tama, ā, he mana tōna i runga i te mate; nō reira, e whakaputaina mai ana e ia te aranga o te hunga mate.

21 Ā, ka puta mai tētahi aranga, he aranga tuatahi pū anō; āe rā, he aranga pū anō o te hunga o mua, o nāianeī, o muri anō hoki, tae atu pū anō ki te aranga ake o te Karaiti—nā te mea ka karangatia pērātia ia.

22 Ināianeī ā, ko te aranga o ngā poropiti katoa, me te hunga katoa i whakapono ai i ā rātou kupu, ko te hunga katoa rānei i pupuri ai i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, ka ara mai i te aranga tuatahi; nō reira, ko rātou te aranga tuatahi.

23 Ka whakaarohia ake rātou kia noho tahi ai me te Atua nāna nei rātou i hoko; kua whiwhi pēnei rātou i te oranga tonutanga mā roto i te Karaiti, nāna nei ngā herehere o te mate i momotu.

24 Ā, koinei te hunga kua whai wāhi atu i te aranga tuatahi; ā, koinei te hunga kua mate atu i mua i te haerenga mai a te Karaiti, i te kuaretanga, kīhai te whakaoranga i whakapuakina atu ki a rātou. Ā, e kawē pēnei mai ana te Ariki i te whakahokinga o ēnei; ā, e whai wāhi ana rātou i te aranga tuatahi, he oranga tonutanga tō rātou, kua hokona rātou e te Ariki.

25 Ā, he oranga tonutanga tō ngā tamariki nonohi.

26 Engari nana, me wehi, ā, me tūwiri i te aroaro o te Atua, nā te mea e tika ana me tūwiri; nā te mea kāore te Ariki e hoko i tētahi e tutū ana ki a ia, ā, ka mate hoki i ōna hara; āe rā, ko te hunga pū anō kua matemate i ō rātou hara mai te orokotimatanga o te ao, kua tutū mārīre ki te Atua, kua mōhio ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, engari kīhai i puritia ēnā; koinei te hunga kāore e whai wāhi atu i te aranga tuatahi.

27 Nō reira me kore rānei koutou e tūwiri? Nā te mea e kore te whakaoranga e puta ki tētahi pērā; nā te mea kīhai te Ariki i hoko i tētahi pērā; āe rā, kāore rānei e taea ana e te Ariki te hoko i ngā mea pērā; nā te mea tē taea e ia te whakakāhore i a ia anō; nā te mea tē taea e ia te whakakāhore i te tika mēnā he kerēme tōna.

28 Ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou ināianeī ka tae mai te wā e whakapuakina ai te whakaoranga o te Atua ki ia iwi, hapū, reo me ngā huihuinga tāngata.

But behold, the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead; therefore, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

And there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ—for so shall he be called.

And now, the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection; therefore, they are the first resurrection.

They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

And these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them. And thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

And little children also have eternal life.

But behold, and fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins; yea, even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them; these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

Therefore ought ye not to tremble? For salvation cometh to none such; for the Lord hath redeemed none such; yea, neither can the Lord redeem such; for he cannot deny himself; for he cannot deny justice when it has its claim.

And now I say unto you that the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

29     Āe rā, e te Ariki, ka whakanuia te reo o ō tūtei;  
kotahi tonu te reo e waiata ai rātou; nā te mea ka kite  
rātou kanohi ki te kanohi, ina whakahoki anō te  
Ariki i a Hīona.

30     Pāpahu iho mai i te hari, waiatahia ngātahitia, e  
koutou ngā wāhi ururua o Hiruharama; nā te mea  
kua whakaāio ia i tana iwi, nāna a Hiruharama i  
hoko.

31     Kua hura te Ariki i tōna ringa tapu i ngā karu o  
ngā iwi katoa, ā, ka kite ngā tōpito katoa o te ao i te  
whakaoranga o tō tātou Atua.

Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice;  
with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall  
see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places  
of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his peo-  
ple, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes  
of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall  
see the salvation of our God.

## Mōhia 16

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā Apinati kōrerotanga i ēnei kupu ka torona atu tana ringa kātahi ka mea: Ka tae mai te wā e kite ai te katoa i te whakaoranga o te Ariki; e kite ai ngā iwi, ngā hapū, ngā reo me ngā huihuinga tāngata kanohi ki te kanohi me te whāki atu i te aroaro o te Atua, nā, he tika āna whakawākanga.
- 2 Kātahi ka makaia atu te hunga whakarihariha, ā, ka whaitake rātou mō te auē, mō te tangi, mō te whakapū, mō te tetē i ō rātou niho; ā, koinei nā tā rātou kore i aro atu ki te reo o te Ariki; nō reira kāore te Ariki e hoko i a rātou.
- 3 Nā te mea nō te kikokiko rātou, ā, nō te rēwera, e whaikaha ana te rēwera ki runga i a rātou; āe rā, ko taua nākahi onamata pū anō nāna nei ō tātou mātua tuatahi i māminga, koia te take i taka ai rāua; koia te take i meinga ai ngā tāngata katoa hei mea nō te kikokiko, nō te tairongo, nō te rēwera, e mōhio ana te kino i te pai, e tukuna ana rātou i a rātou anō ki raro i te mana o te rēwera.
- 4 I ngaro pēnei ngā tāngata katoa; ā nana, kua ngaro tonutia atu rātou me i kore te Atua i hoko i tana iwi mai i tō rātou āhuetanga ngaro, ā, tō rātou āhuetanga taka.
- 5 Engari kia mahara ko te tangata e ū tonu ana i tōna ake āhuetanga nō te kikokiko, me te ū tonu atu i ngā huarahi o te hara me te tutū ki te Atua, ka noho tonu i tōna āhuetanga taka, ā, kua whaikaha katoa te rēwera ki runga i a ia. Nō reira he rite ia me te mea nei kāore tētahi hokonga i meatia ai, koia tētahi hoariri ki te Atua; ā, ko te rēwera anō hoki tētahi hoariri ki te Atua.
- 6 Ināianeī ā, mehemea kīhai te Karaiti i haere mai ai ki te ao, e kōrero ana mō ngā mea ka puta anō nei kua puta kē mai, kua kore noa tētahi hokonga.
- 7 Ā, mehemea kīhai te Karaiti i ara ake i te mate, i motuhia rānei ngā herehere o te mate kia kore ai te rua tūpāpaku e whai wikitōria, ā, kia kore ai te mate e whai wero, kua kore noa tētahi aranga.
- 8 Engari, tērā anō tētahi aranga, nō reira kua kore te rua tūpāpaku e whai wikitōria ana, ā, kua horomia ake te wero o te mate e te Karaiti.

## Mosiah 16

And now, it came to pass that after Abinadi had spoken these words he stretched forth his hand and said: The time shall come when all shall see the salvation of the Lord; when every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them; yea, even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

But remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him. Therefore he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

And now if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

And if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

But there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

- 9 Koia te mārama me te oranga o te ao; āe rā, he rama mutunga kore, e kore nei e taea te whakapōuri; āe rā, he oranga mutunga kore anō hoki, nā, kāore tonu nei he matenga anō.
- 10 Ka kākahuria pū anō tēnei ira tangata ki te ira atua, ā, ka kākahuria tēnei whakatautauhea ki te whakatautauhea kore, ā, ka mauria kia tū ai i te aroaro o te pae whakawā o te Atua, kia whakawākia ai e ia e ai ki ā rātou mahinga ahakoa i pai, ahakoa rānei i kino—
- 11 Mehemea i pai, ki te aranga o te oranga tonutanga me te haringa; ā, mehemea i kino, ki te aranga o te mamaetanga mutunga kore, e tukuna atu ana ki te rēwera, nāna nei rātou i whakaiti, koia ko te mamaetanga mutunga kore—
- 12 Kua pērā e rite ai ki ō rātou hiahia kikokiko me ō rātou kōingo; kīhai noa i karanga ake ki te Ariki i ngā ringaringa o te aroha e torotoro ana ki a rātou; nā te mea i te torotorona atu ngā ringaringa o te aroha ki a rātou, ā, kīhai rātou i aro; kua whakatūpatoria rātou mō ō rātou hara, heoi, kīhai rātou i māwehe atu i konā; ā, i whakahaua rātou kia rīpenetātia, heoi, kīhai rātou i rīpenetā.
- 13 Ināianeī ā, me kore rānei koutou e tūwiri me te rīpenetā i ō koutou hara, me te maumahara, nā, mā roto anake i te Karaiti koutou e whakaorangia ai?
- 14 Nō reira, mehemea kei te whakaako koutou i te ture a Mohi, me whakaako anō koutou koia tētahi ātārangi mō ngā mea ka puta mai—
- 15 Whakaakona rātou ka puta mai te hokonga mā roto i te Karaiti te Ariki, koia pū anō te Matua Ora Tonu. Āmine.

He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation—

Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires; having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were extended towards them, and they would not; they being warned of their iniquities and yet they would not depart from them; and they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

Therefore, if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of those things which are to come—

Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord, who is the very Eternal Father. Amen.

## Mōhia 17

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te whakakapinga a Apinati i ēnei kīanga, nā, ka whakahaua e te kīngi ana tohunga kia haria atu ia, ā, kia whakamatea ia.
- 2 Engari i reira tētahi i waenganui i a rātou ko Arami tōna ingoa, koia hoki tētahi uri no Nīwhai. Ā, he taitama ia, ā, i whakapono ia ki ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e Apinati, nā te mea i mōhio ia e pā ana ki ngā hara kua whakaatuhia ki a rātou; nō reira ka tīmata ia ki te inoi atu ki te kīngi kia kaua ia e riri ki a Apinati, engari kia tukuna ia kia wehe atu ai i runga i te rangimārie.
- 3 Engari i te pukuriri te kīngi, ā, ka meatia kia makaia atu a Arami i waenganui i a rātou, ā, ka tonoa āna pononga kia whai atu i a ia kia patua ai ia.
- 4 Engari, ka tahuti atu ia mai i tō rātou aroaro, ā, ka hunaia ia e ia anō nā konā kīhai rātou i rapu i a ia. Ā, i a ia e huna ana mō ngā rā maha ka tuhia e ia ngā kupu katoa kua kōrerotia e Apinati.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mea te kīngi kia karapotia a Apinati e ana kaitiaki, ā, kia kahakina atu ia; ā, ka herea ia, ā, ka makaia ia ki roto i te whareherehere.
- 6 Ā, nō muri iho i ngā rā e toru, kua rūnanga tahi me āna tohunga, ka mea ia kia haria mai anō ia ki mua i tōna aroaro.
- 7 Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a ia: E Apinati, kua kite mātou i tētahi whakahē mōu, ā, e tika ana kia whakamatea koe.
- 8 Nā te mea kua kī ake koe ka heke mai te Atua pū anō ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata; ināianeī ā, mō tēnei take ka whakamatea koe ki te kore koe e whakakāhore i ngā kupu katoa kua kōrerotia kinotia nei e koe e pā ana ki ahau me tōku iwi.
- 9 Nā, ka kī atu a Apinati ki a ia: Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, e kore au e whakakāhore i ngā kupu kua kōrerotia ki a koe e pā ana ki tēnei iwi, nā te mea he pono ērā; ā, kia mōhio anō koe ki ōna pono kua tukuna au e ahau anō kia taka iho ki ō ringaringa.

## Mosiah 17

And now it came to pass that when Abinadi had finished these sayings, that the king commanded that the priests should take him and cause that he should be put to death.

But there was one among them whose name was Alma, he also being a descendant of Nephi. And he was a young man, and he believed the words which Abinadi had spoken, for he knew concerning the iniquity which Abinadi had testified against them; therefore he began to plead with the king that he would not be angry with Abinadi, but suffer that he might depart in peace.

But the king was more wroth, and caused that Alma should be cast out from among them, and sent his servants after him that they might slay him.

But he fled from before them and hid himself that they found him not. And he being concealed for many days did write all the words which Abinadi had spoken.

And it came to pass that the king caused that his guards should surround Abinadi and take him; and they bound him and cast him into prison.

And after three days, having counseled with his priests, he caused that he should again be brought before him.

And he said unto him: Abinadi, we have found an accusation against thee, and thou art worthy of death.

For thou hast said that God himself should come down among the children of men; and now, for this cause thou shalt be put to death unless thou wilt recall all the words which thou hast spoken evil concerning me and my people.

Now Abinadi said unto him: I say unto you, I will not recall the words which I have spoken unto you concerning this people, for they are true; and that ye may know of their surety I have suffered myself that I have fallen into your hands.

10 Āe rā, ka mamae au tae atu pū anō ki te mate, ā, kua kore au e whakakāhore i aku kupu, ā, ka tū tonu ēnā hei whakaaturanga ki ō koutou hē. Ā, mēnā ka whakamate koe i ahau kua whakahekea ngā toto hara kore, ā, ka tū anō tēnei hei whakaaturanga ki ō koutou hē hei te rā whakamutunga.

11 Ināianeī ā, whano ka tukuna atu ia e kīngi Noa, nā te mea i wehi ia ki tana kupu; nā te mea i wehi ia kei tau iho ngā whakawākanga a te Atua ki runga i a ia.

12 Engari ka whakanuia e ngā tohunga ō rātou reo ki a ia, ā, ka tīmata ki te whakahē i a ia, e mea ana: Nāna te kīngi i taunu. Nō reira te kīngi i whakaohokia ake kia riri ki a ia, ā, ka tukuna ake ia kia whakamatea ai ia.

13 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kahakina atu ia, ā, ka herea ia, ā, ka wepua tōna kiri ki ngā paihere rākau ahi, āe rā, tae atu ana ki te mate.

14 Ināianeī ā, i te wā i tīmata ngā mura ki te ngau i a ia, ka karanga atu ia ki a rātou, e mea ana:

15 Nana, e pērā ana tā koutou i mea ai ki ahau, ka pahawa pērā ake, nā, ka meatia e ōu uri kia mamae ai te tokomaha i ngā mamaetanga e mamae nei ahau, ko ngā mamae pū anō o te matenga ki te ahi; ā, ka pēnei anō nā tō rātou whakapono ki te whakaoranga o te Ariki tō rātou Atua.

16 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka whakamamaetia koe ki ngā tūmomo mate katoa nā ōu hara.

17 Āe rā, ka patua koutou i tētahi taha, i tētahi taha, ā, ka āia atu, ā, ka whakamararatia atu ki wīwī ki wāwā anō nei tētahi kāhui mohoa e āia ana e ngā kararehe horetītī mohoa.

18 Ā, i taua rā ka aruarumia koutou, ā, ka kahakina atu e ngā ringaringa o ō koutou hoariri, kātahi koutou ka whakamamaehia, pērā i ahau e mamae ana, ko ngā mamae o te matenga ki te ahi.

19 Ka whakahaere pēnei te Atua kia rapu utu ai ia ki te hunga e whakangaromia ana tana iwi. E te Atua, whakawhiwhia mai tōku wairua.

20 Ināianeī ā, i te wā i kōrero ai a Apinati i ēnei kupu, ka hinga ia, kua whakamatea nei ki te ahi; āe rā, kua whakamatea ia nā te mea kīhai ia i whakakāhore i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, kua hīria āna kupu pono e tōna matenga.

Yea, and I will suffer even until death, and I will not recall my words, and they shall stand as a testimony against you. And if ye slay me ye will shed innocent blood, and this shall also stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

And now king Noah was about to release him, for he feared his word; for he feared that the judgments of God would come upon him.

But the priests lifted up their voices against him, and began to accuse him, saying: He has reviled the king. Therefore the king was stirred up in anger against him, and he delivered him up that he might be slain.

And it came to pass that they took him and bound him, and scourged his skin with faggots, yea, even unto death.

And now when the flames began to scorch him, he cried unto them, saying:

Behold, even as ye have done unto me, so shall it come to pass that thy seed shall cause that many shall suffer the pains that I do suffer, even the pains of death by fire; and this because they believe in the salvation of the Lord their God.

And it will come to pass that ye shall be afflicted with all manner of diseases because of your iniquities.

Yea, and ye shall be smitten on every hand, and shall be driven and scattered to and fro, even as a wild flock is driven by wild and ferocious beasts.

And in that day ye shall be hunted, and ye shall be taken by the hand of your enemies, and then ye shall suffer, as I suffer, the pains of death by fire.

Thus God executeth vengeance upon those that destroy his people. O God, receive my soul.

And now, when Abinadi had said these words, he fell, having suffered death by fire; yea, having been put to death because he would not deny the commandments of God, having sealed the truth of his words by his death.

## Mōhia 18

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake i a Arami, nāna i tahuti atu i ngā pononga a kīngi Noa, i rīpenetātia i ōna hara me ōna hē, ā, ka haere huna atu ia i waenganui i te iwi, ā, ka tīmata ia ki te whakaako atu i ngā kupu a Apinati—
- 2 Āe rā, e pā ana ki ngā mea ka puta mai, e pā ana anō hoki ki te aranga o te hunga mate, me te hokonga o te iwi, koia ka pahawa ake mā roto i te mana, me ngā whakamamaetanga, me te matenga o te Karaiti, me tōna aranga me tōna kakenga ake i te rangi.
- 3 Ā, ka whakaakona e ia te hunga katoa e whakarongo ai ki tana kupu. Ā, i whakaako huna ia i a rātou, kia kore ai e tae atu te rongō ki te kīngi. Ā, he tokomaha i whakapono ai ki ana kupu.
- 4 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu te hunga katoa i whakapono ai ki a ia ki tētahi wāhi kua karangatia nei ko Moromona, kua whiwhi tōna ingoa i te kīngi, kei ngā rohe o te whenua kua muia, i ētahi wā, i ētahi kaupeka, e ngā kararehe mohoa.
- 5 Nā, i Moromona tētahi puna wai māori, ā, ka haere a Arami ki reira, e tūtata ana anō ki taua wai tētahi urupuia rākau, i reira huna ai ia i a ia anō i te awatea i ngā kairapu a te kīngi.
- 6 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu te hunga katoa i whakapono ai ki a ia ki reira ki te whakarongo ki āna kupu.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i ngā rā maha kua tokomaha mārika nei te hunga kua huihuia ki te wāhi o Moromona, ki te whakarongo ki ngā kupu a Arami. Āe rā, kua huihuia tahitia te katoa i whakapono ai ki tana kupu, ki te whakarongo ki a ia. Ā, nāna rātou i whakaako, ā, nāna te rīpenetātanga i kauhau ki a rātou, me te hokonga, mō te whakapono i runga i te Ariki.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: Nana, nei ngā wai o Moromona (nā te mea koinā te ingoa i karangatia ai ēnā) ināianeī ā, nā te mea kei te hiahia koutou kia uru ki roto i te kāhui o te Atua, ā, kia karangatia ai ko tōna iwi, me te waha i ngā taumahatanga o tēnā, o tēnā o koutou, kia māmā ai;

## Mosiah 18

And now, it came to pass that Alma, who had fled from the servants of king Noah, repented of his sins and iniquities, and went about privately among the people, and began to teach the words of Abinadi—

Yea, concerning that which was to come, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of the people, which was to be brought to pass through the power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection and ascension into heaven.

And as many as would hear his word he did teach. And he taught them privately, that it might not come to the knowledge of the king. And many did believe his words.

And it came to pass that as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was called Mormon, having received its name from the king, being in the borders of the land having been infested, by times or at seasons, by wild beasts.

Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees, where he did hide himself in the daytime from the searches of the king.

And it came to pass that as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

And it came to pass after many days there were a goodly number gathered together at the place of Mormon, to hear the words of Alma. Yea, all were gathered together that believed on his word, to hear him. And he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

And it came to pass that he said unto them: Behold, here are the waters of Mormon (for thus were they called) and now, as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;



- 9     Āe rā, e hiahia ana anō hoki kia tangi tahi me te hunga e tangi ana; āe rā, me te whakaāio i te hunga e tika ana kia whakaāiotia, me te tū hei kaiwhakaatu o te Atua i ngā wā katoa, ā, i ngā mea katoa, ā, i ngā wāhi katoa e tū ai koutou, tae atu pū anō ki te matenga, kia hokona ai koutou e te Atua, ā, kia taturia me te hunga nō te aranga tuatahi, kia whiwhi ai koutou i te oranga tonutanga—
- 10     Ināianeī, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea koinei te hiahia o ō koutou ngākau, he aha tā koutou e kore ai e rumaki i runga i te ingoa o te Ariki, hei kaiwhakaatu i tōna aroaro kua uru atu koutou i roto i tētahi kawenata ki a ia, kia mahi ai ki a ia me te pupuri i āna whakahaunga, kia ranea ake tana maringi iho i tōna Wairua ki runga i a koutou?
- 11     Ināianeī ā, i te wā i rongō ai te iwi i ēnei kupu, ka pakipaki rātou i ō rātou ringaringa i te koa, ā, ka whakapuakina: Koinei te hiahia o ō mātou ngākau.
- 12     Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mau a Arami ki a Herama, koia tētahi o ngā mea tuatahi, ā, ka haere atu ka tū ki roto i te wai, ā, ka karangatia, e mea ana: E te Ariki, maringihia iho tōu Wairua ki runga i tō pononga, kia meatia e ia tēnei mahi tapu i runga i te ngākau tapu.
- 13     Ā, i tana kōrerotanga i ēnei kupu, kei runga i a ia te Wairua o te Ariki, ā, ka mea: E Herama, māku koe e rumaki, kua whakamanahia e te Atua Kaha Rawa, hei whakaaturanga kua uru koe ki roto i tētahi kaweneta ki te mahi ki a ia tae atu ki te wā e mate ai koe e pērā ana ki tā te tinana ira tangata; ā, kia maringihia iho te Wairua o te Ariki ki runga i a koe; ā, kia tukuna e ia ki a koe te oranga tonutanga, mā roto i te hokonga o te Karaiti, nāna i whakarite mai i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao.
- 14     Ā, whai muri iho i tā Arami kōrero i ēnei kupu, ka tanumia tahitia a Arami rāua ko Herama ki roto i te wai; ā, ka ara ake rāua, ā, ka puta hari mai i te wai, kua kiki i te Wairua.
- 15     Hei āpiti anō, ka mau a Arami ki tētahi atu, ā, ka haere anō mō te wā tuarua ki roto i te wai, ā, ka rumakina ia e ai ki te tuatahi, heoi, kīhai anō ia i tanu i a ia anō ki roto i te wai.

Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life—

Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

And now it came to pass that Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

And when he had said these words, the Spirit of the Lord was upon him, and he said: Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God, as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

And again, Alma took another, and went forth a second time into the water, and baptized him according to the first, only he did not bury himself again in the water.

- 16     Ā, nō tēnei āhuatanga i rumaki ai ia i ia tangata, i ia tangata i haere atu ai ki te wāhi o Moromona; ā, neke atu i te rua rau mā whā te tokomaha; āe rā, i rumakina rātou i ngā wai o Moromona, ā, ka kiki i te aroha o te Atua.
- 17     Ā, i karangatia rātou ko te hāhi o te Atua, ko te hāhi o te Karaiti rānei, nō taua wā haere ake nei. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tāpirihia atu ngā tāngata katoa i rumakina ai e te kaha me te mana o te Atua ki tana hāhi.
- 18     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko Arami, kua whakamanaia nei e te Atua, i whakawahia ngā tohunga; kia kotahi te tohunga ki ia rima tekau o tō rātou tokomahatanga nāna nei i whakawahi hei kauhau ki a rātou me te whakaako i a rātou e pā ana ki ngā mea e hāngai ana ki te kīngitanga o te Atua.
- 19     Ā, nāna rātou i whakahau kia kua rātou e whakaako i tētahi mea hāunga ko ngā mea anake nāna i whakaako, ā, kua kōrerotia anō hoki e te māngai o ngā poropiti tapu.
- 20     Āe rā, nāna anō rātou i whakahau kia kua rātou e whakaako i tētahi mea hāunga ko te rīpenetātanga me te whakapono ki te Ariki anake, nāna nei tana iwi i hoko.
- 21     Ā, nāna rātou i whakahau kia kua e tautohetohe tētahi ki tētahi, engari kia titiro whakamua ai rātou i te karu kotahi, kia kotahi te whakapono, ā, kia kotahi te rumakitanga, kua whatua tahitia ō rātou ngākau i roto i te kotahitanga me te aroha tētahi ki tētahi.
- 22     Ā, i whakahau pēnei ia kia kauhau ai rātou. Ā, ka meinga pēnei rātou hei tamariki nā te Atua.
- 23     Ā, nāna rātou i whakahau kia whakamānawatia te rā hāpati, ā, kia whakatapua, ā, kia tuku whakawhetai rātou ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua ia rā, ia rā.
- 24     Ā, nāna hoki rātou i whakahau kia mahi ai ngā tohunga i whakawahia ai e ia i runga i te kaha o ō rātou ake ringaringa mō ō rātou ake oranga.
- 25     Ā, kua whakatahangia tētahi rā i ia wiki e huihui tahi ai rātou ki te whakaako i te iwi, me te koropiko atu ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, waihoki, i ngā wā katoa i taea ai e rātou kia huihui tahi ai rātou i a rātou anō.

And after this manner he did baptize every one that went forth to the place of Mormon; and they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward. And it came to pass that whosoever was baptized by the power and authority of God was added to his church.

And it came to pass that Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

And he commanded them that they should teach nothing save it were the things which he had taught, and which had been spoken by the mouth of the holy prophets.

Yea, even he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

And he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

And thus he commanded them to preach. And thus they became the children of God.

And he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

And he also commanded them that the priests whom he had ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

And there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

- 26     Ā, kīhai ngā tohunga i whakawhirinaki ki te iwi hei oranga mō rātou; engari ka utua ā rātou mahi e te aroha o te Atua, kia pakari haere i roto i te Wairua, kua mau i a rātou te mātauranga o te Atua, kia whakaako rātou i runga i te kaha me te mana nō te Atua.
- 27     Hei āpiti anō, nā Arami te iwi o te hāhi i whakahau kia wāwāhi atu i ō rātou rawa, tēnā me tēnā e ai ki te nui o tāna; mehemea he ranea tō tētahi me ranea anō tāna e wāwāhi atu ai; ā, mehemea he iti tō tētahi, me iti anō tāna e tonoa ai; ā, ko te tangata korekau noa tāna me tuku atu ki a ia.
- 28     Ā, me pēnei tā rātou wāwāhi atu i ō rātou rawa i runga i ō rātou ake hiahia me ō rātou kōingo pai ki te Atua, ā, ki ērā tohunga e mate nui ana, āe rā, ki ia mea e mate nui ana, e kākahu kore ana.
- 29     Ā, koinei tāna i kōrero ai ki a rātou, kua whakahau nei e te Atua; ā, i tōtika tā rātou hīkoi i te aroaro o te Atua, e wāwāhi atu ana tētahi ki tētahi i ngā mea ā-tinana mai, ā-wairua mai e rite ana ki ō rātou mate me ō rātou hiahia.
- 30     Ā, i pahawa ianei ake, nā, i meatia katoatia ēnei i Moromona, āe rā, i te taha o ngā wai o Moromona, i te ngahere e tata ana ki ngā wai o Moromona; āe rā, ko te wāhi o Moromona, ko ngā wai o Moromona, ko te ngahere o Moromona, anō te ātaahua o aua wāhi ki ngā karu o te hunga i tau mai ai ki te mātauranga o tō rātou Kaihoko i reira; āe rā, anō te nui o ō rātou manaakitanga, nā te mea ka waiatatia āna whakamoemiti e rātou mō āke tonu atu.
- 31     Ā, i meatia ēnei mea i roto i ngā kaha o te whenua, kia kore ai e pakū atu te rongo ki ngā taringa o te kīngi.
- 32     Engari nana, i pahawa ake, nā, kua kitea e te kīngi tētahi mahi tupu i roto i te iwi, ka tonoa āna pononga ki te mātakitaki i a rātou. Nō reira i kitea rātou e te kīngi i te rā tonu i huihui tahi ai rātou ki te whakarongo ki te kupu a te Ariki.
- 33     Ināianeī ā, ka kī ake te kīngi i te whakaohooho ake a Arami i te iwi kia tutū ki a ia; nō reira ka tonoa e ia tana ope tauā ki te whakangaro i a rātou.

And the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

And again Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

And now it came to pass that all this was done in Mormon, yea, by the waters of Mormon, in the forest that was near the waters of Mormon; yea, the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

And these things were done in the borders of the land, that they might not come to the knowledge of the king.

But behold, it came to pass that the king, having discovered a movement among the people, sent his servants to watch them. Therefore on the day that they were assembling themselves together to hear the word of the Lord they were discovered unto the king.

And now the king said that Alma was stirring up the people to rebellion against him; therefore he sent his army to destroy them.

34     Ā, i pahawa ake, na, ka whakamōhiotia atu a  
Arami rātou ko te iwi o te Ariki mō te haerenga mai o  
te ope tauā o te kīngi; nō reira ka mau ai ki ō rātou  
tēneti me ō rātou whānau kātahi ka wehe atu ki roto  
i te koraha.

35     Ā, ko tō rātou tokomahatanga e tata atu ana ki te  
whā rau e rima tekau ngā wairua.

And it came to pass that Alma and the people of  
the Lord were apprised of the coming of the king's  
army; therefore they took their tents and their fami-  
lies and departed into the wilderness.

And they were in number about four hundred and  
fifty souls.

## Mōhia 19

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hoki atu te ope tauā o te kīngi, kua auare ake tā rātou kimi i te iwi o te Ariki.
- 2 Ā, nana ināianeī, he iti ngā ope tauā o te kīngi, kua whakaitia, ā, ka tīmata tētahi wehenga i waenganui i te toenga o ngā tāngata.
- 3 Ā, ka tīmata te wāhi iti ki te kōrero whakawetiweti ki te kīngi, ā, ka tīmata tētahi tautohetohenga nui i waenganui i a rātou.
- 4 Ināianeī ā, i reira tētahi tangata i waenganui i a rātou ko Kiriona tōna ingoa, ā, koia tētahi tangata kaha, ā, he hoariri anō ia ki te kīngi, nō reira ka unuhia e ia tana hoari, ā, ka oati ia i runga i tōna riri māna te kīngi e whakamate.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whawhai ia ki te kīngi; ā, ka kite te kīngi whano ka taea ia e ia, ka tahuti atu ia, ā, ka oma atu ki runga i te pourewa e tūtata ana ki te temepara.
- 6 Ā, ka arumia ia e Kiriona, ā, whano ka piki ake ia ki runga i te pourewa ki te whakamate i te kīngi, ka whiua reretia atu te titiro a te kīngi whakatewhenua o Hemerona, ā nana, kua tomokia ngā rohe o te whenua e ngā Rāmana.
- 7 Ināianeī ā, ka karanga ake te kīngi i te auē o tōna wairua, e mea ana: E Kiriona, tohungia au, nā te mea kua whakaekea mai tātou e ngā Rāmana, ā, ka whakangaromia tātou e rātou; āe rā, mā rātou taku iwi e whakangaro.
- 8 Ināianeī ā, kāore i nui ake te whakaaro a te kīngi ki tana iwi i te nui o tana whakaaro mō tōna ake oranga; hei aha koa, ka tohungia tōna oranga e Kiriona.
- 9 Ā, ka whakahaua te iwi e te kīngi kia tahuti atu rātou i te aroaro o ngā Rāmana, ā, ka haere tuatahi atu anō ia i mua i a rātou, ā, ka tahuti atu rātou ki roto i te koraha, me ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whāia rātou e ngā Rāmana, ā, ka whakamaua rātou, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou patupatu i a rātou.
- 11 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakahau te kīngi i ngā tāne katoa kia mahue i a rātou ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki, ā, kia tahuti atu ai i te aroaro o ngā Rāmana.

## Mosiah 19

And it came to pass that the army of the king returned, having searched in vain for the people of the Lord.

And now behold, the forces of the king were small, having been reduced, and there began to be a division among the remainder of the people.

And the lesser part began to breathe out threatenings against the king, and there began to be a great contention among them.

And now there was a man among them whose name was Gideon, and he being a strong man and an enemy to the king, therefore he drew his sword, and swore in his wrath that he would slay the king.

And it came to pass that he fought with the king; and when the king saw that he was about to overpower him, he fled and ran and got upon the tower which was near the temple.

And Gideon pursued after him and was about to get upon the tower to slay the king, and the king cast his eyes round about towards the land of Shemlon, and behold, the army of the Lamanites were within the borders of the land.

And now the king cried out in the anguish of his soul, saying: Gideon, spare me, for the Lamanites are upon us, and they will destroy us; yea, they will destroy my people.

And now the king was not so much concerned about his people as he was about his own life; nevertheless, Gideon did spare his life.

And the king commanded the people that they should flee before the Lamanites, and he himself did go before them, and they did flee into the wilderness, with their women and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue them, and did overtake them, and began to slay them.

Now it came to pass that the king commanded them that all the men should leave their wives and their children, and flee before the Lamanites.

- 12 Nā, he tokomaha anō ngā mea kihai i whakaae kia mahue rātou, engari i pai kē atu te noho kia mate tahi me rātou. Ā, ka mahue i ērā atu ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki, ā, ka tahuti atu.
- 13 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mea te hunga i noho tahi ai me ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki kia tū atu ā rātou tamāhine ātaahua ki te inoi ki ngā Rāmana kia kaua e patu ai i a rātou.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka aroha ngā Rāmana ki a rātou, nā te mea i ātahungia rātou e te ātaahua o ā rātou wāhine.
- 15 Nō reira, ka tohu ngā Rāmana i ō rātou orange, ā, ka mauhereheretia rātou, ā, ka whakahokia atu rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, ka tuku anō i a rātou kia nōhia ai te whenua, i raro i te whakaritenga, arā, mā rātou a kīngi Noa e tuku atu ki roto i ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana, me te tuku i ō rātou rawa, kia kotahi haurua pū anō o ā rātou rawa katoa, kia kotahi haurua o ā rātou kōura, me ā rātou hiriwā, me ā rātou mea utu nui katoa, ā, kia tuku takoha tatau pounamu pēnei rātou ki te kīngi o ngā Rāmana i ia te tau, ia te tau.
- 16 Ināianeī ā, i reira tētahi o ngā tama a te kīngi i waenganui i te hunga i mauherehia atu ai, ko Rimihī tōna ingoa.
- 17 Ināianeī ā, i te hiahia a Rimihī kia kaua e whakangaromia ai tōna matua; hei aha koa, ehara a Rimihī i te kūare ki ngā hara o tana matua, koia pū anō he tangata tika ia.
- 18 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tonoa hunaia atu e Kiriona ngā tangata ki roto i te koraha, kia kimihia ai te kīngi me ngā tāngata i haere tahi ai me ia. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tūtaki rātou ki ngā tāngata i te koraha, ko rātou katoa hāunga te kīngi me āna tohunga.
- 19 Nā, kua oati rātou i ō rātou ngākau kia hoki atu rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, mehemea kua whakamatea ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki me te hunga katoa i noho tahi ai me rātou, nā, ka rapu utu rātou, ā, ka mate ngātahi anō hoki me rātou.
- 20 Ā, ka whakahau te kīngi i a rātou kia kaua rātou e hoki atu; ā, ka riri rātou ki te kīngi, ā, ka meatia kia mamae ia, tae atu ana ki te matenga i te ahi.

Now there were many that would not leave them, but had rather stay and perish with them. And the rest left their wives and their children and fled.

And it came to pass that those who tarried with their wives and their children caused that their fair daughters should stand forth and plead with the Lamanites that they would not slay them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites had compassion on them, for they were charmed with the beauty of their women.

Therefore the Lamanites did spare their lives, and took them captives and carried them back to the land of Nephi, and granted unto them that they might possess the land, under the conditions that they would deliver up king Noah into the hands of the Lamanites, and deliver up their property, even one half of all they possessed, one half of their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and thus they should pay tribute to the king of the Lamanites from year to year.

And now there was one of the sons of the king among those that were taken captive, whose name was Limhi.

And now Limhi was desirous that his father should not be destroyed; nevertheless, Limhi was not ignorant of the iniquities of his father, he himself being a just man.

And it came to pass that Gideon sent men into the wilderness secretly, to search for the king and those that were with him. And it came to pass that they met the people in the wilderness, all save the king and his priests.

Now they had sworn in their hearts that they would return to the land of Nephi, and if their wives and their children were slain, and also those that had tarried with them, that they would seek revenge, and also perish with them.

And the king commanded them that they should not return; and they were angry with the king, and caused that he should suffer, even unto death by fire.

- 21     Ā, whano ka mau i a rātou ngā tohunga me te whakamate i a rātou, ā, ka tahuti atu rātou i tō rātou aroaro.
- 22     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whano ka hoki rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, ka tūtaki rātou ki ngā tāngata o Kiriona. Ā, ka kōrero atu ngā tāngata o Kiriona i ngā mea katoa i pā ai ki ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki; i tukuna rātou e ngā Rāmana kia nōhia e rātou te whenua mā te tuku takoha tatau pounamu ki ngā Rāmana o te kotahi haurua o ā rātou rawa katoa.
- 23     Ā, ka kī atu te iwi ki ngā tāngata o Kiriona, nā, kua whakamatea e rātou te kīngi, ā, kua tahuti atu ana tohunga i a rātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i te whakamutunga o nga kawa, ka hoki atu rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai, e hari ana, nā te mea kīhai i whakamatea ā rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki; ā, ka kōrero atu rātou ki a Kiriona he aha tā rātou ki te kīngi.
- 25     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka oati te kīngi o ngā Rāmana ki a rātou, kia kaua tana iwi e whakamate i a rātou.
- 26     Ā, me Rimihī anō hoki, ko ia te tama a te kīngi, kua whakatauhia te kīngitanga ki runga ki a ia e te iwi, ka oati ki te kīngi o ngā Rāmana kia tuku takoha tatau pounamu tana iwi ki a ia, kia kotahi haurua o ā rātou rawa katoa.
- 27     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tīmata a Rimihī ki te whakapūmau i te kīngitanga me te whakapūmau i te maungārongo ki waenganui i tana iwi.
- 28     Ā, ka whakatūria e te kīngi o ngā Rāmana ngā kaitiaki huri noa i te whenua, kia mau tonu ai te iwi o Rimihī ki roto i te whenua, kia kore ai rātou e māwehe atu ki roto i te koraha; ā, nāna āna kaitiaki i utu i te takoha tatau pounamu i whiwhi ai i ngā Nīwhai.
- 29     Ināianeī ā, ka mau te maungārongo tonutanga i a kīngi Rimihī mō te takiwā o ngā tau e rua, nā, kīhai ngā Rāmana i rāweke i a rātou, kīhai rānei i whai ki te whakangaro i a rātou.

And they were about to take the priests also and put them to death, and they fled before them.

And it came to pass that they were about to return to the land of Nephi, and they met the men of Gideon. And the men of Gideon told them of all that had happened to their wives and their children; and that the Lamanites had granted unto them that they might possess the land by paying a tribute to the Lamanites of one half of all they possessed.

And the people told the men of Gideon that they had slain the king, and his priests had fled from them farther into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain; and they told Gideon what they had done to the king.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites made an oath unto them, that his people should not slay them.

And also Limhi, being the son of the king, having the kingdom conferred upon him by the people, made oath unto the king of the Lamanites that his people should pay tribute unto him, even one half of all they possessed.

And it came to pass that Limhi began to establish the kingdom and to establish peace among his people.

And the king of the Lamanites set guards round about the land, that he might keep the people of Limhi in the land, that they might not depart into the wilderness; and he did support his guards out of the tribute which he did receive from the Nephites.

And now king Limhi did have continual peace in his kingdom for the space of two years, that the Lamanites did not molest them nor seek to destroy them.

## Mōhia 20

- 1 Nā, i reira tētahi wāhi i Hemerona he rite tonu te huihui tahi a ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana ki te waiata me te kanikani, me te whakakoa i a rātou anō.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kua huihui tahi ētahi torutoru nei o rātou ki te waiata me te kanikani.
- 3 Ināianeī ā, he whakamā nō ngā tohunga a kīngi Noa ki te hoki atu ki te pā o Nīwhai, āe rā, he mataku anō kei patua rātou e te iwi, nō reira kīhai i māia rātou ki te hoki atu ki ō rātou hoawāhine me ā rātou tamariki.
- 4 Ā, i te mea kua noho rātou i te koraha, ā, kua kite anō i ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana, ka tīraha iho rātou, ā, ka mātakitaki i a rātou;
- 5 Ā, i te wā he ruarua noa iho o rātou e hui tahi ana ki te kanikani, ka puta atu rātou i ō rātou wāhi huna, ā, ka mau ki a rātou kātahi ka kahakina atu rātou ki roto i te koraha; āe rā, neke atu i te rua tekau mā whā o ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana i kahakina atu ai ki roto i te koraha.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i kite ai ngā Rāmana kua ngarongaro ā rātou tamāhine, ka riri rātou ki te iwi o Rimihī, nā te mea i pōhēhē rātou nā te iwi o Rimihī.
- 7 Nō reira rātou i tuku atu ai i ō rātou ope tauā; āe rā, i haere pū anō te kīngi ake i mua i tōna iwi; ā, ka haere ake rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai kia whakangaromia ai te iwi o Rimihī.
- 8 Ināianeī ā, i kitea atu rātou e Rimihī mai i te pourewa, i kitea pū anō e ia ā rātou whakaritenga katoa mō te pakanga; nō reira, ka huihuia ngātahitia tōna iwi e ia, ā, ka tatari ki a rātou i roto i ngā whīra, i roto anō i ngā ngahere.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i haere mai ngā Rāmana, nā, ka tīmata te iwi o Rimihī kia taka iho ki runga i a rātou mai i ō rātou wāhi i tatari ai rātou, ā, ka tīmata ki te patupatu i a rātou.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tino nanakia rawa atu te pakanga, nā te mea i whawhai rātou me te mea nei ko ngā raiona e whawhai ana mō te pāpurenga.

## Mosiah 20

Now there was a place in Shemlon where the daughters of the Lamanites did gather themselves together to sing, and to dance, and to make themselves merry.

And it came to pass that there was one day a small number of them gathered together to sing and to dance.

And now the priests of king Noah, being ashamed to return to the city of Nephi, yea, and also fearing that the people would slay them, therefore they durst not return to their wives and their children.

And having tarried in the wilderness, and having discovered the daughters of the Lamanites, they laid and watched them;

And when there were but few of them gathered together to dance, they came forth out of their secret places and took them and carried them into the wilderness; yea, twenty and four of the daughters of the Lamanites they carried into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that their daughters had been missing, they were angry with the people of Limhi, for they thought it was the people of Limhi.

Therefore they sent their armies forth; yea, even the king himself went before his people; and they went up to the land of Nephi to destroy the people of Limhi.

And now Limhi had discovered them from the tower, even all their preparations for war did he discover; therefore he gathered his people together, and laid wait for them in the fields and in the forests.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had come up, that the people of Limhi began to fall upon them from their waiting places, and began to slay them.

And it came to pass that the battle became exceedingly sore, for they fought like lions for their prey.



- 11     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata te iwi o Rimihī ki te peipei atu i ngā Rāmāna i ō rātou aroaro; heoi, kīhai i eke tō rātou tokomaha i te haurua noa iho o tō ngā Rāmāna. Engari i whawhai rātou mō ō rātou oranga, me ā rātou hoawāhine, me ā rātou tamariki; nō reira rātou i whakatīeke ai, ā, i whawhai rātou anō nei he tarakona.
- 12     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kitea e rātou te kīngi o ngā Rāmāna i waenganui i ō rātou mate; heoi, kāore anō ia kia mate, kua taotūngia ia, ā, kua mahue iho i runga i te papa, nā te tere hoki o te whatinga o tana iwi.
- 13     Ā, ka mau rātou ki a ia, ā, ka tākaia ake ōna taotūngia, ā, ka mauria ki te aroaro o te kīngi, ā, ka mea: Nana, anei te kīngi o ngā Rāmāna; kua taotūngia ia, ā, kua hinga iho ia ki waenganui i ō rātou mate, ā, kua mahue ia i a rātou; ā nana, kua mauria mai ia ki mua i tō aroaro; ināianei ā, me whakamate tātou i a ia.
- 14     Engari, ka kī atu a Rimihī ki a rātou: E kore koutou e whakamate i a ia, engari mauria mai ia ki konei e kite ai au i a ia. Ā, ka mauria atu ia. Ā, ka kī atu a Rimihī ki a ia: He aha te take i haere mai ai koutou ki te pakanga ki tōku iwi? Nana, kāore taku iwi i takahi i te oati i oati ai au ki a koe; nō reira, me aha koe e takahi ai i te oati i oati ai koe ki tōku iwi?
- 15     Ināianei ā, ka kī atu te kīngi: Kua takahi au i te oati nā te mea i kahakina atu ngā tamāhine o tōku iwi e tō iwi; nō reira, i haere mai tōku iwi ki te pakanga ki tō iwi i runga i tōku riri.
- 16     Ināianei ā, kīhai a Rimihī i rongō i tētahi aha noa e pā ana ki tēnei take; nō reira ka kī atu ia: māku e kimi i roto i tōku iwi, ā, ka mate te tangata nāna nei tēnei mea i mahi. Nō reira, ka meatia e ia tētahi kimihanga i roto i tōna iwi.
- 17     Nā, i te rongonga a Kiriona i ēnei mea, ko ia hoki te kāpene o te kīngi, ka haere atu ia, ā, ka kī atu ia ki te kīngi: E inoi nei au ki a koe kia taihoa, ā, kia kaua e kimi i roto i tēnei iwi, ā, kia kaua e whakatakotokia tēnei mea hei whakahē i a rātou.
- 18     Nā te mea kāore koe i te mahara ki ngā tohunga a tō matua, kua whāia e tēnei iwi ki te whakangaro? Ā, kāore rānei rātou e noho ana i te koraha? Ā, kāore rānei rātou ngā mea nāna nei ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmāna i whānako?

And it came to pass that the people of Limhi began to drive the Lamanites before them; yet they were not half so numerous as the Lamanites. But they fought for their lives, and for their wives, and for their children; therefore they exerted themselves and like dragons did they fight.

And it came to pass that they found the king of the Lamanites among the number of their dead; yet he was not dead, having been wounded and left upon the ground, so speedy was the flight of his people.

And they took him and bound up his wounds, and brought him before Limhi, and said: Behold, here is the king of the Lamanites; he having received a wound has fallen among their dead, and they have left him; and behold, we have brought him before you; and now let us slay him.

But Limhi said unto them: Ye shall not slay him, but bring him hither that I may see him. And they brought him. And Limhi said unto him: What cause have ye to come up to war against my people? Behold, my people have not broken the oath that I made unto you; therefore, why should ye break the oath which ye made unto my people?

And now the king said: I have broken the oath because thy people did carry away the daughters of my people; therefore, in my anger I did cause my people to come up to war against thy people.

And now Limhi had heard nothing concerning this matter; therefore he said: I will search among my people and whosoever has done this thing shall perish. Therefore he caused a search to be made among his people.

Now when Gideon had heard these things, he being the king's captain, he went forth and said unto the king: I pray thee forbear, and do not search this people, and lay not this thing to their charge.

For do ye not remember the priests of thy father, whom this people sought to destroy? And are they not in the wilderness? And are not they the ones who have stolen the daughters of the Lamanites?

- 19 Ināianeī ā, nana, me kōrero atu i ēnei mea ki te kīngi, kia kōrero atu ia ki tōna iwi kia whakararatatia ai rātou ki a tātou; nana rā, e whakarite kē ana rātou ki te whakaēke mai ki a tātou; ā, tirohia anō hoki he tokoiti noa iho tātou.
- 20 Ā, nana, kei te haere mai rātou me ō rātou ope manomano; ā, ki te kore e whakararatatia rātou e te kīngi ki a tātou ka mate tātou.
- 21 Nā, kāore anō rānei kia tutuki ngā kupu a Apinati, i poropititia ai e ia ki a tātou—ā, koinei mea katoa nā te mea kīhai tātou i whakarongo ki ngā kupu a te Ariki me te tahuri atu i ō tātou hara?
- 22 Ināianeī ā, me whakararata tātou i te kīngi, kātahi ka tutuki te oati i oati ai tātou ki a ia; nā te mea he pai ake kia noho herehere ai tātou i te ngaronga o ō tātou orange; nō reira, me whakamutu e tātou te whakahekenga o ngā toto nui.
- 23 Ināianeī ā, ka kōrero atu a Rimihi i ngā mea katoa ki te kīngi e pā ana ki tōna matua, me ngā tohunga kua tahuti atu ki roto i te koraha, ā, ka whakairia atu te kāhakinga o ā rātou tamāhine ki a rātou.
- 24 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakararatatia te kīngi ki tōna iwi; ā, ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: Me haere atu tātou ki te tūtaki i tōku iwi, rākau whawhai kore; ā, ko taku oati e oati nei au ki a koe e kore rawa taku iwi e patupatu i tō iwi.
- 25 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whai atu rātou i te kīngi, ā, ka haere rākau whawhai kore atu ki te tūtaki ki ngā Rāmana. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tūtaki rātou ki ngā Rāmana; ā, ka tuohu iho te kīngi o ngā Rāmana ki mua i a rātou, ā, ka inoi atu ia hei māngai mō te iwi o Rimihi.
- 26 Ā, ka kite ana ngā Rāmana i te iwi o Rimihi, nā, kāore ō rātou rākau whawhai, ka aroha rātou ki a rātou, ā, kua whakararatatia ki a rātou, ā, ka hoki tahi atu rātou ko tō rātou kīngi ki tō rātou ake whenua i runga i te rangimārie.

And now, behold, and tell the king of these things, that he may tell his people that they may be pacified towards us; for behold they are already preparing to come against us; and behold also there are but few of us.

And behold, they come with their numerous hosts; and except the king doth pacify them towards us we must perish.

For are not the words of Abinadi fulfilled, which he prophesied against us—and all this because we would not hearken unto the words of the Lord, and turn from our iniquities?

And now let us pacify the king, and we fulfil the oath which we have made unto him; for it is better that we should be in bondage than that we should lose our lives; therefore, let us put a stop to the shedding of so much blood.

And now Limhi told the king all the things concerning his father, and the priests that had fled into the wilderness, and attributed the carrying away of their daughters to them.

And it came to pass that the king was pacified towards his people; and he said unto them: Let us go forth to meet my people, without arms; and I swear unto you with an oath that my people shall not slay thy people.

And it came to pass that they followed the king, and went forth without arms to meet the Lamanites. And it came to pass that they did meet the Lamanites; and the king of the Lamanites did bow himself down before them, and did plead in behalf of the people of Limhi.

And when the Lamanites saw the people of Limhi, that they were without arms, they had compassion on them and were pacified towards them, and returned with their king in peace to their own land.

## Mōhia 21

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hoki atu a Rimihī rātou ko tōna iwi ki te pā o Nīwhai, ā, ka tīmata anō tā rātou noho i reira i runga i te rangimārie.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i ngā rā maha ka whakaohokia ake anō ngā Rāmana e te riri ki ngā Nīwhai, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou kuhukuhu mai ki roto i ngā rohe o te whenua e āwhio noa ana.
- 3 Nā, kāore i māia rātou ki te whakamate i a rātou, nā te oati i oati ai tō rātou kīngi ki a Rimihī; engari ka pākia e rātou ō rātou pāpāringa me te whakahaere tikanga ki runga i a rātou; ā, ka tīmata ki te whakamaui i ngā pikaunga taumaha ki runga i ō rātou tuarā, ā, ka āia rātou me te mea nei he kaihe reokore.
- 4 Āe rā, i meatia katoatia tēnei kia tutuki ai i te kupu a te Arikī.
- 5 Ināianei ā, he nui ngā whakamamaetanga a ngā Nīwhai, ā, kāore kau he huarahi e puta ai rātou i a rātou anō ki waho i ō rātou ringaringa, nā te mea kua karapotia rātou e ngā Rāmana ki tētahi taha, ki tētahi taha.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata te iwi ki te amuamu ki te kīngi nā ō rātou whakamamaetanga; ā, ka tīmata tō rātou hiahia kia haere ake rātou ki te pakanga atu ki a rātou. Ā, i whakamamae nui rātou i te kīngi nā ā rātou amuamu; nō reira, ka tukuna rātou e ia kia mahi rātou e ai ki ō rātou hiahia.
- 7 Ā, ka whakahuihui ngātahi anō rātou i a rātou anō, ā, ka whakamaui ō rātou kākahu whawhai, ā, ka haere atu rātou ki ngā Rāmana kia āia atu rātou ki waho i tō rātou whenua.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka toa ngā Rāmana i runga i a rātou, ā, ka āia atu rātou ki muri, ā, he tokomaha o rātou i patua ai.
- 9 Ināianei ā, i nui te tangihanga me te auē i roto i te iwi o Rimihī, ko te pouaru e tangi ana ki tana hoatāne, ko te tama rāua ko te tamahine e tangi ana ki tō rāua matua, ā, ko ngā teina ki ō rātou tuākana.
- 10 Nā, he tokomaha rawa atu ngā pouaru i te whenua, ā, ka tangi hotuhotu rātou mai i tētahi rā ki tētahi rā, nā te mea kua tau iho ki runga i a rātou tētahi wehi nui ki ngā Rāmana.

## Mosiah 21

And it came to pass that Limhi and his people returned to the city of Nephi, and began to dwell in the land again in peace.

And it came to pass that after many days the Lamanites began again to be stirred up in anger against the Nephites, and they began to come into the borders of the land round about.

Now they durst not slay them, because of the oath which their king had made unto Limhi; but they would smite them on their cheeks, and exercise authority over them; and began to put heavy burdens upon their backs, and drive them as they would a dumb ass—

Yea, all this was done that the word of the Lord might be fulfilled.

And now the afflictions of the Nephites were great, and there was no way that they could deliver themselves out of their hands, for the Lamanites had surrounded them on every side.

And it came to pass that the people began to murmur with the king because of their afflictions; and they began to be desirous to go against them to battle. And they did afflict the king sorely with their complaints; therefore he granted unto them that they should do according to their desires.

And they gathered themselves together again, and put on their armor, and went forth against the Lamanites to drive them out of their land.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did beat them, and drove them back, and slew many of them.

And now there was a great mourning and lamentation among the people of Limhi, the widow mourning for her husband, the son and the daughter mourning for their father, and the brothers for their brethren.

Now there were a great many widows in the land, and they did cry mightily from day to day, for a great fear of the Lamanites had come upon them.

- 11     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakaohohokia ngā mōrehu o te iwi o Rimihī e ā rātou tangi e hono tonu nei kia riri ai ki ngā Rāmana; ā, ka haere anō rātou ki te pakanga, engari ka āia tuaruatia atu rātou ki muri, he nui rawa te hinganga.
- 12     Āe rā, ka haere anō rātou mō te wā tuatoru pū anō, ā, ka pērā anō te hinganga; ā, ka hoki atu te hunga kīhai i patua ki te pā o Nīwhai.
- 13     Ā, ka whakaitia iho rātou e rātou anō ki te puehu, e tuohu ana rātou i a rātou anō ki te mana o te ioka hereheretanga, e tukua ana e rātou anō kia pākia ai, ā, kia āia ki wīwī ki wāwā, ā, kia whakataumahatia, e ai ki ngā hiahia o ō rātou hoariri.
- 14     Ā, ka whakaitia rātou e rātou anō i roto i ngā hōhonutanga o te whakaiti; ā, ka karanga kaha rawa rātou ki te Atua; āe rā, i karanga rātou mō te roanga anō o te rā ki tō rātou Atua kia whakaorangia ai rātou e ia i ō rātou whakamamaetanga.
- 15     Ināianeī ā, i pūhoi te Ariki ki te whakarongo atu ki tā rātou karanga nā ō rātou hara; hei aha koa i rongo atu te Ariki i ā rātou karanga, ā, ka tīmata tana whakangāwari i ngā ngākau o ngā Rāmana, nā, ka tīmata tā rātou whakangāwari i ā rātou taumahatanga; heoi, kīhai i pai ki te Ariki kia whakaputaina atu rātou i te hereheretanga.
- 16     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka iti nei tā rātou kake haere i te whenua, ā, ka ranea ake tā rātou whakatupu kākano, me ngā kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, nā, kīhai rātou i mamae i runga i te matekai.
- 17     Nā, he tokomaha rawa atu ngā wāhine i reira, he nui ake i ngā tāne; nō reira ka whakahau a kīngi Rimihī i ngā tāne katoa kia wāwāhia atu e ia tāne, e ia tāne ana rawa ki te tautoko i te hunga pouaru me ā rātou tamariki, kia kore ai rātou e matekai; ā, ka pēnei tā rātou nā te tokomaha o te hunga kua patua.
- 18     Nā, i whakapiripiri tahi te iwi o Rimihī i tētahi ope kotahi i ngā wā katoa i taea ai, ā, i tiakina ā rātou kākano me ā rātou kāhui;
- 19     Ā, kāore i tau te ngākau o te kīngi kia puta atu ia ki waho i ngā taiapa o te pā, ki te kore e haere tahi me āna kaitiaki, e wehi ana kei taka noa ia ki ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana.

And it came to pass that their continual cries did stir up the remainder of the people of Limhi to anger against the Lamanites; and they went again to battle, but they were driven back again, suffering much loss.

Yea, they went again even the third time, and suffered in the like manner; and those that were not slain returned again to the city of Nephi.

And they did humble themselves even to the dust, subjecting themselves to the yoke of bondage, submitting themselves to be smitten, and to be driven to and fro, and burdened, according to the desires of their enemies.

And they did humble themselves even in the depths of humility; and they did cry mightily to God; yea, even all the day long did they cry unto their God that he would deliver them out of their afflictions.

And now the Lord was slow to hear their cry because of their iniquities; nevertheless the Lord did hear their cries, and began to soften the hearts of the Lamanites that they began to ease their burdens; yet the Lord did not see fit to deliver them out of bondage.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper by degrees in the land, and began to raise grain more abundantly, and flocks, and herds, that they did not suffer with hunger.

Now there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

Now the people of Limhi kept together in a body as much as it was possible, and secured their grain and their flocks;

And the king himself did not trust his person without the walls of the city, unless he took his guards with him, fearing that he might by some means fall into the hands of the Lamanites.

20     Ā, ka meatia e ia kia tiro tiro ai tana iwi i te whenua huri noa, huri noa, kia puta mai tētahi huarahi e mau ai rātou ki ngā tohunga kua tahuti atu ki roto i te koraha, nā rātou ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana i whānako, ā, nā rātou anō tēnei whakangaromanga nunui i tau ai ki runga i a rātou.

21     Nā te mea i te hiahia rātou kia mauria atu rātou kia whiua ai rātou; nā te mea kua haere pō mai rātou ki roto i te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, i kawea atu ā rātou kākano me ā rātou mea utu nui maha; nō reira rātou i tatari tīraha ai ki a rātou.

22     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore kau tētahi raruraru anō i waenganui i ngā Rāmana me te iwi o Rimihī, tae atu pū anō ki te wā i haere mai ai a Amona rātou ko ana teina ki roto i te whenua.

23     Ā, i te mea i waho te kīngi rātou ko ana kaitiaki i ngā kūaha o te pā, ka kitea e rātou a Amona rātou ko ana teina; ā, nā tana pōhēhē ko rātou ngā tohunga a Noa ka meatia rātou kia mauria atu ai, ā, kia herea ai, ā, kia makaia ai ki roto i te whareherehere. Ā, mehemea ko rātou ngā tohunga a Noa kua meatia e ia kia whakamatea rātou.

24     Engari i tana kitenga atu ehara rātou i te pērā, engari ko ōna tuākana rātou, ā, kua haere mai i te whenua o Harahemara, kua kī rawa ia i te hari tino nui rawa atu.

25     Nā, i tonoa atu e kīngi Rimihī, i mua i te taenga mai o Amona, tētahi ope tāne tokoiti kia tirohia ai te whenua o Harahemara; engari kāore i kitea e rātou, ā, i te ngaro rātou i te koraha.

26     Hei aha koa, i kitea e rātou tētahi whenua kua nōhia e te tangata; āe rā, tētahi whenua kua kapi i ngā kōiwi maroke; āe rā, tētahi whenua kua nōhia e te tangata, ā, kua whakangaromia; kātahi rātou, nā te pōhēhē ko te whenua o Harahemara tēnā, ka hoki ki te whenua o Nīwhai, kua tae mai ki roto i ngā rohe o te whenua i ngā rā torutoru i mua i te taenga mai o Amona.

27     Ā, i mauria mai e rātou tētahi tuhinga, tētahi tuhinga pū anō mō te iwi nō rātou ngā kōiwi i rapua ai e rātou; ā, i whaowhaoa tēnā i runga i ngā papa oa.

28     Ināianeī ā, i kī anō a Rimihī i te hari i tana rongonga i te māngai o Amona i a kīngi Mōhia tētahi takoha mai i te Atua, mā konā ia e taea ai te whakamāori i ērā momo whaowhaonga; āe rā, i hari anō a Amona.

And he caused that his people should watch the land round about, that by some means they might take those priests that fled into the wilderness, who had stolen the daughters of the Lamanites, and that had caused such a great destruction to come upon them.

For they were desirous to take them that they might punish them; for they had come into the land of Nephi by night, and carried off their grain and many of their precious things; therefore they laid wait for them.

And it came to pass that there was no more disturbance between the Lamanites and the people of Limhi, even until the time that Ammon and his brethren came into the land.

And the king having been without the gates of the city with his guard, discovered Ammon and his brethren; and supposing them to be priests of Noah therefore he caused that they should be taken, and bound, and cast into prison. And had they been the priests of Noah he would have caused that they should be put to death.

But when he found that they were not, but that they were his brethren, and had come from the land of Zarahemla, he was filled with exceedingly great joy.

Now king Limhi had sent, previous to the coming of Ammon, a small number of men to search for the land of Zarahemla; but they could not find it, and they were lost in the wilderness.

Nevertheless, they did find a land which had been peopled; yea, a land which was covered with dry bones; yea, a land which had been peopled and which had been destroyed; and they, having supposed it to be the land of Zarahemla, returned to the land of Nephi, having arrived in the borders of the land not many days before the coming of Ammon.

And they brought a record with them, even a record of the people whose bones they had found; and it was engraven on plates of ore.

And now Limhi was again filled with joy on learning from the mouth of Ammon that king Mosiah had a gift from God, whereby he could interpret such engravings; yea, and Ammon also did rejoice.

29 Heoi, i kī anō a Amona rātou ko ana teina i te pōuri nā te tokomaha o ō rātou teina kua patua;

30 Ā, i te meatanga anō hoki a kīngi Noa rātou ko āna tohunga i te iwi kia mahi i ngā hara me ngā kino maha ki te Atua; ā, i tangi anō rātou i te matenga o Apinati; ā, i te wehetanga atu anō a Arami me te iwi i haere tahi ai me ia, nāna nei tētahi hāhi o te Atua i hanga mā roto i te kaha me te mana o te Atua, me te whakaponono ki ngā kupu kua kōrerotia e Apinati.

31 Āe rā, i tangi rātou mō tō rātou wehenga atu, nā te mea kāore rātou i te mōhio kua tahuti atu rātou ki hea. Nā, kua ki a rātou pai mehemea i hono atu rātou ki a rātou, nā te mea kua uru atu rātou anō ki roto i tētahi kawenata ki te Atua kia mahi ai ki a ia me te pupuri i ana whakahaunga.

32 Ināianei ā, mai i te taenga mai o Amona, kua uru atu anō a kīngi Rimihī i tētahi kawenata ki te Atua, me te tokomaha anō o tana iwi, kia mahi ai ki a ia me te pupuri i ana whakahaunga.

33 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te hiahia a kīngi Rimihī me te tokomaha hoki o tana iwi kia rumakina ai; engari korekau tētahi i te whenua e mau nei te mana o te Atua. Ā, kihai a Amona i whakaae māna tēnei mea e mahi, i te whakaaro ia ehara ia i te pononga tōtika.

34 Nō reira, kihai rātou i whakarite i a rātou anō hei hāhi i taua wā, e tatari ana ki te Wairua o te Ariki. Nā, i te hiahia rātou kia rite pū anō ki a Arami rātou ko ana teina, ko rātou kua tahuti atu ki roto i te koraha.

35 I te hiahia rātou kia rumakina hei kaiwhakaatu, ā, hei whakaaturanga, nā, i te whakaae rātou kia mahi ki te Atua i runga i ō rātou ngākau katoa; hei aha koa i whakaroa ai rātou i te wā; ā, ka tukuna tētahi kōrero mō ō rātou rumakanga hei ā kō ake nei.

36 Ināianei ā, i te hāngai ngā wānanga katoa a Amona rātou ko tana iwi, me kīngi Rimihī rātou ko tana iwi, ki te whakaputanga atu i a rātou anō ki waho i ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana me te hereheretanga.

Yet Ammon and his brethren were filled with sorrow because so many of their brethren had been slain;

And also that king Noah and his priests had caused the people to commit so many sins and iniquities against God; and they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

And it came to pass that king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God. And Ammon declined doing this thing, considering himself an unworthy servant.

Therefore they did not at that time form themselves into a church, waiting upon the Spirit of the Lord. Now they were desirous to become even as Alma and his brethren, who had fled into the wilderness.

They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time; and an account of their baptism shall be given hereafter.

And now all the study of Ammon and his people, and king Limhi and his people, was to deliver themselves out of the hands of the Lamanites and from bondage.

## Mōhia 22

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka uiui a Amona rāua ko kīngi Rimihī i te iwi me pēhea rātou e puta atu ai i a rātou anō i te hereheretanga; ā, ka meatia anō hoki e rāua kia huihui ngātahi ai te iwi katoa i a rātou anō; ā, i pēnei rāua kia rongō ai rāua i te reo o te iwi e pā ana ki tēnei take.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore i kitea e rātou tētahi huarahi kē atu e whakaputa ai rātou i a rātou anō ki waho i te hereheretanga, hāunga tā rātou mauranga atu i ā rātou wāhine me ā rātou tamariki, me ā rātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, me te māwehe atu ki roto i te koraha; nā te tokomaha o ngā Rāmana, tē taea noa e te iwi o Rimihī ki te whawhai ki a rātou, i te whakaarotanga ake kia whakaputa i a rātou anō i te hereheretanga mā te hoari.
- 3 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu a Kiriona kia tū ai ia i te aroaro o te kīngi, kātahi ka kī atu ki a ia: Tēnā E te kīngi, kua whakarongo mai koe i mua ki aku kupu i ngā wā maha i a tātou e whawhai ana ki ō tātou tuākana, arā, ki ngā Rāmana.
- 4 Ināianeī ā, E te kīngi, mehemea kāore i kitea au e koe hei pononga koretake, mehemea rānei kua paku rongō koe i mua i aku kupu, ā, kāore i puta mai he painga ki a koe, ahakoa tērā e hiahia ana ahau kia whakarongo mai ki aku kupu i tēnei wā, ā, māku hei pononga māu, ā, māku tēnei iwi e whakaputa atu i te hereheretanga.
- 5 Ā, ka tukuna ia e te kīngi kia kōrero ai ia. Ā, ka kī atu a Kiriona ki a ia:
- 6 Tirohia te putanga atu i muri, mā te taiapa o muri, i te taha o muri o te pā. Ka haurangi ngā Rāmana, ngā kaitiaki rānei o ngā Rāmana i ngā pō; nō reira, tukuna atu e tātou tētahi pānui ki waenganui i tēnei iwi katoa kia huihui tahi ai rātou i ā rātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, kia āia pōtia atu e rātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 7 Ā, māku e haere i runga i tō whakahau me te hoatu i te takohatanga whakamutunga o te waina ki ngā Rāmana, ā, ka haurangi rātou; ā, ka tōhipa atu tātou mā roto i te putanga huna i te taha mauī o tō rātou hōpuni i a rātou e haurangi ana, ā, i a rātou e moe ana.

## Mosiah 22

And now it came to pass that Ammon and king Limhi began to consult with the people how they should deliver themselves out of bondage; and even they did cause that all the people should gather themselves together; and this they did that they might have the voice of the people concerning the matter.

And it came to pass that they could find no way to deliver themselves out of bondage, except it were to take their women and children, and their flocks, and their herds, and their tents, and depart into the wilderness; for the Lamanites being so numerous, it was impossible for the people of Limhi to contend with them, thinking to deliver themselves out of bondage by the sword.

Now it came to pass that Gideon went forth and stood before the king, and said unto him: Now O king, thou hast hitherto hearkened unto my words many times when we have been contending with our brethren, the Lamanites.

And now O king, if thou hast not found me to be an unprofitable servant, or if thou hast hitherto listened to my words in any degree, and they have been of service to thee, even so I desire that thou wouldst listen to my words at this time, and I will be thy servant and deliver this people out of bondage.

And the king granted unto him that he might speak. And Gideon said unto him:

Behold the back pass, through the back wall, on the back side of the city. The Lamanites, or the guards of the Lamanites, by night are drunken; therefore let us send a proclamation among all this people that they gather together their flocks and herds, that they may drive them into the wilderness by night.

And I will go according to thy command and pay the last tribute of wine to the Lamanites, and they will be drunken; and we will pass through the secret pass on the left of their camp when they are drunken and asleep.

8 Koia ka wehe atu tātou me ā tātou wāhine me ā tātou tamariki, ā tātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū ki roto i te koraha; ā, ka haere āwhio atu tātou i te whenua o Herehoma.

9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakarongo te kīngi ki ngā kupu a Kiriona.

10 Ā, ka meatia e kīngi Rimihī kia huihui tahi ai tana iwi i ā rātou kāhui; ā, ka tukuna e ia te takoha waina ki ngā Rāmana; ā, ka tukuna atu e ia he waina anō, hei koha ki a rātou; ā, i kaha tā rātou inu i te waina i tukuna ai e kīngi Rimihī ki a rātou.

11 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka wehe pō atu te iwi o Rimihī ki roto i te koraha me ā rātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, ā, ka haere āwhio noa atu rātou i te whenua o Herehoma i te koraha, ā, ka piko tā rātou ara whakatewhenua o Harahemara, e ārahina ana e Amona rātou ko ana teina.

12 Ā, kua mauria atu e rātou ā rātou kōura, me ā rātou hiriwā, me ā rātou mea utu nui, e taea ai te mau me ā rātou ō anō hoki, ki roto i te koraha; ā, ka haere rātou i runga i tā rātou haerenga.

13 Ā, whai muri iho i ngā rā maha i te koraha i tae atu rātou ki te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ka hono atu ki te iwi o Mōhia, ā, ka meinga hei tāngata māna.

14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakawhiwhia rātou e ia i runga i te koa; ā, i whakawhiwhia anōtia ā rātou tuhinga me ngā tuhinga anō hoki kua rapua e te iwi o Rimihī.

15 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, i te kitenga atu o ngā Rāmana kua wehe pō atu te iwi o Rimihī ki waho i te whenua, nā, i tonoa atu tētahi ope tauā ki roto i te koraha kia whāia ai rātou;

16 Ā, whai muri iho i tā rātou whāinga i a rātou mō ngā rā e rua, kīhai i taea tonutia e rātou ō rātou tapuwae te whai; nō reira kua ngaro rātou i te koraha.

Thus we will depart with our women and our children, our flocks, and our herds into the wilderness; and we will travel around the land of Shilom.

And it came to pass that the king hearkened unto the words of Gideon.

And king Limhi caused that his people should gather their flocks together; and he sent the tribute of wine to the Lamanites; and he also sent more wine, as a present unto them; and they did drink freely of the wine which king Limhi did send unto them.

And it came to pass that the people of king Limhi did depart by night into the wilderness with their flocks and their herds, and they went round about the land of Shilom in the wilderness, and bent their course towards the land of Zarahemla, being led by Ammon and his brethren.

And they had taken all their gold, and silver, and their precious things, which they could carry, and also their provisions with them, into the wilderness; and they pursued their journey.

And after being many days in the wilderness they arrived in the land of Zarahemla, and joined Mosiah's people, and became his subjects.

And it came to pass that Mosiah received them with joy; and he also received their records, and also the records which had been found by the people of Limhi.

And now it came to pass when the Lamanites had found that the people of Limhi had departed out of the land by night, that they sent an army into the wilderness to pursue them;

And after they had pursued them two days, they could no longer follow their tracks; therefore they were lost in the wilderness.



*He tubinga mō Arami me te iwi o te Ariki, i āia atu ki roto i te koraha e te iwi o Kīngi Noa.*

## Mōhia 23

- 1 Nā, kua whakatūpatoria a Arami e te Ariki ka haere mai ngā ope tauā o kīngi Noa ki runga i a rātou, ā, i te mea kua whakamōhiohia ki tana iwi, nō reira rātou i whakahuihui tahi ai i ā rātou kāhui, ka tīkina ētahi o ā rātou kākano, ā, ka wehe atu ki roto i te koraha i mua i ngā ope tauā o kīngi Noa.
- 2 Ā, ka whakapakari te Ariki i a rātou, kīhai i taea e te iwi o kīngi Noa te whakamaui i a rātou kia whakangaromia ai rātou.
- 3 Ā, e waru ngā rā i tahuti atu ai rātou ki roto i te koraha.
- 4 Ā, ka tae atu rātou ki tētahi whenua, āe rā, he whenua tino ātaahua, ā, he whenua āhuareka, he whenua e parukore ana ōna wai.
- 5 Ā, ka whakatū rātou i ō rātou tēneti, ā, ka tīmata ki te ngaki i te whenua, ā, ka tīmata ki te waihanga whare, āe rā, he pukumahi rātou, ā, i tino kaha tā rātou mahi.
- 6 Ā, i te hiahia te iwi kia tū ai a Arami hei kīngi mō rātou, nā te mea i arohaina ia e tōna iwi.
- 7 Engari ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: Nana, kāore e tika ana kia whai kīngi koutou; nā te mea e pēnei ana te kupu a te Ariki: Kua koe e whakatiketikehia tētahi kikokiko i tētahi atu, kua rānei tētahi tangata e whakatiketikehia ia anō i tētahi atu; nō reira ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou kāore e tika ana kia whai kīngi koutou.
- 8 Hei aha koa, mehemea e taea ana e koutou ngā tāngata tika te rapu hei kīngi mō koutou i ngā wā katoa kua pai kia whai kīngi koutou.
- 9 Engari kia mahara ki te hē o kīngi Noa me ana tohunga; ā, ko au anō i mau ai i tētahi māhanga, ā, i mahia ngā mea maha e mōrikarika ana i te tirohanga a te Ariki, nā konā au i rīpenetā nui ai;
- 10 Hei aha koa, i muri i ngā pāweratanga nui, ka rongu te Ariki i aku tangi, ā, ka whakautua aku inoi, ā, kua meatia au hei taputapu i ōna ringaringa i te mauranga mai i te tokomaha o koutou ki tētahi mātauranga o tōna pono.

*An account of Alma and the people of the Lord, who were driven into the wilderness by the people of King Noah.*

## Mosiah 23

Now Alma, having been warned of the Lord that the armies of king Noah would come upon them, and having made it known to his people, therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness before the armies of king Noah.

And the Lord did strengthen them, that the people of king Noah could not overtake them to destroy them.

And they fled eight days' journey into the wilderness.

And they came to a land, yea, even a very beautiful and pleasant land, a land of pure water.

And they pitched their tents, and began to till the ground, and began to build buildings; yea, they were industrious, and did labor exceedingly.

And the people were desirous that Alma should be their king, for he was beloved by his people.

But he said unto them: Behold, it is not expedient that we should have a king; for thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another; therefore I say unto you it is not expedient that ye should have a king.

Nevertheless, if it were possible that ye could always have just men to be your kings it would be well for you to have a king.

But remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

Nevertheless, after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands in bringing so many of you to a knowledge of his truth.

11 Hei aha koa, kāore au e whakamanamana i tēnei, nā te mea ehara au i te mea tika kia whakamanamana i ahau anō.

12 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kua whakapēhia koutou e kīngi Noa, ā, kua noho hereheretia ki a ia me āna tohunga, ā, kua mauria koutou e rātou ki roto i te hē; nō reira i herea koutou ki ngā herehere o te hē.

13 Ināianeī ā, i te mea kua whakaputaina koutou e te mana o te Atua i ēnei herehere; āe rā, i waho pū anō i ngā ringaringa o kīngi Noa me tana iwi, ā, i ngā hereherenga o te hē, waihoki e hiahia ana ahau kia tū kaha i tēnei herekoretanga mā konā kua herekoretia koutou, ā, kia kua koutou e tuku ai i tētahi tangata kia tū ai hei kīngi i runga i a koutou.

14 Ā, kua hoki e tuku i tētahi kia tū ai hei kaiako, hei kaiminita rānei mō koutou, hāunga he tangata nō te Atua ia, e hīkoi ana i ōna huarahi, ā, e pupuri ana i āna whakahaunga.

15 I whakaako pēnei a Arami i tana iwi, kia arohaina e ia tangata, e ia tangata tōna kiritata anō nei ko ia anō, kia kore ai tētahi tautohetohenga i waenganui i a rātou.

16 Ināianeī ā, ko Arami tō rātou tohunga teitei, ko ia hoki te kaiwhakapūmau o tō rātou hāhi.

17 Ā, i pahawa ake, kāore tētahi i whiwhi i te mana ki te kauhau, ki te whakaako rānei ki te kore i homai e te Atua mā roto i a ia. Nō reira ka whakatapua e ia ō rātou tohunga katoa me ō rātou kaiako katoa; ā, kāore tētahi i whakatapua ki te kore rātou i te tangata tika.

18 Nō reira i mataara rātou i runga i tō rātou iwi, ā, i whāngaia rātou ki ngā mea e pā ana ki te tika.

19 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata tā rātou kakenga nuitanga i te whenua; ā, ka karangatia e rātou te whenua ko Herama.

20 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tini haere rātou, ā, ka kake nui rātou i te whenua o Herama; ā, i hangaia e rātou tētahi pā, i karangatia ko te pā o Herama.

21 Hei aha koa e tika ana ki tā te Ariki titiro kia pāpaki i tana iwi; āe rā, ka whakamātautauria tō rātou manawanui me tō rātou whakapono.

Nevertheless, in this I do not glory, for I am unworthy to glory of myself.

And now I say unto you, ye have been oppressed by king Noah, and have been in bondage to him and his priests, and have been brought into iniquity by them; therefore ye were bound with the bands of iniquity.

And now as ye have been delivered by the power of God out of these bonds; yea, even out of the hands of king Noah and his people, and also from the bonds of iniquity, even so I desire that ye should stand fast in this liberty wherewith ye have been made free, and that ye trust no man to be a king over you.

And also trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

And now, Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

And it came to pass that none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God. Therefore he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Therefore they did watch over their people, and did nourish them with things pertaining to righteousness.

And it came to pass that they began to prosper exceedingly in the land; and they called the land Helam.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and prosper exceedingly in the land of Helam; and they built a city, which they called the city of Helam.

Nevertheless the Lord seeth fit to chasten his people; yea, he trieth their patience and their faith.

22 Hei aha koa—ko te tangata e whakawhirinaki nei ki a ia ko ia anō e whakateiteingia ake hei te rā whakamutunga. Āe rā, i pēnei anō te āhua o tēnei iwi.

23 Nana rā, māku e whakaatu atu ki a koutou, nā, i kūmea iho rātou ki roto i te hereheretanga, ā, kihai i taea e tētahi te whakaputa i a rātou hāunga ko te Ariki tō rātou Atua anake, āe rā, ko te Atua pū anō o Aperahama, o Ihaka me Hākopa.

24 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, nāna rātou i whakaputa, ā, nāna i whakaatu atu ki a rātou tōna kaha nui, ā, i nui ā rātou haringa.

25 Nana rā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a rātou i te whenua o Herama, āe rā, i te pā o Herama, i a rātou e ngaki ana i te whenua e pātata ana, nana, kua kuhuna mai tētahi ope tauā a ngā Rāmāna ki roto i ngā rohe o te whenua.

26 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tahuti atu ngā teina o Arami i ngā pārae, ā, ka whakahuihui ngātahi i a rātou anō i te pā o Herama; ā, i tino matakū rawa rātou nā te āhua o ngā Rāmāna.

27 Engari i haere whakamua atu a Arami, ā, ka tū ki waenganui i a rātou, ā, i ākina rātou kia kua rātou e matakū, engari kia mahara rātou ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, ā, māna rātou e whakaora.

28 Nō reira ō rātou wehi i mauru iho ai, ā, ka tīmata ki te karanga ake ki te Ariki kia whakangāwaritia e ia ngā ngākau o ngā Rāmāna, kia tohungia rātou, me ā rātou hoawāhine, me ā rātou tamariki.

29 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakangāwaritia ngā ngākau o ngā Rāmāna e te Ariki. Ā, ka haere whakamua atu a Arami rātou ko ana teina, ka tukuna rātou e rātou anō ki roto i ō rātou ringaringa; ā, ka riro i ngā Rāmāna te whenua o Herama.

30 Nā, ko ngā ope tauā a ngā Rāmāna, ko rātou i whaiwhai nei i te iwi o kīngi Rimihī, he maha ō rātou rā i ngaro ai i te koraha.

31 Ā nana, i kitea e rātou aua tohunga a Noa, i taua wāhi i karangatia ko Amurona; ā, kua tīmata rātou kia nōhia ai te whenua o Amurona, ā, kua tīmata te ngaki i te whenua.

32 Nā, ko te ingoa o te rangatira o aua tohunga ko Amurona.

Nevertheless—whosoever putteth his trust in him the same shall be lifted up at the last day. Yea, and thus it was with this people.

For behold, I will show unto you that they were brought into bondage, and none could deliver them but the Lord their God, yea, even the God of Abraham and Isaac and of Jacob.

And it came to pass that he did deliver them, and he did show forth his mighty power unto them, and great were their rejoicings.

For behold, it came to pass that while they were in the land of Helam, yea, in the city of Helam, while tilling the land round about, behold an army of the Lamanites was in the borders of the land.

Now it came to pass that the brethren of Alma fled from their fields, and gathered themselves together in the city of Helam; and they were much frightened because of the appearance of the Lamanites.

But Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

Therefore they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord that he would soften the hearts of the Lamanites, that they would spare them, and their wives, and their children.

And it came to pass that the Lord did soften the hearts of the Lamanites. And Alma and his brethren went forth and delivered themselves up into their hands; and the Lamanites took possession of the land of Helam.

Now the armies of the Lamanites, which had followed after the people of king Limhi, had been lost in the wilderness for many days.

And behold, they had found those priests of king Noah, in a place which they called Amulon; and they had begun to possess the land of Amulon and had begun to till the ground.

Now the name of the leader of those priests was Amulon.

- 33     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i inoi ake a Amurona ki ngā Rāmana; ā, i tukuna anōtia e ia ā rātou hoawāhine, ko rātou nei ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana, ki te inoi ki ō rātou tungāne, kia kaua rātou e whakangaro i ā rātou hoatāne.
- 34     Ā, ka aroha ngā Rāmana ki a Amurona rātou ko ana teina, ā, kihai i whakangaro i a rātou, nā ā rātou hoawāhine.
- 35     Ā, ka whakauru atu a Amurona rātou ko ana teina ki roto i ngā Rāmana, ā, i te haere rātou i roto i te koraha e rapu ana i te whenua o Nīwhai i te wā i kite ai rātou i te whenua o Herama, kua nōhia e Arami rātou ko ana teina.
- 36     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakaari ngā Rāmana ki a Arami rātou ko ana teina, nā, mēnā ka whakaaturia e rātou te huarahi ki a rātou e ārahina atu ai ki te whenua o Nīwhai ka tohungia e rātou ō rātou oranga me tō rātou herekoretanga.
- 37     Engari i muri iho i tā Arami whakaatu atu ki a rātou i te huarahi e ārahina ana ki te whenua o Nīwhai kāore i pūmau ki tā rātou i whakaari ai; engari ka whakatūria ngā kaitiaki taiāwhio noa i te whenua o Herama, i runga i a Arami rātou ko ana teina.
- 38     Ā, ka haere atu te toenga atu o rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai; ā, ka hoki anō tētahi wāhi o rātou ki te whenua o Herama, ā, ka mauria anō hoki e rātou ngā hoawāhine me ngā tamariki a ngā kaitiaki kua mahue atu i te whenua.
- 39     Ā, ka tukuna e te kīngi o ngā Rāmana a Amurona kia tū ai hei kīngi, ā, hei kaiwhakahaere i runga i tana iwi, ko rātou nei e noho ana i te whenua o Herama; hei aha koa kāore ōna mana ki te mahi i tētahi mea kē atu i te hiahia a te kīngi o ngā Rāmana.

And it came to pass that Amulon did plead with the Lamanites; and he also sent forth their wives, who were the daughters of the Lamanites, to plead with their brethren, that they should not destroy their husbands.

And the Lamanites had compassion on Amulon and his brethren, and did not destroy them, because of their wives.

And Amulon and his brethren did join the Lamanites, and they were traveling in the wilderness in search of the land of Nephi when they discovered the land of Helam, which was possessed by Alma and his brethren.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites promised unto Alma and his brethren, that if they would show them the way which led to the land of Nephi that they would grant unto them their lives and their liberty.

But after Alma had shown them the way that led to the land of Nephi the Lamanites would not keep their promise; but they set guards round about the land of Helam, over Alma and his brethren.

And the remainder of them went to the land of Nephi; and a part of them returned to the land of Helam, and also brought with them the wives and the children of the guards who had been left in the land.

And the king of the Lamanites had granted unto Amulon that he should be a king and a ruler over his people, who were in the land of Helam; nevertheless he should have no power to do anything contrary to the will of the king of the Lamanites.

## Mōhia 24

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whai pai a Amurona i roto i ngā karu o te kīngi o ngā Rāmana; nō reira, ka tukuna rātou ko ana teina e te kīngi o ngā Rāmana kia whakatauhia rātou hei kaiako i runga i tana iwi, āe rā, i runga anō i te iwi e noho ana i te whenua o Hemerona, ā, i roto i te whenua o Hīroma, ā, i te whenua o Amurona.
- 2 Nā te mea i raupatuhia ēnei whenua katoa e ngā Rāmana; nō reira, kua whakatauhia e te kīngi o ngā Rāmana ngā kīngi i runga i ēnei whenua katoa.
- 3 Ināianei ā, ko Rāmana te ingoa o te kīngi o ngā Rāmana, kua whakaingoatia ia ki te ingoa o tōna matua; nō reira ia i karangatia ai ko kīngi Rāmana. Ā, he kīngi ia i runga i tētahi iwi nunui.
- 4 Ā, i whakatauhia e ia ngā kaiako nō ngā teina a Amurona ki roto i ia whenua, ia whenua kua nōhia e tōna iwi; ā, i pēnei te whakaakoranga a te reo o Nīwhai ki waenganui i te iwi o ngā Rāmana.
- 5 Ā, he iwi atawhai rātou tētahi ki tētahi; hei aha koa kāore rātou i mōhio ki te Atua; kāore rānei ngā teina a Amurona i whakaako i tētahi mea ki a rātou e pā ana ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, ki te ture rānei a Mohi; kāore rānei rātou i whakaako i ngā kupu a Apinati ki a rātou;
- 6 Engari i whakaako rātou ki a rātou kia tuhia tā rātou tuhituhinga, ā, kia tuhituhi anō rātou tētahi ki tētahi.
- 7 Ā, i tīmata pēnei te nui haeretanga o ā ngā Rāmana taonga, ā, ka tīmata ki te hokohoko tētahi ki tētahi me te tupu kia nui, ā, ka tīmata hei iwi tīnihanga, ā, hei iwi mōhio, e pā ana ki ngā mōhioranga o te ao, āe rā, he iwi tino tīnihanga, e āhuareka ana ki ngā tūmomo mahinga whakarihariha katoa me ngā mahinga pāhua, hāunga ia te pāhua i waenganui i ā rātou ake teina.
- 8 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata a Amurona ki te whakahaere i tōna mana ki runga i a Arami me ana teina, ā, ka tīmata ki te tūkino i a rātou me te mea anō i ana tamariki kia tūkino i ā rātou tamariki.

## Mosiah 24

And it came to pass that Amulon did gain favor in the eyes of the king of the Lamanites; therefore, the king of the Lamanites granted unto him and his brethren that they should be appointed teachers over his people, yea, even over the people who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the land of Shilom, and in the land of Amulon.

For the Lamanites had taken possession of all these lands; therefore, the king of the Lamanites had appointed kings over all these lands.

And now the name of the king of the Lamanites was Laman, being called after the name of his father; and therefore he was called king Laman. And he was king over a numerous people.

And he appointed teachers of the brethren of Amulon in every land which was possessed by his people; and thus the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

And they were a people friendly one with another; nevertheless they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses; nor did they teach them the words of Abinadi;

But they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

And thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world, yea, a very cunning people, delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

And now it came to pass that Amulon began to exercise authority over Alma and his brethren, and began to persecute him, and cause that his children should persecute their children.

- 9 Nā te mea i mōhio a Amurona ki a Arami, koia anō tētahi o ngā tohunga a te kīngi, ā, koia hoki i whakapono ai ki ngā kupu a Apinati, ā, ka āia atu i te aroaro o te kīngi, ā, nā konā i pukuriri ia ki a ia; nā te mea i raro ia i a kīngi Rāmana, heoi, i whakahaeretia tōna mana ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka whakamau pikaunga ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka whakarite kai-akiaki ki runga i a rātou.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tīmata rātou ki te kaha karanga ki te Atua nā te nui o ō rātou whakamamaetanga.
- 11 Ā, ka whakahau a Amurona i a rātou kia mutu ā rātou karanga; ā, ka whakatūria e ia he kaitiaki i runga i a rātou ki te mātakitaki i a rātou, nā, mehemea ka kitea tētahi e karanga tonu ana ki te Atua ka whakamatea ia.
- 12 Ā, kīhai a Arami me tana iwi i whakaara ake i ō rātou reo ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, engari ka ringihia iho ō rātou ngākau ki a ia; ā, i mōhio ia ki ngā whakaaro o ō rātou ngākau.
- 13 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tau iho te reo o te Ariki ki a rātou i roto i ō rātou whakamamaetanga, e mea ana: E ara ake i ō koutou māhunga, ā, kia hari, nā te mea e mōhio ana ahau i te kawenata kua meatia e koutou ki ahau; ā, māku e kawenata ki taku iwi me te whakaputa i a rātou i te hereheretanga.
- 14 Ā, māku e whakamāmā ngā pikaunga ka whakamaua ki runga i ō koutou pokohiwi, kia kore ai koutou e rongoi aua mea i runga i ō koutou tuarā, i a koutou e noho ana i te hereheretanga; ā, ka pēnei ahau kia tū ai koutou hei kaiwhakaatu mōku a muri ake nei, ā, kia mōhio pū ai koutou māku, mā te Ariki te Atua, e toro atu ki taku iwi i roto i ō rātou whakamamaetanga.
- 15 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakamāmāhia ngā pikaunga kua whakamaua ki runga i a Arami me ana teina; āe rā, ka whakakaha te Ariki i a rātou kia tino taea ai e rātou ō rātou pikaunga te waha ake, ā, ka ngohengohe rātou i runga i te hari me te manawanui ki tā te Ariki i pai ai.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tau iho anō te reo o te Ariki ki a rātou nā te nui o tō rātou whakapono me tō rātou manawanui, e mea ana: Kia hari, nā te mea hei āpōpō māku koutou e whakaputa atu i te hereheretanga.

For Amulon knew Alma, that he had been one of the king's priests, and that it was he that believed the words of Abinadi and was driven out before the king, and therefore he was wroth with him; for he was subject to king Laman, yet he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

And Amulon commanded them that they should stop their cries; and he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

And it came to pass that the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying: Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs, even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

And now it came to pass that the burdens which were laid upon Alma and his brethren were made light; yea, the Lord did strengthen them that they could bear up their burdens with ease, and they did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord.

And it came to pass that so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

- 17     Ā, i kī atu ia ki a Arami: Māu e haere ki mua i tēnei iwi, ā, ka haere tahi au me koe, ā, ka whakaputaina tēnei iwi i te hereheretanga.
- 18     I pahawa ianei ake, nā, ka whakahuihui tahi tana iwi i ā rātou kāhui me ā rātou kākano i roto i te pō; āe rā, i te whakahuihui tahi rātou i ā rātou kāhui mō te roanga ake o te pō.
- 19     Ā, i te ata ka meatia e te Ariki kia au ai te moe a ngā Rāmana, āe rā, i te tino au te moe a ō rātou kai-akiaki katoa.
- 20     Ā, ka wehe atu a Arami me tana iwi ki roto i te koraha; ā, i te paunga ake o te rā i a rātou e haere ana ka whakatūria ō rātou tēneti i te raorao, ā, ka huaina te raorao ko Arami, nā te mea i ārahi ia i a rātou i runga i tō rātou huarahi i te koraha.
- 21     Āe rā, i ringihia iho e rātou ā rātou whakawhetai ki te Atua i te raorao o Arami nā te mea i whakaaroha ia ki a rātou, ā, i whakamāmāhia ō rātou pikaunga, ā, i whakaputaina atu rātou i te hereheretanga; nā te mea i te hereheretanga rātou, ā, kāore i taea e tētahi ki te whakaputa i a rātou hāunga ko te Ariki tō rātou Atua.
- 22     Ā, ka tuku whakawhetai rātou ki te Atua, āe rā, ka ara ake te reo o ā rātou tāne katoa me ā rātou wāhine katoa me ā rātou tamariki katoa i taea te kōrero i runga i te whakawhetai ki tō rātou Atua.
- 23     Ināianei ā, ka kī atu te Ariki ki a Arami: Kia hohoro koe, ā, me puta atu koutou ko tēnei iwi i tēnei whenua, nā te mea kua oho ngā Rāmana ki te aruaru i a koe; nō reira, me puta atu koe i tēnei whenua, ā, māku ngā Rāmana e aukati i tēnei raorao kia kore ai rātou e aruaru tonu i tēnei iwi.
- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka wehe atu rātou i te raorao, ā, ka whakatika atu tā rātou haere ki roto i te koraha.
- 25     Ā, i muri iho i ngā rā tekau mā rua i te koraha ka tae rātou ki te whenua o Harahemara; ā, ka whakawhiwhia rātou e kīngi Mōhia i runga i te koa.

And he said unto Alma: Thou shalt go before this people, and I will go with thee and deliver this people out of bondage.

Now it came to pass that Alma and his people in the night-time gathered their flocks together, and also of their grain; yea, even all the night-time were they gathering their flocks together.

And in the morning the Lord caused a deep sleep to come upon the Lamanites, yea, and all their task-masters were in a profound sleep.

And Alma and his people departed into the wilderness; and when they had traveled all day they pitched their tents in a valley, and they called the valley Alma, because he led their way in the wilderness.

Yea, and in the valley of Alma they poured out their thanks to God because he had been merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had delivered them out of bondage; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it were the Lord their God.

And they gave thanks to God, yea, all their men and all their women and all their children that could speak lifted their voices in the praises of their God.

And now the Lord said unto Alma: Haste thee and get thou and this people out of this land, for the Lamanites have awakened and do pursue thee; therefore get thee out of this land, and I will stop the Lamanites in this valley that they come no further in pursuit of this people.

And it came to pass that they departed out of the valley, and took their journey into the wilderness.

And after they had been in the wilderness twelve days they arrived in the land of Zarahemla; and king Mosiah did also receive them with joy.

## Mōhia 25

- 1 Ināianeī ā, ka meatia e kīngi Mōhia kia whakahuihui tahitia te iwi katoa.
- 2 Nā, kāore i rite te tokomaha o ngā tamariki a Nīwhai, te tokomaha rānei o ngā uri o Nīwhai, ki tō te iwi o Harahemara, ko ia tētahi uri nō Mūreke me te hunga i haere me ia ki roto i te koraha.
- 3 Ā, kāore i rite te tokomaha o te iwi o Nīwhai rātou ko te iwi o Harahemara ki tō ngā Rāmana; āe rā, kāore i rite ki te haurua o tō rātou nui.
- 4 Ināianeī ā, kua whakahuihui tahitia te iwi katoa o Nīwhai me te iwi katoa anō o Harahemara, ā, i whakahuihui tahitia i ngā rōpū e rua.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i pānui a Mōhia, ā, ka meatia kia pānuitia, ngā tuhinga a Hinihi ki tana iwi; āe rā, i pānui ia i ngā tuhinga o te iwi o Hinihi, mai i te wā i wehe atu rātou i te whenua o Harahemara tae atu ki tā rātou hokinga atu anō.
- 6 Ā, i pānui anō ia i te tuhinga a Arami me ana teina, me ō rātou whakamamaetanga, mai i te wā i wehe rātou i te whenua o Harahemara tae atu ki te wā i hoki anō ai rātou.
- 7 Ināianeī ā, i te whakakapinga a Mōhia i tana pānui i ngā tuhinga, ka pākia tana iwi i noho ai i te whenua e te māharo me te mīharo.
- 8 Nā te mea kīhai rātou i mōhio me pēhea ō rātou whakaaro; nā te mea i tā rātou tirohanga atu i te hunga kua whakaputaina i te hereheretanga ka kiki rātou i te hari nui whakaharahara.
- 9 Hei āpiti anō, i tā rātou whakaarotanga ki ā rātou teina i patua ai e ngā Rāmana ka kiki rātou i te pōuri, ā, ka heke ngā roimata maha i te pōuri.
- 10 Hei āpiti anō, i te wā i whakaaro ai rātou ki te pai mutunga o te Atua, me tana kaha ki te whakaputa i a Arami me ana teina i ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana me te hereheretanga, ka ara ake ō rātou reo, ā, ka tuku whakawhetai ki te Atua.
- 11 Hei āpiti anō, i te wā i whakaaro rātou ki ngā Rāmana, ko rātou nei ō rātou tuākana, me tō rātou āhuetanga hara me tō rātou āhuetanga poke, ka kiki rātou i te mamae me te pōuri mō te oranga o ō rātou wairua.

## Mosiah 25

And now king Mosiah caused that all the people should be gathered together.

Now there were not so many of the children of Nephi, or so many of those who were descendants of Nephi, as there were of the people of Zarahemla, who was a descendant of Mulek, and those who came with him into the wilderness.

And there were not so many of the people of Nephi and of the people of Zarahemla as there were of the Lamanites; yea, they were not half so numerous.

And now all the people of Nephi were assembled together, and also all the people of Zarahemla, and they were gathered together in two bodies.

And it came to pass that Mosiah did read, and caused to be read, the records of Zeniff to his people; yea, he read the records of the people of Zeniff, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until they returned again.

And he also read the account of Alma and his brethren, and all their afflictions, from the time they left the land of Zarahemla until the time they returned again.

And now, when Mosiah had made an end of reading the records, his people who tarried in the land were struck with wonder and amazement.

For they knew not what to think; for when they beheld those that had been delivered out of bondage they were filled with exceedingly great joy.

And again, when they thought of their brethren who had been slain by the Lamanites they were filled with sorrow, and even shed many tears of sorrow.

And again, when they thought of the immediate goodness of God, and his power in delivering Alma and his brethren out of the hands of the Lamanites and of bondage, they did raise their voices and give thanks to God.

And again, when they thought upon the Lamanites, who were their brethren, of their sinful and polluted state, they were filled with pain and anguish for the welfare of their souls.



- 12     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko ngā tamariki a Amurona rātou ko ana teina, ko te hunga i moe ai i ngā tamāhine a ngā Rāmana, i te manawa kawa rātou ki ngā mahi a ō rātou matua, ā, kua kore e karangatia tonutia rātou e ngā ingoa o ō rātou matua, nō reira ka tango ki runga i a rātou anō te ingoa o Nīwhai, kia karangatia ai rātou ko ngā tamariki a Nīwhai, ā, kia tatauria i roto i te hunga e karangatia ana ko ngā Nīwhai.
- 13     Ināianeī ā, ka tatauria ngātahitia te iwi katoa o Harahemara me ngā Nīwhai, ā, i pēnei anō nā te mea kua whakataua iho te kīngitanga ki runga i te hunga ko rātou ngā uri o Nīwhai.
- 14     Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te whakakapinga a Mōhia i tana kōrero me tana pānui ki te iwi, ka hiahia anō ia kia tū a Arami ki te kōrero ki te iwi.
- 15     Ā, ka kōrero a Arami ki a rātou, i a rātou e noho tōpū ana i ngā huihuinga nunui, ā, ka haere ia ki tētahi huihuinga, ki tētahi atu huihuinga, e kauhau ana ki te iwi mō te rīpenetātanga me te whakapono ki runga i te Ariki.
- 16     Ā, i akiaki ia i te iwi o Rimihī me ana teina, ko te hunga katoa kua whakaputaina mai nei i te hereheretanga kia maumahara ai rātou nā te Ariki rātou i whakaputa.
- 17     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā Arami whakaako i ngā mea maha ki te iwi, ā, kua whakakapia tana kōrero ki a rātou, nā, ka hiahia a kīngi Rimihī kia rumakina ai ia; ā, i te hiahia tana iwi katoa kia rumakina anō ai rātou.
- 18     Nō reira, ka haere whakamua atu a Arami ki roto i te wai, ā, ka rumaki ia i a rātou; āe rā, i rumaki ia i a rātou i runga i te ritenga i mahi ai ia ki ana teina i ngā wai o Moromona; āe rā, nō te hāhi o te Atua te hunga i rumakina ai e ia; ā, i pēnei ai nā tō rātou whakapono ki runga i ngā kupu a Arami.
- 19     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tukuna a Arami e kīngi Mōhia kia whakapūmauhia e ia ngā hāhi puta noa i te whenua o Harahemara; ā, ka tuku mana ki a ia ki te whakamana i ngā tohunga me ngā kaiako i runga i ia hāhi.
- 20     Nā, i meatia tēnei nā te tokomaha o ngā tāngata tē taea rātou katoa te whakahaere e te kaiako kotahi; tē taea rānei e rātou katoa te rongō i te kupu a te Atua i te huinga kotahi;

And it came to pass that those who were the children of Amulon and his brethren, who had taken to wife the daughters of the Lamanites, were displeased with the conduct of their fathers, and they would no longer be called by the names of their fathers, therefore they took upon themselves the name of Nephi, that they might be called the children of Nephi and be numbered among those who were called Nephites.

And now all the people of Zarahemla were numbered with the Nephites, and this because the kingdom had been conferred upon none but those who were descendants of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that when Mosiah had made an end of speaking and reading to the people, he desired that Alma should also speak to the people.

And Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled together in large bodies, and he went from one body to another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on the Lord.

And he did exhort the people of Limhi and his brethren, all those that had been delivered out of bondage, that they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver them.

And it came to pass that after Alma had taught the people many things, and had made an end of speaking to them, that king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized; and all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

Therefore, Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah granted unto Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

- 21 Nō reira, ka huihui rātou i a rātou anō i ngā huinga maha, e karangatia ana ko ngā hāhi; kei ia hāhi ōna ake tohunga me ōna ake kaiako, ā, e kauhau ana ia tohunga i te kupu e ai ki tāna i rongō ai i te māngai o Arami.
- 22 Nō reira, ahakoa he maha ngā hāhi kotahi tonu te hāhi, āe rā, ko te hāhi pū anō o te Atua; nā te mea kāore tētahi mea i kauhautia i roto i ngā hāhi katoa hāunga ia ko te rīpenetātanga me te whakapono i te Atua.
- 23 Ināianei ā, e whitu ngā hāhi i te whenua o Harahemara. Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko te tangata e hiahia ana kia tango ki runga ki a ia te ingoa o te Karaiti, o te Atua rānei, ka uru rātou ki ngā hāhi o te Atua;
- 24 Ā, ka karangatia rātou ko te iwi o te Atua. Ā, ka maringi iho te Ariki i tōna wairua ki runga i a rātou, ā, ka manaakitia rātou, ā, ka kake rātou i te whenua.

Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

And now there were seven churches in the land of Zarahemla. And it came to pass that whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

## Mōhia 26

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha o te whakatipuranga e tupu ana kīhai i mārāma ki ngā kupu a kīngi Peniamine, he tamariki nonohi rātou i te wā i kōrero ai ia ki tana iwi; ā, kāore rātou i whakapono ki ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua.
- 2 Kāore rātou i whakapono ki ngā kōrero e pā ana ki te aranga o te hunga mate, kāore rānei i whakapono ki ngā mea e pā ana ki te haerenga mai o te Karaiti.
- 3 Ināianei ā, nā tō rātou whakaponokore kāore i taea e rātou te mārāma ki te kupu a te Atua; ā, i whakapakekehia ō rātou ngākau.
- 4 Ā, kāore rātou i whakaae kia rumakina; kāore rānei rātou i whakaae kia uru ki te hāhi. Ā, he iwi kē atu rātou mō te taha ki te whakapono, ā, ka noho pērā āke, ake ake, i roto pū anō i tō te āhuatanga o te kikokiko me te hara; nā te mea kāore rātou i whakaae ki te karanga ake ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua.
- 5 Ināianei ā, i te wā o te whakahaeretanga o Mōhia kāore tō rātou tokomaha i tata noa atu ki te tokomaha o te iwi o te Atua; engari nā ngā tītorehanga i waenganui i ngā teina ka tokomaha ake rātou.
- 6 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha ngā tāngata i tinihangatia e ā rātou kōrero whakapatipati, ko ngā tāngata nō roto i te hāhi, ā, ka meatia kia mahi ai rātou i ngā hara maha; nō reira i tika ai kia kohetehia e te hāhi te hunga nō te hāhi e mahi hē ana.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mauria mai rātou ki te aroaro o ngā tohunga, ā, ka tukuna ake ki ngā tohunga e ngā kaiako; ā, ka mauria mai rātou e ngā tohunga ki mua i a Arami, ko ia te tohunga teitei.
- 8 Nā, kua hoatu e kīngi Mōhia te mana ki a Arami mō runga i te hāhi.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore a Arami i mōhio e pā ana ki a rātou; engari he tokomaha ngā kaiwhakaatu e whakahē ana i a rātou; āe rā, ka tū te iwi, ā, ka whakaatuhia nuitia mō tō rātou hē.
- 10 Nā, kāore kau tētahi āhuatanga pēnei i te hāhi i mua; nō reira i te raruraru a Arami i roto i tōna wairua, ā, ka meatia e ia kia mauria mai ai rātou ki te aroaro o te kīngi.

## Mosiah 26

Now it came to pass that there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin, being little children at the time he spake unto his people; and they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

And now because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

And they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church. And they were a separate people as to their faith, and remained so ever after, even in their carnal and sinful state; for they would not call upon the Lord their God.

And now in the reign of Mosiah they were not half so numerous as the people of God; but because of the dissensions among the brethren they became more numerous.

For it came to pass that they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

And it came to pass that they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

Now king Mosiah had given Alma the authority over the church.

And it came to pass that Alma did not know concerning them; but there were many witnesses against them; yea, the people stood and testified of their iniquity in abundance.

Now there had not any such thing happened before in the church; therefore Alma was troubled in his spirit, and he caused that they should be brought before the king.

11     Ā, ka kī atu ia ki te kīngi: Nana, anei te tokomaha kua mauria mai e mātou ki tō aroaro, kua whakahēngia e ō rātou teina; āe rā, kua mau rātou i ētahi o ō rātou hē. Ā, kāore rātou e rīpenetā ana i ō rātou hara; nō reira rātou i mauria mai ai e mātou ki mua i tō aroaro, kia whakawā ai koe i a rātou e ai ki ō rātou hē.

12     Engari ka kī atu a kīngi Mōhia ki a Arami: Nana, kāore au e whakawā i a rātou; nō reira māku rātou e tuku ki ōu ringaringa kia whakawākia ai.

13     Ināianei ā, ka raruraru anō te wairua o Arami; ā, ka haere ia ki te ui atu ki te Ariki me aha ia e pā ana ki tēnei take, nā te mea i wehi ia kei hē ia i te tirohanga a te Atua.

14     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, nō muri iho i tana riringitanga iho i tōna wairua katoa ki te Atua, ka tau mai te reo o te Ariki ki a ia, e mea ana:

15     Kua manaakitia koe, e Arami, ā, kua manaakitia te hunga kua rumakina i ngā wai o Moromona. Kua manaakitia koe nā tō kaha whakapono ki ngā kupu anake a taku pononga a Apinati.

16     Ā, kua manaakitia rātou nā tō rātou kaha whakapono i ngā kupu anake kua kōrerotia e koe ki a rātou.

17     Ā, kua manaakitia koe nā te mea kua whakapūmautia tētahi hāhi i waenganui i tēnei iwi; ā, ka whakapūmautia rātou, ā, ka meinga rātou hei iwi mōku.

18     Āe rā, kua manaakitia tēnei iwi e whakaae ana kia pīkauria tōku ingoa; nā te mea i tōku ingoa rātou e karangatia ai; ā, nōku anō rātou.

19     Ā, nā te mea kua uia au e koe e pā ana ki te kaihara, kua manaakitia koe.

20     Ko koe taku pononga; ā, e kawenata ana ahau ki a koe mōu te oranga tonutanga; ā, māu e mahi mōku, ā, ka haere whakamua atu koe i runga i tōku ingoa, ā, ka whakahuihui tahi i āku hipi.

21     Ā, he hipi nāku te tangata e rongō ai i tōku reo; ā, ko ia tā koutou e whakawhiwhi ai ki roto i te hāhi, ā, ko ia anō tāku e whakawhiwhi ai.

22     Nana rā, ko taku hāhi tēnei; ā, ko te tangata e rumakina ai ka rumakina ki te rīpenetātanga. Ā, ko te tangata e whakawhiwhia ai e koutou e whakapono ai i tōku ingoa; ā, māku ana hara e muru noa.

And he said unto the king: Behold, here are many whom we have brought before thee, who are accused of their brethren; yea, and they have been taken in divers iniquities. And they do not repent of their iniquities; therefore we have brought them before thee, that thou mayest judge them according to their crimes.

But king Mosiah said unto Alma: Behold, I judge them not; therefore I deliver them into thy hands to be judged.

And now the spirit of Alma was again troubled; and he went and inquired of the Lord what he should do concerning this matter, for he feared that he should do wrong in the sight of God.

And it came to pass that after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon. Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

And blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

And blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people; and they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

Yea, blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name; for in my name shall they be called; and they are mine.

And because thou hast inquired of me concerning the transgressor, thou art blessed.

Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

And he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

For behold, this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance. And whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

23 Nā te mea ko au anō e waha nei i ngā hara o te ao; nā te mea nāku rātou i hanga; ā, ko au anō e tuku ai ki te tangata e whakapono nei tae noa atu ki te mutunga tētahi wāhi i tōku ringa katau.

24 Nana rā, kua karangatia rātou i tōku ingoa; ā, mehemea e mōhio ana rātou ki ahau ka haere mai rātou, ā, ka whai wāhi anō i tōku ringa katau mō āke tonu atu.

25 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ina tangi te pūkāea tuarua hei reira haere mai ai te hunga kīhai rawa i mōhio mai ki ahau, ā, ka tū ki tōku aroaro.

26 Kātahi rātou ka mōhio ko au te Ariki tō rātou Atua, ko au tō rātou Kaihoko; engari kāore rātou e hokona.

27 Kātahi au ka whāki atu ki a rātou, nā, kīhai rawa au i mōhio ki a rātou; ā, ka wehe atu rātou ki roto i te ahi kā tonu kua whakaritea mō te rēwera me ana anahera.

28 Nō reira ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ko te tangata e kore nei e rongō i tōku reo, ko ia anō e kore nei e whakawhiwhia ai e koutou ki roto i taku hāhi, nā te mea kāore au e whakawhiwhi i a ia hei te rā whakamutunga.

29 Nō reira ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Haere; ā, ko te tangata e hara nei ki ahau, ko ia tā koutou e whakawā ai e rite nei ki ana hara kua meatia e ia; ā, mēnā ka whāki atu ia i ana hara ki mua i a koutou me ahau, me te rīpenetā i runga i te tapatahi o tōna ngākau, māu ana hara e muru, ā, māku anō ana hara e muru.

30 Āe rā, i ngā wā katoa e rīpenetā ai taku iwi, māku e muru ō rātou hē e hē ai rātou ki ahau.

31 Ā, mā koutou anō e muru i ō koutou hē tētahi ki tētahi; nā te mea he pono tāku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko te tangata e kore nei e muru i ngā hē o tana kiritata i te wā e kī ai ia kei te rīpenetā ia, ko ia anō kua tōia mai ki runga i a ia te whakahētanga.

32 Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Haere; ā, ko te tangata e kore nei e rīpenetā i ōna hara ko ia anō e kore nei e taturia i waenganui i taku iwi; ā, ka whāia tēnei nō nāianeī, ā, haere ake nei.

33 Ā, i pahawa ake i te wā i rongō ai a Arami i ēnei kupu ka tuhia iho ēnā e ia kia mau tonu ai ēnā i a ia, ā, kia whakawākia e ia ngā tāngata o taua hāhi e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.

For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world; for it is I that hath created them; and it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

For behold, in my name are they called; and if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

And it shall come to pass that when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

And then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

And then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

Therefore I say unto you, that he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

Therefore I say unto you, Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed; and if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

Yea, and as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

And ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses; for verily I say unto you, he that forgiveth not his neighbor's trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

Now I say unto you, Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people; and this shall be observed from this time forward.

And it came to pass when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

- 34     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere a Arami, ā, ka whakawākia te hunga kua mau i roto i te hara, e ai ki te kupu a te Ariki.
- 35     Ā, ko ngā tāngata i rīpenetā ai i ō rātou hara me te whāki atu i ēnā, ko rātou i taturia e ia i waenganui i te iwi o te hāhi;
- 36     Ā, ko te hunga kīhai i whāki atu i ō rātou hara me te rīpenetā i ō rātou hē, ko rātou anō kīhai i taturia i waenganui i te iwi o te hāhi, ā, kua mukua ō rātou ingoa.
- 37     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakatikatika a Arami i ngā take katoa o te hāhi; ā, ka tīmata anō te rangimārie me te kake nui i ngā take o te hāhi, e āta hīkoi ana i te aroaro o te Atua, e whakawhiwhi ana i te tokomaha, ā, e rumakina ana te tokomaha.
- 38     Ināianeī ā, koinei mea katoa i mea ai a Arami me āna hoa mahi i runga nei i te hāhi, e hīkoi ana i te ngākau ū katoa, e whakaako ana i te kupu a te Atua i roto i ngā mea katoa, e pāngia ana e ngā tūmomo mamaetanga katoa, e whakahāweangia ana e te hunga katoa ehara nō te hāhi o te Atua.
- 39     Ā, ka whakatūpato rātou i ō rātou teina; ā, i whakatūpatoria anō hoki rātou, tēnā me tēnā e te kupu a te Atua, e pērā ana ki ōna hara, ki ngā hara rānei kua meatia e ia, kua whakahaua e te Atua kia inoi tonu me te tuku whakawhetai i roto i ngā mea katoa.

And it came to pass that Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

And whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

And those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

And it came to pass that Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; and they began again to have peace and to prosper exceedingly in the affairs of the church, walking circumspectly before God, receiving many, and baptizing many.

And now all these things did Alma and his fellow laborers do who were over the church, walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those who did not belong to the church of God.

And they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

## Mōhia 27

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka nui rawa ngā taunutanga i taunuhia ai te hāhi e te hunga whakapono kore nā konā tīmata ai te hāhi ki te komekome me te amuamu ki ō rātou kaiārahi e pā ana ki tēnei take; ā, i amuamu rātou ki a Arami. Ā, ka whakatakotoria e Arami te take i te aroaro o tō rātou kīngi, a Mōhia. Ā, ka kōrerorero tahi a Mōhia ki ana tohunga.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tukuna e kīngi Mōhia tētahi whakapuakitanga puta noa i te whenua taiāwhio noa kia kaua tētahi o te hunga whakapono kore e taunu ai i te hunga nō te hāhi o te Atua.
- 3 Ā, kua puta tētahi whakahau mārō puta noa i te whenua ki ngā hāhi katoa kia kaua tētahi taunutanga i waenganui i a rātou, kia tau ai tētahi mana ōritetanga i waenganui i a rātou;
- 4 Kia kaua rātou e tuku i tētahi whakapehapeha, i tētahi wairua whakakake rānei ki te whakararu i tō rātou rangimārie; kia whaiwhakaaro nui ia tangata, ia tangata ki tōna kiritata anō nei ko ia anō, e mahi ana ki ō rātou ringaringa ake mō ō rātou oranga.
- 5 Āe rā, me mahi ō rātou tohunga me ō rātou kaiako katoa ki ō rātou ake ringaringa mō ō rātou oranga, i ngā āhuatanga katoa hāunga te wā e māuiui ana rātou, i te pōharatanga rānei; ā, i runga i te mahinga i ēnei mea, ka toko tonu ake te aroha noa o te Atua i a rātou.
- 6 Ā, ka tīmata te rangimārie nui i te whenua; ā, ka tokomaha haere te iwi, ā, ka tīmata te marara haere i runga i te mata o te whenua, āe rā, i te raki me te tonga, ā, i te rāwhiti me te uru, e hanga ana i ngā pā nunui me ngā papakāinga i ngā wāhi katoa o te whenua.
- 7 Ā, i torona atu rātou, ā, i manaakitia rātou e te Atua, ā, ka meinga rātou hei iwi nunui, ā, hei iwi whairawa.

## Mosiah 27

And now it came to pass that the persecutions which were inflicted on the church by the unbelievers became so great that the church began to murmur, and complain to their leaders concerning the matter; and they did complain to Alma. And Alma laid the case before their king, Mosiah. And Mosiah consulted with his priests.

And it came to pass that king Mosiah sent a proclamation throughout the land round about that there should not any unbeliever persecute any of those who belonged to the church of God.

And there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

Yea, and all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

And there began to be much peace again in the land; and the people began to be very numerous, and began to scatter abroad upon the face of the earth, yea, on the north and on the south, on the east and on the west, building large cities and villages in all quarters of the land.

And the Lord did visit them and prosper them, and they became a large and wealthy people.

- 8 Nā, i taturia iho ngā tama a Mōhia i waenganui i te hunga whakapono kore; ā, i taturia anōtia tētahi a ngā tama a Arami i waenganui i a rātou, kua huaina nei ko Arami, mō tōna matua; hei aha koa, i meinga ia hei tangata whakarihariha, ā, hei tangata karakia ki ngā whakapakoko. Ā, he tangata kaha ia ki te kōrero, ā, i nui tana kōrero whakapatipati ki te iwi; nō reira, i ārahina e ia ngā tāngata tokomaha ki te whaiwhai i ōna tūmomo hara.
- 9 Ā, ka meinga ia hei mea whakararuraru nui ki te tupuranga o te hāhi o te Atua; e whānako ana i ngā ngākau o te iwi; nāna nei ngā tītorehanga nui i roto i te iwi; e tukua ana tētahi huarahi mō te hoariri o te Atua kia whakamahia tōna mana ki runga i a rātou.
- 10 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a ia e haere ana ki te whakangaro i te hāhi o te Atua, nā te mea i haere huna atu ia me ngā tama a Mōhia e whaiwhai ana ki te whakangaro i te hāhi, me te ārahi kōtiti kē atu i te iwi o te Ariki, kia rerekē ai i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, a te kīngi pū anō rānei—
- 11 Ā, e pērā ana i tāku i kī atu ai ki a koutou, i a rātou e haere ana, e tutū ana ki te Atua, nana, ka puta te anahera a te Ariki ki a rātou; ā, ka heke iho ia me te mea nei i roto i tētahi kapua; ā, ka kōrero ia anō nei he reo whatitiri, ka whakangāueuetia te whenua i tū ai rātou;
- 12 Ā, anō te nui o tō rātou mīharo, nā, ka hinga rātou ki te whenua, ā, kīhai i mārāma ki ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e ia ki a rātou.
- 13 Hei aha koa ka karanga anō ia, e mea ana: E Arami, e ara, e tū ki runga, he aha koe e taunu ai i te hāhi o te Atua? Nā te mea kua kī mai te Ariki: Nāku tēnei hāhi, ā, māku ia e whakapūmau; ā, kāore tētahi mea e turaki i a ia, hāunga ko te hē o tōku iwi.
- 14 Hei āpiti anō, ka kī te anahera: Nana, kua rongō te Ariki i ngā inoi o tōna iwi me ngā inoi hoki o tana pononga, a Arami, ko ia nei tō matua; nā te mea kua inoi nui ia i runga i te whakapono nui e pā ana ki a koe kia kūmea mai ai koe ki te mātauranga o te pono; nō reira, mō tēnei take au i haere mai ai ki te whakapakepake i a koe mō te kaha me te mana o te Atua, kia whakautua ngā inoi o ana pononga e ai ki tō rātou whakapono.

Now the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man. And he was a man of many words, and did speak much flattery to the people; therefore he led many of the people to do after the manner of his iniquities.

And he became a great hinderment to the prosperity of the church of God; stealing away the hearts of the people; causing much dissension among the people; giving a chance for the enemy of God to exercise his power over them.

And now it came to pass that while he was going about to destroy the church of God, for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God, or even the king—

And as I said unto you, as they were going about rebelling against God, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud; and he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

And so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

Nevertheless he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God? For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

And again, the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth; therefore, for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.



15 Ināianeī ā nana, ka taea e koe te whakakāhore i te mana o te Atua? Nana rā, kāore ianeī rānei te whenua e ngāueue nei i tōku reo? Ā, kāore rānei e taea ana e koe te kite mai i ahau i mua i a koe? Ā, kua tonoa au e te Atua.

16 Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe: Haere, maharatia te hereheretanga o ō tūpuna matua i te whenua o Herama, i te whenua o Niwhai hoki; ā maharatia ngā mea nunui kua mahia e ia mō rātou; nā te mea i te hereheretanga rātou, ā, kua whakaputaina mai rātou e ia. Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, e Arami, e haere i tō huarahi, ā, kauaka koe e whai tonu ki te whakangaro i te hāhi, kia whakautua ā rātou inoi, ā, kia pēneitia ahakoa e pai ana ki a koe kia ākiritia atu koe.

17 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, koinei ngā kupu whakamutunga i kōrerotia ai e te anahera ki a Arami, ā, ka wehe atu ia.

18 Ināianeī ā, ka hinga anō a Arami rātou ko te hunga i reira ki te whenua, nā te mea he nui tō rātou mīharo; nā te mea kua kitea e ō rātou ake karu tētahi anahera o te Ariki; ā, ko tōna reo anō nei ko te whatitiri, i whakangāueuetia nei te whenua; ā, i te mōhio rātou kāore tētahi mea hāunga ko te kaha o te Atua e taea ana te whakangāueue i te whenua me te tūioioi anō nei ka wāwāhi rua.

19 Ināianeī ā, ka reokore a Arami i te nui o tōna mīharo, nā, kihai i taea e ia tōna māngai te tūwhera; āe rā, ka ngoikore ia, tē taea e ia ōna ringaringa te korikori; nō reira ka kawea atu ia e te hunga i reira, ā, i kawea kahakoretia atu, tae atu ki tana whakatakotoranga i te aroaro o tōna matua.

20 Ā, ka takina e rātou ngā mea katoa i pā ai ki a rātou ki tōna matua; ā, ka hari tōna matua, nā te mea i mōhio ia ko te kaha tērā o te Atua.

21 Ā, ka meatia e ia kia huihui ngātahitia tētahi whakaminenga e kite ai rātou he aha tā te Ariki mō tana tama, mō te hunga i reira anō hoki.

22 Ā, ka meatia e ia kia huihui ngātahi anō hoki ngā tohunga i a rātou anō; ā, ka tīmata tā rātou nohopuku, me tā rātou inoi ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua kia whakatūwheratia ai te māngai o Arami, kia kōrero ai ia, ā, kia whiwhi kaha anō ōna pepeke—kia whakatūwheratia ai ngā karu o te iwi e kite ai, ā, e mōhio ai i te painga me te korōria o te Atua.

And now behold, can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth? And can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

Now I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi; and remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them. And now I say unto thee, Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

And now it came to pass that these were the last words which the angel spake unto Alma, and he departed.

And now Alma and those that were with him fell again to the earth, for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord; and his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth; and they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

And now the astonishment of Alma was so great that he became dumb, that he could not open his mouth; yea, and he became weak, even that he could not move his hands; therefore he was taken by those that were with him, and carried helpless, even until he was laid before his father.

And they rehearsed unto his father all that had happened unto them; and his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

And he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

And he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together; and they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God that he would open the mouth of Alma, that he might speak, and also that his limbs might receive their strength—that the eyes of the people might be opened to see and know of the goodness and glory of God.

23     Ā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tā rātou  
nohopukutanga me tā rātou inoitanga mō te takiwā o  
ngā rā e rua me ngā pō e rua, ka whiwhi kaha ngā  
pepeke o Arami, ā, ka tū ake ia, ā, ka tīmata ia ki te  
kōrero atu ki a rātou, e tonoa ana rātou kia tau ai te  
mauri:

24     Nā, ka kī ia, kua rīpenetā au i ōku hara, ā, kua  
hokona e te Ariki; nana kua whānau mai au i te  
Wairua.

25     Ā, ka kī mai te Ariki ki ahau: Kua e mīharo ki  
tēnei mea, āe rā, me whānau mai anō ngā tāngata  
katoa, arā, ko ngā tāne me ngā wāhine, ngā iwi, ngā  
hapū, ngā reo me ngā tāngata; āe rā, kia whānau mai  
i te Atua, kua tīnia i tō rātou āhuatanga kikokiko, i tō  
rātou āhuatanga taka, ki tētahi āhuatanga o te tika,  
kua hokona e te Atua, e meinga ana hei tama, hei  
tamāhine māna;

26     Ā, ka meinga pēnei hei mea hou; ā, ki te kore  
rātou e pēnei, kua kore rawa rātou e āhei te whiwhi  
ki te kīngitanga o te Atua.

27     Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, ki te kore e pēneitia,  
me ākiri atu rātou; ā, e mōhio ana ahau i tēnei, nā te  
mea whano ka ākiritia atu ahau.

28     Hei aha koa, i muri iho i te kautūtanga i roto i ngā  
pāweratanga maha, e rīpenetā tata pū ana ki te mate,  
ka pai te Ariki ki te tākiri i ahau i runga i te aroha i  
tētahi weranga mutunga kore, ā, kua whānau mai au  
i te Atua.

29     Kua hokona tōku wairua mai i te au o te kawa me  
ngā herenga o te hara. I te poka pōuriuri rawa atu  
au; engari ināianei kei te kite au i te māramatanga  
mīharo o te Atua. I whakamamaetia tōku wairua ki  
te whakamamaetanga tonutanga; engari kua  
tākiritia au, ā, kāore tōku wairua i te mamae.

30     Nāku tōku Kaihoko i whakaparahako, ā, i  
whakaparahakotia ērā kua kōrerotia e ō tātou  
tūpuna matua; engari ināianei e taea ana e rātou te  
matakite, nā, ka haere mai ia, ā, e mahara ana ia i  
ngā mea katoa nāna nei i hanga, ka whakakite ia i a  
ia anō ki te katoa.

And it came to pass after they had fasted and  
prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the  
limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood  
up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be  
of good comfort:

For, said he, I have repented of my sins, and have  
been redeemed of the Lord; behold I am born of the  
Spirit.

And the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all  
mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kin-  
dreds, tongues and people, must be born again; yea,  
born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen  
state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of  
God, becoming his sons and daughters;

And thus they become new creatures; and unless  
they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom  
of God.

I say unto you, unless this be the case, they must  
be cast off; and this I know, because I was like to be  
cast off.

Nevertheless, after wading through much tribula-  
tion, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy  
hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burn-  
ing, and I am born of God.

My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bit-  
terness and bonds of iniquity. I was in the darkest  
abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God.  
My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am  
snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which  
had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they  
may foresee that he will come, and that he remem-  
bereth every creature of his creating, he will make  
himself manifest unto all.

- 31 Āe rā, ka piko ngā turi katoa, ā, ka whāki ngā arero katoa i mua i tōna aroaro. Āe rā, hei te rā whakamutunga pū anō, ina tū ngā tāngata katoa kia whakawākia ai e ia, kātahi rātou ka whāki atu ko ia te Atua; kātahi rātou ka whāki atu, e noho Atua kore ana i te ao, nā, kua tau iho tētahi whakawhiunga mutunga kore tika ki runga i a rātou; ā, ka tūioioi rātou, ā, ka tūwiriwiri, ā, ka memenge iho i te rarapa o tōna karu hāhau-katoa.
- 32 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata a Arami i tēnei wā haere ake ki te whakaako i te iwi, me te hunga i reira i te taha i a Arami i te wā i puta mai ai te anahera ki a rātou, e haere huri noa ana i te whenua, e whakapuakina ana ki ngā tāngata katoa ngā mea i rongō ai rātou me ngā mea i kite ai rātou, me te kauhau i te kupu a te Atua i roto i ngā whakapāweratanga maha, i te taunutia nuitia e te hunga whakapono kore, e pākia ana e te tokomaha o rātou.
- 33 Engari ahakoa tēnei katoa, ka whakamārietia nuitia te hāhi e rātou, e whakaū ana i tō rātou whakapono, ā, e akiaki ana i a rātou i runga i te manawa-roa me te mamae nui ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.
- 34 Ā, he tama nā Mōhia ngā mea tokowhā o rātou; ā, ko ō rātou ingoa ko Amona, me Arona, me Omona, me Himini; koinei ngā ingoa o ngā tama a Mōhia.
- 35 Ā, ka haere huri noa atu rātou i te whenua katoa o Harahemara, ā, i waenganui i te iwi katoa e noho ana i raro i te whakahaeretanga a kīngi Mōhia, e kaha ngana ana ki te whakatikatika i ngā tūnga i mahia e rātou ki te hāhi, e whāki ana i ō rātou hara katoa, ā, e whakapuaki ana i ngā mea katoa i kite ai rātou, ā, e whakamāramahia ana ngā poropititanga me ngā karaipiture ki ngā mea katoa i hiahia ai ki te whakarongo ki a rātou.
- 36 Ā, i riro pēnei rātou hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua i te mauranga mai i te tini ki tētahi mātauranga mō te pono, āe rā, ki te mātauranga mō tō rātou Kaihoko.
- 37 Ā, anō tō rātou manaakitanga nui! Nā te mea i whakapuaki rātou i te rangimārie; i whakapuakina e rātou te rongō whakahari o te pai; ā, i whakapuakina e rātou ki te iwi, nā, e whakahaere ana te Ariki.

Yea, every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him. Yea, even at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

And now it came to pass that Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them, traveling round about through all the land, publishing to all the people the things which they had heard and seen, and preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

But notwithstanding all this, they did impart much consolation to the church, confirming their faith, and exhorting them with long-suffering and much travail to keep the commandments of God.

And four of them were the sons of Mosiah; and their names were Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni; these were the names of the sons of Mosiah.

And they traveled throughout all the land of Zarahemla, and among all the people who were under the reign of king Mosiah, zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

And thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

And how blessed are they! For they did publish peace; they did publish good tidings of good; and they did declare unto the people that the Lord reigneth.

## Mōhia 28

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā ngā tama a Mōhia mahi i ēnei mea katoa, ka haere tahi me tētahi ope tokoiti, ā, ka hoki atu ki tō rātou matua, te kīngi, ā, i te hiahia rātou kia tukuna rātou ko taua ope tokoiti kua kōwhiria e rātou, kia haere ake ki te whenua o Nīwhai e kauhau ai rātou i ngā mea i rongō ai, ā, e wāwāhi atu anō ai i te kupu a te Atua ki ō rātou tuākana, ngā Rāmāna—
- 2 Nā, me kore pea rātou e kukume ai i a rātou ki te mātauranga o te Ariki tō rātou Atua, me te whakapakepake i a rātou mō ngā hara o ō rātou tūpuna matua; ā, kia rongōatia ai rātou mai i tō rātou mauāhara ki ngā Nīwhai, kia kukume ai i a rātou kia hari ai i roto i te Ariki tō rātou Atua, kia whakahoahoa tētahi i tētahi, ā, kia kore tonu he tautohetohenga i runga i te whenua katoa kua homai nei e te Ariki tō rātou Atua ki a rātou.
- 3 Nā, i te hiahia rātou kia whakapuakina ai te whakaoranga ki ngā mea katoa, nā te mea kāore ō rātou ngoi kia tukuna kia ngaro noa tētahi wairua tangata; āe rā, ka oioi, ā, ka ngāueue rātou i te whakaaro kau ki te whakamamaetanga mutunga kore o tētahi wairua.
- 4 Ā, i pēnei te mahi a te Wairua o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou, nā te mea he kaiharā kikino rawa atu rātou. Ā, i pai te Ariki i runga i tōna whakaaroha mutunga kore kia tohungia ai rātou; hei aha koa he nui tō rātou mamae ā-wairua nā ō rātou hara, e mamae ana, ā, e wehi ana kei ākiritia atu rātou mō āke tonu atu.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i inoi ake rātou ki tō rātou matua mō ngā rā maha kia haere ake rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai.
- 6 Ā, ka haere a kīngi Mōhia, ā, ka uia atu te Ariki mēnā rānei me tuku atu e ia āna tama kia haere ake ki waenganui i ngā Rāmāna ki te kauhau i te kupu.
- 7 Ā, ka kī te Ariki ki a Mōhia: Tukuna rātou kia haere ake, nā te mea ka whakapono ngā mea tokomaha ki ā rātou kupu, ā, ka whiwhi rātou i te oranga tonutanga; ā, māku āu tama e whakaputa i ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmāna.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakaae a Mōhia kia haere atu rātou, ā, kia mahia ai e ai ki tā rātou tonu.

## Mosiah 28

Now it came to pass that after the sons of Mosiah had done all these things, they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king, and desired of him that he would grant unto them that they might, with these whom they had selected, go up to the land of Nephi that they might preach the things which they had heard, and that they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites—

That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers; and that perhaps they might cure them of their hatred towards the Nephites, that they might also be brought to rejoice in the Lord their God, that they might become friendly to one another, and that there should be no more contentions in all the land which the Lord their God had given them.

Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

And thus did the Spirit of the Lord work upon them, for they were the very vilest of sinners. And the Lord saw fit in his infinite mercy to spare them; nevertheless they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

And it came to pass that they did plead with their father many days that they might go up to the land of Nephi.

And king Mosiah went and inquired of the Lord if he should let his sons go up among the Lamanites to preach the word.

And the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Mosiah granted that they might go and do according to their request.

- 9     Ā, ka whakatika atu tā rātou haere ki roto i te koraha kia haere ake ai ki te kauhau i te kupu ki waenganui i ngā Rāmāna; ā, māku tētahi kōrero e tuku mō ā rātou whakahaeretanga ā muri ake nei.
- 10    Nā, kāore i reira tētahi tangata mō kīngi Mōhia hei whakatau iho i te kīngitanga, nā te mea kāore kau āna tama i whakaae ai māna te kīngitanga.
- 11    Nō reira ka mau ia ki ngā tuinga kua whaowhaoa i runga i ngā papa parāhe, me ngā papa a Nīwhai, me ngā mea katoa kua puritia, ā, kua tiakina e ia e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, nō muri mai i tana whakamāori me tana meatanga kia tuhia ai ngā kōrero i runga i ngā papa kōura kua rapua e te iwi o Rimihī, kua tukuna ki a ia e te ringa o Rimihī;
- 12    Ā, i pēnei ia i te nui o te mānukanuka o tana iwi; nā te mea i te mutunga kē mai o te nui o tō rātou hiahia kia mōhio ai e pā ana ki ērā tāngata kua whakangaromia.
- 13    Ināianeī ā, nāna ērā i whakamāori mā aua kōhatu kua herea i roto i ngā porohita o te kōpere.
- 14    Nā, i whakaritea ēnei mea mai i te tīmatanga, ā, i tukuna iho mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi whakatipuranga, hei whakamāori i ngā reo;
- 15    Ā, kua puritia, ā, kua tiakina e te ringa o te Ariki, kia whakakite ia ki ngā mea katoa e nōhia ai te whenua i ngā hara me ngā mōrikarika o tōna iwi;
- 16    Ā, ka karangatia te tangata kei a ia ēnei mea he matakite, i runga i ngā ritenga o ngā wā onamata.
- 17    Nā, nō muri iho i tā Mōhia whakaoti i tana whakamāori i ēnei tuinga, nana, i whakaaturia mai i reira tētahi kōrero mō te iwi i whakangaromia ai, mai i te wā i whakangaromia ai rātou tae ake ki te hanganga o te pourewa nunui, i te wā i whakapōauautia e te Ariki te reo o te iwi, ā, ka whakamararatia rātou i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, āe rā, mai i tērā wā pū anō tae ake ki te hanganga o Arama.
- 18    Nā, ka tangi rawa te iwi o Mōhia nā tēnei tuinga, āe rā, i kīkī rātou i te pōuri; hei aha koa nā ēnā mea i whiwhi ai rātou i tētahi mātauranga nui, nā konā i hari ai rātou.

And they took their journey into the wilderness to go up to preach the word among the Lamanites; and I shall give an account of their proceedings hereafter.

Now king Mosiah had no one to confer the kingdom upon, for there was not any of his sons who would accept of the kingdom.

Therefore he took the records which were engraved on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

And this he did because of the great anxiety of his people; for they were desirous beyond measure to know concerning those people who had been destroyed.

And now he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

Now after Mosiah had finished translating these records, behold, it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people and they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth, yea, and even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

Now this account did cause the people of Mosiah to mourn exceedingly, yea, they were filled with sorrow; nevertheless it gave them much knowledge, in the which they did rejoice.

19     Ā, ka tuhia tēnei tuhinga ā kō ake nei; nana rā, he tika pū anō kia mōhio ai ngā tāngata katoa ki ngā mea kua tuhia i tēnei tuhinga.

20     Ināianeī ā, he pērā me tāku i kī atu ai ki a koutou, nā, nō muri iho i tā kīngi Mōhia mahi i ēnei mea, ka mau ia ki ngā papa parāhe, me ngā mea katoa nāna nei i tiaki, ā, ka whakataua iho ki runga i a Arami, koia te tama a Arami; āe rā, ko ngā tuhinga katoa, me ngā taputapu whakamāori anō hoki, ā, ka whakataua iho ki runga i a ia me te whakahau i a ia kia puritia, ā, kia tiakina ēnā me te tuhi anō i tētahi tuhinga mō te iwi, e tukuna iho ana mai i tētahi whakatipuranga ki tētahi atu whakatipuranga, pērā i te tukunga ihotanga mai i te wā i wehe atu a Rīhai i Hiruharama.

And this account shall be written hereafter; for behold, it is expedient that all people should know the things which are written in this account.

And now, as I said unto you, that after king Mosiah had done these things, he took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

## Mōhia 29

- 1 Nā, i te wā i mahi pēnei a Mōhia ka tukuna atu puta noa i te whenua, ki waenganui i te iwi katoa, e hiahia ana kia mōhio he aha tā rātou e pai ai hei kīngi mō rātou.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka puta mai te reo o te iwi, e mea ana: E hiahia ana mātou kia tū ai tāu tama a Arona hei kīngi, ā, hei kaiwhakahaere mō mātou.
- 3 Nā, kua haere ake a Arona ki te whenua o Nīwhai, nō reira kīhai i taea e te kīngi te whakatau iho i te kīngitanga ki runga i a ia; kīhai rānei a Arona i whakaae kia tangohia ake te kīngitanga ki runga i a ia; kīhai rānei tētahi o ngā tama a Mōhia i whakaae kia tangohia ake ki runga i a rātou te kīngitanga.
- 4 Nō reira ka tuku kupu atu anō a kīngi Mōhia ki waenganui i te iwi; āe rā, he kupu kua tuhia pū anō ki waenganui i te iwi. Ā, koinei ngā kupu i tuhia ai, e mea ana:
- 5 Nana, E koutou tōku iwi, ōku teina rānei, nā te mea e whakaarohia pērāhia ana koutou e ahau, e hiahia ana ahau kia whakaarohia te take kua karangatia koutou hei whakaaro—nā te mea e hiahia ana koutou ki tētahi kīngi.
- 6 Nā, e whakapuaki ana ahau ki a koutou, nā, kua whakakorengia e te tangata tika mōna te kīngitanga, ā, kāore ia e tangohia ake ki runga i a ia te kīngitanga.
- 7 Ināianeī ā, mehemea ka whakatauhia tētahi atu hei whakakapi mōna, nana e matakū ana ahau kei rewa ake ngā ngangaretanga i waenganui i a koutou. Ā, ko wai ka mōhio tērā pea taku tama, mōna nei te kīngitanga, ka tahuri ki te riri me te kukume atu i tētahi wāhi o te iwi ki a ia, mā konā tū ai ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga i waenganui i a koutou, mā reira whakaheke ai ngā toto nunui me te whakapeau i te huarahi a te Ariki, āe rā, ka whakangaromia ngā wairua o ngā tāngata tokomaha.
- 8 Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kia whai whakaaro tātou, ā, kia whakaarohia ēnei mea, nā te mea ehara i te tika mō tātou kia whakangaromia taku tama, ehara rānei i te tika mō tātou kia whakangaromia tētahi mēnā kua whakataua ia hei whakakapi mōna.

## Mosiah 29

Now when Mosiah had done this he sent out throughout all the land, among all the people, desiring to know their will concerning who should be their king.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: We are desirous that Aaron thy son should be our king and our ruler.

Now Aaron had gone up to the land of Nephi, therefore the king could not confer the kingdom upon him; neither would Aaron take upon him the kingdom; neither were any of the sons of Mosiah willing to take upon them the kingdom.

Therefore king Mosiah sent again among the people; yea, even a written word sent he among the people. And these were the words that were written, saying:

Behold, O ye my people, or my brethren, for I esteem you as such, I desire that ye should consider the cause which ye are called to consider—for ye are desirous to have a king.

Now I declare unto you that he to whom the kingdom doth rightly belong has declined, and will not take upon him the kingdom.

And now if there should be another appointed in his stead, behold I fear there would rise contentions among you. And who knoweth but what my son, to whom the kingdom doth belong, should turn to be angry and draw away a part of this people after him, which would cause wars and contentions among you, which would be the cause of shedding much blood and perverting the way of the Lord, yea, and destroy the souls of many people.

Now I say unto you let us be wise and consider these things, for we have no right to destroy my son, neither should we have any right to destroy another if he should be appointed in his stead.

- 9     Ā, mēnā ka tahuri atu anō taku tama ki tōna whakapehapeha me ngā mea tekateka ka whakakore ia i ngā mea kua kōrerotia e ia kātahi ka totohe i tōna take tika ki te kīngitanga, mā reira hoki ia me ana tāngata e mahi ai i ngā hara nunui.
- 10     Ināianeī ā, kia whai whakaaro tātou me te titiro whakamua ki ēnei mea, ā, kia meatia taua mea e rangimārie ai tēnei iwi.
- 11     Nō reira māku hei kīngi mō koutou mō te toenga o ōku rā; hei aha koa, kia whakatūria e tātou ngā kaiwhakawā, kia whakawākia ai tēnei iwi e ai ki tō tātou ture; ā, ka whakaritea houtia ngā take o tēnei iwi, nā te mea ka whakatūria e tātou ngā tāngata whai whakaaro hei kaiwhakawā e whakawā ai i tēnei iwi e ai ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.
- 12     Nā, he pai ake tā te Atua whakawā i te tangata i tā te tangata, nā te mea he tika ngā whakawākanga a te Atua, engari kāore i te tika ngā whakawākanga a te tangata i ngā wā katoa.
- 13     Nō reira, mehemea e taea ana e koutou he tangata tika hei kīngi mō koutou, e whakapūmau ai ia i ngā ture a te Atua, me te whakawā i tēnei iwi e ai ki ana whakahaunga, āe rā, mehemea e taea ana e koutou he tangata hei kīngi mō koutou e mahi pērā ai i tā tōku matua a Peniamine mō tēnei iwi—ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea e taea ana tēnei i ngā wā katoa kua tika pū anō kia whai kīngi koutou i ngā wā katoa hei whakahaere i runga i a koutou.
- 14     Ā, ko ahau nei anō kua whakapaua e ahau ngā kaha katoa o tōku hinengaro kei roto nei i ahau, ki te whakaako i a koutou i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, me te whakapūmau i te rangimārie puta noa i te whenua, kia kore ai tētahi pakanga, tētahi tautohetohenga, tētahi tāhaetanga, pāhuatanga rānei, kōhurutanga rānei, ētahi tūmomo āhuatanga rānei o te hara;
- 15     Ā, ko te tangata kua mahi nei i te hē, koia tāku i whakawhiu ai e ai ki te hara kua mahia e ia, e ai ki te ture kua homai nei ki a tātou e ō tātou tūpuna matua.
- 16     Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ehara i te tika pū anō kia whai kīngi koutou hei whakahaere i runga i a koutou, nā te mea ehara ngā tāngata katoa i te tika.

And if my son should turn again to his pride and vain things he would recall the things which he had said, and claim his right to the kingdom, which would cause him and also this people to commit much sin.

And now let us be wise and look forward to these things, and do that which will make for the peace of this people.

Therefore I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law; and we will newly arrange the affairs of this people, for we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

Now it is better that a man should be judged of God than of man, for the judgments of God are always just, but the judgments of man are not always just.

Therefore, if it were possible that you could have just men to be your kings, who would establish the laws of God, and judge this people according to his commandments, yea, if ye could have men for your kings who would do even as my father Benjamin did for this people—I say unto you, if this could always be the case then it would be expedient that ye should always have kings to rule over you.

And even I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law which has been given to us by our fathers.

Now I say unto you, that because all men are not just it is not expedient that ye should have a king or kings to rule over you.



- 17 Nana rā, anō te nui o te hē e meatia ai e te kīngi whakarihariha kotahi, āe rā, anō te whakangaromanga nunui anō hoki!
- 18 Āe rā, kia mahara ki a kīngi Noa, ana whakarihariha me ana mōrikarika, ā, ko ngā whakarihariha me ngā mōrikarika o tōna iwi. Nana anō te whakangaromanga nunui i tau ai ki runga i a rātou; nā ō rātou hara anō hoki rātou i kukume iho ki roto i te hereheretanga.
- 19 Ā, me i kore te wawaotanga o tō rātou Kaihanga mōhio-rawa, ā, i pēnei nā tō rātou ripenetātanga pono, me waiho tonu anō rātou i roto i te hereheretanga tae noa mai ki tēnei wā.
- 20 Engari nana, nāna rātou i whakaputa nā te mea i whakaiti rātou i a rātou anō i mua i tōna aroaro; ā, nāna rātou i whakaputa i te hereheretanga nā te mea i kaha tō rātou karanga ki a ia; ā, ka pēnei tā te Ariki mahi i runga i tōna mana i roto i ngā āhuatanga katoa i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, e whātoro atu ana i te ringa whakaaroha ki te hunga e whakawhirinaki ai ki a ia.
- 21 Ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou ināianeī, kāore e taea e koutou te turaki i tētahi kīngi whakarihariha hāunga mā te tautohetohetohe nunui, me te whakahekenga toto nunui.
- 22 Nana rā, kei a ia ōna hoa i te kino, ā, ka piritata anō ōna kaitiaki ki ōna taha; ā, ka tīhaehaetia ake e ia ngā ture o te hunga i whakahaerehia tōtikahia i mua i a ia; ā, ka takahia e ōna waewae ngā whakahaunga a te Atua;
- 23 Ā, ka hanga ture ia, ā, ka tukuna atu ēnā ki waenganui i tōna iwi, āe rā, ko ngā ture nō te āhuatanga o tōna ake whakarihariha; ā, ko te tangata e kore nei e ngohengohe ki ana ture ka meatia e ia kia whakangaromia ai; ā, ko te tangata e tutū ana ki a ia, māna ana ope tauā e tuku atu ki te pakanga ki a rātou, ā, mēnā e taea ana e ia, ka whakangaro ia i a rātou; ā, ka pēnei tā tētahi kīngi kino whakapeau i ngā huarahi katoa o te tika.
- 24 Ināianeī ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore i te tika pū anō kia tau iho ai ētahi mōrikarika pēnā ki runga i a koutou.

For behold, how much iniquity doth one wicked king cause to be committed, yea, and what great destruction!

Yea, remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations, and also the wickedness and abominations of his people. Behold what great destruction did come upon them; and also because of their iniquities they were brought into bondage.

And were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

But behold, he did deliver them because they did humble themselves before him; and because they cried mightily unto him he did deliver them out of bondage; and thus doth the Lord work with his power in all cases among the children of men, extending the arm of mercy towards them that put their trust in him.

And behold, now I say unto you, ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth under his feet the commandments of God;

And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

And now behold I say unto you, it is not expedient that such abominations should come upon you.

- 25 Nō reira, kōwhiria e koutou e te reo o tēnei iwi, he kaiwhakawā, kia whakawākia ai koutou e ai ki ngā ture kua homai kia koutou e ō tātou tūpuna matua, he mea tika ērā, ā, kua homai ki a rātou e te ringa o te Ariki.
- 26 Nā, ehara i te mea he nui ngā wā ka hiahia te reo o te iwi i tētahi mea kē e tauaro ana ki te tika; engari he nui ngā wā ka hiahia te wāhi iti iho o te iwi i tērā kāore nei i te tika; nō reira ka ū koutou ki tēnei, ā, ka whakaturengia hei ture mō koutou—kia mahia ai ā koutou mahi i runga i te reo o te iwi.
- 27 Ā, mehemea ka tae mai te wā e whiriwhiri ai te reo o te iwi i te hē, ko reira te wā ka tau iho ngā whakawākanga o te Atua ki runga i a koutou; āe rā, ko reira te wā ka toro iho ia ki a koutou i runga i te whakangaromanga nunui pērā i tāna toro mai ki tēnei whenua i mua.
- 28 Ināianei ā, mehemea he kaiwhakawā ō koutou, ā, ka kore rātou e whakawā e ai ki te ture kua homai nei, ka meatia rātou e koutou kia whakawākia ai e tētahi kaiwhakawā teitei ake.
- 29 Ki te kore ō koutou kaiwhakawā teitei e whakawā ai i ngā whakawākanga tika, ka meatia e koutou kia whakahuihuia tētahi huinga tokoiti o ō koutou kaiwhakawā i raro iho, ā, mā rātou ō koutou kaiwhakawā teitei e whakawā, e ai ki te reo o te iwi.
- 30 Ā, e whakaae ana ahau ki a koutou kia mahia ai ēnei mea i runga i te wehi ki te Ariki; ā, e whakahau ana ahau ki a koutou kia mahia ai ēnei mea, ā, kia kaua koutou e whai kīngi; nā, mehemea ka hara, ā, ka hē ēnei tāngata ka utua ki runga i ō rātou ake māhunga.
- 31 Nana rā ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kua meatia ngā hara o ngā tāngata tokomaha e ngā hara o ō rātou kīngi; nō reira ka utua ō rātou hara ki runga i ngā māhunga o ō rātou kīngi.
- 32 Ināianei ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia kore tonu tēnei rerekētanga i runga i te whenua, i waenganui rawa i tōku iwi; engari e hiahia ana ahau kia meinga ai tēnei whenua hei whenua herekore, ā, kia taurite te rongo a ngā tāngata katoa i ōna tika me ōna ritenga, mō te wā katoa e pai te Ariki kia noho tonu tātou, ā, kia nōhia e tātou, āe rā, mō te roanga o te wā e noho ana tētahi o ō tātou uri i runga i te mata o te whenua.

Therefore, choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

Now it is not common that the voice of the people desireth anything contrary to that which is right; but it is common for the lesser part of the people to desire that which is not right; therefore this shall ye observe and make it your law—to do your business by the voice of the people.

And if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you; yea, then is the time he will visit you with great destruction even as he has hitherto visited this land.

And now if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

And I command you to do these things in the fear of the Lord; and I command you to do these things, and that ye have no king; that if these people commit sins and iniquities they shall be answered upon their own heads.

For behold I say unto you, the sins of many people have been caused by the iniquities of their kings; therefore their iniquities are answered upon the heads of their kings.

And now I desire that this inequality should be no more in this land, especially among this my people; but I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land, yea, even as long as any of our posterity remains upon the face of the land.

- 33     Ā, he maha atu anō ngā mea i tuhia ai e kīngi Mōhia ki a rātou, e whakaatu atu ana ki a rātou i ngā uauatanga me ngā raruraru katoa a te kīngi tika, āe rā, i ngā uaua katoa o tō rātou iwi, me ngā amuamu anō hoki o te iwi ki tō rātou kīngi; ā, nāna katoa i whakamārama atu ki a rātou.
- 34     Ā, i kī atu ia ki a rātou, nā, e tika ana kia kauaka ai ēnei mea; engari kia tau iho ai te pīkaunga ki runga i te iwi katoa, kia waha ia tangata, ia tangata i tōna wāhi.
- 35     Ā, i whakaatuhia atu anō e ia ki a rātou ngā taumahatanga i runga i a rātou i a rātou e mahi ana, nā tō rātou kīngi kino i whakahaere ai i runga i a rātou;
- 36     Āe rā, ko ōna hē me ōna mōrikarika katoa, me ngā pakanga katoa, me ngā tautohetohenga, me te whakahekenga toto, me te whānakotanga, me ngā pāhuatanga, me te mahi i ngā mahi pūremu, me ngā tūmomo hara katoa tē taea te whakahua—e kī atu ana ki a rātou e tika ana kia kauaka ēnei mea, nā, he tino wetiweti ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.
- 37     Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nō muri iho i tā kīngi Mōhia tukunga whakamuatanga atu i ēnei mea ki waenganui i te iwi, i whakapakepakehia rātou i te pono o ana kupu.
- 38     Nō reira, ka tukua ki raro ā rātou hiahia mō tētahi kīngi, ā, ka hiahia nui rātou kia rite ai te tikanga mō ia tangata, mō ia tangata puta noa i te whenua katoa; āe rā, i kōrerotia ake ia tangata, ia tangata i tōna hiahia kia utua ia mō ōna ake hara.
- 39     Nō reira, i pahawa ake, nā, i huihui rātou i a rātou anō i ngā huihuinga puta noa i te whenua, kia whiua ō rātou reo e pā ana ki ngā tangata e tū ai hei kaiwhakawā mō rātou, kia whakawākia ai rātou e ai ki te ture kua homai nei ki a rātou; ā, i te tino harikoa rawa atu rātou nā te herekoretanga kua tukuna ki a rātou.

And many more things did king Mosiah write unto them, unfolding unto them all the trials and troubles of a righteous king, yea, all the travails of soul for their people, and also all the murmurings of the people to their king; and he explained it all unto them.

And he told them that these things ought not to be; but that the burden should come upon all the people, that every man might bear his part.

And he also unfolded unto them all the disadvantages they labored under, by having an unrighteous king to rule over them;

Yea, all his iniquities and abominations, and all the wars, and contentions, and bloodshed, and the stealing, and the plundering, and the committing of whoredoms, and all manner of iniquities which cannot be enumerated—telling them that these things ought not to be, that they were expressly repugnant to the commandments of God.

And now it came to pass, after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people they were convinced of the truth of his words.

Therefore they relinquished their desires for a king, and became exceedingly anxious that every man should have an equal chance throughout all the land; yea, and every man expressed a willingness to answer for his own sins.

Therefore, it came to pass that they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them; and they were exceedingly rejoiced because of the liberty which had been granted unto them.

40     Ā, ka hira noa ake tō rātou aroha ki a Mōhia; āe rā, kāore he tangata kē atu i whakaarohia paitia ake e rātou; nā te mea kāore rātou i titiro atu ki a ia me te mea nei he rangatira nanakia e whaiwhai taonga ana, āe rā, mō taua taonga kino e whakakino nei i te wairua; nā te mea kihai ia i tonono taonga i a rātou, kihai rānei ia i āhuareka ki te whakahaekenga toto; engari nāna te rangimārie i whakapūmau ai i runga i te whenua, ā, nāna i tuku ki tana iwi kia whakaputaina ai rātou i ngā tūmomo hereheretanga katoa; nō reira i whakaaro nuitia ia e rātou, āe rā, i tino nui rawa atu, kāore e taea te mehua.

41     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakarite rātou i ngā kaiwhakawā hei whakahaere i runga i a rātou, hei whakawā rānei i a rātou e ai ki te ture; ā, i pēnei tā rātou i mahi ai puta noa i te whenua.

42     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko Arami te mea tuatahi i whakaritea hei kaiwhakawā nui, koia hoki te tohunga teitei, kua whakataua iho te karangatanga e tana matua ki runga i a ia, ā, kua hoatu ki a ia te mana e pā ana ki ngā āhuatanga katoa o te hāhi.

43     Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hīkoi a Arami i ngā huarahi o te Ariki, ā, i pupuri ia i āna whakahaunga, ā, nāna ngā whakawākanga tika i whakawā ai; ā, i mau tonu te rangimārie i te whenua.

44     Ā, ko te tīmatatanga tēnei o te whakahaeretanga o ngā kaiwhakawā puta noa i te whenua a Harahemara, i waenganui i te iwi katoa kua karangatia ko ngā Nīwhai; ā, ko Arami te tuatahi o ngā kaiwhakawā nui.

45     Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mate tōna matua, kua waru tekau mā rua tau te pakeke, kua ū tana whakatutuki i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua i a ia e ora ana.

46     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mate anō hoki a Mōhia, i te toru tekau mā toru tau o tana whakahaere, kua ono tekau mā toru tau te pakeke; ko te takiwā katoa ia, ko te rima rau mā iwa o ngā tau mai i te wā i wehe atu ai a Rīhai i Hiruharama.

47     Ā, i pēnei te mutunga o te whakahaeretanga o ngā kīngi i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai; ā, i pēnei te mutunga o ngā rā o Arami, koia te kaiwhakapūmau o tō rātou hāhi.

And they did wax strong in love towards Mosiah; yea, they did esteem him more than any other man; for they did not look upon him as a tyrant who was seeking for gain, yea, for that lucre which doth corrupt the soul; for he had not exacted riches of them, neither had he delighted in the shedding of blood; but he had established peace in the land, and he had granted unto his people that they should be delivered from all manner of bondage; therefore they did esteem him, yea, exceedingly, beyond measure.

And it came to pass that they did appoint judges to rule over them, or to judge them according to the law; and this they did throughout all the land.

And it came to pass that Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

And now it came to pass that Alma did walk in the ways of the Lord, and he did keep his commandments, and he did judge righteous judgments; and there was continual peace through the land.

And thus commenced the reign of the judges throughout all the land of Zarahemla, among all the people who were called the Nephites; and Alma was the first and chief judge.

And now it came to pass that his father died, being eighty and two years old, having lived to fulfil the commandments of God.

And it came to pass that Mosiah died also, in the thirty and third year of his reign, being sixty and three years old; making in the whole, five hundred and nine years from the time Lehi left Jerusalem.

And thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

# Ko te Pukapuka a Arami te Tama a Arami

*Ko te tubinga a Arami, ko ia te tama a Arami, te kaiwhakarwā matua tuatabi i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, ā, ko te tobunga teitei anō ia i runga i te Hāhi. He tubinga mō te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakarwā, ā, ko ngā pakanga me ngā tautobetobenga i waenganui i te iwi. He tubinga anō mō tētahi pakanga i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai me ngā Rāmana, e ai ki te tubinga a Arami, te kaiwhakarwā matua tuatabi.*

## Arami 1

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te tau tuatahi o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakarwā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, nō tēnei wā haere ake nei, i te mea kua haere a kīngi Mōhia i te huarahi o te ao katoa, kua pakangatia te pakanga pai, e hīkoi tōtika ana i te aroaro o te Atua, kāore he tangata i waiho e ia hei whakahaere i muri i a ia; hei aha koa nāna ngā ture i whakapūmau ai, ā, i whakaetia ērā e te iwi; nō reira rātou i meinga ai kia ngohengohe ai ki ngā ture i whakatakotoria e ia.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te tau tuatahi o te whakahaeretanga a Arami i te nohoanga-whakawā, i reira tētahi tangata i kawea ki mua i tōna aroaro kia whakawākia ai, he tangata kaitā ia, ā, kua rongonui mō tōna kaha nui.
- 3 Ā, kua hāereere ia i waenganui i te iwi, e kauhau ana ki a rātou i taua mea i kī ai ia ko te kupu a te Atua, e whakahē ana i te hāhi; e whakapuaki ana ki te iwi me rorotu haere ia tohunga me ia kaiako; ā, me kua hoki rātou e mahi ki ō rātou ake ringaringa, engari mā te iwi kē e mahi hei oranga mō rātou.
- 4 Ā, nāna anō i whakaatu ki te iwi, nā, ka whakaorangia ngā tāngata katoa hei te rā whakamutunga, ā, kāore ō rātou take kia wehi, kia tūwiri rānei, engari kia ara ake rātou i ō rātou māhunga kia hari; nā te mea kua hangaia ngā tāngata katoa e te Ariki, ā, kua hokona anōtia ngā tāngata katoa; hei te mutunga, ka riro i ngā tāngata katoa te oranga tonutanga.

# The Book of Alma the Son of Alma

*The account of Alma, who was the son of Alma, the first and chief judge over the people of Nephi, and also the high priest over the Church. An account of the reign of the judges, and the wars and contentions among the people. And also an account of a war between the Nephites and the Lamanites, according to the record of Alma, the first and chief judge.*

## Alma 1

Now it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, from this time forward, king Mosiah having gone the way of all the earth, having warred a good warfare, walking uprightly before God, leaving none to reign in his stead; nevertheless he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

And it came to pass that in the first year of the reign of Alma in the judgment-seat, there was a man brought before him to be judged, a man who was large, and was noted for his much strength.

And he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church; declaring unto the people that every priest and teacher ought to become popular; and they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

And he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice; for the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men; and, in the end, all men should have eternal life.

- 5     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā tana kaha kauhau i ēnei mea ka whakaponono te tokomaha i ana kupu, nā te tino tokomaha ka tīmata rātou ki te tautoko i a ia me te hoatu pūtea ki a ia.
- 6     Ā, ka tīmata ia ki te neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o tōna ngākau, me te whakakākahu i ngā kākahu utu nui, āe rā, ka tīmata anō ki te whakapūmau i tētahi hāhi i runga i te ritenga o tana kauhautanga.
- 7     Ā, i pahawa ake i a ia e haere ana, ki te kauhau ki te hunga i whakaponono ai i tana kupu, ka tūtaki ia ki tētahi tangata nō te hāhi o te Atua, āe rā, ko tētahi o ōna kaiako pū anō; ā, ka tīmata ia ki te kaha tohetohe ki a ia, kia whakakōtītītia atu e ia te iwi o te hāhi; engari ka māia te tū o te tangata, e whakatūpatoria ana ia ki ngā kupu a te Atua.
- 8     Nā, ko Kiriona te ingoa o te tangata; ā, koia anō hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua i te whakaputanga atu i te iwi o Rimihi i te hereheretanga.
- 9     Nā tā Kiriona tū atu ki a ia i runga i te māia me ngā kupu a te Atua ka pukuriri ia ki a Kiriona, ā, ka unuhia e ia tana hoari, ā, ka tīmata ki te patu i a ia. Nā, kua koroheketia rawatia a Kiriona, nō reira kihai i taea e ia te ārai atu i ana patunga, nō reira i whakamatea ia e te hoari.
- 10    Ā, ka haria te tangata nāna ia i patu e te iwi o te hāhi, ā, ka mauria atu ki te aroaro o Arami, kia whakawākia ai kia rite ai ki ana hara kua meatia e ia.
- 11    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tū ia i te aroaro o Arami, ā, ka totohe atu mōna anō i runga i te māia nui.
- 12    Engari ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Nana, koinei te wā tuatahi i whakaurua ai te mahi tohunga teka ki waenganui i tēnei iwi. Ā nana, ehara tōu hē i te mahi tohunga teka anake, engari kua ngana nei kia whakauruhitia tēnā ki te hoari; ā, mēnā ka whakaurua mai te mahi tohunga teka ki waenganui i tēnei iwi koia kē tō rātou whakangaromanga katoatanga.
- 13    Ā, nāu i whakaheke te toto o tētahi tangata tika, āe rā, he tangata nāna nei ngā mea pai nunui i mahi ai i waenganui i tēnei iwi; ā, mēnā rānei ka tohua koe e mātou ka tau mai ōna toto ki runga i a mātou hei rapu utu.

And it came to pass that he did teach these things so much that many did believe on his words, even so many that they began to support him and give him money.

And he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear very costly apparel, yea, and even began to establish a church after the manner of his preaching.

And it came to pass as he was going, to preach to those who believed on his word, he met a man who belonged to the church of God, yea, even one of their teachers; and he began to contend with him sharply, that he might lead away the people of the church; but the man withstood him, admonishing him with the words of God.

Now the name of the man was Gideon; and it was he who was an instrument in the hands of God in delivering the people of Limhi out of bondage.

Now, because Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him. Now Gideon being stricken with many years, therefore he was not able to withstand his blows, therefore he was slain by the sword.

And the man who slew him was taken by the people of the church, and was brought before Alma, to be judged according to the crimes which he had committed.

And it came to pass that he stood before Alma and pled for himself with much boldness.

But Alma said unto him: Behold, this is the first time that priestcraft has been introduced among this people. And behold, thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to enforce it by the sword; and were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction.

And thou hast shed the blood of a righteous man, yea, a man who has done much good among this people; and were we to spare thee his blood would come upon us for vengeance.

- 14 Nō reira, kua whakatauhia koe kia mate, e ai ki te ture kua homai nei ki a tātou e Mōhia, tō tātou kīngi whakamutunga; ā, kua whakaaengia ēnā e tēnei iwi; nō reira me ngohengohe tēnei iwi ki te ture.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mauria ia e rātou; ā, ko Nehor tōna ingoa; ā, ka kawea atu ia e rātou ki runga i te puke o Manati, ā, i reira ia meinga ai, i whakaae ai rānei, i waenganui i ngā rangi me te whenua, nā, ko ngā mea i whakaakona ai e ia ki te iwi he mea tauaro i tā te kupu a te Atua; ā, i reira ka whakamatea ia ki tētahi matenga taurekareka.
- 16 Hei aha koa, kīhai i mutu i tēnei te horapa haeretanga o te mahi tohunga teka puta noa i te whenua; nā te mea he tokomaha te hunga i aroha ki ngā mea tekateka o te ao, ā, ka haere whakamua atu rātou e kauhau ana i ngā whakaakoranga teka; ā, i pēnei rātou he whakaaro ki ngā taonga me te hōnore.
- 17 Hei aha koa, kīhai rātou i māia ki te rūkahu, mehemea e mōhiotia ana, nā te matakū ki te ture, nā te mea ka whakawhiua te hunga rūkahu; nō reira i whakataruna rātou anō nei kei te kauhau atu e ai ki tō rātou whakaponu; ināianei ā, kāore he kaha tō te ture i runga i te tangata kotahi mō tōna whakaponu.
- 18 Ā, kāore rātou i māia ki te tāhae, nā te matakū ki te ture, nā te mea ka whakawhiua te hunga pērā; kāore rānei rātou i māia ki te pāhua, ki te kōhuru rānei, nā te mea ki te kōhuru tētahi ka whakawhiua kia mate.
- 19 Engari, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata ngā tāngata ehara nō te hāhi o te Atua ki te whakatoī i te hunga nō te hāhi o te Atua, ā, ko ngā mea kua tangohia ki runga i a rātou te ingoa o te Karaiti.
- 20 Āe rā, i whakatoī rātou i a rātou, ā, i karawhiua rātou ki ngā tūmomo kupu katoa, ā, i pēnei nā tō rātou whakaiti; nā te mea kāore rātou i te whakahihī i ō rātou ake karu, ā, nā tā rātou wāwāhi atu i te kupu a te Atua, tētahi ki tētahi, kāore he moni, ā, kāore he utu.
- 21 Nā, i reira tētahi ture uaua i waenganui i te iwi o te hāhi, kia kore ai te tangata kotahi, nō te hāhi, e ara ake me te whakatoī i te hunga ehara nō te hāhi, ā, kia kore ai he whakatoīngā i waenganui i a rātou anō.

Therefore thou art condemned to die, according to the law which has been given us by Mosiah, our last king; and it has been acknowledged by this people; therefore this people must abide by the law.

And it came to pass that they took him; and his name was Nehor; and they carried him upon the top of the hill Manti, and there he was caused, or rather did acknowledge, between the heavens and the earth, that what he had taught to the people was contrary to the word of God; and there he suffered an ignominious death.

Nevertheless, this did not put an end to the spreading of priestcraft through the land; for there were many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of riches and honor.

Nevertheless, they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars were punished; therefore they pretended to preach according to their belief; and now the law could have no power on any man for his belief.

And they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished; neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was punished unto death.

But it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

Yea, they did persecute them, and afflict them with all manner of words, and this because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes, and because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

Now there was a strict law among the people of the church, that there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

- 22 Hei aha koa, he tokomaha i waenganui i a rātou i tīmata ai ki te whakahihī, ā, ka tīmata rātou ki te totohe riri atu ki ō rātou hoariri, tae noa atu ki te patu; āe rā, ka mekemeke rātou tētahi ki tētahi.
- 23 Nā, koinei i te tau tuarua o te whakahaeretanga a Arami, ā, he nui te mamae i roto i te hāhi nā ēnei mea; āe rā, koia te pūtake o ngā whakamātautauranga nunui i te hāhi.
- 24 Nā te mea i whakapakekehia ngā ngākau o te hunga tokomaha, ā, ka mukua atu ō rātou ingoa, nā, kāore i maumaharatia tonutia rātou i waenganui i te iwi o te Atua. Ā, he tokomaha anō i tango atu i a rātou anō i waenganui i a rātou.
- 25 Nā, he whakamātautau nui tēnei ki te hunga i tū kaha i roto i te whakapono; hei aha koa, i toka tū moana rātou i tā rātou pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, ā, i manawanui tā rātou waha i ngā whakatoinga i pūrangatia ai ki runga i a rātou.
- 26 Ā, i te wā i wehe atu ai ngā tohunga kia wāwāhi atu ai i te kupu a te Atua ki te iwi, ka wehe anō te iwi i ā rātou mahi ki te whakarongo atu ki te kupu a te Atua. Ā, i te wā i wāwāhia atu ai e te tohunga te kupu a te Atua ki a rātou ka hokihoki ngākaunui atu rātou katoa ki ā rātou mahi; ā, ko te tohunga, kihai i whakateitei ia i a ia anō i runga ake i te hunga whakarongo, nā te mea kāore nei i pai ake te kaikauhau i te kaiwhakarongo, kāore rānei i pai ake te kaiako i te ākongā; ā, i taurite pēnei rātou, ā, i mahi katoa rātou, tēnā tangata, tēnā tangata e pērā ana ki tōna kaha.
- 27 Ā, i wāwāhi atu rātou i ā rātou rawa, ia tangata, ia tangata e ai ki tāna, ki te hunga rawakore, me te hunga hapa, me te hunga tūrora, me te hunga e whakamamaetia ana; ā, kihai rātou i whakakākahu i ngā kākahu utu nui, heoi, he tōrire, ā, he ātaahua tonu rātou.
- 28 Ā, i pēnei tā rātou whakapūmau i ngā āhuatanga o te hāhi; ā, ka tīmata pēnei tā rātou mau i te rangimārie tonutanga anō, ahakoa ā rātou whakatoinga katoa.

Nevertheless, there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows; yea, they would smite one another with their fists.

Now this was in the second year of the reign of Alma, and it was a cause of much affliction to the church; yea, it was the cause of much trial with the church.

For the hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, that they were remembered no more among the people of God. And also many withdrew themselves from among them.

Now this was a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, and they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

And when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God. And when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors; and the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner; and thus they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

And they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

And thus they did establish the affairs of the church; and thus they began to have continual peace again, notwithstanding all their persecutions.



29 Ināianeī ā, nā te toka tū moana a te hāhi ka tino whairawa haere rātou, e ranea ana ngā mea katoa e hihiatia ana e rātou—he ranea ngā kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, me ngā kūao mōmona o ia tū, o ia tū, he ranea hoki ngā kākano, me ngā kōura, me ngā hiriwa, me ngā mea utu nui, he ranea anō hoki ngā hiraka me ngā rīnena miro pai, me ngā kākahu kōkau papai o ia āhua, o ia āhua.

30 Ā, i pēnei, i runga i tō rātou āhua whai pai, kihai rātou i whakakāhore i tētahi e kākahu-kore ana, e hiakai ana rānei, e hainu ana rānei, e māuiui ana rānei, i tētahi rānei kihai ia i atawhaitia; ā, kihai i tau ō rātou ngākau ki runga i ngā taonga; nō reira i ngākau tūwhera ki ngā tāngata katoa, pakeke mai, rangatahi mai, herehere mai, herekore mai, tāne mai, wahine mai, ahakoa kei waho i te hāhi ahakoa rānei kei roto i te hāhi, kāore ō rātou tikanga kōwhiri tangata e pā ana ki te hunga hapa.

31 Ā, i pēnei tā rātou kakenga, ā, ka tino whairawa ake rātou i te hunga ehara nei i tō rātou hāhi.

32 Nā te mea ka tuku te hunga ehara i te hāhi i a rātou anō ki te mahi makutu, ā, me te karakia whakapakoko, me te hakirara rānei, me te ngaungau, i te pūhaehae me te totohe; e whakakāhahu ana i ngā kākahu utu nui; kua neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o ō rātou karu; e whakatoi ana, e rūkahu ana, e whānako ana, e pāhua ana, e mahi pūremu ana, e kōhuru ana hoki, me ngā tūmomo whakarihariha katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua; hei aha koa, kua whakahaeretia te ture ki runga i ngā kaitakahi ture katoa, ina taea te pērā.

33 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā te whakahaeretanga a te ture ki runga i a rātou, e whakawhiua ana ia tangata, ia tangata e ai ki tāna i mahi ai, ka nui ake tō rātou āta noho, ā, kihai rawa rātou i māia ki te mahi i tētahi mahi whakarihariha mehemea ka mātauria; nō reira, he nui te rangimārie i waenganui i te iwi o Nīwhai tae atu ki te tau tuarima o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā.

And now, because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need—an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

And thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished; and they did not set their hearts upon riches; therefore they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy than those who did not belong to their church.

For those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel; being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying, thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and all manner of wickedness; nevertheless, the law was put in force upon all those who did transgress it, inasmuch as it was possible.

And it came to pass that by thus exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not commit any wickedness if it were known; therefore, there was much peace among the people of Nephi until the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

## Arami 2

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tīmatanga o te tau tuarīma o te whakahaeretanga o tā rātou whakahaeretanga ka tīmata tētahi tautohetohenga i waenganui i te iwi; ko tētahi tangata, e karangatia ana ko Amariki, he tangata tinihanga rawa ia, āe rā, he tangata matatau e pā ana ki te mātauranga o te ao, he tangata nō te ritenga o te tangata nāna a Kiriona i patu ki te hoari, i whakamatea ai ia e ai ki te ture—
- 2 Nā, ko tēnei Amariki, i runga i tana tinihanga, ka kukume atu i ngā tāngata tokomaha kia whai atu i a ia; nā te tino tokomaha rawa atu ka tino whai kaha haere rātou; ā, ka tīmata tā rātou whai kia whakatūria a Amariki hei kīngi i runga i te iwi.
- 3 Nā, he mea ohorere ki te iwi o te hāhi, ā, ki te hunga katoa kīhai i kūmea atu e ngā whakapakepaketanga a Amariki; nā te mea i mōhio rātou, nā, e ai ki tō rātou ture me whakapūmau ērā momo mea e te reo o te iwi.
- 4 Nō reira, mehemea i taea kia hopu ai a Amariki i te reo o te iwi, i te mea ko ia tētahi tangata kino, ka whakakāhoretia rātou i ō rātou tikanga me ō rātou kōwhiringa o te hāhi; nā te mea i te hiahia ia kia whakangaro i te hāhi o te Atua.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakahuihui te iwi i a rātou katoa puta noa i te whenua, ia tangata, ia tangata e rite ana ki tōna hinengaro, mēnā rānei e tautoko ana, e whakahē ana rānei i a Amariki, i ngā rōpū rerekē, he nui ā ratou totohe me ā rātou ngangare whakamīharo tētahi ki tētahi.
- 6 Ā, i whakahuihui pēnei rātou i a rātou anō kia whiua atu ō rātou reo e pā ana ki te take; ā, ka whakatakotoria ki mua i te aroaro o ngā kaiwhakawā.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakahē atu te reo o te iwi i a Amariki, nā konā kīhai ia i whakatūria hei kīngi i runga i te iwi.
- 8 Nā konei i puta ake ai te hari nui i ngā ngākau o te hunga whakahē i a ia; engari ka whakaohohokia ake e Amariki te hunga tautoko i a ia kia riri ai ki te hunga kāore i te tautoko i a ia.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakahuihui tahtitia rātou e rātou anō, ā, ka whakatapua a Amariki hei kīngi mō rātou.

## Alma 2

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fifth year of their reign there began to be a contention among the people; for a certain man, being called Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the wisdom of the world, he being after the order of the man that slew Gideon by the sword, who was executed according to the law—

Now this Amlici had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him; even so much that they began to be very powerful; and they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be a king over the people.

Now this was alarming to the people of the church, and also to all those who had not been drawn away after the persuasions of Amlici; for they knew that according to their law that such things must be established by the voice of the people.

Therefore, if it were possible that Amlici should gain the voice of the people, he, being a wicked man, would deprive them of their rights and privileges of the church; for it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that the people assembled themselves together throughout all the land, every man according to his mind, whether it were for or against Amlici, in separate bodies, having much dispute and wonderful contentions one with another.

And thus they did assemble themselves together to cast in their voices concerning the matter; and they were laid before the judges.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came against Amlici, that he was not made king over the people.

Now this did cause much joy in the hearts of those who were against him; but Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against those who were not in his favor.

And it came to pass that they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici to be their king.

- 10 Nā, i te wā i whakatūria ai a Amariki hei kīngi i runga i a rātou ka whakahaua rātou kia hāpai patu ki ā rātou teina; ā, i pēneitia e ia kia whakatauhia ai tōna mana ki runga i a rātou.
- 11 Nā, i waitohungia te iwi o Amariki e te ingoa o Amariki, arā, i karangatia ko ngā Amariki; ā, ko te toenga atu i karangatia ai ko ngā Nīwhai, ko te iwi o te Atua rānei.
- 12 Nō reira, i mōhio te iwi o ngā Nīwhai ki te whakaaro a ngā Amariki, koia rātou i whakarite ai ki te tūtaki ki a rātou; āe rā, ka whakamaua rātou e rātou anō ki te hoari, me ngā hemita, me ngā kōpere, me ngā pere, me ngā kōhatu, me ngā kōtaha, ā, ki ngā tūmomo rākau whawhai katoa, o ia āhua, o ia āhua.
- 13 Nā konā kua rite rātou ki te tūtaki ki ngā Amariki i te wā o tā rātou haerenga mai. Ā, ka whakatūria he kāpene, me ngā kāpene i runga ake, me ngā kāpene rangatira, e pērā ana ki ō rātou tatauranga.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakamaua e Amariki ana tangata ki ngā tūmomo rākau whawhai katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua; ā, i whakatūria anōtia e ia he kaiwhakahaere, ā, he kaiārahi i runga i tana iwi, kia ārahina atu rātou ki te pakanga ki ā rātou teina.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere ake ngā Amariki ki runga i te puke ki Amanihu, i te taha rāwhiti o te awa Hairona, e rere ana i te whenua o Harahemara, ā, i reira rātou tīmata ai ki te whawhai ki ngā Nīwhai.
- 16 Nā, ko Arami te kaiwhakawā nui me te kāwana i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, nō reira, ka haere ake ia me tana iwi, āe rā, me ana kāpene, me ana kāpene rangatira, āe rā, i mua i ana tauā, ki te whawhai ki ngā Amariki.
- 17 Ā, ka tīmata rātou ki te patupatu i ngā Amariki i runga i te puke ki te taha o Hairona. Ā, ka whawhai atu ngā Amariki ki ngā Nīwhai i runga i te kaha nui, nō konei ka hingahinga iho ngā Nīwhai tokomaha i mua i ngā Amariki.
- 18 Hei aha koa ka whakakahangia e te Ariki te ringa o ngā Nīwhai, nā, ka patua e rātou ngā Amariki ki tētahi parekura nui, nā, ka tīmata tā rātou tahuti atu i mua i a rātou.

Now when Amlici was made king over them he commanded them that they should take up arms against their brethren; and this he did that he might subject them to him.

Now the people of Amlici were distinguished by the name of Amlici, being called Amlicites; and the remainder were called Nephites, or the people of God.

Therefore the people of the Nephites were aware of the intent of the Amlicites, and therefore they did prepare to meet them; yea, they did arm themselves with swords, and with cimeters, and with bows, and with arrows, and with stones, and with slings, and with all manner of weapons of war, of every kind.

And thus they were prepared to meet the Amlicites at the time of their coming. And there were appointed captains, and higher captains, and chief captains, according to their numbers.

And it came to pass that Amlici did arm his men with all manner of weapons of war of every kind; and he also appointed rulers and leaders over his people, to lead them to war against their brethren.

And it came to pass that the Amlicites came upon the hill Amnihu, which was east of the river Sidon, which ran by the land of Zarahemla, and there they began to make war with the Nephites.

Now Alma, being the chief judge and the governor of the people of Nephi, therefore he went up with his people, yea, with his captains, and chief captains, yea, at the head of his armies, against the Amlicites to battle.

And they began to slay the Amlicites upon the hill east of Sidon. And the Amlicites did contend with the Nephites with great strength, insomuch that many of the Nephites did fall before the Amlicites.

Nevertheless the Lord did strengthen the hand of the Nephites, that they slew the Amlicites with great slaughter, that they began to flee before them.

19     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whai atu ngā Nīwhai i ngā  
Amariki mō te roanga o te rā, ā, ka parekuratia nuitia  
rātou, nā konā neke atu i te tekau mā rua mano, e  
rima rau, e toru tekau mā rua ngā wairua o ngā  
Amariki i patua ai; ā, neke atu i te ono mano, e rima  
rau, e ono tekau mā rua ngā wairua o ngā Nīwhai i  
patua ai.

20     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā kāore i taea tonutia e  
Arami ngā Amariki te whai ka meatia e ia tana iwi  
kia whakatūria ō rātou tēneti i te raorao o Kiriona,  
kua karangatia te raorao mō taua Kiriona i patua ai e  
te ringa o Nehu ki te hoari; ā, ka whakatūria e ngā  
Nīwhai ō rātou tēneti i tēnei raorao mō te pō.

21     Ā, ka tonoa e Arami ngā tūtei ki te aru i ngā  
mōrehu o ngā Amariki, kia mōhio ai ia e pā ana ki ā  
rātou mahere me ā rātou whakaritenga, mā konā  
taea e ia te tiaki i a ia anō i a rātou, kia tiakina ai tōna  
iwi i te whakangaromanga.

22     Nā, ko ngā ingoa o te hunga i tonoa atu e ia hei  
tūtei i te puni o ngā Amariki, arā, ko Herama, ko  
Amanore, ko Manati rātou ko Rimihera; koinēi te  
hunga i haere atu ai me ō rātou tāngata hei tūtei i te  
puni o ngā Amariki.

23     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te aonga ake ka hohoro rawa  
atu tā rātou hokinga ki te puni o ngā Nīwhai, e  
whakamīharo nuitia ana, ā, kua pākia e te wehi nui,  
e mea ana:

24     Nana, i aru atu mātou i te puni o ngā Amariki, ā,  
ko te mea whakamīharo rawa atu ki a mātou, i te  
whenua o Minono, i runga ake i te whenua o  
Harahemara, i runga i te huarahi ki te whenua o  
Nīwhai, i kite mātou i tētahi ope tini o ngā Rāmana;  
ā nana, kua hono atu ngā Amariki ki a rātou;

25     Ā, kei runga rātou i ō tātou teina i te whenua rā; ā,  
e tahuti atu ana rātou me ā rātou kāhui, me ā rātou  
hoawāhine, me ā rātou tamariki, e ahu ana ki tō  
tātou pā; ā, ki te kore tātou e hohoro ka riro i a rātou  
tō tātou pā, ā, ka patua ō tātou matua, me ā tātou  
hoawāhine, me ā tātou tamariki.

26     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haria atu e te iwi o Nīwhai  
ō rātou tēneti, ā, ka wehe atu ki waho i te raorao o  
Kiriona e ahu atu ana ki tō rātou pā, koia ko te pā o  
Harahemara.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did pursue  
the Amlicites all that day, and did slay them with  
much slaughter, insomuch that there were slain of  
the Amlicites twelve thousand five hundred thirty  
and two souls; and there were slain of the Nephites  
six thousand five hundred sixty and two souls.

And it came to pass that when Alma could pursue  
the Amlicites no longer he caused that his people  
should pitch their tents in the valley of Gideon, the  
valley being called after that Gideon who was slain  
by the hand of Nehor with the sword; and in this val-  
ley the Nephites did pitch their tents for the night.

And Alma sent spies to follow the remnant of the  
Amlicites, that he might know of their plans and  
their plots, whereby he might guard himself against  
them, that he might preserve his people from being  
destroyed.

Now those whom he had sent out to watch the  
camp of the Amlicites were called Zeram, and  
Amnor, and Manti, and Limher; these were they who  
went out with their men to watch the camp of the  
Amlicites.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they re-  
turned into the camp of the Nephites in great haste,  
being greatly astonished, and struck with much fear,  
saying:

Behold, we followed the camp of the Amlicites,  
and to our great astonishment, in the land of Minon,  
above the land of Zarahemla, in the course of the  
land of Nephi, we saw a numerous host of the  
Lamanites; and behold, the Amlicites have joined  
them;

And they are upon our brethren in that land; and  
they are fleeing before them with their flocks, and  
their wives, and their children, towards our city; and  
except we make haste they obtain possession of our  
city, and our fathers, and our wives, and our children  
be slain.

And it came to pass that the people of Nephi took  
their tents, and departed out of the valley of Gideon  
towards their city, which was the city of Zarahemla.

27     Ā nana, i a rātou e whakawhiti ana i te awa o Hairona, ka huaki mai ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki, kua tata rite tō rātou tokomahatanga, anō nei, ko ngā oneone o te moana, ki te whakangaro i a rātou.

28     Hei aha koa, i whakakahangia ngā Nīwhai e te ringa o te Ariki, kua inoi kaha ake rātou ki a ia kia whakaputaina ai rātou i ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri, nō reira whakarongo ai te Ariki i ā rātou karanga, ā, i whakakahangia rātou, ā, ka hingahinga iho ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki i mua i a rātou.

29     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whawhai tahi a Arami ki a Amariki ki te hoari, kanohi ki te kanohi; ā, i nui tā rāua kakaritanga, tētahi ki tētahi.

30     Ā, i pahawa ake i a Arami, nā te mea he tangata nō te Atua, kua whakangungua ki te whakapono nui, ka karangahia, e mea ana: E te Ariki, kia aroha mai, ā, kia tohungia tōku oranga, kia meinga au hei taputapu i roto i ō ringaringa ki te whakaora me te tiaki i tēnei iwi.

31     Nā, i te wā i kōrero ai a Arami i ēnei kupu ka kakari anō rāua ko Amariki; ā, i whakakahangia ia, nā konā i whakamate ia i a Amariki ki te hoari.

32     Ā, i kakari anō rāua ko te kīngi o ngā Rāmana; engari tahuti ana te kīngi o ngā Rāmana i te aroaro o Arami, ā, ka tonoa ana kaitiaki kia kakari ai ki a Arami.

33     Engari ka kakari a Arami, me ana kaitiaki ki ngā kaitiaki o te kīngi o ngā Rāmana tae atu ki te wā ka whakamatea, ā, ka āia atu rātou e ia.

34     Ā, i whakawāteahia pēneitia e ia te whenua, te tahatika kē rānei, i te taha uru o te awa o Hairona, e makaia ana ngā tūpāpaku o ngā Rāmana kua patua iho ki roto i ngā wai o Hairona, kia whaiwāhi ai i konā tana iwi ki te whakawhiti atu me te kakari atu ki ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki i te taha uru o te awa o Hairona.

35     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whakawhiti katoa ana rātou i te awa o Hairona ka tīmata ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki ki te tahuti atu i mua i a rātou, ahakoa he tokomaha whāioio rātou tē taea te tataui i a rātou.

36     Ā, i tahuti atu rātou i te aroaro o ngā Nīwhai whakatekoraha i te uru me te raki, kei tua atu i ngā rohe o te whenua; ā, ka arumia rātou e ngā Nīwhai i runga i tō rātou kaha, ā, ka patupatua iho rātou.

And behold, as they were crossing the river Sidon, the Lamanites and the Amlicites, being as numerous almost, as it were, as the sands of the sea, came upon them to destroy them.

Nevertheless, the Nephites being strengthened by the hand of the Lord, having prayed mightily to him that he would deliver them out of the hands of their enemies, therefore the Lord did hear their cries, and did strengthen them, and the Lamanites and the Amlicites did fall before them.

And it came to pass that Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they did contend mightily, one with another.

And it came to pass that Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith, cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

Now when Alma had said these words he contended again with Amlici; and he was strengthened, insomuch that he slew Amlici with the sword.

And he also contended with the king of the Lamanites; but the king of the Lamanites fled back from before Alma and sent his guards to contend with Alma.

But Alma, with his guards, contended with the guards of the king of the Lamanites until he slew and drove them back.

And thus he cleared the ground, or rather the bank, which was on the west of the river Sidon, throwing the bodies of the Lamanites who had been slain into the waters of Sidon, that thereby his people might have room to cross and contend with the Lamanites and the Amlicites on the west side of the river Sidon.

And it came to pass that when they had all crossed the river Sidon that the Lamanites and the Amlicites began to flee before them, notwithstanding they were so numerous that they could not be numbered.

And they fled before the Nephites towards the wilderness which was west and north, away beyond the borders of the land; and the Nephites did pursue them with their might, and did slay them.

37     Āe rā, i tūtaki rātou i tēnei taha, i tēnei taha, ā, ka patua, ā, ka āia atu, tae atu ki tā rātou whakamararatanga atu ki te uru, ā, ki te raki, kia tae rā anō rātou ki te koraha, kua karangatia nei ko Heamauta; ā, ko taua koraha anō kua muia e ngā kararehe mohao me ngā kararehe horomiti.

38     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha i mate ai i te koraha i ō rātou tūnga, ā, i kainga e aua kararehe me ngā whatura o te rangi; ā, kua kitea ō rātou kōiwi, ā, kua pūrangahia i runga i te whenua.

Yea, they were met on every hand, and slain and driven, until they were scattered on the west, and on the north, until they had reached the wilderness, which was called Hermounts; and it was that part of the wilderness which was infested by wild and ravenous beasts.

And it came to pass that many died in the wilderness of their wounds, and were devoured by those beasts and also the vultures of the air; and their bones have been found, and have been heaped up on the earth.

### Arami 3

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko ngā Nīwhai kīhai i patua e ngā rākau whawhai, nō muri iho i tā rātou tanumi i te hunga i patua ai—nā, kīhai i taturanga te hunga mate, nā te nui o tō rātou taturanga—nō muri iho i tā rātou tanumitanga i ō rātou mate katoa ka hoki atu rātou ki ō rātou whenua, ā, ki ō rātou kāinga, me ā rātou hoawahine, me ā rātou tamariki.
- 2 Nā, he tokomaha ngā wāhine me ngā tamariki i patua ai ki te hoari, ā, he maha anō ā rātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū; ā, he maha anō ā rātou māra kākano i whakangaromia ai, nā te mea kua takatakahia e ngā ope tangata.
- 3 Ināianeī ā, ka makaia ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki i patupatua ai i runga i te tahatika o te awa o Hairona ki roto i ngā wai o Hairona; ā nana, kei ngā hōhonutanga o te moana ō rātou kōiwi, ā, he maha rawa ērā.
- 4 Ā, i rerekē ngā Amariki i ngā Nīwhai, nā te mea i whaitohungia ō rātou rae e rātou anō ki te whero i runga i te ritenga o ngā Rāmana; hei aha koa kīhai i heua e rātou ō rātou māhunga kia rite ki ngā Rāmana.
- 5 Nā, kua heua ngā māhunga o ngā Rāmana; ā, kua tahanga rātou, hāunga ko te hiako kua whītikiria i ō rātou hope, me ō rātou kākahu whawhai, kua whītikiria i a rātou, me ā rātou kōpere, me ā rātou pere, me ā rātou kōhatu, me ā rātou kōtaha, me ētahi atu mea.
- 6 Ā, he pōuriuri te kiri o ngā Rāmana, e pērā ana ki te tohu i whakataua ai ki runga i ō rātou tūpuna matua, koia tētahi kanga i whakataua ai ki runga i a rātou nā ō rātou hara me ā rātou haututū ki ā rātou teina, arā, ko Nīwhai, ko Hākopa, ko Hōhepa rātou ko Hāmi, he tangata tika, ā, he tangata tapu rātou.
- 7 Ā, i whai ō rātou tuākana ki te whakangaro i a rātou, nō reira i kangaia rātou; ā, ka whakataua tētahi tohu ki runga i a rātou e te Atua, āe rā, ki runga i a Rāmana rāua ko Remuere, me ngā tama a Ihimaera anō hoki, me ngā wāhine Ihimaera.
- 8 Ā, i pēnei kia rerekē ai ō rātou uri i ngā uri o ā rātou teina, mā konā tiakina ai e te Ariki te Atua tōna iwi, kia kua rātou e hanumi atu me te whakapono i ngā whakarereanga hē, ā, ko tōna mutunga he whakangaromanga.

### Alma 3

And it came to pass that the Nephites who were not slain by the weapons of war, after having buried those who had been slain—now the number of the slain were not numbered, because of the greatness of their number—after they had finished burying their dead they all returned to their lands, and to their houses, and their wives, and their children.

Now many women and children had been slain with the sword, and also many of their flocks and their herds; and also many of their fields of grain were destroyed, for they were trodden down by the hosts of men.

And now as many of the Lamanites and the Amlicites who had been slain upon the bank of the river Sidon were cast into the waters of Sidon; and behold their bones are in the depths of the sea, and they are many.

And the Amlicites were distinguished from the Nephites, for they had marked themselves with red in their foreheads after the manner of the Lamanites; nevertheless they had not shorn their heads like unto the Lamanites.

Now the heads of the Lamanites were shorn; and they were naked, save it were skin which was girded about their loins, and also their armor, which was girded about them, and their bows, and their arrows, and their stones, and their slings, and so forth.

And the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren, who consisted of Nephi, Jacob, and Joseph, and Sam, who were just and holy men.

And their brethren sought to destroy them, therefore they were cursed; and the Lord God set a mark upon them, yea, upon Laman and Lemuel, and also the sons of Ishmael, and Ishmaelitish women.

And this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

- 9     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kukume iho te tangata i hanumi atu ai ki ngā uri o ngā Rāmana i taua kanga anō ki runga i ōna uri.
- 10    Nō reira, ka karangatia te tangata i tuku i a ia anō kia whakakōtiti kētia e ngā Rāmana i raro i te maru o tērā upoko, ā, ka whakataua tētahi tohu ki runga i a ia.
- 11    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko te tangata kīhai nei i whakapono ki ngā whakarereanga iho a ngā Rāmana, engari i whakapono kē i aua tuhinga kua haria mai ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, i ngā whakarereanga iho anō a ō rātou tūpuna matua, koia nei he tika, i whakapono anō i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, ā, i puritia ēnā, i karangatia ko ngā Nīwhai, ko te iwi o Nīwhai rānei, mai i tērā wā haere ake nei—
- 12    Ā, ko rātou anō ngā mea kua tuhia ngā tuhinga e pono ana mō tō rātou iwi, mō te iwi anō hoki o ngā Rāmana.
- 13    Nā, ka huri anō tātou ki ngā Amariki, nā te mea kua whakataua anōtia tētahi tohu ki runga i a rātou; āe rā, nā rātou anō rātou i whaitohu ai, āe rā, ko tētahi tohu whero ki runga i ō rātou rae.
- 14    Pēnei kua mana te kupu a te Atua, nā, koinei ngā kupu i kōrero ai ki a Nīwhai: Nana, ko ngā Rāmana nāku i kanga, ā, ka whakatau au i tētahi tohu ki runga i a rātou kia whakawehea rātou me ō rātou uri i a koe me ō uri, mai i tēnei wā haere ake nei mō āke tonu atu, hāunga ka rīpenetā rātou i ō rātou whakarihariha me te tahuri mai ki ahau kia whakaaroa atu au ki a rātou.
- 15    Hei āpiti anō: Māku tētahi tohu e whakatau ki runga i te tangata e hanumi ai i ōna uri ki ōu tuākana, kia kangaia rātou anō hoki.
- 16    Hei āpiti anō: Māku tētahi tohu e whakatau ki runga i te tangata e whawhai ai ki a koe me ō uri.
- 17    Hei āpiti anō, ko tāku, e kore rawa te tangata e wehe atu ai i a koe e karangatia tonutia he uri nōu; ā, māku koe e manaaki, me te hunga katoa e karangatia ai he uri nōu, haere ake nei mō āke tonu atu; ā, koinei ngā whakaari a te Ariki ki a Nīwhai me ana uri.

And it came to pass that whosoever did mingle his seed with that of the Lamanites did bring the same curse upon his seed.

Therefore, whosoever suffered himself to be led away by the Lamanites was called under that head, and there was a mark set upon him.

And it came to pass that whosoever would not believe in the tradition of the Lamanites, but believed those records which were brought out of the land of Jerusalem, and also in the tradition of their fathers, which were correct, who believed in the commandments of God and kept them, were called the Nephites, or the people of Nephi, from that time forth—

And it is they who have kept the records which are true of their people, and also of the people of the Lamanites.

Now we will return again to the Amlicites, for they also had a mark set upon them; yea, they set the mark upon themselves, yea, even a mark of red upon their foreheads.

Thus the word of God is fulfilled, for these are the words which he said to Nephi: Behold, the Lamanites have I cursed, and I will set a mark on them that they and their seed may be separated from thee and thy seed, from this time henceforth and forever, except they repent of their wickedness and turn to me that I may have mercy upon them.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that mingleth his seed with thy brethren, that they may be cursed also.

And again: I will set a mark upon him that fighteth against thee and thy seed.

And again, I say he that departeth from thee shall no more be called thy seed; and I will bless thee, and whomsoever shall be called thy seed, henceforth and forever; and these were the promises of the Lord unto Nephi and to his seed.



18 Nā, kīhai ngā Amariki i mōhio i te whakatutuki rātou i ngā kupu a te Atua i te wā i tīmata ai rātou ki te whaitohu i a rātou anō ki ō rātou rae; hei aha koa kua puta māriri mai tā rātou tutū ki te Atua; nō reira i tika pū kia taka iho ai te kanga ki runga i a rātou.

19 Nā, e hiahia ana ahau kia kite ai koutou nā rātou anō te kanga i kukume ai ki runga i a rātou; ā, he pērā anō tā ia tangata kua kangaia nei kukume iho ki runga i a ia anō tōna ake whakahēnga.

20 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore i maha ngā rā whai muri iho i te whawhai i whawhaitia ai i te whenua o Harahemara, e ngā Rāmana me ngā Amariki, nā, i reira anō tētahi atu tauā a ngā Rāmana i whakaeke mai ai ki runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, i taua wāhi anō i tūtaki ai te tauā tuatahi ki ngā Amariki.

21 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kua tonoa tētahi tauā kia āia atu ai rātou i ō rātou whenua.

22 Nā, nā te mea i te mamae a Arami i tētahi tūnga kīhai ia i haere ake ki te whawhai i tēnei wā ki ngā Rāmana;

23 Engari i tonoa e ia tētahi tauā nui ki a rātou; ā, ka haere ake rātou, ā, ka patua ngā tāngata tokomaha o ngā Rāmana, ā, ka āia atu te toenga o rātou ki waho i ngā rohe o tō rātou whenua.

24 Kātahi ka hoki anō rātou, ā, ka tīmata ki te whakapūmau i te rangimārie i runga i te whenua, kāore rātou i raru anō i ō rātou hoariri mō tētahi wā.

25 Nā, i meatia katoatia ēnei mea, āe rā, i tīmataria, ā, i whakamutua ēnei whawhai me ēnei tautohetohenga katoa i te tau tuarima o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā.

26 Ā, i te tau kotahi i tonoa atu ai ngā wairua manomano, ā, he mano tekau o ngā mano ki te ao mutunga kore, kia kokoti ai rātou i ō rātou utu e rite ana ki ā rātou mahinga, ahakoa i pai, ahakoa rānei i kino, kia kokoti ai i te hari mutunga kore, i te pōuri mutunga kore rānei, e ai ki te wairua i whāia atu ai rātou, mehemea he wairua pai, he wairua kino rānei.

27 Nā te mea ka whiwhi utu ia tangata, ia tangata mai i te mea e whāia atu ai e ia, ā, ka pēneitia e ai ki ngā kupu a te wairua poropititanga; nō reira tukua kia rite ki te pono. Ā, i pēnei te whakamutunga o te tau tuarima o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā.

Now the Amlicites knew not that they were fulfilling the words of God when they began to mark themselves in their foreheads; nevertheless they had come out in open rebellion against God; therefore it was expedient that the curse should fall upon them.

Now I would that ye should see that they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

Now it came to pass that not many days after the battle which was fought in the land of Zarahemla, by the Lamanites and the Amlicites, that there was another army of the Lamanites came in upon the people of Nephi, in the same place where the first army met the Amlicites.

And it came to pass that there was an army sent to drive them out of their land.

Now Alma himself being afflicted with a wound did not go up to battle at this time against the Lamanites;

But he sent up a numerous army against them; and they went up and slew many of the Lamanites, and drove the remainder of them out of the borders of their land.

And then they returned again and began to establish peace in the land, being troubled no more for a time with their enemies.

Now all these things were done, yea, all these wars and contentions were commenced and ended in the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

And in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey, and this according to the words of the spirit of prophecy; therefore let it be according to the truth. And thus endeth the fifth year of the reign of the judges.

## Arami 4

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake i te tau tuaono o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, kāore he tautohetohenga, he pakanga rānei i te whenua o Harahemara;
- 2 Engari i te mamae te iwi, āe rā, i te mamae nui i te ngaronga o ō rātou huānga, i te ngaronga anō hoki o ā rātou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, i te ngaronga o ō rātou māra kākano, kua takatakahia e te waewae, ā, i whakangaromia e ngā Rāmana.
- 3 Ā, i whaitake ngā tāngata katoa ki te tangi nā te nui o ō rātou mamae; ā, i whakapono rātou ko ngā whakawākanga ia a te Atua kua tonoa iho ki runga i a rātou nā ō rātou whakarihariha me ō rātou mōrikarika; nō reira kua whakaohokia rātou ki tētahi maharatanga mō tō rātou haepapa.
- 4 Ā, ka tīmata rātou ki te whakapūmau katoa i te hāhi; āe rā, he tokomaha ngā mea i rumakina ai i ngā wai o Hairona, ā, ka whakahonoa ki te hāhi o te Atua; āe rā, i rumakina e te ringa o Arami, kua whakatapua hei tohunga teitei i runga i te iwi o te hāhi, e te ringa o tōna matua a Arami.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tau tuawhitu o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā kua tata neke atu i te toru mano, rima rau ngā wairua kua whakahonoa e rātou anō ki te hāhi o te Atua, ā, ka rumakina. Ā, i pēnei te whakamutunga o te tau tuawhitu o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai; ā, hua tonu te rangimārie i taua wā katoa.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tau tuawaru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā, nā, ka whakapehapeha haere te iwi o te hāhi, nā ō rātou taonga nui whakaharahara, me ā rātou hiraka papai, me ā rātou rīnena miro-pai, ā, nā ā rātou kāhui maha o ia tū, o ia tū, me ā rātou kōura, me ā rātou hiriwā, me ngā tūmomo mea utu nui katoa, kua whiwhi nei rātou i runga i tō rātou kaha ki te mahi; ā, nā ēnei mea katoa i nuku ake rātou i te whakapehapeha o ō rātou karu, nā te mea i tīmata tā rātou whakakākahu i ngā kākahu tino utu nui.

## Alma 4

Now it came to pass in the sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were no contentions nor wars in the land of Zarahemla;

But the people were afflicted, yea, greatly afflicted for the loss of their brethren, and also for the loss of their flocks and herds, and also for the loss of their fields of grain, which were trodden under foot and destroyed by the Lamanites.

And so great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; and they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations; therefore they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

And they began to establish the church more fully; yea, and many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to the church of God; yea, they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by the hand of his father Alma.

And it came to pass in the seventh year of the reign of the judges there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united themselves to the church of God and were baptized. And thus ended the seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and there was continual peace in all that time.

And it came to pass in the eighth year of the reign of the judges, that the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which they had obtained by their industry; and in all these things were they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear very costly apparel.

7 Nā, koinei te take i mamae nui ai a Arami, āe rā, ki te tokomaha anō hoki o te hunga i whakatapua e Arami hei kaiako, hei tohunga, hei erata i runga i te hāhi; āe rā, he tokomaha rātou i mamae nui i te pōuri mō te whakaritariha i kite ai rātou kua tīmata ki te uru mai ki waenganui i tō rātou iwi.

8 Nā te mea i kite ai rātou i runga i te pōuri nui, nā, kua tīmata te iwi o te hāhi kia neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o tō rātou karu, me te whakatau i tō rātou ngākau ki runga i ngā taonga me ngā mea tekateka o te ao, nā konā ka whakahāwea haere rātou, tētahi ki tētahi, ā, ka tīmata rātou ki te whakato i te hunga kīhai i hāngai o rātou whakapono ki tō rātou hiahia, ā, ki ngā mea e āhuareka ana ki a rātou.

9 Ā pēnei, i tēnei te tau tuawaru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā, ka hua ake ngā tautohetohenga nui i waenganui i te iwi o te hāhi; āe rā, he pūhaehae, he totohe, he mauāhara, he whakatoinga, he whakapehapeha, he nui ake i te whakapehapeha o te hunga ehara nei nō te hāhi o te Atua.

10 Ā pēnei te whakamutunga o te tau tuawaru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā; he tūtukitanga-waewae nui te whakaritariha o te hāhi ki te hunga ehara nei nō te hāhi; ā pēnei tā te hāhi hē haere i tana kāneke whakamuatanga.

11 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tīmatanga o te tau tuaiwa, i kite a Arami i te whakaritariha o te hāhi, ā, i kite anō ia, nā, i te ārahina te hunga whakapono kore e ngā mahi a te hāhi mai i tētahi mahi kino ki tētahi atu, e kukume pēnei mai ana i te whakangaromanga o te iwi.

12 Āe rā, i kite anō ia he nui te rerekētanga i waenganui i te iwi, e neke ake ana ētahi i a rātou anō i runga i tō rātou whakapehapeha, e whakahāwea ana i ētahi atu, e huri tuarā ana ki te hunga hapa, ki te hunga kākahu kore me te hunga e hiakai ana, me te hunga e hiainu ana, me te hunga e tūroro ana, ā, e whakamamaetia ana.

Now this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and priests, and elders over the church; yea, many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which they saw had begun to be among their people.

For they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the world, that they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they began to persecute those that did not believe according to their own will and pleasure.

And thus, in this eighth year of the reign of the judges, there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

And thus ended the eighth year of the reign of the judges; and the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church; and thus the church began to fail in its progress.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the ninth year, Alma saw the wickedness of the church, and he saw also that the example of the church began to lead those who were unbelievers on from one piece of iniquity to another, thus bringing on the destruction of the people.

Yea, he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

- 13 Nā, he take auē nui tēnei i waenganui i te iwi, i ētahi atu e whakaiti ana i a rātou anō, e āwhina ana i te hunga e hiahia ana ki tā rātou āwhina, e pērā ana i tā rātou wāwāhi atu i ā rātou rawa ki te hunga rawakore me te hunga hapa, e whāngai ana i te hunga hiakai, ā, e manawanui ana ki ngā tūmomo whakamamaetanga katoa, mō te Karaiti te take, koia e haere mai ai e ai ki te wairua poropititanga;
- 14 E titiro atu ana ki taua rangi, e whakawhiwhi pēnei ana i tētahi murunga i ō rātou hara; e kikī ana i te hari nui nā te aranga o te hunga mate, e ai ki te hiahia me te mana me te whakaputanga o Ihu Karaiti mai i ngā here o te mate.
- 15 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake a Arami, kua kitea ngā whakamamaetanga o ngā kaiaruaru māhaki a te Atua, me ngā whakatoinga kua pūrangatia ki runga i a rātou e te toenga atu o tana iwi, e kitea ana anō hoki ō rātou rerekētanga, ka tino pōuri haere ia; hei aha koa kīhai i mutu i te Wairua o te Ariki te āwhina i a ia.
- 16 Ā, ka whiriwhiri ia i tētahi ruānuku i waenganui i ngā erata o te hāhi, ā, ka hoatu mana ki a ia e rite ai ki te reo o te iwi, kia whaimana ai ia ki te hanga ture e hāngai ana ki ngā ture kua tukuna kētia, ā, kia whakahaerehia ērā e ai ki te whakariharihatanga me ngā hara o te iwi.
- 17 Nā, ko Nīwhaihā te ingoa o tēnei tangata, ā, ka whakataua ia hei kaiwhakawā matua; ā, ka noho ia i te nohoanga-whakawā ki te whakawā me te whakahaere i te iwi.
- 18 Nā, kīhai a Arami i tuku iho ki a ia te tūranga o te tohunga teitei i runga i te hāhi, engari i puritia tonutia e ia anō te tūranga o te tohunga teitei; engari nāna te nohoanga-whakawā i tuku ki a Nīwhaihā.
- 19 Ā, ka pēneitia e ia kia haere whakamua atu ia ki waenganui i tana iwi, ki waenganui i te iwi o Nīwhai, kia kauhau atu ia i te kupu a te Atua ki a rātou, kia whakaohokia ake rātou ki te maharatanga o tō rātou haepapa, ā, kia turakina iho, e te kupu a te Atua, te whakapehapeha katoa me te tinihanga me ngā tautohetohenga katoa i waenganui i tana iwi, kāore i kitea atu he huarahi kē hei whakahokia mai rātou hāunga mā te whakapēhi iho i runga i te whakaaturanga tika ki a rātou.

Now this was a great cause for lamentations among the people, while others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake, who should come according to the spirit of prophecy;

Looking forward to that day, thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

And now it came to pass that Alma, having seen the afflictions of the humble followers of God, and the persecutions which were heaped upon them by the remainder of his people, and seeing all their inequality, began to be very sorrowful; nevertheless the Spirit of the Lord did not fail him.

And he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

Now this man's name was Nephiah, and he was appointed chief judge; and he sat in the judgment-seat to judge and to govern the people.

Now Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself; but he delivered the judgment-seat unto Nephiah.

And this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them, to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, and that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

20      Ā pēnei, i te tīmatanga o te tau tuaiwa o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, ka tukuna atu e Arami te nohoanga-whakawā ki a Nīwhaihā, ā, ka aro pūmau katoa ia ki te tohungatanga teitei o te ritenga tapu o te Atua, ki te whakaaturanga o te kupu, e ai ki te wairua o te whakakitenga me te poropititanga.

And thus in the commencement of the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephihah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

*Ko ngā kupu i whakapuakina ai e Arami, te Tohunga Teitei e ai ki te ritenga tapu o te Atua, ki te iwi i roto i ō rātou pā me ō rātou papakāinga puta noa i te whenua.*

## Arami 5

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata a Arami ki te whakapuaki i te kupu a te Atua ki te iwi, i te whenua o Harahemara i te tuatahi, ā, mai i reira puta noa i te whenua katoa.
- 2 Ā, koinēi ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e ia ki te iwi i te hāhi i whakapūmautia ai i te pā o Harahemara, e ai ki tāna ake tuinga, e mea ana:
- 3 Ko au, a Arami, kua whakatapua e tōku matua, e Arami, hei tohunga teitei i runga i te hāhi o te Atua, i a ia hoki te kaha me te mana nō te Atua kia mahia ēnei mea, nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, i tīmata ia ki te whakapūmau i tētahi hāhi i te whenua kei roto i ngā rohe o Nīwhai; āe rā, ko te whenua i karangatia ai ko te whenua o Moromona; āe rā, nāna ana teina i rumaki i roto i nga wai o Moromona.
- 4 Ā, nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, i whakaputaina atu rātou i ngā ringaringa o kīngi Noa, e te aroha me te mana o te Atua.
- 5 Ā, nana, whai muri iho i tēnā, i kūmea iho rātou ki roto i te hereheretanga e ngā ringaringa o ngā Rāmana i te koraha; āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, i te hereherenga rātou, hei āpiti anō nā te Ariki rātou i whakaputa atu i te hereheretanga nā runga i te kaha o tana kupu; ā, i mauria mai tātou ki tēnei whenua, i konei tātou tīmata ai ki te whakapūmau i te hāhi a te Atua puta noa i tēnei whenua anō hoki.
- 6 Ināianei ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e aku teina, e koutou nō tēnei hāhi, kua tika tā koutou maumahara ki te hereherenga o ō koutou tūpuna matua? Āe rā, kua tika tā koutou maumahara ki tōna aroha me tōna manawanui ki a rātou? Ā, waihoki, kua tika tā koutou maumahara, nāna ō rātou wairua i whakaputa mai i te ao rēwera?

*The words which Alma, the High Priest according to the holy order of God, delivered to the people in their cities and villages throughout the land.*

## Alma 5

Now it came to pass that Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people, first in the land of Zarahemla, and from thence throughout all the land.

And these are the words which he spake to the people in the church which was established in the city of Zarahemla, according to his own record, saying:

I, Alma, having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things, behold, I say unto you that he began to establish a church in the land which was in the borders of Nephi; yea, the land which was called the land of Mormon; yea, and he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

And behold, I say unto you, they were delivered out of the hands of the people of king Noah, by the mercy and power of God.

And behold, after that, they were brought into bondage by the hands of the Lamanites in the wilderness; yea, I say unto you, they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word; and we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land also.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers? Yea, and have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and long-suffering towards them? And moreover, have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

- 7 Nana, nāna ō rātou ngākau i tīni; āe rā, nāna rātou i whakaoho i tētahi moe au, ā, ka oho ake rātou ki te Atua. Nana, i waenganui rātou i te pōuritanga; hei aha koa, i whakapūhanatia ō rātou wairua e te māramatanga o te kupu mau tonu; āe rā, i taiāwhiotia rātou e ngā here o te mate, me ngā mekameka o te ao rēwera, ā, tāria ana rātou e te whakangaromanga mutunga kore.
- 8 Ināianeī ā, ka ui atu ahau ki a koutou, e aku teina, i whakangaromia rātou? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, kīhai rawa rātou.
- 9 Ā, ka ui anō au, i motumotuhia ngā here o te mate, me ngā mekameka o te ao rēwera nāna nei i taiāwhio i a ratou, i wetekina ēnā? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Āe rā, i wetekina ēnā, ā, ka mākohā ō rātou wairua, ā, i waiata rātou i te aroha whakaora. Ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kua whakaorangia rātou.
- 10 Ināianeī ā, ka ui atu au ki a koutou nā te aha i ora ai rātou? Āe rā, he aha te take i manako ai rātou ki te whakaoranga? He aha te take i wetekina ai rātou i ngā here o te mate, āe rā, me ngā mekameka hoki o te ao rēwera?
- 11 Nana, e āhei ana i a au te kī atu ki a koutou—kīhai rānei tōku matua a Arami i whakapono ki nga kupu i whakapuakina ai e te māngai o Apinati? Ā, ehara rānei ia i tētahi poropiti tapu? Kīhai rānei ia i kōrero i ngā kupu a te Atua, ā, whakapono ana rānei tōku matua i ērā?
- 12 Ā, i tino nui te whakarerekētanga o tana ngākau e rite ana ki tōna whakapono. Nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, he pono tēnei katoa.
- 13 Ā, nana, nāna te kupu i kauhau atu ki ō koutou tūpuna matua, ā, he tino nui anō te whakarerekētanga i roto i ō rātou ngākau, ā, i whakaiti rātou i a rātou anō, ā, ka whakawhirinaki anō rātou i te Atua pono e ora ana. Ā, nana, i ū rātou tae atu ki te mutunga; nō reira i whakaorangia ai rātou.
- 14 Ināianeī ā nana, ka ui au ki a koutou, e aku teina o te hāhi, kua whānau wairua rānei mai koutou i te Atua? Kua whiwhi rānei koutou i tōna āhua i roto i ō koutou kanohi? Kua rongō rānei koutou i tēnei whakarerekētanga i roto i ō koutou ngākau?

Behold, he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God. Behold, they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word; yea, they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, were they destroyed? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, they were not.

And again I ask, were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love. And I say unto you that they are saved.

And now I ask of you on what conditions are they saved? Yea, what grounds had they to hope for salvation? What is the cause of their being loosed from the bands of death, yea, and also the chains of hell?

Behold, I can tell you—did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God, and my father Alma believe them?

And according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart. Behold I say unto you that this is all true.

And behold, he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God. And behold, they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

And now behold, I ask of you, my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God? Have ye received his image in your countenances? Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

- 15 Kei te whakamahi koutou i te whakapono i te hokonga o tērā nāna koutou i hanga? Kei te titiro whakamua koutou ki te karu o te whakapono, me te kite atu i tēnei tīnana ira tangata kua whakaarahia i te oranga mutunga kore, me tēnei hanga pirau e whakaarahia ana hei pirau kore, kia tū ai i te aroaro o te Atua e whakawākia ai kia rite ki ngā mahi kua mahia i roto i te tīnana ira tangata?
- 16 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e āhei ana i a koutou te whakaaro iho ki a koutou anō, nā, e rongō ana koutou i te reo o te Ariki, e mea ana ki a koutou, i taua rā: Haere mai ki ahau e te hunga kua manaakitia, nana rā, he mahinga tika ā koutou mahinga i runga i te mata o te whenua?
- 17 E whakaaro iho ana rānei koutou e āhei ana i a koutou te kōrero teka ki te Ariki i taua rangi, me te ki atu—e te Ariki, he mahi tika ā mātou mahinga i runga i te mata o te whenua—kātahi ia ka whakaora i a koutou?
- 18 Me aha hoki rānei, e āhei ana i a koutou te whakaaro iho ki a koutou anō e kawea ana ki mua i te taraiipiunara o te Atua me ō koutou wairua e kiki ana i te kaneawhea me te pōuri, e maumahara ana ki ō kaneawhea katoa, āe rā, he maharatanga pūataata mō ō koutou whakarihariha, āe rā, he maharatanga kua kaha whakatumatumahia e koutou ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua?
- 19 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e āhei ana i a koutou te titiro ake ki te Atua hei taua rangi i runga i te mā o te ngākau, ā, i te mā o ngā ringaringa? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e āhei ana i a koutou te titiro ake, e mau ana te āhua o te Atua kua whakairohia i runga i ō koutou kanohi?
- 20 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e āhei ana i a koutou te whakaaro iho ki te whakaoranga mehemea kua tukua koutou e koutou anō hei pononga nā te rēwera?
- 21 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka mōhio koutou hei taua rā kāore e taea koutou te whakaora; nā te mea kāore he tangata kotahi e taea ana te whakaora hāunga kua horoia ōna kākahu kia mā; āe rā, me whakamā i ōna kākahu kia horoia ai i ngā poke katoa, mā roto i te toto o te mea kua kōrerotia nei e ō tātou tūpuna matua ka haere mai ki te hoko i tōna iwi i ō rātou hara.

Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you? Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

I say unto you, can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

Or do ye imagine to yourselves that ye can lie unto the Lord in that day, and say—Lord, our works have been righteous works upon the face of the earth—and that he will save you?

Or otherwise, can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

I say unto you, can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands? I say unto you, can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

I say unto you, can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

I say unto you, ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.



- 22 Ināianeī ā, ko taku ui tēnei ki a koutou, e aku teina, ka pēhea ō koutou kare ā-roto, mehemea ka tū koutou ki mua i te pae whakawā o te Atua, e pokea ana ō koutou kākahu e te toto me ngā tūmomo pokenga katoa? Nana, he aha ngā mea e whakaatuhia ai e ēnei mea ki a koutou?
- 23 Nana, kāore rānei aua mea e whakaatu atu he kaikōhuru koutou, āe rā, he kaihara koutou i ngā tūmomo whakarihariha katoa?
- 24 Nana, e aku teina, e whakaaro ana koutou e whai wāhi ana tētahi mea pērā ki te noho iho i te kīngitanga o te Atua, me Aperahama, me Īhaka, me Hākopa, me ngā poropiti tapu katoa, kua whakamākia ō rātou kākahu, ā, he koha kore, e poke kore ana, ā, e mā ana?
- 25 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo; ki te mea atu koutou i tō tātou Kaihanga hei kairūkahu mai i te tūmatanga, e whakaaro ana rānei ia he kairūkahu ia mai i te tūmatanga, kāore e taea ana e koutou te whakaaro ake ka whai wāhi atu tētahi mea pērā i te kīngitanga o te rangi; engari, ka makaia atu rātou nā te mea ko rātou nei ngā tamariki a te kīngitanga o te rēwera.
- 26 Ināianeī ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e aku teina, mēnā kua rongu koutou i tētahi whakarerekētanga i ō koutou ngākau, ā, mēnā kua hiahia koutou ki te waiata i te waiata o te aroha hokonga, ko taku ui tēnei, e taea ana e koutou ināianeī te rongu pērā?
- 27 Kua hīkoi koutou, me te tiaki i a koutou anō kia hē kore ai i te aroaro o te Atua? I taea e koutou te kī, mēnā ka karangatia koutou i tēnei wā kia mate, i roto i a koutou anō, nā, kua pono tō koutou whakaitinga? Nā konā kua horoia ō koutou kākahu kia mā ai mā roto i te toto o te Karaiti, koia e haere mai ai ki te hoko i tōna iwi i ō rātou hara?
- 28 Nana, kua tīhorea te whakapehapeha i a koutou? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea kīhai koutou, nā, kāore anō koutou kia rite ki te tūtaki ki te Atua. Nana me whakarite wawe koutou; nā te mea kua tata mai te kīngitanga o te rangi, ā, kāore he oranga tonutanga mō taua tū tangata.

And now I ask of you, my brethren, how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of filthiness? Behold, what will these things testify against you?

Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

Behold, my brethren, do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

I say unto you, Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning, ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

And now behold, I say unto you, my brethren, if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble? That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

Behold, are ye stripped of pride? I say unto you, if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God. Behold ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

29 Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei, kei konei tētahi i waenganui i a koutou kāore anō ōna pūhaehae kia tīhoretia atu? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou kāore anō kia rite taua tū tangata; ā, kei te hiahia au kia whakarite wawe ia, nā te mea kua tata mai te haora, ā, kāore ia e mōhio ana hei āhea te wā e tae mai ai; nā te mea kāore e kitea hara koretia taua tū tangata.

30 Ā, ko taku kupu anō tēnei ki a koutou, kei konei tētahi i waenganui i a koutou e tāwai ana i tana teina, e pūrangatia ana rānei ngā whakatoinga ki runga i a ia?

31 Auē te mate mō taua tū tangata, nā te mea kāore ia i te rite, ā, kua tata te wā kia rīpenetā ai ia, ki te kore, kāore ia e taea ana te whakaora!

32 Āe rā, auē te mate mō koutou ngā kaimahi hara katoa; e rīpenetā, e rīpenetā, nā te mea kua kōrerotia e te Ariki te Atua!

33 Nana, ka tuku ia i tētahi pōhiri ki ngā tāngata katoa, nā, e torona atu ana ngā ringa aroha ki a rātou, ā, i mea ai ia: E rīpenetā, ā, māku koutou e whakawhiwhi.

34 Āe rā, ka mea ia: Haere mai ki ahau, ā, ka kai koutou i te hua o te rākau o te ora; āe rā, ka kai nui koutou, ā, ka inu nui koutou i te paraoa me ngā wai o te ora;

35 Āe rā, haere mai ki ahau me te kawē mai i ngā mahinga o te tika, ā, kua kore koutou e tuakina, e makaia ki roto i te ahi—

36 Nana rā, kua tata te wā, nā, ko te tangata kāore nei e whakaputa mai i te hua pai, ko te tangata rānei kāore nei e mahi i ngā mahi o te tika, koia anō te mea e whaitake ai ki te tangi me te auē.

37 E koutou ngā kaimahi hara; e koutou kua neke ake i ngā mea tekateka o te ao, e koutou kua kauhautia me te mea nei i mōhio koutou ki ngā huarahi o te tika hei aha koa kua kōtiti kē, anō nei he hipi hēpara kore, ahakoa kua karangatia koutou e tētahi hēpara, ā, kei te karangatia tonutia koutou, engari nōhea koutou e whakarongo ki tōna reo!

38 Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e karanga ana te hēpara pai ki a koutou; āe rā, i runga i tōna ake ingoa e karangatia nei koutou, koia te ingoa o te Karaiti; ā, ki te kore koutou e whakarongo ki te reo o te hēpara pai, ki te ingoa e karangatia ai koutou, nana, ehara koutou i te hipi o te hēpara pai.

Behold, I say, is there one among you who is not stripped of envy? I say unto you that such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found guiltless.

And again I say unto you, is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother, or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

Yea, even wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord God hath spoken it!

Behold, he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive you.

Yea, he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the tree of life; yea, ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

Yea, come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire—

For behold, the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit, or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same have cause to wail and mourn.

O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things of the world, ye that have professed to have known the ways of righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

Behold, I say unto you, that the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

39 Ināianeī ā, mehemea ehara koutou i te hipi a te hēpara pai, nō tēhea kāhui koutou? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ko te rēwera tō koutou hēpara, ā, nō tōna kāhui koutou; ināianeī ā, ko wai e taea ana tēnei te whakahē? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, he kairūkahu te tangata e whakahē ana i tēnei, ā, he tamaiti nā te rēwera.

40 Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e ahu mai ana ngā mea pai i te Atua, ā, e ahu mai ana ngā mea kino i te rēwera.

41 Nō reira, ki te whakaputa mai tētahi tangata i ngā mahi pai kei te whakarongo atu ia ki te reo o te hēpara pai, ā, kei te aru ia i a ia; engari ko te tangata e whakaputa ana i ngā mahi kino, koia anō e meinga hei tamaiti nā te rēwera, nā te mea e whakarongo ana ia ki tōna reo, ā, e aru ana ia i a ia.

42 Ā, ko te tangata e pērā ana me whiwhi utu ia i a ia; nō reira, ko te mate tana utu e riro i a ia, e hāngai ana ki ngā mea o te tika, kua mate ki ngā mahi pai katoa.

43 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, kei te hiahia au kia whakarongo mai koutou ki ahau, nā te mea e kōrero ana au i runga i te mauri o tōku wairua; nana rā, kua kōrero mārama ahau ki a koutou kia kore ai koutou e pōhēhē, kua kōrero rānei kia rite ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.

44 Nā te mea kua karangatia au i runga i tēnei ritenga, e ai ki te ritenga tapu o te Atua, kei roto nei i a te Karaiti Ihu; āe rā, kua whakahau ahau kia tū ai me te whakaatu atu ki tēnei iwi ngā mea kua kōrerotia e ō tātou tūpuna matua e pā ana ki ngā mea e puta mai ai.

45 Ā, ehara tēnei i te katoa. Kāore rānei koutou e whakaaro ana kei te mōhio au ake ki ēnei mea? Nana, kei te whakaatu atu au ki a koutou, nā, kei te mōhio au he pono ēnei mea kua kōrerotia e au ki a koutou. Ā, me pēhea au ki ō koutou whakaaro e mōhio nei he pono ērā mea?

46 Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou kua whakamōhioia ērā mea ki ahau e te Wairua Tapu o te Atua. Nana, kua nohopuku au, ā, kua inoi au mō ngā rā maha kia mōhio ai au ki ēnei mea mōku ake anō. Ināianeī ā, e mōhio ana ahau ake he pono ērā mea; nā te mea kua whakakitea mai e te Ariki te Atua ki ahau e te Wairua Tapu; ā, koinei te wairua o te whakakitenga kei roto nei i ahau.

And now if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold; and now, who can deny this? Behold, I say unto you, whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

For I say unto you that whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

Therefore, if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him; but whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

And whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should hear me, for I speak in the energy of my soul; for behold, I have spoken unto you plainly that ye cannot err, or have spoken according to the commandments of God.

For I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus; yea, I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the things which are to come.

And this is not all. Do ye not suppose that I know of these things myself? Behold, I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true. And how do ye suppose that I know of their surety?

Behold, I say unto you they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God. Behold, I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself. And now I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

- 47 Hei āpiti atu, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou kua whakakitea pēneitia mai ki ahau, nā, he pono ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei e ō tātou tūpuna matua, e ai ki te wairua anō o te poropititanga kei roto nei i ahau, koia anō he mea homai e te whakakitenga o te Wairua o te Atua.
- 48 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e mōhio ana ahau ake he pono ahakoa he aha rawa tāku e kī atu ai ki a koutou, e pā ana ki ērā e puta mai ai; ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kei te mōhio au ka haere mai a Ihu Karaiti, āe rā, te Tama, te Tama Kotahi Anake a te Matua, e kīkī ana i te aroha noa, te whakaaroa, me te pono. Ā, nana, ko ia tēnā e haere mai ai ki te tango atu i ngā hara o te ao, āe rā, ngā hara o ia tangata, o ia tangata e whakapono kaha nei i runga i tōna ingoa.
- 49 Ināianei ā ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, koinei te ritenga o taku karangatanga, āe rā, ki te kauhau atu ki aku teina aroha, āe rā, ki ngā tāngata katoa anō e noho ana i te whenua; āe rā, ki te kauhau atu ki te katoa, kaumātua mai, rangatahi mai, herehere mai, herekore mai; āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou e te hunga kaumātua, me koutou e te hunga pakeke, me te whakatipuranga e tupu ake ana; āe rā, kia karanga atu ki a rātou, nā, me rīpenetā, ā, me whānau mai anō.
- 50 Āe rā, e pēnei ana tā te Wairua kī: E rīpenetā, e koutou ngā tōpito katoa o te ao, nā te mea kua tata mai te kīngitanga o te rangi; āe rā, e haere mai ana te Tama a te Atua i runga i tōna korōria, i runga i tōna kaha, i tōna hōnore, i tōna mana, me tōna kīngitanga. Āe rā, e aku teina aroha, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e mea ana te Wairua: Nāna te korōria o te Kīngi o te ao katoa; ā, meake kānapa atu ai anō hoki te Kīngi o te rangi ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata.
- 51 Hei āpiti, e kī ana te Wairua ki ahau, āe rā, karangatia mai ki ahau i runga i te reo kaha, e mea ana: Haere whakamua atu me te kī atu ki tēnei iwi—E rīpenetā, nā te mea ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā e korekore rawa koutou e āhei te noho i te kīngitanga o te rangi.

And moreover, I say unto you that it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true; and I say unto you, that I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth. And behold, it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

And now I say unto you that this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation; yea, to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

Yea, thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the kingdom of heaven is soon at hand; yea, the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty, power, and dominion. Yea, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, that the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth; and also the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the children of men.

And also the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people—Repent, for except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of heaven.

- 52 Hei āpiti anō taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e mea ana te Wairua: Nana, kua whakatakotohia te toki ki te pakiaka o te rākau; nō reira ka tuakina iho ngā rākau katoa e kore nei e whakaputa mai ai i ngā hua pai, ā, ka makaia atu ki roto i te ahi, āe rā, he ahi e kore nei e weto, ā, he ahi tē taea te tinei. Nana, me mahara, kua kōrerotia e te Mea Tapu.
- 53 Ināianeī ā e aku teina aroha, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka taea e koutou te whakakāhore i ēnei kīanga; āe rā, ka taea e koutou ēnei mea te whakataha atu, me te takahi i te Mea Tapu i raro i ngā waewae; āe rā, e taea ana e koutou te neke ake i runga i te whakapehapa o ō koutou ngākau; āe rā, ka ū tonu atu koutou ki te whakakākahu i ngā kākahu utu nui me te whakatau iho i ō koutou ngākau ki runga i ngā mea tekateka o te ao, i runga i ō koutou taonga?
- 54 Āe rā, ka ū tonu koutou ki te whakaaro ake kua pai ake koutou tētahi i tētahi; āe rā, ka ū tonu koutou ki te whakatoī i ā koutou teina, te hunga e whakaiti ana i a rātou anō me te hīkoi i runga i te ritenga tapu o te Atua, i konā kūmea ai rātou ki roto i tēnei hāhi, kua whakatapua e te Wairua Tapu, ā, e whakaputa mai ana i ngā mahi e pai ana hei rīpenetātanga—
- 55 Āe rā, ka ū tonu koutou ki te huri tuarā ki te hunga rawakore, me te hunga hapa, i roto anō i te kaiponu i ā koutou rawa i a rātou?
- 56 Ā, hei whakakapinga, e koutou katoa e ū tonu ai i roto i ō koutou whakarihariha, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou koinei te hunga e tuakina iho ai, ā, e makaia atu ai ki roto i te ahi ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā wawe.
- 57 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e koutou katoa e hiahia ana ki te aruaru i te reo o te hēpara pai, puta mai koutou i te hunga whakarihariha, ā, kia motuhia mai koutou, ā, kei pā i ō rātou mea poke; ā nana, ka mukua ō rātou ingoa, nā, kāore ngā ingoa o te hunga whakairhariha e taturia ai i waenganui i ngā ingoa o te hunga tika, kia whakatutukihia te kupu a te Atua, e mea ana: E kore ngā ingoa o te hunga whakarihariha e hanumi tahi ki ngā ingoa o tōku iwi;

And again I say unto you, the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree; therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

And now my beloved brethren, I say unto you, can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these things, and trample the Holy One under your feet; yea, can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts; yea, will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your riches?

Yea, will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another; yea, will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith they have been brought into this church, having been sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works which are meet for repentance—

Yea, and will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

And finally, all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

And now I say unto you, all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things; and behold, their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled, which saith: The names of the wicked shall not be mingled with the names of my people;

58 Nā te mea ka tuhia iho ngā ingoa o te hunga tika ki roto i te pukapuka o te ora, ā, ka tukua e ahau he kāinga noho mō rātou i tōku ringa matau. Ināianei ā, e aku teina, he aha tā koutou kī hei whakahē i tēnei? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ki te kōrero whakahē koutou ki tēnei, kāore ōna tikanga, nā te mea me whakatutuki te kupu a te Atua.

59 Nā, ko tēhea hēpara i waenganui i a koutou he maha āna hipi engari kāore ia e mataara ana i aua hipi, kei tapoko mai ngā wuruhi me te horomi i tana kāhui? Ā nana, ki te tapoko mai tētahi wuruhi ki roto i tana kāhui, ka kore rānei e āia atu taua wuruhi e ia ki waho? Āe rā, hei te mutunga, mēnā ka taea e ia, ka whakangaro ia i taua wuruhi.

60 Ināianei ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kei te karanga te hēpara pai ki a koutou; ā, ki te whakarongo koutou ki tana reo māna koutou e kukume ki roto i tana kāhui, ā, ko koutou āna hipi; ā, e whakahaua ana koutou e ia kia kaua e tuku i tētahi wuruhi horomiti kia tapoko mai ki waenganui i a koutou, kia kore ai koutou e whakangaromia.

61 Ināianei ahau, a Arami, e whakahaua ana koutou i te reo o te mea nāna ahau i whakahau, kia ū tā koutou mahi i ngā kupu kua kōrerotia e au ki a koutou.

62 E kōrero ana ahau i runga i te whakahau ki a koutou nō te hāhi; ā, e kōrero ana ahau ki a koutou ehara nō te hāhi i runga i te reo pōhiri, e mea ana: Haere mai kia rumakina ki te rīpenetātanga, kia kai anō koutou i te hua o te rākau o te ora.

For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand. And now, my brethren, what have ye to say against this? I say unto you, if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

For what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock? And behold, if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out? Yea, and at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

And now I say unto you that the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

And now I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; and unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

## Arami 6

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā Arami whakakapi i āna kōrero ki te iwi o te hāhi, kua whakapūmautia i te pā o Harahemara, i whakamanahia ngā tohunga me ngā ērata, mā te whakapākanga o ngā ringaringa e ai ki te ritenga o te Atua, hei tumuaki, ā, hei kaitiro tiro i runga i te hāhi.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko ngā tāngata ehara nō te hāhi, ā, ko te hunga i rīpenetātia i ō rātou hara, ā, ka rumakina ki te rīpenetātanga, ā, ka whakawhiwhia ki roto i te hāhi.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko ngā tāngata nō te hāhi kihai i rīpenetātia i ō rātou whakariharia me te whakaiti i a rātou anō i mua i te aroaro o te Atua—ko tāku e kōrero nei ko te hunga i neke ake i te whakapehapeha o ō rātou ngākau—koia te hunga i whakaparahakotia, ā, kua mukua ō rātou ingoa, kia kore ai ō rātou ingoa e tatauria ai i waenganui i te hunga tika.
- 4 Ā, i tīmata pēnei rātou ki te whakapūmau i ngā tikanga o te hāhi i roto i te pā o Harahemara.
- 5 Nā, kei te hiahia ahau kia mārāma ai koutou i tukuna noatia atu ai te kupu a te Atua ki te katoa, nā, kihai i kaiponuhia ki tētahi te tikanga mō te huihui tahi i a rātou anō ki te whakarongo ki te kupu a te Atua.
- 6 Hei aha koa i whakahaua ngā tamariki a te Atua kia putuputu tā rātou huihui tahi i a rātou anō, me te hono tahi i roto i te nohopuku me te inoi kaha mō te oranga o ngā wairua o te hunga kihai i mōhio ki te Atua.
- 7 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i mea ai a Arami i ēnei whakaritenga ka wehe atu i a rātou, āe rā, mai i te hāhi i roto i te pā o Harahemara, kātahi ka haere atu ki te taha rāwhiti o te awa Hairona, ki roto i te raorao o Kiriona, i hangaia i reira tētahi pā, i karangatia taua pā ko te pā o Kiriona, i tū ai taua pā i te raorao kua karangatia nei ko Kiriona, kua karangatia mō te tangata i whakamatea e te ringa o Neho ki te hoari.

## Alma 6

And now it came to pass that after Alma had made an end of speaking unto the people of the church, which was established in the city of Zarahemla, he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

And it came to pass that whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

And it also came to pass that whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God—I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts—the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

And thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

Now I would that ye should understand that the word of God was liberal unto all, that none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

Nevertheless the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had made these regulations he departed from them, yea, from the church which was in the city of Zarahemla, and went over upon the east of the river Sidon, into the valley of Gideon, there having been a city built, which was called the city of Gideon, which was in the valley that was called Gideon, being called after the man who was slain by the hand of Nehor with the sword.

8      Ā, ka haere a Arami, ā, ka tīmata ki te whakapuaki i te kupu a te Atua ki te hāhi i whakapūmauhia ai i te raorao o Kiriona, e ai ki te whakakitenga o te pono o te kupu kua kōrerotia e ōna tūpuna matua, e ai anō hoki ki te wairua o te poropititanga i roto i a ia, e ai ki te whakaaturanga o Ihu Karaiti, te tama a te Atua, ko ia e haere mai ai ki te hoko i tōna iwi i ō rātou hara, me te ritenga tapu i karangatia ai ia. Ā, kua tuhia pēneitia. Āmine.

And Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church which was established in the valley of Gideon, according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had been spoken by his fathers, and according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him, according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who should come to redeem his people from their sins, and the holy order by which he was called. And thus it is written. Amen.



*Ko ngā kupu a Arami nāna nei i whakapuaki ki te iwi o Kiriona, e ai ki tāna ake tubinga.*

## Arami 7

- 1 Nana e aku teina aroha, e kitea ana kua tukuna au kia haere mai ki a koutou, nō reira ka ngana au ki te kōrero atu ki a koutou i roto i tōku reo; āe rā, mā tōku māngai ake, e kitea ana koinei te wā tuatahi kua kōrero atu au ki a koutou mā ngā kupu o tōku māngai, nā te mea i puritia katoatia au ki te nohoanga-whakawā, nā te nui o aku mahi kīhai i taea e au te haere mai ki a koutou.
- 2 Ā, kua kore i taea e au te haere mai ināianei i tēnei wā me i kore i hoatu te nohoanga-whakawā ki tētahi atu, hei whakahaere mōku; ā, kua tukuna au e te Ariki i runga i te whakaaroha nui kia haere mai ai au ki a koutou.
- 3 Ā nana, kua haere mai au i runga i te tūmanako nui me te hiahia nui kia kite ai au kua whakaiti koutou i a koutou anō i mua i te aroaro o te Atua, me te mau tonu ā koutou inoi ki tōna aroha, kia kite au i a koutou e hē kore ana i tōna aroaro, kia kite ai au, nā, kāore i pā atu tētahi āhuetanga weriweri pērā i ā tātou teina i Harahemara.
- 4 Engari kia whakapaingia te ingoa o te Atua, mōna i homai ki ahau kia mōhio ai, āe rā, mōna i homai ki ahau te hari nui whakaharahara o te mōhioranga kia whakapūmauhia anōtia rātou i te huarahi o tōna tika.
- 5 Ā, e tūmanako ana ahau, e ai ki te Wairua o te Atua kei roto i ahau, kia hari anō hoki au mō koutou; hei aha koa kāore au i te hiahia kia tau mai tōku hari mō koutou i runga i ngā whakamamaetanga me ngā pōuritanga nui kua pā mai ki ahau mō ngā teina i Harahemara, nana rā, kua tau mai tōku hari mō rātou nō muri iho i tōku kaunga i roto i ngā whakamamaetanga me ngā pōuritanga nui.

*The words of Alma which he delivered to the people in Gideon, according to his own record.*

## Alma 7

Behold my beloved brethren, seeing that I have been permitted to come unto you, therefore I attempt to address you in my language; yea, by my own mouth, seeing that it is the first time that I have spoken unto you by the words of my mouth, I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat, having had much business that I could not come unto you.

And even I could not have come now at this time were it not that the judgment-seat hath been given to another, to reign in my stead; and the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto you.

And behold, I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find that ye were blameless before him, that I should find that ye were not in the awful dilemma that our brethren were in at Zarahemla.

But blessed be the name of God, that he hath given me to know, yea, hath given unto me the exceedingly great joy of knowing that they are established again in the way of his righteousness.

And I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall also have joy over you; nevertheless I do not desire that my joy over you should come by the cause of so much afflictions and sorrow which I have had for the brethren at Zarahemla, for behold, my joy cometh over them after wading through much affliction and sorrow.

6 Engari nana, e tūmanako ana ahau, nā, kāore koutou i tētahi āhuatanga o te tino whakapono kore pērā i ā koutou teina; e tūmanako ana ahau, nā, kāore koutou i neke ake o koutou ngākau i runga i te whakapehapeha o o koutou ngākau; āe rā, e tūmanako ana ahau, nā, kāore koutou e whakatau iho ana i o koutou ngākau ki runga i ngā taonga me ngā mea tekateka o tēnei ao; āe rā, e tūmanako ana ahau, nā, kāore koutou e koropiko ana ki ngā whakapakoko, engari e koropiko ana ki te Atua pono e ora ana, me te tītiro whakamua koutou ki te murunga i o koutou hara, i runga i te whakapono mutunga kore, koia e puta mai ai.

7 Nana rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou he maha ngā mea e puta mai ai; ā nana, kei konā tētahi mea e nui kē atu tōna whakahirahiratanga i ērā mea katoa—nana rā, kāore i tawhiti te wā e ora nei te Kaihoko, ā, e haere mai nei ki waenganui i tōna iwi.

8 Nana, kāore au e kī ana ka haere mai ia ki waenganui i a tātou a te wā e noho ana ia i tōna tapenākara matemate; nana rā, kāore te Wairua i kī mai ai ki ahau ka pēnei te āhua. Nā, kāore au i te mōhio e pā ana ki tēnei mea; engari e mōhio ana au ki tēnei, nā, he mana tō te Ariki te Atua ki te mahi i ngā mea katoa e rite nei ki tana kupu.

9 Engari nana, kua kōrero mai te Wairua i tēnei ki ahau, e mea ana: Karangahia atu tēnei iwi, e mea ana—E ripenetā koutou, me te whakarite i te huarahi o te Ariki, me te hīkoi i ōna ara, koia he mea torotika; nana rā, kua tata mai nei te kīngitanga o te rangi, ā, ka haere mai te Tama a te Atua ki runga i te mata o te whenua.

10 Ā nana, ka whānau mai ia i a Mere, ki Hiruharama ko te whenua ia o o tātou tūpuna, koia tētahi puhi, he oko tongarerewa, ā, he oko kōwhiria, ka taumarutia ia, ā, ka whakahapūtia e te mana o te Wairua Tapu, me te whānau mai i tētahi tama, āe rā, ko te Tama a te Atua pū anō.

11 Ā, ka haere whakamua atu ia, e mamae ana i ngā whakamamaetanga me ngā whakawainga o ia āhua, o ia āhua; ā, ka pēnei kia tutuki ai te kupu e mea ana māna ngā mamae me ngā māuiuitanga o tana iwi e tango.

But behold, I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were your brethren; I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts; yea, I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain things of the world; yea, I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the true and the living God, and that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an everlasting faith, which is to come.

For behold, I say unto you there be many things to come; and behold, there is one thing which is of more importance than they all—for behold, the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

Behold, I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case. Now as to this thing I do not know; but this much I do know, that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

But behold, the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying—Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

And behold, he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

And he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind; and this that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

- 12     Ā, māna e waha te mate, kia wewete ai ia i ngā hereherenga o te mate e herea nei tōna iwi; ā, māna e waha ō rātou ngoikoretanga, kia kī ai tōna ate i te whakaaro, i runga i tō te kikokiko, kia mōhio ai ia e ai ki tō te kikokiko me pēhea e āwhina ai i tōna iwi e rite ana ki ō rātou ngoikoretanga.
- 13     Nā, e mōhio ana te Wairua ki ngā mea katoa; hei aha koa ka mamae te Tama a te Atua ki tō te kikokiko ritenga kia waha ai ia i ngā hara o tōna iwi, kia mukua e ia ō rātou hara e rite ana ki te kaha o tana whakaputanga; ināianei ā nana, koinei te whakaaturanga kei roto nei i ahau.
- 14     Nā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou me rīpenetā koutou, ā, me whānau mai anō; nā te mea e mea ana te Wairua ki te kore koutou e whānau mai anō tē taea e koutou te whiwhi i te kīngitanga o te rangi; nō reira haere mai kia rumakina ai ki te rīpenetātanga, kia horoia ai koutou i ō koutou hara, kia whai whakapono koutou i runga i te Reme a te Atua, ko ia e tango atu ana i ngā hara o te ao, ko ia e kaha ana ki te whakaora me te whakamā i ngā hē katoa.
- 15     Āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, haere mai, kei wehi hoki, ā, me whakataha atu i ia hara whakaeke tata katoa, e herea iho nei koutou ki te whakangaromanga, āe rā, haere mai, haere atu, me te whakaatu atu ki tō koutou Atua e hiahia ana koutou ki te rīpenetā i ō koutou hara me te uru atu ki roto i tētahi kawenata ki a ia ki te pupuri i āna whakahaunga, me te whakaatu atu ki a ia i tēnei rā mā te tapokotanga iho i ngā wai o te rumakitanga.
- 16     Ā, ko te mea e mahi pēnei ai, me te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua mai i tēnei wā haere ake nei, ko taua mea anō e mahara ai ki taku kupu tēnei ki a ia, āe rā, ka mahara ia kua kī atu au ki a ia, ka whiwhi ia i te oranga tonutanga, e ai ki te whakaaturanga o te Wairua Tapu, e whakaatuhia mai nei i roto i ahau.
- 17     Ināianei ā, e aku teina aroha, e whakapono ana koutou ki ēnei mea? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, āe rā, e mōhio ana ahau kei te whakapono koutou ki ēnei mea; ā, nā te whakakitenga a te Wairua kei roto nei i ahau te huarahi e mōhio ai au kei te whakapono koutou ki ēnei mea. Ināianei ā, nā te mea he kaha tō koutou whakapono e pā ana ki tērā, āe rā, e pā ana ki ngā mea kua kōrerotia e au, he nui tōku hari.

And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

Now the Spirit knoweth all things; nevertheless the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance; and now behold, this is the testimony which is in me.

Now I say unto you that ye must repent, and be born again; for the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

Yea, I say unto you come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction, yea, come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by going into the waters of baptism.

And whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God from thenceforth, the same will remember that I say unto him, yea, he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which testifieth in me.

And now my beloved brethren, do you believe these things? Behold, I say unto you, yea, I know that ye believe them; and the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation of the Spirit which is in me. And now because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

18 Nā te mea he rite ki tāku i kī atu ai ki a koutou mai i te tīmatanga, nā, he nui tōku manako kāore koutou i te āhuetanga weriweri pērā i ā koutou teina, waihoki, kua kite au kua ea ōku hiahia.

19 Nā te mea e kite ana ahau kei ngā ara o te tika koutou; e kite ana ahau kei te ara koutou e ārahina atu ana ki te kīngitanga o te Atua; āe rā, e kite ana ahau kei te whakatōtika koutou i ōna ara.

20 E kite ana ahau kua whakamōhioia atu ki a koutou, mā te whakaaturanga o te kupu, nā, tē taea e ia te hīkoi i ngā ara kōpikopiko; kāore rānei ia e kōtiti atu i tāna i kī ai; kāore rānei ōna ātārangi o te tahuri mai i te matau ki te mauī, mai i ngā mea tika rānei ki ngā mea hē; nō reira, he porowhita kotahi tōna huarahi.

21 Ā, kāore ia e noho ana i ngā temepara tapu kore; kāore rānei e taea ana e te pokenga, e ngā mea mā kore rānei te whakawhiwhia ki roto i te kīngitanga o te Atua; nō reira ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou ka tae mai te wā, āe rā, hei te rā whakamutungā, nā, ka noho tonu taua tangata e poke ana i roto i tōna pokenga.

22 Ināianeī ā e aku teina aroha, kua kōrero atu au i ēnei mea ki a koutou kia whakaoho au i a koutou ki tētahi whakaarotanga ki tō koutou haepapa ki te Atua, kia hīkoi hē kore koutou i mua i tōna aroaro, kia hīkoi koutou i runga i te ritenga tapu o te Atua, ki te mea kua whakaaengia nei koutou.

23 Ināianeī ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia māhaki koutou, ā, kia ngohengohe, ā, kia ngāwari; kia ngāwari ki tā te kaitonotono; e kī ana i te manawanui me te manawaroa; e pūhoi ana ki te riri i roto i ngā mea katoa; e ū ana ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua i ngā wā katoa; e inoi atu ana mō ngā mea katoa e hapa ana koutou, ā-wairua mai, ā-tūnana mai; e whakahokia ana ngā whakawhetai ki te Atua mō ngā mea katoa e whiwhi nei koutou.

24 Me whakaaro iho anō kia whai whakapono koutou, kia whai tūmanako, ā, kia whai aroha kātahi koutou ka hua tonu i ngā mahinga pai.

For as I said unto you from the beginning, that I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like your brethren, even so I have found that my desires have been gratified.

For I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness; I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of God; yea, I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word, that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said; neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong; therefore, his course is one eternal round.

And he doth not dwell in unholy temples; neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God; therefore I say unto you the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

And now my beloved brethren, I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God, that ye may walk blameless before him, that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

And now I would that ye should be humble, and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

25     Ā, mā te Ariki koutou e manaaki, me te pupuri i ō koutou kākahu kia koha kore, kia kūmea iho koutou i te mutunga kia noho iho me Aperahama, me Īhaka, me Hākopa anō hoki, me ngā poropiti tapu anō hoki i ora ai mai i te orokotīmatanga rā anō o te ao, e koha kore ana ō koutou kākahu pērā i ō rātou kākahu e koha kore ana, i roto i te kīngitanga o te rangi e kore anō e puta ki waho.

26     Ināianeī ā e aku teina aroha, kua kōrero atu au i ēnei kupu ki a koutou e rite ana ki te Wairua e whakaatuhia ana i roto i ahau; ā, e hari nui ana tōku wairua, nā tō koutou tino ū me tō koutou whakarongo ki taku kupu.

27     Ināianeī ā, kia tau te rangimārie o te Atua ki runga i a koutou, ā, ki runga anō i ō koutou whare me ō koutou whenua, ā, ki runga anō i ā koutou kāhui o ia tū, o ia tū, ā, ki runga i ngā mea katoa kei a koutou, ā koutou wahine me ā koutou tamariki, e rite ana ki tō koutou whakapono me ā koutou mahinga pai, mai i tēnei wā haere ake nei mō āke tonu atu.

And may the Lord bless you, and keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began, having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

And now my beloved brethren, I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me; and my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

And now, may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works, from this time forth and forever. And thus I have spoken. Amen.

## Arami 8

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hoki atu a Arami i te whenua o Kiriona, nō muri iho i tana whakaako i te iwi o Kiriona i ngā mea maha tē taea te tuhi, kua whakapūmautia ngā tikanga o te hāhi, e rite ana ki tāna i mahi ai i mua i te whenua o Harahemara, āe rā, ka hoki atu ia ki tōna ake whare kia whakatā ai ia i āna mahi i mahia ai e ia.
- 2 Ā, ka whakamutua pēneitia te tau tuaiwa o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tīmatanga o te tau tuangahuru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, nā, ka wehe atu a Arami i reira kātahi ka hiki atu ki roto i te whenua o Mereki, i te taha uru o te awa o Hairona, i te taha uru anō e tata ana ki ngā rohe o te koraha.
- 4 Ā, ka tīmata ia ki te whakaako i te iwi i te whenua o Mereki e ai ki te ritenga tapu o te Atua, i karangatia ai ia; ā, ka tīmata ia ki te whakaako i te iwi puta noa i te whenua katoa o Mereki.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere mai ngā tāngata katoa ki a ia puta noa i ngā rohe katoa o te whenua kei te taha e tata ana ki te koraha. Ā, ka rumakina rātou puta noa i te whenua katoa;
- 6 Nā konā wehe atu ai ia i te otinga o ana mahi i Mereki, kātahi ka haere ai mō ngā rā e toru ki te taha raki o te whenua o Mereki; ā, ka tae atu ia ki tētahi pā i karangatia ai ko Amonaiha.
- 7 Nā, he tikanga anō nō te iwi o Nīwhai kia karangatia ō rātou whenua, me ō rātou pā, me ō rātou papakāinga, āe rā, ko ō rātou pā iti katoa anō hoki, ki te ingoa o te tangata tuatahi i nōhia ai ērā mea; ā, pēnei anō i te whenua o Amonaiha.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te taenga atu a Arami ki te pā o Amonaiha ka tīmata ia ki te kauhau atu i te kupu a te Atua ki a rātou.
- 9 Nā, kua kaha mau i a Hātana ngā ngākau o te iwi o te pā o Amonaiha; nō reira kīhai rātou i aro ki ngā kupu a Arami.
- 10 Hei aha koa i kaha mahi a Arami i roto i te wairua, e nonoke ana ki te Atua i runga i te inoi kaha, kia maringi iho tōna Wairua ki runga i te iwi i roto i te pā; kia tukuna e ia kia rumakina rātou e ia ki te rīpenetātanga.

## Alma 8

And now it came to pass that Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla, yea, he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

And thus ended the ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma departed from thence and took his journey over into the land of Melek, on the west of the river Sidon, on the west by the borders of the wilderness.

And he began to teach the people in the land of Melek according to the holy order of God, by which he had been called; and he began to teach the people throughout all the land of Melek.

And it came to pass that the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land which was by the wilderness side. And they were baptized throughout all the land;

So that when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence, and traveled three days' journey on the north of the land of Melek; and he came to a city which was called Ammonihah.

Now it was the custom of the people of Nephi to call their lands, and their cities, and their villages, yea, even all their small villages, after the name of him who first possessed them; and thus it was with the land of Ammonihah.

And it came to pass that when Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah he began to preach the word of God unto them.

Now Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of the city of Ammonihah; therefore they would not hearken unto the words of Alma.

Nevertheless Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people who were in the city; that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto repentance.

- 11 Hei aha koa, i whakapakekehia e rātou ō rātou ngākau, e mea atu ana ki a ia: Nana, e mōhio ana mātou ko Arami koe; ā, e mōhio ana anō mātou ko koe te tohunga teitei i runga i te hāhi kua whakapūmautia e koe i ngā wāhi maha o te whenua, e ai ki ō tikanga; ā, ehara mātou nō tō hāhi, ā, kāore mātou i te whakaponono i ngā tikanga e pērā rawa ana te heahea.
- 12 Ināianei ā, e mōhio ana mātou nā te mea ehara mātou nō tō hāhi kāore ō mana i runga i a mātou; ā, nāu anō te nohoanga-whakawā i tuku atu ki a Nīwhaiā; nō reira ehara koe i te kaiwhakawā matua i runga i a mātou.
- 13 Nā, i te wā i kōrero ai te iwi i tēnei, me te taringa turi ki āna kupu katoa, me te tāwai i a ia, me te tuwha ki runga i a ia, me te mea anō kia panaia atu ia ki waho i tō rātou pā, ka māwehe atu ia i reira kātahi ka hikipapa atu whakatepā kua karangatia ko Ārona.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a ia e haere ana ki reira, i te pēhia iho ia e te pōuri, e taumaha ana i ngā whakapātariari nui me te auē nui o te wairua, nā te whakarihariha o te iwi kei roto nei i te pā o Amonaiha, i pahawa ake i a Arami e whakapēhia pēneitia ana e te pōuri, nana ka puta mai tētahi anahera o te Ariki ki a ia, e mea ana:
- 15 Kua manaakitia koe, e Arami; nō reira, e ara ake i tō māhunga kia hari, nā te mea e whaitake nui ana koe kia hari; nā te mea kua ū koe ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua mai i te wā i whiwhi ai koe i tō karere tuatahi i a ia. Nana, ko au ia nāna i tuku ki a koe.
- 16 Ā nana, kua tonoa au kia whakahaua koe kia hoki atu ai ki te pā o Amonaiha, me te kauhau atu anō ki te iwi o te pā; āe rā, kauhautia atu ki a rātou. Āe rā, me kī atu ki a rātou, ki te kore rātou e rīpenetā ka whakangaro te Atua i a rātou.
- 17 Nana rā, kei te rangahau rātou i tēnei wā kia taea ai e rātou te herekoretanga o te iwi te whakangaro, (nā e ai tā te Ariki) koia nei e rerekē ana ki ngā ture, me ngā whakawākanga, me ngā whakahaunga kua homai e ia ki tana iwi.
- 18 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā Arami whiwhi i tana karere mai i te anahera a te Ariki ka hoki wawe atu ia ki te whenua o Amonaiha. Ā, ka tomo atu ia i te pā mā tētahi atu huarahi, āe rā, mā te huarahi ki te tonga o te pā o Amonaiha.

Nevertheless, they hardened their hearts, saying unto him: Behold, we know that thou art Alma; and we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou hast established in many parts of the land, according to your tradition; and we are not of thy church, and we do not believe in such foolish traditions.

And now we know that because we are not of thy church we know that thou hast no power over us; and thou hast delivered up the judgment-seat unto Nephiah; therefore thou art not the chief judge over us.

Now when the people had said this, and withstood all his words, and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

And it came to pass that while he was journeying thither, being weighed down with sorrow, wading through much tribulation and anguish of soul, because of the wickedness of the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass while Alma was thus weighed down with sorrow, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city; yea, preach unto them. Yea, say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

For behold, they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

Now it came to pass that after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah. And he entered the city by another way, yea, by the way which is on the south of the city of Ammonihah.

19     Ā, i a ia e tomo atu ana i te pā ka hiakai ia, ā, ka kī  
 atu ia ki tētahi tangata: Māu e homai he kai ki tētahi  
 pononga wairua iti a te Atua?

20     Ā, ka kī atu te tangata ki a ia: He Nīwhai ahau, ā, e  
 mōhio ana ahau he poropiti koe nā te Atua, nā te mea  
 ko koe te tangata i kōrerohia ai e tētahi anahera i  
 tētahi whakakitenga: Māu hei whakawhiwhi. Nō  
 reira, me haere tāua ki roto i tōku whare, ā, māku  
 koe e whāngai; ā, e mōhio ana ahau he  
 manaakitanga koe ki ahau me tōku whare.

21     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakawhiwhia ia e te  
 tangata ki roto i tōna whare; ā, ko Amureke te ingoa  
 o te tangata; ā, nāna ngā paraoa me ngā mīti i hora ai  
 i mua i a Arami.

22     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i kai a Arami i te paraoa, ā, ka  
 mākona; ā, ka manaakitia e ia a Amureke rātou ko  
 tōna whare, ā, ka tuku whakawhetai ia ki te Atua.

23     Ā, i muri i tana kai, ā, mākona ana ia ka kī atu ia ki  
 a Amureke: Ko Arami ahau, ko au te tohunga teitei i  
 runga i te hāhi o te Atua puta noa i te whenua.

24     Ā nana, kua karangatia au kia kauhautia atu te  
 kupu a te Atua ki waenganui i tēnei iwi katoa, e ai ki  
 te wairua o te whakakitenga me te wairua o te  
 poropititanga; ā, i konei au i tēnei whenua engari  
 kīhai rātou i aro mai ki ahau, engari i panaia atu au  
 ki waho, ā, whano au ka huri i tōku tuarā ki tēnei  
 whenua mō āke tonu atu.

25     Engari nana, kua whakahaua ahau kia huri mai  
 anō me te poropiti ki tēnei iwi, āe rā, me te whakaatu  
 atu ki a rātou e pā ana ki ō rātou hara.

26     Ināianei ā, e Amureke, nā te mea kua whāngai mai  
 koe i ahau, ā, kua tukuna au kia kuhuna atu tō  
 whare, kua manaakitia koe; nā te mea i te hiakai au,  
 nā te mea i nohopuku au mō ngā rā maha.

27     Ā, he maha ngā rā i noho ai a Arami i a Amureke i  
 mua i tana tīmata ki te kauhau atu ki te iwi.

28     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tupu haere te kino o te iwi.

29     Ā, ka tau te kupu ki a Arami, e mea ana: Haere; me  
 kī atu anō ki taku pononga a Amureke, haere atu me  
 te poropiti ki tēnei iwi, e mea ana—E rīpenetā  
 koutou, nā ko te kupu tēnei a te Ariki, ki te kore  
 koutou e rīpenetā ka toro atu au ki tēnei iwi i runga i  
 tōku riri; āe rā, e kore au e huri atu i tōku riri  
 nanakia.

And as he entered the city he was an hungered,  
 and he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble ser-  
 vant of God something to eat?

And the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I  
 know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou  
 art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou  
 shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house  
 and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know  
 that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

And it came to pass that the man received him into  
 his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he  
 brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

And it came to pass that Alma ate bread and was  
 filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he  
 gave thanks unto God.

And after he had eaten and was filled he said unto  
 Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the  
 church of God throughout the land.

And behold, I have been called to preach the word  
 of God among all this people, according to the spirit  
 of revelation and prophecy; and I was in this land  
 and they would not receive me, but they cast me out  
 and I was about to set my back towards this land for-  
 ever.

But behold, I have been commanded that I should  
 turn again and prophesy unto this people, yea, and to  
 testify against them concerning their iniquities.

And now, Amulek, because thou hast fed me and  
 taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered,  
 for I had fasted many days.

And Alma tarried many days with Amulek before  
 he began to preach unto the people.

And it came to pass that the people did wax more  
 gross in their iniquities.

And the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also  
 say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy  
 unto this people, saying—Repent ye, for thus saith  
 the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in  
 mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger  
 away.



- 30     Ā, ka haere whakamua atu a Arami, i haere anō hoki a Amureke, ki waenganui i te iwi, ki te whakapuaki atu i te kupu a te Atua ki a rātou; ā, i kiki rātou i te Wairua Tapu.
- 31     Ā, i tukuna atu he mana ki a rāua, nā konā kīhai i taea rāua e ngā poka herehere; kāore rānei i taea rāua te whakamate e te tangata; hei aha koa kīhai rāua i whakamahi i tō rāua mana tae atu ki te wā i herea ai rāua e ngā herehere kātahi ka makaia ki roto i te whareherehere. Nā, i pēneitia kia whakaatu atu te Ariki i tōna mana ki a rātou.
- 32     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere whakamua atu rāua, ā, ka tīmata ki te kauhau atu me te poropiti atu ki te iwi, e ai ki te wairua me te mana i homai ai e te Ariki ki a rāua.

And Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

And it came to pass that they went forth and began to preach and to prophesy unto the people, according to the spirit and power which the Lord had given them.

*Ko ngā kupu a Arami, me ngā kupu anō a Amureke, i whakapuakina ai ki te iwi i te whenua o Amonaiha. Hei āpiti anō kua makaia atu rāua ki roto i te whareberebere, ā, kua whakaputaina e te mana whakamīharo o te Atua i roto i a rāua, e ai ki te tubinga a Arami.*

## Arami 9

- 1 Hei āpiti anō, ko au, a Arami, kua whakahaua e te Atua kia haria a Amureke me te haere atu ki te kauhau anō ki tēnei iwi, ki te iwi rānei i roto i te pā o Amonaiha, i pahawa ake i ahau e tīmata ana ki te kauhau ki a rātou, ka tīmata rātou ki te totohe ki ahau, e mea ana:
- 2 Ko wai koe? E whakaaro ana rānei koe ka whakapono mātou ki te whakaaturanga o te tangata kotahi, ahakoa ka kauhau ia ki a mātou i te pahemotanga atu o te ao?
- 3 Nā, kīhai rātou i mārāma ki ngā kupu i kōrerotia e rātou; nā te mea kīhai rātou I mōhio ka pahemo atu te ao.
- 4 Ā, i kī anō rātou: E kore mātou e whakapono ki āu kupu mēnā ka poropiti koe mō tēnei pā nui me tōna whakangaromanga i te rā kotahi.
- 5 Nā, kīhai rātou i mōhio e taea ana e te Atua te mahi i ngā mahinga whakamīharo, nā te mea he iwi ngākau pakeke, ā, he iwi kakī mārō rātou.
- 6 Ā, i kī ake rātou: Ko wai te Atua, ko tāna noa he tono i te tangata kotahi noa iho ki waenganui i te iwi, ki te whakapuaki atu ki a rātou mō te pono o ēnei mea whakamīharo nunui?
- 7 Ā, ka tū mai rātou ki te whakapā mai i ō rātou ringaringa ki runga i ahau; engari nana, kīhai rawa rātou. Ā, i tū māia atu ahau ki te whakapuaki māia atu ki a rātou, āe rā, nāku i whakaatu māia atu ki a rātou, e mea ana:
- 8 Nana, E koutou te whakatipuranga kino, ā, te whakatipuranga parori kē, kua pēhea koutou i wareware nei ki ngā whakarereanga iho a ō koutou tūpuna matua; āe rā, anō tā koutou hohoro ki te wareware ki ngā whakahaunga a te Atua.

*The words of Alma, and also the words of Amulek, which were declared unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihab. And also they are cast into prison, and delivered by the miraculous power of God which was in them, according to the record of Alma.*

## Alma 9

And again, I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people, or the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, it came to pass as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

Now they understood not the words which they spake; for they knew not that the earth should pass away.

And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

And they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not. And I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

- 9 Kāore rānei koutou e mahara ana ki tō tātou matua, ki a Rīhai, i kawea atu i Hiruharama e te ringa o te Atua? Kāore rānei koutou e mahara ana i ārahina atu rātou katoa e ia mā roto i te koraha?
- 10 Ā, kua tere wareware koutou ināianei e hia ngā wā nāna ō tātou tūpuna matua i whakaputa i ngā ringaringa o ō rātou hoariri, ā, i tiakina rātou mai i te whakangaromanga, e ngā ringaringa pū anō o ō rātou ake tuakana?
- 11 Āe rā, me i kore tōna kaha kāore nei ōna rite, me tōna aroha, me tōna manawaroa ki a tātou, kāore e kore kua hatepea atu tātou i te mata o te whenua i mua noa atu i tēnei wā, ā, kua whakataua pea ki tētahi āhuatanga mutunga kore o te pōuri me te auē.
- 12 Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou ināianei, nā, e whakahaua ana koutou e ia kia rīpenetā; ā, ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā, kua kore rawa e taea e koutou te whiwhi i te kīngitanga a te Atua. Engari nana, ehara tēnei i te katoa—nāna koutou i whakahau kia rīpenetā, ki te kore māna rawa koutou e whakangaro atu i te mata o te whenua; āe rā, ka toro iho ki a koutou i runga i tōna riri, ā, i runga i tōna riri nanakia e kore ia e tahuri atu.
- 13 Nana, kāore rānei koutou e mahara ana ki ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e ia ki a Rīhai, e mea ana: Ki te pupuri koutou i aku whakahaunga, ka whaioranga koutou i runga i te whenua? Hei āpiti anō e kīa ana: Ki te kore koutou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga ka hatepea atu koutou i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 14 Nā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara koutou, nā, i te mea kīhai ngā Rāmāna i pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, kua hatepea atu rātou i te aroaro o te Ariki. Nā, e kite ana tātou kua whakamanaia te kupu a te Ariki i roto i tēnei mea, ā, kua hatepea atu ngā Rāmāna i tōna aroaro, mai i te tīmatanga o ō rātou hē i tēnei whenua.
- 15 Hei aha koa ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ka ngāwari ake tō rātou i te rā whakawā i tō koutou, mehemea ka noho tonu koutou i ō koutou hara, āe rā, ka ngāwari ake anō tō rātou i tēnei oranga i tō koutou, ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā.

Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God? Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

And have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own brethren?

Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

Behold, now I say unto you that he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. But behold, this is not all—he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

Behold, do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land? And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord. Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

16 Nā te mea he maha ngā kupu whakaari kua torona atu nei ki ngā Rāmana; nā te mea nā ngā whakarereinga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua i meinga ai rātou kia noho tonu i te tō rātou āhuetanga kuare; nō reira ka whakaaroa te Ariki ki a rātou, ā, māna tō rātou noho i te whenua e whakaroa.

17 Ā, hei tōna ake anō wā ka meinga rātou kia whakapono ki tana kupu, ā, kia mōhio ai rātou ki te hē o ngā whakarereinga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua; ā, ka whakaorangia ngā mea tokomaha o rātou, nā te mea ka aroha te Ariki ki te hunga katoa e karanga ake ai i tōna ingoa.

18 Engari nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, ki te ū tonu atu koutou i ō koutou whakarihariha e kore ō koutou rā e whakaroahia i runga i te whenua, nā te mea ka tukuna ngā Rāmana ki runga i a koutou; ā, ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā ka haere mai rātou hei tētahi wā kāore e mōhiohia ana e koutou, ā, ka torona iho koutou i runga i te whakangaromanga katoatanga; ā, ka rite ki te riri nanakia o te Ariki.

19 Nā te mea e kore ia e tuku i a koutou kia ora ai koutou i roto i ō koutou hara, kia whakangaromia ai tōna iwi. Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo; he nui atu tōna pai ki te tuku i ngā Rāmana kia whakangaromia katoatia ai tōna iwi e karangatia ana ko te iwi o Niwhai, mehemea e taea ana tō rātou takanga ki roto i te hara me te hē, nō muri iho i te hoatutanga nuitanga o te māramatanga me te mātauranga ki a rātou e te Ariki te Atua;

20 Āe rā, nō muri iho i te mea kua whakamakautia rawatia tēnei iwi e te Ariki; āe rā, nō muri i te whakamakautanga i runga ake i ērā atu iwi, hapū, reo, huihuinga tāngata rānei; nō muri iho i te whakamōhioatanga atu i ngā mea katoa ki a rātou, e rite ana ki ō rātou hiahia, me tō rātou whakapono, me ngā inoi mō ngā mea o mua, o nāianeī, me ngā mea anō ka puta mai;

21 I te mea kua torona e te Wairua o te Atua; kua kōrerorero tahi ki ngā anahera, ā, kua kōrerotia e te reo o te Ariki; ā, i a rātou te wairua o te poropititanga, me te wairua o te whakakitenga, me ngā takoha maha anō hoki, ko te takoha o te kōrero i ngā reo, ko te takoha o te kauhautanga, me te takoha o te Wairua Tapu, me te takoha o te whakamāoritanga;

For there are many promises which are extended to the Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you; and if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people. I say unto you, Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

Yea, after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; yea, after having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people; after having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

Having been visited by the Spirit of God; having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord; and having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

22     Āe rā, nō muri hoki i tā te Atua whakaputanga i a rātou i te whenua o Hiruharama, e te ringa o te Ariki; kua whakaorangia i te matekai, i te māuiui, me ngā tūmomo mate urutā katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua; ā, kua whakapakari rātou i te taha ki te whawhai, kia kore ai rātou e whakangaromia; kua whakaputaina atu rātou i te hereheretanga i tēnei wā, i tēnei wā, ā, kua puritia, kua tiakina anō hoki tae noa mai ki tēnei wā; ā, kua whakakakea rātou tae atu ana ki te wā e whairawa ana rātou i roto i ngā mea katoa—

23     Ināianeī ā nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea tēnei iwi, kua whakawhiwhia nei ki ngā manaakitanga maha mai i te ringa o te Ariki, ka hara tauaro ki te māramatanga me te mātauranga kei a rātou, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, mehemea koinei te āhua, nā, mehemea ka taka iho rātou ki roto i te hē, ka ngāwari rawa ake tō ngā Rāmana i tō rātou.

24     Nana rā, kua whātorongia atu ngā kupu whakaari a te Ariki ki ngā Rāmana, engari kāore ki a koutou mehemea ka hē koutou; nā te mea kāore rānei te Ariki i tino whakaari, ā, i tino whakapuaki, nā, mehemea ka haututū koutou ki a ia, māna katoa koutou e whakangaro atu i te mata o te whenua?

25     Ināianeī ā, mō tēnei take, kia kore ai koutou e whakangaromia, kua tonoa e te Ariki tana anahera kia torotoro iho ki ana iwi tokomaha, e whakapuaki ana ki a rātou kia haere atu rātou me te karanga kaha atu ki tōna iwi, e mea ana: E rīpenetā koutou, nā te mea kua tata mai te kīngitanga o te rangi;

26     Ā, kāore e maha ngā rā ka haere mai te Tama a te Atua i runga i tōna korōria; ā, ko tana korōria te korōria o te Kotahi Anake a te Matua, e kiki ana i te aroha, te mana taurite, me te pono, e kiki ana i te manawanui, i te aroha, i te manawaroa, e hohoro ana ki te whakarongo atu ki ngā karanga o tana iwi me te whakautu i ā rātou inoi.

27     Ā, nana, e haere mai ana ia ki te hoko i te hunga e rumakina ai ki te rīpenetātanga, mā roto i te whakapono i runga i tōna ingoa.

Yea, and after having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord; having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind; and they having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed; having been brought out of bondage time after time, and having been kept and preserved until now; and they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things—

And now behold I say unto you, that if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

For behold, the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress; for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

And now for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying: Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

And not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory; and his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer their prayers.

And behold, he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto repentance, through faith on his name.

- 28 Nō reira, whakaritea e koutou te huarahi a te Ariki, nā te mea kua tata te wā e kokoti ai ngā tāngata katoa i te utu mō ā rātou mahi, e rite ana ki tā rātou i mahi ai—mehemea i tika ka kokoti rātou i te whakaoranga o ō rātou wairua, e ai ki te mana me te whakaputanga a Ihu Karaiti; ā, mehemea kua kino ka kokoti rātou i te whakapōuritanga o ō rātou wairua, e ai ki te mana me te hereherenga a te rēwera.
- 29 Nana ināianeī, koinei te reo o te anahera, e karanga ana ki te iwi.
- 30 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina aroha, nā te mea ko koutou aku teina, ā, e tika ana kia arohaina koutou, ā, e tika ana kia whakaputa koutou i ngā mahinga e rite ana mō te rīpenetātanga, e kitea ana kua tino whakapakekehia ō koutou ngākau ki te kupu a te Atua, ā, e kitea ana he iwi ngaro, he iwi taka koutou.
- 31 Nā, i pahawa ake i tāku, i tā Arami, kōrerotanga atu i ēnei kupu, nana, ka pukuriri te iwi ki ahau nā taku kōrero atu ki a rātou he iwi ngākau-pakeke, ā, he iwi kakī mārō rātou.
- 32 Nā taku kī atu anō ki a rātou he iwi ngaro, ā, he iwi taka rātou i pukuriri ai rātou ki ahau, ā, ka whai rātou ki te whakapā i ō rātou ringaringa ki runga i ahau, kia makaia atu au ki roto i te whareherehere.
- 33 Engari i pahawa ake, nā, kāore te Ariki i tuku i a rātou kia mauria atu au i tērā wā kia makaia atu ai au ki roto i te whareherehere.
- 34 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu a Amureke, ā, ka tū atu ia, ā, ka tīmata ia ki te kauhau atu ki a rātou anō hoki. Ināianeī ā, kāore i tuhia ngā kupu katoa i kōrerotia ai e Amureke, hei aha koa kua tuhia tētahi wāhi o ana kōrero i roto i tēnei pukapuka.

Therefore, prepare ye the way of the Lord, for the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their works, according to that which they have been—if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ; and if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their souls, according to the power and captivity of the devil.

Now behold, this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

And now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye are a lost and a fallen people.

Now it came to pass that when I, Alma, had spoken these words, behold, the people were wroth with me because I said unto them that they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

And also because I said unto them that they were a lost and a fallen people they were angry with me, and sought to lay their hands upon me, that they might cast me into prison.

But it came to pass that the Lord did not suffer them that they should take me at that time and cast me into prison.

And it came to pass that Amulek went and stood forth, and began to preach unto them also. And now the words of Amulek are not all written, nevertheless a part of his words are written in this book.

## Arami 10

- 1 Nā, koinei ngā kupu i kauhautia e Amureke ki te iwi i te whenua o Amonaiha, e mea ana:
- 2 Ko Amureke ahau; ko au te tama a Kirona, koia te tama a Ihimaera, koia tētahi uri o Aminari; ā, koia taua Aminari nāna ngā tuhinga i runga i te pakitara o te temepara i whakamāori, he mea tuhituhi e te ringa o te Atua.
- 3 Ā, he uri anō a Aminari nō Nīwhai, koia te tama a Rīhai, i puta mai ai i te whenua o Hiruharama, koia tētahi uri o Mānahe, koia te tama a Hōhepa i hokona atu ai ki Ihipa e ngā ringaringa o ōna tuākana.
- 4 Ā, nana, ehara i te mea he tangata rongo iti ahau i waenganui i te hunga katoa e mōhio ana ki ahau; āe rā, ā, nana, he nui ōku huānga me ōku hoa, ā, kua riro mai anō i ahau ngā taonga maha i runga i te mahi a ōku ringaringa.
- 5 Hei aha koa, nō muri iho i ēnei katoa, kīhai rawa au i mōhio noa ki ngā huarahi o te Ariki, me āna mea ngaro me tōna mana kāore nei ōna rite. Ko tāku i kī ai kīhai rawa au i mōhio noa ki ēnei mea; engari nana, e pōhēhē ana au, nā te mea kua nui taku kite atu i ana mea ngaro me tōna mana kāore nei ōna rite; āe rā, i roto hoki i te tiakanga i te oranga o tana iwi.
- 6 Hei ahakoa, nāku taku ngākau i whakapakeke, nā te mea he maha ngā wā i karangatia ai au engari kīhai au i whakarongo atu; nō reira i mōhio au e pā ana ki ēnei mea, engari kīhai au i pirangi kia mōhio; nō reira i haututū tonu atu au ki te Atua, i runga i te whakarīhariha o tōku ngākau, tae atu pū anō ki te rangi tuawhā o te marama tuawhitu, koia i te tau tuangahuru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā.

## Alma 10

Now these are the words which Amulek preached unto the people who were in the land of Ammonihah, saying:

I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi; and it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of God.

And Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

And behold, I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me; yea, and behold, I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

Nevertheless, after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power. I said I never had known much of these things; but behold, I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear; therefore I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart, even until the fourth day of this seventh month, which is in the tenth year of the reign of the judges.

- 7 I ahau e haere ana kia kite i tētahi whanaunga tata, nana i puta mai tētahi anahera a te Ariki ki ahau kātahi ka kī ake: E Amureke, e hoki ki tōu ake whare, nā te mea māu tētahi poropiti a te Atua e whāngai; āe rā, he tangata tapu, he tangata kua kōwhiria e te Atua; nā te mea kua nohopuku ia mō ngā rā maha nā ngā hara o tēnei iwi, ā, e matekai ana ia, ā, māu ia e whakawhiwhi ki roto i tōu whare kātahi ka whāngaia ia, ā, māna koe me tōu whare e manaaki; ā, ka tau iho te manaakitanga a te Ariki ki runga i a koe me tōu whare.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakarongo au ki te reo o te anahera, ā, ka hoki atu ki tōku whare. Ā, i ahau e haere atu ana ki reira ka kite au i tētahi tangata nā te anahera i kī ai ki ahau: Māu e whakawhiwhi ki roto i tōu whare—ā, nana, ko taua tangata anō tēnei e kōrero ana ki a koutou e pā ana ki ngā mea o te Atua.
- 9 Ā, ka kī mai te anahera ki ahau, he tangata tapu ia; nā reira e mōhio ana ahau he tangata tapu ia nā te mea nā tētahi anahera a te Atua i kī mai.
- 10 Hei āpiti anō, e mōhio ana ahau he pono ngā mea kua whakaatuhia nei e ia; nana rā ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e ora ana te Ariki, waihoki rā nāna tana anahera i tono mai kia whakamōhioitia ēnei mea ki ahau; ā, kua pēneitia e ia i tēnei Arami e noho ana i tōku whare.
- 11 Nana rā, nāna tōku whare i manaaki, nāna ahau i manaaki, me aku wāhine, me āku tamariki, me tōku matua me ōku huānga; āe rā, kua manaakitia katoatia ōku huānga katoa, ā, kua tau iho te manaakitanga a te Ariki ki runga i a mātou e rite ana ki tāna i kōrero ai.
- 12 Ināianei ā, i te kōrerotanga a Amureke i ēnei kupu ka ohorere haere te iwi, e kitea ana he nui ake i te kaiwhakaatu kotahi kua whakaatuhia mō ngā mea kua whakahēngia nei rātou, mō ngā mea anō hoki e puta mai ai, e ai ki te wairua o te poropititanga i roto nei i a rāua.

As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God; for he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

And it came to pass that I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my house. And as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house—and behold it was this same man who has been speaking unto you concerning the things of God.

And the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

And again, I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true; for behold I say unto you, that as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these things manifest unto me; and this he has done while this Alma hath dwelt at my house.

For behold, he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk; yea, even all my kindred hath he blessed, and the blessing of the Lord hath rested upon us according to the words which he spake.

And now, when Amulek had spoken these words the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were accused, and also of the things which were to come, according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.



- 13 Hei aha koa, he tokomaha anō i waenganui i a rātou i whakaaro ai kia uia rāua, kia mau ai rāua i roto i ā rāua kupu mā ā rātou rautaki tinihanga, kia kitea he mea hei whakahē i a rāua, kia tukuna atu rāua ki ō rātou kaiwhakawā e whakawākia ai rāua e rite ana ki te ture, ā, kia whakamatea rāua, kia makaia atu rānei rāua ki roto i te whareherehere, e rite ana ki te hara e whakakitea ai e rātou, e whakahēngia ai rānei e rātou ki a rāua.
- 14 Nā, ko aua tāngata anō i whai ki te whakangaro i a rāua, he rōia, he tangata kua utua, kua whakataua rānei e te iwi kia whakahaere ai i te ture i ngā wā o ā rātou whakawākanga, hei ngā whakawākanga i ngā hara o te iwi i te aroaro o ngā kaiwhakawā.
- 15 Nā, he matatau ēnei rōia i roto i ngā mahi tinihanga katoa o te iwi; ā, i pēnei kia whai pūkenga ai rātou i roto i tā rātou tū mahi.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tīmata rātou ki te uiui i a Amureke, kia raru ai ana kupu i a rātou, kia taupatupatu rānei āna kupu e kōrerotia ai e ia.
- 17 Nā, kāore rātou i mōhio e āhei ana i a Amureke te mōhio ki ā rātou rautaki. Engari i pahawa ake i a rātou e tīmata ana ki te uiui i a ia, i whēkite ia i ō rātou whakaaro, kātahi ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: E koutou te whakatipuranga parori kē kino, e koutou ngā rōia me ngā tangata arero rua, nā, kei te whakatakotohia e koutou ngā tūāpapa o te rēwera; nā, kei te whakatakotohia e koutou ngā rore me ngā māhanga hei hopu i ngā mea tapu a te Atua.
- 18 Kei te whakatakotohia e koutou ngā rautaki hei parori ngā huarahi o te hunga tika, ā, kia tōia iho mai te riri a te Atua ki runga i ō koutou māhunga, tae atu pū anō ki te whakangaromanga katoatanga o tēnei iwi.
- 19 Āe rā, he tika rawa tā Mōhia kōrero, ko ia tō tātou kīngi whakamutungā, i te wā whano ka tuku ake i te kīngitanga, nā te korenga ōna he tangata hei whakatauhia atu, e meatia ana tēnei iwi kia whakakāwanatia e ō rātou ake reo—āe rā, he tika rawa tana kōrero, nā, mēnā ka tae mai te wā e kōwhiri ai tēnei iwi i te hē, arā, mēnā ka tae mai te wā e taka iho ai tēnei iwi ki roto i te hara, ko reira anō rātou pakari ai mō te whakangaromanga.

Nevertheless, there were some among them who thought to question them, that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their words, that they might find witness against them, that they might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged according to the law, and that they might be slain or cast into prison, according to the crime which they could make appear or witness against them.

Now it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the crimes of the people before the judges.

Now these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

And it came to pass that they began to question Amulek, that thereby they might make him cross his words, or contradict the words which he should speak.

Now they knew not that Amulek could know of their designs. But it came to pass as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundations of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

Yea, well did Mosiah say, who was our last king, when he was about to deliver up the kingdom, having no one to confer it upon, causing that this people should be governed by their own voices—yea, well did he say that if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

- 20 Ināianeī ā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, he tika rawa tā te Ariki whakawā i ō koutou hara; he tika rawa tāna karanga ki tēnei iwi, mā te reo o āna anahera: E rīpenetā koutou, e rīpenetā, nā te mea kua tata mai te kīngitanga o te rangi.
- 21 Āe rā, he tika rawa tana karanga, mā te reo o āna anahera: Ka heke iho au ki waenganui i taku iwi e mau ana te mana taurite me te tika i ōku ringaringa.
- 22 Āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, me i kore ngā inoi a te hunga tika, e noho ana i te whenua ināianeī, kua torona pū anō koutou ināianeī ki te whakangaromanga katoatanga; heoi, ehara mā te waipuke, pērā i ngā tāngata i ngā rā o Noa, engari mā te matekai, mā te urutā hoki, mā te hoari hoki.
- 23 Engari nā ngā inoi a te hunga tika koutou i tohua ai; nō reira, mēnā ka peia atu e koutou te hunga tika i waenganui i a koutou kātahi ka kore rānei te Ariki e pupuri i tōna ringa; engari ka haere mai ia ki a koutou i runga i tōna riri nanakia; kātahi ka patua koutou e te matekai, e te urutā hoki, e te hoari hoki; ā, kua tata mai te wā ki te kore koutou e rīpenetā.
- 24 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i nui ake te riri o te iwi ki a Amureke, ā, ka karanga atu rātou, e mea ana: E takahi ana tēnei tangata i ō tātou ture tika, ā, i ō mātou rōia matatau kua kōwhiria nei e mātou.
- 25 Engari ka whātoro atu a Amureke i tōna ringa, kātahi ka kaha ake tana karanga ki a rātou, e mea ana: E koutou te whakatipuranga parori kē kino, he aha i mau pū ai ō koutou ngākau i a Hātana? He aha koutou e tuku ai i a koutou anō ki a ia kia whai kaha ia ki runga i a koutou, kia whakakāpōhia ō koutou karu, kia kore ai koutou e mārāma ki ngā kupu kua korerotia nei, e ai ki tō ērā pono?
- 26 Nana rā, kua whakapuaki atu ahau i tētahi whakahē ki tō koutou ture? Kāore koutou i te mārāma; e kī ana koutou kua whakahē au i tō koutou ture; engari kīhai rawa au, engari kua tautoko aku kōrero i tō koutou ture, hei whakahētanga mō koutou.
- 27 Ināianeī ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, kua tīmata te whakatakotoranga iho i te tūāpapa o te whakangaromanga o tēnei iwi e te kino o ō koutou rōia me ō koutou kaiwhakawā.

And now I say unto you that well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Yea, well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

Yea, and I say unto you that if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

But it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; now therefore, if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand except ye repent.

And now it came to pass that the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out, saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just, and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

But Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are spoken, according to their truth?

For behold, have I testified against your law? Ye do not understand; ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

And now behold, I say unto you, that the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your judges.

- 28 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Amureke i ēnei kupu ka karanga ake te iwi hei whakahē i a ia, e mea ana: Nā, e mōhio ana tātou he tangata tēnei nā te rēwera, nā te mea kua rūkahu ia ki a tātou; nā te mea kua whakahē ia i tō tātou ture. Ināianeī ā, e mea ana ia kāore ia i whakahē atu.
- 29 Hei āpiti anō, kua takahi ia i ō tātou rōia me ō tātou kaiwhakawā.
- 30 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka puru ngā rōia i ēnei mea ki roto i ō rātou ngākau kia mahara ai i ēnei mea hei whakahē i a ia.
- 31 Ā, i reira tētahi i waenganui i a rātou ko Tēroma tōna ingoa. Nā, koia tonu te tino kaiwhakahē i a Amureke rāua ko Arami, koia tonu tētahi o ngā tino mea mōhio i waenganui i a rātou, he nui āna mahi hei mahi i roto i te iwi.
- 32 Nā, ko te taonga tā ēnei rōia tino whai; ā, ka whiwhi taonga rātou e rite ana ki tā rātou mahi.

And now it came to pass that when Amulek had spoken these words the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he hath spoken against our law. And now he says that he has not spoken against it.

And again, he has reviled against our lawyers, and our judges.

And it came to pass that the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember these things against him.

And there was one among them whose name was Zeezrom. Now he was the foremost to accuse Amulek and Alma, he being one of the most expert among them, having much business to do among the people.

Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got gain according to their employ.

## Arami 11

- 1 Nā, kei roto i te ture a Mōhia te tikanga mō ia tangata i tū ai hei kaiwhakawā i te ture, mō te hunga rānei kua whakataua hei kaiwhakawā, kia utua rātou ki te ritenga o te wā i mahia ai e rātou ki te whakawā i te hunga kua mauria ki mua i a rātou kia whakawākia ai.
- 2 Nā, mehemea he nama tā tētahi ki tētahi atu, kātahi ka kore ia e hiahia ki te utu i tana nama, ka hāmenetia ia ki te kaiwhakawā; ā, ka whakahaere mana te kaiwhakawā, kātahi ka tonoa atu ngā kātīpa kia mauria atu ai te tangata ki tōna aroaro; ā, whakawākia ana e ia te tangata e ai ki te ture me ngā taunakitanga kua kawea atu hei whakahē mōna, ā, pēnei ka meinga taua tangata kia utua ai tana nama, kia murua katoatia rānei, kia peia atu rānei i waenganui i te iwi hei kaiwhānako, hei kaipāhua.
- 3 Ā, ka utua te kaiwhakawā ki te ritenga o ōna wā—he henine kōura mō te rā kotahi, he himumu hiriwā rānei, he mea taurite ki te henine kōura; ā, e rite ana tēnei ki te ture kua homai nei.
- 4 Nā, koinei ngā ingoa o ngā momo motunga o ā rātou kōura me ā rātou hiriwā, e rite ana ki ō ēnā wāriu. Ā, kua tukuna ngā ingoa e ngā Nīwhai, nā te mea, kāore i rite tā rātou mehua ki tā ngā Hūrae; engari i tīni tā rātou arotake me tā rātou mehua kia rite ai ki ngā whakaaro me ngā āhuatanga o te iwi, i ia whakatipuranga tae noa atu ki te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i whakaritea nei e kīngi Mōhia.
- 5 Nā, ko te arotakenga tēnei—he henine kōura, he teona kōura, he huma kōura me te rimini kōura.
- 6 He henumu hiriwā, he amonoro hiriwā, he eteroma hiriwā me te oniti hiriwā.
- 7 He ōrite te hemumu hiriwā ki te henine kōura, ā, tētahi anō o ēnā mō te mehua pare, me te mehua anō hoki o ngā tū kākano katoa.
- 8 Nā, ko te whakaritenga utu mō te teona kōura, kia rua ngā henine.
- 9 Ā, ko te huma kōura he rite ki te wāriu o ngā teona e rua.
- 10 Ā, ko te wāriu o te rimini kōura he ōrite ki te katoa.

## Alma 11

Now it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

Now if a man owed another, and he would not pay that which he did owe, he was complained of to the judge; and the judge executed authority, and sent forth officers that the man should be brought before him; and he judged the man according to the law and the evidences which were brought against him, and thus the man was compelled to pay that which he owed, or be stripped, or be cast out from among the people as a thief and a robber.

And the judge received for his wages according to his time—a senine of gold for a day, or a senum of silver, which is equal to a senine of gold; and this is according to the law which was given.

Now these are the names of the different pieces of their gold, and of their silver, according to their value. And the names are given by the Nephites, for they did not reckon after the manner of the Jews who were at Jerusalem; neither did they measure after the manner of the Jews; but they altered their reckoning and their measure, according to the minds and the circumstances of the people, in every generation, until the reign of the judges, they having been established by king Mosiah.

Now the reckoning is thus—a senine of gold, a seon of gold, a shum of gold, and a limnah of gold.

A senum of silver, an amnor of silver, an ezrom of silver, and an onti of silver.

A senum of silver was equal to a senine of gold, and either for a measure of barley, and also for a measure of every kind of grain.

Now the amount of a seon of gold was twice the value of a senine.

And a shum of gold was twice the value of a seon.

And a limnah of gold was the value of them all.

11     Ā, he ōrite te nui o te amonoro hiriwā ki ngā  
henumu e rua.

12     Ā, he ōrite te nui o te eteroma hiriwā ki ngā  
hemumu e whā.

13     Ā, he ōrite te nui o te oniti ki te katoa.

14     Nā, koinei te wāriu o ngā arotakenga tatau iti—

15     He haurua henumu te hipirona; nō reira, he  
hipirona mō tētahi mehua pare.

16     Ā, he haurua te hipirona o tētahi hipiroma.

17     Ā, he haurua te rea o tētahi hipiroma.

18     Nā, koinei tō ēnā tatauranga, e ai ki tō ēnā  
arotakenga.

19     Nā, he ōrite te ationo ki ngā hipirona e toru.

20     Nā, kotahi tonu tā rātou whai, arā, ko te mahi  
pūtea, nā te mea i utua rātou ki te ritenga o ā rātou  
mahi, nō reira, i whakaohoo rātou i te iwi kia  
mahi ai i ngā ngangaretanga me ngā tūmomo  
tautohetohenga me ngā whakarihariha katoa, kia  
nui kē atu ā rātou mahi, kia whiwhi moni rātou e rite  
ai ki ngā take i mauria mai ai ki mua i a rātou; nō  
reira rātou i whakaoho ake ai i te iwi ki a Arami rāua  
ko Amureke.

21     Ā, ka tīmata tēnei Tēroma ki te uiui i a Amureke, e  
mea ana: E pai ana rānei koe ki te whakautu i ētahi  
pātai ruarua e pātai ai au ki a koe? Nā, he tautōhito a  
Tēroma ki ngā mahi tinihanga a te rēwera, kia  
whakangaro ia i ngā mea e pai ana; nō reira, i kī atu  
ia ki a Amureke: E pai ana koe ki te whakautu i ngā  
pātai e pātai ai au ki a koe?

22     Ā, ka kī atu a Amureke ki a ia: Āe rā, mehemea e  
rite ana ki tā te Wairua o te Ariki, kei roto nei i ahau;  
nā te mea e kore au e kōrero i tētahi mea e tauaro ana  
ki te Wairua o te Ariki. Ā, ka kī atu a Tēroma ki a ia:  
Nana, e ono ngā oniti hiriwā, ā, māku katoa ēnei e  
hoatu ki a koe mēnā ka whakakore koe i te oranga o  
tētahi Mea Kaha Rawa.

23     Nā, ka kī ake a Amureke: E koe te tamaiti o te ao  
rēwera, he aha koe e whakawai ai i ahau? E mōhio  
ana rānei koe e kore te hunga tika e aro ki ērā momo  
whakawainga?

24     E whakapono ana rānei koe kāore he Atua? Ko  
taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, Kāo, e mōhio ana koe he  
Atua, engari he nui ake tō aroha ki ngā taonga i tō  
aroha mōna.

And an amnor of silver was as great as two  
senums.

And an ezrom of silver was as great as four  
senums.

And an onti was as great as them all.

Now this is the value of the lesser numbers of their  
reckoning—

A shiblon is half of a senum; therefore, a shiblon  
for half a measure of barley.

And a shiblum is a half of a shiblon.

And a leah is the half of a shiblum.

Now this is their number, according to their reck-  
oning.

Now an antion of gold is equal to three shiblons.

Now, it was for the sole purpose to get gain, be-  
cause they received their wages according to their  
employ, therefore, they did stir up the people to riot-  
ings, and all manner of disturbances and wicked-  
ness, that they might have more employ, that they  
might get money according to the suits which were  
brought before them; therefore they did stir up the  
people against Alma and Amulek.

And this Zeezrom began to question Amulek, say-  
ing: Will ye answer me a few questions which I shall  
ask you? Now Zeezrom was a man who was expert in  
the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that  
which was good; therefore, he said unto Amulek:  
Will ye answer the questions which I shall put unto  
you?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, if it be according  
to the Spirit of the Lord, which is in me; for I shall  
say nothing which is contrary to the Spirit of the  
Lord. And Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are  
six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if  
thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt  
ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to  
no such temptations?

Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you,  
Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou  
lovest that lucre more than him.

25 Ināianeī ā, kua rūkahu koe ki ahau i te aroaro o te Atua. kua kī mai koe ki ahau—Tirohia ēnei onoti e ono, he mea utu nui, māku e tuku ki a koe—engari i roto i tō ngākau te whakaaro kia kaiponuhia aua mea i ahau; ā, ko tō hiahia anake kia whakakore au i te Atua pono e ora ana, kia whaitake koe ki te whakangaro i ahau. Ināianeī ā nana, ka utua koe ki te taonga mō tēnei kino nui.

26 Ā, ka kī atu a Tēroma ki a ia: E kī ana koe he Atua e ora ana?

27 Ā, ka kī ake a Amureke: Āe rā, he Atua pono e ora ana.

28 Nā, ka kī a Tēroma: He nui ake i te Atua kotahi?

29 Ā, ka whakautu ia, Kāore.

30 Nā, ka kī ake anō a Tēroma ki a ia: E pēhea ana tō mōhio ki ēnei mea?

31 Ā, ka kī ake ia: Nā tētahi anahera ērā i whakamōhio mai ki ahau.

32 Kātahi ka kī ake anō a Tēroma: Ko wai ia e haere mai ai? Ko te Tama a te Atua?

33 Ā, ka kī ake ia ki a ia, Āe rā.

34 Kātahi ka kī ake anō a Tēroma ki a ia: Ka whakaora ia i tana iwi i roto i ō rātou hara? Ā, ka whakautu a Amureke ki a ia: Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe e kore ia e pēnā, nā te mea kua kore rawa e taea ana kia whakakore ia i tana kupu.

35 Nā, ka kī ake a Tēroma ki tana iwi: Tirohia kia mahara koutou i ēnei mea; nā te mea kua kī ake ia kotahi tonu te Atua; heoi kei te kī ia ka haere mai te Tama a te Atua, engari e kore ia e whakaora i tana iwi—me te mea nei he mana tōna kia whakahau ai i te Atua.

36 Nā, ka kī ake anō a Amureke ki a ia: Nana kua rūkahu koe, nā te mea e kī ana koe, nā, kei te kōrero au me te mea nei he mana tōku kia whakahau ai i te Atua nā taku kī ake e kore ia e whakaora i tana iwi i roto i ō rātou hara.

37 Ā, ko taku kupu anō tēnei ki a koe, nā, tē taea e ia te whakaora i a rātou i roto i ō rātou hara; nā te mea tē taea e au tana kupu te whakakore, ā, kua kī mai ia, nā, kāore tētahi mea poke e whiwhi ki te kīngitanga o te rangi; nō reira, me pēhea koutou e whakaorangia ai, ki te kore koutou e whiwhi i te kīngitanga o te rangi? Nō reira, kāore e taea ana koutou te whakaora i roto i ō koutou hara.

And now thou hast lied before God unto me. Thou saidst unto me—Behold these six onties, which are of great worth, I will give unto thee—when thou hadst it in thy heart to retain them from me; and it was only thy desire that I should deny the true and living God, that thou mightest have cause to destroy me. And now behold, for this great evil thou shalt have thy reward.

And Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

And he answered, No.

Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the Son of God?

And he said unto him, Yea.

And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people—as though he had authority to command God.

Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

38 Nā, ka kī atu a Tēroma anō ki a ia: Ko te Tama a te Atua te tino Matua Ora Tonu?

39 Ā, ka kī atu a Amureke ki a ia: Āe rā, koia te tino Matua Ora Tonu o te rangi me te whenua, me ngā mea katoa kei roto rā; koia te tīmatanga me te whakamutunga, te tuatahi me te whakaotinga;

40 Ā, ka haere mai ia ki roto i te ao ki te hoko i tōna iwi; ā, māna katoa ngā hara o te hunga e whakapono ana ki runga i tōna ingoa e waha; ā, koinei te hunga e whiwhi ai i te oranga tonutanga, ā, kāore e puta mai te whakaoranga i tētahi huarahi kē atu.

41 Nō reira ka noho tonu te hunga whakarihariha me te mea nei kāore i mea ai i tētahi hokonga, hāunga ko te wetewetenga o ngā here o te mate; nana rā, ka tae mai te rā e ara katoa ai te katoa i te mate me te tū i te aroaro o te Atua, ā, kia whakawākia ai rātou e rite ana ki ā rātou mahinga.

42 Nā, he mate anō e kīa ana ko te matenga o te tīnana; ā, mā te matenga o te Karaiti ngā herehere o tēnei matenga o te tīnana e wetewete, kia whakaarahia ake te katoa i tēnei matenga o te tīnana.

43 Ka whakakotahitia anōtia te wairua me te tīnana ki tōna āhua tino tika; ka whakahokia ngā peke me ngā pona ki tōna wāhi tika, kia rite pū anō ki ō tātou i tēnei wā; ā, ka mauria atu tātou kia tū ai i te aroaro o te Atua, e mōhio ana pērā i tā tātou e mōhio nei ināianei, ā, ka mau i a tātou tētahi maharatanga nui rawa mō ō tātou kaniawhea katoa.

44 Nā, ka puta tēnei whakahokinga ki te katoa, pakeke mai, rangatahi mai, herehere mai, herekore mai, tāne mai, wahine mai, tangata kino mai, tangata tika mai; ā, kua kore pū anō e ngaro atu tētahi makawe o ō rātou māhunga; engari ka whakahokia ngā mea katoa ki tōna āhua tino tika, pērā i tōna āhua ināianei, i te tīnana rānei, ā, ka mauria mai, ā, ka whakatūria ki mua i te pae whakawā o te Karaiti te Tama, me te Atua te Matua, me te Wairua Tapu, koia he Atua Ora Tonu kotahi, kia whakawākia e rite ai ki ā rātou mahinga mehemea i pai, mehemea rānei i kino.

Now Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

And Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

And he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and salvation cometh to none else.

Therefore the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death; for behold, the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost; but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

45 Nā, nana, kua kōrero atu au ki a koe e pā ana ki te matenga o te tīnana matemate, ā, e pā ana anō ki te aranga ake o te tīnana matemate. Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, nā, ka whakaarahia ake tēnei tīnana matemate hei tīnana mate kore, arā, i te matenga, mai i te matenga tuatahi pū anō ki te oranga, e whakakotahi ana ō rātou wairua ki ō rātou tīnana, e kore rawa anō e weheruatia; nō konā te katoa e meinga ana hei mea wairua, ā, hei mea mate kore, kia kore anō e pā ai te pokenga.

46 Nā, ka oti i a Amureke ēnei kupu, ka mīharo haere anō te iwi, ā, ka wiriwiri haere anō hoki a Tēroma. Ā, ka mutu pēnei ngā kupu a Amureke, koinei noa rānei tāku i tuhi ai.

Now, behold, I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body. I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

Now, when Amulek had finished these words the people began again to be astonished, and also Zeezrom began to tremble. And thus ended the words of Amulek, or this is all that I have written.



## Arami 12

- 1 Nā, i te kitenga ake o Arami kua ngū a Tēroma i ngā kupu a Amureke, nā te mea i kite ia kua mau ia i a Amureke i roto i āna rūkahu me āna nukarau hei whakangaro i a ia, ā, i tana kitenga atu kua tīmata tana wiri i te mōhiotanga ki tōna kaniawhea, ka puaki ia i tōna māngai kātahi ka tīmata ki te kōrero atu ki a ia, me te whakapūmau i ngā kupu a Amureke, me te whakamārama atu i ngā mea i tua atu i tā Amureke i mea ai.
- 2 Nā, i rangona ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e Arami ki a Tēroma e te iwi e tūtata ana; nā, he nui te whakaminenga, ā, koinei te āhua o tana kōrero:
- 3 Nā, e Tēroma, i te mea kua mau koe i roto i āu rūkahu me āu nukarau, nā, kihai noa koe i rūkahu ki ngā tāngata anake engari kua rūkahu koe ki te Atua; nana rā, e mōhio ana ia ki ōu whakaaro katoa, ā, e kite ana koe kua whakamōhiotia ōu whakaaro ki a māua e te Wairua;
- 4 Ā, e kite ana anō koe e mōhio ana māua ki tāu mahere tinihanga, e rite ki tā te rēwera tinihanga, kia rūkahu, ā, kia nukarau koe ki tēnei iwi kia huri ai koe i a rātou ki a māua, kia tāwai i a māua, ā, kia makaia atu māua ki waho—
- 5 Nā, he mahere tēnei nā tō hoariri, ā, nāna tōna mana i whakamahi ki runga i a koe. Nā, e hiahia ana au kia mahara koe, nā, ko tāku e kī atu nei ki a koe, ka kī atu au ki te katoa.
- 6 Ā, nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou katoa koinei te tāhere a te hoariri, nāna nei i whakatakoto kia hopu ai i tēnei iwi, kia kūmea iho koutou ki raro i tōna mana, kia karapotia iho koutou e āna mekameka, kia mekamekatia iho koutou ki te whakangaromanga mutunga kore, e rite ana ki te kaha o tana hereheretanga.
- 7 Nā, i te kōrerotanga ake a Arami i ēnei kupu, ka tino nui ake te wiriwiri o Tēroma, nā te mea i kaha haere te whakapakepake i a ia e pā ana ki te mana o te Atua; ā, i whakapakepakehia anōtia ia kua matatau a Arami rāua ko Amureke e pā ana ki a ia, nā te mea i whakapakepakehia ia kua matatau nei rāua ki ana whakaaro me ngā hiahia o tōna ngākau; nā te mea kua tukuna iho tētahi kaha ki a rāua e mōhio ai rāua ki ēnei mea e ai ki te wairua o te poropititanga.

## Alma 12

Now Alma, seeing that the words of Amulek had silenced Zeezrom, for he beheld that Amulek had caught him in his lying and deceiving to destroy him, and seeing that he began to tremble under a consciousness of his guilt, he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

Now the words that Alma spake unto Zeezrom were heard by the people round about; for the multitude was great, and he spake on this wise:

Now Zeezrom, seeing that thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts, and thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

And thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil, for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out—

Now this was a plan of thine adversary, and he hath exercised his power in thee. Now I would that ye should remember that what I say unto thee I say unto all.

And behold I say unto you all that this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

Now when Alma had spoken these words, Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God; and he was also convinced that Alma and Amulek had a knowledge of him, for he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart; for power was given unto them that they might know of these things according to the spirit of prophecy.

8     Ā, ka tīmata a Tēroma ki te āta uiui mārire atu ki a rāua, kia nui ake ai tana mātau e pā ana ki te kīngitanga o te Atua. Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a Arami: He aha te tikanga o tēnei mea kua kōrerotia nei e Amureke e pā ana ki te aranga ake o te hunga mate, nā, ka ara ake te katoa i te mate, ko te hunga tika me te hunga kino, ā, ka mauria atu ki te aroaro o te Atua kia whakawākia ai e rite ana ki ā rātou mahinga?

9     Ināianeī ā, ka tīmata a Arami ki te whakamārama atu i ēnei mea ki a ia, e mea ana: Kua tukuna ki ngā tāngata tokomaha kia mōhio ai ki ngā mea ngaro a te Atua; hei aha koa kua whakataua iho tētahi whakahau uaua ki runga i a rātou kia kaua rātou e whakamōhioatia atu hāunga e rite ana ki te wāhi o tana kupu e tukuna ana e ia ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, e rite ana ki tā rātou āta aro me tā rātou āta ū ki te mahi ki a ia.

10    Nō reira, ko te tangata e whakapakekehia ai tōna ngākau, koia anō te tangata e whiwhi nei i te wāhi iti o te kupu; ā, ko te tangata e kore nei e whakapakeke i tōna ngākau, ka tukuna atu ki a ia te wāhi nui o te kupu, tae atu ki te wā kua tukuna ki a ia kia mātau ai ia ki ngā mea ngaro a te Atua tae atu ki te wā e mātau ana ia ki ērā mea katoa.

11    Ā, ko te hunga e whakapakeke ai i ō rātou ngākau, ka tukuna ki a rātou te wāhi iti o te kupu tae atu ki te wā kāore tō rātou paku mōhio e pā ana ki āna mea ngaro; kātahi ka mauheretia atu rātou e te rēwera, ā, ka ārahina iho rātou e tōna hiahia ki te whakangaromanga. Nā koinei te tikanga o ngā mekameka o te ao rēwera.

12    Ā, kua marama tā Amureke kōrero e pā ana ki te mate me te aranga o tēnei āhuatanga matemate ki tētahi āhuatanga mate kore, me te kawenga atu ki te aroaro o te pae whakawā o te Atua, kia whakawākia ai tātou e rite ai ki ā tātou mahinga.

13    Kātahi, mēnā kua whakapakekehia ō tātou ngākau, āe rā, mēnā kua whakapakekehia ō tātou ngākau ki te kupu, nā konā kāore e kitea ana i roto i a tātou, kātahi ka kino nanakia tō tātou āhuatanga, nā te mea ko reira hoki tātou whakahēngia ai.

And Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God. And he said unto Alma: What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

And now Alma began to expound these things unto him, saying: It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

And therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

And they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

And Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

Then if our hearts have been hardened, yea, if we have hardened our hearts against the word, inasmuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

14 Nā te mea mā ā tātou kupu tātou e whakahē, āe rā, mā ā tātou mahinga katoa tātou e whakahē; kāore tātou e kitea kohakoretia; ā, mā ō tātou whakaaro tātou e whakahē; ā, kua kore e māia tātou ki te titiro ake ki tō tātou Atua; ā, ka hari tonu tātou mehemea he kaha tō tātou ki te whakahau i ngā toka me ngā maunga kia hinga iho ki runga i a tātou kia hunaia tātou i tōna aroaro.

15 Engari e kore tēnei e taea; me haere mai tātou me te tū i tōna aroaro i roto i tōna korōria, i roto anō i tōna mana, i roto anō i tōna kaha, i tōna nui, i tōna mana kīngi, me te whakaae ki tō tātou whakamā mau tonu he tika katoa ana whakawākanga; nā, he tika ia i roto i ana whakawākanga katoa, ā, he nui tana whakaaroha ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, ā, kei a ia ngā mana katoa kia whakaorangia ia tangata, ia tangata e whakaponono ana ki runga i tōna ingoa me te kawē mai i ngā hua pai e pai ana mō te rīpenetātanga.

16 Ināianeī ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou ko reira puta mai ai te mate, he matenga tuarua pū anō, koia te matenga o te wairua; ko reira tētahi wā ko te tangata e mate nei i ōna hara, e rite ana ki te matenga o te tinana, ka mate anō hoki i te matenga o te wairua; āe rā, ka mate ia ki ngā mea e pā ana ki te tika.

17 Ko reira te wā ka rite ō rātou whakamamaetanga ki tētahi roto ahi whānārīki, ko tōna mura e kake tonu ana mō āke tonu atu; ā, ko reira te wā e mekamekatia iho rātou ki tētahi whakangaromanga mutunga kore, e rite ana ki te kaha me te hereherenga o Hātana, nāna hoki rātou i whakaheke iho ki raro i tāna i pai ai.

18 Kāti, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka rite rātou me te mea nei kāore i meatia tētahi whakaoranga; nā te mea kāore rātou e taea ana te whakaora i runga i tā te Atua tika; ā, tē taea rātou e te mate, nā te mea kāore atu he pokenga.

19 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te whakakapinga a Arami i ēnei kupu, ka tino mīharo haere te iwi;

For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

But this cannot be; we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

And now behold, I say unto you then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death; yea, he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

Then, I say unto you, they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had made an end of speaking these words, the people began to be more astonished;

20 Engari tērā anō tētahi tangata ko Anationa te ingoa, koia te kaiwhakahaere matua i waenganui i a rātou, ka haere mai ia ki mua me te kī atu ki a ia: He aha tēnei kua kōrerotia nei e koe, ka ara ake te tangata i te mate kātahi ka panonitia mai i tēnei āhuatanga matemate ki tētahi āhuatanga mate kore, nā, e kore te wairua e mate atu?

21 He aha te tikanga o te karaipiture, e mea ana i whakanohohia e te Atua te kerupima me te hoari mura i te taha rāwhiti o te kāri o Erene, kei uru atu ō tātou mātua tuatahi me te kai i ngā hua o te rākau o te ora, ā, ka ora tonu mō āke tonu atu? Ā, pēnei tātou kite ai kāore rawa he huarahi noa e ora ai rāua mō āke tonu atu.

22 Nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Koinei te mea whano ka whakamāramahia e au. Nā, ka kite tātou i taka ai a Arama i runga i te kainga i te hua i rāhuitia ai, e ai ki te kupu a te Atua; ā, ka kite pēnei tātou, nā tēnei takanga, kua meinga ngā tāngata katoa hei iwi ngaro, ā, hei iwi taka.

23 Ināianeī ā nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, mehemea i āhei i a Arama te kai i te hua o te rākau o te ora i taua wā, kua kore he matenga, ā, kua koretake te kupu, e meinga ana te Atua hei kairūkahu, nā te mea i kī ai ia: Ki te kai koe, ka mate rawa koe.

24 Ā, e kite ana tātou e tau mai ana te mate ki runga i te tangata, āe rā, ko te matenga kua kōrerotia nei e Amureke, koia nei te matenga o te tinana; hei aha koa kua tukuna he wā ki te tangata kia ripenetā; nō reira i meinga tēnei oranga hei āhuatanga whakamātau; he wā e whakarite ai te tangata kia tūtaki ai ki te Atua; he wā e whakarite ai mō taua āhuatanga mutunga kore kua kōrerotia nei e māua, koia hei muri atu i te aranga o te hunga mate.

25 Nā, me i kore te mahere o te hokonga, kua whakatakotoria mai i te orokohanganga o te ao, kua kore i taea tētahi aranga o te hunga mate; engari i whakatakotoria tētahi mahere o te hokonga, mā tēnei e pahawa ake te aranga o te hunga mate, kua kōrerotia nei.

But there was one Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said unto him: What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state, that the soul can never die?

What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever? And thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

Now Alma said unto him: This is the thing which I was about to explain. Now we see that Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

And now behold, I say unto you that if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death; nevertheless there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

Now, if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead; but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

- 26 Ināianeī ā nana, mehemea i taea e ō tātou mātua tuatahi te haere atu ki te tango i tō te rākau o te ora kua pōuri rawa rāua mō āke tonu atu, kāore kau tētahi āhuetanga whakamātautau; ā, pēnei kua āraia atu te mahere o te hokonga, ā, kua koretake noa te kupu a te Atua, hei mea mana kore.
- 27 Engari nana, kāore i pērā; engari kua whakataua te tikanga ki te tangata kia mate rawa rātou; ā, hei tua i te mate, me haere ake rātou ki te whakawākanga, ko taua whakawākanga pū anō kua kōrerotia nei, koia te mutunga.
- 28 Ā, i muri iho i tā te Atua whakatau kia puta mai ai ēnei mea ki te tangata, nana, kātahi ia ka kite atu e tika pū ana kia mōhio ai te tangata e pā ana ki ngā mea i whakarite ai ia mō rātou;
- 29 Nō reira i tonoa ai e ia he anahera ki te kōrerorero ki a rātou, nāna te tangata i mea kia tirohia tōna korōria.
- 30 Ā, i tīmata rātou mai i taua wā haere ake nei ki te karanga i tōna ingoa; nō reira kōrero tahi ai te Atua ki te tangata, ā, i whakamōhiohia atu ki a rātou te mahere o te hokonga, i whakaritea i te orokohanganga o te ao; ā, nāna tēnei i whakamōhio atu ki a rātou e rite ana ki tō rātou whakapono, me tā rātou rīpenetātanga, me ā rātou mahinga tapu.
- 31 Nā reira, i tukuna e ia he whakahaunga ki te tangata, i te mea kua takahia wawetia e rātou ngā whakahaunga tuatahi mō te taha ki ngā mea o nāianeī, ā, e meinga ana kia rite ki ngā atua, e mōhio ana te pai i te kino, e whakatauhia ana rātou anō i tētahi āhuetanga ki te mahi, kua whakatauhia rānei i tētahi āhuetanga kia mahi ki tā rātou e pai ai, e āhuareka ai, ki te mahi kino, ki te mahi pai rānei—
- 32 Nō reira i hoatu e te Atua ki a rātou he whakahaunga, whai muri iho i te whakamōhio tangata ki a rātou te mahere o te hokonga, kia kaua rātou e mahi kino, ko te matenga tuarua te utu mō reira, koia tētahi matenga mau tonu mō te taha ki ngā mea o te tika; nā te mea kāore e whaimana ana te mahere o te hokonga ki runga i ngā mea pērā, nā te mea tē taea ngā mahi a te tika te whakangaro, e rite ana ki te painga nui o te Atua.

And now behold, if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

But behold, it was not so; but it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

And after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

Therefore he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

And they began from that time forth to call on his name; therefore God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world; and this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

Wherefore, he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good—

Therefore God gave unto them commandments, after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

- 33 Engari i karanga te Atua ki ngā tāngata, i runga i te ingoa o tana Tama, (koia ko te mahere o te hokonga kua whakatakotoria nei) e mea ana: Ki te rīpenetā koutou, ki te kore hoki e whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau, kātahi au ka aroha ki a koutou, mā roto i taku Tama Kotahi Anake;
- 34 Nō reira, ko te tangata e rīpenetā ai, e kore ai rānei e whakapakeke i tōna ngākau, ka whai kerēme ia ki te whakaaroha mā roto i tāku Tama Kotahi Anake, ki tētahi murunga i ō rātou hara; koinei ngā mea e tomo mai ai ki taku okiokinga.
- 35 Ā, ko te tangata e whakapakeke i tōna ngākau me te mahi i te kino, nana, ko taku oati tēnei i runga i tōku riri, e kore ia e tomo mai ki taku okiokinga.
- 36 Ināianei ā, e aku teina, nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ki te whakapakeke koutou i ō koutou ngākau e kore koutou e tomo atu ki te okiokinga o te Ariki; nō reira e whakapātaritari ana ō koutou hara i a ia, nā konā, tukuna iho ia i tōna riri ki runga i a koutou e rite ana ki te whakapātaritari tuatahi, āe rā, e ai ki tana kupu i te whakapātaritari whakamutunga me te tuatahi anō hoki, ki te whakangaromanga mau tonu o ō koutou wairua; nō reira, e ai ki tana kupu, ehara i te mea mō te matenga tuatahi anake, engari mō te matenga whakamutunga anō hoki.
- 37 Ināianei ā, e aku teina, i te mea e mātau ana tātou ki ēnei mea, ā, e pono ana, kia rīpenetā tātou, ā, kia kua tātou e whakapakeke i ō tātou ngākau, kia kore ai e whakapātaritari i te Ariki tō tātou Atua kia tōia iho mai tōna riri ki runga i a tātou i ēnei āna whakahaunga tuarua kua homai nei e ia ki a tātou; engari kia tomo atu rā tātou ki roto i te okiokinga o te Atua, kua whakaritea nei i runga i tana kupu.

But God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

Therefore, whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins; and these shall enter into my rest.

And whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

And now, my brethren, behold I say unto you, that if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord; therefore your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

And now, my brethren, seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us; but let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to his word.

## Arami 13

- 1 Hei āpiti anō, e aku teina, e hiahia ana ahau kia tohutohu i ō koutou hinengaro kia titiro whakamua ki te wā i homai ai e te Ariki te Atua ēnei whakahaunga ki ana tamariki; ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia maumahara koutou, nā, i whakamanahia e te Ariki te Atua he tohunga, e rite ana ki te ritenga tapu, koia he mea e rite ana ki te ritenga o tana Tama, kia whakaakona ēnei mea ki te iwi.
- 2 Ā, i whakamanahia ērā tohunga i runga i te ritenga o tana Tama, i runga i tētahi ritenga e mōhio ai te iwi me pēhea e titiro whakamua atu ki tana Tama mō te hokonga.
- 3 Ā, koinei te ritenga i whakamanahia ai rātou—he mea karanga, ā, he mea whakarite mai i te orokohanganga o te ao e ai ki te mātauranga tōmuatanga o te Atua, he meatanga hoki nā tō rātou tino whakapono nui me ā rātou mahi pai; i te tuatahi rā i waiho ai rātou hei whiriwhiri i te pai, i te kino rānei; nō reira i whiriwhiri rātou i te pai, ā, kua whakahaeretia te whakapono tino nui, kua karangatia ki tētahi karangatanga tapu, āe rā, ki taua karangatanga tapu i whakaritea nei, e rite ana anō, ki tētahi hokonga whakatakātū mō ngā mea pērā.
- 4 Ā, pēnei kua karangatia rātou ki tēnei karangatanga tapu he mea nā tō rātou whakapono, i ērā atu rā e whakaparahako ana i te Wairua o te Atua i runga i te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau me te kāpōtanga o ō rātou hinengaro, heoi, me i kore tēnei tērā pea kua nui tō rātou waimārie pērā i ā rātou teina.
- 5 Hei whakarāpoto rānei, i taurite tō rātou tūrangawaewae ki tō ō rātou teina i te tuatahi; pēnei he mea whakarite tēnei karangatanga mai i te orokohanganga o te ao nā te mea kua kore ngā mea pērā e whakapakeke i ō rātou ngākau, he meatanga mā roto i te whakamārietanga o te Tama Kotahi Anake, i whakaritea ai—
- 6 Ā, i karangatia pēneitia e tēnei karangatanga tapu, ā, ka karangatia ki te tohungatanga teitei o te ritenga tapu o te Atua, ki te whakaako i ana whakahaunga ki ngā tamariki a te tangata, kia tomo anō hoki rātou ki roto i tōna okiokinga—

## Alma 13

And again, my brethren, I would cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children; and I would that ye should remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

And those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

And this is the manner after which they were ordained—being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works; in the first place being left to choose good or evil; therefore they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling, yea, with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption for such.

And thus they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds, while, if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

Or in fine, in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren; thus this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared—

And thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest—

7 E rite ana tēnei tohungatanga teitei ki te ritenga o tana Tama, ko taua ritenga he mea i ahu mai ai i te orokohanganga o te ao; kia pēnei kē rānei te kōrero, kāore he tīmatanga o ōna rā, kāore he mutunga rānei o ōna tau, kua whakaritea mai i te āke tonu atu ki te āke tonu atu katoa, e ai ki tōna mātauranga tōmuatanga o ngā mea katoa—

8 Nā, i whakamanahia rātou i runga i tēnei ritenga— kua karangatia ki tētahi karangatanga tapu, kua whakamanahia ki tētahi tikanga tapu, ā, e tango ana ki runga i a rātou te tohungatanga teitei o te ritenga tapu, ko taua karangatanga, me taua tikanga teitei, me taua tohungatanga teitei, kāore ōna tīmatanga, kāore rānei ōna mutunga—

9 Ka meinga pēnei hei tohunga teitei mō āke tonu atu, i runga i te ritenga o te Tama, ko te Tama Kotahi Anake a te Matua, kāore he tīmatanga o ōna rā, kāore rānei he mutunga o ōna tau, kua kī i te aroha noa, te tika me te pono. Ā, koia anō. Āmine.

10 Nā, he pērā anō ki tāku i kī ai e pā ana ki te ritenga tapu, tēnei tohungatanga teitei rānei, he tokomaha ngā mea i whakamanahia, ā, i meinga hei tohunga teitei o te Atua; ā, he mea nā tō rātou tino whakapono nui me tā rātou rīpenetātanga, me tō rātou tika i te aroaro o te Atua, e whiriwhiri ana rātou ki te rīpenetā me te mahi tika, kihai i te whakangaronga;

11 Nō reira, i karangatia rātou i runga i tēnei ritenga tapu, kātahi ka whakatapua, ā, ka whakamākia ō rātou kākahu mā roto i te toto o te Reme.

12 Nā, ko rātou nei, i muri iho i tā rātou whakatapunga e te Wairua Tapu, kua meatia ō rātou kākahu kia mā, he mea poke kore, ā, he mea kohakore i te aroaro o te Atua, tē taea te titiro atu ki te hara hāunga i runga i te konekone; ā, he tokomaha, i whakatapua ai, ā, i tomo atu ai ki roto i te okiokinga o te Ariki tō rātou Atua.

13 Ināianei ā, e aku teina, e hiahia ana ahau kia whakaiti koutou i a koutou anō i te aroaro o te Atua, me te whakaputa mai i ngā hua e tika ana mō te rīpenetātanga, kia tomo anō koutou ki roto i taua okiokinga.

This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world; or in other words, being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things—

Now they were ordained after this manner—being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end—

Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth. And thus it is. Amen.

Now, as I said concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God; and it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and work righteousness rather than to perish;

Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified, and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

Now they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence; and there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now, my brethren, I would that ye should humble yourselves before God, and bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.



- 14     Āe rā, whakaitia koutou anō kia pērā i te iwi i ngā rā o Merekihereke, koia tētahi tohunga teitei i runga i tēnei ritenga anō kua kōrerotia nei e au, nāna hoki te tohungatanga teitei i tango ki runga ki a ia mō āke tonu atu.
- 15     Ā, i tukuna e Aperahama ngā whakatekau ki tēnei Merekihereke anō; āe rā, nā tō tātou matua a Aperahama anō i tuku i ngā whakatekau kotahi hau-ngahuru o ngā mea katoa i a ia.
- 16     Nā, i tukuna ēnei tikanga tapu i runga i tēnei ritenga, mā reira titiro whakamua atu ai te iwi i runga i te Tama a te Atua, koia tētahi momo o tōna ritenga, ko tōna ritenga rānei, ā, ka pēneitia e titiro whakamua atu ai rātou ki a ia mō tētahi murunga i ō rātou hara, kia tomo atu ai rātou ki roto i te okiokinga o te Ariki.
- 17     Nā, he kīngi tēnei Merekihereke i runga i te whenua o Harema; ā, kua pakari haere tōna iwi i runga i te hē me te mōrikarika; āe rā, kua kōtiti kē atu rātou katoa; kua kī rātou i ngā tūmomo whakaritariha katoa;
- 18     Engari, i whakahaeretia e Merekihereke te whakapono nui, kātahi ka whiwhi i te tūranga o te tohunga teitei e rite ana ki te ritenga tapu o te Atua, i kauhau atu i te rīpenetātanga ki tōna iwi. Ā nana, i rīpenetā rātou; ā, i whakapūmautia e Merekihereke te rangimārie i te whenua i ōna rā; nō reira ia i karangatia ai ko te wheao o te rangimārie, nā te mea ko ia te kīngi o Harema; ā, i whakahaere ia i raro i tōna matua.
- 19     Nā, he tokomaha i mua i a ia, ā, he tokomaha anō whai muri iho, engari kāore tētahi i nui ake; nō reira, kua kaha kōrero rātou mōna.
- 20     Nā, ehara i te mea me tōai au i tēnei; kua ranea tāku i kōrero ai. Nana, kei mua i a koutou ngā karaipiture; mēnā ka whakariroi koutou i ērā ka ai tēnā hei whakangaromanga mō koutou.
- 21     Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Arami i ēnei kupu ki a rātou, ka torona atu tōna ringa ki a rātou kātahi ka karanga atu i runga i te reo kaha, e mea ana: Ko tēnei te wā kia rīpenetā ai, nā te mea e tata mai ana te rā whakaoranga;

Yea, humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek, who was also a high priest after this same order which I have spoken, who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

And it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

Now these ordinances were given after this manner, that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God, it being a type of his order, or it being his order, and this that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

Now this Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem; and his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea, they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of wickedness;

But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of God, did preach repentance unto his people. And behold, they did repent; and Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days; therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king of Salem; and he did reign under his father.

Now, there were many before him, and also there were many afterwards, but none were greater; therefore, of him they have more particularly made mention.

Now I need not rehearse the matter; what I have said may suffice. Behold, the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to your own destruction.

And now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words unto them, he stretched forth his hand unto them and cried with a mighty voice, saying: Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

22 Āe rā, ko te reo o te Ariki, mā te reo o ngā anahera, e whakapuaki atu i tērā ki ngā iwi katoa; āe rā, kei te whakapuakina tērā, kia rongo ai rātou i te rongo whakahari nui; āe rā, e whakapuaki ana ia i te rongo whakahari nui ki waenganui i tana iwi katoa, āe rā, tae atu ana ki a rātou e marara atu ana ki runga i te mata o te whenua; nā reira kua haere mai rātou ki a tātou.

23 Ā, kua whakamōhiotia ērā ki a tātou i runga i ngā kupu mārama, kia mārama ai tātou, kia kore ai tātou e pōhēhē; ā, i pēnei ai nā te mea he manene tātou i tētahi whenua kē; nō reira, kua makautia nuitia tātou, nā te mea kua whakapuakina mai ēnei rongo whakahari ki a tātou i ngā wāhi katoa o te māra waina.

24 Nana rā, e whakapuaki ana ngā anahera ki ngā mea tokomaha i tēnei wā i roto i tō tātou whenua; ā, ko tōna tikanga he whakarite i ngā ngākau o ngā tamariki a te tangata kia whiwhi ai i tana kupu hei te wā o tana haerenga mai i runga i tana korōria.

25 Ināianeī ā, e tatari noa ana tātou kia rongo ai i te rongo whakahari e whakapuakina ai e te māngai o ngā anahera, mō tana haerenga mai; nā te mea e tata mai ana te wā, kāore tātou i te mōhio e pēhea nei tōna tata. E tino manako ana au ki te Atua kia puta mai ai i ōku rā; engari ka hari tonu au ahakoa ka puta wawe, ahakoa ka whakaroa.

26 Ā, ka whakakitea ki ngā tangata tika, ki ngā tangata tapu, e te māngai anahera, hei te wā o tana haerenga mai, kia tutuki ai i ngā kupu a ō tātou tūpuna matua, e ai ki ērā mea kua kōrerotia e rātou e pā ana ki a ia, i rite nei ki te wairua o te poropititanga i roto nei i a rātou.

27 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, e popore ana au nō te pokapū o tōku ngākau, āe rā, i runga i te mānukanuka nui tae atu ki te mamaetanga, kia whakarongo mai koutou ki aku kupu, me te ruke atu i ō koutou hara, ā, kia kaua e whakaroahia atu te rā o tō rīpenetātanga;

Yea, and the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it unto all nations; yea, doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy; yea, and he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people, yea, even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the earth; wherefore they have come unto us.

And they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land; therefore, we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

For behold, angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land; and this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

And now we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming; for the time cometh, we know not how soon. Would to God that it might be in my day; but let it be sooner or later, in it I will rejoice.

And it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

And now, my brethren, I wish from the inmost part of my heart, yea, with great anxiety even unto pain, that ye would hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

28 Engari, kia whakaiti koutou i a koutou anō i mua i te Atua, me te karanga ake i tōna ingoa tapu, me te mataara, me te inoi tonu, kia kua koutou e nui ake tō koutou whakawainga i ērā e taea ana te waha, ā, kia ārahina pērātia e te Wairua Tapu, e meinga ana hei mea whakaiti, hei mea mähaki, hei mea ngākau ngāwari, hei mea manawaroa, e kī ana i te aroha, ā, e pūhoi ana ki te riri;

29 E mau ana te whakapono ki te Ariki; e manako ana anō ka whiwhi koutou i te oranga tonutanga; e mau tonu ana i ngā wā katoa te aroha o te Atua i roto i ō koutou ngākau, kia whakaarahia ake koutou hei te rā whakamutunga me te tomo atu ki roto i tōna okiokinga.

30 Ā, mā te Ariki te rīpenetātanga e tuku ki a koutou, kia kore ai e tōia iho mai tōna riri ki runga i a koutou, kia kore ai koutou e hereherea iho e ngā mekameka o te ao rēwera, kia kore ai koutou e mamae i te matenga tuarua.

31 Ā, i nui atu ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e Arami ki te iwi, kīhai i tuhia i tēnei pukapuka.

But that ye would humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, and thus be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and all long-suffering;

Having faith on the Lord; having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life; having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

And may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

And Alma spake many more words unto the people, which are not written in this book.

## Arami 14

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tana whakakapi i āna kōrero ki te iwi he tokomaha te hunga i whakaponoa ai ki ana kupu, ā, ka tīmata ki te rīpenetā, ā, ki te tirohia ngā karaipiture.
- 2 Engari i te hiahia te wāhi nui o rātou ki te whakangaro i a Arami rāua ko Amureke; nā te mea i riri rātou ki a Arami, nā te mārāma o āna kupu ki a Tēroma; ā, i kī ake anō rātou, nā, kua rūkahu a Amureke ki a rātou, ā, kua taunu hoki i tō rātou ture, ki ō rātou rōia, ki ō rātou kaiwhakawā anō hoki.
- 3 Ā, i te riri anō rātou ki a Arami rāua ko Amureke; nā te mea hoki i whakaatu mārāma atu rāua ki ō rātou whakariharihatanga, i whai rātou kia whakamatea munahia rāua.
- 4 Engari i pahawa ake, nā, kīhai rawa rātou; engari i mau rāua i a rātou, ā, ka hereheretia rāua ki ngā taura kaha, ā, ka mauria atu rāua ki te aroaro o te kaiwhakawā matua o te whenua.
- 5 Ā, ka haere atu te iwi me te whakahē i a rāua—e whakaaturia ana, nā, kua taunu rāua i te ture, me ō rātou rōia, ō rātou kaiwhakawā o te whenua, o te iwi katoa anō hoki e noho ana i te whenua; ā, i whakaaturia anō hoki kotahi tonu te Atua, ā, māna tana Tama e tono iho ki waenganui i te iwi, engari e kore ia e whakaora i a rātou; ā, he maha ngā mea i whakaaturia ai e te iwi mō Arami rāua ko Amureke. Nā, i pēnētia i te aroaro o te kaiwhakawā matua o te whenua.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mīharo a Tēroma i ngā kupu kua kōrerotia nei; ā, i mōhio anō ia e pā ana ki te kāpōtanga o ngā hinengaro, nāna hoki i mea i waenganui i te iwi i runga i āna kōrero rūkahu; ā, ka tīmata ake te rakanga o tōna wairua i raro i te mātau ki ana hē; āe rā, ka tīmata ake tana karapotitanga e te mamae o te ao rēwera.

## Alma 14

And it came to pass after he had made an end of speaking unto the people many of them did believe on his words, and began to repent, and to search the scriptures.

But the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom; and they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law and also against their lawyers and judges.

And they were also angry with Alma and Amulek; and because they had testified so plainly against their wickedness, they sought to put them away privily.

But it came to pass that they did not; but they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

And the people went forth and witnessed against them—testifying that they had reviled against the law, and their lawyers and judges of the land, and also of all the people that were in the land; and also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them; and many such things did the people testify against Alma and Amulek. Now this was done before the chief judge of the land.

And it came to pass that Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; and he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he had caused among the people by his lying words; and his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

- 7     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tīmata ia ki te karanga atu ki te iwi, e mea ana: Nana, ko au te mea hē, ā, he koha kore ēnei tangata i te aroaro o te Atua. Ā, ka tīmata tana tohe atu mō rāua i taua wā ake; engari i taunu rātou i a ia, e mea ana: Kua nohoia hoki koe e te rēwera? Ā, ka tuwha rātou ki a ia, ā, ka makaia atu ia i waenganui i a rātou, me te hunga anō i whakapono ai i ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e Arami rāua ko Amureke; ā, ka makaia atu rātou, ā, ka tonoa he tangata hei āki i a rātou ki ngā kōhatu.
- 8     Ā, ka mauria atu ā rātou wāhine me ā rātou tamariki ki te wāhi kotahi, ā, ko ngā tangata i whakapono ai, i whakaakona ai rānei kia whakapono ai ki te kupu a te Atua, nā, i meatia e rātou kia makaia atu rātou ki roto i te ahi; ā, i mauria hoki e rātou ā rātou tuhinga i mau nei ngā karaipiture tapu, ā, ka makaia atu ērā anō ki roto i te ahi, kia tahuna ai, ā, kia whakangaromia ai e te ahi.
- 9     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mauria atu a Arami rāua ko Amureke, ā, ka kawea atu rāua ki te wāhi kōhuru, kia kitea ai e rāua te whakangaromanga o te hunga i horomia ake ai e te ahi.
- 10    Ā, ka kite a Amureke i ngā mamae o ngā wāhine me ngā tamariki i a rātou e horomia ana i te ahi, ka mamae anō ia; ā, ka kī atu ia ki a Arami: Me pēhea tāua e mātakitaki ai i tēnei mea whakarihariha? Nō reira tukuna tāua kia torona atu ō tāua ringaringa, me te whakamahi anō i tā te Atua mana kei roto nei i a tāua, me te whakaora i a rātou i ngā muramura.
- 11    Engari, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Ko tā te Wairua akiaki i ahau, kia kaua e torona atu tōku ringa; nana rā, e whakawhiwhia ake rātou e te Ariki anō, i te korōria; ā, e tukuna ana rātou e ia kia mahia ai tēnei mea, kia mahia rānei tēnei mea e te iwi ki a rātou, e ai ki te pakeke o ō rātou ngākau, kia tika ai ngā whakawākanga māna e karawhiu i runga i tōna riri ki a rātou; ā, ka ai ngā toto o te hunga harakore hei whakahē i a rātou, āe rā, ka nui rawa te karanga hei whakahē i a rātou a te rā whakamutunga.
- 12    Nā, ka kī atu a Amureke ki a Arami: Nana, tērā pea ka tahuna anōtia tāua e rātou.
- 13    Ā, ka kī atu a Arami: Kia waiho tēnā ki tā te Ariki e pai ai. Engari, nana, kāore anō kia oti ā tāua mahi; nō reira kāore rātou e tahu i a tāua.

And it came to pass that he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God. And he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil? And they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, and also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek; and they cast them out, and sent men to cast stones at them.

And they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire; and they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

And it came to pass that they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

And when Amulek saw the pains of the women and children who were consuming in the fire, he also was pained; and he said unto Alma: How can we witness this awful scene? Therefore let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory; and he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them in his wrath may be just; and the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

Now Amulek said unto Alma: Behold, perhaps they will burn us also.

And Alma said: Be it according to the will of the Lord. But, behold, our work is not finished; therefore they burn us not.

- 14 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te paunga ake o ngā tinana o te hunga i makaia i te ahi, me ngā tuinga anō hoki i makaia tahitia ai me rātou, ka tū mai te kaiwhakawā matua o te whenua i te aroaro o Arami rāua ko Amureke, i a rāua e hereheretia ana; ā, ka pākia e ia ō rāua pāpāringa ki tana ringa, ā, ka kī atu ki a rāua: Nō muri i ngā mea kua kite nei kōrua, ka kauhau atu anō kōrua ki tēnei iwi, kia makaia atu rātou ki roto i tētahi roto ahi whānāriki?
- 15 Nana, e kite nei kōrua, nā, kāore ō kōrua mana ki te whakaora i te hunga i makaia ai ki roto i te ahi; kāore rānei i whakaorangia rātou e te Atua nā te mea nō te whakapono kotahi koutou. Ā, ka pākia anōtia ō rāua pāpāringa e te kaiwhakawā, ā, ka pātai: He aha rā tā kōrua kōrero mō kōrua ake anō?
- 16 Nā, nō te ritenga o te whakapono o Nīho tēnei kaiwhakawā, nāna a Kiriona i patu.
- 17 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kāore i whakahoki kupu a Arami rāua ko Amureke; ā, ka pākia anōtia rāua e ia, ā, ka tukuna atu rāua ki ngā kātīpa kia makaia atu rāua ki roto i te whareherehere.
- 18 Ā, ka toru o rāua rā i roto i te whareherehere, he tokomaha ngā rōia i haere mai ai, me ngā kaiwhakawā, me ngā tohunga, me ngā kaiako, nō te ritenga o Nīho; ā, ka kuhu rātou ki roto i te whareherehere kia kite ai i a rāua, ā, ka uia rāua e rātou e pā ana ki ngā kupu maha; engari kīhai rāua i whakahoki kupu ki a rātou.
- 19 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tū atu te kaiwhakawā i tōna aroaro, ā, ka kī atu: He aha kōrua e kore ai e whakautu i ngā kupu o tēnei iwi? Kāore kōrua i te mōhio he mana tōku kia tukuna atu kōrua ki roto i ngā muramura? Ā, ka whakahau ia i a rāua kia kōrero ai; engari kīhai rāua i whakahoki kupu.
- 20 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka wehe atu rātou i runga i ā rātou haere, engari i hoki mai anō i te aonga ake o te rā; ā, ka pākia anōtia ō rāua pāpāringa e te kaiwhakawā. Ā, he tokomaha anō ngā mea i haere mai ai, ā, ka pākia anō hoki rāua e rātou, e mea ana: Ka tū anō kōrua ki te whakawā i tēnei iwi, me te whakahē i tō mātou ture? Mehemea he mana nui tō kōrua he aha kōrua e kore ai e whakaora ai i a kōrua anō?

Now it came to pass that when the bodies of those who had been cast into the fire were consumed, and also the records which were cast in with them, the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith. And the judge smote them again upon their cheeks, and asked: What say ye for yourselves?

Now this judge was after the order and faith of Nehor, who slew Gideon.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

And when they had been cast into prison three days, there came many lawyers, and judges, and priests, and teachers, who were of the profession of Nehor; and they came in unto the prison to see them, and they questioned them about many words; but they answered them nothing.

And it came to pass that the judge stood before them, and said: Why do ye not answer the words of this people? Know ye not that I have power to deliver you up unto the flames? And he commanded them to speak; but they answered nothing.

And it came to pass that they departed and went their ways, but came again on the morrow; and the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law? If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

- 21     Ā, he maha ngā momo mea pērā i kōrerotia ai ki a rāua, e tetē ana i ō rātou niho ki a rāua, ā, e tuwha ana ki a rāua, e mea ana: Ka pēhea ō mātou āhua ina kangaia mātou?
- 22     Ā, he maha ngā mea pērā, āe rā, koinei momo mea katoa i kōrerotia ai ki a rāua; ā, pēnei tā rātou whakatoi i a rāua mō ngā rā maha. Ā, i kaiponuhia e rātou te kai i a rāua kia matekai ai rāua, me te wai, kia mateinu rāua; ā, i tangohia atu anō hoki ō rāua kākahu kia tahanga ai rāua; ā, pēnei tā rāua hereherenga ki ngā taura kaha, e raungaitia nei rāua i te whareherehere.
- 23     Ā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tā rāua whakamamaetanga mō ngā rā maha, (ā, i runga i te rā tuangahuru mā rua, i te marama tuangahuru, i te tau tuangahuru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai) nā, ka haere atu te kaiwhakawā matua i runga i te whenua o Amonaihā me ō rātou kaiako tokomaha, me ō rātou rōia tokomaha ki roto i te whareherehere i reira a Arami rāua ko Amureke e hereherea ana ki ngā taura.
- 24     Ā, ka tū atu te kaiwhakawā matua ki mua i a rāua, ā, ka pākia anōtia rāua, ā, ka kī atu ki a rāua: Mehemea kei a kōrua te mana o te Atua, tēnā, whakaputaina kōrua i ēnei taura, kātahi mātou ka whakapono tērā te Ariki e whakangaro i tēnei iwi e rite ana ki ā kōrua kupu.
- 25     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere whakamua atu rātou katoa me te papaki i a rāua, me te whakahua anō i aua kupu anō, tae atu ana ki te mea whakamutungā; ā, i te wā i kōrerotia ai e te mea whakamutungā kua tau iho te mana o te Atua ki runga i a Arami rāua ko Amureke, ā, ka tū ake rāua i runga i ō rāua waewae.
- 26     Ā, ka karanga atu a Arami, e mea ana: E te Ariki, me pēhea te roa e mamae ai māua i ēnei mamaetanga nui? E te Ariki? E te Ariki, homai ki a māua te kaha e rite ana ki tō māua whakapono kei roto nei i te Karaiti, tae atu ki te whakaoranga. Ā, ka motuhia e rāua ngā taura i herea nei rāua; ā, i te wā i kite ai te iwi i tēnei, ka tahuti haere rātou, nā te mea kua tau iho te wehi o te whakangaromanga ki runga i a rātou.

And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

And many such things, yea, all manner of such things did they say unto them; and thus they did mock them for many days. And they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

And it came to pass after they had thus suffered for many days, (and it was on the twelfth day, in the tenth month, in the tenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) that the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma and Amulek were bound with cords.

And the chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy this people according to your words.

And it came to pass that they all went forth and smote them, saying the same words, even until the last; and when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their feet.

And Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance. And they broke the cords with which they were bound; and when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of destruction had come upon them.

27 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka hinga iho rātou ki te whenua nā te nui o tō rātou wehi, ā, kīhai i tae atu ki te tatau o waho rawa o te whareherehere; ā, ka tūioi nui te whenua, ā, ka pākarukaru iho ngā pakitara ki waenganui, nā, ka hinga iho ki te whenua; ā, i mate te kaiwhakawā matua, me ngā rōia, me ngā tohunga, me ngā kaiako, nā rātou a Arami rāua ko Amureke i pāpaki i tō reira hinganga.

28 Ā, ka puta atu a Arami rāua ko Amureke ki waho i te whareherehere, ā, kāore i ahatia rāua; nā te mea i tukuna iho e te Ariki he mana ki a rāua, e rite ana ki tō rāua whakaponi i te Karaiti. Ā, ka puta tōtika atu i te whareherehere; ā, i wetekina rāua i ō rāua taura; ā, kua hinga iho te whereherehere ki te whenua, ā, i patua ngā wairua katoa i roto i ngā pakitara o reira, hāunga rā a Arami rāua ko Amureke; ā, ka haere tōtika atu rāua ki roto i te pā.

29 Nā, i rongo te iwi i tētahi haruru nui, nā konā oma tahi ai rātou i ngā rōpū nunui kia mōhio ai he aha tōna pūtaka; ā, i tō rātou kite atu i a Arami rāua ko Amureke e puta mai ana i te whareherehere, me te hinganga iho o ngā pakitara o reira ki te whenua, kua pākia rātou e te wehi nui, ā, ka tahuti atu rātou i te aroaro o Arami rāua ko Amureke anō nei he koati e tahuti atu ana me ana kua i te aroaro o ngā raiona e rua; ā, pēnei tā rātou tahuti atu i te aroaro o Arami rāua ko Amureke.

And it came to pass that so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that they fell to the earth; and the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers, who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall thereof.

And Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were not hurt; for the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith which was in Christ. And they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain; and they straightway came forth into the city.

Now the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it; and when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek even as a goat fleeth with her young from two lions; and thus they did flee from the presence of Alma and Amulek.



## Arami 15

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakahaua a Arami rāua ko Amureke kia wehe atu i taua pā; ā, ka wehe atu rāua, ā, ka wehe atu pū anō ki roto i te whenua o Hiromo; ā nana, i reira kitea ai ngā tāngata katoa kua wehe atu i te whenua o Amonaihā, ko te hunga i ākiritia atu, ā, i āki ki te kōhatu, nā tō rātou whakapono ki ngā kupu a Arami.
- 2 Ā, ka kōrero atu rāua ki a rātou i ngā mea katoa i tūpono ai ki ā rātou hoawahine me ā rātou tamariki, me ngā mea anō hoki e pā ana ki a rāua anō, me tō rāua mana whakaputanga.
- 3 Ā, i te takoto māuiui a Tēroma i Hiromo, i te kirikā, he mea nā te pāweratanga o tōna hinengaro mō tana whakarihariha, nā te mea i hua noa ake ia kua whakamatea a Arami rāua ko Amureke; ā, i whakaaro ake ia kua whakamatea rāua nā ana hē. Ā, ko tēnei hara nui, me ērā atu o ana hara, e rakaraka ana i tōna hinengaro nō konā meinga ai hei mea mamae rawa atu, ā, kāore ōna whakaputanga; nō reira ka pākāngia ia e te wera e mura ana.
- 4 Nā, i tana rongo atu kei te whenua o Hiromo a Arami rāua ko Amureke, ka māia haere tōna ngākau; ā, ka tuku tōtika ia i tētahi karere ki a rāua, e hiahia ana kia haere rāua ki a ia.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere tōtika atu rāua, e whakarongo ana rāua ki te karere kua tukuna e ia ki a rāua; ā, ka kuhu atu rāua ki roto i te whare ki a Tēroma; ā, ka kitea ia i runga i tōna moenga, e māuiui ana, e tino ngoikore ana i te kirikā; ā, i te tino mamae tōna hinengaro nā ōna hara; ā, i tana kitenga atu i a rāua ka torona atu tōna ringa, ā, ka inoi atu ia ki a rāua kia mahu rāua i a ia.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia, e mau anō ana ki tōna ringa: E whakapono ana rānei koe i te mana o te Karaiti hei whakaora?
- 7 Ā, ka whakautu ia, ā, ka mea: Āe rā, e whakapono ana ahau i ngā kupu katoa nāu i ako.
- 8 Ā, ka kī atu a Arami: Kī te whakapono koe i te hokonga a te Karaiti ka taea anō koe te mahu.
- 9 Ā, ka kī atu ia: Āe rā, e whakapono ana au e rite nei ki āu kupu.

## Alma 15

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city; and they departed, and came out even into the land of Sidom; and behold, there they found all the people who had departed out of the land of Ammonihah, who had been cast out and stoned, because they believed in the words of Alma.

And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

And also Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness, for he supposed that Alma and Amulek were no more; and he supposed that they had been slain because of his iniquity. And this great sin, and his many other sins, did harrow up his mind until it did become exceedingly sore, having no deliverance; therefore he began to be scorched with a burning heat.

Now, when he heard that Alma and Amulek were in the land of Sidom, his heart began to take courage; and he sent a message immediately unto them, desiring them to come unto him.

And it came to pass that they went immediately, obeying the message which he had sent unto them; and they went in unto the house unto Zeezrom; and they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities; and when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

And it came to pass that Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand: Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that thou hast taught.

And Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

- 10 Kātahi ka karanga ake a Arami ki te Ariki, e mea ana: E te Ariki tō tātou Atua, kia aroha mai ki tēnei tangata, ā, whakamahungia rā ia kia rite nei ki tōna whakapono i roto nei i te Karaiti.
- 11 Ā, i te kōrerotanga ake a Arami i ēnei kupu, ka rūpeke ake a Tēroma ki runga i ōna waewae, ā, ka tīmata ia ki te hīkoi; ā, i tino mīharo nui te iwi katoa i tēnei meatanga; ā, hau atu ana te rongo puta noa i te whenua katoa o Hiromo.
- 12 Ā, ka rumakina a Tēroma e Arami ki te Ariki; ā, ka tīmata ia i taua wā ake ki te kauhau ki te iwi.
- 13 Ā, ka whakapūmauhia e Arami tētahi hāhi i te whenua o Hiromo, ā, ka whakatapua ētahi tohunga me ētahi kaiako i te whenua, kia rumaki ai ki te Ariki i te hunga katoa e hiahia ana kia rumakina.
- 14 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha rātou; nā te mea i tomo tōpū nui atu rātou mai i ngā wāhi katoa o te rohe e pātata ana ki Hiromo, ā, ka rumakina.
- 15 Engari kia huri ake ki te iwi i te whenua o Amonihā, he iwi ngākau-pakeke tonu, ā, he iwi kakī mārō tonu tō rātou āhua; ā, kihai rātou i rīpenetā i ō rātou hara, e kīa ana e rātou nō te rēwera katoa te mana o Arami rāua ko Amureke; nā te mea nō te ritenga rātou o Niho, ā, kihai i whakapono ki te rīpenetātanga o ō rātou hara.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ko Arami rāua ko Amureke, i te mea kua whakarērea e Amureke ana kōura katoa, me ana hiriwā, me ana mea utu nui katoa, i roto nei i te whenua o Amonihā, mō te kupu a te Atua, kua whakaparahakotia ia e te hunga ko rātou nei he hoa nōna i mua, ā, e tōna matua anō hoki me ōna huānga;
- 17 Nō reira, i muri iho i tā Arami whakapūmau i te hāhi i Hiromo, e kitea ana tētahi whakaitanga nui, āe rā, e kitea ana tō te iwi whakaitanga e pā ana ki te whakapehapeha o ō rātou ngākau, ā, ka tīmata ki te whakaiti i a rātou anō i te aroaro o te Atua, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou whakahuihui i a rātou anō i ō rātou āhuru mōwai ki te koropiko atu ki te Atua i mua i te ahurewa, e mataara tonu ana, ā, e inoi tonu ana, kia whakaputaina ai rātou mai i a Hātana, ā, mai i te mate, me te whakangaromanga—

And then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

And when Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people; and the knowledge of this went forth throughout all the land of Sidom.

And Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

And Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, and consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

And it came to pass that they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

But as to the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people; and they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil; for they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

And it came to pass that Alma and Amulek, Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

Therefore, after Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts, and began to humble themselves before God, and began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar, watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction—

18 Nā, pēnei i tāku, i te mea i kite atu a Arami i ēnei  
mea katoa, nō reira ia i mau atu ai ki a Amureke  
kātahi ka haere tahi ki te whenua o Harahemara, ā,  
ka mauria atu ia ki tōna ake kāinga, ā, ka atawhaitia  
ia i roto i ana uauatanga, ā, ka whakapakarihia ia i  
roto i te Ariki.

19 Ā, ko te mutunga pēnei o te tau tuangahuru o te  
whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi  
o Nīwhai.

Now as I said, Alma having seen all these things,  
therefore he took Amulek and came over to the land  
of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house, and  
did administer unto him in his tribulations, and  
strengthened him in the Lord.

And thus ended the tenth year of the reign of the  
judges over the people of Nephi.

## Arami 16

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake i te tau tuangahuru mā tahi o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai, i te rā tuarima o te marama tuarua, i te mea kua roa e mau ana te rongo ki te whenuao Harahemara, kāore hoki he pakanga, he tautohetohenga rānei mō ētahi tau, tae atu ana ki te rā tuarima o te marama tuarua i te tau tuangahuru mā tahi, nā, kua rangona tētahi karanga ki te whawhai puta noa i te whenua.
- 2 Nana rā, kua whakaeke mai ngā ope tauā Rāmana i te taha koraha, ki roto i ngā rohe o te whenua, tae atu pū anō ki roto i te pā o Amonaihā, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou patupatu i te iwi me te whakangaro i te pā.
- 3 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, kāore anō ngā Nīwhai kia whakatū tauā nui kia āia atu rātou ki waho i te whenua, kua whakangaromia e rātou te iwi i roto i te pā o Amonaihā, me ētahi atu anō i ngā kaha o Noa, ā, kua mauhereheretia atu ētahi anō ki roto i te koraha.
- 4 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te hiahia ngā Nīwhai ki te tiki i te hunga kua mauhereheretia atu nei ki roto i te koraha.
- 5 Nō reira, ko te tangata i whakaritea hei rangatira nui i runga i ngā ope tauā o ngā Nīwhai, (ā ko Hōrama tōna ingoa, ā, tokorua ana tama, arā, ko Rīhai rāua ko Aha)—nā, tokorua ngā tama a Horama, e mōhio ana ko Arami te tohunga teitei i runga i te hāhi, ā, kua rongo hoki ia i a ia te wairua o te poropititanga, nō reira ka haere atu rāua ki a ia i runga i te hiahia kia mōhio ai ki hea rātou haere ai e ai tā te Ariki hiahia ki roto i te koraha kia kimihia ai ā rātou teina, kua mauhereheretia atu e ngā Rāmana.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka ui atu a Arami ki te Ariki e pā ana ki ēnei mea. Ā, ka hoki atu a Arami ki a rāua me te kī: Nana, ka whakawhiti atu ngā Rāmana i te awa o Hairona i te taha tonga o te koraha, ki kō rawa atu i ngā rohe o te whenua o Manati. Ā nana, ka tūtaki koutou ki a rātou i reira, i te taha rāwhiti o te awa o Hairona, ā, i reira te Ariki e tuku ai ki a koutou ā koutou teinakua mauheheretia atu nei e ngā Rāmana.

## Alma 16

And it came to pass in the eleventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, on the fifth day of the second month, there having been much peace in the land of Zarahemla, there having been no wars nor contentions for a certain number of years, even until the fifth day of the second month in the eleventh year, there was a cry of war heard throughout the land.

For behold, the armies of the Lamanites had come in upon the wilderness side, into the borders of the land, even into the city of Ammonihah, and began to slay the people and destroy the city.

And now it came to pass, before the Nephites could raise a sufficient army to drive them out of the land, they had destroyed the people who were in the city of Ammonihah, and also some around the borders of Noah, and taken others captive into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that the Nephites were desirous to obtain those who had been carried away captive into the wilderness.

Therefore, he that had been appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites, (and his name was Zoram, and he had two sons, Lehi and Aha)—now Zoram and his two sons, knowing that Alma was high priest over the church, and having heard that he had the spirit of prophecy, therefore they went unto him and desired of him to know whither the Lord would that they should go into the wilderness in search of their brethren, who had been taken captive by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Alma inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And Alma returned and said unto them: Behold, the Lamanites will cross the river Sidon in the south wilderness, away up beyond the borders of the land of Manti. And behold there shall ye meet them, on the east of the river Sidon, and there the Lord will deliver unto thee thy brethren who have been taken captive by the Lamanites.

- 7     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakawhiti atu a Hōrama me ana tama i te awa o Hairona, me ā rātou ope tauā, ā, ka haere atu ki tua atu i ngā rohe o Manati ki roto i te koraha i te tonga, i te taha rāwhiti o te awa o Hairona.
- 8     Ā, ka rokohanga atu rātou i ngā ope tauā a ngā Rāmana, ā, ka whakamararatia atu ngā Rāmana, ā, ka āia atu ki roto i te koraha; ā, ka tīkina e rātou ā rātou teina kua mauhereheretia atu e ngā Rāmana, ā, kāore i ngaro atu tētahi wairua kotahi o rātou te hunga i mauheretia atu ai. Ā, ka mauria atu rātou e ō rātou tuakana kia nōhia ai ō rātou ake whenua.
- 9     Ā, i pēnei te mutunga o te tau tuangahuru mā tahi o ngā kaiwhakawā, kua āia atu ngā Rāmana i te whenua, ā, kua whakangaromia nei te iwi o Amonaihā; āe rā, kua whakangaromia ia wairua ora o ngā Amonaihā, me tō rātou pā nui, kua mea ake rātou tē taea e te Atua te whakangaro, nā tōna nui.
- 10    Engari nana, kua ururuatia i te rā kotahi; ā, haehaetia ana ngā tūpāpaku e ngā kurī me ngā kararehe mohoa o te koraha.
- 11    Hei aha koa, nō muri iho i ngā rā maha ka pūrangatia ngā tūpāpaku i rungai te mata o te whenua, ā, kua ūhia rātou ki te uHINGA pāpaku. Ināianei ā, anō te nui o tō reira haunga kīhai te iwi i haere atu ki reira kia nōhia ai te whenua o Amonaihā mō ngā tau maha. Ā, kua karangatia ko te Whakangaromanga a ngā Nīho; nā te mea nō te ritenga o Nīho rātou, te hunga i whakamatea ai; ā, waiho ana ō rātou whenua kia ururuatia tonutia.
- 12    Ā, kāore ngā Rāmana i whakaeke mai anō ki te pakanga ki ngā Nīwhai tae atu ana ki te tau tuangahuru mā whā o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai. Ā, i pēnei te āhua o te maungārongo i te iwi o Nīwhai mō ngā tau e toru i runga i te whenua.
- 13    Ā, ka haere atu a Arami rāua ko Amureke e kauhau ana ki te iwi i roto i ō rātou temepara, i roto anō i ō rātou āhuru mōwai, i roto anō i ō rātou whare karakia, kua hangaia nei i runga i te ritenga o ngā Hūrae.
- 14    Ā, ko te hunga katoa e whakarongo ai ki ā rāua kupu, ka tukuna e rāua te kupu a te Atua, kāore he whakapai kanohi i ngā wā katoa.

And it came to pass that Zoram and his sons crossed over the river Sidon, with their armies, and marched away beyond the borders of Manti into the south wilderness, which was on the east side of the river Sidon.

And they came upon the armies of the Lamanites, and the Lamanites were scattered and driven into the wilderness; and they took their brethren who had been taken captive by the Lamanites, and there was not one soul of them had been lost that were taken captive. And they were brought by their brethren to possess their own lands.

And thus ended the eleventh year of the judges, the Lamanites having been driven out of the land, and the people of Ammonihah were destroyed; yea, every living soul of the Ammonihahites was destroyed, and also their great city, which they said God could not destroy, because of its greatness.

But behold, in one day it was left desolate; and the carcasses were mangled by dogs and wild beasts of the wilderness.

Nevertheless, after many days their dead bodies were heaped up upon the face of the earth, and they were covered with a shallow covering. And now so great was the scent thereof that the people did not go in to possess the land of Ammonihah for many years. And it was called Desolation of Nehors; for they were of the profession of Nehor, who were slain; and their lands remained desolate.

And the Lamanites did not come again to war against the Nephites until the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus for three years did the people of Nephi have continual peace in all the land.

And Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

And as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

- 15     Ā, i pēnei tā Arami rāua ko Amureke haere atu, me ētahi atu mea tokomaha kua whiria nei mō te mahi, ki te kauhau atu i te kupu puta noa i te whenua. Ā, ka whakapūmautia whānuitia te hāhi puta noa i te whenua, i te rohe katoa huri noa, i waenganui i te iwi katoa o ngā Nīwhai.
- 16     Ā, kāore he rerekētanga i waenganui i a rātou; ka maringi iho te Ariki i tōna Wairua ki runga i te mata katoa o te whenua kia whakaritea ngā hinengaro o ngā tamariki a te tangata, kia whakaritea rānei ō rātou ngākau kia whiwhi ai i te kupu e whakaakona ai ki waenganui i a rātou mai i te wā o tana haerenga mai—
- 17     Kia kore ai rātou e whakapakekehia ki te kupu, kia kore ai rātou e whakaponono kore, me te haere noa ki te whakangaromanga, engari kia whiwhi rātou i te kupu i runga i te hari, anō nei he manga e honoa ana ki te waina pono, kia tomo atu rātou ki roto i te okiokinga o te Ariki tō rātou Atua.
- 18     Nā, i kauhau atu aua tohunga i haere atu ai i waenganui i te iwi kia kaua e rūkahu, e mahi tinihanga, e pūhaehae, e totohe, e mauāhara, e taunu, e tāhae, e pāhua, e muru, e kōhuru, e mahi pūremu, e mahi rānei i ngā tūmomo karihika katoa, e karanga ana kāore e tika ana ēnei mea—
- 19     E kawē rongo atu ana i ngā mea meake nei ka puta; āe rā, e kawē rongo atu ana i te haerenga mai a te Tama a te Atua, ōna whakamamaetanga me tōna matenga, me te aranga anō hoki o te hunga mate.
- 20     Ā, he tokomaha anō ngā tāngata i ui atu ai e pā ana ki te wāhi e puta ai te Tama a te Atua; ā, i whakaakona rātou, nā, ka puta ia ki a rātou whai muri iho i tōna aranga; ā, ka rongo te iwi i tēnei i runga i te hari nui me te koa.
- 21     Ināianeī ā, whai muri iho i te whakapūmautanga ake o te hāhi puta noa i te whenua katoa—kua riro i a rātou te wikipōria i rungai te rēwera, ā, e kauhau ana anō i te kupu a te Atua i tōna tūturutanga i whenua katoa, ā, ko te Atua e maringi iho ana i ana manaakitanga ki runga i te iwi—i pēnei te mutunga o te tau tuangahuru mā whā o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai.

And thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land. And the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of the Nephites.

And there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming—

That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction, but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine, that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

Now those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be—

Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

And many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come; and they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection; and this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

And now after the church had been established throughout all the land—having got the victory over the devil, and the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land, and the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people—thus ended the fourteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

*He tubinga mō ngā tama a Mōhia, nā rātou i whakaparabako i ngā tika ki te kīngitanga mō te kupu a te Atua kātahi ka haere ake ki te whenua o Nīwhai ki te kaubau ki ngā Rāmana; ā rātou whakamamaetanga me tā rātou whakaputanga—e ai ki te tubinga a Arami.*

## Arami 17

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a Arami e haere ana mai i te whenua o Kiriona ki te taha whakatetonga, ki te whenua o Manati, nana, ki tōna whakamīharo, ka tūtaki ia ki ngā tama a Mōhia e haere atu ana whakatewhenua o Harahemara.
- 2 Nā, i a Arami anō ēnei tama a Mōhia i te wā i puta tuatahi mai te anahera ki a ia; nō reira i tino hari ai a Arami kia kite ake i ana teina; ā, ko te mea anō i tino hari ai ia, he teina tonu rātou ki a ia i roto i te Ariki; āe rā, kua pakari anō rātou i roto i te mātauranga o te pono; nā te mea he tāne mārāma nui rātou, ā, kua āta whakataki rātou i ngā karaipiture, kia mōhio ai rātou ki te kupu a te Atua.
- 3 Engari ehara tēnei i te katoa; kua nui tā rātou inoi me te nohopuku; nō reira i a rātou te wairua o te poropititanga, me te wairua o te whakakitenga, ā, i a rātou e whakaako ana, ka whakaako rātou i runga i te kaha me te mana o te Atua.
- 4 Ā, i te whakaako rātou i te kupu a te Atua mō te takiwā o ngā tau tekau mā whā i waenganui i ngā Rāmana, he nui hoki tō rātou waimārie i tā rātou kukume i ngā mea tokomaha ki te mātauranga o te pono; āe rā, he tokomaha ngā mea i kukume ai ki te aroaro o te ahurewa o te Atua nā te kaha o ā rātou kupu, ki te karanga ake i runga i tōna ingoa me te whāki atu i ō rātou hara i tōna aroaro.
- 5 Nā, koinei ngā āhuatanga i ā ai ki a rātou i runga i ō rātou haerenga, nā, he maha ō rātou mamaetanga; i nui anō te mamaetanga ā-tīnana, ā-hinengaro, i te hiakai, te hiainu me te ngenge, ā, he nui anō tā rātou mahi i roto i te wairua.

*An account of the sons of Mosiah, who rejected their rights to the kingdom for the word of God, and went up to the land of Nephi to preach to the Lamanites; their sufferings and deliverance—according to the record of Alma.*

## Alma 17

And now it came to pass that as Alma was journeying from the land of Gideon southward, away to the land of Manti, behold, to his astonishment, he met with the sons of Mosiah journeying towards the land of Zarahemla.

Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel first appeared unto him; therefore Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren; and what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the Lord; yea, and they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth; for they were men of a sound understanding and they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God.

But this is not all; they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting; therefore they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

And they had been teaching the word of God for the space of fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, by the power of their words many were brought before the altar of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

Now these are the circumstances which attended them in their journeyings, for they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much labor in the spirit.

- 6 Nā, koinei ā rātou haerenga: I poroporoaki rātou ki tō rātou matua, ki a Mōhia, i te tau tuatahi o te whakahaerenga a ngā kaiwhakawā; kua whakakorehia te kīngitanga i hiahia ai tō rātou matua kia whakatau iho ai ki runga i a rātou, ā, i pērā anō tā te iwi whakaaro;
- 7 Hei aha koa rā i haere atu rātou ki waho i te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ka mauria atu ā rātou hoari, me ā rātou mātia, me ā rātou kōpere, me ā rātou pere, me ā rātou kōtaha; ā, i pēnei rātou kia hopu kai ai rātou mō rātou anō i a rātou i te koraha.
- 8 Ā, i pēnei tā rātou wehenga atu ki roto i te koraha me ā rātou tatauranga i whiriwhiria ai e rātou, kia haere ake ki te whenua o Nīwhai, ki te kauhau i te kupu a te Atua ki ngā Rāmana.
- 9 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he maha ngā rā i haere ai rātou i te koraha, ā, i nui tā rātou nohopuku me tā rātou inoi kia tukuna iho e te Ariki tētahi wāhi o tōna Wairua kia haere tahi ai me rātou, ā, kia nohotahi ai me rātou, kia meinga ai rātou hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua ki te kukume, mēnā e taea ana, ā rātou tuakana, ngā Rāmana, ki te mātauranga o te pono, ki te mātauranga o te hē o ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua, kīhai nei i tika.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i toro iho ai te Ariki ki a rātou ki tōna Wairua, ā, ka kī atu ki a rātou: Kia tau te mauri. Ā, ka tau ō rātou mauri.
- 11 Ā, ka kī atu anō te Ariki ki a rātou: Haere atu ki ngā Rāmana, ō koutou tuākana, whakapūmauhia taku kupu; heoi ka manawaroa koutou i roto i ō koutou whakamamaetanga, kia whakaatu atu koutou he tauira pai ki a rātou i roto i ahau, kātahi au ka mea i a koutou hei taputapu i ōku ringaringa ki te whakaoranga o ngā wairua maha.
- 12 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka māia ngā ngākau o ngā tama a Mōhia me te hunga anō i a rātou, kia haere atu ai ki ngā Rāmana ki te whakapuaki ki a rātou te kupu a te Atua.
- 13 Ā, i pahawa ake i tā rātou taenga atu ki ngā rohe o te whenua o ngā Rāmana, ka wehewehe rātou, ā, ka wehe atu tētahi i tētahi, e whakawhirinaki ana ki te Ariki ka tūtaki anō rātou ki a rātou hei te mutunga ake o tā rātou hauhakenga; nā, i whakaaro rātou he nui te mahi i tīmata ai rātou te mahi.

Now these were their journeyings: Having taken leave of their father, Mosiah, in the first year of the judges; having refused the kingdom which their father was desirous to confer upon them, and also this was the minds of the people;

Nevertheless they departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and took their swords, and their spears, and their bows, and their arrows, and their slings; and this they did that they might provide food for themselves while in the wilderness.

And thus they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they journeyed many days in the wilderness, and they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

And the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me, and I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

And it came to pass that the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

And it came to pass when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest; for they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.



- 14     Ā, e tika ana anō he nui ia, nā te mea kua tīmata rātou ki te kauhau atu i te kupu a te Atua ki tētahi iwi mohoa, me tētahi iwi pakeke me tētahi iwi horetītī; ā, he iwi i āhuareka ana ki te kōhuru i ngā Nīwhai, ā, ki te whānako, ki te pāhua i a rātou; ā, kua tau ō rātou ngākau ki runga i ngā taonga, i runga rānei i te kōura me te hiriwā, me ngā kohatu utu nui; heoi i whai rātou ki te hopu i ēnei mea i runga i te kōhurutanga me te pāhuatanga, kia kore ai rātou e mahi ki ō rātou ake ringa mō ēnei mea.
- 15     Pēnei rātou he iwi tino māngere, he tokomaha o rātou i karakia ai ki ngā whakapakoko, ā, kua taka iho te kanga o te Atua ki runga i a rātou nā ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua; hei aha koa kua torona atu ngā whakaari a te Ariki ki a rātou i runga i ngā tikanga o te rīpenetātanga.
- 16     Nō reira, koinei te pūtake i tīmata ai ngā tama a Mōhia i te mahi, kia kukume ai rātou i a rātou ki te rīpenetātanga; kia kukume ai rātou i a rātou ki te mātauranga o te mahere o te hokonga.
- 17     Nō reira i wehewehe atu rātou i a rātou tētahi i tētahi, ā, ka haere whakamua atu ki waenganui i a rātou, tēnā tangata me tōna kotahi, e rite ana ki te kupu me te mana o te Atua kua homai nei ki a ia.
- 18     Nā, ko Amona te rangatira i roto i a rātou, nāna kē rānei i minita atu ki a rātou, ā, ka wehe atu ia i a rātou, i te mea kua oti rātou te manaaki i a ia e rite ana ki ō rātou momo tūranga, kua wāwāhia atu anō te kupu a te Atua ki a rātou, kua āwhinatia rātou e ia i mua i tana wehenga atu; ā, i pēnei ā rātou haerenga i ō rātou ake huarahi puta noa i te whenua.
- 19     Ā, ka haere a Amona ki te whenua o Ihimaera, kua huaina te whenua mō ngā tama a Ihimaera, i meinga anō hoki rātou hei Rāmana.
- 20     Ā, i a Amona e tomo atu ana i te whenua o Ihimaera, ka mauheretia atu ia e ngā Rāmana, e rite ana ki ō rātou tikanga kia herehere ai ngā Nīwhai i taka iho ai ki ō rātou ringaringa me te kawē atu i a rātou ki te aroaro o te kīngi; ā, kātahi ka waiho mā tō te kīngi i āhuareka ai ki te whakamate i a rātou, ki te mauheretia tonutia rānei rātou, ki te makaia rānei i te whareherehere, ki te makaia atu rātou rānei ki waho atu i te whenua, kia rite ai ki tōna hiahia me tāna i āhuareka ai.

And assuredly it was great, for they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people; a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them; and their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones; yet they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

Thus they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols, and the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

Therefore, this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work, that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know of the plan of redemption.

Therefore they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Now Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them, and he departed from them, after having blessed them according to their several stations, having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure; and thus they took their several journeys throughout the land.

And Ammon went to the land of Ishmael, the land being called after the sons of Ishmael, who also became Lamanites.

And as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king; and thus it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land, according to his will and pleasure.

- 21     Ā, i kahakina pēneitia atu a Amona ki mua i te  
aroaro o te kīngi i runga i te whenua o Ihimaera; ā,  
ko Ramoni tōna ingoa; ā, he uri anō ia nō Ihimaera.
- 22     Ā, ka ui mai te kīngi ki a Amona mehemea i te  
hiahia ia kia noho tonu i te whenua o ngā Rāmana, i  
waenganui rānei i tōna iwi.
- 23     Ā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Āe rā, e hiahia ana  
ahau kia noho ai i waenganui i tēnei iwi mō tētahi  
wā; āe rā, tae noa atu pea ki te rā e mate ai au.
- 24     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i nui te āhuareka o kīngi  
Ramoni i a Amona, ā, ka meatia e ia kia wetekina  
ōna here; ā, i te hiahia kia mārenatia e Amona tētahi  
o āna tamāhine.
- 25     Engari ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Kāo, engari  
māku hei pononga māu. Nō reira a Amona i meinga  
ai hei pononga nā kīngi Ramoni. Ā, i pahawa ake,  
nā, ka whakaurua atu ia ki waenganui i ērā atu  
ponongahei tiaki i ngā kāhui a Ramoni, e rite ana ki  
ngā tikanga o ngā Rāmana.
- 26     Ā, whai muri iho i ngā rā e toru i a ia e mahi ana ki  
te kīngi, i a rātou ko ngā pononga Rāmana e haere  
ana me ā rātou kāhui ki te wāhi o ngā wai, kua  
karangatia nei ko te wai o Hepuha, ā, e āia ana e ngā  
Rāmana katoa ā rātou kāhui ki reira, kia inu ai—
- 27     Nō reira, i a Amona rātou ko ngā pononga a te  
kīngi e ā ana i ā rātou kāhui ki tēnei wāhi o ngā wai,  
nana, ko ētahi atu Rāmana, i reira kē me ā rātou  
kāhui ki te inu wai, ka tū atu me te whakamarara  
haere i ngā kāhui a Amona rātou ko ngā pononga a te  
kīngi, ā, ka whakamararatia ngā kāhui, nō, ka oma  
atu i ngā huarahi maha.
- 28     Nā, ka tīmata ngā pononga a te kīngi ki te  
amuamu, e mea ana: Ka whakamate te kīngi i a tātou  
ināianeī, pērā i tāna ki ō tātou tuākana nā te mea i  
whakamararatia atu ā rātou kāhui e te  
whakarihariha o ēnei tāngata. Ā, ka tīmata tā rātou  
tangi nui, e mea ana: Nana, kua whakamararatia  
kētia atu ā tātou kāhui.

And thus Ammon was carried before the king who  
was over the land of Ishmael; and his name was  
Lamoni; and he was a descendant of Ishmael.

And the king inquired of Ammon if it were his de-  
sire to dwell in the land among the Lamanites, or  
among his people.

And Ammon said unto him: Yea, I desire to dwell  
among this people for a time; yea, and perhaps until  
the day I die.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni was much  
pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands  
should be loosed; and he would that Ammon should  
take one of his daughters to wife.

But Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy  
servant. Therefore Ammon became a servant to king  
Lamoni. And it came to pass that he was set among  
other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni, accord-  
ing to the custom of the Lamanites.

And after he had been in the service of the king  
three days, as he was with the Lamanitish servants  
going forth with their flocks to the place of water,  
which was called the water of Sebus, and all the  
Lamanites drive their flocks hither, that they may  
have water—

Therefore, as Ammon and the servants of the king  
were driving forth their flocks to this place of water,  
behold, a certain number of the Lamanites, who had  
been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered  
the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king,  
and they scattered them insomuch that they fled  
many ways.

Now the servants of the king began to murmur,  
saying: Now the king will slay us, as he has our  
brethren because their flocks were scattered by the  
wickedness of these men. And they began to weep  
exceedingly, saying: Behold, our flocks are scattered  
already.

- 29 Nā, i tangi rātou nā tō rātou wehi kei patua. Nā, i te kitenga atu i tēnei ka pupuhi te ngākau o Amona i runga i te hari; nā, ka kī ia, ka whakaatu atu au i tōku kaha ki ēnei ōku hoa pononga, i te kaha rānei kei roto i ahau, i te whakahokinga atu i ēnei kāhui i te kīngi, kia riro i ahau ngā ngākau o ēnei ōku hoa-pononga, kia ārahina rātou e au ki te whakapono mai ki aku kupu.
- 30 Ināianeī ā, koinei ngā whakaaro o Amona, i tana kitenga atu i ngā whakamamaetanga o te hunga i kī ai ia ko ōna teina.
- 31 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka whakapatipati ia i a rātou i runga i ana kupu, e mea ana: E aku teina, kia hari koutou, ā, kia haere ake tātou ki te rapu i ngā kāhui, ā, ka whakahuihui anō tātou i ēnā me te whakahoki mai ki te wāhi o ngā wai; ā, ka pēnei tā tātou tiaki i ngā kāhui a te kīngi, ā, e kore ia e whakamate i a tātou.
- 32 Ā, ka pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu rātou ki te rapu i ngā kāhui, ā, i whai atu rātou i a Amona, ā, ka tere tā rātou huaki, ā, ka haukotia ngā kāhui a te kīngi, ā, ka whakahuihui tahi anō i ērā ki te wāhi o ngā wai.
- 33 Ā, ka tū mai anō aua tāngata ki te whakamarara i ā rātou kāhui; engari ka kī atu a Amona ki ana teina: Karapotia ngā kāhui kia kore ai ērā e oma atu; ā, ka haere atu au ki te tatau atu ki ērā tāngata e whakamararatia ana ā tātou kāhui.
- 34 Nō reira, i pērā rātou kia rite ki tā Amona i whakahau ai rātou, ā, ka haere atu ia, ā, ka tatau atu ki te hunga i tū ai i te taha o ngā wai o Hepuha; ā, ehara tō rātou tokomaha i te iti.
- 35 Nō reira kihai rātou i wehi i a Amona, nā te mea i whakaaro rātou e āhei ana i te mea kotahi o ō rātou tāngata ki te patu i a ia e rite nei ki tāna e āhuareka ai, nā te mea kāore rātou i mōhio kua whakaari te Ariki ki a Mōhia māna āna tama e whakaputa i ō rātou ringaringa; kāore rānei rātou i te mōhio ki tētahi paku aha e pā ana ki te Ariki; nō reira pai ki a rātou te whakangaromanga o ō rātou teina; ā, nā tēnei take rātou i tū ai ki te whakamarara i ngā kāhui a te kīngi.

Now they wept because of the fear of being slain. Now when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

And now, these were the thoughts of Ammon, when he saw the afflictions of those whom he termed to be his brethren.

And it came to pass that he flattered them by his words, saying: My brethren, be of good cheer and let us go in search of the flocks, and we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water; and thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

And it came to pass that they went in search of the flocks, and they did follow Ammon, and they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

And those men again stood to scatter their flocks; but Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not; and I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

Therefore, they did as Ammon commanded them, and he went forth and stood to contend with those who stood by the waters of Sebus; and they were in number not a few.

Therefore they did not fear Ammon, for they supposed that one of their men could slay him according to their pleasure, for they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands; neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren; and for this cause they stood to scatter the flocks of the king.

36 Engari ka tū atu a Amona, ā, ka tīmata tana karawhiu atu i ngā kohatu ki a rātou ki tana kōtaha; āe rā, i runga i te kaha nui i piu ai ia i ngā kohatu ki a rātou; ā, i pēnei tana whakamate i ētahi o rātou nā konā ka mīharo haere rātou i tōna kaha; hei aha koaka riri rātou nā te matenga o ā rātou teina, ā, ka whakatau rātou me mate ia; nō reira, e kite ana kāore e taea ana e rātou te pā atu ki a ia ki ā rātou kāhatu, ka whakaeke mai rātou me ā rātou patu ki te whakamate i a ia.

37 Engari nana, tapahia ana ki tana hoari te ringa o tēnā tangata, o tēnā tangata i hāpai ake i tōna patu ki te patu i a Amona; nā te mea i ārai atu ia i ā rātou patunga nā te tapahi iho i ō rātou ringa ki te rau o tana hoari, nā konā ka mīharo haere rātou, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou tahuti haere i tōna aroaro; āe rā, ehara tō rātou tokomaha i te iti; ā, ka meatia rātou e ia kia tahuti atu ai e te kaha o tōna ringa.

38 Nā, tokoono rātou i hinga ai i tana kōtaha, engari kāore tētahi i whakamatea ai ki tana hoari hāunga ko tō rātou rangatira; ā, ka tapahia e ia ngā ringaringa katoa i hāpai atu ki a ia, ehara tō rātou tokomaha i te iti.

39 Ā, i tana pananga atu i a rātou ki tawhiti, ka hoki atu ia kātahi ka whakainu rātou i ā rātou kāhui, ā, ka whakahokia ērā ki te pārae a te kīngi, kātahi ka tomo atu ki te kīngi, e mau ana ki ngā ringa kua tapahia atu e te hoari a Amona, o taua hunga i whai ki te whakamate i a ia; ā, ka mauria atu ērā ki te kīngi hei whakaaturanga mō ngā mea i mea ai rātou.

But Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them; and thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they began to be astonished at his power; nevertheless they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall; therefore, seeing that they could not hit him with their stones, they came forth with clubs to slay him.

But behold, every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword; for he did withstand their blows by smiting their arms with the edge of his sword, insomuch that they began to be astonished, and began to flee before him; yea, and they were not few in number; and he caused them to flee by the strength of his arm.

Now six of them had fallen by the sling, but he slew none save it were their leader with his sword; and he smote off as many of their arms as were lifted against him, and they were not a few.

And when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king, and then went in unto the king, bearing the arms which had been smitten off by the sword of Ammon, of those who sought to slay him; and they were carried in unto the king for a testimony of the things which they had done.

## Arami 18

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka meatia e kīngi Ramoni ana pononga kia tū atu ki te whakaatu atu mō ngā mea katoa i kite ai rātou e pā ana ki tēnei mea.
- 2 Ā, ka oti i a rātou te whakaatu atu mō ngā mea katoa i kite ai rātou, ā, i kite anō ia i tā Amona ū ki te tiaki i āna kāhui, me tōna kaha nui ki te tatau atu ki te hunga i whai nei ki te whakamate i a ia, i tino mīharo ia, ā, ka kī: Kāore e kore, he nui atu tēnei i te tangata. Nana, ehara rānei tēnei i te Wairua Nui e tonoa nei ngā whakawākanga nui ki runga i tēnei iwi, nā ā rātou kōhurutanga?
- 3 Ā, ka whakautu rātou i te kīngi, ā, ka kī: Ahakoa mēnā koia te Wairua Nui, he tangata rānei, kāore mātou i te mōhio; engari koinei ngā mea e mōhio nei mātou, e kore ia e taea e ngā hoariri o te kīngi te whakamate; e kore rānei ngā kāhui a te kīngi e taea ana e rātou te whakamarara atu i a ia e piri ana ki a mātou, nā tōna tino mōhio me tōna tino kaha; nō reira, e mōhio ana mātou he hoa ia ki te kīngi. Ināianei ā, E te kīngi, kāore mātou e whakapono ana he kaha nui tō te tangata, nā te mea e mōhio ana mātou kāore ia e taea te patu.
- 4 Ināianei ā, i te rongonga a te kīngi i ēnei kupu, ka kī atu ia ki a rātou: E mōhio ana au ināianei ko te Wairua Nui ia; ā, kua heke iho ia i tēnei wā ki te tiaki i ō tātou orange, kia kore ai au e whakamate i a koutou pērā i tāku ki ō koutou tuākana. Nā, koinei te Wairua Nui i kōrerotia ai e ō tātou tūpuna matua.
- 5 Nā, koinei te whakarereanga iho a Ramoni, kua riro nei i a ia i tōna matua, arā, tērā anō tētahi Wairua Nui. Ahakoa i whakapono rātou ki tētahi Wairua Nui, ā, i whakaaro rātou he tika ngā mea katoa e mahi ai rātou; Hei aha koa, ka tino wehi nui haere a Ramoni, i runga i te wehi kua hē ia i tana whakamate i āna pononga;
- 6 Nā te mea he tokomaha o rātou patua ai e ia mō ō rātou huānga i whakamarara ai i ā rātou kāhui i te wāi o ngā wai; ā, i patua pēneitia rātou nā te mea i whakamararatia atu ā rātou kāhui.

## Alma 18

And it came to pass that king Lamoni caused that his servants should stand forth and testify to all the things which they had seen concerning the matter.

And when they had all testified to the things which they had seen, and he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks, and also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Surely, this is more than a man. Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

And they answered the king, and said: Whether he be the Great Spirit or a man, we know not; but this much we do know, that he cannot be slain by the enemies of the king; neither can they scatter the king's flocks when he is with us, because of his expertness and great strength; therefore, we know that he is a friend to the king. And now, O king, we do not believe that a man has such great power, for we know he cannot be slain.

And now, when the king heard these words, he said unto them: Now I know that it is the Great Spirit; and he has come down at this time to preserve your lives, that I might not slay you as I did your brethren. Now this is the Great Spirit of whom our fathers have spoken.

Now this was the tradition of Lamoni, which he had received from his father, that there was a Great Spirit. Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit, they supposed that whatsoever they did was right; nevertheless, Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water; and thus, because they had had their flocks scattered they were slain.

- 7 Nā, he mahi tērā nā ngā Rāmana te tū i te taha o ngā wai o Hepuha ki te whakamarara i ngā kāhui a te iwi, mā konā e taea ai e rātou te ā atu i ngā mea kua whakamararatia atu ki roto i tō rātou ake whenua, koia hoki tētahi ritenga pāhua i waenganui i a rātou.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka uia atu e Ramoni āna pononga, e mea ana: Kei hea tēnei tangata he kaha nui tōna?
- 9 Ā, ka kī atu rātou ki a ia: Nana, kei te whāngai ia i ngā hōiho. Nā, kua whakahaua e te kīngi āna pononga, i mua i tā rātou whakainutanga i ā rātou kāhui, kia whakaritea e rātou ō rātou hōiho me ō rātou hariata, ā, kia haria atu ia ki te whenua o Nīwhai; nā te mea i whakaritea tētahi hākari nui i te whenua o Nīwhai e te matua o Ramoni, koia te kīngi i runga i te whenua katoa.
- 10 Nā, i te rongonga a Ramoni i te whakarite a Amona i ōna hōiho me ōna hariata ka mīharo ia, nā te ū o Amona, e mea ana: Kāore e kore kīhai noa he pononga i waenganui i āku pononga katoa kua pēnei rawa te ū e rite ana ki tēnei tangata; nā te mea e mahara pū ana ia ki āku whakahaunga katoa kia whakamahia.
- 11 Nā, e mōhio rawa ana ahau ko te Wairua Nui tēnei, ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia tomo mai ia ki ahau, engari kāore ōku māia.
- 12 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka oti i a Amona ngā hōiho me ngā hariata te whakarite mō te kīngi me āna pononga, ka tomo atu ia ki te kīngi, ā, ka kite ia kua rerekē te āhua o te kīngi; nō reira whano ia ka hoki atu i tōna aroaro.
- 13 Ā, ka kī atu tētahi o ngā pononga a te kīngi ki a ia, Rapana! koia tēnei, ina whakamāoritia, e te kīngi kaha, e te kīngi nui rānei, e whakaaro ana rātou he kaha ō rātou kīngi; ā, pēnei tana kī atu ki a ia: Rapana, e hiahia ana te kīngi kia noho mai nei koe.
- 14 Nō reira ka tahuri atu a Amona i a ia anō ki te kīngi, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: He aha tāu e pai ai kia meatia e ahau mōu, E te kīngi? Ā, kāore te kīngi i whakahoki kupu ki a ia mō te kotahi hāora, e ai ki tō rātou wā, nā te mea kāore ia i mōhio he aha tāna e kī atu ai ki a ia.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu anō a Amona ki a ia: He aha tōu hiahia ki ahau? Engari kīhai te kīngi i whakahoki kupu ki a ia.

Now it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

And it came to pass that king Lamoni inquired of his servants, saying: Where is this man that has such great power?

And they said unto him: Behold, he is feeding thy horses. Now the king had commanded his servants, previous to the time of the watering of their flocks, that they should prepare his horses and chariots, and conduct him forth to the land of Nephi; for there had been a great feast appointed at the land of Nephi, by the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

Now when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon, saying: Surely there has not been any servant among all my servants that has been so faithful as this man; for even he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

Now I surely know that this is the Great Spirit, and I would desire him that he come in unto me, but I durst not.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed; therefore he was about to return out of his presence.

And one of the king's servants said unto him, Rabbanah, which is, being interpreted, powerful or great king, considering their kings to be powerful; and thus he said unto him: Rabbanah, the king desireth thee to stay.

Therefore Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king? And the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time, for he knew not what he should say unto him.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto him again: What desirest thou of me? But the king answered him not.

- 16     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kī tonu a Amona i te Wairua o te Atua, nō reira i mōhio ia ki ngā whakaaro o te kīngi. Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a ia: I te mea kua rongu koe nāku i tiaki āu pononga me āu kāhui me taku whakamate i ō rātou huānga tokowhitu ki te kōtaha me te hoari, me te tapahi iho i ngā ringa o ērā atu, kia tiakina āu kāhui me āu pononga; nana, koinei te take i hua ai ō whakamīharotanga?
- 17     Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā te aha i pēnā ai te nui o āu mīharotanga? Nana, he tangata au, ā, ko au tō pononga; nō reira, māku e mahi tāu katoa e pai ai mēnā rānei he tika.
- 18     Nā, i te rongonga a te kīngi i ēnei kupu, ka mīharo anō ia, nā te mea i kite ia i āhei a Amona ki te mōhio ki ana whakaaro; engari ahakoa tēnei, i tūwhera a Ramoni i tōna māngai, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: Ko wai rā koe? Ko koe taua Wairua Nui, e mōhio nei ki ngā mea katoa?
- 19     Ka whakautu atu a Amona, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: Kāore.
- 20     Ā, ka kī atu te kīngi: Me pēhea koe e mōhio ai ki ngā whakaaro o tōku ngākau? E pai ana kia māia tō kōrero me te kōrero mai ki ahau e pā ana ki ēnei mea; me kōrero mai anō ki a au nā tēhea kaha koe i whakamate ai, ā, i tapahi iho ai i ngā ringa o ōku huānga nā rātou āku kāhui i whakamarara ai—
- 21     Ināianei ā, mēnā ka kōrero mai koe e pā ana ki ēnei mea, ahakoa he aha tāu e hiahia nei māku e tuku ki a koe; ā, mēnā rānei e whaitake ana, māku koe e tiaki ki aku tauā; engari e mōhio ana au he nui ake tō kaha i a rātou; hei aha koa, ahakoa he aha tō hiahia māku e tuku ki a koe.
- 22     Nā, he tangata matatau a Amona, heoi, kāore i te mōrearea, ka kī atu ia ki a Ramoni: Ka whakarongo mai koe ki aku kupu, mēnā ka kōrero atu au ki a koe nā tēhea kaha au e mahi ai i ēnei mea? Ā, koinei te mea e hiahia nei au i a koe.
- 23     Ā, ka whakautu te kīngi ki a ia, ā, ka kī: Āe rā, ka whakapono au ki āu kupu katoa. Ā, pēnei ia i hopukina ai ki te tinihanga.
- 24     Ā, ka tīmata tā Amona kōrero atu ki a ia i runga i te māia, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: E whakapono ana rānei koe he Atua?
- 25     Ā, ka whakautu ia, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: Kāore au i te mōhio he aha te tikanga o tērā.

And it came to pass that Ammon, being filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king. And he said unto him: Is it because thou hast heard that I defended thy servants and thy flocks, and slew seven of their brethren with the sling and with the sword, and smote off the arms of others, in order to defend thy flocks and thy servants; behold, is it this that causeth thy marvelings?

I say unto you, what is it, that thy marvelings are so great? Behold, I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

Now when the king had heard these words, he marveled again, for he beheld that Ammon could discern his thoughts; but notwithstanding this, king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

And the king said: How knowest thou the thoughts of my heart? Thou mayest speak boldly, and tell me concerning these things; and also tell me by what power ye slew and smote off the arms of my brethren that scattered my flocks—

And now, if thou wilt tell me concerning these things, whatsoever thou desirest I will give unto thee; and if it were needed, I would guard thee with my armies; but I know that thou art more powerful than all they; nevertheless, whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

Now Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things? And this is the thing that I desire of thee.

And the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

And Ammon began to speak unto him with boldness, and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

26 Kātahi a Amona ka kī: E whakapono ana rānei koe he Wairua Nui?

27 Ā, ka kī ia, Āe rā.

28 Kātahi a Amona ka kī: Ko te Atua tēnei. Ā, ka kī atu anō a Amona ki a ia: E whakapono ana rānei koe ko tēnei Wairua Nui, koia te Atua, nāna nei ngā mea katoa i te rangi me te whenua i hanga?

29 Ā, ka kī ia: Āe rā, kei te whakapono au nāna ngā mea katoa i te whenua i hanga; engari kāore au i te mōhio ki ngā rangi.

30 Ā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Ko te rangi te wāhi e nohoni te Atua me ana anahera tapu katoa.

31 Ā, ka kī atu a Ramoni: Kei runga ake tēnā i te whenua?

32 Kātahi a Amona ka kī: Āe rā, kei te titiro iho ia ki ngā tamariki katoa a te tangata; ā, e mōhio ana ia ki ngā whakaaro katoa me ngā hiahia o te ngākau; nā te mea he mea hanga aua mea katoa e tōna ringa mai i te orokotimatanga.

33 Ā, ka kī atu a Ramoni: E whakapono ana au ki ngā mea katoa nāu nei i kōrero. Kua tonoa mai rānei koe e te Atua?

34 Kātahi a Amona ka kī: He tangata au; ā, i te tīmatanga i hangaia te tangata kia rite ki te āhua o te Atua, ā, kua karangatia au e tōna Wairua Tapu ki te whakaako i ēnei mea ki tēnei iwi, kia kukume ai i a rātou ki tētahi mātauranga o taua mea e tika ana, ā, e pono ana.

35 Ā, kei roto i ahau tētahi wāhi o taua Wairua e noho ana, e tuku mātauranga nei, ā, e tuku kaha nei ki ahau kia rite nei ki tōku whakapono me ōku hiahia kei roto nei i te Atua.

36 Nā, i te kōrerotanga ake a Amona i ēnei kupu, ka tīmata ia i te orokohanganga rā anō o te ao, i te hanganga anō o Arama, ā, ka kōrerohia atu ki a ia ngā mea katoa e pā ana ki te takanga o te tangata, ā, ka tākina e ia, ā, ka whakatakotoria ki mua i a ia ngā tuhinga me ngā karaipiture tapu o te iwi, kua kōrerotia nei e ngā poropiti, tae iho ana ki te wā i wehe atu ai tō rātou matua, a Rīhai, i Hiruharama.

37 Ā, i whakahuatia atu anō e ia ki a rātou (nā, ko te kīngi rātou ko āna pononga anō hoki) ngā haerenga katoa a ō rātou tūpuna matua i te koraha me ō rātou whakamamaetanga katoa i te matekai me te matewai me ō rātou uauatanga, i te aha, i te aha.

And then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

And he said, Yea.

And Ammon said: This is God. And Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

And he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

And king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

Ammon said unto him: I am a man; and man in the beginning was created after the image of God, and I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

And a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Now when Ammon had said these words, he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, and rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.



38     Ā, i whakahuatia anōtia e ia ki a rātou ngā mea e pā ana ki ngā tutūtanga a Rāman rāua ko Remuere, me ngā tama a Ihimaera, āe rā, i whakahuatia atu e ia ngā tutūtanga katoa ki a rātou; ā, i whakamāramatia atu e ia ki a rātou ngā tuhinga katoa me ngā karaipiture mai i te wā i wehe atu ai a Rīhai i Hiruharama tae noa iho ki tēnei wā.

39     Engari ehara tēnei i te katoa; nā, i whakamāramatia atu e ia ki a rātou te mahere o te hokonga, i whakaritea mai nei mai i te tūāpapatanga o te ao; ā, i whakamōhiotia anō hoki e ia ki a rātou e pā ana ki te haerenga mai a te Karaiti, ā, nāna ngā mahinga katoa a te Ariki i whakamōhio atu ki a rātou.

40     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i tana kōrerotanga atu i ēnei mea katoa me te whakamārama atu i ēnā mea ki te kīngi, nā, ka whakapono te kīngi ki āna kupu katoa.

41     Ā, ka tīmata ia ki te karanga ake ki te Ariki, e mea ana: E te Ariki, kia aroha mai koe; e rite nei ki tō aroha nunui kua aroha atu na koe ki te iwi o Nīwhai, pērātia mai rā ki runga i ahau me tōku iwi.

42     Ināianei ā, i tana kōrerotanga i tēnei, ka hinga iho ia ki te papa, me te mea nei kua mate ia.

43     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka mauria atu ia e āna pononga ki tana hoawahine, ā, ka whakatakotoria iho ia ki runga i tētahi moenga; ā, ka takoto ia me te mea nei kua mate ia mō ngā rā e rua me ngā pō e rua; ā, ka tangihia ia e tāna hoawahine, e āna tama, me āna tamāhine i runga i ngā ritenga o ngā Rāmana, e tangihia nuitia ana tōna matenga.

And he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them; and he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

But this is not all; for he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world; and he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

And it came to pass that after he had said all these things, and expounded them to the king, that the king believed all his words.

And he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants took him and carried him in unto his wife, and laid him upon a bed; and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights; and his wife, and his sons, and his daughters mourned over him, after the manner of the Lamanites, greatly lamenting his loss.

## Arami 19

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i ngā rā e rua me ngā pō e rua, whano ka mauria atu e rātou tōna tīnana kia whakatakotohia atu ki roto i tētahi ana tūpāpaku, i hangaia ai e rātou hei tanu i ō rātou tūpāpaku.
- 2 Nā, i te mea kua rongu te kuini i te rongonuitanga o Amona, nō reira ia tonoa atu ai, ā, hiahia ai kia haere ai ia ki a ia.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mahi a Amona i tāna i whakahaua ai, ā, ka haere atu ia ki te kuini, ā, i te hiahia ia kia mōhio ai he aha tāna hei mahinga māna.
- 4 Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a ia: Kua whakamōhiohia ahau e ngā pononga a tāku hoatāne, nā, he poropiti koe nā tētahi Atua tapu, ā, he mana tōu anō hoki ki te mahi i ngā mahinga nunui i runga i tōna ingoa;
- 5 Nō reira, mehemea kei te tika tēnei, kei te hiahia au kia tomo atu koe ki roto ki tāku hoatāne, nā te mea kua rua ngā rā, ā, kua rua ngā pō ia e takoto ana i tōna moenga; ā, e kī ana ētahi kāore ia i mate, engari e kī ana ētahi atu kua mate ia, ā, e haunga ana ia, ā, e tiak ana kia whakatakotoria ia ki roto i tētahi ana tūpāpaku; engari ki ahau ake, kāore ia i te pirau ki ahau.
- 6 Nā, koinei tā Amona i hiahia ai, n āte mea i mōhio ia kei raro a kīngi Ramoni i te mana o te Atua; i mōhio ia kua makaia atu te ārai pōuri i tōna hinengaro, ā, ko te māramatanga i whakamāramatia ake ai tōna hinengaro, koia ko te māramatanga o te korōria o te Atua, koia tētahi māramatanga mīharo o tōna pai—āe rā, kua tuia atu e tēnei māramatanga i tētahi hari nui i tōna wairua, ā, i te mea kua whakakorea atu te kapua pōuri, ā, kua whakakāngia ake te māramatanga o te oranga mutunga kore i tōna wairua, āe rā, i mōhio ia kua warea tōna tīnana māori e tēnei mea, ā, kua kahakina atu ia i roto i te Atua—
- 7 Nō reira, ko te hiahia a te kuini ki a ia tōna hiahia anake. Nō reira, ka haere atu ia kia kite ai i te kīngi e rīte nei ki tā te kuini i hiahia ai; ā, ka kite ia i te kīngi, ā, i mōhio ia kāore ia i te mate.
- 8 Kātahi ia ka kī atu ki te kuini: Kāore ia i te mate, engari e moe ana ia i roto i te Atua, ā, hei te aonga ake o te rā ka oho anō ia; nō reira kaua e tanumia ia.

## Alma 19

And it came to pass that after two days and two nights they were about to take his body and lay it in a sepulchre, which they had made for the purpose of burying their dead.

Now the queen having heard of the fame of Ammon, therefore she sent and desired that he should come in unto her.

And it came to pass that Ammon did as he was commanded, and went in unto the queen, and desired to know what she would that he should do.

And she said unto him: The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God, and that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

Therefore, if this is the case, I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre; but as for myself, to me he doth not stink.

Now, this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness—yea, this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul, yea, he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God—

Therefore, what the queen desired of him was his only desire. Therefore, he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

And he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

- 9     Ā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: E whakapono ana rānei koe ki tēnei? Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a ia: Kāore kē atu tētahi whakaaturanga hāunga ia ko tō kupu, me ngā kupu a ā māua pononga; hei aha koa e whakapono ana ahau ka rite ki tāu i kī ake nā.
- 10    Ā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Kua manaakitia koe nā tō whakapono nui; ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, e whae, kāore i pēnei te nui o te whakapono ki waenganui i te iwi katoa o ngā Nīwhai.
- 11    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka toro atu ia i te moenga ki tāna hoatāne, nō taua wā tae noa atu ki taua wā o te aonga ake o te rā kua whakataua e Amona hei ohonga ake mōna.
- 12    Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i oho ia, e rite nei ki ngā kupu a Amona; ā, i a ia e oho ake ana, ka toro atu ia i tōna ringa ki te wahine, ā, ka kī: Kia whakapaingia te ingoa o te Atua, ā, kua manaakitia koe.
- 13    Nā te mea e ora ana koe, nana, kua kite au i tōku kaihoko; ā, ka haere mai ia, ā, ka whānau mai i tētahi wahine, ā, māna e hoko ngā tāngata katoa e whakapono nei ki tōna ingoa. Nā, i tana kōrerotanga i ēnei kupu, kua pupuhi tōna ngākau i roto i a ia, ā, ka totohu iho anō ia i te koa; ā, ka totohu iho anō te kuini, kua warea nei e te Wairua.
- 14    Nā, i te kitenga ake a Amona i te Wairua o te Ariki e ririrngi iho ana e rite nei ki ana inoi ki ngā Rāmana, ki ōna tuākana, ko rātou nei te pūtake o ngā tangihanga nui i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai, i waenganui rānei i te iwi o te Atua nā ō rātou hara me ā rātou whakarerenga iho, ka hinga iho ia ki ōna turi, ā, ka tīmata tana ririrngi iho i tōna wairua i runga i te inoi me te whakawhetai ki te Atua mō tāna i mea ai ki ōna tuākana; ā, kua warea anōtia ia ki te hari; ā, i pēnei tā rātou tokotoru totohu iho ki te papa.
- 15    Nā, i te kitenga o ngā pononga a te kīngi kua hinga iho rātou, ka tīmata anō hoki rātou ki te karanga ake ki te Atua, nā te mea kua tau iho te wehi o te Ariki ki runga i a rātou anō hoki, nā te mea ko rātou ngā mea i tū ai i mua i te kīngi ki te whakaatu atu ki a ia e pā ana ki te kaha nui o Amona.

And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

And it came to pass that he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

For as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name. Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

Now Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

16     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i karanga ake rātou i runga i te ingoa o te Ariki, i tō rātou kaha, tae atu ana ki tā rātou hinganga iho ki te whenua, hāunga ia ko tētahi o ngā wahine Rāmana, ko Apihi tōna ingoa, he maha ngā tau kua whakatahuritia mai ia ki te Atua, he mea nā tētahi kitenga mīharo a tōna matua—

17     Pēnei, kua whakatahuritia mai ki te Ariki, ā, kīhai rawa i whakamōhiotia atu, nō reira, i tana kitenga ake kua hinga katoa ngā pononga a Ramoni ki te whenua, me tōna ariki wahine, arā, te kuini, me te kīngi, me Amona e takoto whārōrō ana i runga i te whenua, kua mōhio ia ko te kaha o te Atua; kātahi ka whakaaro ia he wā pai tēnei, mā te whakaatuhia atu ki te iwi i ahatia i waenganui i a rātou, nā, mā te kitenga atu i tēnei āhuatanga ka whakapono rātou i te mana o te Atua, nō reira ia oma atu ai ki tēnā whare, ki tēnā whare, e whakamōhiotia atu ana ki te iwi.

18     Ā, ka tīmata tā rātou huihui i a rātou anō ki te whare o te kīngi. Ā, he tini rātou i haere mai ai, ā, i whakamīharotia rātou i runga i te kitenga atu i te kīngi, me te kuini, me ā rātou pononga e takoto whārōrō ana i runga i te whenua, i te takoto katoa rātou anō nei kua mate rātou; ā, i kite anō rātou i a Amona, ā nana, he Nīwhai ia.

19     Ināianeī ā, ka tīmata te iwi ki te amuamu i waenganui i a rātou; e mea ana ētahi, nā, he kino nui kua tau iho ki runga i a rātou, i runga rānei i te kīngi me tōna whare, nā te mea kua tukuna e ia tētahi Nīwhai kia noho tonu ai i te whenua.

20     Engari i kohete ētahi atu i a rātou, e mea ana: Nā te kīngi tēnei kino i tau mai ai ki runga i tōna whare, nā te mea i whakamate ia i āna pononga mō rātou ā rātou kāhui i whakamararatia atu i ngā wai o Hepuha.

21     Ā, i kohetitia anōtia rātou e aua tāngata i tū ai i ngā wai o Hepuha, ā, i whakamararatia ai ngā kāhui a te kīngi, nā te mea i te riri rātou ki a Amona nā te tokomaha o ō rātou teina i patua ai e ia i ngā wai o Hepuha, i a ia e tiaki ana i ngā kāhui a te kīngi.

And it came to pass that they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father—

Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known, therefore, when she saw that all the servants of Lamoni had fallen to the earth, and also her mistress, the queen, and the king, and Ammon lay prostrate upon the earth, she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

And they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king. And there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead; and they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

And now the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

But others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

And they were also rebuked by those men who had stood at the waters of Sebus and scattered the flocks which belonged to the king, for they were angry with Ammon because of the number which he had slain of their brethren at the waters of Sebus, while defending the flocks of the king.

- 22 Nā, ko tētahi o rātou, kua whakamatea tana teina ki te hoari o Amona, nā konā i te tino riri rawa ia ki a Amona, i unu atu tana hoari kātahi ka haere atu kia whakatakahia iho ai ki runga i a Amona, kia patua ia; ā, i a ia e hāpai ake ana i tana hoari kia patua ai ia, nana, ka mate ia.
- 23 Nā, e kite nei tātou kīhai i taea a Amona te patu, nā te mea i kī atu te Ariki ki a Mōhia, tōna matua: Māku ia e tohu, ā, ka rite ki tō whakapono te meatanga ki a ia—nō reira, i tukuna atu ia e Mōhia ki te Ariki.
- 24 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kitenga ake o te minenga kua mate te tangata nāna te hoari i hāpai ake kia whakamate i a Amona, ka tau iho te wehi ki runga i a rātou katoa, ā, kīhai i māia ki te toro atu i ō rātou ringa kia pā ai ki a ia, ki tētahi o te hunga rānei kua hinga iho; ā, ka tīmata tō rātou mīharo i waenganui i a rātou anō he aha rā te pūtake o tēnei kaha nui, he aha rānei te tikanga o ēnei mea katoa.
- 25 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha i waenganui i a rātou i kī ai ko Amona te Wairua Nui, ā, ko ētahi atu i kī ai kua tonoa ia e te Wairua Tapu;
- 26 Engari i kohetehia atu rātou katoa e ētahi atu, e mea ana he taniwhā ia kua tonoa mai i ngā Nīwhai ki te whakatīwheta i a rātou.
- 27 Ā, i reira ētahi i kī ai kua tonoa mai a Amona e te Wairua Nui ki te whakamamae i a rātou nā ō rātou hara; ā, ko te Wairua Nui tērā i tiaki ai i ngā Nīwhai i ngā wā katoa, kua whakaputaina rātou i ō rātou ringaringa i ngā wā katoa; ā, i kī ake anō rātou ko tēnei Wairua Nui nāna nei i whakangaro te tokomaha o ā rātou teina, arā, ko ngā Rāmāna.
- 28 Ā, ka tīmata pēnei te tautohetohenga nui i roto i a rātou. Ā, i a rātou e tautohetohe pēnei ana, ka tae mai te pononga wahine nāna nei rātou i mea kia huitahi ai te minenga, ā, ka pōuri ia i tana kitenga atu i te tautohetohenga nui i waenganui i te minenga, ā, heke ana ngā roimata.
- 29 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu ia ka mau ki te ringa o te kuini, me kore pea e ara ake ia i te whenua; ā, pā kau ki tōna ringa ka oho ake ia, ā, ka tū ake ki runga i ōna waewae, ā, ka karanga ake i te reo kaha, e mea ana: Korōria ki a Ihu, kua whakaorangia mai au i te ao rēwera whakarihariha! Korōria ki te Atua, kia aroha mai rā ki tēnei iwi!

Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

Now we see that Ammon could not be slain, for the Lord had said unto Mosiah, his father: I will spare him, and it shall be unto him according to thy faith—therefore, Mosiah trusted him unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

And it came to pass that there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

And thus the contention began to be exceedingly sharp among them. And while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

And it came to pass that she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying: O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

- 30     Ā, i tana kōrerotanga iho i tēnei, ka pupuru ia i ana ringaringa, e kī ana i te hari, e kōrero ana i ngā kupu maha kīhai i mārāmātia; ā, i tana mahinga i tēnei, ka mauria e ia te kīgi, a Ramoni, ki tana ringa, ā, nana, ka oho ake ia, ā, ka tū i runga i ōna waewae.
- 31     Kātahi ia, i taua wā tonu, i tana kitenga atu i te tautohetohenga i waenganui i tana iwi, ka haere atu, ā, ka tīmata ki te kohete i a rātou me te whakaako i a rātou i ngā kupu i rangona ai i te kupu o Amona; ā, ka whakapono ngā tāngata katoa i rongo ai i ana kupu, ā, ka tahuri ki te Ariki.
- 32     Engari he tokomaha i waenganui i a rātou kīhai i pai ki te whakarongo ki ana kupu; nō reira rātou haere atu ai i ā rātou ake huarahi.
- 33     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te ohonga ake a Amona ka minita anō ia ki a rātou, ā, ka pērā anō ngā pononga a Ramoni; ā, i whakapuaki tahi rātou katoa i te mea kotahi—nā, kua panonitia ō rātou ngākau; nā, kāore ō rātou hiahia ki te mahi kino.
- 34     Ā, nana, he tokomaha i whakapuaki atu ki te iwi, nā, kua kite rātou i ngā anahera, ā, i kōrero anō ki a rātou; ā, pēnei kua kōrero atu rātou ki rātou i ngā mea o te Atua me tōna tika.
- 35     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, he tokomaha ngā mea i whakapono ai ki ā rātou kupu; ā, i rumakina ngā mea katoa i whakapono ai; ā, ka meinga rātou hei iwi tika, ā, i whakapūmau rātou i tētahi hāhi i waenganui i a rātou.
- 36     Ā, i pēnei te tīmatanga o ngā mahi a te Ariki i waenganui i ngā Rāmāna; i pēnei te tīmatanga o tā te Ariki maringitanga iho i tōna Wairua i runga i a rātou; ā, e kite ana tātou kua torona atu tōna ringa ki ngā tāngata katoa e rīpenetā ai, ā, e whakapono ai i tōna ingoa.

And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood; and when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

And he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon; and as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

And it came to pass that when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing—that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

And behold, many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels and had conversed with them; and thus they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

And it came to pass that there were many that did believe in their words; and as many as did believe were baptized; and they became a righteous people, and they did establish a church among them.

And thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites; thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them; and we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent and believe on his name.

## Arami 20

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i tā rātou whakapūmautanga i tētahi hāhi i te whenua, nā, ka hiahia a Ramoni kia haere tahi a Amona me ia ki te whenua o Nīwhai, kia whakamōhiotia atu ia ki tōna matua.
- 2 Ā, ka tau iho te reo o te Ariki ki a Amona, e mea ana: Kaua koe e haere ake ki te whenua o Nīwhai, nana rā, ka whai te kīngi i tō oranga; engari ka haere kē koe ki te whenua o Mironi; nana rā, kei te whareherehere tō tuakana a Arona, me Muroki hoki rātou ko Amana.
- 3 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te wā i rongo ai a Amona i tēnei, ka kī atu ia ki a Ramoni: Nana, kei te whareherehere tōku tuakana me aku teina i Mironi, ā, ka haere ahau ki te whakaputa i a rātou.
- 4 Nā, ka kī atu a Ramoni ki a Amona: E mōhio ana ahau, i te kaha o te Atua e taea ana e koe ngā mahi katoa. Engari nana, ka haere tahi au me koe ki te whenua o Mironi; nā te mea he hoa nōku te kīngi o te whenua o Mironi, ko Anatiomono tōna ingoa; nō reira haere ai au ki te whenua o Mironi, kia whakapatipati au i te kīngi o te whenua, ā, māna ō teina e maka atu ki waho i te whareherehere. Nā, ka kī atu a Ramoni ki a ia: Nā wai koe i whakamōhio kei te whareherehere ō teina?
- 5 Ā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Kāore tētahi i whakamōhio mai ki ahau, hāunga ko te Atua; ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau—Haere kia whakaputaina ai ō teina, nā te mea kei te whareherehere rātou i te whenua o Mironi.
- 6 Nā, i te wā i rongo ai a Ramoni i tēnei ka meatia e ia ana pononga kia whakaritea ai ōna hōiho me ōna hāriata.
- 7 Ā, ka kī atu ia ki a Amona: Haere mai, ka haere iho au me koe ki te whenua o Mironi, ā, ka inoi atu au i reira ki te kīngi kia makaia atu e ia ō teina ki waho i te whareherehere.
- 8 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a Amona rāua ko Ramoni e haere ana ki reira, ka tūtaki rāua ki te matua o Ramoni, koia te kīngi i runga i te whenua katoa.
- 9 Ā, nana, ka kī mai te matua o Ramoni ki a ia: He aha koe i kore ai e haere mai ki te hākari i taua rā nui i whakatakoto hākari ai ahau mā āku tama, mā tōku iwi anō?

## Alma 20

And it came to pass that when they had established a church in that land, that king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

And the voice of the Lord came to Ammon, saying: Thou shalt not go up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life; but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

Now it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I may deliver them.

Now Lamoni said unto Ammon: I know, in the strength of the Lord thou canst do all things. But behold, I will go with thee to the land of Middoni; for the king of the land of Middoni, whose name is Antiomno, is a friend unto me; therefore I go to the land of Middoni, that I may flatter the king of the land, and he will cast thy brethren out of prison. Now Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in prison?

And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be God; and he said unto me—Go and deliver thy brethren, for they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

Now when Lamoni had heard this he caused that his servants should make ready his horses and his chariots.

And he said unto Ammon: Come, I will go with thee down to the land of Middoni, and there I will plead with the king that he will cast thy brethren out of prison.

And it came to pass that as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

And behold, the father of Lamoni said unto him: Why did ye not come to the feast on that great day when I made a feast unto my sons, and unto my people?

- 10     Ā, ka kī mai anō ia: Kei te haere kōrua ko tēnei  
Nīwhai, arā, tēnei tamaiti o tētahi kairūkahu ki hea?
- 11     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kōrero atu a Ramoni ki a ia  
mō te wāhi e haere nei rāua, nā te mea i te mataku ia  
kei hē ia i a ia.
- 12     Ā, i kōrero atu anō ia ki a ia mō ngā take katoa i  
takaroa ai ia i tōna ake kīngitanga, nā konā kīhai ia i  
haere atu ai ki tōna matua me te hākari i whakaritea  
ai e ia.
- 13     Ināianeī ā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Ramoni i ēnei  
mea katoa ki a ia, nana, i te ohorere ia i te takariri o  
tana matua ki a ia, ā, ka mea: E Ramoni, kei te haere  
atu rānei koe ki te whakaputa i ēnei Nīwhai, ko rātou  
nei ngā tamaiti o tētahi kairūkahu. Nana, nāna ō  
tātou tūpuna matua i whānako; ināianeī ā, kei te  
haere mai āna tamariki anō hoki ki waenganui i a  
tātou kia tinihangatia tātou e ō rātou māminga me ā  
rātou rūkahu, kia whānakotia anōtia ō tātou taonga.
- 14     Nā, ka whakahau te matua o Ramoni ki a ia kia  
whakamate ai ia i a Amona ki te hoari. Ā, ka  
whakahau anō ia ki a ia ki kaua e haere atu ia ki te  
whenua o Mironi, engari kia hoki atu rāua tahi ki te  
whenua o Ihimaera.
- 15     Engari ka kī atu a Ramoni ki a ia: E kore au e  
whakamate i a Amona, e kore rānei au e hoki atu ki  
te whenua o Ihimaera, engari ka haere au ki Mironi  
kia whakaputaina mai ngā teina o Amona, nā te mea  
e mōhio ana ahau he tangata tika, ā, he poropiti tapu  
rātou nā te Atua pono.
- 16     Nā, i te rongonga o tana matua i ēnei kupu, ka riri  
ia ki a ia, ā, ka unuhia tana hoari kia patua iho ia ki  
te whenua.
- 17     Engari ka tū atu a Amona, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia:  
Nana, kaua koe e whakamate i tō tama; hei aha koa,  
he pai ake tana hinganga i tō hinganga, nana rā, kua  
rīpenetā ia i ōna hara; engari mēnā ka hinga iho koe  
i tēnei wā, i roto i tō riri, kua kore e taea tō wairua te  
whakaora.
- 18     Hei āpiti anō, e tika pū ana kia atahanga koe; nā te  
mea mēnā ka whakamate koe i tō tama, koia he  
tangata hē kore, ka karanga ake tōna toto i te  
whenua ki te Ariki te Atua, kia ngakia ai te mate ki  
runga i a koe; ā, tērā pea ka ngaro tō wairua.

And he also said: Whither art thou going with this  
Nephite, who is one of the children of a liar?

And it came to pass that Lamoni rehearsed unto  
him whither he was going, for he feared to offend  
him.

And he also told him all the cause of his tarrying  
in his own kingdom, that he did not go unto his fa-  
ther to the feast which he had prepared.

And now when Lamoni had rehearsed unto him  
all these things, behold, to his astonishment, his fa-  
ther was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art  
going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a  
liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his chil-  
dren are also come amongst us that they may, by  
their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they  
again may rob us of our property.

Now the father of Lamoni commanded him that  
he should slay Ammon with the sword. And he also  
commanded him that he should not go to the land of  
Middoni, but that he should return with him to the  
land of Ishmael.

But Lamoni said unto him: I will not slay Ammon,  
neither will I return to the land of Ishmael, but I go  
to the land of Middoni that I may release the  
brethren of Ammon, for I know that they are just  
men and holy prophets of the true God.

Now when his father had heard these words, he  
was angry with him, and he drew his sword that he  
might smite him to the earth.

But Ammon stood forth and said unto him:  
Behold, thou shalt not slay thy son; nevertheless, it  
were better that he should fall than thee, for behold,  
he has repented of his sins; but if thou shouldst fall  
at this time, in thine anger, thy soul could not be  
saved.

And again, it is expedient that thou shouldst for-  
bear; for if thou shouldst slay thy son, he being an in-  
nocent man, his blood would cry from the ground to  
the Lord his God, for vengeance to come upon thee;  
and perhaps thou wouldst lose thy soul.



19 Nā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Amona i ēnei kupu ki a ia, ka whakautu ia, e mea ana: E mōhio ana au mēnā ka patu au i taku tama, nā, ka whakahekea te toto hē kore; nā te mea ko koe te mea kua whai atu kia whakangaromia ia.

20 Ā, ka toro atu ia i tana ringa ki te whakamate i a Amona. Engari i karo atu a Amona i āna hahautanga, ā, ka patua tana ringa kia kore ai e taea te whakamahi.

21 Nā, i te kitenga ake o te kīngi kua taea ia e Amona te patu, ka tīmata tana inoi atu ki a Amona kia tohua ai tōna orange.

22 Engari ka hāpai ake a Amona i tana hoari, ā, ka kī atu ki a ia: Nana, māku koe e patu ki te kore koe e whakaae mai kia makaia atu aku teina ki waho i te whareherehere.

23 Nā, ko te kīngi, e wehi ana kei riro tana orange, ka mea: Mēnā ka tohua au e koe māku e tuku atu ki a koe ngā mea katoa e tono ai koe, tae atu ki te hauruatanga o te kīngitanga.

24 Nā, i te kitenga a Amona kua whakaaweawetia te kīngi koroua e rite ana ki tana hiahia, ka kī atu ki a ia: Mēnā ka whakaae koe kia makaia atu ai ōku teina ki waho i te whareherehere, kia mau tonu anō i a Ramoni tōna kīngitanga, ā, kia kaua anō koe e riri tonu ai ki a ia, engari kia tukuna ia ki te mahi i tāna e pai ai ahakoa he aha rawa ngā mea e whakaaro ai ia, kātahi au ka tohu i a koe; ki te kore māku koe e patu ki te whenua.

25 Nā, i te kōrerotanga atu a Amona i ēnei kupu, ka hari haere te kīngi nā tōna orange.

26 Ā, i tana kitenga atu kāore ō Amona hiahia ki te whakamate i a ia, ā, i tana kitenga atu i tōna aroha nui mō tana tama a Ramoni, ka tino mīharo ia, ā, ka mea: Nā te mea koinei tāu anake i tonoa ai, kia whakaputaina atu ō teina me te tuku i taku tama a Ramoni kia puritia tonutia tōna kīngitanga, nana, ka whakaae au ki a koe kia puritia tonutia e taku tama tōna kīngitanga mai i tēnei wā haere ake nei; ā, kāore au e whakahaere tonu i a ia—

Now when Ammon had said these words unto him, he answered him, saying: I know that if I should slay my son, that I should shed innocent blood; for it is thou that hast sought to destroy him.

And he stretched forth his hand to slay Ammon. But Ammon withstood his blows, and also smote his arm that he could not use it.

Now when the king saw that Ammon could slay him, he began to plead with Ammon that he would spare his life.

But Ammon raised his sword, and said unto him: Behold, I will smite thee except thou wilt grant unto me that my brethren may be cast out of prison.

Now the king, fearing he should lose his life, said: If thou wilt spare me I will grant unto thee whatsoever thou wilt ask, even to half of the kingdom.

Now when Ammon saw that he had wrought upon the old king according to his desire, he said unto him: If thou wilt grant that my brethren may be cast out of prison, and also that Lamoni may retain his kingdom, and that ye be not displeased with him, but grant that he may do according to his own desires in whatsoever thing he thinketh, then will I spare thee; otherwise I will smite thee to the earth.

Now when Ammon had said these words, the king began to rejoice because of his life.

And when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more—

27     Ā, ka whakaae anō au ki a koe kia makaia atu ō teina ki waho i te whareherehere, ā, kia haere mai rā koe koutou ko ō teina ki ahau ki roto i tōku kīngitanga; nā te mea ka tino nui taku hiahia kia kite ai au i a koe. Nā te mea i tino mīharo nui te kīngi i ngā kupu i kōrerotia ai e ia, i ngā kupu anō hoki i kōrerotia ai e tana tama a Ramoni, nō reira i te hiahia ia ki te ako i aua kupu.

28     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere tonu a Amona rāua ko Ramoni i runga i tā rāua haere ki te whenua o Mironi. Ā, ka whakaarohia nuitia a Amona i te tirohanga a te kīngi; nō reira ka mauria mai ngā teina o Amona ki waho i te whareherehere.

29     Ā, i te wā i tūtaki a Amona ki a rātou ka tino pōuri rawa atu ia, nana rā, i te tahanga rātou, kua paea rawa ō rātou kiri nā te herenga ki ngā taura kaha. Ā, kua whakamamaetia ki te matekai, te matewai me ngā tūmomo whakamamaetanga katoa; hei aha koa i manawaroa rātou i roto i ā rātou whakamamaetanga.

30     Ā, i tūpono ake, ko tā rātou ara tātai kia taka iho ki ngā ringaringa o tētahi iwi mārō ake, ā, iwi kakī mārō ake; nō reira kīhai rātou i pai kia whakarongo ake ki ā rātou kupu, ā, kua makaia atu rātou e rātou, ā, kua pakipākia rātou, ā, kua āia atu rātou mai i tētahi whare ki tētahi whare, ā, mai i tētahi wāhi ki tētahi wāhi, tae atu ana ki tā rātou taenga atu ki te whenua o Mironi; ā, i mauhereheretia atu rātou i reira, kātahi ka makaia atu ki te whareherehere, ā, ka herea ki ngā taura kaha, ā, ka mau rātou i reira mō ngā rā maha, ā, ka whakaorangia e Ramoni rāua ko Amona.

And I will also grant unto thee that thy brethren may be cast out of prison, and thou and thy brethren may come unto me, in my kingdom; for I shall greatly desire to see thee. For the king was greatly astonished at the words which he had spoken, and also at the words which had been spoken by his son Lamoni, therefore he was desirous to learn them.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni proceeded on their journey towards the land of Middoni. And Lamoni found favor in the eyes of the king of the land; therefore the brethren of Ammon were brought forth out of prison.

And when Ammon did meet them he was exceedingly sorrowful, for behold they were naked, and their skins were worn exceedingly because of being bound with strong cords. And they also had suffered hunger, thirst, and all kinds of afflictions; nevertheless they were patient in all their sufferings.

And, as it happened, it was their lot to have fallen into the hands of a more hardened and a more stiff-necked people; therefore they would not hearken unto their words, and they had cast them out, and had smitten them, and had driven them from house to house, and from place to place, even until they had arrived in the land of Middoni; and there they were taken and cast into prison, and bound with strong cords, and kept in prison for many days, and were delivered by Lamoni and Ammon.

*He whakaaturanga mo nga kauwhautanga a Arona raua ko Muroki me o raua teina, ki nga Ramana.*

## Arami 21

- 1 Na, i te wehewehenga o Amona ratou ko ona teina i a ratou i roto i nga kaha o te whenua o nga Ramana, nana, ka turia atu e Arona whaka-te-whenua i karangatia ai e nga Ramana ko Hiruharama; he karangatanga hoki tera ki te whenua i whanau ai o ratou matua; a i takoto atu taua whenua i piri atu ki nga kaha o Moromona.
- 2 Na, kua hanga tetahi pa nui e nga Ramana ratou ko nga Amareki ko te iwi o Amorono, e karangatia nei ko Hiruharama.
- 3 Na, he nui te pakeke o nga Ramana, ko nga Amareki ia ratou ko nga Amorono kei runga atu te pakeke; koia ratou i mea ai i nga Ramana kia whakapakeke i o ratou ngakau, a ka tupu ka kaha i roto i o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha.
- 4 Nawai a, ka tae a Arona ki te pa o Hiruharama, a ka timata ia ki te kauwhau ki nga Amareki i te tuatahi. A, ka timata ia te kauwhau ki a ratou i roto i o ratou whare karakia, kua hanga whare karakia hoki ratou i runga i to nga Nehoro ritenga; no te mea he maha nga Amareki ratou ko nga Amorono e rite tahi ana to ratou ki to nga Nehoro tikanga.
- 5 No reira, i a Arona e tomo ana ki roto ki tetahi o o ratou whare karakia ki te kauwhau ki te iwi, a i a ia e korero ana ki a ratou, nana, ka whakatika tetahi Amareki ka timata ki te tautohetohe ki a ia, ka mea, He aha tena e korero na koe? Kua kite ianei koe i tetahi anahera? He aha nga anahera te puta mai ai ki a matou? Nana, he teka ianei e rite tahi ana te pai o tenei iwi ki tou iwi?
- 6 E ki ana hoki koe, ki te kore matou e ripeneta, ka mate matou. Na, na te aha i mohio ai koe ki te whakaaro me te hiahia o o matou ngakau? Na te aha i mohio ai koe ki a matou e whai take ana mo te ripeneta? Na te aha i mohio ai koe ehara matou i te iwi tika? Nana, kua hanga e matou nga whare karakia, a e huihui tahi ana ano matou ki te karakia ake ki te Atua. Kei te whakapono matou ki te Atua e whakaorangia e ia nga tangata katoa.

*An account of the preaching of Aaron, and Muloki, and their brethren, to the Lamanites.*

## Alma 21

Now when Ammon and his brethren separated themselves in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, behold Aaron took his journey towards the land which was called by the Lamanites, Jerusalem, calling it after the land of their fathers' nativity; and it was away joining the borders of Mormon.

Now the Lamanites and the Amalekites and the people of Amulon had built a great city, which was called Jerusalem.

Now the Lamanites of themselves were sufficiently hardened, but the Amalekites and the Amulonites were still harder; therefore they did cause the Lamanites that they should harden their hearts, that they should wax strong in wickedness and their abominations.

And it came to pass that Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites. And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors; for many of the Amalekites and the Amulonites were after the order of the Nehors.

Therefore, as Aaron entered into one of their synagogues to preach unto the people, and as he was speaking unto them, behold there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people? Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

- 7 Na, ka mea atu a Arona ki a ia, E whakapono ana ranei koe ki te Tama a te Atua e haere mai ki te hoko i nga tangata i o ratou hara?
- 8 A ka mea atu te tangata ra ki a ia, Kahore o matou whakapono ki a koe e mohio ana ki nga mea pera. Kahore o matou whakapono ki ena whakarereanga kuare. Ki a matou kahore koe e mohio ki nga mea e puta mai ana, ki a matou hoki kihai ou matua, o matou matua ranei i mohio ki nga mea i korero ai ratou mo nga mea e puta mai ana.
- 9 Katahi a Arona ka tahuri ki te wherawhera i nga karaipiture ki a ratou mo te taenga mai o te Karaiti, mo te aranga ano hoki o te hunga mate, a kahore e taea he hokonga mo te tangata engari ma te mate anake me te mamae o te Karaiti me te whakamarietanga a ona toto.
- 10 Nawai a, i a ia e timata ana ki te whakaatu atu i enei mea ki a ratou, ka riri ratou ki a ia, a tawai ana i a ia; kihai ratou i pai ki te whakarongo i nga kupu i korero ai ia;
- 11 No reira, i tona kitenga i a ratou kihai i pai ki te whakarongo i ana korero, ka puta atu ia i roto i to ratou whare karakia, a haere mai ana ki tetahi kainga e karangatia nei ko Ani-Anati, a i reira ka kite ia i a Muroki e kauwhau ana i te kupu ki a ratou; me Ama ano hoki ratou ko ona teina. A he tokomaha i tautohetia e ratou mo te kupu.
- 12 Nawai a, ka kite ratou i te iwi ra era e whakapakeke i o ratou ngakau, koia ratou i haere ai, a haere mai ana ki te whenua o Mironi. A ka kauwhau ratou i te kupu ki nga tangata maha, a he torutoru nei i whakapono ki nga kupu i whakaako ai ratou.
- 13 Ahakoa ra, i hopukia a Arona ratou ko etahi o ona teina, a maka ana ki te whare herehere, a ko te toenga o ratou i oma ki waho o te whenua o Mironi, ki nga kainga e patata ana.
- 14 A ko te hunga i maka ra ki te whare herehere, he maha nga mea i mamae ai ratou, na, ka whakaputaina ratou e te ringa o Ramoni raua ko Amona, na, whangaia ana ratou whakakakahuria ana.
- 15 A ka haere atu ano ratou ki te whakapuaki i te kupu, katahi ano hoki ratou ka whakaputaina mai kiwaho i te whare herehere; a i pera hoki o ratou whakamamaetanga.

Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing. We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

And it came to pass as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue, and came over to a village which was called Ani-Anti, and there he found Muloki preaching the word unto them; and also Ammah and his brethren. And they contended with many about the word.

And it came to pass that they saw that the people would harden their hearts, therefore they departed and came over into the land of Middoni. And they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the words which they taught.

Nevertheless, Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison, and the remainder of them fled out of the land of Middoni unto the regions round about.

And those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

And they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison; and thus they had suffered.

- 16 Na, ka haere atu ratou ki nga wahi katoa i arahina ai ratou e te Wairua o te Ariki, kauwhau haere ai i te kupu a te Atua i roto i nga whare karakia katoa o nga Amariki, ara, i roto i nga whakaminenga katoa o nga Ramana i tukua ai ratou ki reira.
- 17 Nawai a, ka tahuri te Ariki ki te manaaki i a ratou, no ka tokomaha i whakaputaina mai e ratou ki te matauranga o te pono; ae ra, he tokomaha i whakaatu i o ratou hara, i whakaae hoki kaore nga whakarereinga iho a o ratou matua i te tika.
- 18 Nawai a, ka hoki mai a Amona raua ko Ramoni i te whenua o Mironi, ki te whenua o Ihimaera, koia nei to ratou whenua tupu.
- 19 A kahore a kingi Ramoni i pai ki te tuku kia mahi a Amona ki a ia kia waiho ranei hei pononga mana;
- 20 Heoi mea ana ia kia hanga he whare karakia i runga i te whenua o Ihimaera; a ka mea ano hoki ia i tana iwi, ara, i te iwi i raro i tana kingitanga, kia huihui tahi.
- 21 A ka hari ia i runga i a ratou, me te whakaako ano ia i a ratou ki nga mea maha. Na, ka whakapuaki ano ia ki a ratou ara, ki te iwi i raro nei i a ia, he iwi herekore ano hoki ratou e mawheto ana i nga tukinotanga a tona papa, a te kingi; no te mea kua tuku mai tona papa ki a ia kia kingi ia i runga i te iwi i roto nei i te whenua o Ihimaera, me te whenua katoa e patata ana.
- 22 A i whakapuaki ano ia ki a ratou, ka tukua atu ki a ratou te tikanga mo te karakia ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, kia rite ki o ratou hiahia, ahakoa kowhea kainga o ratou, ki te mea i runga ratou i te whenua i raro nei i te mana o kingi Ramoni.
- 23 Na, ka kauwhau a Amona ki te iwi o kingi Ramoni; a ka whakaako ia i a ratou ki nga mea katoa mo nga mea o te tika. A ka takare tonu ia ki te whakahauhau i a ratou i tenei ra, i tenei ra; a whakarongo ana ratou ki tana kupu, ngakau nui ana ano ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua.

And they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

And it came to pass that the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

And it came to pass that Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael, which was the land of their inheritance.

And king Lamoni would not suffer that Ammon should serve him, or be his servant.

But he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael; and he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

And he did rejoice over them, and he did teach them many things. And he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father; for that his father had granted unto him that he might reign over the people who were in the land of Ishmael, and in all the land round about.

And he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

And Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni; and it came to pass that he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness. And he did exhort them daily, with all diligence; and they gave heed unto his word, and they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

## Arami 22

- 1 Na, i a Amona e whakaako pera ana i te iwi o Ramoni i nga wa katoa, ka hoki ake tatou ki te whakaaturanga mo Arona ratou ko ona teina; na, i muri i tana haerenga atu i te whenua o Mironi, ka arahina ia e te Wairua ki te whenua o Niwhai; ae ra, ki te whare o te kingi i runga nei i te whenua katoa, haunga ia te whenua o Ihimaera; na, ko te matua tera a Ramoni.
- 2 A ka haere ia ki a ia ki te whare o te kingi, me ona teina, ka tuohu ano ia ki te aroaro o te kingi, a ka mea ki a ia, Nana, E te kingi, ko nga teina matou o Amona, ko nga tangata i whakaputaina nei e koe ki waho o te whare herehere.
- 3 Tena ra, e te kingi, ki te pai koe ki te tohu i a matou, hei pononga matou ki a koe. Na, ka ki atu te kingi ki a ratou, E ara, ka tohungia hoki koutou e ahau, a e kore au e tuku kia riro koutou hei pononga maku; engari ka akiaki ahau i a koutou kia minita mai ki a au; no te mea kua raru toku whakaaro i te ngawari me te nunui o nga kupu a tou tuakana, a Amona; a e hiahia ana ahau kia mohio ki te take kahore nei ia i haere tahi mai i a koe ki waho o Mironi.
- 4 A ka mea atu a Arona ki te kingi, Nana, kua karangatia ia e te Wairua o te Ariki ki tetahi ara ke, kua riro ia ki te whenua o Ihimaera, ki te whakaako i te iwi o Ramoni.
- 5 Katahi te kingi ka ki atu ki a ratou, He aha tenei i korero nei koutou mo te Wairua o te Ariki? Nana, ko te mea tenei e whakararu nei i toku whakaaro.
- 6 He aha ano hoki tenei i mea ai a Amona—Ki te ripeneta koe ka whakaorangia, a ki te kore koe e ripeneta, na, ka maka atu koe a te ra whakamutunga?
- 7 A ka whakahoki a Arona ki a ia, a ka mea ki a ia, E whakapono ana ranei koe he Atua ano? A ka mea te kingi, E mohio ana ahau e ki ana nga Amareki he Atua ano, a kua tuku hoki ahau i a ratou kia hanga whare karakia, kia huihui ai ratou ki te karakia ki a ia. A ki te mea ka ki mai koe he Atua ano, nana, ka whakapono ahau.
- 8 Na, i te rongonga o Arona i tenei, ka timata te koa o tona ngakau, a ka mea ia, Nana, he pono e ora ana koe, E te kingi, he Atua ano.

## Alma 22

Now, as Ammon was thus teaching the people of Lamoni continually, we will return to the account of Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

And it came to pass that he went in unto him into the king's palace, with his brethren, and bowed himself before the king, and said unto him: Behold, O king, we are the brethren of Ammon, whom thou hast delivered out of prison.

And now, O king, if thou wilt spare our lives, we will be thy servants. And the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon; and I desire to know the cause why he has not come up out of Middoni with thee.

And Aaron said unto the king: Behold, the Spirit of the Lord has called him another way; he has gone to the land of Ishmael, to teach the people of Lamoni.

Now the king said unto them: What is this that ye have said concerning the Spirit of the Lord? Behold, this is the thing which doth trouble me.

And also, what is this that Ammon said—If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God? And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

And now when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

- 9 A ka mea te kingi, Ko te Atua koia taua Wairua Nui nana i kawē mai o tatou matua ki waho o te whenua o Hiruharama?
- 10 A ka mea a Arona ki a ia, Ae, ko ia taua Wairua Nui, a nana i hanga nga me katoa i te rangi, me te whenua: Na, e whakapono ana ranei koe ki tenei?
- 11 A ka mea ia, Ae, E whakapono ana ahau ki te Wairua Nui i hanga i enei mea katoa, e hiahia ana hoki ahau kia korero mai koe i enei mea katoa, a ka whakapono ahau ki au kupu.
- 12 Nawai a, i te kitenga a Arona e pai ana te kingi ki te whakapono ki ana kupu, ka timata ia i te hanganga ra ano o Arama, e korero ana i nga karaipiture ki te kingi: mo te hanganga a te Atua i te tangata kia rite ki tona ahua, a i homai ano e te Atua he ture ki a ia, a na te takahanga o te ture i taka ai te tangata.
- 13 A ka kauwhau a Arona i te karaipiture ki a ia, no te hanganga ra ano o Arama, me te whakamarama ano ki a ia i te takanga o te tangata, me to ratou ahua o te kikokiko, me te tikanga hoko ano hoki i whakaritea ai i roto i a te Karaiti no te orokohanganga ra ano o te ao, mo te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki tona ingoa.
- 14 A i te mea kua taka te tangata e kore ia e whakatikangatia e ana ake mo tetahi mea; engari e whakamarie ana nga whakamamaetanga me te matenga o te Karaiti mo o ratou hara, i runga i te whakapono, i te ripeneta, i etahi atu mea ano hoki; a ka motumotu i a ia nga paihere o te mate, a kahore o te urupa wikitoria, ka horomia ake hoki to te mate wero e te tumunako atu ki te kororia: a na Arona i whakaatu atu enei mea katoa ki te kingi.
- 15 Nawai a, muri iho i ta Arona whakaaturanga i enei mea ki a ia, ka mea te kingi, Me aha ahau e whiwhi ai ki tenei ora tonu i korero na koe? Ae ra, me aha ahau e whanau ai i te Atua hei hutinga atu i tenei wairua kino i roto i toku ngakau, hei whakawhiwhinga i au ki tona Wairua kia ki ai ahau i te koa kia kore ai ahau e maka atu a te ra whakamutunga? Nana, ka mea ia, Ka hoatu e au aku rawa katoa; ae ra, ka whakarere ahau i toku kingitanga kia whiwhi ai ahau ki tenei hari nui.

And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

And it came to pass that when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king—how God created man after his own image, and that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

And Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world, through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

And since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth; and that he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory; and Aaron did expound all these things unto the king.

And it came to pass that after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day? Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

16 Heoi ka mea atu a Arona ki a ia, Ki te mea e hiahia ana koe ki tenei mea, ki te mea ka koropiko iho koe ki te aroaro o te Atua, ae ra, ki te mea ka ripeneta koe ki ou hara katoa a ka koropiko iho ki te aroaro o te Atua, me te karanga ano ki tona ingoa i runga i te whakapono, e whakapono ana ki tenei era e riro i a koe, katahi koe ka whiwhi ki te tumanakotanga e hiahia atu na koe.

17 Nawai a, ka mutu i a Arona enei kupu te korero ka koropiko iho te kingi ki runga ki ona turi i te aroaro o te Ariki; ae ra, ka tapapa iho ia ki runga ki te whenua, a ka karanga nui ia, ka mea,

18 E te Atua, kua mea mai a Arona ki a au he Atua ano; a ki te mea he Atua ano, ki te mea hoki ko koe tonu te Atua, kia pai koe ki te whakaatu mai i a koe ano ki a au, a maku e whakarere i oku hara katoa kia mohio ai ahau ki a koe, kia whakaarahia ai ano hoki ahau i te hunga mate, kia whakaorangia ai ano a te ra whakamutunga. Na, i te korerotanga a te kingi i enei kupu ka pangia ia, me te mea kua mate.

19 Nawai a, oma ana ana pononga, korerotia ana ki te kuini nga mea katoa i pa ai ki te kingi. A ka haere mai ia ki te kingi; na, i tona kitenga i a ia e takoto ana me te mea kua mate, me Arona hoki ratou ko ona teina e tu mai ana me te mea na ratou te putake o tona hinganga, na, ka riri ia ki a ratou, a whakahau ana ki ana pononga, ara, ki nga pononga a te kingi kia hopukia ratou, kia whakamatea.

20 A, kua kite nga pononga i te putake i hinga ai te kingi, koia ratou i wehi ai ki te pa ringaringa ki a Arona ratou ko ona teina; a ka totohe ratou ki te kuini, ka mea, Mo te aha koe ka whakahau mai nei ki a matou kia patua enei tangata, ina, kaha rawa tetahi o ratou i a matou katoa? Mo konei ra ka hinga matou i mua i a ratou.

21 Na, i te kitenga o te kuini i te wehi o nga pononga, ka nui ano hoki tona wehi kei pa tetahi kino ki a ia. A ka whakahau ia ki ana pononga kia haere kia karanga atu ki te iwi kia patua e ratou a Arona ratou ko ona teina.

But Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

And it came to pass that when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me, and I will give away all my sins to know thee, and that I may be raised from the dead, and be saved at the last day. And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as if he were dead.

And it came to pass that his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king. And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren; and they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her. And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.



- 22 Na, ka kite a Arona i te tikanga a te kuini me tona mohio hoki ki te pakeketanga o nga ngakau o te iwi, na, ka wehi ia kei huihui mai tetahi whakaminenga, a ka ai he ngangaretanga nui me te raruraru i roto i a ratou; koia ka toro atu tona ringa, a whakaarahia ake te kingi i te whenua, me te ki atu ano ki a ia, E tu ki runga; na, tu ana ona waewae ki runga, a whiwhi ana ia ki tona kaha.
- 23 Na, i meatia tenei i te aroaro o te kuini ratou ko nga pononga maha. A, to ratou kitenga i taua mea, ka nui to ratou oho, me te wehi ano. Na, ka tu mai te kingi, ka timata ki te minita ki a ratou. A minita ana ia ki a ratou, no ka whakatahuritia mai tona whare katoa ki te Ariki.
- 24 Na, kua whakaminea mai tetahi whakaminenga, he mea na te whakahau a te kuini, a he rahi nga amuamutanga i tupu ai i roto i a ratou, mo Arona ratou ko ona teina.
- 25 Heoi ka tu atu te kingi ki roto ki a ratou, ka minita ki a ratou. A ka whakamarietia ratou ki a Arona ratou ko te hunga i a ia.
- 26 Nawai a, ka kite te kingi i te iwi kua marire, ka mea ia i a Arona ratou ko ona teina kia tu ki waenganui i te whakaminenga kauwhau ai i te kupu ki a ratou.
- 27 Nawai a, ka tuku panui atu te kingi puta noa i te whenua katoa, ki roto ki tona iwi katoa i runga nei i tona whenua katoa, i roto i nga kainga katoa tawhio noa, tawhio noa, e tutuki atu ana ki te moana, ki te rawhiti, ki te weta, a e wehea mai ana i te whenua o Harahemera e tetahi koraha whaiti, e takoto haere ana i te moana ki te rawhiti, tae noa ki te moana ki te weta, tawhio noa hoki i nga wahi takutai, me nga rohe o te koraha i te taha nei ki te nota, ra te whenua o Harahemera, ra roto ano i nga rohe o Manati, ra te matapuna o te awa Hairona, e takoto haere ana i te rawhiti whaka-te-weta: na, i penei te wehewehenga o nga Ramana, o nga Niwhai.

Now when Aaron saw the determination of the queen, he, also knowing the hardness of the hearts of the people, feared lest that a multitude should assemble themselves together, and there should be a great contention and a disturbance among them; therefore he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear. And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them. And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them. And they were pacified towards Aaron and those who were with him.

And it came to pass that when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

And it came to pass that the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about, which was bordering even to the sea, on the east and on the west, and which was divided from the land of Zarahemla by a narrow strip of wilderness, which ran from the sea east even to the sea west, and round about on the borders of the seashore, and the borders of the wilderness which was on the north by the land of Zarahemla, through the borders of Manti, by the head of the river Sidon, running from the east towards the west—and thus were the Lamanites and the Nephites divided.

28 Na, i noho te wahi mangere rawa o nga Ramana i te koraha, e noho teneti ana; i te noho marara ano puta noa i te koraha, i te hauauru, i te whenua o Niwhai: ae ra, i te taha hauauru ano o te whenua o Harahemera, i nga wahi takutai, ki te taha ki te hauauru hoki, i te whenua o Niwhai, i te kainga tuatahi i noho ai o ratou matua, a penei e takoto haere ana i te takutai.

29 He maha ano hoki nga Ramana i te rawhiti i te taha takutai, i nga wahi i panaia atu ai ratou e nga Niwhai. A, penei wahi iti kua karapotitia nga Niwhai e nga Ramana; ahakoa ra kua riro i nga Niwhai nga wahi whaka-te-nota katoa o te whenua e piri ana ki te koraha, i te matapuna o te awa Hairona, i te rawhiti puta atu ki te hauauru tawhio noa, tawhio noa i te taha ki te koraha; i te nota, tae noa ki te whenua i karangatia ai e ratou ko Momona.

30 A i piri atu ano tera whenua ki te whenua i karangatia ai e ratou ko te Whakangaromanga; i takoto haere atu ki te nota rawa a tae noa atu ki roto ki te whenua i nohoia e te tangata, a kua oti ratou te whakangaro, a i korero tatou mo o ratou wheua koia nei he mea kite e te iwi o Harahemera; te kainga hoki tera i matua u ai ratou.

31 A ka haere mai ratou i reira ki roto ki te koraha ki te tonga. Penei i karangatia te whenua whaka-te-nota ko te Whakangaromanga, a ko te whenua whaka-te-tonga i karangatia ko Momona; ko te koraha hoki tera e kapi ana i nga kararehe mohoaoo katoa o ia tu, o ia tu; ko etahi i ahu mai i te whenua whaka-te-nota hei rapu kai.

32 Na, ra tahi me te hawhe ki te huarahi ka tae atu te Niwhai i te tai rawhiti ki te tai hauauru ra te rohe o Momona, me te whenua o te Whakangaromanga; a wahi iti kua karapotitia te whenua o Niwhai me te whenua o Harahemera e te wai; he whenua whaiti hoki tera e takoto ana ki waenganui o te whenua whaka-te-nota, o te whenua whaka-te-tonga.

33 Na, i nohoia te whenua Momona e nga Niwhai i te tai rawhiti puta noa ki te tai hauauru, a penei ko nga Niwhai i runga i to ratou whai whakaaro, i kati atu i nga Ramana ki te tonga he mea na a ratou kai tiaki me a ratou taua kia kore ai e riro i a ratou tetahi atu kainga ki te nota kei kapi i a ratou te whenua whaka-te-nota;

Now, the more idle part of the Lamanites lived in the wilderness, and dwelt in tents; and they were spread through the wilderness on the west, in the land of Nephi; yea, and also on the west of the land of Zarahemla, in the borders by the seashore, and on the west in the land of Nephi, in the place of their fathers' first inheritance, and thus bordering along by the seashore.

And also there were many Lamanites on the east by the seashore, whither the Nephites had driven them. And thus the Nephites were nearly surrounded by the Lamanites; nevertheless the Nephites had taken possession of all the northern parts of the land bordering on the wilderness, at the head of the river Sidon, from the east to the west, round about on the wilderness side; on the north, even until they came to the land which they called Bountiful.

And it bordered upon the land which they called Desolation, it being so far northward that it came into the land which had been peopled and been destroyed, of whose bones we have spoken, which was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, it being the place of their first landing.

And they came from there up into the south wilderness. Thus the land on the northward was called Desolation, and the land on the southward was called Bountiful, it being the wilderness which is filled with all manner of wild animals of every kind, a part of which had come from the land northward for food.

And now, it was only the distance of a day and a half's journey for a Nephite, on the line Bountiful and the land Desolation, from the east to the west sea; and thus the land of Nephi and the land of Zarahemla were nearly surrounded by water, there being a small neck of land between the land northward and the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had inhabited the land Bountiful, even from the east unto the west sea, and thus the Nephites in their wisdom, with their guards and their armies, had hemmed in the Lamanites on the south, that thereby they should have no more possession on the north, that they might not overrun the land northward.

34 Koia nga Ramana i kore ai e ahei te whiwhi ki tetahi kainga ko nga kainga anake i te whenua o Niwhai, me te koraha tawhio noa, tawhio noa. Na, he whakaaro pai tenei no nga Niwhai; he hoa riri nga Ramana ki a ratou, a kihai nga Niwhai i pai ki te tuku atu ki a ratou tukinotanga i nga taha katoa, a tetahi ano kia whai kainga hei rerenga mo ratou, i runga i o ratou hiahia.

35 Na, ko au, i te mea kua korerotia tenei, ka hoki ake ano ki te whakaatu mo Amona ratou ko Arona, ko Omonere, ko Himini ko o ratou teina.

Therefore the Lamanites could have no more possessions only in the land of Nephi, and the wilderness round about. Now this was wisdom in the Nephites—as the Lamanites were an enemy to them, they would not suffer their afflictions on every hand, and also that they might have a country whither they might flee, according to their desires.

And now I, after having said this, return again to the account of Ammon and Aaron, Omner and Himni, and their brethren.

## Arami 23

- 1 Nana, ka tuku kupu atu te kingi o nga Ramana ki roto ki tona iwi katoa, kia kauaka o ratou ringaringa e pa ki a Amona, ki a Arona, ki a Omonere, ki a Himini, ki tetahi ranei o o ratou teina e haere ai ki te kauwhau i te kupu a te Atua, ahakoa kowhea kainga e tae ai ratou, i roto i nga wahi katoa o to ratou whenua;
- 2 Ae ra, ka tuku ture atu tera ki roto ki a ratou kia kauaka o ratou ringaringa e pa ki a ratou hei herehere i a ratou, hei maka ranei i a ratou ki te whare herehere; kia kauaka ano hoki ratou e tuwha i a ratou, kia kauaka hoki e papaki i a ratou, kia kauaka hoki e maka i a ratou ki waho o o ratou whare karakia, kia kauaka hoki e whakawhiu i a ratou: kia kauaka ano hoki ratou e aki i nga kohatu ki a ratou, engari kia tukua noatia ratou ki o ratou whare noho, ki o ratou temepera hoki, me o ratou whare karakia;
- 3 A penei ka tukua ratou kia haere kia kauwhau i te kupu kia rite tonu ki o ratou hiahia, kua whakatahuritia hoki te kingi ratou ko tona whare katoa ki te Ariki: a no reira, i tukua ai e ia tana ture ki tona iwi puta noa i te whenua kia kauaka te kupu a te Atua e araia, engari kia puta atu puta noa i te whenua katoa, kia mohio tona iwi ki te kino o nga tukunga iho a o ratou matua, kia mohio ai ano hoki ratou he teina, he tuakana ratou katoa, a kahore e tika ma ratou te kohuru, te pahua, te tahae, te puremu, me nga mahi kino katoa hoki.
- 4 Ano ka riro tenei ture a te kingi, ka haere a Arona ratou ko ona teina ki tenei pa, ki tenei pa, ki tetahi whare karakia, ki tetahi whare karakia, e whakatu ana i nga hahi, e whakarite ana hoki i nga tohunga me nga kai whakaako puta noa i te whenua i roto i nga Ramana, hei kauwhau, hei whakaatu atu i te kupu a te Atua i roto i a ratou; a penei i waimarie nui ratou.
- 5 A i tae nga mano ki te matauranga ki te Ariki, ae ra, i meinga nga mano kia whakapono ki nga whakarereanga a nga Niwhai; i akona ano hoki ratou ki nga tuhituhinga me nga poropititanga i tukua iho, a mohoa noa nei;

## Alma 23

Behold, now it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household; therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, and that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, and that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

And now it came to pass that when the king had sent forth this proclamation, that Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them; and thus they began to have great success.

And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites; and they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

6 A he pono e ora ana te Ariki waihoki ko te hunga katoa i whakapono ai, ara, te hunga katoa i tae ai ki te matauranga o te pono, he mea na nga kauwhautanga a Amona ratou ko ona teina i runga i te Wairua o te whakakitenga, o te poropititanga me te kaha ano hoki o te Atua e mahi merekara ana i roto i a ratou; ae ra, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, e ora ana te Ariki, ko te hunga katoa o nga Ramana i whakapono ki a ratou kauwhautanga, a i tahuri ki te Ariki, na, kihai ratou i taka atu i muri.

7 No te mea i riro ratou hei iwi tika: i mahue i a ratou nga patu o to ratou tututanga, te whawhai ano ki te Ariki, ki etahi ranei o o ratou teina.

8 Na, ko te hunga enei i tahuri mai ki te Ariki;

9 Ko te iwi o nga Ramana, i runga nei i te whenua o Ihimaera,

10 Ko te iwi o nga Ramana i te whenua o Mironi,

11 Ko te iwi o nga Ramana i te pa o Niwhai,

12 Ko te iwi o nga Ramana i te whenua o Hiroma, i te whenua o Hemerona, i te pa o Remuere, i te pa ano hoki o Himinirona.

13 Na, ko nga ingoa era o nga pa o nga Ramana i tahuri mai ki te Ariki; ko te hunga ano tenei nana i whakarere nga patu o to ratou tututanga, ae ra, ko a ratou patu whawhai katoa; a he Ramana ratou katoa.

14 A kihai i tahuri mai nga Amareki, engari kotahi anake; kahore ano hoki tetahi o nga Amorona; heoi whakapakeke ana ratou i o ratou ngakau, me nga ngakau ano hoki o nga Ramana i nga wahi o te whenua i noho ai ratou; ae ra, i o ratou kainga katoa me o ratou pa katoa;

15 Na, kua whakahuatia ake nei e matou nga ingoa o nga pa katoa i ripeneta, i tae ai ki te matauranga o te pono i tahuri mai ai ano hoki.

And as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them—yea, I say unto you, as the Lord liveth, as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, that they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of their brethren.

Now, these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

The people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Ishmael;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Middoni;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the city of Nephi;

And also of the people of the Lamanites who were in the land of Shilom, and who were in the land of Shemlon, and in the city of Lemuel, and in the city of Shimnilom.

And these are the names of the cities of the Lamanites which were converted unto the Lord; and these are they that laid down the weapons of their rebellion, yea, all their weapons of war; and they were all Lamanites.

And the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt, yea, and all their villages and all their cities.

Therefore, we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

16 Na, i hiahia te kingi ratou ko te hunga i tahuri mai ki tetahi ingoa e mohiotia ai ratou i o ratou teina; koia i korerorero ai te kingi ratou ko Arona ko nga tangata maha o o ratou tohunga, mo te ingoa e mau ai ratou ki runga ki a ratou kia mohiotia ai ratou.

17 Nawai a. ka huaina to ratou ingoa ko nga Anati-Niwhai-Rihai; na, ka karangatia ratou ki tenei ingoa, a heoi ano te karangatanga i a ratou, ko nga Ramana.

18 Heoi ka meinga ratou hei iwi mahi: a ka whakahoa ratou ki nga Niwhai; a ka puare i a ratou he huarahi whakahoahoa atu ki nga Niwhai, a whakakorea ana e te Atua tana kanga i runga i a ratou.

And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren; therefore the king consulted with Aaron and many of their priests, concerning the name that they should take upon them, that they might be distinguished.

And it came to pass that they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

## Arami 24

- 1 Nawai a, ka whakahokia e nga Amareki ratou ko nga Amorona nga Amareki, nga Amorona, me nga Ramana i te whenua nei o Amorona, i te whenua hoki o Herama, me te whenua o Hiruharama, me te whenua katoa ano hoki tawhio noa, tawhio noa, kihai nei i whakatahuritia mai, kihai nei hoki i tango ki runga ki a ratou te ingoa Anati-Niwhai-Rihai, kia riri ki o ratou teina;
- 2 A ka nui rawa atu ta ratou mauahara ki a ratou, no ka timata ratou te tutu ki to ratou kingi, a kihai ratou i mea ko ia hei kingi mo ratou: no reira, ka hapai patu ratou ki te iwi o Anati-Niwhai-Rihai.
- 3 Na, ka tuku te kingi i te kingitanga ki tana tama. me te hua ano i tona ingoa ko Anati-Niwhai-Rihai.
- 4 A ka mate te kingi i taua tau ra ano i timata ai nga Ramana ki te whakarite mea mo te whawhai ki te iwi o te Atua.
- 5 Na. i te kitenga o Amona ratou ko ona teina, me te hunga katoa ano hoki i haere tahi mai ai i a ia i nga whakaritenga a nga Ramana hei whakamate i o ratou teina, ka haere mai ratou ki te whenua o Miriana, a ka tutaki a Amona ki ona teina katoa i reira; na, ka haere mai ratou i reira ki te whenua o Ihimaera kia runanga ai ratou ko Ramoni, me tona teina ano hoki, me Anati-Niwhai-Rihai, ki ta ratou e mea ai hei tiaki i a ratou i nga Ramana.
- 6 Na, kahore tahi he wairua i roto i te iwi katoa i tahuri ki te Ariki i whakaae ki te hapai patu ki o ratou teina: kahore, kahore rawa ratou i pai ki te whakarite i tetahi mea mo te whawhai; whakahau ano hoki to ratou kingi kia kua ratou e pera.
- 7 Na, ko nga kupu enei i korero ai ia ki te iwi mo taua mea; E whakawhetai atu ana ahau ki toku Atua, e toku iwi aroha, mo to tatou Atua nui i runga i tona painga i tonu i enei o tatou teina, i nga Niwhai ki a tatou kia kauwhau ki a tatou me te whakaatu mai ki a tatou i nga whakarereinga iho a o tatou matua kino.
- 8 A e whakawhetai atu ana ahau ki toku Atua nui mona i homai ki a tatou i tetahi wahi o tona Wairua, hei whakangawari i o tatou ngakau, no ka puare i a tatou he huarahi whakahoahoa atu ki enei teina, ki nga Niwhai;

## Alma 24

And it came to pass that the Amalekites and the Amulonites and the Lamanites who were in the land of Amulon, and also in the land of Helam, and who were in the land of Jerusalem, and in fine, in all the land round about, who had not been converted and had not taken upon them the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, were stirred up by the Amalekites and by the Amulonites to anger against their brethren.

And their hatred became exceedingly sore against them, even insomuch that they began to rebel against their king, insomuch that they would not that he should be their king; therefore, they took up arms against the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

Now the king conferred the kingdom upon his son, and he called his name Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

Now when Ammon and his brethren and all those who had come up with him saw the preparations of the Lamanites to destroy their brethren, they came forth to the land of Midian, and there Ammon met all his brethren; and from thence they came to the land of Ishmael that they might hold a council with Lamoni and also with his brother Anti-Nephi-Lehi, what they should do to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

Now there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war; yea, and also their king commanded them that they should not.

Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

And behold, I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

- 9 E whakawhetai atu ana ahau ki toku Atua, na to ratou whakahoatanga atu ki nga Niwhai, i whakaae ai tatou ki o tatou hara, ki o tatou kohurutanga maha hoki i mahia ai e tatou;
- 10 A e whakawhetai atu ana ano hoki ahau ki toku Atua, ae ra, ki toku Atua nui mona i tuku mai ki a tatou kia ripeneta ki enei mea, mona hoki i muru i era, i o tatou hara maha me a tatou kohurutanga i kohuru ai tatou, me te tango atu ano hoki i te he o o tatou ngakau, he mea na nga mahi pai o tana Tama.
- 11 Na, e aku teina, i te mea wahi iti kua kore tatou e ahei, (tino ngaro rawa hoki tatou i nga tangata katoa), te ripeneta ki o tatou hara katoa me nga kohurutanga maha i kohuru ai tatou, me te mea ano i te Atua kia tango atu i aua hara i o tatou ngakau, no te mea wahi iti kua kore e ahei tatou te ripeneta i te aroaro o te Atua e tangohia ai e ia o tatou poke.
- 12 Na, e aku tino teina aroha, i te mea kua murua e te Atua o tatou poke, a kua kanapa a tatou hoari, na, kua tatou e whakapoke ano i a tatou hoari i nga ra e takoto ake nei ki nga toto o o tatou teina.
- 13 Nana, taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kua, puritia hoki a tatou hoari kei paruru i nga toto o o tatou teina; ina hoki, era pea, ki te mea ka whakapoke ano tatou i a tatou hoari, kua kore e taea te horoi ano kia kanapa i runga i te toto o te Tama a to tatou Atua nui e whakahaheka ai hei whakamarietanga mo o tatou hara.
- 14 A kua aroha te Atua nui ki a tatou, kua whakaatu hoki i enei mea ki a tatou kei mate tatou: ae ra, kua whakaatu wawe mai ia i enei mea ki a tatou, no te mea e rite ana tona aroha ki o tatou wairua, ki tona aroha ki a tatou tamariki; a i runga i tana mahi tohu e torotoro ana ia i a tatou, he mea na ana anahera, kia whakaaturia hoki te tikanga whakaora ki a tatou kia rite ki te meatanga ki nga whakatupuranga e haere ake nei.

And behold, I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

And I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

And now behold, my brethren, since it has been all that we could do (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain—

Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children; therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.



15 Ano te mahi tohu a to tatou Atua! Na, i te mea kua whakapaua to tatou kaha kia tangohia ai o tatou poke i runga i a tatou, a kua meinga hoki a tatou hoari kia kanapa, kia hunaia era e tatou kia tiakina, kia kanapa tonu ai. hei whakaatu ki to tatou Atua i te ra whakamutunga, ara, i te ra e kawea ai tatou kia tu ki tona aroaro kia whakawakia, kahore ano tatou kia whakapoke i a tatou hoari ki nga toto o o tatou teina i muri i tana tukunga mai i tana kupu ki a tatou, me te whakama ano i a tatou.

16 A e aku teina, ki te whai o tatou teina ki te whakangaro i a tatou, na, ka hunaia e tatou a tatou hoari, ae ra. ka tanumia e tatou aua mea kia hohonu ki te whenua. kia tiakina, kia kanapa tonu ai, hei whakaatu a te ra whakamutunga, kihai tatou i hapai i aua mea; a ki te whakangaro o tatou teina i a tatou, nana, ka haere tatou ki to tatou Atua a ka whakaorangia.

17 Na, ka mutu i te kingi enei meatanga, e noho huihui ana hoki te iwi, na, ka mauria atu e ratou a ratou hoari, me nga patu katoa e meinga nei hei whakaheke i te toto o te tangata, a i tanumia e ratou kia hohonu ki te whenua;

18 A i meatia tenei e ratou, ki a ratou hoki he whakaatu tenei ki te Atua, ki nga tangata ano hoki e kore ratou e mau patu ano hei whakaheke i te toto o te tangata; a meatia ana ano hoki tenei i runga i te oati me te kawenata ki te Atua, ara, engari te mate mo ratou i te whakaheke i te toto o o ratou teina; engari ano te hoatu ki te teina i te tango mea i a ia; engari te mahi nui ma o ratou ringaringa i te whakapau i o ratou ra i runga i te mangere noa iho;

19 A penei tatou ka kite i te mea kua whakapono, kua mohio hoki nga Ramana ki te pono, ka u tonu ratou, a pai ke atu hoki i te mahi hara te whakamamaetanga mo ratou a mate noa; a penei ka kite tatou i a ratou e tanu ana i a ratou patu o te maunga rongu, ara, i tanu ratou i a ratou patu whawhai mo te maunga rongu.

Oh, how merciful is our God! And now behold, since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

And now it came to pass that when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together, they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

And this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood; and this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives; and rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; and rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

And thus we see that, when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin; and thus we see that they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

- 20 Nawai a, ka whakarite mea o ratou teina, nga Ramana mo te whawhai, a ka haere mai ano ratou ki te whenua o Niwhai ki te whakamate i te kingi, ki te whakatu ano i tetahi atu hei whakakapi mona, ki te whakangaro ano hoki i te iwi o Anati-Niwhai-Rihai i runga i te whenua.
- 21 Ano ka kite te iwi i a ratou e haere mai ana ki te whawhai ki a ratou, na, haere atu ana ratou ki te whakatau i a ratou, a tapapa iho ana ki te whenua ki o ratou aroaro, timata ana te karanga ki te ingoa o te Ariki; na, ko to ratou ahua tenei, a ka timata nga Ramana ka patupatu i a ratou ki te hoari;
- 22 A penei kotahi mano ma rima o ratou i patua noatia te whakakahore hoki tetahi; a e mohio ana matou kua oti ratou te manaaki, ina hoki kua riro ratou kia noho tahi ki to ratou Atua.
- 23 Na, to nga Ramana kitenga i o ratou teina kahore e oma atu i te hoari, kahore ano hoki e peka ke ki matau, ki mau ranei, engari ka takoto ratou ki te mate, me te whakawhetai ano ki te Atua i te wa tonu e mate ana ratou i raro i te hoari;
- 24 Na, i to nga Ramana kitenga i tenei, ka whakamutua te patu i a ratou; a he tokomaha te hunga kua pupuhi ake o ratou ngakau i roto i a ratou ki o ratou teina i hinga ai ki raro i te hoari, no te mea i ripeneta ratou ki nga mea i mea ai ratou.
- 25 Nawai a, ka makaia e ratou a ratou patu whawhai ki raro, a kihai ratou i pai kia mau ano ki aua mea, ina hoki kua werohia ratou mo nga kohurutanga i kohuru ai ratou; a ka rite ratou ki o ratou teina, ka whakawhirinaki kia tohungia e te hunga kua hapai nei i te patu mo ratou.
- 26 Nawai a, ka tokomaha atu i te hunga i patua te hononga mai ki te iwi o te Atua i taua ra; na he iwi tika te hunga i patua; no reira kahore tahi o matou take e ngakau rua ai ki to ratou whakaoranga.
- 27 Na, kahore tahi he tangata kino i patua i roto i a ratou; engari neke atu i te mano i whakamohiotia ki te matauranga o te pono: a, penei tatou ka kite he maha nga huarahi e mahi nei te Ariki hei whakaoranga mo tona iwi.

And it came to pass that their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

Now when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord; and thus they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

And thus without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword—

Now when the Lamanites saw this they did forbear from slaying them; and there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

And it came to pass that they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed; and they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

And it came to pass that the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain; and those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

28 Na, ko te wahi nui o te hunga o nga Ramana i patu i nga tangata maha o o ratou teina, koia he Amareki, he Amorona, a no to nga Nehoro tikanga hoki te tini o ratou.

29 Na, kahore tahi he Amareki, he Amorona ranei, he tangata ranei o to nga Nehoro tikanga i roto i te hunga i uru ai ki te iwi o te Ariki, engari he uri tuturu ratou no Ramana raua ko Remuere;

30 Na, ka kite marama tatou i tenei: ara, i muri i te whakamaramatanga a te Wairua o te Atua i tetahi iwi, me te whiwhi ano ki te matauranga nui mo nga mea o te tika, a, muri iho ka taka atu ki te hara, ki te kino, ka riro ratou hei iwi pakeke rawa, a, i tena ahua, ka kino ake te tukunga iho mo ratou, mehemea i kore noa ratou i matau ki enei mea.

Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

## Arami 25

- 1 Ā, nana, i pahawa ianei ake, nā, ka riri ake ngā Rāmana nā tā rātou patu i ā rātou teina; nō reira oati ai rātou kia ngaki mate ai ki runga i ngā Nīwhai; ā, kāore rātou i ngana anō ki te patu i te iwi o Anati-Nīwhai-Rīhai i taua wā.
- 2 Engari ka hāpai ake rātou i ō rātou tauā, ā, ka haere atu ki roto i ngā rohe o te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ka taka iho ki runga i te iwi e noho ana i te whenua o Amonaihā, ā, ka whakangaromia rātou.
- 3 Ā, i muri iho i tēnā, he nui ā rātou pakanga ki ngā Nīwhai, nā konā ka āia atu, ā, ka whakamatea rātou.
- 4 Ā, i waenganui i ngā Rāmana i patua iho ai, arā, ko te nuinga o ngā uri o Amurono me ana teina, ko rātou nei ngā tohunga a Noa, ā, i patua rātou e ngā ringaringa o ngā Nīwhai;
- 5 Ā, ko te toenga, kua tahuti atu nei ki roto i te koraha ki te rāwhiti, ā, whai muri i tā rātou mau ki te kaha me te mana i runga i ngā Rāmana, koia rātou i mea ai kia mate ai ngā Rāmana tokomaha i te ahi mō tō rātou whakapono te take—
- 6 Mō te nuinga o rātou, nō muri i te parekura nui me ā rātou whakamamaetanga maha, ka tīmata kia whakaohokia ake ki tētahi maumaharatanga ki ngā kupu i kauhautia ai e Arona rātou ko ana teina ki a rātou i tō rātou whenua; nō reira ka tīmata tā rātou whakapono kore i ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua, me te whakapono ki te Ariki, me tana tuku mana nui atu ki ngā Nīwhai; ā, pēnei he tokomaha o rātou i whakatahuritia ai i roto i te koraha.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i mea ai te hunga whakahaere ko rātou nei ngā mōrehu o ngā tamariki a Amurono kia whakamatea rātou, āe rā, ko te hunga katoa i whakapono ai i ēnei mea.
- 8 Nā, i whakaohokia ake ō rātou tuākana tokomaha ki te riri e tēnei kōhurutanga; ā, ka tīmata tētahi tautohetohenga nui i te koraha; ā, ka tīmata ngā Rāmana ki te aruaru i ngā uri o Amurono me ana teina, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou patupatu i a rātou; ā, ka tahuti atu rātou ki roto i te koraha ki te taha rāwhiti.

## Alma 25

And behold, now it came to pass that those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren; therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites; and they did no more attempt to slay the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi at that time.

But they took their armies and went over into the borders of the land of Zarahemla, and fell upon the people who were in the land of Ammonihah and destroyed them.

And after that, they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

And the remainder, having fled into the east wilderness, and having usurped the power and authority over the Lamanites, caused that many of the Lamanites should perish by fire because of their belief—

For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land; therefore they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers, and to believe in the Lord, and that he gave great power unto the Nephites; and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that believed in these things.

Now this martyrdom caused that many of their brethren should be stirred up to anger; and there began to be contention in the wilderness; and the Lamanites began to hunt the seed of Amulon and his brethren and began to slay them; and they fled into the east wilderness.

9     Ā nana, e arumia tonutia ana rātou i tēnei rā tonu e ngā Rāmāna. Pēnei kua pahawa ake ngā kupu a Apinati i kōrerotia ai e ia e pā ana ki ngā uri o ngā tohunga nā rātou ia i mea kia mate ai i te ahi.

10     Nā te mea i kī atu ia ki a rātou: Ko tā koutou e mea ai ki ahau, nā, he ritenga tērā mō ngā mea e puta mai ai.

11     Ināianei ā, ko Apinati te tuatahi i mate ai i te ahi mō tōna whakapono; nā, koinei te tikanga o tāna i mea ai, arā, he tokomaha ngā mea e mate ai i te ahi, e rite ana ki tōna whakamamaetanga.

12     Ā, i kī atu ia ki ngā tohunga a Noa, nā, ka meatia e ō rātou uri kia whakamatea ngā mea tokomaha, i runga i te ritenga i pērātia ai ia, ā, ka whakamararatia whānuitia atu, ā, ka patua, e rite pū ana ki tētahi hipi hēpara kore e āia ana, ā, e patua ana e ngā kararehe mohoa; ināianei ā nana, i whakamanaia ēnei kupu, nā te mea i āia atu rātou e ngā Rāmāna, ā, i arumia rātou, ā, i pakipakia rātou.

13     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kitenga o ngā Rāmāna tē taea ngā Nīwhai e rātou ka hoki rātou ki tō rātou ake whenua; ā, he tokomaha o rātou i whakawhiti mai ai kia noho ai i te whenua o Ihimaera me te whenua o Nīwhai, ā, i whakahono atu rātou i a rātou anō ki te iwi o te Atua, ko rātou nei te iwi o Anati-Nīwhai-Rīhai.

14     Ā, i tanu anō rātou i ā rātou rākau whawhai o te pakanga, e rite ana ki tā ā rātou teina, ā, ka meinga rātou hei iwi tika; ā, i hīkoi rātou i ngā huarahi o te Ariki, ā, i ū rātou ki te pupuri i āna whakahaunga me āna ture.

15     Āe rā, i puritia e rātou te ture a Mohi; nā te mea i tika pū me pupuri rātou i te ture a Mohi i tēnei wā, nā te mea kīhai i whakatutukihia. Engari ahakoa te ture a Mohi, i titiro whakamua atu rātou ki te haerenga mai a te Karaiti, e whakapono ana rātou ko te ture a Mohi tētahi ritenga o tana haerenga mai, ā, e whakapono ana me pupuri rātou i ērā meatanga o waho tae atu ana ki te wā e whakaputaina mai ia ki a rātou.

And behold they are hunted at this day by the Lamanites. Thus the words of Abinadi were brought to pass, which he said concerning the seed of the priests who caused that he should suffer death by fire.

For he said unto them: What ye shall do unto me shall be a type of things to come.

And now Abinadi was the first that suffered death by fire because of his belief in God; now this is what he meant, that many should suffer death by fire, according as he had suffered.

And he said unto the priests of Noah that their seed should cause many to be put to death, in the like manner as he was, and that they should be scattered abroad and slain, even as a sheep having no shepherd is driven and slain by wild beasts; and now behold, these words were verified, for they were driven by the Lamanites, and they were hunted, and they were smitten.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the Nephites they returned again to their own land; and many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And they did also bury their weapons of war, according as their brethren had, and they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments and his statutes.

Yea, and they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled. But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those outward performances until the time that he should be revealed unto them.

16 Nā, kāore rātou i whakapono e puta mai ai te whakaoranga i te ture a Mohi; engari ko tā te ture a Mohi he whakakaha i tō rātou whakapono i te Karaiti; ā, i pēnei tā rātou pūmau ki tētahi tūmanako mā roto i te whakapono, tae atu ana ki te whakaoranga tonutanga, e whakawhirinaki ana ki te wairua o te poropititanga, i kōrero ai mō aua mea e puta mai ai.

17 Ināianeī ā nana, ka tino hari a Amona, me Arona, me Omonere, me Himini, me ā rātou teina, nā tō rātou waimārie i whiwhi ai rātou i waenganui i ngā Rāmana, e kite ana kua tukuna e te Ariki ki a rātou e rite ana ki ā rātou inoi, ā, kua whakatūturuhia anō hoki e ia tana kupu ki a rātou i roto i ngā mea katoa.

Now they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses; but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ; and thus they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation, relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things to come.

And now behold, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and Himni, and their brethren did rejoice exceedingly, for the success which they had had among the Lamanites, seeing that the Lord had granted unto them according to their prayers, and that he had also verified his word unto them in every particular.

## Arami 26

- 1 Ināianeī ā, koinei ngā kupu a Amona ki ana teina, e mea ana tēnei: E aku teina tūturu me aku teina, nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, anō tō tātou whaitake kia hari; nā te mea kua taea e tātou te whakaaro i te tīmatanga o tā tātou wehenga i te whenua o Harahemara, nā, ka pēnei te nui o ana manaakitanga nui ki a tātou?
- 2 Ināianeī ā, kei te ui atu au, he aha ngā manaakitanga nui nāna nei i whakatau ki runga i a tātou? E taea ana rānei e koutou te kōrero?
- 3 Nana, ka whakautu au mō koutou; nā te mea, i te pōuritanga o tātou tuākana, ngā Rāmana, āe rā, i roto pū anō i te tawhā pōuri rawa atu, engari nana, tokohia o rātou kua kumea mai nei kia tirohia ai te mārāma miharo o te Atua! Ā, koinei te manaakitanga kua whakataua iho ki runga i a tātou, nā konā kua meatia tātou hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua kia whakaputa ake i tēnei mahi nui.
- 4 Nana, kei te hari ngā mea manomano o rātou, ā, kua kumea mai ki roto i te kāhui a te Atua.
- 5 Nana, i te pakari te whīra, ā, kua manaakitia koutou, nā te mea i tīhoka iho te toronaihi, ā, i kokoti ai i runga i tō kaha, āe rā, i mahi koutou mō te roanga ake o te rā; ā, tirohia te maha o āu paihere! Ā, ka kohikohia ērā ki roto i ngā pātaka, kia kore ai e moumouria.
- 6 Āe rā, e kore ērā e haua iho e te tūpuhi hei te rā whakamutungā; āe rā, e kore rānei ērā e hutia ake e ngā āwhiowhio; engari ka whakakotahitia ērā i tō ērā wāhi ina tae mai te tūpuhi, nā, tē taea e te tūpuhi te wero atu ki ērā; āe rā, e kore rānei ērā e āia atu e ngā hau pūkeri ki ngā wāhi e pai ai ki te hoariri hei kawenga atu.
- 7 Engari nana, kei roto ērā i ngā ringaringa o te Ariki o te kokotinga, ā, nōna ērā; ā, māna ērā e whakaara ake hei te rā whakamutungā.
- 8 Whakapaingia te ingoa o tō tātou Atua; tukuna tātou kia waiata ai i tōna whakamoemiti, āe rā, tukuna tātou kia whakamoemiti ai i tōna ingoa tapu, nā te mea e mahi tika ana ia mō āke tonu atu.

## Alma 26

And now, these are the words of Ammon to his brethren, which say thus: My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

And now, I ask, what great blessings has he bestowed upon us? Can ye tell?

Behold, I answer for you; for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss, but behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God! And this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

Behold, thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

Behold, the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor; and behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

Yea, they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day; yea, neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds; but when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them; yea, neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

But behold, they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest, and they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea, let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work righteousness forever.

- 9 Nā te mea me i kore tātou i haere mai ai i waho i te whenua o Harahemara, ēnei ō tātou tino tuākana aroha, kua arohaina nuitia tātou, kua kino tonu te ngau o tō rātou mauāhara ki a tātou, āe rā, kua tauhou tonu anō hoki rātou ki te Atua.
- 10 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kōrerotanga o Amona i ēnei kupu, ka kohete tōna tuakana a Arona i a ia, e mea ana: E Amona, e wehi ana au kei kahakina atu koe e tō hari ki te whakamanamana.
- 11 Engari ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Kāore au i te whakamanamana ki tōku ake kaha, kāore rānei ki tōku ake mātauranga; engari nana, kua kī tōku hari, āe rā, e pūrena ana tōku ngākau i te hari, ā, ka hari au i tōku Atua.
- 12 Āe rā, e mōhio ana au he korekore noa iho au; he ngoikore au e hāngai ana ki tōku kaha; nō reira e kore au e whakamanamana mōku ake anō, engari ka whakamanamana au mō tōku Atua; āe rā, nana, he maha ngā merekara nunui i mahia ai e tātou i tēnei whenua, nō konā tātou whakawhetai ai i tōna ingoa mō āke tonu atu.
- 13 Nana, e hia manomano o ō tātou tuākana kua wetekina atu i ngā mamaetanga o te ao rēwera; ā, kua meinga rātou kia waiata i te aroha o te hokonga, ā, ko tēnei nā te kaha o tana kupu kei roto nei i a tātou, nō reira kāore rānei tātou e whaitake ana kia hari?
- 14 Āe rā, e whaitake ana tātou kia whakawhetai atu ki a ia mō āke tonu atu, nā te mea ko ia te Atua Tīketike Rawa, ā, kua wetekina ō tātou tuākana i ngā mekameka o te ao rēwera.
- 15 Āe rā, i te taiāwhiotia rātou ki te pōuritanga me te whakangaromanga mau tonu; engari nana, nāna rātou i kawē mai ki roto i te māramatanga mau tonu, āe rā, ki roto i te whakoranga mau tonu; ā, i te taiāwhiotia ki tōna aroha nunui tē taea te whakataurite; āe rā, kua meinga tātou hei taputapu i ōna ringaringa o te meatanga i ngā mahi whakamīharo nunui.

For if we had not come up out of the land of Zarahemla, these our dearly beloved brethren, who have so dearly beloved us, would still have been racked with hatred against us, yea, and they would also have been strangers to God.

And it came to pass that when Ammon had said these words, his brother Aaron rebuked him, saying: Ammon, I fear that thy joy doth carry thee away unto boasting.

But Ammon said unto him: I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but behold, my joy is full, yea, my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

Yea, I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore I will not boast of myself, but I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things; yea, behold, many mighty miracles we have wrought in this land, for which we will praise his name forever.

Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed from the pains of hell; and they are brought to sing redeeming love, and this because of the power of his word which is in us, therefore have we not great reason to rejoice?

Yea, we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

Yea, they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and destruction; but behold, he has brought them into his everlasting light, yea, into everlasting salvation; and they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love; yea, and we have been instruments in his hands of doing this great and marvelous work.



16 Nō reira, tukuna tātou kia whakakorōria, āe rā, ka whakakorōria tātou i te Ariki; āe rā, ka hari tātou, nā te mea kua kī tō tātou hari; āe rā, ka whakawhetai atu tātou i tō tātou Atua mō āke tonu atu. Nana, ko wai e nui rawa atu ana tana whakakorōria atu i te Ariki? Āe rā, ko wai e nui rawa atu ana tana kōrero mō tōna mana nui, mō tōna aroha, mō tana manawaroa ki ngā tamariki a te tangata? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore e taea ana e ahau te kōrero i te wāhi iti rawa e rongō nei ahau.

17 Ko wai e taea te whakaaro ka tino nui te whakaaroa o tō tātou Atua hei kapo ake i a tātou mai i tō tātou āhuetanga weriwēri, hara, poke?

18 Nana, i haere atu tātou i runga pū anō i te riri, i runga i te whakawehi kia whakangaromia ai tana hāhi.

19 Nā konā, he aha ia i kore ai e tuku i a tātou ki tētahi whakangaromanga weriwēri, āe rā, he aha ia i kore ai e tuku kia taka iho ai te hoari o te tika ki runga i a tātou me te tuku anō i a tātou ki te rāwakiwaki tonutanga?

20 Auē, ko tōku wairua, e tata tahuti atu ana i te whakaaro. Nana, kīhai ia i whakahaere i tōna tika ki runga i a tātou, engari i runga i tōna whakaaroa nui kua kawea tātou ki tua atu i te tawhā mutunga kore o te mate me te pōuri, tae atu ana ki te whakaoranga o tō tātou wairua.

21 Ināianeī ā nana, e aku teina, ko wai te tangata ngākau māori e mōhio ana ki ēnei mea? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore he tangata e mōhio ana ki ēnei mea, hāunga ko te hunga rīpenetā.

22 Āe rā, ko te tangata e rīpenetā ana, ā, e whakahaere ana i tana whakapono me te whakaputa i ngā mahinga pai, me te inoi tonu atu tē ai e mutu—kua hoatu ngā mea ngaro a te Atua ki te hunga pērā; āe rā, ka hoatu ki te hunga pērā kia whakakitea atu ngā mea kīhai rawa i whakakitea; āe rā, ka hoatu ki te hunga pērā kia kumea mai ngā wairua manomano ki te rīpenetātanga, pēnei i tana homai ki a tātou kia kumea ai ēnei o tātou tuākana ki te rīpenetātanga.

23 Nā, kei te mahara koutou, e aku teina, nā, i kī atu tātou ki ā tātou teina i te whenua o Harahemara, ka haere ake tātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai, kia kauhau atu ai ki ā tātou tuākana, ngā Rāmana, ā, i kaitaina kinotia tātou?

Therefore, let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice, for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever. Behold, who can glory too much in the Lord? Yea, who can say too much of his great power, and of his mercy, and of his long-suffering towards the children of men? Behold, I say unto you, I cannot say the smallest part which I feel.

Who could have supposed that our God would have been so merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

Behold, we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

Oh then, why did he not consign us to an awful destruction, yea, why did he not let the sword of his justice fall upon us, and doom us to eternal despair?

Oh, my soul, almost as it were, fleeth at the thought. Behold, he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

And now behold, my brethren, what natural man is there that knoweth these things? I say unto you, there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing—unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God; yea, unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed; yea, and it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

Now do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla, we go up to the land of Nephi, to preach unto our brethren, the Lamanites, and they laughed us to scorn?

24 Nā, i kī mai rātou ki a tātou: E whakapono ana rānei koutou ka taea e koutou te kukume mai i ngā Rāmana ki te mātauranga o te tika? E whakapono ana rānei koutou e taea ana e koutou ngā Rāmana te whakapakepake mō te hē o ngā whakarereinga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua, nā te mea he iwi kakī mārō rātou; e āhuareka ana ō rātou ngākau ki te whakahekenga toto; kua whakapaua ō rātou rā i runga i te hara kino rawa atu; ko ō rātou huarahi ngā huarahi o tētahi kaihora mai i te tīmatanga? Nā, e aku teina, e mahara ana koutou koinei tā rātou i kōrero ai.

25 Ā, waihoki i kī anō rātou: Tukuna tātou kia hāpai patu ki a rātou, kia whakangaro tātou i a rātou me tō rātou kino i te whenua, kei popokina tātou, ā, kei whakangaromia tātou anō e rātou.

26 Engari nana, e aku teina aroha, kāore tātou i haere mai ki roto i te koraha i runga i te whakaaro kia whakangaromia ai ō tātou tuākana, engari i runga i te whakaaro me kore pea tātou e whakaora i ētahi o ō rātou wairua.

27 Nā, i ō tātou ngākau e pēhia ana, ā, whano tātou ka hoki anō, nana, i whakaāiotia tātou e te Ariki, ā, ka mea: Haere atu ki waenganui i ō tuākana, ngā Rāmana, ā, kia pīkauria ōu whakamamaetanga i runga i te manawaroa, ā, ka tuku waimārietanga au ki a koutou.

28 Ināianei ā nana, kua haere mai tātou, ā, kua haere atu tātou ki waenganui i a rātou; ā, kua manawaroa tātou i ō tātou whakamamaetanga, ā, kua kaiponuhia ngā mea katoa ki a tātou; āe rā, kua haere atu tātou ki tēnā whare, ki tēnā whare, e whakawhirinaki ana ki ngā atawhainga o te ao—kāore i runga i ngā atawhainga o te ao anake engari i runga i ngā atawhainga o te Atua.

For they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity; whose ways have been the ways of a transgressor from the beginning? Now my brethren, ye remember that this was their language.

And moreover they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

But behold, my beloved brethren, we came into the wilderness not with the intent to destroy our brethren, but with the intent that perhaps we might save some few of their souls.

Now when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions, and I will give unto you success.

And now behold, we have come, and been forth amongst them; and we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation; yea, we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world—not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

29 Ā, kua tomo atu tātou ki roto i ō rātou whare, ā, kua whakaakona rātou, ā, kua whakaakona rātou e tātou i roto i ngā tiriti; āe rā, kua whakaakona rātou e tātou i runga i ō rātou puke; ā, kua tomo atu anō tātou ki roto pū anō i ō rātou temepara me ō rātou whare karakia ki te whakaako i a rātou; ā, kua makaia atu tātou, kua whakatoingia tātou, ā, kua tuhaina tātou, ā, kua pākia ō tātou pāpāringa; ā, kua ākina tātou ki te kōhatu, ā, kua kahakina atu, ā, kua herea ki ngā taura kaha, ā, kua makaia ki roto i te whareherehere; ā, mā roto i te mana me te mātauranga o te Atua kua whakaputaina tātou anō.

30 Ā, kua rongo tātou i nga whakamamaetanga katoa o ia āhua, o ia āhua, ā, ko tēnei katoa, me kore pea tātou e riro ai hei take e whakaorangia ai tētahi wairua; ā, i whakapono tātou ka kī ake tō tātou hari mēnā rānei kua taea e tātou hei take e whakaorangia ai ētahi.

31 Nana ināianeī, ka taea e tātou te titiro atu me te kite anō i ngā hua o ō tātou mahinga; ā, he ruarua ērā? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, he maha ērā; āe rā, e taea ana e tātou te whakaatu atu i tō rātou tapahitanga, nā tō rātou aroha ki ō rātou tuākana, ā, ki a tātou anō hoki.

32 Nana rā, he pai ake ki a rātou kia tuku iho i ō rātou orangea i te muru i te orangea o tō rātou hoariri; ā, kua tanumia hōhonutia e rātou ā rātou rākau whawhai o te pakanga ki roto i te whenua, nā tō rātou aroha ki ō rātou tuākana.

33 Ināianeī ā nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, he aroha pēnei te nui i runga i te whenua katoa? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo, kāore anō, i roto pū anō rānei i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai.

34 Nana rā, ka hāpai patu rātou ki ō rātou tuākana; kāore rātou e tuku kia patua ai rātou. Engari nana, tokohia o ēnei mea i whakatakotohia iho ō rātou orangea; ā, e mōhio ana tātou kua haere atu rātou ki tō rātou Atua, nā tō rātou aroha me tō rātou mauāhara ki te hara.

And we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets; yea, and we have taught them upon their hills; and we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them; and we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks; and we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison; and through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

And we have suffered all manner of afflictions, and all this, that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors; and are they few? I say unto you, Nay, they are many; yea, and we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

For behold, they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy; and they have buried their weapons of war deep in the earth, because of their love towards their brethren.

And now behold I say unto you, has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

For behold, they would take up arms against their brethren; they would not suffer themselves to be slain. But behold how many of these have laid down their lives; and we know that they have gone to their God, because of their love and of their hatred to sin.

35 Nā, kāore rānei ō tātou take kia hari? Āe rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kāore he tangata i mua i whaitake nui pēnei i a tātou, mai i te tīmatanga rā anō o te ao; āe rā, kua kahakina atu tōku hari, tae atu ana ki te whakamanamana i tōku Atua; nā te mea kei a ia te mana katoa, te mātauranga katoa me te māramatanga katoa; e mōhio ana ia ki ngā mea katoa, ā, he Mea tino aroha nui ia, tae atu ana ki te whakaoranga, ki te hunga e rīpenetā ai me te whakaponu ki runga i tōna ingoa.

36 Nā, mehemea he whakamanamana tēnei, ka whakamanamana ahau; nā te mea koinei tōku oranga me tōku māramatanga, ko tōku haringa me tōku whakaoranga me tōku hokonga mai i te auē mutunga kore. Āe rā, kia whakapaingia te ingoa o tōku Atua, kua whaiwhakaaro nei ki tēnei iwi, ko rātou nei tētahi manga o te rākau o Iharaira, ā, kua ngaro atu nei i tōna pūtaka i tētahi whenua kē; āe rā, ko tāku, kia whakapaingia te ingoa o tōku Atua, kua whaiwhakaaro nei ia ki a tātou, ngā tangata kaewa i tētahi whenua kē.

37 Nā, e aku teina, e kite ana tātou i te Atua e whaiwhakaaro ana ki ngā iwi katoa, ahakoa he aha te whenua e noho ai rātou; āe rā, e tatauria ana e ia tana iwi, ā, kei runga te aroha o tōna ate i runga i te ao katoa. Nā, koinei tōku hari me tōku whakawhetai nui; āe rā, māku tonu tōku Atua e whakawhetai mō āke tonu atu. Āmine.

Now have we not reason to rejoice? Yea, I say unto you, there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began; yea, and my joy is carried away, even unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding; he comprehendeth all things, and he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

Now if this is boasting, even so will I boast; for this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo. Yea, blessed is the name of my God, who has been mindful of this people, who are a branch of the tree of Israel, and has been lost from its body in a strange land; yea, I say, blessed be the name of my God, who has been mindful of us, wanderers in a strange land.

Now my brethren, we see that God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in; yea, he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth. Now this is my joy, and my great thanksgiving; yea, and I will give thanks unto my God forever. Amen.

## Arami 27

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, i te wā i kite ai ērā Rāmana ko rātou te hunga i haere atu ai ki te whawhai ki ngā Nīwhai, nā, nō muri iho i ā rātou whawhaitanga maha ki te whakangaro i a rātou, nā, he auare ake tā rātou whai i tō rātou whakangaromanga, ka hoki anō rātou ki te whenua o Nīwhai.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake i tino riri ngā Amareki nā tō rātou hinganga. Ā, i tā rātou kitenga ake tē taea e rātou te ngaki mate i ngā Nīwhai, ka tīmata tā rātou whakaoohoo ake i te iwi kia riri ai rātou ki ā rātou teina, arā, te iwi o Anati-Nīwhai-Rīhai; nō reira rātou tīmata anō ai ki te whakangaro i a rātou.
- 3 Nā, ka whakakāhore atu anō tēnei iwi kia hāpai ake i ā rātou patu, ā, ka tukua iho e rātou kia patua ai e rite ana ki ngā hiahia o ā rātou hoariri.
- 4 Nā, i te kitenga atu o Amona rātou ko ana teina i tēnei mahi whakangaromanga i waenganui i te hunga i arohaina nuitia e rātou, ā, i waenganui i te hunga i tino arohaina nuitia rātou—nā te mea i atawhaitia rātou anō nei he anahera rātou kua tonoa e te Atua ki te whakaora i a rātou i te whakangaromanga mutunga kore—nō reira, kite ana a Amona rātou ko ana teina i tēnei tino mahi whakangaromanga, ka ohokia rātou e te aroha, ā, ka kī atu rātou ki te kīngi:
- 5 Tukuna tātou kia whakahuihui tahi ai i tēnei iwi o te Ariki, ā, tukuna tātou kia haere iho ai ki te whenua o Harahemara ki ā tātou teina ngā Nīwhai, ā, kia tahuti atu i ngā ringaringa o ā tātou hoariri, kia kore ai tātou e whakangaromia ai.
- 6 Engari, ka kī atu te kīngi ki a rātou: Nana, ka whakangaro ngā Nīwhai i a mātou, nā te huhua o ā mātou kōhurutanga me ngā hara kua meatia e mātou ki a ratou.
- 7 Ā, ka kī atu a Amona: Ka haere au ki te ui atu ki te Ariki, ā, mēnā ka kī mai ia ki a tātou, kia haere iho ki ā tātou teina, ka haere rānei koutou?
- 8 Ā, ka kī atu te kīngi ki a ia: Āe rā, mēnā ka kī ake te Ariki ki a mātou kia haere, ka haere iho mātou ki ā mātou teina, ā, ka noho mātou hei taurekareka ki a rātou tae noa atu ki te wā kua whakatikaina ki a rātou ngā kōhurutanga huhua me ngā hara huhua kua meatia nei e mātou ki a rātou.

## Alma 27

Now it came to pass that when those Lamanites who had gone to war against the Nephites had found, after their many struggles to destroy them, that it was in vain to seek their destruction, they returned again to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that the Amalekites, because of their loss, were exceedingly angry. And when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi; therefore they began again to destroy them.

Now this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

Now when Ammon and his brethren saw this work of destruction among those whom they so dearly beloved, and among those who had so dearly beloved them—for they were treated as though they were angels sent from God to save them from everlasting destruction—therefore, when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

But the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

And Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord, and if he say unto us, go down unto our brethren, will ye go?

And the king said unto him: Yea, if the Lord saith unto us go, we will go down unto our brethren, and we will be their slaves until we repair unto them the many murders and sins which we have committed against them.

- 9 Engari ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: E hē ana tēnā ki te ture o ā tātou teina, koia nei i whakapūmauhia e tōku matua, kia kua ētahi taurekareka i waenganui i a rātou; nō reira tukua tātou kia haere iho me te whakawhirinaki ki runga i ngā whakaaro o ā tātou teina.
- 10 Engari ka kī atu te kīngi ki a ia: Uia te Ariki, ā, mēnā ka kī mai ia ki a tātou kia haere, ka haere tātou; ki te kore ka mate mātou i te whenua.
- 11 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere a Amona ki te ui atu ki te Ariki, ā, ka kī ake te Ariki ki a ia:
- 12 Whakaputaina atu tēnei iwi i tēnei whenua, kia kore ai rātou e mate; nā te mea e kaha nei te mau o Hātana ki ngā ngākau o ngā Amareki, ko rātou nei e whakaohoho ake i ngā Rāmana ki te riri ki ā rātou teina ki te patupatu i a rātou; nō reira whakaputa atu koutou i tēnei whenua; ā, kua manaakitia tēnei iwi i tēnei whakatipuranga, nā te mea māku rātou e tiaki.
- 13 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka haere atu a Amona ki te kōrero ki te kīngi i ngā kupu katoa i kōrerotia ai ki a ia.
- 14 Ā, i whakahuihui tahi nei i tō rātou iwi katoa, āe rā, ko te iwi katoa o te Ariki, ā, i whakahuihui tahi ai i ā rātou kāhui o ia āhua, o ia āhua kātahi ka wehe atu i te whenua, ā, ka haere ki te koraha nāna nei i whakawehe i te whenua o Nīwhai i te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ka whakawhiti mai kia tata ki ngā rohe o te whenua.
- 15 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu a Amona ki a ia: Nana, ka haere atu mātou ko aku teina ki roto i te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ka noho mai koutou ki konei kia hoki rawa mai mātou; ā, ka whakamātauria e mātou ngā ngākau o ō mātou teina kia mōhio ai mēnā ka whakaae mai kia haere mai ai koutou ki roto i tō rātou whenua.
- 16 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a Amona e haere atu ana ki roto i te whenua, nā, ka tūtaki rātou ko ana teina ki a Arami, i reira i te wāhi kua kōrerotia nei; ā nana, he tūtakinga harikoa tēnei.
- 17 Nā, i kī a Amona i te nui o te koa; āe rā, i horomia ake ia i te haringa o tōna Atua, tae atu ana ki te whakapaunga ake o tana kaha; ā, ka hinga iho anō ia ki te whenua.

But Ammon said unto him: It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

But the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them; therefore get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

And now it came to pass that Ammon went and told the king all the words which the Lord had said unto him.

And they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land, and came into the wilderness which divided the land of Nephi from the land of Zarahemla, and came over near the borders of the land.

And it came to pass that Ammon said unto them: Behold, I and my brethren will go forth into the land of Zarahemla, and ye shall remain here until we return; and we will try the hearts of our brethren, whether they will that ye shall come into their land.

And it came to pass that as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma, over in the place of which has been spoken; and behold, this was a joyful meeting.

Now the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God, even to the exhausting of his strength; and he fell again to the earth.

18 Nā, ehara rānei tēnei i te hari tino nui? Nana, koinei te hari e kore e taea e tētahi te whiwhi hāunga ko te hunga tino rīpenetā anake me te kaiaruaru māhaki o te haringa.

19 Nā, i tino nui mārika te hari o Arami i tana tūtakinga ki ana teina, me te hari o Arona, o Omonere, me Himini; engari nana kāore i nui ake tō rātou hari i ō rātou kaha.

20 Ināianeī ā i pahawa ake, nā, ka ārahina atu e Arami ana teina ki te whenua o Harahemara; tae atu ana ki tōna ake kāinga. Ā, ka haere atu rātou ki te kōrero atu ki te kaiwhakawā matua i ngā mea katoa kua meatia ki a rātou i te whenua o Nīwhai, i waenganui i ō rātou tuākana, ngā Ramana.

21 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka tukuna e te kaiwhakawā matua tētahi whakapuakitanga puta noa i te whenua, e hiahia ana ki te reo o te iwi e pā ana ki te whakaaetanga mai o ō rātou tuākana, ko rātou nei te iwi o Anati-Nīwhai-Rīhai.

22 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka puta mai te reo o te iwi, e mea ana: Nana, ka tukuna ake e mātou te whenua o Herehona, kei te taha rāwhiti e tūtata ana ki te moana, e hono ana ki te whenua o Mōmona, kei te taha tonga o te whenua Mōmona; ā, ko tēnei whenua o Herehona te whenua e hoatu ai e mātou ki ō tātou tuākana hei whenua tuku iho.

23 Ā nana, ka whakatūhia e mātou ō tātou tauā i waenganui i te whenua o Herehona me te whenua o Nīwhai, kia tiaki ai mātou i ō tātou tuākana i te whenua o Herehona; ā, ka pēnei tā mātou mō ō mātou tuākana, nā tō rātou wehi ki te hāpai patu ki ō rātou tuākana kei hara rātou; ā, i ahu mai tēnei tō rātou wehi nui nā tā rātou tino rīpenetātanga i mea ai rātou, nā ā rātou kōhurutanga huhua me tō rātou whakariharihatanga kino.

24 Ināianeī ā nana, ka pēnei mātou ki ō mātou tuākana, kia riro i a rātou te whenua o Herehona; ā, mā mātou rātou e tiaki i ō rātou hoariri i ō mātou tauā, i runga i te whakaritenga kia homai e rātou tētahi wāhi o ā rātou rawa hei āwhina i a mātou ki te whakakaha i ō mātou tauā.

Now was not this exceeding joy? Behold, this is joy which none receiveth save it be the truly penitent and humble seeker of happiness.

Now the joy of Alma in meeting his brethren was truly great, and also the joy of Aaron, of Omner, and Himni; but behold their joy was not that to exceed their strength.

And now it came to pass that Alma conducted his brethren back to the land of Zarahemla; even to his own house. And they went and told the chief judge all the things that had happened unto them in the land of Nephi, among their brethren, the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the chief judge sent a proclamation throughout all the land, desiring the voice of the people concerning the admitting their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi.

And it came to pass that the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea, which joins the land Bountiful, which is on the south of the land Bountiful; and this land Jershon is the land which we will give unto our brethren for an inheritance.

And behold, we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon; and this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin; and this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

And now behold, this will we do unto our brethren, that they may inherit the land Jershon; and we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

- 25 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te rongonga o Amona i tēnei, ka hoki atu ki te iwi o Anati-Nīwhai-Rīhai, ā, i haere tahi anō a Arami, ki roto i te koraha, ki te wāhi i whakatūhia ai ō rātou tēneti, ā, ka whakamōhiotia atu ki a rātou ēnei mea katoa. Ā, ka whakamāramatia atu e Arami ki a rātou tana whakatahuritanga, i te taha i a Amona me Arona, me ana teina.
- 26 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i hua ake i reira te hari nui i waenganui i a rātou. A, ka haere iho rātou ki te whenua o Herehona, ā, ka nōhia e rātou te whenua o Herehona; ā, i karangatia rātou e ngā Nīwhai ko te iwi o Amona; nō reira i whakamōhiotia rātou ki taua ingoa nō muri ake nei.
- 27 Ā, kei waenganui rātou i te iwi o Nīwhai, ā, i taturia anōtia i waenganui i te iwi o te hāhi o te Atua. Ā, i mōhiotia anōtia rātou mō tō rātou ngākau nui ki te Atua, ā, ki te tangata anō hoki; nā te mea i tino pono mārīre rātou, ā, i tino tōtika mārīre rātou i roto i ngā mea katoa; ā, i ū tō rātou whakapono i te Karaiti, tae atu ana ki te mutunga.
- 28 Ā, he mea whakarīhariha rawa atu te whakahekenga i ngā toto o ō rātou tuākana ki a rātou; ā, kīhai i taea rātou e tētahi kia hāpai patu ki ō rātou tuākana; ā, kīhai i titiro ake ki te matenga i runga i tētahi paku matakū, nā tō rātou tūmanako me ō rātou tirohanga o te Karaiti me te aranga; nō reira, kua horomia ake te mate ki a rātou e te wikitōriatanga o te Karaiti i runga rā.
- 29 Nō reira, ka tukuna e rātou kia mate ai rātou i ō rātou tuākana i runga i ngā āhuatanga whakamamae kino rawa atu me ngā āhuatanga tārū kikino e taea ai e ō rātou tuākana te whakamahi, koinei katoa i mua i tā rātou hāpai ake i te hoari, i te hemita rānei ki te patu i a rātou.
- 30 Ā, pēnei rātou hei iwi ngākau nui, ā, hei iwi arohaina, he iwi whakamakautia nuitia nō te Ariki.

Now, it came to pass that when Ammon had heard this, he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents, and made known unto them all these things. And Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

And it came to pass that it did cause great joy among them. And they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon; and they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

And they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God. And they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things; and they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

And they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence; and they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren; and they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection; therefore, death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

Therefore, they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

And thus they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.



## Arami 28

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i te whakapūmautanga ake o te iwi o Amona i te whenua o Herehona, ā, i whakapūmauhia anō hoki tētahi hāhi i te whenua o Herehona, ā, i whakatūhia ake ngā tauā o ngā Nīwhai huri noa i te whenua o Herehona, āe rā, i roto i ngā rohe huri noa i te whenua o Harahemara; nana, i arumia ngā tauā o ngā Rāmana i ā rātou teina ki roto i te koraha.
- 2 Ā, pēnei i tū ai tētahi pakanga nui whakaharahara; āe rā, kāore i mōhiotia tētahi e pēnei ana te āhua i waenganui i te iwi katoa i te whenua mai i te wā i wehe ai a Rīhai i Hiruharama; āe rā, i patupatua, ā, i whakamararatia whānuitia atu ngā Rāmana manomano.
- 3 Āe rā, he parekura tino nanakia anō hoki kei waenganui i te iwi o Nīwhai; hei aha koa, ka āia atu, ā, ka whakamararatia atu ngā Rāmana, ā, ka hoki anō te iwi o Nīwhai ki tō rātou whenua.
- 4 Ināianeī ā, koinei tētahi wā i rangona ai tētahi tangihanga nui me tētahi uhunga nui puta noa i te whenua katoa, i waenganui i te iwi katoa o Nīwhai—
- 5 Āe rā, ko te tangihanga o ngā pouaru e tangi ana ki ā rātou hoatāne, ko ngā matua hoki e tangi ana ki ā rātou tama, ko ngā tamāhine anō ki ō rātou tungāne, āe rā, ko te tama ki te matua; ā, i pēnei te rongonga o te reo tangihanga ki waenganui i a rātou katoa, e uhungatia ana ā rātou huānga kua whakamatea nei.
- 6 Ināianeī ā, he rangi pāpōuri rawa atu tēnei; āe rā, he wā whai tikanga nui, ā, he wā anō mō te kaha nohopuku me te inoi.
- 7 Ā, i pēnei te whakamutunganga o te tau tuangahuru mā rima o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai;
- 8 Ā, koinei te tuhinga a Amona rātou o ana teina, ā rātou haerenga i te whenua o Nīwhai, ā rātou pāmamaetanga i te whenua, ā rātou pōuritanga, me ā ratou whakamamaetanga, me ā rātou haringa tē taea te mārāma, me te whakawhiwhinga, te haumarutanga o ō rātou tuākana i te whenua o Herehona. Ināianeī ā, kia manaakitia e te Ariki, te Kaihoko o ngā tāngata katoa i ō rātou wairua mō āke tonu atu.

## Alma 28

And now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, and a church also established in the land of Jershon, and the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of Jershon, yea, in all the borders round about the land of Zarahemla; behold the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

And thus there was a tremendous battle; yea, even such an one as never had been known among all the people in the land from the time Lehi left Jerusalem; yea, and tens of thousands of the Lamanites were slain and scattered abroad.

Yea, and also there was a tremendous slaughter among the people of Nephi; nevertheless, the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

And now this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land, among all the people of Nephi—

Yea, the cry of widows mourning for their husbands, and also of fathers mourning for their sons, and the daughter for the brother, yea, the brother for the father; and thus the cry of mourning was heard among all of them, mourning for their kindred who had been slain.

And now surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

And thus endeth the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi;

And this is the account of Ammon and his brethren, their journeyings in the land of Nephi, their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions, and their incomprehensible joy, and the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon. And now may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls forever.

- 9     Ā, koinei te tuinga mō ngā pakanga me ngā tautohetohenga i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai, me ngā pakanga anō hoki i waenganui i ngā Nīwhai me ngā Rāmāna; ā, ka mutu te tau tuangahuru mā rima o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā.
- 10    Ā, kua pahawa ake mai i te tau tuatahi tae noa ki te tuangahuru mā rima te whakangaromanga o ngā tāngata manomano; āe rā, kua pahawa ake tētahi āhuatanga whakarihariha o te whakahaekenga toto.
- 11    Ā, i whakatakotohia iho ngā tūpāpaku manomano ki roto i te whenua, i ngā tūpāpaku manomano e horokiwa ana i ngā pūranga i runga i te mata o te whenua; āe rā, e tangihia ana ngā tāngata manomano i te ngaronga o ō rātou huānga, nā te mea e whaitake ana tō rātou wehi, e ai ki ngā whakaari a te Ariki, nā, kua whakatauhia rātou ki tētahi āhuatanga auē mutunga kore.
- 12    I ētahi atu manomano e tangi pono ana ki te ngaronga o ō rātou huānga, heoi kei te hari rātou, ā, kei te whakatiketike rātou i runga i te tūmanako, ā, ināianei pū anō, e ai ki ngā whakaari a te Ariki, kua whakaarahia rātou kia noho ai i te ringa matau o te Atua, i tētahi āhuatanga o te haringa mutunga-kore.
- 13    Ā, pēnei tātou kite ai anō te rerekētanga o te tangata nā te hara me te hē, me te kaha o te rēwera, e haere mai ai nā ngā mahere tinihanga kua whakaritea nei e ia ki te whakamau i ngā ngākau o te tangata.
- 14    Ā, pēnei tātou kite ai i te nui o te karangatanga kia tākare tonu te tangata i ngā māra waina o te Ariki; ā pēnei tātou kite ai i te take nui kia pōuri ai, kia hari ai anō hoki—ko te pōuritanga nā te matenga me te whakangaromanga o te tangata, ā, ko te haringa nā te māramatanga o te Karaiti ki te oranga.

And this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites; and the fifteenth year of the reign of the judges is ended.

And from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives; yea, it has brought to pass an awful scene of bloodshed.

And the bodies of many thousands are laid low in the earth, while the bodies of many thousands are mouldering in heaps upon the face of the earth; yea, and many thousands are mourning for the loss of their kindred, because they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

While many thousands of others truly mourn for the loss of their kindred, yet they rejoice and exult in the hope, and even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

And thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

And thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord; and thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing—sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

## Arami 29

- 1 Auē me he anahera au, ā, kua taea te tūmananko o tōku ngākau, kia haere atu ahau me te kōrero ki te pūkaea o te Atua, ki tētahi reo kia haruru ai i te whenua, me te karanga atu i te rīpenetātanga ki ia iwi, ki ia iwi!
- 2 Āe rā, ka whakapuaki au ki ia wairua, anō nei ko te reo whatitiri, te rīpenetātanga me te mahere o te hokonga, kia rīpenetā ai rātou me te haere mai ki tō tātou Atua, kia kore ai he pōuritanga anō i runga i te mata o te whenua.
- 3 Engari nana, he tangata ahau, ā, e hē ana au i tēnei tūmanako āku; nā te mea me tau taku ngākau ki ngā mea kua homai nei e te Ariki ki ahau.
- 4 Me kua au e huhuti ake i runga i ōku hiahia i te tikanga pūmau i tētahi Atua tika, nā te mea e mōhio ana au e tukuna ana e ia ki te tangata e rite ana ki ō rātou hiahia, ahakoa ko te mate, ki te ora rānei; āe rā, e mōhio ana au e hoatu ana ia ki te tangata, āe rā, e whakapuakina atu ana ki a ratou he whakapuakitanga tē taea te tīni, e rite ana ki ō rātou hiahia, ahakoa ki te whakaoranga, ki te whakangaromanga rānei.
- 5 Āe rā, e mōhio ana ahau kua tau mai te pai me te kino ki mua i ngā tāngata katoa; he hē kore te tangata kāore e mōhio ana te pai i te kino; engari ko te tangata e mōhio ana te pai i te kino, e hoatu ana ki a ia ngā mea e rite ana ki ōna hiahia, ahakoa mēnā e hiahia ana i te pai, i te kino rānei, i te oranga, i te matenga rānei, i te hari, i te hinengaro pōuri rānei.
- 6 Nā, e kite ana kua mōhio au ki ēnei mea, me aha au e hiahia ai ki te mahi i tua atu i te mahi kua karangatia nei tātou?
- 7 Me aha au e hiahia ai kia whakaanaheratia au, kia taea ai te kōrero ki ngā tōpito katoa o te ao?
- 8 Nana rā, ka tuku atu te Ariki ki ngā iwi katoa, o tō rātou ake iwi me tō rātou ake reo, ki te whakaako i tana kupu, āe rā, i te mātauranga, ko ngā mea katoa e tika ana ki a ia hei whiwhinga mō rātou; nō reira kite ai tātou ka rūnanga te Ariki i runga i te mātauranga, e ai ki ērā e tika ana, ā, e pono ana.

## Alma 29

O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

Yea, I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption, that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

I ought not to harrow up in my desires the firm decree of a just God, for I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life; yea, I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

Yea, and I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

Now, seeing that I know these things, why should I desire more than to perform the work to which I have been called?

Why should I desire that I were an angel, that I could speak unto all the ends of the earth?

For behold, the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, yea, in wisdom, all that he seeth fit that they should have; therefore we see that the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

- 9 E mōhio ana au ki ērā kua whakahau au e te Ariki, ā, e whakakorōria au i ērā mea. Kāore au e whakakorōria i au anō, engari e whakakorōria au i ērā mea kua whakahau au e te Ariki; āe rā, koinei tōku korōria, me kore pea au e meinga ai hei taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua kia kumea ai tētahi wairua ki te rīpenetātanga; ā, koinei taku haringa.
- 10 Ā nana, i taku kitenga atu i aku huānga e rīpenetā pono ana, e haere mai ana ki te Ariki tō rātou Atua, kātahi taku wairua ka kī i te hari; kātahi au ka maumahara ki tā te Ariki i mea ai mōku, āe rā, kua rangona pū anō e ia tōku inoi; āe rā, kātahi au ka maumahara ki tōna ringa atawhai e torona mai ana ki ahau.
- 11 Āe rā, ka maumahara anō au i te hereheretanga o ōku tūpuna matua; nā te mea e mōhio mārire ana au nā te Ariki rātou i whakaputa mai ai i te hereheretanga, ā, nā konei ia whakapūmau ai i tōna hāhi; āe rā, i whakaputa te Ariki te Atua, te Atua o Aperahama, te Atua o Īhaka, me te Atua o Hākopa i a rātou i te hereheretanga.
- 12 Āe rā, kua maumahara katoa au ki te hereheretanga o ōku tūpuna matua; ā, ki taua Atua pū anō nāna nei rātou i whakaputa i ngā ringaringa o ngā Ihipiana kia whakaputaina ai rātou i te hereheretanga.
- 13 Āe rā, i whakapūmau taua Atua pū anō i tōna hāhi ki waenganui i a rātou; āe rā, kua karangatia au e taua Atua pū anō ki tētahi karangatanga tapu, ki te kauhau i te kupu ki tēnei iwi, ā, kua tukua mai ngā waimārietanga nui, nā konā rā kī ai tōku hari.
- 14 Engari kāore au e hari i runga i ōku ake waimārietanga anake, engari kua kī ake tōku hari nā te waimārietanga o aku teina, kua haere ake nei ki te whenua o Nīwhai.
- 15 Nana, kua kaha rawa atu tā rātou mahi, ā, kua whakaputaina mai nga hua maha; ā, anō te nui o tō rātou utu!
- 16 Nā, ka kahakina atu tōku wairua i taku whakaaro atu ki te waimārietanga o ēnei aku teina, tae atu ana, me te mea nei, ki te wehenga ruatanga i te tīnana, i pērā rawa tōku hari.

I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it. I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me; yea, and this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance; and this is my joy.

And behold, when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy; then do I remember what the Lord has done for me, yea, even that he hath heard my prayer; yea, then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended towards me.

Yea, and I also remember the captivity of my fathers; for I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage, and by this did establish his church; yea, the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers; and that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

Yea, and that same God did establish his church among them; yea, and that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the which my joy is full.

But I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to the land of Nephi.

Behold, they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

Now, when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it were, so great is my joy.

17 Ināianeī ā kia tukuna e te Atua ki ēnei, e aku teina, kia noho iho ai rātou i te kīngitanga o te Atua; āe rā, ko te hunga katoa ko rātou nei ngā hua o ā rātou mahi kia kua rātou e haere tonu atu, engari kia whakawhetai tonu atu rātou ki a ia mō āke tonu atu. Ā, mā te Atua anō e tuku kia meatia ai e rite ana ki aku kupu, pērā me tāku i kōrerotia ai. Āmine.

And now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit down in the kingdom of God; yea, and also all those who are the fruit of their labors that they may go no more out, but that they may praise him forever. And may God grant that it may be done according to my words, even as I have spoken. Amen.

## Arami 30

- 1 Nana, i pahawa ianei ake, nā, i muri iho i te whakapūmautanga o te iwi o Amona i te whenua o Herehona, āe rā, i muri iho anō hoki i te ānga atu i ngā Rāmana ki waho atu i te whenua, ā, ka tanumia anōtia o rātou mate e te iwi o te whenua—
- 2 Nā, kihai i tatauria o rātou mate nā te nui o o rātou tokomahatanga; kihai rānei i tatauria ngā mate o ngā Nīwhai—engari i pahawa ake i muri iho i tā rātou tanu i o rātou mate, ā, i muri iho hoki i ngā rangi nohopuku, me te tangi, me te inoi, (ā, i te tau tuangahuru mā ono o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai) ka hua ake te rangimārie tonutanga puta noa i te whenua katoa.
- 3 Āe rā, ka ū te iwi ki te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Ariki; ā, i kaha tā rātou ū ki ngā tikanga a te Atua, e ai ki te ture a Mohi; nā te mea i whakaakona rātou kia pupuri ai i te ture a Mohi tae atu ki tōna whakatutukitanga.
- 4 Ā, pēnei kihai tētahi raruraru i te iwi i te tau tuangahuru mā ono katoa o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i runga i te iwi o Nīwhai.
- 5 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te tīmatanga o te tau tuangahuru mā whitu o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā, ka hua tonu te rangimārie.
- 6 Engari i pahawa ake i te pito whakamutunga o te tau tuangahuru mā whitu, i haere mai tētahi tangata ki roto i te whenua o Harahemara, ā, ko te ātete-Karaiti ia, nā te mea i tīmata ia ki te kauhau ki te iwi e whakahē ana i ngā poropititanga kua kōrerotia e ngā poropiti, e pā ana ki te haerenga mai a te Karaiti.
- 7 Nā, kāore tētahi ture e whakahē ana i te whakapono o te tangata; nā te mea i tino tauaro tērā ki ngā whakahau a te Atua kia whakaritea ai tētahi ture e kūmea mai ai te tangata ki runga i ngā whenua rerekē.
- 8 Nā, e ai tā te karaipiture: Kōwhiria e koutou i tēnei rā, me mahi koutou ki a wai.
- 9 Nā, mehemea i te hiahia tētahi tangata ki te mahi ki te Atua, nōna te maringa; nōna rānei te maringa ki te mahi ki a ia mehemea i whakapono ai ia i te Atua; engari mehemea kāore ia i whakapono i a ia kāore i reira tētahi ture kia whakawhiu atu i a ia.

## Alma 30

Behold, now it came to pass that after the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, yea, and also after the Lamanites were driven out of the land, and their dead were buried by the people of the land—

Now their dead were not numbered because of the greatness of their numbers; neither were the dead of the Nephites numbered—but it came to pass after they had buried their dead, and also after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer, (and it was in the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi) there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.

Yea, and the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord; and they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according to the law of Moses; for they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be fulfilled.

And thus the people did have no disturbance in all the sixteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the seventeenth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace.

But it came to pass in the latter end of the seventeenth year, there came a man into the land of Zarahemla, and he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people against the prophecies which had been spoken by the prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.

Now there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law which should bring men on to unequal grounds.

For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will serve.

Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him; but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.

- 10 Engari mehemea i kōhuru ia kua whakawhiua kia mate; ā, mehemea i pāhua ia kua whakawhiua anōtia ia; ā, mehemea i whānako ia kua whakawhiua anōtia ia; ā, mehemea i mahi pūremu ia kua whakawhiua anōtia ia; āe rā, kua whakawhiua rātou mō ēnei whakariharaha katoa.
- 11 Nā te mea i reira tētahi ture kia whakawākia ai te tangata e rite ana ki ō rātou hara. Hei aha koa, kāore i reira tētahi ture e whakahē ana i te whakapono o te tangata; nō reira, kua whakawhiua te tangata anake mō ana hara kua mahia e ia; nō reira i te taurite te tikanga mō ngā tātanga katoa.
- 12 Ā, ko tēnei ātete-Karaiti, ko Korihō tōna ingoa, (ā, kāore e whai kaha ana te ture ki runga ki a ia) ka tūmata tana kauhau atu ki te iwi kāore e puta mai he Karaiti. Ā, ko te āhua tēnei o tana kauhautanga, e mea ana:
- 13 E koutou kua herea iho i raro i tētahi tūmanako kuare me tētahi tūmanako teka, he aha koutou e ioka ai i a koutou anō ki ngā mea kuare pērā? He aha koutou e titiro atu ai ki tētahi Karaiti? Nā te mea kāore e taea ana e tētahi tangata te mōhio ki tētahi mea e puta mai ai.
- 14 Nana, koinei mea e kīa nei e koutou he poropititanga, e kīa ana e koutou he mea tuku iho e ngā poropiti tapu, nana, he whakarereanga iho kuare a ō koutou tūpuna matua.
- 15 Me pēhea koutou e mōhio tūturu ai ki te tika o aua mea? Nana, kāore e taea ana e koutou te mōhio ki ngā mea kāore koutou e kite; nō reira kāore e taea e koutou te mōhio ka puta mai tētahi Karaiti.
- 16 E titiro whakamua atu ana koutou me te kī ake e kite ana koutou i tētahi murunga i ō koutou hara. Engari nana, koia te hua o tētahi hinengaro wairangi; ā, ka puta ake tēnei āhuatanga rerekē o te hinengaro nā ngā whakarereanga iho a ō koutou tūpuna matua, e ārahina atu ana koutou i tētahi whakapono ki ngā mea kāore i te pono.
- 17 Ā, he maha rawa atu anō ngā mea i kōrero ai ia ki a rātou, e kōrero atu ana ki a rātou e kore e taea tētahi whakamārietanga mō ngā hara o te tangata, engari ka rite te āhua o te tangata i tēnei oranga e rite ana ki te whakahaeretanga o te mea; nō reira i kake ai ia tangata e rite ana ki tōna atamai, ā, toa ia tangata e rite ana ki tōna kaha; ā, aha koa he aha tā te tangata i mea ai ehara i te hara.

But if he murdered he was punished unto death; and if he robbed he was also punished; and if he stole he was also punished; and if he committed adultery he was also punished; yea, for all this wickedness they were punished.

For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes. Nevertheless, there was no law against a man's belief; therefore, a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done; therefore all men were on equal grounds.

And this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him) began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ. And after this manner did he preach, saying:

O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things? Why do ye look for a Christ? For no man can know of anything which is to come.

Behold, these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

How do ye know of their surety? Behold, ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins. But behold, it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

And many more such things did he say unto them, telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature; therefore every man prospered according to his genius, and that every man conquered according to his strength; and whatsoever a man did was no crime.

- 18     Ā, i pēnei tana kauhau atu ki a rātou, e ārahina atu ana i ngā ngākau o te hunga tokomaha, e mea ana i a rātou kia hīkina ake ō rātou māhunga i tō rātou whakarihariha, āe rā, e ārahina atu ana ngā wāhine tokomaha, me ngā tāne anō hoki, ki te mahi pūremu—e kī atu ana ki a rātou ina mate te tangata, koinā tōna mutunga.
- 19     Nā, i haere atu tēnei tangata ki te whenua o Herehona anō hoki, ki te kauhau atu i ēnei mea ki waenganui i te iwi o Amona, ko rātou nei te iwi o ngā Rāmana i tōna wā.
- 20     Engari nana, he whai whakaaro ake rātou i ngā Nīwhai tokomaha; nā te mea i mauria atu ia e rātou, ā, ka herea ia, ā, ka mauria atu ia ki te aroaro o Amona, ko ia tētahi tohunga teitei i runga i taua iwi.
- 21     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i meatia e ia kia mauria atu ia ki waho atu i te whenua. Ā, i haere mai ia ki roto i te whenua o Kiriona, ā, ka tīmata ki te kauhau ki a rātou anō hoki; ā, kāore i nui ōna waimārietanga i konei, nā te mea i hopukina atu ia, ā, ka herea ia, ā, ka mauria atu ki mua i te aroaro o te tohunga teitei me te kaiwhakawā matua anō hoki.
- 22     Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu te tohunga teitei ki a ia: He aha koe e hāereere ana ki te whakapeau i ngā huarahi o te Ariki? He aha koe e whakaako ai i tēnei iwi e kore e puta mai te Karaiti, ki te whakararu i ā rātou haringa? He aha koe e whakahē ai i ngā poropititanga katoa a ngā poropiti tapu?
- 23     Nā, ko Kirona te ingoa o te tohunga teitei. Ā, ka kī atu a Korihō ki a ia: Nā te mea kāore au e whakaako i ngā whakarereanga iho kuare a ō koutou tūpuna matua, ā, nā te mea kāore au e whakaako i tēnei iwi kia herea iho rātou e rātou anō ki raro i ngā tikanga me ngā meatanga kuare kua whakatakotoria iho e ngā tohunga onamata, kia whaikaha ai, ā, kia whaimana ai ki runga i a rātou, hei pupuri tonu ai i a rātou ki roto i te kuaretanga, kia kore ai e taea e rātou te hiki ake i ō rātou māhunga, engari kia whakaitia iho rātou e rite ai ki āu kupu.
- 24     E kī ana koutou he iwi herekore tēnei iwi. Nana, ko tāku e kī nei kei te hereheretanga tonu rātou. E kī ana koutou he pono ērā poropititanga onamata. Nana, ko tāku e kī nei kāore koutou e mōhio ana mēnā kei te pono ērā mea.

And thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness, yea, leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms—telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

Now this man went over to the land of Jerushon also, to preach these things among the people of Ammon, who were once the people of the Lamanites.

But behold they were more wise than many of the Nephites; for they took him, and bound him, and carried him before Ammon, who was a high priest over that people.

And it came to pass that he caused that he should be carried out of the land. And he came over into the land of Gideon, and began to preach unto them also; and here he did not have much success, for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

And it came to pass that the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord? Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings? Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

Now the high priest's name was Giddonah. And Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers, and because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true. Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.



25 E kī ana koutou he iwi hara, ā, he iwi taka tēnei iwi, nā ngā hara o tētahi matua. Nana, ko tāku e kī nei kāore te tamaiti e hē ana i ōna mātua.

26 Ā, e kī ana anō hoki koutou ka haere mai te Karaiti. Engari nana, ko tāku e kī nei kāore koutou e mōhio ana mehemea ka puta mai tētahi Karaiti. Ā, e kī ana anō koutou ka mate ia mō ngā hara o te ao—

27 Ā, pēnei tā koutou ārahi atu i tēnei iwi i runga i ngā whakarereinga iho kuare a ō koutou tūpuna matua, ā, e rite ana ki ō koutou hiahia; ā, e whakapēhi tonu koutou i a rātou, e pērā ana me te mea nei i te hereheretanga, kia apoapo koutou i ngā mahinga o ō rātou ake ringaringa, kia kore ai rātou e māia ki te titiro ake, ā, kia kore ai rātou e māia kia hari ai rātou i ō rātou tikanga me ō rātou ritenga.

28 Āe rā, kua kore rātou e māia ki te whakamahahi i ērā mea nō rātou kei whakatakariri rātou i ō rātou tohunga, ko rātou nāna nei rātou i ioka kia rite ai ki ō rātou hiahia, ā, kua kūmea ai rātou kia whakapono ai, mā ō rātou whakarereinga iho me ā rātou moemoeā me ā rātou whakaaro hihiko me ā rātou kitenga me ā rātou mea ngaro whakataruna, ka tika pū anō, ki te kore rātou e mahi kia rite ai ki ā rātou kupu, ka whakatakariri rātou i tētahi mea kāore nei e mōhiohia ana, e kīa nei e rātou ko te Atua—ko tētahi mea kāore anō kia kitea, ā, kāore anō rānei kia mōhiohia, kīhai rawa i mua, ā, kāore rānei i ngā rā e takoto ake nei.

29 Nā, i te kitenga o te tohunga teitei me te kaiwhakawā matua i te pakeketanga o tōna ngākau, āe rā, i tā rāua kitenga atu i tana taunu pū anō i te Atua, kāore rāua i whakahoki kōrero ki āna kupu; engari i mea ai rāua kia herea ia; ā, ka tukuna atu ia ki roto i ngā ringaringa o ngā kātīpa, ā, ka tonoa atu ia ki te whenua o Harahemara, me kore pea ia e mauria atu ki te aroaro o Arami me te kaiwhakawā matua i runga i te whenua katoa.

30 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kawenga atu i a ia ki te aroaro o Arami me te kaiwhakawā matua, ka rite tonu te āhuetanga o tāna ki tāna i mea ai i te whenua o Kiriona; āe rā, ka haere tonu tana kohukohu.

Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

And ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ. And ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world—

And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

Yea, they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God—a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

Now when the high priest and the chief judge saw the hardness of his heart, yea, when they saw that he would revile even against God, they would not make any reply to his words; but they caused that he should be bound; and they delivered him up into the hands of the officers, and sent him to the land of Zarahemla, that he might be brought before Alma, and the chief judge who was governor over all the land.

And it came to pass that when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner as he did in the land of Gideon; yea, he went on to blaspheme.

- 31     Ā, ka neke ake ia i runga i ngā kupu pupuhi nui i te aroaro o Arami, ā, ka taunu i ngā tohunga me ngā kaiako, e whakahē ana i a rātou mō te ārahitanga atu i te iwi ki ngā whakarereanga iho kuare a ō rātou tūpuna matua, mō runga i te whakaaro ki te apuapu i ngā mahinga a te iwi.
- 32     Nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: E mōhio ana koe kāore mātou i te apuapu i ngā mahinga o tēnei iwi; nana rā kua mahi au mai i te tīmatanga pū anō o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā tae noa ki tēnei wā, ki ōku ake ringaringa hei oranga mōku, hei aha koa aku hāereere maha huri noa i te whenua ki te whakapuaki i te kupu a te Atua ki tōku iwi.
- 33     Ā, hei aha koa ngā mahinga maha kua mea ai ahau i te hāhi, kāore au i whiwhi i te henine kotahi noa iho mō aku mahi; kāore anō rānei aku teina, hāunga i runga i te nohoanga whakawā; ā, i riro i a mātou mō te ritenga anake o te ture mō ō mātou taima.
- 34     Ināianeī ā, ki te kore mātou e whiwhi i tētahi aha mō ā mātou mahinga i te hāhi, he aha te hua ki a mātou ki te mahi i te hāhi hāunga ko te whakapuaki i te pono, kia whai haringa mātou i runga i te haringa o ō mātou tuākana?
- 35     Kāti he aha koe e kī ai e kauhau atu ana mātou ki tēnei iwi mō te utu, i te mea ko koe tonu e mōhio ana kāore e riro mai ana i a mātou he utu? Ināianeī ā, e whakapono ana rānei koe e tinihanga ana mātou i tēnei iwi, e mea ana i te hari nui i roto i ō rātou ngākau?
- 36     Kātahi ka whakahoki a Koriho, Āe rā.
- 37     Kātahi ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: E whakapono ana rānei koe he Atua anō?
- 38     Kātahi ia ka whakahoki, Kāo.
- 39     Nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Ka whakakore anō koe tērā he Atua anō, me te whakakore anō i te Karaiti? Nana rā, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe, e mōhio ana au he Atua anō, ā, ka haere mai anō hoki te Karaiti.
- 40     Ināianeī ā he aha tāu hei whakaatu mai nei kāore he Atua anō, kāore rānei te Karaiti e haere mai ai? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koe kārekau āu, hāunga ko tō kupu anake.

And he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

Now Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people; for behold I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

And notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor; neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

And now, if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

Then why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain? And now, believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

And Korihor answered him, Yea.

And then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And he answered, Nay.

Now Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

And now what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

41 Engari, nana, kei ahau ngā mea katoa hei whakaatu kei te pono ēnei mea; ā, kei a koe anō hoki ngā mea katoa hei whakaaturanga ki a koutou kei te pono ērā; kātahi koe ka whakakore i ērā? E whakapono ana rānei koe kei te pono ēnei mea?

42 Nana, e mōhio ana ahau kei te whakapono koe, engari kua nohoia koe e tētahi wairua rūkahu, ā, kua āraia atu e koe te Wairua o te Atua kia kore ai e whaiwāhi ki roto i a koe; engari kua whaimana te rēwera i runga i a koe, ā, kei te whakahaere ia i a koe, e mahi mahere ana kia whakangaro ai i ngā tamariki a te Atua.

43 Ināianei ā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a Korihō: Mēnā ka whakakitea mai e koe tētahi tohu ki ahau, kia whakapakepake ai i ahau he Atua anō, āe rā, whakakitea mai ki ahau he mana tōna, kātahi ka whakapakepakehia au mō te pono o āu kupu.

44 Engari ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Ka nui ōu tohu; kia whakawai koe i te Atua? Ka kī ake koe, Whakakitea mai ki ahau tētahi tohu, ahakoa kei a koe te whakaaturanga o ēnei ō teina, me ngā poropiti tapu anō hoki? Kua whakatakotoria iho ngā karaipiture ki mua i a koe, āe rā, ā, e whakaatu mai ana ngā mea katoa he Atua anō; āe rā, ko te ao pū anō me ngā mea katoa kei runga i tōna mata, āe rā, ko tōna huringa anō, āe rā, ko ngā aorangi katoa e rērere haere ana i ō reira huarahi tūturu e whakaatu mai ana he Kaihanga Nui Rawa.

45 Heoi, kei te huri haere koe, e ārahina atu ana ngā ngākau o tēnei iwi, e whakaatu ana ki a rātou kāore he Atua anō? Ā, ka whakakore tonu koe i ēnei whakaaturanga katoa? Kātahi ia ka kī: Āe rā, ka whakakore au, ki te kore koe e whakakitea mai ki ahau tētahi tohu.

46 Ināianei ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Nana, kei te pōuri ahau nā te pakeketanga o tō ngākau, āe rā, ka karo tonu atu koe i te wairua o te pono, kia whakangaromia ai tō wairua.

47 Engari nana, he pai ake kia ngaro atu tō wairua i tō kukume iho i ngā wairua maha ki te whakangaromanga, mā tō rūkahutanga me āu kupu whakapatipati; nō reira ki te whakakore anō koe, ka pākia koe e te Atua, kia wahangū ai koe, kia kore ai koe e puaki tonu anō i te waha, kia kore ai koe e tinihanga tonu anō i tēnei iwi.

But, behold, I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them? Believest thou that these things are true?

Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you; but the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

And now Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets? The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God; yea, even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

And yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God? And yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

And now it came to pass that Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words; therefore if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

48 Nā, ka kī atu a Koriho ki a ia: Kāore au i te whakakore i te oranga o tētahi Atua, engari kāore au i te whakapono he Atua anō; ā, ko tāku anō hoki, nā, kāore koe i te mōhio he Atua anō; ā, ki te kore koe e whakakitea mai ki ahau tētahi tohu, kāore au e whakapono.

49 Nā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Ka tukuna atu e au tēnei hei tohu māu, nā, ka pākia koe kia wahangū, e rite ana ki aku kupu; ā, ko taku kupu tēnei, i runga i te ingoa o te Atua, ka pākia koe kia wahangū, kia kore ai tō māngai e puaki anō ai.

50 Nā, i te kōrerotanga a Arami i ēnei kupu, kua pākia a Koriho kia wahangū, tē taea e tōna māngai te puaki, e rite ana ki ngā kupu a Arami.

51 Ināianei ā, i te kitenga o te kaiwhakawā matua i tēnei, ka torona atu tōna ringa, ā, ka tuhituhi atu ki a Koriho, e mea ana: Kua whakapakepakehia koe ināianei ki te mana o te Atua? Me whakakite atu e Arami te tohu nāu i tonu ai ki a wai ake? I te hiahia koe kia whakamamae i ētahi atu, kia whakakitea atu ki a koe tētahi tohu? Nana, nāna tētahi tohu i whakakite ai ki a koe; ināianei ā, ka tohetohe tonu anō koe?

52 Ā, ka toro atu a Koriho i tana ringa, ā, ka tuhituhi, e mea ana: E mōhio ana au he wahangū au, nā te mea tē taea e au te kōrero; ā, e mōhio ana au kāore kē atu tētahi mana hāunga ko te mana o te Atua e tō iho mai ai i tēnei mea ki runga i a au; āe rā, i mōhio katoa au he Atua anō.

53 Engari nana, kua nukarau te rēwera i ahau; nā te mea i puta mai ia ki ahau i runga i te āhuatanga o tētahi anahera, ā, ka kī mai ki ahau: E haere koe me te whakahoki mai i tēnei iwi, nā te mea kua kōtiti katoa atu rātou mō tētahi Atua kāore i te mōhioitia. Ā, ka kī mai ia ki ahau; āe rā, nāna au i whakaako he aha ngā mea hei kōrerotanga atu māku. Ā, nāku āna kupu i whakaako; ā, nāku ēnā i whakaako nā te mea he āhuareka ērā ki te hinengaro ira tangata; ā, ka whakaako au i ērā, tae atu ki taku waimārietanga nunui, nā konā au tino whakapono ai he pono ērā mea; ā, nā tēnei take au i karo atu ai i te pono, tae atu ana ki taku tōnga ihotanga i tēnei kanga nui ki runga i ahau.

54 Nā, i tana kōrerotanga atu i tēnei, ka totohe atu ia kia inoi ake a Arami ki te Atua, kua murua atu te kanga i a ia.

Now Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

Now Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall no more have utterance.

Now when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

And now when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God? In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign? Would ye that he should afflict others, to show unto thee a sign? Behold, he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

And Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me; yea, and I always knew that there was a God.

But behold, the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God. And he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say. And I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind; and I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

Now when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

55 Engari ka kī atu a Arami ki a ia: Mēnā ka murua atu tēnei kanga i a koe ka ārahi anō koe i ngā ngākau o tēnei iwi; nō reira, ka rite te meatanga ki a koe ki tā te Ariki e pai ai.

56 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, kīhai te kanga i murua atu i a Koriho; engari i makaia atu ia ki waho, ā, ka haere atu ia i tēnā whare ki tēnā whare e pīnono kai ana māna.

57 Nā, i pānuitia wawetia atu te rongō o te mea i pā ai ki a Koriho puta noa i te whenua katoa; āe rā, kua tukuna atu te whakapuakitanga e te kaiwhakawā matua ki te iwi katoa i te whenua, e whakapuaki ana ki te hunga i whakapono ai ki ngā kupu a Koriho kia rīpenetā wawe ai rātou, kei tau iho ai aua whakawākanga anō ki runga i a rātou.

58 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i whakapakepakehia katoatia rātou mō te whakaritarihi o Koriho; nō reira ka whakatahuritia katoatia rātou anō ki te Ariki; ā, nā tēnei i mutu ai te hara i runga i te ritenga o Koriho. Ā, ka haere atu a Koriho i tēnā whare ki tērā whare, e pīnono kai ana hei oranga mōna.

59 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i a ia e haere atu ana ki waenganui i te iwi, āe rā, ki waenganui i tētahi iwi kua whakawehea atu e rātou anō i ngā Niwhai, ā, i karangatia rātou ko ngā Hōrama, kua ārahina rātou e tētahi tangata ko Hōrama tōna ingoa—ā, i a ia e haere atu ana ki waenganui i a rātou, nana, kua omahia ia, ā, kua takatakahia iho ia tae atu ana kia mate rawa.

60 Ā, pēnei ka kite tātou i te whakamutunga o te tangata e whakapeau i ngā huarahi o te Ariki; ā, pēnei ka kite tātou kāore te rēwera e tautoko i āna tamariki hei te rā whakamutunga, engari ka kukume wawe iho ia i a rātou ki te ao rēwera.

But Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

And it came to pass that the curse was not taken off of Korihor; but he was cast out, and went about from house to house begging for his food.

Now the knowledge of what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent, lest the same judgments would come unto them.

And it came to pass that they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor; therefore they were all converted again unto the Lord; and this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor. And Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

And it came to pass that as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram—and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

And thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord; and thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

## Arami 31

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i te whakamutunga o Koriho, i te mea kua tae te rongo ki a Arami, nā, i te whakapeau ngā Hōrama i ngā huarahi o te Ariki, me te aha ko Hōrama, ko ia tō rātou rangatira, e ārahi atu ana i ngā ngākau o te iwi kia tuohu iho ki ngā whakapakoko reo kore, ka māuiui haere anō tōna ngākau i te hara o te iwi.
- 2 Nā te mea he take tino pōuri tēnā ki a Arami kia mōhio ki te hara i waenganui i te iwi; nō reira i te tino pōuri rawa atu tōna ngākau nā te wehenga o ngā Hōrama i ngā Nīwhai.
- 3 Nā, kua whakahuihui tahi ngā Hōrama i a rātou anō i te whenua i karangatia ai e rātou ko Anationuma, kei te taha rāwhiti o te whenua o Harahemara, e takoto pātata ana ōna rohe ki te takutai moana, i te taha tonga o te whenua o Herehona, e pātata ana ōna rohe ki te koraha i te taha tonga, kua muia taua koraha e ngā Rāmana.
- 4 Nā, i tino wehi nui ngā Nīwhai kei hono atu ngā Hōrama i runga i tētahi tikanga whakawhitinga kōrero ki ngā Rāmana, ā, ka ai i reira te ngarohanga nui ki te taha ki ngā Nīwhai.
- 5 Ināianei ā, nā te mea he rite tonu te kauhautanga i te kupu kia mea rawa i te iwi ki te mahi i ērā e tika ana—āe rā, he nui rawa ake tōna whakaaweawe ki runga i ngā hinengaro o te iwi i tō te hoari, i tō tētahi atu mea, kua meatia ki a rātou—nō reira ka whakaaro ake a Arami e tika pū ana kia whakamātauria te mana pono o te kupu a te Atua.
- 6 Nō reira ka mau ia ki a Amona, me Arona, me Omonere; ā, ka mahue i a ia a Himini i roto i te hāhi i Harahemara; engari ka mauria e ia ērā tokotoru o mua, me Amureke rāua ko Tēroma anō hoki, i Mereke rāua; ā, i mauria anō hoki e ia āna tama tokorua.
- 7 Nā, kāore i mauria atu e ia te mātāmua o āna tama, ā, ko Heramana tōna ingoa; engari ko ngā ingoa o te hunga i mauria atu ai e ia ko Hipirona rāua ko Koriatono; ā, koinei ngā ingoa o te hunga i haere tahi atu ai me ia ki waenganui i ngā Hōrama, ki te kauhau atu i te kupu ki a rātou.
- 8 Nā, he kaiūtore ngā Hōrama mai i ngā Nīwhai; nō reira i kauhautia ki a rātou te kupu a te Atua.

## Alma 31

Now it came to pass that after the end of Korihor, Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord, and that Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols, his heart again began to sicken because of the iniquity of the people.

For it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people; therefore his heart was exceedingly sorrowful because of the separation of the Zoramites from the Nephites.

Now the Zoramites had gathered themselves together in a land which they called Antionum, which was east of the land of Zarahemla, which lay nearly bordering upon the seashore, which was south of the land of Jershon, which also bordered upon the wilderness south, which wilderness was full of the Lamanites.

Now the Nephites greatly feared that the Zoramites would enter into a correspondence with the Lamanites, and that it would be the means of great loss on the part of the Nephites.

And now, as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just—yea, it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them—therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

Therefore he took Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner; and Himni he did leave in the church in Zarahemla; but the former three he took with him, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, who were at Melek; and he also took two of his sons.

Now the eldest of his sons he took not with him, and his name was Helaman; but the names of those whom he took with him were Shiblōn and Corianton; and these are the names of those who went with him among the Zoramites, to preach unto them the word.

Now the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

- 9 Engari kua taka iho rātou i roto i ngā hē nui, nā te mea kīhai i pai ki a rātou te pupuri i ngā whakahaunga a te Atua, me ana ture, e ai ki te ture a Mohi.
- 10 Kīhai rānei rātou i pai kia ū ki ngā meatanga o te hāhi, kia ū tonu i runga i te inoi me te karakia ki te Atua i ia rā, i ia rā, kia kore ai rātou e tomo atu ai ki roto i te whakawainga.
- 11 Āe rā, hei whakarāpopoto, he maha rawa atu ngā wā i whakapeau ai rātou i ngā huarahi o te Ariki; nō reira, mō tēnei take, i haere atu ai a Arami rātou ko ana teina ki roto i te whenua ki te kauhau atu i te kupu ki a rātou.
- 12 Nā, i tā rātou taenga atu ki te whenua, nana, ka ohore rawa atu rātou i tā rātou kitenga atu kua hanga ngā Hōrama i ngā whare karakia, ā, i huihui tahi rātou i a rātou anō i te rā kotahi i te wiki, i karangatia ai e rātou taua rā ko te rā o te Ariki; ā, kāore anō a Arami rātou ko ana teina kia kite atu i te āhuatanga o tā rātou koropiko;
- 13 Nā, kua hangaia e rātou tētahi wāhi i te pokapū o tō rātou whare karakia, he tūrangawaewae, e teitei ake ana i runga i te māhunga; ā, e āhei ana i te tangata kotahi anake te wāhi o runga rawa.
- 14 Nō reira, me haere atu te tangata e hiahia ana ki te koropiko kia tū ai i te wāhi i runga rawa, kātahi ka toro whakaterangi atu i ōna ringaringa, me te karanga ake i runga i te reo kaha, e mea ana:
- 15 Tapu, tapu te Atua; e whakapono ana mātou ko koe te Atua, ā, e whakapono ana mātou he tapu koe, ā, he wairua koe i mua, he wairua koe ināianei, ā, ka wairua tonu koe mō āke tonu atu.
- 16 E te Atua Tapu, e whakapono ana mātou nāu mātou i whakawehe i ō mātou teina; ā, kāore mātou i te whakapono ki ngā whakarereanga iho a ō mātou teina, kua tukuna iho ki a rātou e ngā whakaaro tamariki a ō rātou tūpuna matua; engari e whakapono ana mātou nāu mātou i kōwhiriwhiri hei tamariki tapu māu; ā, nāu anō hoki mātou i whakamōhio mai kāore e puta mai te Karaiti.

But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

Yea, in fine, they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances; therefore, for this cause, Alma and his brethren went into the land to preach the word unto them.

Now, when they had come into the land, behold, to their astonishment they found that the Zoramites had built synagogues, and that they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord; and they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

For they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head; and the top thereof would only admit one person.

Therefore, whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children; and also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

17 Engari he rite tonu koe inānahi, ināianeī, āke tonu atu; ā, nāu mātou i kōwhiriwhiri kia whakaoranga mātou, i ngā tāngata e karapotia ana mātou e kōwhiriwhiria nei kia makaia iho ki te riri o te aorēwera; mō tēnei tapunga, E te Atua, e whakawhetai nei mātou ki a koe; ā, e whakawhetai ana anō mātou mō mātou i kōwhiriwhiri kia kore ai mātou e ārahina atu ai ki ngā whakarereanga iho kuare a ō mātou teina, e herea iho nei rātou ki tētahi whakapono ki a te Karaiti, nā konā ārahina atu ō rātou ngākau kia ātiutiu tawhiti atu i a koe, e tō mātou Atua.

18 Hei āpiti anō, e whakawhetai atu ana mātou ki a koe, E te Atua, nā te mea he iwi kōwhiria mātou, ā, he iwi tapu mātou. Āmine.

19 Nā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tā Arami rātou ko ana teina rongonga atu i ēnei inoi, ka tino ohore rawa atu rātou nōhea e taea te mehua.

20 Nana rā, i haere ake ia tangata, ia tangata, ā, ka tukua ēnei inoi pū anō.

21 Nā, kua karangatia ake taua wāhi e rātou ko te Ramaumutomo, koia, ko tōna whakamāoritanga, ko te tūranga tapu.

22 Nā, atu i tēnei tūranga i tukua ake, ia tangata, ia tangata, taua inoi pū anō ki te Atua, e whakawhetai ana ki tō rātou Atua mō rātou i kōwhiria nei e ia, me te mea anō nāna rātou i ārahi atu i ngā whakarereanga iho a ō rātou tūpuna matua, me te aha, kihai ō rātou ngākau i whānakotia atu ai kia whakapono ai ki ngā mea e puta mai ai, kāore nei rātou i mōhio noa ki aua mea.

23 Nā, nō muri iho i tā te iwi tuku whakawhetai ake i runga i tēnei ritenga, ka hokihoki rātou ki ō rātou kāinga, kāore e kōrero ana anō mō tō rātou Atua tae noa ki te wā i huihui tahi anō ai rātou kia tū ai i runga i te tūranga tapu, ki te tuku whakawhetai ake i runga i taua ritenga.

24 Nā, i te kitenga o Arami i tēnei ka tangi tōna ngākau; nā te mea i kite ia ko rātou nei tētahi iwi kino, ā, he iwi parori kē; āe rā, i kite ia kua tau ō rātou ngākau ki runga i te kōura, me te hiriwā, i runga i ngā tūmomo rawa papai katoa.

25 Āe rā, i kite anō hoki ia i ō rātou ngākau kua neke ake i runga i te whakamanamana, i runga i tō rātou whakapehapa.

But thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee; and we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

And again we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people. Amen.

Now it came to pass that after Alma and his brethren and his sons had heard these prayers, they were astonished beyond all measure.

For behold, every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God, thanking their God that they were chosen of him, and that he did not lead them away after the tradition of their brethren, and that their hearts were not stolen away to believe in things to come, which they knew nothing about.

Now, after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

Now when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people; yea, he saw that their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

Yea, and he also saw that their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.



- 26 Ā, ka hāpainga ake tōna reo ki te rangi, ā, ka karanga, e mea ana: Auē, me pēhea te roa, E te Ariki, māu e tuku kia noho iho nei āu pononga i roto i te kikokiko, kia tirohia ai te whakarihariha nui i waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata?
- 27 Nana, E te Atua, kei te karanga rātou ki a koe, heoi, kua horomia ake ō rātou ngākau e te whakapehapeha. Nana, E te Atua, e karanga ake ana ō rātou māngai ki a koe, i a rātou e whakahihi ana, tae atu ana ki te whakakake nui, i runga i ngā mea tekateka o te ao.
- 28 Nana, E tōku Atua, ko ō rātou kākahu utu nui, me ō rātou rīngi, me ō rātou poroporo, me ō rātou whakapaipai kōura, me ō rātou mea pai whakaharahara katoa; ā nana, kua tau iho ō rātou ngākau ki runga i ērā mea, heoi, kei te karanga ake rātou ki a koe me te kī ake—E whakawhetai ana mātou ki a koe, E te Atua, nā te mea he iwi kōwhiria mātou ki a koe, i ētahi atu e mate ana.
- 29 Āe rā, e kī ana anō hoki rātou nāu rātou i whakamōhio kāore e puta te Karaiti.
- 30 E te Ariki te Atua, ka pēhea te roa e tukua ai e koe ngā kino me ngā whakapono kore i waenganui i tēnei iwi? E te Ariki, māu te kaha e homai ai ki ahau, kia taea ai e au te waha i runga i ōku ngoikoretanga. Nā te mea e ngoikore ana ahau, ā, e mamae ana tōku wairua i te whakarihariha pēnei i waenganui i tēnei iwi.
- 31 E te Ariki, kei te pōuri rawa atu tōku ngākau; māu tōku ngākau e whakaāio i roto i te Karaiti. E te Ariki, māu e tuku ki ahau kia whai kaha ai ahau, kia whakamanawanui au i ēnei whakamamaetanga e tau mai ai ki runga i ahau, nā te hara o tēnei iwi.
- 32 E te Ariki, māu tōku wairua e whakaāio, kia homai ai he waimārietanga, ā, ki ōku hoamahi kei te taha i ahau—āe rā, ko Amona, me Arona, me Omonere, me Amureke hoki, me Tēroma, me aku tama tokorua anō hoki—āe rā, māu pū anō ēnei e whakaāio, e te Ariki. Āe rā, māu ō rātou wairua e whakaāio i roto i te Karaiti.
- 33 Māu e tuku ki a rātou kia whai kaha ai rātou, kia waha ai rātou i ō rātou whakamamaetanga e tau ai ki runga i a rātou nā ngā hara o tēnei iwi.

And he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

Behold, O God, they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride. Behold, O God, they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

Behold, O my God, their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say—We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

Yea, and they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

O Lord God, how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people? O Lord, wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

O Lord, my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ. O Lord, wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

O Lord, wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me—yea, Ammon, and Aaron, and Omner, and also Amulek and Zeezrom, and also my two sons—yea, even all these wilt thou comfort, O Lord. Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

34 E te Ariki, māu e tuku ki a mātou kia waimārie mātou i te kukumetanga mai i a rātou ki a koe i roto i te Karaiti.

35 Nana, E te Ariki, he utu nui ō rātou wairua, ā, he teina te tokomaha o rātou ki a mātou; nō reira, homai ki a mātou, E te Ariki, te kaha me te mātauranga kia taea ai e mātou ēnei, ā mātou teina, te kukume mai anō ki a koe.

36 Nā, i pahawa ake, nā, i te kōrerotanga a Arami i ēnei kupu, nā, ka pākia iho ōna ringaringa ki runga i a rātou katoa i tana taha. Ā nana, i a ia e pākia iho ana ōna ringaringa ki runga i a rātou, kua kī rātou i te Wairua Tapu.

37 Ā, whai muri iho i tēnā ka wehe atu rātou tētahi i tētahi, kāore ō rātou whakaaro ki a rātou anō he aha hei kai, he aha rānei hei inu, he aha rānei hei kākahu.

38 Ā, i tuku mea te Ariki ki a rātou kia kore ai rātou e hiakai ai, e hiainu ai rānei; āe rā, nāna te kaha i homai ai ki a rātou, kia kore ai rātou e rongonoa i ētahi whakamamaetanga, hāunga ia kua horomia ake i roto i te haringa o te Karaiti. Nā, he mea rite ki te inoi a Arami; ā, tēnei anō nā tana inoi i runga i te whakapono.

O Lord, wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

Behold, O Lord, their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

Now it came to pass that when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him. And behold, as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

And after that they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

And the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst; yea, and he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ. Now this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

## Arami 32

- 1 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i haere atu rātou, ā, ka tīmata ki te kauhau atu i te kupu a te Atua ki te iwi, e tomo atu ana i ō rātou whare karakia, me ō rātou kāinga; āe rā, i kauhau pū anō rātou i te kupu i ō rātou tiriti.
- 2 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, nō muri iho i tā rātou mahi nui i waenganui i te iwi, ka tīmata tā rātou waimārietanga i waenganui i te hunga rawakore; nana rā, i makaia atu rātou i ō rātou whare karakia nā te taratara o ō rātou kākahu—
- 3 Nō reira kāore i whakaaehia rātou kia tomo atu ai ki roto i ō rātou whare karakia ki te koropiko ki te Atua, kua whakaarohia rātou he mea paruparu; nō reira he rawakore rātou; āe rā, i whakaarohia rātou e ō rātou huānga he mea paranga; nō reira i rawakore rātou ki te taha ki ngā mea o te ao; ā, i rawakore anō rātou i te ngākau.
- 4 Nā, i a Arami e whakaako ana, ā, e kōrero ana ki te iwi i runga i te puke Onaira, ka haere atu tētahi whakaminenga nunui ki a ia, ko rātou te hunga kua kōrerotia ake nei e tāua, ko rātou nei te hunga rawakore i te ngākau, nā tō rātou rawakoretanga ki te taha ki ngā mea o te ao.
- 5 Ā, i haere mai rātou ki a Arami; ā, ka kī ake te mea tōmua rawa o rātou ki a ia: Nana, me aha ēnei ōku huānga, nā te mea kua whakahāweatia rātou e ngā tangata katoa nā tō rātou rawakoretanga, āe rā, i tino pērāhia e ō mātou tohunga; nā te mea kua makaia atu mātou e rātou i ō mātou whare karakia nā mātou anō i whakapau kaha ki te hanga ki ō mātou ake ringaringa; ā, kua makaia atu mātou e rātou nā tō mātou tino rawakoretanga; ā, kāore ō mātou wāhi hei koropiko i tō mātou Atua; ā nana, me aha mātou?
- 6 Ināianeī ā, i te rongonga o Arami i tēnei, ka tahuri atu ia, ko tōna kanohi e aro pū ana ki a ia, ā, ka tirohia atu i runga i te hari nui; nā te mea i kitea e ia kua tino whakaitia rātou e ō rātou whakamamaetanga, ā, i te whakarite rātou kia rongoa i te kupu.
- 7 Nō reira kāore he kupu anō i kōrerotia ai e ia ki ērā atu o te whakaminenga; engari ka torona atu tōna ringa, ā, ka karanga atu ia ki te hunga i kitea i ia, ko rātou nei e tino rīpenetātia ana, ā, ka kī atu ki a rātou:

## Alma 32

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people, entering into their synagogues, and into their houses; yea, and even they did preach the word in their streets.

And it came to pass that after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people; for behold, they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel—

Therefore they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness; therefore they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross; therefore they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

Now, as Alma was teaching and speaking unto the people upon the hill Onidah, there came a great multitude unto him, who were those of whom we have been speaking, of whom were poor in heart, because of their poverty as to the things of the world.

And they came unto Alma; and the one who was the foremost among them said unto him: Behold, what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all men because of their poverty, yea, and more especially by our priests; for they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands; and they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty; and we have no place to worship our God; and behold, what shall we do?

And now when Alma heard this, he turned him about, his face immediately towards him, and he beheld with great joy; for he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them, and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

Therefore he did say no more to the other multitude; but he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

- 8 Kei te kite nei au kei te pāpaku iho o koutou ngākau; ā, ki te pērā, kua manaakitia koutou.
- 9 Nana, kua mea mai tō teina, Me aha mātou?—nā te mea kua makaia atu mātou i o mātou whare karakia, nā konā tē taea e mātou te koropiko atu ki te Atua.
- 10 Nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, e whakaaro ana koutou tē taea e koutou te koropiko atu ki te Atua hāunga i roto anake i o koutou whare karakia?
- 11 Ā, waihoki, ka ui atu au, e whakaaro ana koutou me kua e nui ake tō koutou koropiko atu ki te Atua i te rā kotahi noa i te wiki?
- 12 Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, he pai kua makaia atu koutou i o koutou whare karakia, kia whakaiti ai koutou, ā, kia ako anō koutou i te mātauranga; nā te mea e tika ana kia ako koutou i te mātauranga; nā te mea kua makaia atu koutou, nā, kua whakahāweatia koutou e o koutou huānga nā tō koutou tino rawakoretanga, nā kua kukume iho koutou ki tētahi pāpakutanga o te ngākau; nā te mea e tika ana kia kukume iho koutou kia whakaiti.
- 13 Ināianei ā, nā te mea kua meinga koutou kia whakaiti kua manaakitia koutou; nā te mea ko te tangata i ētahi wā, mehemea ka meinga ia kia whakaiti ai, e whaiwhai atu i te rīpenetātanga; ā, kāore e kore, ka kite te tangata e rīpenetā ana i te aroha; ā, ko te tangata e kite nei i te aroha me te ū tonu atu ki te mutunga ko ia anō e whakaorangia ai.
- 14 Ināianei ā, he pērā i taku kupu ki a koutou, nā te mea kua meinga koutou kia whakaiti koutou kua manaakitia koutou, kāore koutou e whakaaro nei kua manaakitia nuitia ake te hunga e tino whakaiti pono nei i a rātou nā te kupu?
- 15 Āe rā, ko te tangata e tino whakaiti pono nei i a ia anō me te rīpenetā i oña hara, me te ū tonu ki te mutunga, ka manaakitia taua tangata anō—āe rā, ka nui ake tō rātou manaakitanga i te hunga kua meinga kia whakaiti iho nā tō rātou rawakoretanga.
- 16 Nō reira, kua manaakitia te hunga e whakaiti anō i a rātou anō kāore i meinga rātou kia whakaiti; ko tēnei rānei, hei ngā kupu kē, kua manaakitia te tangata e whakapono nei i te kupu a te Atua, ā, ka rumakina i runga i te taikaha kore o tōna ngākau, āe rā, kihai i kūmea kia mōhio ai ki te kupu, kihai rānei i meinga kia mōhio, i mua i tōna whakaponohanga.

I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

Behold thy brother hath said, What shall we do?—for we are cast out of our synagogues, that we cannot worship our God.

Behold I say unto you, do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

And moreover, I would ask, do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

I say unto you, it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom; for it is necessary that ye should learn wisdom; for it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart; for ye are necessarily brought to be humble.

And now, because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance; and now surely, whosoever repenteth shall find mercy; and he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

And now, as I said unto you, that because ye were compelled to be humble ye were blessed, do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly humble themselves because of the word?

Yea, he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed—yea, much more blessed than they who are compelled to be humble because of their exceeding poverty.

Therefore, blessed are they who humble themselves without being compelled to be humble; or rather, in other words, blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart, yea, without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

- 17 Āe rā, he tokomaha ngā mea e kī ana: Ki te whakakitea mai tētahi tohu mai i te rangi, kātahi mātou ka mōhio tūturu nei; kātahi mātou ka whakapono.
- 18 Nā, ka ui au, ko te whakapono tēnei? Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo; nā te mea mēnā kei te mōhio tētahi tangata ki tētahi mea kāore ōna take ki te whakapono, nā te mea e mōhio ana ia ki taua mea.
- 19 Ināianeī ā, ka pēhea te nui o te kanga kei runga i te tangata e mōhio nei ki te hiahia o te Atua engari kāore e mahia e ia, i te tangata e whakapono noa ana, he take noa rānei tāna kia whakapono ai, kātahi ka taka ki roto i te hē?
- 20 Nā, mā koutou tēnei mea e whakawā. Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ka pērā tētahi ringa i te āhua i tētahi atu; ā, ka pērā ki ia tangata, ia tangata e rite ana ki tana mahi.
- 21 Ināianeī ā, he pērā i taku kōrero e pā ana ki te whakapono—ehara te whakapono i te mātauranga tino tika katoa mō ngā mea; nō reira mehemea he whakapono tōu kei te tūmanako koutou ki ngā mea pono kāore e kitea ana.
- 22 Ināianeī ā, nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ā, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara koutou, e aroha ana te Atua ki te hunga katoa e whakapono nei ki tōna ingoa; nō reira e hiahia ana ia, i te tuatahi, kia whakapono ai koutou, āe rā, i runga pū anō i tana kupu.
- 23 Ināianeī ā, ka wāwāhia tana kupu e ia he mea nā ngā anahera ki te tangata, āe rā, ehara i te mea ko te tāne anake engari ko te wahine anō hoki. Nā, ehara tēnei i te katoa; he maha ngā wā e tuku ai i ngā kupu ki ngā tamariki nohinohi, he mea whakapōauau i te hunga whai mōhioranga me te hunga matatau.
- 24 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina aroha, nā te mea kua tonu koutou i ahau he aha tā koutou e mahi ai nā te mea kua whakamamaetia koutou, ā, kua makaia atu koutou—nā, kāore au i te hiahia kia whakaaro ake koutou, nā, kei te hiahia au ki te whakawā i a koutou e rite ana ki ērā e pono ana anake—

Yea, there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

Now I ask, is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

And now, how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

Now of this thing ye must judge. Behold, I say unto you, that it is on the one hand even as it is on the other; and it shall be unto every man according to his work.

And now as I said concerning faith—faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

And now, behold, I say unto you, and I would that ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name; therefore he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

And now, he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also. Now this is not all; little children do have words given unto them many times, which confound the wise and the learned.

And now, my beloved brethren, as ye have desired to know of me what ye shall do because ye are afflicted and cast out—now I do not desire that ye should suppose that I mean to judge you only according to that which is true—

25 Nā te mea kāore au i te kī kua meinga koutou katoa kia whakaiti ai i a koutou anō; nā te mea e whakapono tūturu ana ahau kei waenganui i a koutou ētahi o te hunga kua whakaiti nei i a rātou anō, ahakoa pēhea te āhua o ngā mea e karapoti nei i a rātou.

26 Nā, e pērā ana i tāku i kī ai e pā ana ki te whakapono—ehara tēnā i te mātauranga tino tika katoa—waihoki he pērā anō i aku kupu. Kāore e taea ana e koutou te tino mōhio i tō ēnā tika i te tīmatanga, tae atu ana ki te mea tino tika katoa, e pērā ana ki te mea, nā, ehara te whakapono i te mātauranga tino tika katoa.

27 Engari nana, mēnā ka oho ake me te whakaoho anō i ō koutou hinengaro, ki tētahi whakamātauranga pū anō i aku kupu, me te whakamahi i tētahi wāhi iti o te whakapono, āe rā, ahakoa mēnā tē taea e koutou i kō atu i te hiahia ki te whakapono, tukuna tēnei hiahia kia mahi ai i roto i a koutou, tae atu ana ki te wā e taea pū anō e koutou te whakapono i runga i tētahi ritenga kia tuku koutou i tētahi takotoranga mō tētahi wāhi o aku kupu.

28 Nā, ka whakataurite tātou i te kupu ki tētahi kākano. Nā, ki te tuku takotoranga koutou, kia whakatōngia iho tētahi kākano i roto i tō ngākau, nana, mēnā he kākano pono, he kākano pai rānei, ki te kore koutou e makaia atu tēnā e tō koutou whakapono kore, kia peia atu ai e koutou te Wairua o te Ariki, nana, ka tīmata tēnā ki te pupuhi i roto i ō koutou uma; ā, ina rongō koutou i ēnei pupuhitanga, ka tīmata tā koutou kī ake i roto i a koutou anō—E tika pū ana he kākano pai tēnei, he pai rānei te kupu, nā te mea kua tīmata tana whakanui i tōku wairua; āe rā, kua tīmata tana whakanui ake i tōku māramatanga, āe rā, kua rekareka haere tēnā ki ahau.

29 Nana ināiane, kāore rānei tēnei e whakanui ake i tō koutou whakapono? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Āe rā; hei aha koa kāore anō kia tupu ake ki tētahi mātauranga tika katoa.

For I do not mean that ye all of you have been compelled to humble yourselves; for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

Now, as I said concerning faith—that it was not a perfect knowledge—even so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

But behold, if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

Now, we will compare the word unto a seed. Now, if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts; and when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves—It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul; yea, it beginneth to enlighten my understanding, yea, it beginneth to be delicious to me.

Now behold, would not this increase your faith? I say unto you, Yea; nevertheless it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

30 Engari nana, i te kākano e pupuhi ana, e pihi ana, e tīmata ana ki te tupu, kātahi ka tika pū tā koutou ki ake, nā, he pai te kākano; nana rā kua tīmata tana pupuhi, tana pihi, me tana tupu. Ināianeī ā, nana, kāore rānei tēnei e whakakaha ake i tō koutou whakapono? Āe rā, ka whakakaha ake tēnei i tō koutou whakapono: nā te mea ka kī ake koutou, nā, he pai te kākano; nana rā e pihi ana, ā, e tīmata ana tana tupu.

31 Ināianeī ā, nana, kua tino mōhio koutou he kākano pai tēnei? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Āe rā; nā te mea ka hua mai anō ia kākano kia rite ki tōna ake āhua anō.

32 Nō reira, he pai tētahi kākano mēnā ka tupu ake, engari ki te kore tēnā e tupu, nana kāore tēnā i te pai, nō reira kua makaia atu.

33 Ināianeī ā, nana, nā te mea kua whakamātauria e koutou tēnei whakamātautau, ā, kua whakatōngia te kākano, ā, e pupuhi ana, ā, e pihi ake ana, ā, kua tīmata tana tupu, me matua mōhio koutou, nā, he pai te kākano.

34 Ināianeī ā, nana, he tino tika katoa tō mātauranga? Āe rā, he tika katoa tō koutou mātauranga i runga i taua mea, ā, kua moe iho tō whakapono; ā, ko tēnei nā te mea kua mōhio koutou, nā, kua pupuhi ō koutou wairua i te kupu, ā, e mōhio ana anō koutou, nā, kua pihi ake ia, nā konā tīmata te whakanui ake i tō māramatanga, ā, ka whakawhānuitia haeretia tō hinengaro.

35 Kāti rā, ehara rānei tēnei i te pono? Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Āe rā, nā te mea he mārama ia; he pai ngā mea mārama katoa, nā te mea kua mārakerake tana kite atu, nō reira me matua mōhio koutou he pai ia; ināianeī ā nana, he tika katoa tō koutou mātauranga whai muri iho i tō koutou rongō i tēnei māramatanga?

36 Nana ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo; me kaua rānei koutou e whakataha atu i tō koutou whakapono, nā te mea kua whakamahia noatia e koutou tō koutou whakapono ki te whakatō noa i te kākano kia whakamātauria e koutou te whakamātautauranga e mōhio ai mehemea he pai te kākano.

But behold, as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now, behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

And now, behold, are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

Therefore, if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

And now, behold, because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

And now, behold, is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because you know, for ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, and ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

O then, is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good; and now behold, after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

37     Ā nana, i te rākau e tīmata ana ki te tupu, ka kī ake koutou: Tukua tātou kia āta whāngai ai i tēnei ki te atawhai nui, kia hōhonu ai ōna aka i te whenua, kia tupu ake ia, me te whakaputa mai i ngā hua ki a tātou. Ināianeī ā nana, ki te āta whāngaia e koutou ki te atawhai nui ka hōhonu ōna aka i te whenua, kātahi ka tupu ake, kātahi ka whakaputa mai i ngā hua.

38     Engari ki te whakarere koutou i te rākau, ā, ki te kore e paku whakaaro koutou ki tana whāngaitanga, nana kāore e hōhonu ōna aka i te whenua; ā, ina whiti mai te wera o te rā me te ngau kino i a ia, nā te mea kāore ōna aka hōhonu ka memenge atu, ā, ka hutia ake ia, ā, ka makaia atu e koutou.

39     Nā, ehara tēnei i te mea kāore he painga ō te kākano, ehara rānei i te mea kāore e hiahiaitia te hua o reira; engari nā te tītōheatanga o tō koutou whenua, ā, kua kore koutou e whāngai i te rākau, nō reira tē taea e koutou te whiwhi i te hua o reira.

40     Ā pēnei, ki te kore koutou e whāngai ai i te kupu, e titiro whakamua atu ana ki te karu o te whakapono ki tō reira hua, e korekore rawa koutou e whawhaki i te hua o te rākau o te ora.

41     Engari ki te whāngai koutou i te kupu, āe rā, ki te whāngai i te rākau i a ia e tīmata ana ki te tupu, mā tō koutou whakapono i runga i te tākare nui, me te manawanui, me te titiro whakamua atu ki tō reira hua, ka hōhonu ōna aka i te whenua; ā nana, ka ai anō hei rākau e tupu ake ana ki te oranga tonutanga.

42     Ā, nā tō koutou tākare tonu me tō koutou whakapono me tō koutou manawanui ki te whāngai i te kupu, kia hōhonu ai ōna aka i roto i a koutou, nana, nāwai, nāwai ka whawhaki ano i tō reira hua, koia he mea tino utu nui, he nui ake tōna reka i tō ngā mea reka katoa, ā, he nui ake tōna mā i tō ngā mea mā katoa, āe rā, he nui ake tōna pokekore i tō ngā mea pokekore katoa; ā, ka hākari koutou i runga i ēnei hua kia mākona anō koutou, kia kore ai koutou e hiakai, kia kore ai koutou e hiainu rānei.

43     Kātahi, e aku teina, ka kokoti koutou i te utu mō tō koutou whakapono, me tō koutou tākare tonu, me tō koutou manawanui, me tō koutou manawaroa, e tatari ana kia whakaputa ai te rākau i ngā hua ki a koutou.

And behold, as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us. And now behold, if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and bring forth fruit.

But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

Now, this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable; but it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

And thus, if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

But if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root; and behold it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.



## Arami 33

- 1 Nā, i muri iho i te kōrerotanga a Arami i ēnei kupu, ka tonoa ia e rātou e huahia ana kia mōhio ai mehemea me whakapono rātou i te te Atua kotahi, kia whiwhi ai rātou i tēnei hua kua kōrerotia nei e ia, me pēhea rānei rātou e whakatō iho ai i te kākano, i te kupu rānei kua kōrerotia nei e ia, kua kōrerotia nei e ia me whakatō e rātou ki roto i ō rātou ngākau; me pēhea rānei rātou e tīmata ai ki te whakamahi i tō rātou whakapono.
- 2 Ā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a rātou: Nana, kua kī mai koutou tē taea e koutou te koropiko atu i tō koutou Atua nā te mea kua makaia atu koutou i ō koutou whare karakia. Engari nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, mehemea e whakaaro ana koutou tē taea e koutou te koropiko atu ki te Atua, kei te hē rawa koutou, ā, me whakataki koutou i ngā karaipiture; mehemea e whakaaro ana koutou nā ēnā koutou i ako, kāore koutou e mārāma ana ki ēnā mea.
- 3 E maumahara ana rānei koutou i tā koutou pānuitanga i tā Henohi, te poropiti onamata, i kī ai e pā ana ki te inoi me te koropiko?
- 4 Nā te mea i kī ai ia: He nui tō aroha, E te Atua, nā te mea kua rongu koe i taku inoi, i ahau noa i te koraha; āe rā, i aroha nui koe i taku inoitanga e pā ana ki te hunga ko rātou nei aku hoariri, ā, nāu rātou i tahuri mai ki ahau.
- 5 Āe rā, E te Atua, i aroha nui mai koe ki ahau i taku inoitanga atu ki a koe i taku pārae; i taku karangatanga ake ki a koe i taku inoi, ā, i rongu mai koe i ahau.
- 6 Hei āpiti anō, E te Atua, i taku tahuritanga atu ki tōku kāinga i rongu koe i ahau i taku inoi.
- 7 Ā, i taku tahuritanga atu ki taku rūma, E te Ariki, me taku inoitanga atu ki a koe, i rongu koe i ahau.
- 8 Āe rā, he nui tō aroha ki āu tamariki i a rātou e karanga ake ana ki a koe, kia rangona ai e koe kaua e te tangata, ā, ka rongu koe i a rātou.
- 9 Āe rā, E te Atua, kua aroha nui koe ki ahau, ā, i rangona aku karanga i waenganui i ngā whakaminenga.

## Alma 33

Now after Alma had spoken these words, they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

And Alma said unto them: Behold, ye have said that ye could not worship your God because ye are cast out of your synagogues. But behold, I say unto you, if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

For he said: Thou art merciful, O God, for thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness; yea, thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies, and thou didst turn them to me.

Yea, O God, and thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

And again, O God, when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

And when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

Yea, thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

Yea, O God, thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

- 10 Āe rā, i rongō anō hoki koe i ahau e makaia atu ana, ā, i ahau e whakahāweatia ana e ōku hoariri; āe rā, i rongō koe i aku karanga, ā, i te riri ki aku hoariri, ā, i toro atu koe ki a rātou i runga i tō riri, i runga i te whakangaromanga wawetanga.
- 11 Ā, i rongō koe i ahau nā ōku whakamamaetanga me tōku ngākau pono; ā, nā tāu Tama koe i aroha nui mai ki ahau, nō reira ka karanga ake au ki a koe i roto i ōku whakamamaetanga katoa, nā te mea kei roto i a koe tōku haringa; nā te mea kua whakatahuritia atu ōu whakawākanga i ahau, nā tāu Tama.
- 12 Ināianeī ā, ka kī atu a Arami ki a rātou: E whakapono ana rānei koutou i aua karaipiture kua tuhituhia e te hunga onamata?
- 13 Nana, ki te pērā koutou, me matua whakapono koutou ki tā Henohi i kī ai; nā te mea, nana i kī ai ia: Kua whakatahurita atu e koe ōu whakawākanga nā tāu Tama.
- 14 Nana ināianeī, e aku teina, kei te hiahia au ki te pātai atu ki a koutou mehemea kua pānui koutou i ngā karaipiture? Mehemea āe, me pēhea koutou e whakapono kore ki te Tama a te Atua?
- 15 Nā te mea kāore i tuhituhia ko Henohi anake te mea i kōrero ai mō ēnei mea, engari i kōrero anō a Henoka mō ēnei mea—
- 16 Nana rā, i kī ai ia: Kei te riri koe, E te Atua, ki tēnei iwi, nā te mea kāore i pai ki a rātou kia mārāma ki ōu whakaarohatanga kua whakataua iho ki runga i a rātou nā tāu Tama.
- 17 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, e kite ana koutou kua whakaatuhia mai tētahi atu poropiti onamata mō te Tama a te Atua, ā, nā te mea kīhai i pai ki te iwi kia mārāma ai i ana kupu ka ākina ia e rātou ki te kōhatu.
- 18 Engari nana, ehara tēnei i te katoa; ehara ēnei anake i ngā mea kua kōrerotia nei e pā ana ki te Tama a te Atua.
- 19 Nana, i kōrerotia ia e Mohi; āe rā, ā nana, i mairangatia ake tētahi momo i te koraha, nā, ka ora te tangata e titiro atu ai ki reira. Ā, he tokomaha ngā mea i titiro atu ai, ā, i ora ai.

Yea, and thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have been despised by mine enemies; yea, thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies, and thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

And thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity; and it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto me, therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions, for in thee is my joy; for thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy Son.

And now Alma said unto them: Do ye believe those scriptures which have been written by them of old?

Behold, if ye do, ye must believe what Zenos said; for, behold he said: Thou hast turned away thy judgments because of thy Son.

Now behold, my brethren, I would ask if ye have read the scriptures? If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

For it is not written that Zenos alone spake of these things, but Zenock also spake of these things—

For behold, he said: Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them because of thy Son.

And now, my brethren, ye see that a second prophet of old has testified of the Son of God, and because the people would not understand his words they stoned him to death.

But behold, this is not all; these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the Son of God.

Behold, he was spoken of by Moses; yea, and behold a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

20 Engari he tokoiti noa ngā mea i mōhio ai ki te tikanga o aua mea, ā, nā te pakeketanga o ō rātou ngākau i pēnei ai. Engari he tokomaha ngā mea kīhai i pai ki a rātou te titiro atu nā tō rātou tino pakeketanga, nō reira ka mate rātou. Nā, kāore rātou i whakapono mā reira mahu ai rātou koinā te take kīhai i pai ki a rātou te titiro atu.

21 E aku teina, mehemea kua taea koutou te mahu mā te karawhiu noa atu i ōu karu e mahu ai koutou, kua kore koutou e titiro wawe atu, kua pai kē atu rānei kia whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau i runga i te whakapono kore, ā, kia māngere, nā konā kāore koutou mō te karawhiu noa atu i ōu koutou karu, kia mate koutou?

22 Ki te pērā, ka tau iho te auē ki runga i a koutou; engari ki te kore e pērā, tēnā karawhiua atu ōu karu, ā, kia tīmata ki te whakapono i te Tama a te Atua, nā, ka haere mai ia ki te hoko i tana iwi, ā, ka mamae ia, ā, ka mate ia hei whakamārie i ō rātou hara; ā, ka ara ake anō ia i te mate, mā konā e whakaputa ai te aranga, kia tū ai ngā tāngata katoa i mua i tōna aroaro, kia whakawākia ai hei te rā whakamutunga, e ai ki ā rātou mahinga.

23 Ināianei ā, e aku teina, e hiahia ana ahau kia whakatōngia iho tēnei kupu i ō koutou ngākau, ā, i a ia e tīmata ana tōna pupuhi, nā, whāngaia e te whakapono. Ā nana, ka meinga ia hei rākau, e tupu ake ana i roto i a koutou ki te oranga tonutanga. Kō reira te Atua tuku ai ki a koutou kia māmā ō koutou pīkaunga, mā roto i te hari o tana Tama. Ā, koinei katoa e taea ana e koutou te mahi ki te hiahia koutou. Āmine.

But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts. But there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished. Now the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

O my brethren, if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

If so, wo shall come upon you; but if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God, that he will come to redeem his people, and that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins; and that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

And now, my brethren, I desire that ye shall plant this word in your hearts, and as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith. And behold, it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life. And then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son. And even all this can ye do if ye will. Amen.

## Arami 34

- 1 Ināianeī ā, i pahawa ake, nā, i muri iho i tā Arami kōrerotanga atu i ēnei kupu ki a rātou ka noho iho ia i runga i te papa, kātahi ka tū ake a Amureke, ā, ka tīmata tana whakaako i a rātou, e mea ana:
- 2 E aku teina, ki aku whakaaro e kore koutou e āhei kia kuare ki ēnei mea kua kōrerotia ake nei e pā ana ki te haerenga mai a te Karaiti, kua whakaakona e mātou koia te Tama a te Atua; āe rā, e mōhio ana ahau kua kaha whakaakona ēnei mea ki a koutou i mua i tā koutou wehenga atu i waenganui i a mātou.
- 3 Ā, nā te mea kua hiahia koutou i tōku tuakana aroha kia whakamōhiohia atu e ia ki a koutou me aha rā koutou, nā ō koutou whakamamaetanga; ā, kua āhua kōrero nei ia ki a koutou kia whakaritea ai ō koutou hinengaro; āe rā, nāna koutou i whakahau kia whakapono, ā, kia manawanui—
- 4 Āe rā, kia nui rā anō tō koutou whakapono hei whakatō iho i te kupu ki roto i ō koutou ngākau, kia whakamātauria e koutou tōna painga.
- 5 Ā, kua kite mātou ko te pātai nui kei roto i ō koutou hinengaro, arā, mehemea kei roto te kupu i te Tama a te Atua, mehemea rānei kāore e puta mai te Karaiti.
- 6 Ā, i kite anō koutou kua whakaatu atu taku tuakana ki a koutou, i ngā wā maha, kei roto te kupu i te Karaiti ki te whakaoranga.
- 7 Kua karangatia ake taku tuakana ngā kupu a Henohi, nā, ka puta mai te hokonga mā roto i te Tama a te Atua, ā, kua karangatia anōtia ngā kupu a Henoka; ā, kua tono atu ki a Mohi, kia whakaatu ai ia kei te pono ēnei mea.
- 8 Ināianeī ā, nana, ka whakaatu au ki a koutou mōku ake anō kei te pono ēnei mea. Nana, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, nā, e mōhio ana ahau ka puta mai te Karaiti ki waenganui i ngā tamariki a te tangata, kia tango ki runga ki a ia ngā hē o tana iwi, ā, ka whakamārie ia i ngā hara o te ao; nā te mea kua kōrerotia e te Ariki te Atua.

## Alma 34

And now it came to pass that after Alma had spoken these words unto them he sat down upon the ground, and Amulek arose and began to teach them, saying:

My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God; yea, I know that these things were taught unto you bountifully before your dissension from among us.

And as ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions; and he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds; yea, and he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience—

Yea, even that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

And we have beheld that the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

And ye also beheld that my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God, and also upon the words of Zenock; and also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

And now, behold, I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true. Behold, I say unto you, that I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people, and that he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

9 Nā te mea e tika pū ana anō te meatanga i tētahi whakamārietanga; nā te mea e ai ki te mahere nui o te Atua Mau Tonu me matua mea ai tētahi whakamārietanga, ki te kore kua tino ngaro rawa atu ngā tāngata katoa; āe rā, kua whakapakekehia te katoa; āe rā, kua taka, ā, kua ngaro te katoa, ā, me mate anō ki te kore e māwhiti atu mā roto atu i te whakamārietanga e tika pū ana anō tana meatanga ake.

10 Nā te mea e tika pū ana anō tētahi whakaherenga whakamutunga nui; āe rā, ehara i te whakaherenga o te tangata, ehara rānei i te kararehe, ehara rānei i tētahi tūmomo manu; nā te mea kāore tēnei hei whakaherenga tangata; engari me tika ia hei whakaherenga mutunga kore, ā, hei whakaherenga mau tonu.

11 Nā, kāore kau he tangata kotahi e taea nei te whakahere i ōna ake toto kia whakamārie ai i ngā hara o tētahi atu. Nā, ki te kōhuru tētahi tangata, nana ka mea tō tātou ture, e tika ana, kia muru ai i te oranga o tana teina? ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, Kāo.

12 Engari e tono ana te ture i te oranga o te tangata nāna te kōhuru; nō reira kāore e taea ana tētahi mea e iti iho ana i tētahi whakamārietanga mutunga kore e whakaherehia ai mō ngā hara katoa o te ao.

13 Nō reira, e tika pū ana anō kia mea ai tētahi whakaherenga whakamutunga nui, kātahi ka puta mai, e tika pū ana anō rānei kia puta mai, te whakamutunga ki te whakaheke toto; kātahi ka tutuki te ture a Mohi; āe rā, ka tutuki te katoa, ia tongi me ia mātohu, ā, kua kore e hē ngā rā o tētahi mea.

14 Nana rā, koinei te tikanga katoa o te ture, ia mea moroiti e aro pū ana ki taua whakahere whakamutunga nui; ā, ko taua whakaherenga whakamutunga nui, arā, koia ko te Tama a te Atua, āe rā, mutunga kore, ā, mau tonu.

15 Ā, pēnei ka puta i a ia te whakaoranga ki te hunga katoa e whakapono nei i tōna ingoa; koinei te tikanga o tēnei whakaherenga whakamutunga, kia whakaputa mai i ngā whēkau o te aroha, e taea nei te tika, ā, e whakaputa mai ana i te huarahi kia whai whakapono rātou tae atu ki te rīpenetātanga.

For it is expedient that an atonement should be made; for according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish; yea, all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient should be made.

For it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice; yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

Now there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will atone for the sins of another. Now, if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered; therefore there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement which will suffice for the sins of the world.

Therefore, it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice, and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a stop to the shedding of blood; then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

And behold, this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that great and last sacrifice; and that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal.

And thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on his name; this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth about means unto men that they may have faith unto repentance.

- 16     Ā, pēnei tutuki ai ngā tonu a te tika i te aroha, ā, e karapotia ana rātou i roto i ngā ringaringa o te haumarutanga, i te tangata kāore nei ōna whakapono tae atu ki te rīpenetātanga e pāhore ana ki te ture katoa o ngā tonu o te tika; nō reira ka whakaputa te mahere mau tonu nui o te hokonga ki te tangata anake e whai whakapono ana tae atu ki te rīpenetātanga.
- 17     Nō reira mā te Atua e tuku ki a koutou, e aku teina, kia taea ai e koutou te tīmata ki te whakamahi i tō koutou whakapono tae atu ki te rīpenetātanga, kia tīmata tā koutou karanga i tōna ingoa tapu, kia aroha mai ia ki a koutou;
- 18     Āe rā, karanga atu ki a ia mō te aroha; nā te mea e kaha ana ia ki te whakaora.
- 19     Āe rā, whakaiti koutou i a koutou anō, ā, kia hono tonu te inoi ki a ia.
- 20     Karanga ake ki a ia i a koutou i roto i ā koutou māra, āe rā, i runga i ā koutou kāhui katoa.
- 21     Karanga ake koutou ki a ia i ō koutou whare, āe rā, i runga i ō koutou kāinga katoa, i te ata, i te poutūmārōtanga o te rā, i te ahiahipō anō hoki.
- 22     Āe rā, karanga ake ki a ia kia hē te mana o ō koutou hoariri.
- 23     Āe rā, karanga ake ki a ia kia hinga te rēwera, koia nei tētahi hoariri ki te tika katoa.
- 24     Karanga ake ki a ia i runga i ngā kai i ā koutou māra, kia kake koutou i ēnā mea.
- 25     karanga ake i runga i ā koutou kāhui me ā koutou māra, kia whai hua ake ai.
- 26     Engari ehara tēnei i te katoa; me riringi iho i ō koutou wairua i ō koutou rūma, me ā koutou meatanga muna, i ō koutou koraha hoki.
- 27     Āe rā, i ngā wā kāore koutou e karanga ake ki te Ariki, tukua ō koutou ngākau kia kī, e aro atu ana i te inoi tonutanga hei painga mō koutou, ā, hei painga mō te hunga e karapotī ana i a koutou.

And thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles them in the arms of safety, while he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the whole law of the demands of justice; therefore only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about the great and eternal plan of redemption.

Therefore may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to exercise your faith unto repentance, that ye begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy upon you;

Yea, cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

Yea, humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your flocks.

Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both morning, mid-day, and evening.

Yea, cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

Yea, cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all righteousness.

Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper in them.

Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

But this is not all; ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret places, and in your wilderness.

Yea, and when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full, drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare, and also for the welfare of those who are around you.

- 28 Ināianeī ā nana, e aku teina aroha, ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, kua e whakaaro ake koinei te katoa; nā te mea whai muri iho i tā koutou mea ai i ēnei mea katoa, ki te pei atu koutou i te hunga e hapa ana, i te hunga kākahu kore, ki te kore hoki e toro atu ki te hunga tūrora me te hunga e mamae ana, me te wāwāhi atu i ō koutou rawa, mēnā kei a koutou, ki te hunga e hapa ana—Ko taku kupu tēnei ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e mahi noa i tētahi o ēnei mea, nana, kua auare ake tō inoi, ā, kāore he painga ki a koutou, ā, e rite ana koutou ki te hunga ngutu kau e whakakore nei i te whakapono.
- 29 Nō reira, ki te kore koutou e mahara kia atawhai tangata, he rite koutou ki te paranga, e makaia atu nei e ngā kaiwhakamahine, (kāore ōna painga) ā, kua takatakahia i raro i ngā waewae o te tangata.
- 30 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina, e hiahia ana ahau, whai muri iho i tā koutou kite atu i ngā whakaaturanga maha, e kite ana kei te whakaatu ngā karaipiture tapu i ēnei mea, ka haere mai koutou me te whakaputa i ngā hua ki te rīpenetātanga.
- 31 Āe rā, e hiahia ana au kia haere mai koutou, ā, kia kua koutou e whakapakeke tonu i ō koutou ngākau; nana rā, ko nāianeī te wā me te rā mō tō koutou whakaoranga; nō reira, ki te rīpenetā koutou, ā, ki te kore koutou e whakapakeke i ō koutou ngākau, ka whakaputaina wawetia iho te mahere nui o te hokonga ki runga i a koutou.
- 32 Nana rā, he wā tēnei kia whakarite ai te tangata kia tūtaki ai i te Atua; āe rā, nana ko te rā o tēnei oranga te rā me mahi ngā tāngata i ā rātou mahinga.
- 33 Ināianeī ā, he pērā ki tāku i kī ake ai ki a koutou i mua, nā te mea he maha ā koutou whakaaturanga, nō reira, e tohe ana au i a koutou kia kua koutou e whakaroaroa atu i te rā o tō koutou rīpenetātanga tae atu ana ki te mutunga; nā te mea whai muri iho i tēnei rā o te ora, kua homai nei ki a tātou kia whakarite ai mō te āke tonu atu, nana, ki te kore e pai ake ā tātou whakapau wā i a tātou i tēnei oranga, ko reira puta mai ai te pō uriuri kāore e taea ana i reira ētahi mahi anō te mahi.

And now behold, my beloved brethren, I say unto you, do not suppose that this is all; for after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy, and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need—I say unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who do deny the faith.

Therefore, if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden under foot of men.

And now, my brethren, I would that, after ye have received so many witnesses, seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things, ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

Yea, I would that ye would come forth and harden not your hearts any longer; for behold, now is the time and the day of your salvation; and therefore, if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

For behold, this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God; yea, behold the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

And now, as I said unto you before, as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end; for after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

- 34 Kāore e taea e koutou te kī ake, ina kūmea atu koutou ki taua aituā whakariharaha, ka rīpenetā ahau, ka hoki au ki tōku Atua. Kāo, tē taea tēnei te kī ake e koutou; nā te mea ko taua wairua anō e nōhia ana ō koutou tīnana i te wā e puta atu koutou i tēnei oranga, ka whaikaha anō taua wairua kia nōhia ai tō tīnana i tērā ao mau tonu.
- 35 Nana rā, mehemea kua whakaroaroa koutou i te rā o tā koutou rīpenetātanga tae atu ana ki te mate, nana, kua uru koutou i raro i te mana o te wairua o te rēwera, ā, ka hīri ia i a koutou hei mea māna; nō reira, kua neke atu te Wairua o te Ariki i a koutou, ā, kāore ōna wāhi i roto i a koutou, ā, kua whaimana katoa te rēwera i runga i a koutou; ā, koinei te āhuetanga whakamutunga o te hunga whakariharaha.
- 36 Ā, e mōhio ana au ki tēnei, nā te mea kua kī mai te Ariki e kore ia e noho nei i roto i ngā temepara tapu kore, engari kei roto i ngā ngākau o te hunga tika ia noho ai; āe rā, kua kī anō ia ka noho iho te hunga tika i tōna kīngitanga, e kore e puta atu anō ki waho; engari ka whakamākia ō rātou kāmāna mā roto atu i te toto o te Reme.
- 37 Ināianeī ā, e aku teina aroha, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara koutou ki ēnei mea, ā, kia whakatutuki koutou i tō koutou whakaoranga i runga i te wehi i te aroaro o te Atua, ā, kia kore tonu e whakakore i te haerenga mai a te Karaiti;
- 38 Kia kore tonu e tautohetohe atu ki te Wairua Tapu, engari kia whiwhi koutou i a ia, me te tango ki runga i a koutou te ingoa o te Karaiti; kia whakaiti koutou i a koutou anō tae iho ki te puehu, me te koropiko i te Atua, ahakoa ko hea ngā wāhi e noho nei koutou, i te wairua me te pono; ā, kia noho koutou i runga i te whakawhetai ia te rā, ia te rā, mō ngā arohatanga maha me ngā manaakitanga maha e whakatau iho ki runga i a koutou.
- 39 Āe rā, e whakahau ana anō au ki a koutou, e aku teina, kia mataara koutou kia inoi tonu, kia kore ai koutou e ārahina atu e ngā whakawai o te rēwera, kia kore ai ia e whaikaha ki runga i a koutou, kia kore ai koutou e meinga hei pononga māna hei te rā whakamutunga; nana rā, kāore ia e utu i a koutou ki tētahi mea pai.

Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God. Nay, ye cannot say this; for that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

For behold, if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his; therefore, the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

And this I know, because the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell; yea, and he has also said that the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; but their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

And now, my beloved brethren, I desire that ye should remember these things, and that ye should work out your salvation with fear before God, and that ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;

That ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost, but that ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ; that ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth; and that ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

Yea, and I also exhort you, my brethren, that ye be watchful unto prayer continually, that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he may not overpower you, that ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he rewardeth you no good thing.



40 Ināianeī ā e aku teina aroha, ka tohe atu au ki a koutou kia manawanui ai, ā, kia pīkauria ki ngā momo whakamamaetanga katoa; kia kore koutou e taunu i te hunga e makaia atu koutou nā tō koutou tino rawakoretanga, kei meinga koutou hei kaihara pēnā i a rātou;

41 Engari kia manawanui koutou, me te ū i roto i ērā whakamamaetanga, i runga i te tūmanako kaha hei tōna rā ka okioki i ā koutou mamaetanga.

And now my beloved brethren, I would exhort you to have patience, and that ye bear with all manner of afflictions; that ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of your exceeding poverty, lest ye become sinners like unto them;

But that ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

## Arami 35

- 1 Nā, i pahawa ake i muri iho i tā Amureke whakakapi i ēnei mea te kōrero, i neke atu rātou i a rātou anō mai i te whakaminenga, ā, ka whakawhiti atu ki roto i te whenua o Herehona.
- 2 Āe rā, ko te toenga atu o ngā teina, whai muri iho i tā rātou kauhautanga atu i te kupu ki ngā Hōrama, ka whakawhiti atu anō rātou ki roto i te whenua o ngā Hōrama.
- 3 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i te rūnangatanga tahi o te wāhi rongonui o ngā Hōrama e pā ana ki ngā kupu i kauhautia atu ki a rātou, i riri rātou nā te kupu, nā te mea nāna tō rātou tinihanga i whakangaro; nō reira kāore i pai ki a rātou te whakarongo atu ki ngā kupu.
- 4 Ā, i tonoa e rātou, ā, ka whakahuihui tahi i te iwi katoa puta noa i te whenua, ā, ka kōrerorero ki a rātou e pā ana ki ngā kupu kua kōerotia nei e rātou.
- 5 Nā, kāore ō rātou kaiwhakahaere me ō rātou tohunga me ō rātou kaiako i whakamōhio atu i te iwi e pā ana ki ō rātou hiahia; nō reira i kite huna nei rātou i ngā hinengaro o te iwi katoa.
- 6 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, whai muri iho i tā rātou kite atu i ngā hinengaro o te iwi katoa, kua makaia atu te hunga i tautoko ai ki ngā kupu kua kōerotia nei e Arami rātou ko ana teina i te whenua; ā, he tokomaha rātou; ā, i whakawhiti mai rātou anō hoki ki roto i te whenua o Herehona.
- 7 Ā, i pahawa ake, nā, ka minita a Arami rātou ko ana teina ki a rātou anō hoki.
- 8 Nā, i te riri te iwi o ngā Hōrama ki te iwi o Amona e noho nei i te whenua o Herehona, ā, ko te kaiwhakahaere matua o ngā Hōrama, koia nei tētahi tangata kino, ka tonoa atu ia ki roto i te iwi o Amona e hiahia ana kia makaia atu e rātou i tō rātou whenua te hunga i whakawhiti atu ai i a rātou ki roto i tō rātou whenua.

## Alma 35

Now it came to pass that after Amulek had made an end of these words, they withdrew themselves from the multitude and came over into the land of Jershon.

Yea, and the rest of the brethren, after they had preached the word unto the Zoramites, also came over into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted together concerning the words which had been preached unto them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft; therefore they would not hearken unto the words.

And they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

Now their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires; therefore they found out privily the minds of all the people.

And it came to pass that after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land; and they were many; and they came over also into the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

Now the people of the Zoramites were angry with the people of Ammon who were in Jershon, and the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

9     Ā, he maha ngā kupu whakawetiweti i hakaina  
atu ai e ia ki a rātou. Ināianeī ā kāore i wehi te iwi o  
Amona i ā rātou kupu; nō reira kīhai rātou i maka  
atu i a rātou ki waho, engari i whiwhi rātou i te  
hunga rawakore katoa o ngā Hōrama i whakawhiti  
atu ai ki a rātou; ā, i whāngai rātou i a rātou, ā, i  
whakakākahutia rātou, ā, i tuku whenua atu rātou ki  
a rātou hei whenua tuku iho mō rātou; ā, i  
whakaratorato rātou e rite ana ki ngā mea i hiahia ai  
rātou.

10    Nā tēnei i whakaoho ake ai ngā Hōrama ki te riri  
ki te iwi o Amona, ā, ka tīmata tā rātou hanumi atu ki  
ngā Rāmana me te whakaoho ake i a rātou ki te riri  
ki a rātou.

11    Ā, pēnei tīmata ai ngā Hōrama me ngā Rāmana ki  
te whakariterite mea mō te pakanga atu ki te iwi o  
Amona, me ngā Nīwhai anō hoki.

12    Ā, ka whakamutu pēnei te tau tuangāhuru mā  
whitu o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā i  
runga i te iwi o Nīwhai.

13    Ā, ka wehe atu te iwi o Amona i te whenua o  
Herehona, ā, ka haere mai ki roto i te whenua o  
Mereke, ā, ka tukuna atu te whenua o Herehona hei  
wāhi mō ngā tauā o ngā Nīwhai, kia whawhai atu ki  
ngā tauā o ngā Rāmana me ngā tauā o ngā Hōrama;  
ā, i reira tīmata ai te pakanga i waenganui i ngā  
Rāmana me ngā Nīwhai, i te tau tuangāhuru mā  
waru o te whakahaeretanga a ngā kaiwhakawā; ā, ka  
tukuna tētahi tuhinga mō ngā pakanga a muri ake  
nei.

14    Ā, ka hoki atu a Arami, me Amona, me ā rāua  
teina, me ngā tama tokorua a Arami ki te whenua o  
Harahemara, whai muri iho i tā rātou meinga hei  
taputapu i ngā ringaringa o te Atua i te kukumetanga  
i ngā Hōrama tokomaha ki te rīpenetātanga; ā, i āia  
atu ngā mea katoa i kūmea ai ki te rīpenetātanga i tō  
rātou whenua; engari kei a rātou he whenua hei  
whenua tuku iho mō rātou i te whenua o Herehona,  
ā, kua hāpai patu rātou ki te tiaki i a rātou anō, me ā  
rātou hoawāhine, me ā rātou tamariki, me ō rātou  
whenua.

And he breathed out many threatenings against  
them. And now the people of Ammon did not fear  
their words; therefore they did not cast them out, but  
they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that  
came over unto them; and they did nourish them,  
and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands  
for their inheritance; and they did administer unto  
them according to their wants.

Now this did stir up the Zoramites to anger against  
the people of Ammon, and they began to mix with  
the Lamanites and to stir them up also to anger  
against them.

And thus the Zoramites and the Lamanites began  
to make preparations for war against the people of  
Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

And thus ended the seventeenth year of the reign  
of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And the people of Ammon departed out of the  
land of Jershon, and came over into the land of  
Melek, and gave place in the land of Jershon for the  
armies of the Nephites, that they might contend with  
the armies of the Lamanites and the armies of the  
Zoramites; and thus commenced a war betwixt the  
Lamanites and the Nephites, in the eighteenth year  
of the reign of the judges; and an account shall be  
given of their wars hereafter.

And Alma, and Ammon, and their brethren, and  
also the two sons of Alma returned to the land of  
Zarahemla, after having been instruments in the  
hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to  
repentance; and as many as were brought to repen-  
tance were driven out of their land; but they have  
lands for their inheritance in the land of Jershon,  
and they have taken up arms to defend themselves,  
and their wives, and children, and their lands.

15 Nā, i te mea kua pōuri a Arami nō te kino o tana iwi, āe rā nō ngā pakanga, me ngā whakahekenga toto, me ngā tautohetohenga kei waenganui i a rātou; i te mea kua haere atu ki te whakapuaki i te kupu, kua tonoa rānei ki te whakapuaki i te kupu, i waenganui i te iwi katoa i ia pā, i ia pā; me tana kitenga atu i te whakapakeke haeretanga o ngā ngākau o te iwi, me tā rātou pāmamae nā te uauatanga o te kupu, i tino pōuri rawa tōna ngākau.

16 Nō reira, ka meatia e ia kia huitahi ai ana tama, kia tukuna atu e ia ki tēnā me tēnā tōna tohutohu haepapa, takitahi, e pā ana ki ngā mea o te tika. Ā, kei a tātou tētahi tuhinga mō ana whakahaunga, nāna i tuku ki a rātou e rite ana ki tāna ake tuhinga.

Now Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were among them; and having been to declare the word, or sent to declare the word, among all the people in every city; and seeing that the hearts of the people began to wax hard, and that they began to be offended because of the strictness of the word, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

Therefore, he caused that his sons should be gathered together, that he might give unto them every one his charge, separately, concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness. And we have an account of his commandments, which he gave unto them according to his own record.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 36

- 1 E taku tama, kia whai taringa mai ki aku kupu; he oati hoki taku ki a koe, ki te mea ka pupuri koe i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, ka whai painga koe i runga i te whenua.
- 2 E mea ana ahau kia pera tau me taku i mahi ai, hei whakamaharatanga ki te hereherenga o o tatou matua; i roto hoki ratou i te whakamahinga, a kihai tetahi i ahei te whakaputa i a ratou, ko te Atua anake o Aperahama, ko te Atua o Ihaka, ko te Atua o Hakopa; a he pono nana ratou i whakaputa mai i o ratou tukinotanga.
- 3 Tena, E taku tama, e Heramana, nana, kei roto koe i to taitamarikitanga, koia ahau ka tonono atu nei ki a koe kia rangona aku kupu e koe, kia akona koe e ahau; no te mea e matau ana ahau ko te hunga e whakawhirinaki atu ana ki te Atua e tautokona i roto i o ratou whakamatautauranga, i o ratou rarunga, i o ratou mamae, a e whakateiteitia ake ano hoki ratou a te ra whakamutunga;
- 4 Na, kahore ahau e mea kia mahara koe noku ake ano tenei matauranga, ehara i te mea maori, engari he mea wairua; ehara i te hinengaro kikokiko, engari na te Atua.
- 5 Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, me i kore ahau i whanau i te Atua, penei kua kore oku matauranga ki enei mea; engari na te Atua, na te mangai o tana anahera tapu i whakamohio ahau ki enei mea, a ehara i te mea na tetahi pai oku ake.
- 6 No te mea i haereere ahau me nga tama a Mohia, e rapu ana ki te whakangaro i te hahi a te Atua; heoi ka tonoa e te Atua tana anahera tapu hei kati i a matou i te huarahi.
- 7 Nana, ka korero mai ia ki a matou, me te mea he whatitiri te reo, na, ngaueue ana te whenua katoa i raro i o matou waewae, hinga ana matou katoa ki te whenua, ka tau hoki te wehi o te Ariki ki a matou.
- 8 Otira, ka mea mai te reo ki a au, E ara. A ka ara ahau ka tu ki runga, ka kite hoki i te anahera.

## Alma 36

My son, give ear to my words; for I swear unto you, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land.

I would that ye should do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers; for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

And now, O my son Helaman, behold, thou art in thy youth, and therefore, I beseech of thee that thou wilt hear my words and learn of me; for I do know that whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be lifted up at the last day.

And I would not that ye think that I know of myself—not of the temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

Now, behold, I say unto you, if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things; but God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself;

For I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God; but behold, God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

And behold, he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

But behold, the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

9 Na, ka mea mai ia ki a au, Mehemea e hiahia ana koe, ko koe ake kia whakangaromia, me mutu to rapu ki te whakangaro i te hahi i te Atua.

10 Nawai a, ka hinga ahau ki te whenua; a ko te roa e toru nga ra, e toru nga po, kihai ano toku waha i puaki: kihai ano hoki he kaha o oku wahi.

11 A tera atu ano etahi mea i korero mai ai te anahera ki a au i rongo ai aku teina, ko au ia, kihai i rongo; no te mea i taku rongonga i nga kupu, Me he mea e pai ana koe ko koe ake kia whakangaromia, me mutu ake tou rapu ki te whakangaro i te hahi a te Atua, na, pa tonu te wehi nui me te whakapawera ki a au, kei whakangaromia pea ahau, a hinga ana ahau ki te whenua, mutu tonu ana hoki taku rongong;

12 Otira mamae ana ahau i nga mamae mau tonu, no te mea e rakarakatia ake ana toku wiarua he mea nui rawa atu, a mamae ana ahau i oku hara katoa.

13 Ae, mahara ana ahau ki oku hara katoa, ki oku kino katoa, na enei hoki i whakamamaetia ai ahau ki nga mamae o te reinga; ae, kite ana ahau, kua tutu ahau ki toku Atua, a kihai ahau i te pupuri i ana whakahaunga tapu;

14 Ae, he maha ana tamariki naku i kohuru, ara, naku ratou i arahi atu ki te whakangaromanga; ae ra hoki, he nui rawa atu aku kino, na, i te whakaaro kau ano tera ahau e tae ki te aroaro o te Atua, ka whakapororarutia toku wairua ki te whakawehi e kore nei e taea te whakaaro.

15 Na, i mahara ahau, aue, me i taea ahau te pei kia meinga toku wairua raua ko toku tinana hei korenga, kia kore ai ahau e kawea kia tu i te aroaro o toku Atua, whakawakia ai mo aku mahi.

16 A, e toru nga ra, e toru nga po e whakamamaetia ana ahau, ki nga mamae o tetahi wairua kua oti nei te kanga.

17 A, i a au e whakapaweratia ana, i toku ngakau e whakamamaetia ana, i runga i te mahara ki oku tini hara, nana, ka mahara ahau ki toku rongonga ki toku papa, i poropiti ia ki te iwi mo te haerenga mai o tetahi, ko Ihu Karaiti, ko te Tama a te Atua, hei utu mo nga hara o te ao.

And he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

And it came to pass that I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

And the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words—If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God—I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

But I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

Yea, I did remember all my sins and iniquities, for which I was tormented with the pains of hell; yea, I saw that I had rebelled against my God, and that I had not kept his holy commandments.

Yea, and I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction; yea, and in fine so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

And now, for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

And it came to pass that as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

18 Na, i tenei mahara ka mau nei i roto i toku hinengaro, ka karanga ahau i roto i toku ngakau, E Ihu, e te Tama a te Atua, kia aroha mai ki a au, kei roto nei ahau i te au kawa, kei te karapotitia nei hoki e nga mekameka o te mate, e mau tonu ana.

19 Na, i toku maharatanga ki tenei mea, mutu ake oku mamae: a mutu ake hoki te whakapawera a oku hara i a au.

20 Na, ano te hari, ano te maramatanga whakamiharo i kite nei ahau; ae, ki tonu toku wairua i te hari nui, i pera me to te mamae i a au i mua;

21 Ae, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, e taku tama, kahore tahi he mea e rite ana ki oku mamae te koi, te kino. A ko taku kupu atu ano ki a koe, e taku tama, mo tenei taha, kahore ano hoki he mea e rite ana ki toku hari, te koi, te pai.

22 Ae ra, i hua ahau i pera taku kitenga i te Atua, me ta to tatou matua, me ta Rihai, e noho ana i runga i tona torona, e karapotitia ana e nga mano tini o nga anahera, e noho waiata ana, e whakamoemiti ana ki to ratou Atua; na, minamina ana toku wairua kia noho ki reira.

23 Nana, ka whiwhi ano oku wahi ki te kaha, na, tu ana oku waewae ki runga, whakakite atu ana ki te iwi kua whanau ahau i te Atua;

24 Na, no taua takiwa, tae noa mai ki naiane, kahore i mutu toku uaua kia mea ahau i nga wairua kia ripeneta; kia meinga hoki ratou e au kia rongu ki te hari i rongu ai ahau; kia whanau ai ano hoki ratou i te Atua, kia ki ai hoki i te Wairua Tapu.

25 Ae ra, E taku tama, e homai ana e te Atua te tino hari nui ki a au i roto i te hua o aku mahi;

26 No te mea, na te kupu i homai nei e ia ki a au, nana, he tokomaha kua whanau i te Atua; kua whakamatau hoki penei me au kua whakamatau; kua kite he kanohi he kanohi, penei me au kua kite; no reira kei te matau ratou ki enei mea, i korerotia nei e ahau, kei te rite ano ki toku matauranga, a, no te Atua te matauranga i a au nei.

Now, as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

And now, behold, when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; yea, I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

And oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; yea, my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

Yea, I say unto you, my son, that there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains. Yea, and again I say unto you, my son, that on the other hand, there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

Yea, methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels, in the attitude of singing and praising their God; yea, and my soul did long to be there.

But behold, my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

Yea, and from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance; that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

Yea, and now behold, O my son, the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

For because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God, and have tasted as I have tasted, and have seen eye to eye as I have seen; therefore they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know; and the knowledge which I have is of God.

27 Kua tautokona hoki ahau i roto i nga whakamatautauranga, i nga rarunga katoa, me nga mamaetanga katoa; ae ra, kua whakaputaina ahau e te Atua i roto i te whare herehere, i nga here, i te mate; a kei te whakawhirinaki atu nei ahau ki a ia, a mana tonu ahau e whakaora.

28 E mohio ana hoki ahau tera ia e whakateitei ake i a au a te ra whakamutunga, hei noho tahi me ia i roto i te kororia; na, ka whakamoemiti tonu ahau ki a ia ake ake ake, nana hoki i whakaputa mai o tatou matua i roto i Ihipa, nga Ihipiana ia, horomia ake e ia ki roto ki te Moana Whero; a nana ratou i arahi i runga i tona kaha ki roto ki te whenua o te kupu whakaari; ae ra hoki, nana ratou i whakaputa mai i te whakamahinga me te hereherenga i tenei wa, i tenei wa;

29 Nana ano hoki i kawe mai o tatou matua ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama; nana ano hoki, i runga i tona kaha mau tonu, i whakaputa ratou ki waho i te whakamahinga me te hereherenga i tenei wa, i tenei wa, a taea noatia tenei ra; a kei te mahara tonu nei ahau ki to ratou hereherenga; waihoki, e tika ana kia mahara tonu koe, me taku e mahara nei, ki to ratou hereherenga.

30 Heoi, e taku tama, ehara tenei i te katoa: no te mea e tika ana ano hoki kia matau koe me ahau e matau nei, ara, ki te mea ka pupuri koe i nga whakahaunga a te Atua e kake haere koe i runga i te whenua; waihoki, e tika ana ano kia matau koe, ki te kore e pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, ka hatepea atu koe i tona aroaro, na, e rite ana tenei ki tana kupu.

And I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions; yea, God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death; yea, and I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

And I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him in glory; yea, and I will praise him forever, for he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea; and he led them by his power into the promised land; yea, and he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

Yea, and he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem; and he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day; and I have always retained in remembrance their captivity; yea, and ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

But behold, my son, this is not all; for ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence. Now this is according to his word.



## Te Pukapuka A Arami 37

- 1 Na, e taku tama, e Heremana, ka whakahaua koe e ahau kia mau ki nga tuhituhinga kua tukua mai nei ki a au;
- 2 A ka whakahaua hoki koe e ahau, kia tuhituhia e koe tetahi tuhituhinga mo tenei iwi, i runga i nga ritenga kua tuhituhia nei e ahau, ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai, a kia tiakina taputia enei mea katoa, kia tapu hoki to tiaki i enei mea katoa kua tiakina nei e ahau, kia pera i taku tiakanga i aua mea;
- 3 Na, ko enei papa parahi, e mau nei enei tuhituhinga i runga, i runga nei hoki i a ratou nga tuhituhinga o nga karaipiture tapu, i roto nei nga whakapaparanga o o matou tupuna, no te timatanga ra ano.
- 4 Nana, kua poropititia tenei e o tatou tupuna, ara, kia tiakina enei mea, a tuku iho, tuku iho ki tenei whakatupuranga, ki tenei whakatupuranga, kia tiakina hoki kia rongoatia e te ringaringa o te Ariki, taea noatia te wa e whakaputaina ai ki nga iwi, ki nga hapu, ki nga reo, ki nga huihuinga tangata, kia matau ai ratou ki nga mea ngaro e mau nei i runga.
- 5 Na, ki te mea ka tiakina enei, e tika ana kia mau tonu to ratou kanapatanga; ae ra, ka mau tonu ano to ratou kanapatanga; ae ra, me nga papa katoa ano hoki e mau nei nga tuhituhinga tapu i runga.
- 6 Na, kei te whakaaro pea koe, he mea kuare tenei i roto i a au; engari ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, ma nga mea itiiti, ma nga mea kuare e whakaputaina mai ai nga mea nunui; a he nui hoki nga wa e whakapororarutia nei te mea mohio e nga mea itiiti noa iho.
- 7 A e mahi ana te Ariki te Atua i runga i nga tikanga hei whakatutuki i ana whakaaro nui, i ana whakaaro mau tonu; ma nga mea tino iti noa iho hoki e whakapororarutia ana e te Ariki te tangata mohio, a whakaorangia ana e ia nga wairua maha.
- 8 Na, he whai whakaaro tenei i mua i roto i te Atua, kia tiakina enei mea; ina hoki, na enei i whakamakoha te mahara o tenei iwi, me te whakamohio hoki i te tini ki te he o a ratou whakahaere, me te whakatahuri ano hoki i a ratou ki te matauranga ki to ratou Atua, a whakaorangia ana o ratou wairua.

## Alma 37

And now, my son Helaman, I command you that ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

And I also command you that ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done, upon the plates of Nephi, and keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

And these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning—

Behold, it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

And now behold, if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

Now ye may suppose that this is foolishness in me; but behold I say unto you, that by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; and small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

And the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes; and by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

And now, it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved; for behold, they have enlarged the memory of this people, yea, and convinced many of the error of their ways, and brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

9 Ae ra, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koe, me i kore enei mea i roto nei i enei tuhituhinga, e mau nei ki runga i enei papa, peni kua kore e ahei i a Amona ratou ko ona teina te whakamohio i nga mano tini o nga Ramana, ki nga whakarereinga iho a o ratou matua; ae ra, na enei tuhituhinga me o reira kupu i mea ratou kia ripeneta; ara, kia matau ratou ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, kia hari hoki i roto i a Ihu Karaiti, i to ratou Kai-hoko.

10 A ko wai e matau ana era pea e waiho enei hei mea e kawea ai nga mano maha o ratou, ae ra, me nga mano ano hoki o o tatou teina kaki maro o nga Niwhai, e whakapakeke nei i o ratou ngakau inaianei, i roto i nga hara me nga kino, ki te matauranga ki to ratou Kai-hoko?

11 Na, kahore ano enei mea ngaro kia whakakitea katoatia mai ki a au; no reira me manawanui.

12 No reira, kati noa pea, ki te mea kau ahau, e tiakina ana enei mea mo tetahi whakaaro mohio, ko taua whakaaro e mohiotia ana e te Atua; kei te runanga hoki ia i runga i te whai whakaaro ki ana mahi katoa, a he totika ona ara, ko tana whakahaere hoki, kotahi tonu te porowhita.

13 E maharatia, maharatia, e taku tama, e Heramana, ano te uaua o nga ture a te Atua. A i mea ra ia, Ki te pai koutou ki te pupuri i aku ture ka kake haere koutou i runga i te whenua; otira, ki te kore koutou e pupuri i ana ture, ka hatepea atu koutou i tona aroaro.

14 Na, kia mahara, e taku tama, kua tukua mai e te Atua ki a koe enei mea, e tapu nei, i puritia taputia ai e ia, a e puritia ano e ia e tiakina hei whakaaro mohio i roto i a ia, kia whakakitea atu ai e tona kaha ki nga whakatupuranga e haere ake nei.

15 Tena, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe he mea na te Wairua o te poropititanga, ki te mea ka takahia e koe nga ture a te Atua, nana, ko enei mea e tapu nei, ka tangohia atu i a koe he mea ma te kaha o te Atua, a ka tukua atu koe ki a Hatana, kia tataria ai koe e ia ano he papapa ki mua i te hau.

Yea, I say unto you, were it not for these things that these records do contain, which are on these plates, Ammon and his brethren could not have convinced so many thousands of the Lamanites of the incorrect tradition of their fathers; yea, these records and their words brought them unto repentance; that is, they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

And who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their Redeemer?

Now these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me; therefore I shall forbear.

And it may suffice if I only say they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known unto God; for he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are straight, and his course is one eternal round.

O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the commandments of God. And he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land—but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him, that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, I tell you by the spirit of prophecy, that if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the power of God, and ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as chaff before the wind.

- 16 Engari ki te mea ka pupuri koe i nga ture a te Atua, a ka pera tau meatanga ki enei mea e tapu nei, ki ta te Ariki, ta te Atua e whakahau iho ai ki a koe, (me tono hoki koe ki te Ariki ki nga tikanga katoa e meatia ai e koe ki enei mea), nana kahore he mana o te whenua, o te reinga ranei e ahei te tango i enei mea i a koe, no te mea e kaha ana te Atua ki te whakatutuki i ana kupu katoa;
- 17 Ka whakarite hoki ia i ana kupu whakaari, e whakaaria ai e ia ki a koe, ina hoki kua whakaritea e ia ana kupu i whakaaria ai e ia ki o tatou tupuna.
- 18 I whakaaria mai hoki e ia ki a ratou ko enei mea ka tiakina e ia mo tetahi whakaaro mohio i roto i a ia, kia whakakitea atu ai e ia tona kaha ki nga whakatupuranga e haere ake nei.
- 19 Nana, kotahi te tikanga kua rite nei i a ia, ara, te whakahokinga i nga mano tini o nga Ramana ki te matauranga o te pono; kua whakakitea mai hoki e ia tona kaha i roto i a ratou, a tera ano ia e whakakite i tona kaha i roto i a ratou ki nga whakatupuranga e haere ake nei, koia ka tiakina enei mea;
- 20 Koia ahau ka whakahau atu nei ki a koe, e taku tama, e Heramana, kia puta tou uaua ki te whakariterite i aku kupu katoa, kia puta ano hoki tou uaua ki te pupuri i nga ture a te Atua, e rite ana ki nga mea ka oti nei te tuhituhi.
- 21 Na, ka korero tenei ahau ki a koe, mo aua papa e rua tekau ma wha, kia puritia e koe, kia whakakitea ai ki tenei iwi nga mea ngaro, me nga mahi o te pouritanga, me o ratou mahi huna, ara, nga mahi huna o aua iwi i whakangaromia ai; koia, ko a ratou kohurutanga katoa, me nga tahae me o ratou pahuatanga, me o ratou kino katoa, me nga whakarihariha, kia whakakitea ai ki tenei iwi; kia tiakina hoki e koe enei kai tohutohu.
- 22 Ta te mea i kite ra te Ariki ka anga tona iwi ka mahi i roto i te pouritanga, ae, ka mahi i nga kohurutanga ngaro me nga whakarihariha na reira i mea ai te Atua, Ki te kahore ratou e ripeneta, ka whakangaromia atu ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua.

But if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

For he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, for he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

For he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

And now behold, one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; and he hath shown forth his power in them, and he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; therefore they shall be preserved.

Therefore I command you, my son Helaman, that ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, and that ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

And now, I will speak unto you concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, and that ye preserve these interpreters.

For behold, the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea, work secret murders and abominations; therefore the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

- 23 A i mea te Ariki, Maku e whakarite ma taku pononga, ma Hatereme, tetahi kohatu, e tiaho atu nei i roto i te pouritanga hei maramatanga, kia whakakitea ai e ahau ki taku iwi e mahi nei ki a au, kia whakakitea ai e ahau ki a ratou, nga mahi a o ratou teina: ae ra, a ratou mahi huna, a ratou mahi o te pouritanga, a ratou kino me nga whakarihariha.
- 24 Na, e taku tama, i whakaritea enei kai tohutohu, kia rite ai te kupu a te Atua i korero ai ia, i mea ai:
- 25 Maku e whakaputa mai i roto i te pouritanga ki te maramatanga a ratou mahi huna katoa me a ratou whakarihariha; a ki te kahore ratou e ripeneta, ka whakangaromia ratou e ahau i runga i te mata o te whenua; a maku ano e whakaputa a ratou mea ngaro katoa me nga whakarihariha ki te maramatanga, ki nga iwi katoa e noho ana i te whenua a muri ake nei.
- 26 Na, e taku tama, ka kite taua kihai ratou i ripeneta, koia i whakangaromia ai ratou, a kua rite te kupu a te Atua tae noa ki tenei taima; koia, ko a ratou whakarihariha ngaro kua kawea mai i roto i te pouritanga, kua whakakitea mai hoki ki a tatou.
- 27 Tena, e taku tama, ko taku whakahau atu tenei ki a koe, kia puritia e koe a ratou oati katoa, a ratou kaweneta, a ratou kupu whakarite i o ratou whakarihariha ngaro; ae ra, me a ratou tohu katoa me a ratou mea whakamiharo, kia puritia mai e koe i te iwi, kia kore ai ratou e matau ki enei mea, kei taka pea ano hoki ki roto ki te pouritanga, a ka whakangaromia.
- 28 No te mea hoki, tera ano he kanga kei runga i tenei whenua katoa, kia puta te whakangaromanga ki nga kai mahi katoa o te pouritanga, e rite ana ki te kaha o te Atua, ina tino pakari ratou; no reira, ko taku hiahia kia kore tenei iwi e whakangaromia.
- 29 No reira e puritia ai e koe enei tikanga ngaro o o ratou oati, o a ratou kawenata i tenei iwi, a ko to ratou kino anake, me a ratou kohurutanga, me a ratou whakarihariha, e whakakite atu ai koe ki a ratou; a tau hoki e whakaako ai ki a ratou, kia whakarihariha atu ratou ki nga kino pera, ki nga mea whakarihariha, i nga kohurutanga; akona atu hoki ratou e koe, i whakangaromia enei iwi i runga i to ratou kino, me nga mea whakarihariha, me a ratou kohurutanga.

And the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone, which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works, their works of darkness, and their wickedness and abominations.

And now, my son, these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be fulfilled, which he spake, saying:

I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works and their abominations; and except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the earth; and I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

And now, my son, we see that they did not repent; therefore they have been destroyed, and thus far the word of God has been fulfilled; yea, their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness and made known unto us.

And now, my son, I command you that ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their agreements in their secret abominations; yea, and all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people, that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into darkness also and be destroyed.

For behold, there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe; therefore I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

Therefore ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people, and only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them; and ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders; and ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

30 Ina hoki, na ratou i kohuru nga poropiti katoa a te Ariki, i puta ai ki a ratou ki te whakaatu atu ki a ratou mo a ratou kino; na, ko te toto o te hunga i kohurutia ai e ratou i karanga ake ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua mana e rapu utu i te hunga nana ratou i kohuru: na, penei kua tau nga whakawakanga a te Atua ki enei kai mahi o te pouritanga me nga huihuinga ngaro;

31 Ae ra, kanga hoki te whenua, a ake ake ake, mo aua kai mahi o te pouritanga me nga huihuinga ngaro, a, tae noa ki to ratou whakangaromanga, ki te kahore ratou e ripeneta i te mea kahore ano kia pakari noa.

32 Tena, e taku tama, maharatia enei kupu kua korerotia atu nei e ahau ki a koe: kauaka e tukua atu aua tikanga ngaro ki tenei iwi, engari me ako ratou kia mau tonu to ratou kino ki te hara, ki te he;

33 Kauwhautia atu ki a ratou te ripenatatanga me te whakapono ki te Ariki ki a Ihu Karaiti; akona ratou kia whakaiti i a ratou ano, kia mahaki, kia papaku te ngakau: akona ratou kia pakeke ki nga whakamatautauranga katoa a te rewera, i runga i to ratou whakapono ki te Ariki ki a Ihu Karaiti;

34 Akona ratou kia kua rawa e ngakau-kore ki te mahi pai, engari kia mahaki, kia papaku te ngakau: e kite hoki nga penei i te okiokinga mo o ratou wairua.

35 Na, maharatia, e taku tama, akona te matauranga i tou taitamarikitanga: ae ra, akona i tou taitamarikitanga te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua;

36 Ae ra, karanga ake ki te Atua kia tuaritua au mea katoa: hei te Ariki hoki au mahi katoa e mahi ai koe a ko te wahi e haere ai koe me haere i runga i te Ariki: kia anga whaka-te-Atua ano hoki ou whakaaro; nga hiahia o tou ngakau me tau tonu ki runga ki te Atua, a ake ake ake;

37 Runanga tahi koe me te Ariki i runga i au mahi katoa, a mana koe e tohutohu ki te pai: ae ra, ina takoto koe i te po, me takoto ki te Ariki, kia mataara ai ia ki runga ki a koe i a koe e moe ana: a ka ara koe i te ata, kia ki tou ngakau i nga whakawhetainga ki te Atua: na, ki te meatia enei mea e koe, ka whakateiteitia ake koe a te ra whakamutunga.

For behold, they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; and the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers; and thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

Yea, and cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

And now, my son, remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, but teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

Preach unto them repentance, and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ; teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in heart; teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek and lowly in heart; for such shall find rest to their souls.

O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth; yea, learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

Yea, and cry unto God for all thy support; yea, let all thy doings be unto the Lord, and whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord; yea, let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord; yea, let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee for good; yea, when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he may watch over you in your sleep; and when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God; and if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

38 Tena, e taku tama, he korero taku mo runga i te mea i karangatia nei e o tatou tupuna ko te mea porotaka, ara, ko te kai tohutohu; i huaina hoki tenei mea e o tatou tupuna, ko Riahona, te tikanga o tenei ina whakamaoritia, he kapehu: a na te Ariki i whakarite tenei mea.

39 Nana, kahore e taea e tetahi tangata te mahi i tenei tu mahi whakamiharo. Nana, i whakaritea tenei mea hei kai tohutohu ki o tatou matua i te huarahi e haere ai ratou i roto i te koraha;

40 A i tohutohu tenei mea mo ratou i runga i to ratou whakapono ki te Atua: na, ki te mea ka whakapono ratou ka taea e te Atua te mea i aua pinara ki te tohu i te ara e haere ai ratou, nana, kua meatia; no reira i a ratou tenei merekara, a tera atu ano tona tini o nga merekara i mahia ai e te kaha o te Atua, i tenei ra, i tenei ra;

41 Na, ahakoa i mahia enei merekara he mea na nga putake iti noa iho, i whakakitea atu ai ki a ratou nga mahi whakamiharo. Ka mangere ratou, ka wareware ki te whakamahi i to ratou whakapono me to ratou uaua, na, mutu ana i reira, aua mahi whakamiharo, a kihai ratou i tika i runga i to ratou haerenga;

42 Koia i roa ai ratou i te koraha, ara, kihai ta ratou haere i totika atu, a ka mamae ratou i te mate-kai, i te mate-wai, mo a ratou he.

43 Na, e taku tama, e mea ana ahau kia mohio koe ehara enei i nga mea atarangi-kore; no te mea i o tatou tupuna e puhoi ana ki te whakarongo ki tenei kapehu, (na, he mea maori enei mea,) kihai ratou i whai painga; waihoki e pera ana nga mea wairua.

44 Ta te mea, rite tahi te ngawari o te whakarongo ki te kupu a te Karaiti, mana nei e tohu ki a koutou te huarahi tika ki te koa mau tonu, ki to te whakarongo o o tatou tupuna ki tenei kapehu, mana nei e tohu ki a ratou te huarahi e totika atu ai ki te whenua i whakaaria mai.

45 Na, taku e mea atu nei, kahore ianei he ritenga i roto i tenei mea? No te mea he pono hoki na enei kai tohutohu i kawe mai o tatou tupuna ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari i runga i to ratou whainga haeretanga i ona tohutohu, waihoki he pono ko nga kupu a te Karaiti hei kai kawe i a tatou ki ko atu i tenei raora e pouri nei ki tetahi atu whenua pai rawa ake e whakaaria mai nei, ki te whakarongo tatou ki ona tohutohu.

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director—or our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass; and the Lord prepared it.

And behold, there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship. And behold, it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

And it did work for them according to their faith in God; therefore, if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done; therefore they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

Nevertheless, because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works. They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence and then those marvelous works ceased, and they did not progress in their journey;

Therefore, they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

And now, my son, I would that ye should understand that these things are not without a shadow; for as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper; even so it is with things which are spiritual.

For behold, it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

And now I say, is there not a type in this thing? For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

46 E taku tama, auaka taua e mangere i te ngawari o te huarahi; no te mea i pena o taua tupuna; ko te mea hoki tenei i whakaritea ma ratou, ara, ki te pai ratou ki te titiro ka ora ratou; waihoki e penei ana te mea kei a taua nei. Ka oti nei te huarahi te whakarite, a ki te titiro taua ka ora taua a ake ake ake.

47 Na, e taku tama, whakaaro koe ki enei mea tapu kia puritia e koe; ae, kia titiro ake ki te Atua, kia ora ai. Haere atu ki tenei iwi, whakapuakina atu te kupu, a kia whai whakaaro. E taku tama, hei konei ra.

O my son, do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; for so was it with our fathers; for so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; even so it is with us. The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

And now, my son, see that ye take care of these sacred things, yea, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober. My son, farewell.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 38

- 1 E taku tamaiti, kia whai taringa mai ki aku kupu, ka pera hoki ki taku i mea ai ki a Heramana taku e mea atu nei ki a koe. Ki te mea ka pupuri koe i nga ture a te Atua, ka kake haere koe i runga i te whenua; a ki te kore koe e pupuri i nga ture a te Atua, ka hatepea atu koe i tona aroaro.
- 2 Na, e taku tama, e tumanako atu ana ahau kia whai hari ahau i roto i a koe, he mea ma tou u me tou pono ki te Atua: e rite ana hoki ki tou timatanga ki te titiro ki te Ariki ki tou Atua i tou taitamarikitanga, taku tumanako kia mau tonu tou pupuri i ana whakahaunga; no te mea ka koa te tangata e u ana taea noatia te mutunga.
- 3 Ka mea atu nei ahau ki a koe, e taku tama, kua tino hari noa ahau i a koe inaianei, i tou pono, i tou uaua, i tou manawanui, i tou puhoi ki te riri i roto i te iwi o nga Horama.
- 4 E mohio ana hoki ahau i oti koe te here; koia, e mohio ana ano ahau i akina koe ki te kohatu mo te whakaaro ki te kupu: a i manawanui koe i roto i enei mea katoa, i a koe hoki te Ariki; a tenei koe te mohio ana na te Ariki koe i whakaputa.
- 5 Tena, e taku tamaiti, e Hipirona, e mea ana ahau kia mahara koe, ka rite ki te nui o tou whakawhirinaki atu ki te Atua, te whakaoranga i a koe i ou whakamatautauranga, i ou rarurarunga, i o mamaetanga, a i te ra whakamutunga, ka whakateiteitia ake koe.
- 6 Na, e taku tamaiti, kahore au e pai kia whakaaro koe noku ake tenei matauranga ki enei mea, na te Wairua hoki ia o te Atua i roto nei i a au, nana i whakaatu enei mea ki a au; me he mea hoki kahore ahau i whanau i te Atua, penei kua kore ahau e mohio ki enei mea.
- 7 Heoi, ko te Ariki, i runga i tana mahi tohu nui, i tonu i tana anahera hei whakapuaki ki a au, me mutu au te mahi whakangaro i roto i tona iwi; ae ra, i kite hoki ahau i tetahi anahera he kanohi he kanohi; a i korero ia ki a au, ko tona reo he reo whatitiri, a whakangaeuetia ana te whenua katoa.

## Alma 38

My son, give ear to my words, for I say unto you, even as I said unto Helaman, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land; and inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

And now, my son, I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God; for as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments; for blessed is he that endureth to the end.

I say unto you, my son, that I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people of the Zoramites.

For I know that thou wast in bonds; yea, and I also know that thou wast stoned for the word's sake; and thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee; and now thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

And now my son, Shiblon, I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Now, my son, I would not that ye should think that I know these things of myself, but it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me; for if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

But behold, the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people; yea, and I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.



- 8      Nawai a, ka toru oku ra, ka toru hoki nga po i roto i te mamae kino rawa atu, i te aue hoki o te wairua; a kahore rawa ahau i whiwhi ki te murunga hara, tae noa ki taku karangatanga ki te Ariki ki a Ihu Karaiti kia tohungia. Otira i karanga ake ahau ki a ia, a i kitea hoki e au te okiokinga mo toku wairua.
- 9      Na, e taku tamaiti, kua korerotia atu tenei mea e ahau ki a koe kia ako ai koe i te matauranga, kia akona ano hoki koe e ahau, kahore atu he huarahi, he tikanga ranei, e ora ai te tangata ma roto anake i a te Karaiti. Nana, ko ia te ora me te maramatanga o te ao. Nana, ko ia te kupu pono, te kupu tika.
- 10     Na, e mea ana ahau kia ako tonu atu koe i te kupu, kia pena me tau i timata ai; a e mea ana ano ahau kia uaua koe, kia whai whakaaro i roto i nga mea katoa.
- 11     Me whakaaro kia kaua e kake ake ki te whakapehapeha; ae ra, me whakaaro kia kaua e whakapehapeha i runga i tou ake matauranga, i runga ranei i tou kaha nui;
- 12     Kia maia tau, a kaua e taikaha; kia pehi ano hoki i ou hiahia taikaha katoa, kia ki tonu ai koe i te aroha; tahuri atu hoki i te mangere;
- 13     Kaua tau inoi e pera me ta nga Horama, kua kite hoki koe i ta ratou inoi he mea kia rangona ai e nga tangata, kia whakamoemititia ai ano hoki ratou mo to ratou matauranga.
- 14     Kauaka e penei tau kupu, E te Atua, ka whakawhetai ake ahau ki a koe mo matou e pai ake nei i o matou teina; engari te mea atu, E te Ariki, murua noatia atu toku kino, a maharatia hoki oku teina i runga i te aroha; ae ra, whakaaetia atu tou kino ki te aroaro o te Atua i nga wa katoa.
- 15     A ma te Ariki tou wairua e manaaki, e tuku hoki i a koe ki roto ki tona kingitanga a te ra whakamutunga, hei noho i roto i te rangimarire. Tena, haere atu, e taku tamaiti, akona te kupu ki tenei iwi. Kia whai whakaaro. E taku tamaiti, hei konei ra.

And it came to pass that I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul; and never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins. But behold, I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

And now, my son, I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom, that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ. Behold, he is the life and the light of the world. Behold, he is the word of truth and righteousness.

And now, as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye should continue to teach; and I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

See that ye are not lifted up unto pride; yea, see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much strength.

Use boldness, but not overbearance; and also see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love; see that ye refrain from idleness.

Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and remember my brethren in mercy—yea, acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

And may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and teach the word unto this people. Be sober. My son, farewell.

*Ko nga Whakahaunga a Arami ki tana tamaiti ki a Korianato.*

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 39

- 1 Na, e taku tamaiti, nui atu aku kupu ki a koe i taku i korero ai ki tou tuakana; no te mea, he teka ianei kua kite koe i te u o tou tuakana i tona pono, me tona uaua hoki ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua? A he teka ianei kua homai e ia he tauira pai mou.
- 2 No te mea, kihai i rite te nui o tou whakarongo ki aku kupu i o tou tuakana, i roto i te iwi o nga Horama. Na, tenei te mea kei a au hei whakahe mou; i haere na koe i runga i te whakapehapeha ki tou ake kaha, ki tou ake matauranga ano hoki.
- 3 Heoi, ehara tenei i te katoa, e taku tamaiti, I mea ano hoki koe i te mea i pouri rawa ai ahau; no te mea i whakarere koe i te mahi minita, a haere atu ana ki roto ki te whenua o Hairona, ki roto ki nga rohe o nga Ramana, e whai ana i te wahine puremu, i a Ihipera;
- 4 A i tahaetia atu e ia nga ngakau o nga tangata maha: otira ehara tera i te mea hei tukunga atu mou, e taku tamaiti. Ko te mea tika mau kia whakaaro ki te mahi minita te mea i tukua ai ki a koe.
- 5 Kahore oti koe e matau, e taku tamaiti, ko enei mea he mea whakarihariha ki te titiro iho a te Ariki; ae ra, he mea whakarihariha rawa atu i nga hara katoa, haunga te whakaheke i te toto hara-kore raua ko te whakakahore ki te Wairua Tapu?
- 6 Ina hoki, ki te whakakahore koe ki te Wairua Tapu i te mea kua whai wahi ia i roto i a koe, me tou mohio ano kei te whakakahore koe ki a ia, nana, he hara tena e kore e taea te muru; ae ra, ko te tangata kei a ia te maramatanga me te matauranga ki te Atua, a ka kohuru ia, na, ehara i te mea ngawari kia whiwhi tena ki te murunga hara; ae ra, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, e taku tamaiti, ehara i te mea ngawari kia whiwhi tena ki te murunga hara.
- 7 Na, e taku tamaiti, ko taku tenei e inoi nei ki te Atua me i kahore koe i hara i taua hara nui. Heoi kahore ahau e korero roa mo ou hara hei whakararururu i tou wairua ki te mea ehara tenei i te pai mou.

*The commandments of Alma to his son Corianton.*

## Alma 39

And now, my son, I have somewhat more to say unto thee than what I said unto thy brother; for behold, have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God? Behold, has he not set a good example for thee?

For thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother, among the people of the Zoramites. Now this is what I have against thee; thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

And this is not all, my son. Thou didst do that which was grievous unto me; for thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

Yea, she did steal away the hearts of many; but this was no excuse for thee, my son. Thou shouldst have tended to the ministry wherewith thou wast entrusted.

Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

For behold, if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable; yea, and whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness; yea, I say unto you, my son, that it is not easy for him to obtain a forgiveness.

And now, my son, I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime. I would not dwell upon your crimes, to harrow up your soul, if it were not for your good.

- 8 Oтира, kahore koe e kaha ki te huna i ou hara i te Atua; a ki te kore koe e ripeneta, ka meinga ena hei kai whakahahe mou a te ra whakamutungu.
- 9 Na, e taku tamaiti, taku e mea nei kia ripeneta koe, kia whakarerea atu ou hara, a kati noa tou haere i runga i nga hiahia taikaha o ou kanohi, me whakakahore o hiahia ki enei mea katoa; no te mea ki te kahore tenei mea e meatia e koe, e kore rawa koe e whiwhi ki te kingitanga o te Atua. Aue, kia maharatia e koe, kia mau koe ki tenei, ara, ki te whakakahore i ou hiahia ki enei mea.
- 10 Na, ko taku whakahau atu tenei ki a koe, me waiho tenei hei tikanga mou, ara, te runanga me ou tuakana i roto i ou mea katoa e mea ai koe; ta te mea hoki, kei roto koe i tou taitamarikitanga, a e hapa ana koe i te atawhainga a ou tuakana. A me whakarongo koe ki a raua kupu.
- 11 Kauaka koe e tuku i a koe kia whakakotitia ketia e tetahi mea tekateka noa, wairangi ranei: kauaka e tuku i te rewera hei arahi i tou ngakau kia whai ano i muri i aua wahine puremu kino. Nana, e taku tamaiti, ano te nui o te kino i whakaputa ai koe ki runga ki nga Horama: i ta ratou kitenga hoki i tau whakahaere, kahore ratou i whakapono ki aku kupu.
- 12 Na, ko te meatanga mai a te Wairua o te Ariki ki a au. Whakahaua iho au tamariki kia mahi i te pai, kei arahina atu e ratou nga ngakau o nga iwi maha ki te whakangaromanga; koia ahau ka whakahau iho i a koe, e taku tamaiti, i runga i te wehi ki te Atua, kia mawehe atu koe i ou mahi kino;
- 13 Kia tahuri koe ki te Ariki me tou hinengaro katoa, me tou kaha, me tou marohirohi; kia kore ano hoki koe e arahi ano i nga ngakau o etahi atu ki te mahi kino; engari kia hoki ki a ratou, me te whakaae ano ki ou he, a kia puritia taua he kua mahia na e koe.
- 14 Auaka e rapua nga taonga, nga mea tekateka noa ranei o tenei ao, ina hoki, e kore hoki e ahei i a koe ena mea te mau atu.
- 15 Tena, e taku tamaiti, e mea ana ahau ki te korero atu ki a koe mo te putanga mai o te Karaiti. Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, he pono ko ia tera kei te haere mai, hei tango i nga hara o te ao; ae, e haere mai ana ia ki te whakapuaki i nga rongo whakahari o te whakaoranga ki tana iwi.

But behold, ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

Now my son, I would that ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God. Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

And I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth, and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers. And give heed to their counsel.

Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing; suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those wicked harlots. Behold, O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my words.

And now the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to destruction; therefore I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from your iniquities;

That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength; that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly; but rather return unto them, and acknowledge your faults and that wrong which ye have done.

Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world; for behold, you cannot carry them with you.

And now, my son, I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of Christ. Behold, I say unto you, that it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world; yea, he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

- 16 Na, e taku tamaiti, ko te mahi minita tenei i karangatia ai koe, ki te whakapuaki i enei rongo whakahari ki tenei iwi, ki te whakarite i o ratou ngakau; ara, kia puta te whakaoranga ki a ratou, kia whakarite ai ratou i nga ngakau o a ratou tamariki kia whakarongo ki te kupu a te wa o tona haerenga mai.
- 17 Na, maku e whakamarama tou hinengaro ki tenei tikanga. Nana, e miharo ana koe ki te take e mohiotia wawetia ana enei mea i mua noa atu i tona haerenga mai. Na, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, He teka ianei e rite ana te utu o tetahi wairua inaianei ki ta te Atua, ki to te utu o tetahi i te wa e puta mai ai ia?
- 18 He teka ianei, e takoto rite ana te tikanga nui kia whakaturia mai te tikanga o te whakaoranga ki tenei iwi, ki to te mea ki a ratou tamariki?
- 19 He teka ianei e rite ana te ngawari inaianei ma te Ariki e tono tana anahera, ki te whakapuaki i enei rongo whakahari ki a tatou, ki to te mea ki a tatou tamariki; ki to te mea ranei i muri atu i tona haerenga mai?

And now, my son, this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds; or rather that salvation might come unto them, that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the word at the time of his coming.

And now I will ease your mind somewhat on this subject. Behold, you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand. Behold, I say unto you, is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 40

- 1 Na, e taku tamaiti, tenei ano tetahi korero aku e mea ana ahau kia korero ki a koe; no te mea e kite ana ahau kei te raruraru ou whakaaro mo te aranga o te hunga mate.
- 2 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koe, kahore he aranga mai; ara, ko taku e mea nei, kahore tenei hanga matemate nei e kakahuria e te mea mate kore; tenei hanga pirau e te mea pirau kore, engari i muri atu i te putanga mai o te Karaiti.
- 3 Nana, e whakaputa mai ana ia i te aranga mai mo te hunga mate. Tena ko tenei, e taku tamaiti, taihoa ia te aranga mai. Na, ka hurahia atu nei e ahau tetahi mea ngaro ki a koe; ahakoa ra tera atu ano tona tini o nga mea ngaro, e puritia nei, te mohiotia e etahi tangata, erangi e te Atua anake. Heoi kotahi taku mea e whakaatu nei ahau ki a koe, te mea nei hoki kua ata inoia marietia e ahau ki te Atua, kia mohio ai ahau; koia ano mo te aranga mai.
- 4 Nana, ka oti tetahi wa te whakarite e puta mai ai te katoa i te hunga mate. A kohore tetahi tangata e mohio ki te putanga mai o tenei wa; ko te Atua ia e mohio ana ki te wa i whakaritea ai.
- 5 Na, ahakoa ka kotahi tonu, ka rua ranei te wa, ka toru ranei e puta mai ai te tangata i te hunga mate, kahore he tikanga o tenei; no te mea e mohio ana te Atua ki enei mea katoa; a kati ano maku ko te mohio ki tenei; kua whakaritea he wa e ara ai te katoa i te mate.
- 6 Na, me whai takiwa ano i waenganui o te wa o te mate, o te wa o te aranga mai.
- 7 Na, he ui tenei naku, e ahatia ana nga wairua o nga tangata, atu i tenei wa o te mate tae noa ki te wa i whakaritea ai mo te aranga mai?
- 8 Na, ahakoa neke ake i te Kotahi te aranga i whakaritea ai mo te tangata, kahore he tikanga; kahore hoki nga tangata katoa e mate i te wa kotahi; a kahore ano he tikanga o tenei; ki ta te Atua, rite tonu nga ra maha ki te ra kotahi, a ki te tangata anake e whakaritea ana te taima;

## Alma 40

Now my son, here is somewhat more I would say unto thee; for I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

Behold, I say unto you, that there is no resurrection—or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption—until after the coming of Christ.

Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet. Now, I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself. But I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know—that is concerning the resurrection.

Behold, there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God knoweth the time which is appointed.

Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case—that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

Now there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

And now I would inquire what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

Now whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

9 Koia i whakaritea ai he wa mo te tangata, kia ara ai te hunga mate; a he takiwa ano tera i waenganui o te mate, o te aranga mai. Na, mo tenei takiwa. Ko te mea hoki tenei i ata inoia marietia ai e ahau ki te Ariki kia mohio ai ahau e ahatia ana nga wairua o nga tangata; a ko te mea tenei e mohiotia ana e ahau.

10 A ka puta mai te wa e ara ai te katoa, ko reira ratou matau ai ki te Atua, e matau ana ki nga wa katoa kua whakaritea nei mo te tangata.

11 Na, ko te ahua o te wairua i te matenga tae noa ki te aranga mai. Nana, na tetahi anahera i whakakite mai ki a au, ko nga wairua o nga tangata katoa, i te mahuetanga i a ratou o tenei tinana matemate nei; aera, ko nga wairua o nga tangata katoa, ahakoa pai, ahakoa kino, ka whakahokia tonutia ki taua Atua nana nei te ora i homai ki a ratou.

12 Hei reira tukua ai nga wairua o te hunga tika ki te wahi whakahari, e karangatia nei ko pararaiha; he wahi okiokinga, he wahi rangimarie, a okioki ana ki reira i o ratou rarunga katoa, i o ratou manukanukatanga katoa, i to ratou pouri, i te aha, i te aha.

13 Ko reira ano hoki nga wairua o te hunga kino, e kino nei; ina hoki kahore o ratou wahi, kahore o ratou taunga ki te Wairua o te Ariki; no te mea i whiriwhiri ratou i nga mahi kino ko nga mea pai ia whakakahoretia ake; koia i tomo ai te rewera ki roto ki a ratou, a nohoia ana o ratou whare; na, maka atu ana enei ki roto ki te pouritanga o waho; ko te wahi tera o te tangihanga, o te auetanga, o te teteatanga o nga niho; mo to ratou kino ake; kua arahina hoki ratou i runga i ta te rewera i pai ai.

14 Na, ko te wahi tenei mo nga wairua o te hunga kino; koia kei roto ratou i te pouritanga, e noho matakua ana, e titiro wehi ana ki te whakatakariri tuaahi o ta te Atua riri ki a ratou; a penei, ka waiho ratou i tenei wahi, ka pera me te hunga tika e noho ana i pararaiha, a taea noatia te wa mo to ratou aranga mai.

Therefore, there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead; and there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection. And now, concerning this space of time, what becometh of the souls of men is the thing which I have inquired diligently of the Lord to know; and this is the thing of which I do know.

And when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

Now, concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection—Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel, that the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

And then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil—for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house—and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

Now this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them; thus they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

- 15 Na, ko etahi kua mahara ki tenei noho hari, me tenei noho pouri o te wairua, i mua i te aranga mai, he aranga tuatahi. Na, e whakaae ana ahau e taea ana tenei kia karangatia he aranga; he aranga mo te wairua, ara, mo te tangata wairua, he tukunga atu i a ratou ki te hari, ki te pouri ranei, ki te ritenga o nga kupu kua oti nei te korero.
- 16 Nana, tenei ano tetahi kupu kua korerotia, he aranga tuatahi ano; he aranga mo te hunga katoa o mua, o naiane, o muri atu ano hoki, a tae noa atu ki te aranga mai o te Karaiti i te mate.
- 17 Na, kahore o tatou whakaaro ki tenei aranga tuatahi e korerotia peneitia nei, ko ia te aranga mo nga wairua, me to ratou tukunga atu ki te hari, ki te pouri ranei. E kore ano hoki e ahei kia kiia ko tona tikanga tera.
- 18 Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, Kahore, engari ko tona tikanga tenei, ko te whakakotahitanga o te wairua me te tinana mo te hunga i nga ra o Arama. a tae noa atu ki te aranga mai o te Karaiti.
- 19 Na, kahore au e mea atu, ka whakakotahitia ranei i te wa kotahi, nga wairua me nga tinana o te hunga kua korerotia ake nei o te hunga kino me te hunga tika; Me kati noa i taku e mea atu nei ki a koe, ka puta mai ratou katoa: ara, ka puta mai to ratou aranga i mua i te aranga o te hunga i mate i muri atu i te aranga o te Karaiti.
- 20 Na, e taku tamaiti, kahore au e ki, hei te aranga mo te Karaiti e mana ai to ratou aranga; engari he whakaaro noa iho naku taku e korero nei, ka whakakotahitia ano nga wairua me nga tinana o te hunga tika, a te aranga o te Karaiti me tana kakenga ake ki te rangi.
- 21 Otira, kahore au e ki, hei tana aranga ranei, hei muri atu ranei; heoi ko taku tenei e ki nei, he takiwa ano ki waenganui o te mate me te aranga o te tinana, me tetahi noho ano o te wairua i runga i te hari i te pouri ranei tae noa ki te wa i whakaritea ai e te Atua hei putanga mai mo te hunga mate, a whakakotahitia ana, te wairua raua ko te tinana, kawea ana kia tu ki te aroaro o te Atua, whakawakia ai kia rite ki a ratou mahi:
- 22 Na, ka rite i tenei te whakahokinga o aua mea i korerotia ai e nga mangai o nga poropiti.

Now, there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection. Yea, I admit it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignation to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

And behold, again it hath been spoken, that there is a first resurrection, a resurrection of all those who have been, or who are, or who shall be, down to the resurrection of Christ from the dead.

Now, we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignation to happiness or misery. Ye cannot suppose that this is what it meaneth.

Behold, I say unto you, Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

Now, whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say; let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth; or in other words, their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

Now, my son, I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

But whether it be at his resurrection or after, I do not say; but this much I say, that there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body, and be brought to stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

Yea, this bringeth about the restoration of those things of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

- 23 Ka whakahokia te wairua ki te tinana, me te tinana ki te wairua, ko nga wahi katoa ano hoki me nga pona ka whakahokia ki tona tinana ake; ae ra, e kore hoki tetahi makawe e ngaro atu, engari ka whakahokia nga mea katoa ki o ratou wahi e rite ai.
- 24 Na, e taku tamaiti, ko te whakahokinga tenei i korerotia nei e nga mangai o nga poropiti:
- 25 Katahi ka tiaho atu te hunga tika i roto i te kingitanga o te Atua.
- 26 Ko te matenga nanakia ia ka pa mai ki te hunga kino; ka mate hoki ratou mo te taha ki nga mea o te tika; no te mea e poke ana ratou, a kahore e ahei i tetahi mea poke te whiwhi ki te kingitanga o te Atua: heoi ka maka ratou ki waho, ka tukua hoki kia kai i nga hua o a ratou mahi, i kino nei; a ka inu ratou i nga nganga o te kapa kawa.

The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

And now, my son, this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets—

And then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

But behold, an awful death cometh upon the wicked; for they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God; but they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.



## Te Pukapuka A Arami 41

- 1 Na, e taku tamaiti, he korero taku mo runga i tenei whakahokinga kua korerotia ake nei; ina hoki, kua whakaputaina ketia nga karaipiture e etahi, a, na tenei mea kua kotiti ke rawa atu ratou. A e kite ana ano ahau kua raruraru ano hoki tou ngakau i tenei mea. Nana, maku tenei e whakamarama atu ki a koe.
- 2 Na, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, e taku tamaiti, e tika ana te tikanga o tenei whakahokinga ki ta te Atua tika; no te mea e tika ana kia whakahokia nga mea katoa ki o ratou wahi e tika ai. Nana, kua takoto nei te tikanga, a, he mea tika hoki ki te ritenga o te mana me te aranga mai o te Karaiti, kia whakahokia te wairua o te tangata ki tona tinana, me tena wahi, me tena wahi o te tinana kia whakahokia ki tona wahi ake ano.
- 3 A e tika ana ki ta te Atua tika, kia whakawakia nga tangata ki te ritenga o a ratou mahi; a ki te mea kua pai a ratou mahi i tenei ora, me nga hiahia hoki o o ratou ngakau kua pai, waihoki a te ra whakamutunga ka whakahokia ratou ki nga mea pai;
- 4 Na, ki te mea he kino a ratou mahi, ka whakahokia ki a ia he kino; no reira, ka whakahokia nga mea katoa ki o ratou wahi e tika ai, tenei mea, tenei mea ki tona wahi e rite ai; whakaarahia ake hei mea mate-kore te mea matemate nei; hei mea pirau-kore te mea pirau nei; whakaarahia ake ki te hari mau tonu, hei noho i te kingitanga o te Atua, ki te pouri mau tonu ranei, hei noho i te kingitanga o te rewera, ko tetahi ki tetahi ringaringa, ko tetahi ki tetahi.
- 5 Ko tetahi, whakaarahia ake ki te hari i runga i ana hiahia ki te hari; ki te pai ranei, i runga i ana hiahia ki te pai, ko tetahi, ki te kino i runga i ana hiahia ki te kino; no te mea i a ia ka hiahia nei ki te mahi i te kino i te ra roa, waihoki ka whiwhi ia ki te utu o te kino ina tae mai te po.
- 6 A e rite ana ano to tera taha. Ki te mea kua ripeneta ia ki ana hara, me te hiahia ano ki te tika, a taea noatia te mutunga o ona ra, waihoki ka utua ia ki te utu o te tika.

## Alma 41

And now, my son, I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken; for behold, some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray because of this thing. And I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing. But behold, I will explain it unto thee.

I say unto thee, my son, that the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God; for it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order. Behold, it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ, that the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

And it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works; and if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

And if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil. Therefore, all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame—mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption—raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil, the one on one hand, the other on the other—

The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good; and the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

And so it is on the other hand. If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

- 7 Ko te hunga enei kua hokona e te Ariki; ae ra, ko te hunga enei kua tangohia ki waho, kua whakaorangia i taua po mutunga-kore o te pouritanga; na, penei ka tu ratou, ka hinga ranei; ina hoki, kei a ratou te tikanga mo ratou ake, ki te mahi i te pai, i te kino ranei.
- 8 Na, e kore e taea nga tikanga a te Atua te whakaputa ke; no reira kua rite te huarahi, kia haere ra reira te tangata e pai ana, a ka whakaorangia.
- 9 Tena, e taku tamaiti, kua koe e maia ki te mahi i tetahi atu he ki tou Atua i runga i enei akoranga, i maia ai koe ki te mahi he i mua.
- 10 Na, no te mea kua korerotia te whakahokinga, auaka koe e whakaaro tera koe e whakahokia i te hara ki te hari. Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, ehara rawa te hara i te hari.
- 11 Na, e taku tamaiti, ko nga tangata katoa i roto nei i te tikanga maori, ara, taku kupu, i roto i to te kikokiko, kei roto ano ratou kei te au kawa, kei nga here hoki o te kino: he hunga Atua kore ratou i te ao nei, kua kotiti ke hoki ratou i to te Atua ahua; na reira, e rere ke ana to ratou ahua i to te hari.
- 12 Nana, ko te tikanga ianei tenei o te whakahokinga, kia mau ki tetahi mea maori, ka whakarereke ki tetahi atu ahua, ae ra, ki te ahua e tino rereke-rawa ana i tona ahua tuatahi?
- 13 Aue, e taku tamaiti, ehara tenei i te tikanga: engari te tikanga o te kupu whakahoki, koia tenei, kia whakahokia te kino mo te kino, te mea ano hoki o te kikokiko mo te mea o te kikokiko, te mea o te rewera mo te mea o te rewera; te pai mo te pai: te tika mo te tika: te rite mo te rite; te atawhai mo te atawhai:
- 14 Na reira, e taku tamaiti, kia puta tou atawhai ki ou teina; kia tika te whakahaere, kia tika te whakarite whakawa, kia mahi tonu i te pai; na, ki te mahia e koe enei mea katoa, ka riro i a koe tou utu; ae ra, ka whakahokia ano ki a koe te atawhai; ka whakahokia ano ki a koe te mea rite; ka whakahokia ano ki te whakaritenga tika o te whakawa; a ka utua ano koe ki te pai;
- 15 Ko tau hoki e tuku atu ai ka hoki mai ano tena ki a koe; na reira, tera noa ake to te whakahokinga whakahe ki te tangata hara, a kahore rawa he whakatika mona.

These are they that are redeemed of the Lord; yea, these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness; and thus they stand or fall; for behold, they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Now, the decrees of God are unalterable; therefore, the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

And now behold, my son, do not risk one more offense against your God upon those points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness. Behold, I say unto you, wickedness never was happiness.

And now, my son, all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God; therefore, they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

And now behold, is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

O, my son, this is not the case; but the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, or carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish—good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

Therefore, my son, see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually; and if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward; yea, ye shall have mercy restored unto you again; ye shall have justice restored unto you again; ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again; and ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

For that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored; therefore, the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 42

- 1 Na e taku tamaiti, e kite ana ahau kei te raruraru ano ou whakaaro i tetahi atu mea, kahore nei e taea e koe te mohio, ko te mea tena mo te tika a te Atua, mo te whiunga i te tangata hara; e tohe ana ano ou whakaaro, e mea ana, he mea he te tukunga i te tangata ki tetahi nohoanga whakapouri.
- 2 Na, e taku tamaiti, maku e whakamarama tena mea ki a koe; nana, i muri i te pananga a te Ariki a te Atua i o tatou matua tuatahi i roto i te kari o Erene, hei ngaki i te whenua i tangohia mai nei raua i reira; ae, ka kukume ia i te tangata ki waho, ka whakanohoia e ia i te pito ki te rawhiti o te kari o Erene, tetahi Kerupima me tetahi hoari mura, he mea piupiu tonu ki tetahi taha, ki tetahi taha, hei tiaki i te rakau o te ora.
- 3 Na, ka kite taua kua rite te tangata ki te Atua, te mohio ki te pai ki te kino; na, kei totoro atu tona ringa, kei tango i to te rakau o te ora, kei kai, a ka ora tonu, ka whakanohoia e te Ariki, e te Atua, tetahi Kerupima me tetahi hoari mura, kia kore ai ia e tango i etahi o nga hua;
- 4 A penei, ka kite taua, tera ano he wa i tukua ki te tangata kia ripeneta, koia, he wa whakamatautau, he wa kia ripeneta me te mahi ki te Atua.
- 5 Ina hoki, me he mea i totoro wawe atu te ringa o Arama, me he mea i tango i to te rakau o te ora, penei kua ora tonu ia, ake ake, ki te ritenga o te kupu a te Atua, kua kore hoki ona wa mo te ripeneta; a ko te kupu ano hoki a te Atua kua kore e mana, to te whakaoranga tikanga kua whakakorea atu.
- 6 Heoi, i whakaritea mo te tangata kia mate; no reira i te mea kua hatepea mai ratou i te rakau o te ora, waihoki me hatepe atu ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua, a ka ngaro te tangata, ake ake ake; ae, ka riro ratou hei hunga taka.
- 7 Na konei tatou ka kite, i hatepea atu o tatou matua tuatahi mo to te tinana, mo to te wairua, i te aroaro o te Ariki; na, penei ka kite tatou i riro raua, hei mea kia whai i ta raua ake i pai ai.
- 8 Na, kahore i tika kia whakaorangia mai te tangata i te mate tinana, he whakakahore hoki tena i te tikanga nui o te hari;

## Alma 42

And now, my son, I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind, which ye cannot understand—which is concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner; for ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be con-signed to a state of misery.

Now behold, my son, I will explain this thing unto thee. For behold, after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken—yea, he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the tree of life—

Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good and evil; and lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit—

And thus we see, that there was a time granted unto man to repent, yea, a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

For behold, if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word of God, having no space for repentance; yea, and also the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of salvation would have been frustrated.

But behold, it was appointed unto man to die—therefore, as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off from the face of the earth—and man became lost forever, yea, they became fallen man.

And now, ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord; and thus we see they became subjects to follow after their own will.

Now behold, it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

- 9 No reira, i te mea kahore o te wairua matenga, a na te takanga i whakaputa mai te mate ki nga tangata katoa, te mate mo te wairua, mo te tinana ano hoki; ara, i hatepea atu ratou i te aroaro o te Ariki; na, e tika ana kia whakaorangia te tangata i tenei mate o te wairua;
- 10 Na konei, i te mea kua riro ratou i to te kikokiko, i to te ngakau maori, i to te rewera, he mea na nga tikanga maori, i riro ai tenei wa whakamatau hei wa mo ratou kia whakariterite; na, riro ana ia hei wa whakariterite.
- 11 Na, kia mahara, e taku tamaiti, me i kore tenei tikanga o te hokonga, (ara, kia whakanekehia atu tena.) kia mate ratou ka pouri o ratou wairua, i te mea kua hatepea atu ratou i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 12 Na, kahore he mea hei hoko i nga tangata i tenei tikanga taka i takina ai e te tangata ki a ia ano, he mea na tana ake tutu;
- 13 Na reira, ki ta te tika, e kore e taea te whakaputa i te tikanga o te hokonga, engari ma te ripeneta anake o te tangata i a ia i tenei wa whakamatautau; ara, i tenei wa whakariterite; me i kore hoki enei tikanga, penei kua kore e ahei i te tohu tangata te whai mana engari i runga i te whakangaromanga o te tika. Na, e kore e taea te mahi a te tika te whakangaro: me he mea hoki e peneitia heoi ano tikanga o te Atua hei Atua.
- 14 A penei, ka kite tatou he mea taka nga tangata katoa, he mea pupuri hoki e te tika; ara, e ta te Atua tika, e te mea e tuku nei i a ratou kia hatepea atu i tona aroaro, a ake ake tonu atu.
- 15 Na, e kore e taea te tikanga o te tohu tangata, te whakaputa ki te kore e whakaritea he whakamarietanga; no reira ma te Atua tonu e hohou i te rongo mo nga hara o te ao, hei whakaputa i te tikanga o te tohu tangata, hei whakamarie i nga tono a te tika, kia waiho ai te Atua he Atua tino tika, he Atua pono, he Atua tohu tangata ano hoki.
- 16 Na, kua kore ano hoki e ahei i te ripeneta te puta mai ki te tangata, ki te kore hoki he whiunga, koia nei he mea mau tonu e rite ana ki te ora o te wairua, e whakatakotoria ki wahi ke i te tikanga whakahari, koia nei hoki e mau tonu e rite ana ki te ora o te wairua.

Therefore, as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal, that is, they were cut off from the presence of the Lord, it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

Therefore, as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

And now remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And now, there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

Therefore, according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state; for except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect except it should destroy the work of justice. Now the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

And thus we see that all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

And now, the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made; therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

Now, repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be, affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

17 Na, me pehea e ripeneta ai te tangata ki te mea kahore ia i hara? Me pehea hoki e hara ai te tangata, ki te mea kahore he ture, me pehea hoki he ture ki te kahore he whiunga?

18 Ko tenei, i whakatakotoria he whiunga, i homai hoki he ture tika, a na enei i kawe mai te pouri mo te hara ki te ngakau o te tangata.

19 Na, me he mea kahore he ture i homai,—ki te kohuru te tangata, ka mate ia, tera ianei ia e wehi kei mate ia mona i kohuru?

20 Me tenei hoki, me he mea kahore he ture i homai hei whakahahe i te hara, penei kua kore nga tangata e wehi ki te hara.

21 A, me he mea kahore he ture i homai, ki te mea ka hara te tangata, na, ka taea te aha e te tika, e te mahi tohu ranei; ka kore ake hoki o raua tikanga ki runga ki te tangata?

22 Heoi, he ture ano kua homai a kua oti hoki te whitinga te whakatakoto mai, me tetahi ripeneta ano te whakaae mai; a na te tohu tangata te ripeneta; me i kore, penei kua mau te tangata i te tika, kua whakaritea te ture mona, a ma te ture hoki e homai te whiunga; me i kore, penei kua whakangaromia nga mahi a te tika, a heoi ano tikanga o te Atua hei Atua.

23 Heoi kahore e mutu te tikanga o te Atua hei Atua, a ma te tohu tangata te hunga ripeneta, na, e puta ake ana te tohu tangata i te whakamarietanga; na, puta ake ano i te whakamarietanga te aranga o te hunga mate; a ma te aranga o te hunga mate e whakahoki atu nga tangata ki te aroaro o te Atua; a e penei ana to ratou whakahokinga atu ki tona aroaro, kia whakawakia ki te ritenga o a ratou mahi; i runga i te ture me te tika;

24 Ta te mea, e tonoa ana āna mea katoa e te tika, me ana ake mea katoa ano hoki e te tohu tangata; a penei ko te hunga tino ngakau ripeneta anake e whakaorangia ana.

25 Ha! e mahara ana ianei koe e kaha ana te tohu tangata ki te tahae i ta te tika? Ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, kahore; Kahore kia kotahi te tongi. Me he mea hoki e pera ana, penei, heoi ano tikanga o te Atua hei Atua.

Now, how could a man repent except he should sin? How could he sin if there was no law? How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

Now, there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

Now, if there was no law given—if a man murdered he should die—would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

And also, if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid to sin.

And if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance, mercy claimeth; otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment; if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

But God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement; and the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead; and the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God; and thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works, according to the law and justice.

For behold, justice exerciseth all his demands, and also mercy claimeth all which is her own; and thus, none but the truly penitent are saved.

What, do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

- 26 A e pera ana ta te Atua whakaputa i ana tikanga nui mau tonu i whakaritea ai no te orokohanganga ra ana o te ao. A he pera tonu hoki te putanga o te whakaoranga me te hokonga o te tangata, me to ratou whakangaromanga ano hoki me to ratou pouri;
- 27 Na reira, E taku tamaiti, ko te tangata e pai ana ki te haere mai, mana e haere mai, ki te inu noa i nga wai ora: a ko te tangata kahore nei e pai ki te haere mai, otira i te ra whakamutunga ka whakahokia ki a ia te mea kia rite ki ana mahi.
- 28 Ki te mea ko tana i hiahia ai ko te mahi kino, a kahore ia i ripeneta i roto i ona ra, na, ka meatia te kino ki a ia kia rite ki ta te Atua whakahokinga.
- 29 Na, e taku tamaiti, e hiahia ana ahau kia kua enei mea e tukua e koe hei whakararuraru i a koe i muri iho, ko ou hara anake hei whakararuraru i a koe, ki taua whakararu e meinga ai koe kia ripeneta.
- 30 E taku tamaiti, e hiahia ana ahau kia kua e whakakahoretia ano e koe ta te Atua tika. Kei tohe koe ki te whakatika i a koe ano ki tetahi mea iti rawa atu, he mea mo ou hara, i runga i te whakakahore i ta te Atua tika, engari tukua ra e koe te tika a te Atua, me tana aroha noa me tana puhoi ki te riri, kia whakahaere nui i roto i tou ngakau; engari kia whakahokia iho koe e tenei ki raro ki te puehu, ki te ngakau papaku.
- 31 Na, E taku tamaiti, kua karangatia koe e te Atua ki te kauwhau i te kupu ki tenei iwi. Tena, e taku tamaiti, haere koe i runga i tou huarahi, whakapuakina te kupu i runga i te pono, i te whai whakaaro, kia meinga ai e koe nga wairua kia ripeneta, kia whai tikanga ai te tikanga nui tohu tangata ki runga ki a ratou. A ma te Atua e tuku atu ki a koe nga mea e rite ana ki aku kupu. Amine.

And thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world. And thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men, and also their destruction and misery.

Therefore, O my son, whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of life freely; and whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come; but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his deeds.

If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days, behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the restoration of God.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should let these things trouble you no more, and only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance.

O my son, I desire that ye should deny the justice of God no more. Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because of your sins, by denying the justice of God; but do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-suffering have full sway in your heart; and let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

And now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto this people. And now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them. And may God grant unto you even according to my words. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 43

- 1 Nawai a, ka haere atu nga tamariki a Arami ki roto ki te iwi, ki te whakapuaki i te kupu ki a ratou. Ko Arami ano hoki kahore e taea e ia te okioki, a haere atu ana ano ia.
- 2 Na, heoi ta matou kupu mo to ratou kauwhautanga, i kauwhau ratou i te kupu me te pono, i runga i te Wairua o te poropititanga me te whakakitenga; a i kauwhau ratou i runga i te ritenga tapu a te Atua, i karangatia ai ratou.
- 3 Na, ka hoki tenei ahau ki tetahi whakaaturanga mo nga whawhai i waenganui i nga Niwhai me nga Ramana, i te tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai whakariterite.
- 4 Nana, kua riro nga Horama hei Ramana; na, i te timatanga o te tekau ma waru o nga tau, ka kite te iwi o Niwhai kei te haere mai nga Ramana ki runga ki a ratou; na reira ka whakariterite ratou mo te whawhai; ae ra, ka huihuia ngatahitia a ratou taua i roto i te whenua o Herehona.
- 5 A ka haere mai nga Ramana me a ratou mano: ka haere mai ratou ki roto ki te whenua o Anationuma, ko ia nei te whenua o nga Horama: a ko te ingoa o to ratou rangatira ko Herahemena.
- 6 Na, i te mea ko nga Amareki nga tino tangata kino, nga tino kai kohuru nui ake i nga Ramana, i to ratou kino ake, no reira, ka whakaritea e Herahemena nga rangatira nui ki runga ki nga Ramana, a he Amareki anake ratou, he Horama.
- 7 A ka meatia tenei e ia kia mau ai ta ratou kino ki nga Niwhai; kia meinga ai ratou e ia kia ngohengohe ki a ia hei whakaoti i ana tikanga;
- 8 No te mea hoki ko tana i whakaaro ai kia whakaoho i nga Ramana ki te riri ki nga Niwhai; a ka meatia tenei e ia kia neke ake ai tona mana ki runga ki a ratou, kia neke ake ai ano tona mana ki runga ki nga Niwhai i runga i te whakamahinga i a ratou, me etahi atu mea pera ano hoki.

## Alma 43

And now it came to pass that the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them. And Alma, also, himself, could not rest, and he also went forth.

Now we shall say no more concerning their preaching, except that they preached the word, and the truth, according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation; and they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

And now I return to an account of the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites, in the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges.

For behold, it came to pass that the Zoramites became Lamanites; therefore, in the commencement of the eighteenth year the people of the Nephites saw that the Lamanites were coming upon them; therefore they made preparations for war; yea, they gathered together their armies in the land of Jershon.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came with their thousands; and they came into the land of Antionum, which is the land of the Zoramites; and a man by the name of Zerahemnah was their leader.

And now, as the Amalekites were of a more wicked and murderous disposition than the Lamanites were, in and of themselves, therefore, Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites, that he might bring them into subjection to the accomplishment of his designs.

For behold, his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites; this he did that he might usurp great power over them, and also that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

- 9 Na, ko te tikanga a nga Niwhai he tiaki i o ratou whenua, i o ratou whare, i a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, kia tiakina ai i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri, kia tiakina ai ano hoki e ratou a ratou takanga me a ratou ritenga; me to ratou tikanga here-kore, kia karakia ai ratou ki te Atua e rite ana ki ta ratou hiahia.
- 10 Ka mohio hoki ratou ki te taka ratou ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana, ko te tangata e karakia ana ki te Atua, ara, ki te Atua pono e ora ana, i runga i te Wairua me te pono, ka whakamatea tera e nga Ramana;
- 11 A, ka mohio ano hoki ratou ki ta nga Ramana kino ki o ratou teina, ko ratou nei te iwi o Anati-Niwhai-Rihai, i karangatia ra ko te iwi o Amona; a kahore ratou e pai ki te hapai patu; kua uru hoki ratou ki tetahi kawenata a kahore ratou i pai ki te takahi; na, ki te taka ratou ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana, era ratou e whakamatea.
- 12 Na, kahore nga Niwhai i pai ki te tuku i a ratou kia whakamatea; na reira i hoatu ai e ratou etahi whenua hei whenua tupu mo ratou.
- 13 A ka homai e te iwi o Amona tetahi wahi nui o a ratou mea hei tautoko i a ratou taua; na, penei kua meinga ko nga Niwhai anake hei tu ki nga Ramana, a ko ratou nei no Ramana, no Remuere, no nga tamariki a Ihimaera, no te hunga katoa ano hoki i puta atu i roto i nga Niwhai, ara, no nga Amareki, no nga Horama, me nga uri o nga tohunga a Noa.
- 14 Na, ko aua uri, wahi iti kua rite to ratou nui ki to nga Niwhai; na, penei ka meinga nga Niwhai kia tautohe atu ki o ratou teina, tae noa ki te whakaheke toto.
- 15 A i nga taua a nga Ramana e huihui ngatahi ana ki te whenua o Anationuma, nana, kua rite nga taua a nga Niwhai hei tutaki ki a ratou i te whenua o Herehona,
- 16 Na, ko te rangatira o nga Niwhai, ara, ko te tangata i whakaritea hei rangatira nui ki runga ki nga Niwhai; na, ko te rangatira nui ko ia te kai whakahau mo nga taua katoa o nga Niwhai, a ko Moronai tona ingoa;

And now the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children, that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies; and also that they might preserve their rights and their privileges, yea, and also their liberty, that they might worship God according to their desires.

For they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

Yea, and they also knew the extreme hatred of the Lamanites towards their brethren, who were the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, who were called the people of Ammon—and they would not take up arms, yea, they had entered into a covenant and they would not break it—therefore, if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would be destroyed.

And the Nephites would not suffer that they should be destroyed; therefore they gave them lands for their inheritance.

And the people of Ammon did give unto the Nephites a large portion of their substance to support their armies; and thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against the Lamanites, who were a compound of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, and all those who had dissented from the Nephites, who were Amalekites and Zoramites, and the descendants of the priests of Noah.

Now those descendants were as numerous, nearly, as were the Nephites; and thus the Nephites were obliged to contend with their brethren, even unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass as the armies of the Lamanites had gathered together in the land of Antionum, behold, the armies of the Nephites were prepared to meet them in the land of Jerushon.

Now, the leader of the Nephites, or the man who had been appointed to be the chief captain over the Nephites—now the chief captain took the command of all the armies of the Nephites—and his name was Moroni;



- 17 Na, ka riro i a Moronai te tikanga katoa me te whakahaeretanga o a ratou whawhai. A e rua tekau ma rima anake ona tau i tona whakaritenga hei rangatira nui ki runga ki nga taua a nga Niwhai.
- 18 Na, ka tutaki a ia ki nga Ramana ki nga rohe o Herehona, a ko nga patu a tona iwi, ko nga hoari ko nga hoari potu me nga tu mea whawhai katoa.
- 19 Na, ka kite nga taua a nga Ramana i te iwi o Niwhai, ara, kua hoatu e Moronai ki tana iwi nga whakangungu-rakau, nga puapua, me nga mea arai hei tiaki mo o ratou mahunga: a kua oti nei hoki ratou te kakahu ki nga kakahu matotoru.
- 20 Na, kahore i whakaritea enei mea ma te taua a Herahemena. Heoi ano a ratou, ko a ratou hoari, ko a ratou hoari potu, ko a ratou kopere, ko a ratou pere, ko a ratou kohatu, ko a ratou kotaha; heoi ka tu tahanga ratou, he hiako anake te whitiki o o ratou hope; ae ra, ka tu tahanga ratou katoa haunga nga Horama ratou ko nga Amareki.
- 21 Otira, kahore o ratou whakangungu-rakau, o ratou pukupuku ranei; koia i tino wehi ai ratou ki nga taua a nga Niwhai, mo o ratou kakahu whawhai hoki, ahakoa hira noa ake to ratou tokomahatanga i to nga Niwhai.
- 22 Nana, kahore ratou i maia ki te huaki ki nga Niwhai i nga rohe o Herehona: na reira ka haere atu ratou i roto i te whenua o Anationuma ki roto ki te koraha, a taiawhio haere ana ratou i roto i te koraha, ra te matapuna o te awa o Hairona, kia tae ai ratou ki roto ki te whenua o Manati, kia riro ai i a ratou te whenua; kahore hoki a ratou whakaaro tera nga taua o Moronai e mohio ki te wahi i haere ai ratou.
- 23 Heoi, i to ratou tahuritanga atu ki te koraha, ka tonoa e Moronai nga tutei ki roto ki te koraha ki te tutei i to ratou puni; na, i mohio hoki a Moronai ki nga poropititanga a Arami, a tonoa atu ana e ia etahi tangata ki a ia, e hiahia ana ki a ia, mana e ui atu ki te Ariki ki te wahi e haere ai nga taua a nga Niwhai, hei tiaki i a ratou ano i nga Ramana.

And Moroni took all the command, and the government of their wars. And he was only twenty and five years old when he was appointed chief captain over the armies of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that he met the Lamanites in the borders of Jershon, and his people were armed with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war.

And when the armies of the Lamanites saw that the people of Nephi, or that Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and also they were dressed with thick clothing—

Now the army of Zerahemnah was not prepared with any such thing; they had only their swords and their cimeters, their bows and their arrows, their stones and their slings; and they were naked, save it were a skin which was girded about their loins; yea, all were naked, save it were the Zoramites and the Amalekites;

But they were not armed with breastplates, nor shields—therefore, they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites because of their armor, notwithstanding their number being so much greater than the Nephites.

Behold, now it came to pass that they durst not come against the Nephites in the borders of Jershon; therefore they departed out of the land of Antionum into the wilderness, and took their journey round about in the wilderness, away by the head of the river Sidon, that they might come into the land of Manti and take possession of the land; for they did not suppose that the armies of Moroni would know whither they had gone.

But it came to pass, as soon as they had departed into the wilderness Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp; and Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

24 Nawai a, ka puta mai te kupu a te Ariki ki a Arami, a ka whakamohio a Arami i nga karere a Moronai, e taiawhio haere ana nga taua a nga Ramana i roto i te koraha, kia puta mai ai ratou ki roto ki te whenua o Manati, kia timata ai ratou te huaki ki te wahi ngoikore o te iwi. Na, haere atu ana aua karere, tukua atu ana te kupu ki a Moronai.

25 Na, waiho ana e Moronai tetahi wahi o tana taua ki te whenua o Herehona, kei haere-mai nga Ramana ki taua whenua, kei tango i te pa, a mau ana ki te toenga o tana taua, haere atu ana ki roto ki te whenua o Manati.

26 Na, meinga era ana e ia nga iwi katoa o taua wahi o te whenua kia huihuia ngatahitia ratou ki te whawhai, ki nga Ramana, hei tiaki i o ratou mara i to ratou whenua, i o ratou ritenga me to ratou tikanga here-kore: na konei i takatu ai ratou mo te taenga mai o nga Ramana.

27 Na, ka mea a Moronai i tana taua kia huna ki roto ki te raorao e tutata nei ki te taha o te awa o Hairona, ki te hauauru o te awa o Hairona, ki te koraha.

28 A whakanohoia ana e Moronai nga tutei ki nga wahi e patata ana, kia mohio ai ia ina haere mai te ope o nga Ramana.

29 A i mohio a Moronai ki te whakaaro o nga Ramana, ara, ko ta ratou whakaaro hei whakangaro i o ratou teina, ara, hei whakaeke tikanga ki runga ki a ratou hei whakamahi i a ratou, kia whakatungia ai e ratou he kingitanga mo ratou ano ki runga ki te whenua katoa.

30 A i mohio ano hoki ia kotahi tonu te whakaaro o nga Niwhai, hei tiaki i o ratou whenua, i to ratou tikanga here-kore, i to ratou hahi, koia i whakaaro ai ia kahore he hē o te tiaki i a ratou, i runga i te mahi maminga; no reira i kite ai ia, he mea na ana tutei i te huarahi e haere ai nga Ramana.

31 Na reira ka wehea e ia tana taua, ko tetahi wahi ka kawea atu ki roto ki te raorao, ka huna i a ratou ki te rawhiti, ki te tonga hoki ki te puke o Ripira;

32 A huna ana e ia te toenga ki te raorao i te hauauru, i te taha ki te hauauru o te awa o Hairona, a pera ana tae noa ki nga rohe o te whenua o Manati.

And it came to pass that the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come over into the land of Manti, that they might commence an attack upon the weaker part of the people. And those messengers went and delivered the message unto Moroni.

Now Moroni, leaving a part of his army in the land of Jershon, lest by any means a part of the Lamanites should come into that land and take possession of the city, took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the land of Manti.

And he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites, to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties; therefore they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his army should be secreted in the valley which was near the bank of the river Sidon, which was on the west of the river Sidon in the wilderness.

And Moroni placed spies round about, that he might know when the camp of the Lamanites should come.

And now, as Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

And he also knowing that it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church, therefore he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem; therefore, he found by his spies which course the Lamanites were to take.

Therefore, he divided his army and brought a part over into the valley, and concealed them on the east, and on the south of the hill Riplah;

And the remainder he concealed in the west valley, on the west of the river Sidon, and so down into the borders of the land Manti.

33 A penei kua whakanoho ia i tana taua e rite ana ki tana hiahia, a kua rite kia tutaki ki a ratou.

34 Nawai a, ka puta ake nga Ramana ki te nota ki taua puke ra, kei reira tetahi wahi o te taua a Moronai e huna ana.

35 Na, ka pahure te puke o Ripira i nga Ramana, ka tae ki roto ki te raorao, a ka anga ki te whakawhiti atu i te awa o Hairona, na, ko te taua e huna ana i te taha ki te tonga o taua puke, he tangata to ratou rangatira nona nei te ingoa ko Rihai, na, arahina atu ana e ia tana taua, a karapotitia ana nga Ramana ki te taha ki te rawhiti, ara to ratou hiku.

36 A, te kitenga o nga Ramana i nga Niwhai i te hiku e haere mai ana, na, ka tahuri ratou, ka anga ka whakataetae ki te taua a Rihai:

37 A ka timata te mahi whakamate ki nga taha e rua, heoi whakawehi rawa atu ki te taha ki nga Ramana, no te hahau kaha hoki o nga hoari me nga hoari pote a nga Niwhai ki o ratou wahi tahanga. a wahi iti, puta ake ana te mate i nga patunga katoa.

38 Kei tera taha ia e hinga takitahi ana nga tangata i tenei wa, i tenei wa, i roto i nga Niwhai, he mea na o ratou hoari, me te hekenga o te toto; e tiakina ana hoki ratou i runga i nga wahi o te tinana, ara, nga tino wahi o te tinana e nui nei te ora, e tiakina ana i nga patunga a nga Ramana e o ratou whakangungu-rakau, me o ratou puapua, me o ratou tiaki mahunga; a ka penei te whakahaere a nga Niwhai i te mahi whakamate i roto i nga Ramana.

39 Na, ka wehi nga Ramana i te nui o te whakangaromanga i roto i a ratou, a ka whati ratou whaka-te-awa o Hairona.

40 A whaia ana ratou e Rihai ratou ko ana tangata, aia ana ratou e Rihai ki roto ki nga wai o Hairona. A puritia ana e Rihai ana taua ki te taha o te awa o Hairona, kei whakawhiti mai ratou.

41 Nawai a, ka tutaki a Moronai me tana taua ki nga Ramana ki te raorao, i tera taha o te awa o Hairona, ka kokiri atu ki a ratou, ka whakamate i a ratou.

And thus having placed his army according to his desire, he was prepared to meet them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites came up on the north of the hill, where a part of the army of Moroni was concealed.

And as the Lamanites had passed the hill Riplah, and came into the valley, and began to cross the river Sidon, the army which was concealed on the south of the hill, which was led by a man whose name was Lehi, and he led his army forth and encircled the Lamanites about on the east in their rear.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, when they saw the Nephites coming upon them in their rear, turned them about and began to contend with the army of Lehi.

And the work of death commenced on both sides, but it was more dreadful on the part of the Lamanites, for their nakedness was exposed to the heavy blows of the Nephites with their swords and their cimeters, which brought death almost at every stroke.

While on the other hand, there was now and then a man fell among the Nephites, by their swords and the loss of blood, they being shielded from the more vital parts of the body, or the more vital parts of the body being shielded from the strokes of the Lamanites, by their breastplates, and their armshields, and their head-plates; and thus the Nephites did carry on the work of death among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites became frightened, because of the great destruction among them, even until they began to flee towards the river Sidon.

And they were pursued by Lehi and his men; and they were driven by Lehi into the waters of Sidon, and they crossed the waters of Sidon. And Lehi retained his armies upon the bank of the river Sidon that they should not cross.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army met the Lamanites in the valley, on the other side of the river Sidon, and began to fall upon them and to slay them.

42 Na, ka whati ano nga Ramana, ka oma atu i to ratou aroaro whaka-te-whenua o Manati; a ka tutaki ano nga taua a Moronai ki a ratou.

43 Na, inaianei ka tino kaha nga Ramana ki te whawhai; ae, kahore rawa i kitea nga Ramana e whawhai ana e penei ana te nui o te marohirohi me te maia, kahore i penei i te timatanga mai ra ano;

44 A ka whakahaua ratou e nga Horama, e nga Amareki, ko ratou nei o ratou rangatira nui, o ratou kai arahi, me Herahemena hoki ko ia to ratou rangatira nui, ara, to ratou kai arahi nui to ratou kai whakahau; na, ka whawhai ratou, ano he tarakona, a he maha nga Niwhai i patua e o ratou ringaringa, ae, he tini hoki o ratou tiaki mahunga i haua iho e ratou ki waenganui, werohia ana e ratou o ratou whakangungu-rakau, nga ringaringa maha ano hoki motu ana i a ratou; a penei ana ta nga Ramana patu i runga i to ratou riri nanakia.

45 Otiia, he putake pai atu i whakahaua ai nga Niwhai, no te mea kahore a ratou whawhai mo ta te kingi, mo te mana ranei, engari e whawhai ana ratou mo o ratou kainga, mo a ratou tikanga here-kore, mo a ratou wahine, mo a ratou tamariki, mo a ratou mea katoa; ae ra, mo o ratou ritenga karakia, mo to ratou hahi;

46 A e mea ana ratou i te mea e tika nei ki ta ratou whakaaro hei mahi ma ratou ki to ratou Atua; i ki mai hoki te Ariki ki a ratou ki o ratou tupuna ano hoki. Ki te mea kahore koutou e he ki te he tuatahi, ki te he tuarua hoki, kua koutou e tuku i a koutou ano kia whakamatea e nga ringaringa o o koutou hoa whawhai.

47 Me tenei ano, i ki te Ariki, Me tiaki a koutou hapu a tae noa ki te whakaheke-toto; na konei ra i tautohetohe ai nga Niwhai ki nga Ramana, hei tiaki i a ratou, i a ratou hapu, i o ratou mara, i to ratou whenua, i a ratou tikanga, me to ratou karakia.

48 Na, i te kitenga o nga tangata a Moronai i te riri me te nanakia o nga Ramana wahi iti kua whati ratou kua oma atu i a ratou. Na, ka kite a Moronai i ta ratou whakaaro, a ka tonoa e ia ka whakamaharatia o ratou ngakau ki enei maharatanga—ae ra, ki nga maharatanga ki o ratou whenua, ki to ratou tikanga here-kore, ki to ratou whakamahinga-kore.

And the Lamanites did flee again before them, towards the land of Manti; and they were met again by the armies of Moroni.

Now in this case the Lamanites did fight exceedingly; yea, never had the Lamanites been known to fight with such exceedingly great strength and courage, no, not even from the beginning.

And they were inspired by the Zoramites and the Amalekites, who were their chief captains and leaders, and by Zerahemnah, who was their chief captain, or their chief leader and commander; yea, they did fight like dragons, and many of the Nephites were slain by their hands, yea, for they did smite in two many of their head-plates, and they did pierce many of their breastplates, and they did smite off many of their arms; and thus the Lamanites did smite in their fierce anger.

Nevertheless, the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power but they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all, yea, for their rites of worship and their church.

And they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God; for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

And again, the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed. Therefore for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

And it came to pass that when the men of Moroni saw the fierceness and the anger of the Lamanites, they were about to shrink and flee from them. And Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts—yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

- 49 Na, ka anga ratou ki nga Ramana, a kotahi ano to ratou reo ki te karanga ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, mo to ratou tikanga here-kore, me to ratou whakamahinga-kore.
- 50 Na, ka tu atu ratou ki nga Ramana i runga i te kaha: a i taua haora ra ano i karanga ai ratou ki te Ariki mo to ratou tikanga here-kore, ka whati nga Ramana, ka oma atu i to ratou aroaro; a oma ano ratou tae noa ki nga wai o Hairona.
- 51 Na, hira noa ake nga Ramana, ae ra, nui ake ratou i te takirua mo te tangata kotahi o nga Niwhai; ahakoa ra, aia ana ratou no ka whakaminea ngatahitia ratou i roto i te putu kotahi i te raorao i te tahataha o te awa o Hairona;
- 52 No reira karapotitia ana ratou e nga taua a Moronai, ae, i nga taha e rua o te awa, ina hoki, kei te rawhiti nga tangata a Rihai;
- 53 Na, i te kitenga o Herahemena i nga tangata a Rihai i te taha ki rawhiti o te awa o Hairona me nga taua a Moronai i te taha ki te hauauru o te awa o Hairona, no ka karapotitia ratou e nga Niwhai, na, pa ana te wehi ki a ratou.
- 54 Na, ko Moronai i tona kitenga i to ratou wehi, i whakahau ki ana tangata kia whakamutua te whakahekenga i o ratou toto.

And it came to pass that they turned upon the Lamanites, and they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

And they began to stand against the Lamanites with power; and in that selfsame hour that they cried unto the Lord for their freedom, the Lamanites began to flee before them; and they fled even to the waters of Sidon.

Now, the Lamanites were more numerous, yea, by more than double the number of the Nephites; nevertheless, they were driven insomuch that they were gathered together in one body in the valley, upon the bank by the river Sidon.

Therefore the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river, for behold, on the east were the men of Lehi.

Therefore when Zerahemnah saw the men of Lehi on the east of the river Sidon, and the armies of Moroni on the west of the river Sidon, that they were encircled about by the Nephites, they were struck with terror.

Now Moroni, when he saw their terror, commanded his men that they should stop shedding their blood.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 44

- 1 Nawai a, ka whakamutu ratou ka nuku atu ki tahaki tata atu i a ratou. Na, ka mea atu a Moronai ki a Herahemena, nana, e Herahemena, kahore o matou hiahia kia riro matou hei tangata whakaheke toto.— Kei te mohio koutou kei o matou ringaringa koutou, otira kahore o matou hiahia ki te whakamate i a koutou.
- 2 Nana, kahore matou i haere atu ki te riri ki a koutou, hei whakaheke i o koutou toto hei whakatupu rangatira; kahore ano hoki o matou hiahia kia iokatia tetahi ki te ioka o te whakamahinga. Otiia, ko te tino putake tenei i haere mai ai koutou ki a matou; a e riri ana koutou ki a matou mo to matou karakia.
- 3 Ko tenei, ka kite koutou kei a matou te Ariki; ka kite hoki koutou nana koutou i tuku mai ki roto ki o matou ringaringa. Na, e mea ana ahau kia mohio mai koutou kua meatia mai tenei mo matou, he mea mo to matou karakia me to matou whakapono ki a te Karaiti. Na, ka kite koutou kahore e ahei i a koutou te whakangaro i to matou nei whakapono.
- 4 Na, ka kite ano koutou ko te whakapono tika tenei o te Atua; ae ra, ka kite koutou ka tautokona matou e te Atua, ka puritia, ka tiakina i nga wa katoa e u ana matou ki a ia, ki to matou whakapono hoki, me to matou karakia; a e kore rawa te Ariki e tuku kia whakamatea matou ki te kore matou e taka ki te hē me te whakakahore ki to matou whakapono.
- 5 Tena, e Herahemena, ko taku whakahau atu tenei ki a koe, i runga i te ingoa o taua Atua Kaha Rawa, nana nei i whakakaha o matou ringaringa no ka riro i a matou te kaha ki a koutou, i runga i to matou whakapono, i runga ano hoki i to matou karakia, i o matou ritenga karakia, i to matou hahi, i te tiaki tapu hoki e tika ana ma matou kia tiaki i a matou wahine, me a matou tamariki, me te tikanga here-kore ano hoki e herea nei matou ki o matou mara, ki o matou whenua; ae, me te hapai ano hoki o te kupu tapu a te Atua, nana nei to matou hari katoa, me nga mea katoa ano hoki e tino arohaina nei e matou;

## Alma 44

And it came to pass that they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage. But this is the very cause for which ye have come against us; yea, and ye are angry with us because of our religion.

But now, ye behold that the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands. And now I would that ye should understand that this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ. And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should fall into transgression and deny our faith.

And now, Zerahemnah, I command you, in the name of that all-powerful God, who has strengthened our arms that we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness; and by all that is most dear unto us—

6 A e kore e mutu i tenei; ka whakahau atu ahau ki a koutou i runga i nga hiahia katoa e hiahia na koutou ki te ora, kia tukua mai e koutou a koutou mea whawhai ki a matou, a e kore matou e whai i to koutou toto, engari ka tohungia koutou e matou, ki te mea ka haere atu koutou i runga i to koutou haere, a ka kore e hoki mai ano ki te whawhai ki a matou.

7 Na, ki te kore tenei mea e meatia e koutou, nana, kei o matou ringaringa koutou, a maku e whakahau ki aku tangata kia kokiri ki a koutou, kia tu o koutou tinana i a ratou he tunga e mate ai, kia kore ai koutou; katahi ka kite tatou ko wai ka whai mana ki runga ki tenei iwi; ae ra, ka kite tatou ko wai ka riro i te whakamahinga.

8 Nawai a, i te rongonga a Herahemena ki enei kupu, ka haere mai ia ka tukua mai tana hoari, tana hoari poto, tana kopere ki nga ringaringa o Moronai. a ka mea mai ki a ia, na, a matou mea whawhai; ka tukua atu nei e matou ki a koutou, a ka kore matou e tuku i a matou kia oati i tetahi oati ki a koutou e mohio nei matou era e takahia e matou, e a matou tamariki ano hoki: heoi tangohia a matou mea whawhai, tukua hoki kia haere atu matou ki roto ki te koraha; ki te kore ka puritia e matou a matou hoari, a ka mate matou, ka riro ranei i a matou te wikitoria.

9 Nana, kahore matou i to koutou whakapono; kahore matou e whakapono na te Atua i tuku matou ki roto ki o koutou ringaringa; engari ki ta matou whakapono, he meatanga tenei na ta koutou tinihanga i tiakina ai koutou i a matou hoari. Nana, na o koutou whakangungu-rakau, na o koutou puapua i tiakina ai koutou.

10 Na, ka oti i a Herahemena enei kupu te korero, ka whakahokia e Moronai te hoari me nga mea whawhai, kua riro nei i a ia, ki a Herahemena, ka mea, Nana, tatou ka whakaoti i te whawhai.

11 A kahore e ahei i a au te pupuri i nga kupu kua oti nei te korero e ahau, no reira e ora ana te Ariki, waihoki e kore koutou e haere atu engari i runga anake i ta koutou oati kia kauaka e hoki mai ano ki a matou ki te whawhai. Na, kei o matou ringaringa koutou, a ka ringihia o koutou toto ki te whenua, ka whakaaetia ranei e koutou te mea i tapaea atu nei e ahau.

Yea, and this is not all; I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

And now, if ye do not this, behold, ye are in our hands, and I will command my men that they shall fall upon you, and inflict the wounds of death in your bodies, that ye may become extinct; and then we will see who shall have power over this people; yea, we will see who shall be brought into bondage.

And now it came to pass that when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

Behold, we are not of your faith; we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands; but we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords. Behold, it is your breastplates and your shields that have preserved you.

And now when Zerahemnah had made an end of speaking these words, Moroni returned the sword and the weapons of war, which he had received, unto Zerahemnah, saying: Behold, we will end the conflict.

Now I cannot recall the words which I have spoken, therefore as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war. Now as ye are in our hands we will spill your blood upon the ground, or ye shall submit to the conditions which I have proposed.

- 12 Ano kua korero a Moronai i enei kupu, ka puritia e Herahemena tana hoari, a, ka riri ia ki a Moronai, na, ka kokiri mai ia kia whakamatea a Moronai; heoi, i a ia ka hapai i tana hoari, nana, ka haua iho te mea e tetahi o nga hoia a Moronai ki te whenua: na, whati ana tera i te puritanga; a ka haua a Herahemena e ia, tapahia ana tona tumuaki huruhuru, a makere ana ki te whenua. Na, hoki atu ana a Herahemena i mua i a ratou ki waenganui i ana hoia.
- 13 Na, ko taua hoia i tu mai ra, nana nei i hahau te tumuaki huruhuru o Herahemena, na, ka tangohia ake e ia i runga i te whenua te tumuaki huruhuru ki te huruhuru, ka whakatakotoria ki te pito o tana hoari, a ka torona atu ki a ratou, ka mea atu ki a ratou, he rahi hoki tana reo.
- 14 Me te hinganga o tenei tumuaki huruhuru ki te whenua, ko ia nei te tumuaki huruhuru o to koutou rangatira, waihoki ka pera ano hoki to koutou hinganga, ki te kore koutou e tuku mai i a koutou mea whawhai me te haere atu hoki i runga i tetahi kawenata maunga rongo.
- 15 A he tokomaha, i to ratou rongonga i enei kupu me te kitenga hoki i te tumuaki huruhuru kei runga nei i te hoari, na, ka pangia e te wehi, a haere mai ana tona tini, makā mai ana ki raro ki nga waewae o Moronai a ratou mea whawhai, a uru ana ano hoki ki roto ki tetahi kawenata kia mau te rongo. Na, ko nga tangata katoa e uru ana ki te kawenata ka tukua kia haere atu ki te koraha.
- 16 Na, he nui rawa te riri o Herahemena, a ka whakaohokia ake e ia te toenga o ana hoia kia riri, kia nui atu to ratou kaha ki te tautohe ki nga Niwhai.
- 17 Na, ka riri a Moronai, mo te pakeketanga o nga Ramana; a ka whakahaua e ia tana iwi kia rere ki runga ki a ratou, kia whakamate i a ratou. Na, anga ana ratou whakamate ana i a ratou; a, ka tautohe ano hoki nga Ramana ki a ratou hoari i runga i to ratou kaha.
- 18 Heoi, e takoto kau ana o ratou kiri me o ratou mahunga ki nga hoari koi a nga Niwhai; a ka werohia, ka patua; a hohoro rawa te hingahinga ki mua i nga hoari a nga Niwhai; a hatepea atu ana ratou, peratia ana me te kupu kua poropititia e te hoia a Moronai.

And now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth. And Zerahemnah withdrew from before them into the midst of his soldiers.

And it came to pass that the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

Now there were many, when they heard these words and saw the scalp which was upon the sword, that were struck with fear; and many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace. And as many as entered into a covenant they suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that Zerahemnah was exceedingly wroth, and he did stir up the remainder of his soldiers to anger, to contend more powerfully against the Nephites.

And now Moroni was angry, because of the stubbornness of the Lamanites; therefore he commanded his people that they should fall upon them and slay them. And it came to pass that they began to slay them; yea, and the Lamanites did contend with their swords and their might.

But behold, their naked skins and their bare heads were exposed to the sharp swords of the Nephites; yea, behold they were pierced and smitten, yea, and did fall exceedingly fast before the swords of the Nephites; and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.



19 Ano ka kite a Herahemena, meake ratou katoa whakamatea, ka nui tona karanga ki a Moronai, ka whakaari mai, ki te mea ka tohungia te toenga o ratou kia ora, ka uru i a ratou ko tana iwi ki roto ki tetahi kawenata ki a ratou, ara, kia kore rawa ratou e hoki mai ki te whawhai ano ki a ratou.

20 Na, ka meinga e Moronai kia mutu ano te mahi whakamate i roto i te iwi. A ka tangohia e ia nga mea whawhai i nga Ramana; a i muri i to ratou urunga ki roto ki tetahi kawenata kia mau te rongu, ka tukua atu ratou kia haere ki te koraha.

21 Na, kihai i taua o ratou tupapaku, i te nui hoki: ae, he nui noa atu nga tupapaku o nga Niwhai, o nga Ramana ano hoki.

22 Nawai a, ka makā e ratou o ratou tupapaku ki roto ki nga wai o Hairona, a kua riro atu ki te rire o te moana, tanumia ai.

23 A ka hoki nga taua a nga Niwhai, ara, a Moronai, ka haere mai ki o ratou whare, ki o ratou whenua.

24 A ko te mutunga tenei o te tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai. Ko te mutunga ano hoki tenei o te tuhituhinga a Arami. i tuhituhia ai ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai.

Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them, if they would spare the remainder of their lives, that they never would come to war again against them.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that the work of death should cease again among the people. And he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

Now the number of their dead was not numbered because of the greatness of the number; yea, the number of their dead was exceedingly great, both on the Nephites and on the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

And the armies of the Nephites, or of Moroni, returned and came to their houses and their lands.

And thus ended the eighteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi. And thus ended the record of Alma, which was written upon the plates of Nephi.

*Ko te whakaaturanga mo te iwi o Niwhai, me a ratou whawhai me a ratou marwebetanga, i nga ra i a Heramana, e rite ana ki te tubitubinga a Heramana, i tubitubi ai ia i ona ra.*

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 45

- 1 Nawai a, ka nui te hari o te iwi o Niwhai, mo te whakaputanga ano a te Ariki i a ratou ki waho o nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri; koia ratou i whakawhetai ai ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua; a, ka nui ta ratou noho puku me te inoi nui ano, ka koropiko hoki ratou ki te Atua i runga i te hari nui whakaharahara.
- 2 Nawai a, i te tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka haere mai a Arami ki tana tama, ki a Heramana, a ka mea mai ki a ia, E whakapono ana ianei koe ki nga kupu i korero na ahau ki a koe mo ana tuhituhinga i tuhituhia?
- 3 A ka mea a Heramana ki a ia, Ae, e whakapono ana ahau.
- 4 A ka mea ano a Arami, E whakapono ana ianei koe ki a Ihu Karaiti, era e haere mai?
- 5 A ka mea tera, Ae, e whakapono ana ahau ki nga kupu katoa i korero nei koe.
- 6 A ka mea ano a Arami ki a ia, Ka pupuri ianei koe i aku whakahaunga?
- 7 A ka mea tera, Ae, ka whakapau ahau i toku ngakau katoa ki te pupuri i au whakahaunga.
- 8 Katahi a Arami ka mea ki a ia. Ka koa koe; a ma te Ariki ano koe e whakanui i runga i tenei whenua.
- 9 Heoi kei a au etahi poropiti hei poropititanga maku ki a koe: otira kauaka e korerotia e koe aku e poropiti ai ki a koe; ae ra, e kore e whakaaturia taku e poropiti ai ki a koe, kia rite ra ano te poropititanga: no reira me tuhituhi e koe nga kupu e korero ai ahau.
- 10 A ko nga kupu enei: Nana, ka kite ahau i tenei iwi pu ano, i nga Niwhai, i runga i te Wairua whakakitenga i roto nei i a au, i nga tau e wha rau i te wa e whakakite ai a Ihu Karaiti i a ia ano ki a ratou ka ngaro haere to ratou whakapono;

*The account of the people of Nephi, and their wars and dissensions, in the days of Helaman, according to the record of Helaman, which he kept in his days.*

## Alma 45

Behold, now it came to pass that the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies; therefore they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

And it came to pass in the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

But behold, I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

And these are the words: Behold, I perceive that this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

- 11 Me i reira ka kite ratou i nga whawhai, i nga mate uruta, i nga hemo kai, i nga whakaheke toto, tae noa ki te ngaronga rawatanga o te iwi o Niwhai;
- 12 Ka pa tenei ki a ratou mo te heke haeretanga o to ratou whakapono, mo to ratou takanga atu hoki ki nga mahi o te pouritanga, ki nga hiahia taikaha, me nga kino katoa; na, taku kupu tenei ki a koe, mo ratou i hara ki te maramatanga nui; ae ra, taku kupu tenei ki a koe, no taua rangi e kore e pahemo katoa te wha o nga whakatupuranga kua pa tenei kino nui:
- 13 Ano ka taka taua ra kua tata pu te wa ko te hunga e taua ngatahitia ana inaianei, ara, te uri o te hunga e taua ngatahitia ana inaianei me te iwi o Niwhai ka kore ratou e taua ngatahitia me te iwi o Niwhai;
- 14 Heoi ko te morehu, e kore nei e whakamatea, i taua rangi nui whakawehi, ka taua ngatahitia me nga Ramana, a ka riro ano hei rite mo ratou, ko te hunga katoa, he torutoru nei ia kahore, a ko ratou e karangatia ko nga akonga a te Ariki; a ko ratou ano e whaia e nga Ramana, a tae noa ki to ratou korenga rawatanga. Na, era e rite tenei poropititanga, i runga hoki i nga mahi kino.
- 15 Nawai a, i muri iho i ta Arami korerotanga i enei mea ki a Heramana, ka manaaki ia i a ia, me era atu tamariki tane ano ana; a, ka manaaki ano ia i te whenua he whakaaro ki te hunga tika;
- 16 A ka mea ia, Ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki a te Atua: Ka kanga te whenua, ae ra, ko tenei whenua ano, ki nga iwi katoa, ki nga hapu, ki nga reo, ki nga huihuinga tangata, e mahi kino ana, no ka whakangaromia ratou, ina tino pakari ratou; a ka rite ano ki taku i ki nei te mea e puta mai ana, no te mea ko te kanga me te manaaki tenei a te Atua i runga i te whenua, no te mea e kore e ahei i te Ariki te titiro ki te hara me te whakaae ano, ahakoa iti rawa.
- 17 Na, ka oti i a Arami enei kupu te korero, ka manaaki ia i te hahi, ae ra, i te hunga katoa era e u ki te whakapono i taua wa, a ake ake ake.
- 18 Ano ka oti i a Arami tenei, ka mawehe atu ia i te whenua o Harahemera, me te mea e ahu ana ki te whenua o Mereke. A kore ake he rongoro korero mona i muri atu; a kahore matou e mohio ki tona matenga me tona tanumanga.

Yea, and then shall they see wars and pestilences, yea, famines and bloodshed, even until the people of Nephi shall become extinct—

Yea, and this because they shall dwindle in unbelief and fall into the works of darkness, and lasciviousness, and all manner of iniquities; yea, I say unto you, that because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

And when that great day cometh, behold, the time very soon cometh that those who are now, or the seed of those who are now numbered among the people of Nephi, shall no more be numbered among the people of Nephi.

But whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, and shall become like unto them, all, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct. And now, because of iniquity, this prophecy shall be fulfilled.

And now it came to pass that after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous' sake.

And he said: Thus saith the Lord God—Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe; and as I have said so shall it be; for this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

And now, when Alma had said these words he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

And when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to go into the land of Melek. And it came to pass that he was never heard of more; as to his death or burial we know not of.

- 19 Heoi, e matau ana matou ki tenei, he tangata tika ia; a ka puta atu te kupu ki roto ki te hahi, kua kahakina ake ia ki runga e te Wairua, kua tanumia ranei e te ringa o te Ariki, kua peratia me Mohi. Otiia, e ki ana nga karaipiture na te Ariki i tango a Mohi ki a ia ano; a e mea ana matou kua tangohia ano a Arami e ia i roto i te Wairua ki a ia ano: na konei kahore matou e mohio ki tona matenga me tona tanumanga.
- 20 Na, i te timatanga o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka haere atu a Heramana ki roto ki te iwi ki te whakapuaki i te kupu ki a ratou.
- 21 Ta te mea, na, i runga i a ratou whawhai ki nga Ramana me nga tautohetohenga nonohi me nga ngangau kua tupu ake i roto i te iwi, i tika ai kia whakapuakina te kupu a te Atua i roto i a ratou; kia whakaritea ano hoki tetahi tikanga puta noa i te hahi;
- 22 No reira ka haere atu a Heramana ratou ko ona teina ki te whakapumau ano i te hahi i runga i te whenua katoa, ara, i roto i ia pa, i ia pa puta noa i te whenua katoa e nohoia ana e te iwi o Niwhai. A ka whakaritea ano e ratou nga tohunga me nga kai whakaako puta noa i te whenua katoa, i runga i nga hahi katoa.
- 23 Nawai a, i muri iho i te whakaritenga a Heramana ratou ko ona teina i nga tohunga me nga kai whakaako mo runga i nga hahi, na, ka tupu tetahi tautohetohenga i roto i a ratou, a kihai ratou i pai ki te whakarongo ki nga kupu a Heramana ratou ko ona teina;
- 24 Heoi ka whakakake haere ratou, ka neke ake o ratou ngakau, i te nui whakaharahara hoki o a ratou taonga; koia ratou ka whai taonga ai i runga i to ratou ake tirohanga, a kihai i pai ki te whakarongo ki a ratou kupu, kia totika ta ratou whakahaere i te aroaro o te Atua.

Behold, this we know, that he was a righteous man; and the saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses. But behold, the scriptures saith the Lord took Moses unto himself; and we suppose that he has also received Alma in the spirit, unto himself; therefore, for this cause we know nothing concerning his death and burial.

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

For behold, because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them, yea, and that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land, yea, in every city throughout all the land which was possessed by the people of Nephi. And it came to pass that they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

And now it came to pass that after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

But they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches; therefore they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 46

- 1 Nawai a, i whakaminea katoatia te iwi kihai nei i pai ki te whakarongo ki nga kupu a Heramana ratou ko ona teina, kia tu atu ki o ratou teina.
- 2 Na, ka nui to ratou riri, no ka u tonu to ratou whakaaro ki te whakamate i a ratou.
- 3 Na, he tangata nui kaha te kai whakahaere tikanga o te hunga i riri ai ki o ratou teina; a ko Amarihiha tona ingoa.
- 4 Na, i hiahia a Amarihiha kia meinga ia hei kingi: a ko taua hunga i riri i hiahia ano ki a ia hei kingi mo ratou: na, te wahi nui o ratou ko nga kai whakawa iti o te whenua: a ko ta ratou he rapu mana.
- 5 A i arahina ano ratou i runga i nga whakapatipati a Amarihiha, ara, ki te pai ratou ki te tautoko i tana, hei whakatu i a ia hei kingi mo ratou, ka mea ia i a ratou hei kai whakahaere tikanga mo runga i te iwi.
- 6 A penei i whakakotitia ketia ratou e Amarihiha ki nga ngangau, he ahakoa nga kauwhautanga a Heramana ratou ko ona teina; he ahakoa te nui o to ratou matapoporetanga i runga i te hahi, he Tohunga Nui hoki ratou i runga i te hahi.
- 7 A he tokomaha i roto i te hahi i whakapono ki nga kupu whakapatipati a Amarihiha: koia ratou i mawehe atu ai i te hahi; a penei he tu ahua mate rawa, he tu noa iho nga tikanga a nga Niwhai, he ahakoa to ratou wikitoria nui i whai wikitoria ai ratou i runga i nga Ramana me te nui o to ratou hari i hari ai ratou i to ratou whakaputanga e nga ringaringa o te Ariki.
- 8 A penei tatou ka kite i te hohoro o nga tamariki a te tangata te wareware ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua; aera, i te hohoro ki te mahi kino, kia arahina ketia hoki e te mea kino;
- 9 A ka kite ano hoki tatou i te nui o te kino e taea ana e te tangata kino kotahi te whakatupu i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata;

## Alma 46

And it came to pass that as many as would not hear-ken to the words of Helaman and his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

And now behold, they were exceedingly wroth, in-somuch that they were determined to slay them.

Now the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

And Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

And they had been led by the flatteries of Amalickiah, that if they would support him and es-tablish him to be their king that he would make them rulers over the people.

Thus they were led away by Amalickiah to dissen-sions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceed-ingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

And there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah, therefore they dissented even from the church; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

Thus we see how quick the children of men do for-get the Lord their God, yea, how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

Yea, and we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the chil-dren of men.

- 10 Ka kite tatou i a Amarihiha i whakakotiti ke ia i nga ngakau o nga tangata maha ki te mahi kino no te mea he tangata whakaaro tinihanga ia, he puku korero whakapatipati: ki te whai hoki ki te whakamate i te hahi a te Atua, ki te whakangaro i te putake o te here-koretanga i tukua ai e te Atua ki a ratou, ko taua manaakitanga i tukua ai e te Atua ki runga ki te mata o te whenua mo te whakaaro hoki ki te hunga tika.
- 11 Na, i te rongonga o Moronai o te kai whakahauhau nui o nga taua o nga Niwhai ki enei mawehenga, ka riri ia ki a Amarihiha.
- 12 Nawai a, ka hahae ia i tona koti: a mau ana ki tetahi wahi, tuhituhia ana ki runga, hei whakamaharatanga ki to tatou Atua, ki to tatou karakia, ki to tatou herekoretanga, ki to tatou maunga rongo, ki a tatou wahine, me a tatou tamariki; a whakamau ana ki te pito o tetahi toko.
- 13 Na, ka potaetia iho e ia tona tiaki mahunga, ka kakahuria iho tona pukupuku me ona puapua, ka whitikira ona kakahu whawhai ki tona hope; a mau ana ki te toko e mau nei taua wahi o tona koti ki tetahi pito, (na, ka huaina e ia te tuhituhinga ko te here-koretanga,) tuohu ana ki te whenua, inoi nui ana ki tona Atua, kia tau iho nga manaakitanga o te here-koretanga ki runga ki ona teina i te wa katoa e toe ai he ope Karaitiana hei noho i te whenua;
- 14 Ko te mea hoki tenei i karangatia ai ki nga kai whakapono tika katoa ki a te Karaiti o te hahi o te Atua e te hunga ehara nei i te hahi;
- 15 Na, u ana te hunga o te hahi; ae ra, ko te hunga katoa i whakapono tika ki a te Karaiti, i tango hari ki runga ki a ratou te ingoa o te Karaiti, ara, ko Karaitiana, te ingoa i karangatia ki a ratou, mo ratou i whakapono ki a te Karaiti e haere mai ana;
- 16 Na konei, i tenei takiwa i inoi ai a Moronai mo te taha ki nga Karaitiana raua ko te here-koretanga i runga i te whenua kia manaakitia.
- 17 Ano ka ringihia atu tona wairua ki te Atua, ka hoatu e ia te whenua katoa i te taha ki te tonga o te whenua Whakangaromanga: ara, te whenua katoa i te nota, i te tonga ano hoki, hei whenua whiriwhiri, hei whenua mo te here-koretanga.

Yea, we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly; yea, and to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous' sake.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it—In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children—and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

And he fastened on his head-plate, and his breast-plate, and his shields, and girded on his armor about his loins; and he took the pole, which had on the end thereof his rent coat, (and he called it the title of liberty) and he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land—

For thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

And those who did belong to the church were faithful; yea, all those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

And therefore, at this time, Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the freedom of the land might be favored.

And it came to pass that when he had poured out his soul to God, he named all the land which was south of the land Desolation, yea, and in fine, all the land, both on the north and on the south—A chosen land, and the land of liberty.

- 18 A ka mea ia, he pono e kore te Atua e tuku kia takahia kia whakangaromia iho tatou te hunga e kinongia nei mo tatou i mau ki runga ki a tatou te ingoa o te Karaiti, tae noa ki te wa e kumea iho tenei e tatou ano ki runga ki a tatou i runga i o tatou kotiti ketanga.
- 19 Ano ka korero a Moronai i enei kupu, ka haere atu ia ki roto ki te iwi, ka powhiriwhiri haere i taua wahi o tona kakahu i roto i te takiwa kia kite ai te katoa i te tuhituhinga i tuhituhia ai e ia ki runga me te reo nui ano ki te karanga, ka mea,
- 20 Tena ra, e nga tangata katoa e pai ana ki te pupuri i tenei tuhituhinga ki runga ki te whenua, me haere mai i runga i te kaha o te Ariki, kawenata mai ai kia tiakina o ratou tikanga, me to ratou karakia, kia manaakitia ratou e te Ariki, e te Atua.
- 21 Nawai a, i te whakahuatanga a Moronai i enei kupu, ka omaoma mai te iwi me o ratou kakahu whawhai kua whitikiria ano ki o ratou hope, e haehae ana i o ratou kakahu hei tohu, ara, hei kawenata, e kore ratou e whakarere i te Ariki, i to ratou Atua, ara, me he mea, ka takahi ratou i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, ka taka ranei ki te hara, a ka whakama ki te tango ki runga ki a ratou te ingoa o te Karaiti, me haehae ratou e te Ariki me penei me ratou kua haehae nei i o ratou kakahu.
- 22 Na, ko te kawenata tenei i kawenata ai ratou: na, ka maka iho ratou i o ratou kakahu ki nga waewae o Moronai, ka mea, tenei matou te kawenata ki to tatou Atua, kia whakangaromia matou, kia rite ki o matou tuakana i te whenua whaka-te-nota ki te taka matou ki te kino: ae ra, mana matou e maka ki nga waewae o o matou hoa riri, e penei me matou kua maka iho i o matou kakahu ki ou waewae, kia takahia iho e nga waewae, ki te taka atu matou ki te kino.
- 23 Ka mea atu a Moronai ki a ratou, nana, he morehu tatou no te uri o Hakopa: ae ra, he morehu no te uri o Hohepa i haehaea tona koti e ona tuakaua, kia maha ona wahi: a inaianei kia mahara tatou ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua ki te kore ka haehaea o tatou kakahu e o tatou teina, a ko tatou ka makā ki te whare herehere, ka hokona ranei, ka patua ranei;

And he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

And when Moroni had said these words, he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part, and crying with a loud voice, saying:

Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God; or, in other words, if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

Now this was the covenant which they made, and they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into transgression; yea, he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

Moroni said unto them: Behold, we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; yea, we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces; yea, and now behold, let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

- 24 Na, kia tiakina e tatou o tatou here-koretanga ano he morehu no Hohepa: ae ra, kia mahara tatou ki nga kupu a Hakopa i mua atu i tona matenga: ta te mea, na, i kite ia i tetahi wahi o te toenga o te koti o Hohepa kua tiakina, a kahore ano i pirau. A ka mea ia, Kua tiakina tenei toenga o te kakahu o taku tamaiti, waihoki ko tetahi morehu o te uri o taku tamaiti e tiakina e te ringa o te Atua, a ka tangohia atu ki a ia ano, ko era atu ia o te uri o Hohepa ka whakangromia, ka peratia me te toenga o tona kakahu.
- 25 Na, e pouri ana toku wairua i tenei: otira e hari ana toku wairua ki taku tamaiti, mo taua wahi hoki o tona uri ka tangohia atu ki te Atua.
- 26 Nana, ko te korero tera a Hakopa.
- 27 Na, ko wai ka mohio ki te toenga o te uri o Hohepa, e mate ai e pera ai me tona kakahu, ko era pea te hunga kua mawehe atu nei i a tatou: a ko tatou ano hoki ki te kore e u to tatou tu i runga i te whakaponu o te Karaiti.
- 28 Na, i te korerotanga a Moronai i enei kupu, ka haere atu ia, me te tonu atu ano hoki, ki roto ki nga wahi katoa o te whenua i reira nei nga mawehenga atu, a, whakaminea ana te iwi katoa i hiahia ai ki te tiaki i to ratou herekoretanga, kia tu atu ki nga Amarihiha me te hunga i mawehe atu ai, i karangatia ai ko nga Amarihiha.
- 29 Nawai a, i te kitenga o Amarihiha i te iwi o Moronai he tokomaha atu i nga Amarihiha; me tona kitenga ano i tona iwi e ruarua ana o ratou ngakau ki te tika o te tikanga kua uru nei ratou ki roto: na, ka wehi ia kei kore tana e tutuki, no reira i mau ai ia ki te hunga o tona iwi i pai ai, a mawehe atu ana ki te whenua o Niwhai.
- 30 Na, ka mahara a Moronai e kore e tika kia whiwhi nga Ramana ki tetahi atu kaha: no reira i mea ai ia ki te haukoti atu i te iwi o Amarihiha, ara, ki te hopu i a ratou ki te whakahoki ano i a ratou, me te whakamate ano hoki i a Amarihiha: i mohio hoki ia tera ia e whakakiki i nga Ramana kia riri ki a ratou, me te mea ano i a ratou kia haere mai ki te whawhai: a i mohio ia ka peratia e Amarihiha, kia riro ai i a ia tana i whakaaro ai;

Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph; yea, let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, for behold, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed. And he said—Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

Now behold, this was the language of Jacob.

And now who knoweth but what the remnant of the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us? Yea, and even it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah and those who had dissented, who were called Amalickiahites.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites—and he also saw that his people were doubtful concerning the justice of the cause in which they had undertaken—therefore, fearing that he should not gain the point, he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

Now Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah, or to take them and bring them back, and put Amalickiah to death; yea, for he knew that he would stir up the Lamanites to anger against them, and cause them to come to battle against them; and this he knew that Amalickiah would do that he might obtain his purposes.



31 Koia a Moronai i mahara ai e tika ana kia tangohia e ia āna taua kua huihuia nei, kua whakawhiwhia ano e ratou ano ki nga patu whawhai, me te uru ano ki roto ki tetahi kawenata ki a whakapumautia te maunga rongo: A ka mau ia ki āna taua ka haere atu ki te koraha ki te haukoti atu i te huarahi o nga Amarikiha i roto i te koraha.

32 Nawai a, ka rite i a ia ona hiahia, ka haere atu ki te koraha, ka haukoti atu i nga taua a Amarikiha.

33 A ka whati a Amarikiha me tetahi ope iti o ona tangata, a ka tukua mai te toenga ki roto ki nga ringaringa o Moronai, i whakahokia ano ki roto ki te whenua o Harahemera.

34 Na, he tangata a Moronai i whakaritea e nga Kaiwhakariterite Nui e te pooti ano hoki o te iwi, no reira i whai mana ai ia ki te ritenga o tana e pai ai, i runga i nga taua a nga Niwhai, mo te whakariterite, mo te whakahaere hoki i runga i a ratou.

35 A mea ana ia kia whakamatea nga tangata katoa o nga Amarikiha, kihai nei i pai ki te uru ki roto ki tetahi kawenata hei tautoko mo te tikanga here-kore, kia puritia e ratou he kawanatanga here-kore; na, he torutoru nei i whakakahore ki te kawenata o te here-koretanga.

36 Na, ka mea ano ia kia whakaturia te ingoa o te herekoretanga ki runga ki nga pourewa i roto nei i te whenua katoa, e nohoia nei e nga Niwhai, a penei kua whakaturia a Moronai te kara o te herekoretanga ki roto ki nga Niwhai.

37 A ka mau ano te rongo mau i runga i te whenua: a ka pera tonu te rongo mau i runga i te whenua, a tae noa ki te mutunga o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

38 Na, ko Heramana ano hoki ratou ko nga Tohunga Nui i tiaka i te rangimarie i roto i te hahi: ae ra, e wha nga tau i nui ai te rangimarie me te hari i roto i te hahi.

39 Nawai a, he tokomaha i mate e whakapono tuturu ana ki o ratou wairua kua oti te hoko e te Ariki e Ihu Karaiti; a penei i haere hari atu ratou i roto i te ao nei.

Therefore Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace—and it came to pass that he took his army and marched out with his tents into the wilderness, to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

And it came to pass that he did according to his desires, and marched forth into the wilderness, and headed the armies of Amalickiah.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni and were taken back into the land of Zarahemla.

Now, Moroni being a man who was appointed by the chief judges and the voice of the people, therefore he had power according to his will with the armies of the Nephites, to establish and to exercise authority over them.

And it came to pass that whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death; and there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

And it came to pass also, that he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land, which was possessed by the Nephites; and thus Moroni planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites.

And they began to have peace again in the land; and thus they did maintain peace in the land until nearly the end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges.

And Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church; yea, even for the space of four years did they have much peace and rejoicing in the church.

And it came to pass that there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

40 A ko etahi i mate i nga kiri ka, i pa putuputu ai i runga i te whenua i etahi wa o te tau; heoi kahore he maha i mate i nga kiri ka, he pai whakaharahara hoki no nga mahuri maha me nga pakiaka i whakaritea nei e te Atua hei huhuti i te putake o nga mate e pa noa ana ki te tangata, he mea hoki na to reira ahua.

41 Heoi he tokomaha ano i mate kaumatua: na, ko te hunga i mate i runga i te whakapono o te Karaiti e hari ana ratou i roto i a ia, ko te mea hoki tenei e tika ana hei whakaarohanga ma matou.

And there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land—but not so much so with fevers, because of the excellent qualities of the many plants and roots which God had prepared to remove the cause of diseases, to which men were subject by the nature of the climate—

But there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him, as we must needs suppose.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 47

- 1 Na, ka hoki ake matou i runga i to matou tuhituhinga, ki a Amarikiha ratou ko te hunga i oma tahi i a ia ki roto ki te koraha; na, i mau ia ki te hunga i haere tahi i a ia, a haere ana ki runga ki te whenua o Niwhai, ki roto ki nga Ramana, na, whakaohokia ana nga Ramana kia riri ki te iwi o Niwhai, a ka tuku kupu atu te kingi o nga Ramana puta noa i tona whenua katoa, i roto i tona iwi katoa, kia huihui tahi ano ratou kia haere ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.
- 2 Nawai a, i te putanga atu o te kupu ki roto ki a ratou, ka pa te wehi nui ki a ratou; ae ra, i wehi ratou kei he ratou ki te kingi, a i wehi ano hoki ratou ki te haere ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai, kei mate ratou. A kihai ratou i pai, ara, te wahi nui o ratou kihai i pai kia rongu ki nga whakahaunga a te kingi.
- 3 Na, ka riri te kingi mo ratou i whakakeke; no reira ka hoatu e ia ma Amarikiha e whakahauhau i taua wahi o tana taua i whakarongo ai ki ana whakahaunga, a ka whakahau ano ki a ia kia haere atu kia tonoa ratou kia hapai patu.
- 4 Na, ko te hiahia tena o Amarikiha; no te mea he nui tana maminga hei mahi kino, koia ia i whakatakoto whakaaro ai i roto i tona ngakau hei turaki i te kingi o nga Ramana i runga i tona torona.
- 5 Na, kua whiwhi ia ki te tikanga mo te whakahau i ana wahi o nga Ramana i aro ai ki te kingi; a ka whai ano ia kia paingia e te hunga kihai nei i ngohengohe; na konei ra i haere atu ai ia ki te kainga i karangatia ko Onaira, kua rere hoki nga Ramana katoa ki reira; no te mea i kite ratou i te taua e haere mai ana, i mahara hoki e haere mai ana ratou ki te whakamate i a ratou, koia ratou i oma ai ki Onaira ki te kainga kei reira nei nga patu whawhai.
- 6 Na, i whakaritea e ratou tetahi tangata hei kingi hei kai whakahaere tikanga mo runga i a ratou kua pumau hoki ta ratou whakaaro takoto kia kore e whakatitia hei haere atu ki te tu atu i nga Niwhai.
- 7 A i huihui atu ratou ki te tihi o te maunga i karangatia nei ko Anatipa, hei whakariterite ki te whawhai.

## Alma 47

Now we will return in our record to Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness; for, behold, he had taken those who went with him, and went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi, insomuch that the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when the proclamation had gone forth among them they were exceedingly afraid; yea, they feared to displease the king, and they also feared to go to battle against the Nephites lest they should lose their lives. And it came to pass that they would not, or the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

And now it came to pass that the king was wroth because of their disobedience; therefore he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

Now behold, this was the desire of Amalickiah; for he being a very subtle man to do evil therefore he laid the plan in his heart to dethrone the king of the Lamanites.

And now he had got the command of those parts of the Lamanites who were in favor of the king; and he sought to gain favor of those who were not obedient; therefore he went forward to the place which was called Onidah, for thither had all the Lamanites fled; for they discovered the army coming, and, supposing that they were coming to destroy them, therefore they fled to Onidah, to the place of arms.

And they had appointed a man to be a king and a leader over them, being fixed in their minds with a determined resolution that they would not be subjected to go against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

- 8 Na, kahore o Amarihiha whakaaro kia whawhai ki a ratou i runga i a te kingi i whakahau ai, ko tona whakaaro ia kia whiwhi ia ki te whakaaro pai o nga taua a nga Ramana, ki whakatu ai ia i a ia ano hei upoko mo ratou, a ka turaki i te kingi i runga i tona torona, me te mau ano mona te kingitanga.
- 9 A ka mea ia i tana taua kia whakaturia o ratou teneti i te raorao e tata atu ana ki te maunga Anatipa.
- 10 Ano ka po, ka tono puku ia i tetahi ope ki maunga Anatipa, e hiahia ana ki te kai whakahaere tikanga o te hunga i runga i te maunga, ko tona ingoa ko Rehonoti, kia heke iho ki raro o te maunga, no te mea e hiahia ana ia ki te korero atu ki a ia.
- 11 Ano ka rongoa Rehonoti i te kupu tono, kahore ia i maia ki te heke iho ki raro o te maunga. A ka tono ano a Amarihiha, te tuarua o ana tononga, ka hiahia ki a ia kia haere mai ki raro. Na, kihai a Rehonoti i pai; a ka tono ano, te tuatoru o ana tononga.
- 12 Na, i te kitenga o Amarihiha e kore ia e ahei te mea i a Rehonoti kia haere mai ki raro i runga i te maunga, ka haere ake ia ki runga ki te maunga, a wahi iti kua tae ki te puni o Rehonoti; a ka tono ano ia, te wha o ana tukunga atu i tana kupu ki a Rehonoti, e hiahia ana ki a ia kia haere mai ki raro, me te mau mai ano i ona kai tiaki hei hoa mona.
- 13 Nawai a, i te haerenga mai o Rehonoti ratou ko ona kai tiaki ki raro ki a Amarihiha, ka hiahia a Amarihiha ki a ia, kia haere po mai ki raro me tana taua karapoti ai i aua tangata i roto i o ratou puni kua homai nei e te kingi ki a ia te tikanga mo runga i a ratou, a ka tuku atu ia i a ratou ki roto ki nga ringaringa o Rehonoti ki te pai ia ki te mea i a ia, (i a Amarihiha,) he kai whakahaere tikanga tuarua i runga i te taua katoa.
- 14 Na, ka haere mai a Rehonoti ki raro me ana tangata, ka karapoti i nga tangata a Amarihiha, a karapotitia ana ratou e nga taua a Rehonoti i mua i to ratou aranga ake, i te takiritanga o te ata.
- 15 Na, i ta ratou kitenga kua karapotitia ratou, ka totohe ratou ki a Amarihiha kia tukua, kia uru ratou ki o ratou teina, kei whakangaromia ratou. Na ko te mea pu ano tena i hiahia ai a Amarihiha.

Now it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king; but behold, it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

And behold, it came to pass that he caused his army to pitch their tents in the valley which was near the mount Antipas.

And it came to pass that when it was night he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti received the message he durst not go down to the foot of the mount. And it came to pass that Amalickiah sent again the second time, desiring him to come down. And it came to pass that Lehonti would not; and he sent again the third time.

And it came to pass that when Amalickiah found that he could not get Lehonti to come down off from the mount, he went up into the mount, nearly to Lehonti's camp; and he sent again the fourth time his message unto Lehonti, desiring that he would come down, and that he would bring his guards with him.

And it came to pass that when Lehonti had come down with his guards to Amalickiah, that Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

And it came to pass that Lehonti came down with his men and surrounded the men of Amalickiah, so that before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

And it came to pass that when they saw that they were surrounded, they pled with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed. Now this was the very thing which Amalickiah desired.

16 Na, ka tukua e ia ana tangata, he mea tika ke i ta te kingi i whakahau ai. Na, ko te mea tena i hiahia ai a Amarikiha kia ahei ai i a ia te whakatutuki i ana i whakaaro ai hei turaki i te kingi i runga i tona torona.

17 Na, ko te ritenga a nga Ramana, ki te mea ka whakamatea to ratou kai whakahaere tikanga nui, ka whakaritea te kai whakahaere tuarua, hei kai whakahaere nui mo ratou.

18 Na, ka mea a Amarikiha i tetahi o ana pononga kia ata whangai i a Rehonoti ki tetahi mea whakamate, a, mate noa ia.

19 Ano ka mate a Rehonoti, na, ka whakaturia a Amarikiha e nga Ramana hei kai whakahaere hei kai whakahauhau nui ano mo ratou.

20 Na, ka haere a Amarikiha me ona taua (kua whiwhi hoki ia ki tana i hiahia ai,) ki te whenua o Niwhai, ki te pa o Niwhai, koia nei te pa nui.

21 A ka haere mai te kingi ratou ko ona kai tiaki ki te whakatau i a ia, ki tana whakaaro hoki kua rite i a Amarikiha ana i whakahau ai, kua whakaminea ano hoki e ia he taua nui mo te haere atu ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.

22 Heoi to te kingi haerenga mai ki te whakatau i a ia, ka mea a Amarikiha i ana pononga kia haere atu ki te whakatau i te kingi. A haere ana ratou, tuohu iho ana ki mua i a ia, me te mea e whakanui ana i a ia mo tona nui hoki.

23 Na, ka whatoro atu te ringa o te kingi, hei whakaara i a ratou, penei ano me te ritenga o nga Ramana, hei tohu maunga rongo, he ritenga tena no nga Niwhai kua riro nei i a ratou.

24 Na, tona whakaarahanga i te mea tuatahi i te whenua, ka werohia to te kingi ngakau e ia; a hinga iho ia ki te whenua.

25 Na, ka oma atu nga pononga a te kingi; a ka karanga nga pononga a Amarikiha i te karanga, ka mea,

26 Nana, kua werohia te ngakau o te kingi e ana pononga, kua hinga ia, a e oma ana ratou; na, haere mai kia kite.

And it came to pass that he delivered his men, contrary to the commands of the king. Now this was the thing that Amalickiah desired, that he might accomplish his designs in dethroning the king.

Now it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

Now, when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah marched with his armies (for he had gained his desires) to the land of Nephi, to the city of Nephi, which was the chief city.

And the king came out to meet him with his guards, for he supposed that Amalickiah had fulfilled his commands, and that Amalickiah had gathered together so great an army to go against the Nephites to battle.

But behold, as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king. And they went and bowed themselves before the king, as if to reverence him because of his greatness.

And it came to pass that the king put forth his hand to raise them, as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen and they have fled; behold, come and see.

27 Nawai a, ka whakahauhau a Amarihiha i ana taua kia haere atu ki te matakitaki i te mea i pa ai ki te kingi; a to ratou taenga atu ki taua wahi me to ratou kitenga ano i te kingi e takoto ana i roto i ona toto, ka whakariri a Amarihiha, a ka mea, tena ra e nga tangata katoa i aroha nei ki te kingi, me haere atu ki te whaiwhai i ana pononga kia whakamatea.

28 A te rongonga o nga tangata katoa i aroha ai ki te kingi i enei kupu, ka haere mai ratou, ka whaiwhai i nga pononga a te kingi.

29 Na, i te kitenga o nga pononga a te kingi i tetahi taua e whaiwhai ana i ratou, ka pa ano te wehi ki a ratou, a oma atu ana ki te koraha haere mai ana ki te whenua o Harahemera, uru ana ki te iwi o Amona;

30 Na, hoki ana te taua i whaiwhai ai i a ratou, he whaiwhai noa hoki ta ratou; a i pena te whiwhinga o Amarihiha ki te ngakau o te iwi, he mea hoki na tana tinihanga.

31 Na, ao ake ano, ka tomo ia me ana taua ki roto ki te pa o Niwhai a noho ana i te pa.

32 Na, i te rongonga o te kuini, ko te kingi kua whakamatea, kua tono tangata hoki a Amarihiha ki te kuini hei whakaatu ki a ia kua whakamatea te kingi e ona ake pononga; a i whaiwhai ia i a ratou, me tana taua, otira he whaiwhai noa, kua mawhiti hoki ratou.

33 No reira i te whiwhinga o te kuini i tenei whakaaturanga ka tono ia ki a Amarihiha e hiahia ana kia tohungia e ia te iwi o te pa; ka hiahia ano tera kia haere ake ki a ia; ka hiahia ano hoki ki a ia kia mauria atu etahi kai whakaatu hei whakaatu atu i te whakamatenga o te kingi.

34 Nawai a, ka mau a Amarihiha ki taua pononga ano nana i whakamate i te kingi, ratou ko ona hoa katoa, a haere ana ki te kuini, ki te wahi i noho ai ia; a na ratou katoa i korero ki a ia i whakamatea te kingi e ana ake pononga; a na ratou ano i mea, kua oma ratou he teka ianei he kai whakaatu tenei i to ratou he? A penei ka tatu te ngakau o te kuini mo te whakamatenga o te kingi.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah commanded that his armies should march forth and see what had happened to the king; and when they had come to the spot, and found the king lying in his gore, Amalickiah pretended to be wroth, and said: Whosoever loved the king, let him go forth, and pursue his servants that they may be slain.

And it came to pass that all they who loved the king, when they heard these words, came forth and pursued after the servants of the king.

Now when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

And the army which pursued after them returned, having pursued after them in vain; and thus Amalickiah, by his fraud, gained the hearts of the people.

And it came to pass on the morrow he entered the city Nephi with his armies, and took possession of the city.

And now it came to pass that the queen, when she had heard that the king was slain—for Amalickiah had sent an embassy to the queen informing her that the king had been slain by his servants, that he had pursued them with his army, but it was in vain, and they had made their escape—

Therefore, when the queen had received this message she sent unto Amalickiah, desiring him that he would spare the people of the city; and she also desired him that he should come in unto her; and she also desired him that he should bring witnesses with him to testify concerning the death of the king.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah took the same servant that slew the king, and all them who were with him, and went in unto the queen, unto the place where she sat; and they all testified unto her that the king was slain by his own servants; and they said also: They have fled; does not this testify against them? And thus they satisfied the queen concerning the death of the king.

35      Nawai a, ka whai a Amarihiha kia paingia e te kuini, a tangohia ana ia hei wahine tuturu mana; a penei i runga i tana tinihanga me te awhinatanga o ana pononga maminga, ka whiwhi ia ki te kingitanga; ae ra, ka whakaetia ia hei kingi puta noa i te whenua katoa, i roto i nga iwi katoa o nga Ramana, koia nei nga Ramana ratou ko nga Remuere, ko nga Ihimaera, me te hunga katoa i mawehe atu i roto i nga Niwhai, mai i te kingitanga o Niwhai a mohoa noa nei.

36      Na, i whakaakona enei kai kotiti ke ki aua whakaakoranga ano me taua matauranga ano i whakaakona e nga Niwhai, ae ra, i whakaakona ratou ki taua matauranga ano ki te Ariki, ahakoa ra, he mea whakamiharo tenei, ara, kaore i roa i muri i to ratou mawehenga atu, kua pakeke rawa ratou, kua matara rawa atu i te ripenetatanga, kua mohoa rawa, kua kino rawa, kua nanakia rawa i nga Ramana; e tino aro ana ki nga whakarereanga iho a nga Ramana; e tuku ana i a ratou ki te mangeretanga me nga hiahai taikaha katoa o ia ahua, o ia ahua; ae ra, wareware tonu ake i a ratou te Ariki to ratou Atua.

And it came to pass that Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife; and thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom; yea, he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites, yea, having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, nevertheless, it is strange to relate, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites—drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; yea, entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 48

- 1 Na, i te wa tonu i whiwhi ai a Amarihiha ki te kingitanga, ka tahuri ia ki te whakakiki i nga ngakau o nga Ramana kia riri ki te iwi o Niwhai; ae ra, ka whakarite tangata ia hei korerorero ki nga Ramana i runga i o ratou pourewa hei whakahe i nga Niwhai.
- 2 A ka penei tana whakakiki i o ratou ngakau ki nga Niwhai, a i to muri wahi o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, i te mea kua rite i a ia ana i whakaaro ai tae noa ki taua wa; ae ra, kua meinga ia hei kingi i runga i nga Ramana, a ka whai ano ia kia kingi i runga i te whenua katoa; i runga hoki i te iwi katoa i roto i te whenua, i runga i nga Niwhai me nga Ramana ano hoki,
- 3 No reira i rite ai i a ia tana i whakaaro ai, no te mea i whakapakeke ia i nga ngakau o nga Ramana, i whakamatapo ia i o ratou whakaaro, me te whakaoho ano i a ratou kia riri, no ka whakaminea e ia he mano tini hei haere atu ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.
- 4 I u tonu hoki tana whakaaro i runga i te nui o te tokomahatanga o tona iwi kia taea e ia nga Niwhai, kia whakaponongatia hoki ratou;
- 5 A penei tana whakaritenga i nga rangatira nui i roto i nga Horama, no te mea i mohio ratou ki te kaha o nga Niwhai, ki o ratou kainga huihui, me nga wahi ngoikore o o ratou pa; no reira i whakarite ia i a ratou hei rangatira nui i runga i ana taua.
- 6 Nawai a, mau ana ratou ki o ratou puni, haere ana whaka-te-whenua o Harahemera i roto i te koraha.
- 7 Na, i a Amarihiha e whiwhi ana ki te kaha i runga i te tahae, me te tinihanga, na, ka whakariterite a Moronai i te whakaaro o te iwi kia pono tonu ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua;
- 8 Ae ra, ka whakakaha ia i nga taua a nga Niwhai, me te hanga i nga pa pakupaku, ara, i nga kainga e oma ai ki reira; i te hanga ano ia i nga taiepa whenua awhio noa, awhio noa, hei karapotitanga mo ana taua, e hanga ana ano i nga taiepa kohatu hei karapotitanga mo ratou awhio noa nga pa, me nga rohe o te whenua; ae ra, awhio noa te whenua awhio noa;

## Alma 48

And now it came to pass that, as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi; yea, he did appoint men to speak unto the Lamanites from their towers, against the Nephites.

And thus he did inspire their hearts against the Nephites, insomuch that in the latter end of the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges, he having accomplished his designs thus far, yea, having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

Therefore he had accomplished his design, for he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger, insomuch that he had gathered together a numerous host to go to battle against the Nephites.

For he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

And thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites, and their places of resort, and the weakest parts of their cities; therefore he appointed them to be chief captains over his armies.

And it came to pass that they took their camp, and moved forth toward the land of Zarahemla in the wilderness.

Now it came to pass that while Amalickiah had thus been obtaining power by fraud and deceit, Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

Yea, he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands; yea, all round about the land.



- 9 A whakatu ana ano ia i nga tangata tokomaha rawa hei tiaki mo o ratou taiepa ngoikore rawa; a i penei tana taiepa, tana whakakaha i te whenua i nohoia e nga Niwhai.
- 10 A i penei tana whakariterite i nga mea hei tiaki i to ratou tikanga here-kore, i o ratou whenua, i a ratou wahine i a ratou tamariki, i to ratou rangimarietanga, kia ora ai hoki ratou ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, kia tiaki ai hoki ratou i taua mea i karangatia ai e o ratou hoa riri ko te tikanga Karaitiana.
- 11 A he tangata kaha marohirohi a Moronai, he tangata ano hoki he tino tika tona matauranga; ae ra he tangata kahore nei ona ahuaureka atu ki te whakaheke toto; he tangata e hari ana tona wairua ki te herekoretanga, ki te mawhetotanga o tona whenua, me ona teina i te ponongatanga i te whakamahinga;
- 12 Ae ra, he tangata ia e pupuhi ake ana tona ngakau ki te whakawhetai ki tona Atua, mo nga tikanga me nga manaakitanga maha i whakatau ai ia ki tona iwi; he tangata e mahi nui ana hei painga hei whakaoranga mo tona iwi;
- 13 Na, he tangata ano ia e u ana ki te whakapono o te Karaiti, na i oati ia ki tetahi oati, ki te tiaki i tona iwi, i ona tikanga, i tona whenua, i tona karakia a tae noa ki te whakahekenga o ona toto.
- 14 Na, i akona nga Niwhai kia tiaki i a ratou ano i o ratou hoa riri, a tae noa ki te whakahekenga toto ki te mea ka takoto nei te tikanga hei pera; a i akona ano ratou kia kaua rawa e hoatu he take he ; kia kaua rawa ano hoki e hapai hoari ki tetahi, ki te hoa riri anake hei tiaki i o ratou oranga;
- 15 A ki ta ratou whakapono hoki, ma te penei e manaakitia ai ratou e te Atua i runga i te whenua; ara, ki te pono tonu ratou ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua ka manaakitia ratou e ia i runga i te whenua; ka whakaaturia ki a ratou kia oma, kia whakariterite ranei mo te whawhai, ki te ritenga o to ratou oranga noatanga;

And in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men; and thus he did fortify and strengthen the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And thus he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

And Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding; yea, a man that did not delight in bloodshed; a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

Yea, a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people; a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

Yea, and he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ, and he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

Now the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary; yea, and they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

And this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land, or in other words, if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land; yea, warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their danger;

16 Ka whakaaturia ano hoki e te Atua ki a ratou ta ratou wahi e haere ai hei tiaki i a ratou ano i o ratou hoa riri; a ma te penei e whakaputaina ai ratou e te Ariki, na ko te whakapono tena o Moronai: a i whakamanamana ano tona ngakau i runga i taua whakapono; ehara i te mea i runga i te whakaheke toto, engari i runga i te mahi pai, i runga i te tiakanga i tona iwi; ae ra, i runga i te puritanga i nga whakahaunga a te Atua; me te puhoitanga atu ki te kino.

17 Na, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, me i rite nga tangata katoa i mua, inaianei, me nga tangata katoa i nga ra e takoto ake nei, ki a Moronai, na, penei kua whakangaeuetia nga kaha o te reinga mo ake ake ake tonu atu; ae ra, penei kua kore rawa o te rewera whai kaha ki te ngakau o nga tamariki a te tangata.

18 Nana, he tangata tera e rite ana ki a Amona, te tama a Mohia, ae ra, ki era atu tamariki ano o Mohia; ae ra, ki a Arami me ana tama, no te mea he tangata na te Atua ratou katoa.

19 Na, kihai i hoki iho i to Moronai kaha ki te mahi mea mo te iwi te kaha o Heramana ratou ko ona teina: i kauwhau hoki ratou i te kupu a te Atua, i rumaki ano he mea ripenetatanga i nga tangata katoa e whakarongo ana ki a ratou kupu.

20 A i haere atu ratou, a ka whakaiti te iwi i a ratou ano, he mea na ā ratou kupu, no ka aro nui mai te Ariki ki a ratou, ae ra, ka kore nga whawhai, me nga tautohetohenga i roto i a ratou ano; ae ra, mo nga tau e wha:

21 Heoi, penei ano me taku i ki na, i to muri wahi o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau i whakahaua ratou kia whawhai ki o ratou tuakana ki nga Ramana, he ahakoa te maunga rongo i roto i a ratou ano;

22 Na, kihai i mutu a ratou whawhai ki nga Ramana mo nga tau maha he ahakoa te nui o to ratou kore hiahia atu ki te pera.

23 Na, he mea pouri ki a ratou te hapai patu ki nga Ramana, no te mea kahore o ratou ahuareka atu ki te whakaheke toto; ae ra, kahore i tenei anake te take; he mea pouri ano ki a ratou kia waiho ratou hei take e tonoa ai nga tuakana maha o ratou i roto i tenei ao ki tetahi ao mau tonu i te mea kahore nei i rite noa ratou mo te tutaki ki to ratou Atua.

And also, that God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies, and by so doing, the Lord would deliver them; and this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it; not in the shedding of blood but in doing good, in preserving his people, yea, in keeping the commandments of God, yea, and resisting iniquity.

Yea, verily, verily I say unto you, if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

Behold, he was a man like unto Ammon, the son of Mosiah, yea, and even the other sons of Mosiah, yea, and also Alma and his sons, for they were all men of God.

Now behold, Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people than was Moroni; for they did preach the word of God, and they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would hear-ken unto their words.

And thus they went forth, and the people did humble themselves because of their words, inso-much that they were highly favored of the Lord, and thus they were free from wars and contentions among themselves, yea, even for the space of four years.

But, as I have said, in the latter end of the nine-teenth year, yea, notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were compelled reluc-tantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

Yea, and in fine, their wars never did cease for the space of many years with the Lamanites, notwith-standing their much reluctance.

Now, they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shed-ding of blood; yea, and this was not all—they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, un-prepared to meet their God.

24 Ahakoa ra, kihai ratou i pai ki te tuku i o ratou ake tinana kia whakamatea, kei kohurutia hoki a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, he mea na te kohuru, me te ringa kino i aua teina o ratou i whakarere, i a ratou i mua, me to ratou hahi, a i tahuri ki te whakamate i a ratou, he mea na to ratou haere tahi me nga Ramana.

25 Ae ra, kihai ratou i ahei te tuku kia hari o ratou tuakana i runga i te toto o nga Niwhai, i te mea e toe ana etahi e pupuri nei i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, no te mea ko te kupu whakaari tenei a te Ariki. Ki te pupuri ratou i ana whakahaunga ka kake ratou i runga i te whenua.

Nevertheless, they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren, yea, and had dissented from their church, and had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

Yea, they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God, for the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 49

- 1 Na, i te tekau ma tahi o nga marama o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau, i te tekau o nga ra o te marama, ka kitea nga taua a nga Ramana e whakatata mai ana ki te whenua o Amonihā.
- 2 Nana, i hangā houtia te pa, a i whakaturia ano e Moronai he taua i te taha o nga rohe o te pa, a na ratou i kerī he parepare awhio noa, awhio noa hei arai mo nga pere me nga kohatu a nga Ramana; ta te mea, na, i whawhai ratou ki nga kohatu me nga pere.
- 3 Nana, i ki na ahau, kua hanga houtia te pa o Amonihā. Na, taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, ae, he mea hanga hou tetahi wahi, a i te mea kua whakangaromia taua pa i mua e nga Ramana i te kino hoki o te iwi, ka mahara ratou he mea ngawari noa iho te rironga ano i a ratou hei taonga parau.
- 4 Heoi, no te nui o to ratou pohehe: ta te mea i keria he parepare e nga Niwhai tawhio noa i a ratou, a kihai i taea e nga Ramana te maka a ratou kohatu me a ratou pere ki a ratou hei whakamate i a ratou, i te tiketike hoki, kihai ano hoki i ahei te huaki ki a ratou engari ma te kuwaha tomokanga anake.
- 5 Na, i tenei wa ka tino miharo nga rangatira o nga Ramana, no te matauranga nui o nga Niwhai ki te whakariterite i o ratou wahi nohoanga.
- 6 Na, i mahara nga kai whakahaere o nga Ramana no te tini o ratou: ae ra, i mahara ratou ka tukua ratou kia huaki ki a ratou kia pera me ta ratou i mea ai i mua: a i whakawhiwhi ano ratou i a ratou ano ki nga puapua, ki nga pukupuku: a i whakawhiwhi ano ratou i a ratou ano ki nga kakahu hiako: ae ra, he kakahu matotoru rawa hei hipoki mo o ratou wahi tahanga.
- 7 A no te pera o to ratou whakariteritenga i mahara ai ratou he mea ngawari noa iho ki a ratou te pehi, te whakauru i o ratou teina ki raro i te ioka o te ponongatanga, te patu ranei me te kohuru i a ratou rite ana ki ta ratou e ahuareka ai.

## Alma 49

And now it came to pass in the eleventh month of the nineteenth year, on the tenth day of the month, the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

And behold, the city had been rebuilt, and Moroni had stationed an army by the borders of the city, and they had cast up dirt round about to shield them from the arrows and the stones of the Lamanites; for behold, they fought with stones and with arrows.

Behold, I said that the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt. I say unto you, yea, that it was in part rebuilt; and because the Lamanites had destroyed it once because of the iniquity of the people, they supposed that it would again become an easy prey for them.

But behold, how great was their disappointment; for behold, the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them that they might take effect, neither could they come upon them save it was by their place of entrance.

Now at this time the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

Now the leaders of the Lamanites had supposed, because of the greatness of their numbers, yea, they supposed that they should be privileged to come upon them as they had hitherto done; yea, and they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates; and they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

And being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

- 8 Heoi hei whakamiharotanga rawatanga mo ratou, ara, kua takatu ratou mo ratou i runga i tetahi tu takatutanga kahore ano i kitea noatia i roto i nga tamariki a Rihai. Na, kua takatu ratou mo nga Ramana, mo te whawhai i runga i te ritenga o nga whakaakoranga a Moronai.
- 9 Nawai a, i whakamiharotia nuitia nga Ramana, ara, nga Amarikiha, ki a ratou tu whakariterite mo te whawhai.
- 10 Na, me he mea i haere mai a kingi Amarikiha ki raro ki waho o te whenua o Niwhai, i mua i tana taua, kua mea pea ia i nga Ramana ki a kokiri i nga Niwhai i taua pa i Amoniha; ta te me, kahore he tikanga ki a ia o te toto o tona iwi.
- 11 Otiia kihai a Amarikiha i haere mai ki raro, ki te whawhai koia ake. A e matakua ana ana rangatira nui ki te tu atu i nga Niwhai i te pa o Amoniha, no te mea kua oti te whakarereke e Moronai te whakahaeretanga o nga hanga i roto i nga Niwhai, no ka takahe ta nga Ramana i runga i o ratou pa hei rerenga mo ratou, a kihai ratou i ahei te huaki ki a ratou.
- 12 Koia ratou i hoki ai ki te koraha a mau ana ki ta ratou puni, haere ana whaka-te-whenua o Noa, ki a ratou hoki ko tetahi kainga pai ano tera hei huakanga ma ratou ki nga Niwhai;
- 13 Kihai hoki ratou i mohio i hanga taiepa a Moronai, ara, i hanga pa hei whakaora mo ia kainga, mo ia kainga i runga i te whenua katoa tawhio noa, tawhio noa: a, ka haere ratou ki te whenua o Noa i runga i te whakaaro tuturu: ae ra, ka puta mai o ratou rangatira nui, ka oati i tetahi oati, tera ratou e whakangaro i te iwi o taua pa.
- 14 Heoi, te whakamiharotanga mo ratou, ko taua pa o Noa koia he kainga ngoikore i mua, inaianei kua kaha, he mea na nga tikanga a Moronai; ae ra, nui atu te kaha i te pa o Amoniha.
- 15 Na, he whai whakaaro tenei no Moronai; i mahara hoki ia ka matakua ratou ki te pa o Amoniha; a i te mea ko te pa o Noa te kainga ngoikore rawa o te whenua i mua, na; era ratou e haere ki reira ki te whawhai; a koia tena, kua rite ki ana i hiahia ai, te raorao ki te rawhiti o te awa Hairona.

But behold, to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi. Now they were prepared for the Lamanites, to battle after the manner of the instructions of Moroni.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites, or the Amalickiahites, were exceedingly astonished at their manner of preparation for war.

Now, if king Amalickiah had come down out of the land of Nephi, at the head of his army, perhaps he would have caused the Lamanites to have attacked the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah; for behold, he did care not for the blood of his people.

But behold, Amalickiah did not come down himself to battle. And behold, his chief captains durst not attack the Nephites at the city of Ammonihah, for Moroni had altered the management of affairs among the Nephites, insomuch that the Lamanites were disappointed in their places of retreat and they could not come upon them.

Therefore they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah, supposing that to be the next best place for them to come against the Nephites.

For they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about; therefore, they marched forward to the land of Noah with a firm determination; yea, their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

But behold, to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong, yea, even to exceed the strength of the city Ammonihah.

And now, behold, this was wisdom in Moroni; for he had supposed that they would be frightened at the city Ammonihah; and as the city of Noah had hitherto been the weakest part of the land, therefore they would march thither to battle; and thus it was according to his desires.

- 16 Nana, kua whakaturia e Moronai a Rihai hei rangatira nui i runga i nga tangata o taua pa; a ko taua Rihai ano tera nana i whawhai ki nga Ramana i
- 17 Na, ka taka ano ta nga Ramana i to ratou kitenga ko Rihai te kai whakahauhau o te pa, no te mea i wehi nui ratou i a Rihai; ahakoa ra kua oatitia tetahi oati e nga rangatira nui ki te huaki i taua pa; na, kawea ana e ratou a ratou taua.
- 18 Na, kihai i ahei i nga Ramana te tomo ki roto ki o ratou pa whakaora ma tetahi huarahi ke atu, ma te tomokanga anake, he tiketike hoki no nga mea oneone i keria ai me te hohonu ano o te wai-keri i keria ai a tawhio noa, tawhio noa, haunga ra te tomokanga.
- 19 A penei kua noho takatu nga Niwhai ki te whakamate i nga mea katoa e tohe ai ki te piki ake ki runga ki te tomo ki roto ki te pa ma tetahi huarahi ke atu, he mea makamaka nga kohatu, me nga pere ki runga ki a ratou.
- 20 A penei kua takatu ratou; ae ra, he ope no o ratou tangata tino kaha, me a ratou hoari, me a ratou kotaha, hei hahau iho i te katoa i totohe ai ki te tomo ki roto ki to ratou wahi whakaora ra te tomokanga: a penei i noho takatu ratou ki te tiaki i a ratou ano i nga Ramana.
- 21 Nawai a, ka kawea e nga rangatira o nga Ramana a ratou taua ki mua i te kuwaha tomokanga, a ka timata ki te totohe ki nga Niwhai, kia tomo ki roto ki a ratou pa whakaora; heoi, whakawhati ana ratou i tenei taima, i tenei taima, a he tino nui rawa te parekura.
- 22 Na, i to ratou kitenga e kore ratou e ahei te whiwahi kaha i runga i nga Niwhai ra te tomokanga, ka tahuri ratou ki te keria iho i a ratou tahataha oneone, hei huarahi mo a ratou taua, kia rite ai te ahua mo ratou mo te whawhai; heoi i runga i enei tohenga i hatepea atu ratou e nga kohatu me nga pere i akina ai ratou: a mo te whakaki i o ratou wai-keri i runga i te keria iho i nga tahataha oneone, ka whakakiia ketia tetahi wahi ki o ratou tupapaku me nga tangata i tu.

And behold, Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

And now behold it came to pass, that when the Lamanites had found that Lehi commanded the city they were again disappointed, for they feared Lehi exceedingly; nevertheless their chief captains had sworn with an oath to attack the city; therefore, they brought up their armies.

Now behold, the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

And thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

Thus they were prepared, yea, a body of their strongest men, with their swords and their slings, to smite down all who should attempt to come into their place of security by the place of entrance; and thus were they prepared to defend themselves against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security; but behold, they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

Now when they found that they could not obtain power over the Nephites by the pass, they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight; but behold, in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

23 A penei kei nga Niwhai te kaha katoa i runga i o ratou hoa riri: a i penei te totohe a nga Ramana ki te whakamate i nga Niwhai, a patua noatia o ratou rangatira nui katoa: neke ake ano i te mano kotahi o nga Ramana i patua; i tetahi taha ia kahore kia kotahi te tangata o nga Niwhai i whakamatea.

24 E tata ana ki te rima tekau i tu, ko nga tangata era i tu hangai ki nga pere a nga Ramana i roto i te tomokanga, heoi i tiakina ratou e o ratou puapua, me o ratou pukupuku me a ratou tiaki mahunga, a kei nga waewae o ratou tunga, he maha ano hoki e kino rawa ana.

25 Na, i te kitenga o nga Ramana ko o ratou rangatira nui i whakamatea katoatia ka oma atu ratou ki te koraha. Nawai a, ka hoki ratou ki te whenua o Niwhai; ki te kawe korero ki to ratou kingi; ki a Amarihiha koia ano i whanau he Niwhai, mo to ratou whakamatenga nui.

26 Na, ka nui rawa tana riri ki tana iwi i te kore kahore i tutuki tana i hiahia ai ki nga Niwhai; kihai ano hoki ia i whakaiti i a ratou ki te ioka o te ponongatanga;

27 Ae ra, he rahi rawa tana riri, a ka kohukohu ano ia ki te Atua, ki a Moronai ano hoki, me te oati ano he oati kia inumia e ia ona toto; a ko tenei mo Moronai i pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua i runga i te whakarite hei whakaora mo tona iwi.

28 Otiia i whakawhetai atu te iwi o Niwhai ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, mo tona kaha kahore nei ona rite i whakaorangia ai ratou i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri.

29 Heoi, penei ka mutu te tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai;

30 A, i mau tonu hoki te ata noho i roto i a ratou, he rahi rawa hoki te whai pai i roto i te hahi mo ratou i whakarongo, i takake tonu ki te kupu a te Atua, i whakapuakina ai ki a ratou e Heremana, ratou ko Hipirono, ko Korianato, ko Amona, ko ona teina, ko etahi atu ano hoki; ko te hunga katoa ano hoki i whakaritea ai i runga i te tikanga tapu a te Atua i rumakina hoki ratou he mea ripenetatanga, i tonoa ano ki roto ki te iwi ki te kauwhau, ki te aha, ki te aha.

Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies; and thus the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain; yea, and more than a thousand of the Lamanites were slain; while, on the other hand, there was not a single soul of the Nephites which was slain.

There were about fifty who were wounded, who had been exposed to the arrows of the Lamanites through the pass, but they were shielded by their shields, and their breastplates, and their head-plates, insomuch that their wounds were upon their legs, many of which were very severe.

And it came to pass, that when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness. And it came to pass that they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah, who was a Nephite by birth, concerning their great loss.

And it came to pass that he was exceedingly angry with his people, because he had not obtained his desire over the Nephites; he had not subjected them to the yoke of bondage.

Yea, he was exceedingly wroth, and he did curse God, and also Moroni, swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood; and this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in preparing for the safety of his people.

And it came to pass, that on the other hand, the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their enemies.

And thus ended the nineteenth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

Yea, and there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence which they gave unto the word of God, which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those who had been ordained by the holy order of God, being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach among the people.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 50

- 1 Na, kihai i mutu i a Moronai te whakariterite mo te whawhai, ara, hei arai atu i nga Ramana i tona iwi; ina hoki i te timatanga o te rua tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i mea ia i ana taua kia tahuri ki te kerī i nga parepare tawhio noa, tawhio noa i nga pa katoa puta noa i te whenua katoa i nohoia e nga Niwhai;
- 2 A i mea ia kia hoatu he rakau ki runga ki te tihī o aua parepare; ae ra, kia hangā he mahinga rakau kei to te tangata ano tona tiketike, tawhio noa i nga pa.
- 3 A ka mea ano ia kia hangā tetahi patakitaki ki runga i aua mahinga rakau, tawhio noa, tawhio noa, he mea kaha, he mea tiketike nga patakitaki;
- 4 A ka mea ia kia hangā he pourewa hei tirohanga atu mo ratou, ma runga ake i aua patakitaki, ka mea ano hoki ia, kia hangā he wahi arai ki runga ki aua pourewa, kei whara ratou i nga kohatu, i nga pere a nga Ramana;
- 5 A, ka rite aua mea, kua ahei ratou te maka kohatu i runga, rite tonu ki ta ratou i pai ai, ki to ratou kaha hoki, hei whakamate i te tangata e totohe ana ki te whakatata ki nga taiepa o te pa.
- 6 A penei ka rite a Moronai nga kainga kaha tawhio noa, tawhio noa i nga pa katoa puta noa i te whenua katoa, mo te taenga mai o o ratou hoa riri.
- 7 Nawai a, ka mea a Moronai i ana taua kia haere atu ki te koraha ki te rawhiti; a haere ana ratou, panaia atu ana nga Ramana katoa i roto nei i te koraha ki te rawhiti ki roto ki o ratou ake whenua, koia ano i te taha ki te tonga o te whenua o Harahemera;
- 8 Na, tika tonu atu te rohe o te whenua o Niwhai i te moana ki te rawhiti tae noa ki te hauauru.
- 9 Na, i te mea kua oti te pana e Moronai nga Ramana katoa ki waho o te koraha i te rawhiti, ara i te nota o nga whenua i nohoia ai e ratou, na, ka mea ia i nga tangata i te whenua o Harahemera me te whenua e patata ana kia haere atu ki roto ki te koraha i te rawhiti, tae noa ki nga rohe i te taha o te takutai, hei noho i te whenua.

## Alma 50

And now it came to pass that Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend his people against the Lamanites; for he caused that his armies should commence in the commencement of the twentieth year of the reign of the judges, that they should commence in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities, throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there should be timbers, yea, works of timbers built up to the height of a man, round about the cities.

And he caused that upon those works of timbers there should be a frame of pickets built upon the timbers round about; and they were strong and high.

And he caused towers to be erected that overlooked those works of pickets, and he caused places of security to be built upon those towers, that the stones and the arrows of the Lamanites could not hurt them.

And they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

Thus Moroni did prepare strongholds against the coming of their enemies, round about every city in all the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his armies should go forth into the east wilderness; yea, and they went forth and drove all the Lamanites who were in the east wilderness into their own lands, which were south of the land of Zarahemla.

And the land of Nephi did run in a straight course from the east sea to the west.

And it came to pass that when Moroni had driven all the Lamanites out of the east wilderness, which was north of the lands of their own possessions, he caused that the inhabitants who were in the land of Zarahemla and in the land round about should go forth into the east wilderness, even to the borders by the seashore, and possess the land.



- 10 Ka whakaturia ano hoki e ia nga taua ki te tonga, ki nga rohe o o ratou whenua, me te mea ano i a ratou kia hanga i nga pa whawhai hei tiaki i a ratou taua me to ratou iwi i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri.
- 11 A penei ka katia e ia nga piringa kaha katoa o nga Ramana, i te koraha ki te rawhiti: ki te hauauru ano hoki, ka hanga pa whawhai ia i te rohe i waenganui i nga Niwhai i nga Ramana, i waenganui o te whenua o Harahemera o te whenua o Niwhai; i te moana i te hauauru, e takoto haere atu ana ra te matapuna o te awa Hairona; nohoia ana e nga Niwhai te whenua katoa whaka-te-nota: ae ra, ko te whenua katoa whaka-te-nota i te whenua Momona, e rite ana ki ta ratou i ahuaireka ai.
- 12 A i penei a Moronai me ana taua i nui haere tonu nei i ia ra, i ia ra he mea na te whakatuturutanga o ana mahi hei oranga mo ratou; koia ratou i whai ai ki te kati atu i te kaha me te mana o nga Ramana, i runga i nga whenua katoa e whai paanga ana ratou, kia kore ai ratou e whai mana ki runga i nga whenua e whai paanga ana ratou.
- 13 Na, ka timata nga Niwhai i te turanga o tetahi pa: a i huaina e ratou te ingoa o taua pa ko Moronai; i te taha tairawhiti; i te tonga i te taha o te rohe o nga kainga o nga Ramana.
- 14 A ka timata ano ratou i te turanga mo tetahi pa i waenganui o te pa o Moronai, o te pa o Arona, e tutaki atu ana ki nga rohe o Arona, o Moronai; a ka huaina e ratou ingoa o te pa, ara, te whenua ko Nepiha.
- 15 A ka timata ano ratou i taua tau ano, ki te hanga i nga pa maha ki te nota; ko tetahi i ahua rereke i etahi, i karangatia e ratou ko Rihai, koia i te nota i te taha o nga rohe o te takutai.
- 16 A penei ka mutu te rua tekau o nga tau.
- 17 Na, i roto te iwi o Niwhai i te ngahuru i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 18 A, ka kake nui ano ratou, ka whai taonga nui: ae ra, ka whakatokomaha ratou, ka kaha ano i runga i te whenua.

And he also placed armies on the south, in the borders of their possessions, and caused them to erect fortifications that they might secure their armies and their people from the hands of their enemies.

And thus he cut off all the strongholds of the Lamanites in the east wilderness, yea, and also on the west, fortifying the line between the Nephites and the Lamanites, between the land of Zarahemla and the land of Nephi, from the west sea, running by the head of the river Sidon—the Nephites possessing all the land northward, yea, even all the land which was northward of the land Bountiful, according to their pleasure.

Thus Moroni, with his armies, which did increase daily because of the assurance of protection which his works did bring forth unto them, did seek to cut off the strength and the power of the Lamanites from off the lands of their possessions, that they should have no power upon the lands of their possession.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began the foundation of a city, and they called the name of the city Moroni; and it was by the east sea; and it was on the south by the line of the possessions of the Lamanites.

And they also began a foundation for a city between the city of Moroni and the city of Aaron, joining the borders of Aaron and Moroni; and they called the name of the city, or the land, Nephihah.

And they also began in that same year to build many cities on the north, one in a particular manner which they called Lehi, which was in the north by the borders of the seashore.

And thus ended the twentieth year.

And in these prosperous circumstances were the people of Nephi in the commencement of the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly rich; yea, and they did multiply and wax strong in the land.

- 19 A penei ka kite tatou i nga whakahaere katoa a te Ariki he atawhai, he tika; hei whakaritenga i ana kupu katoa ki nga tamariki a te tangata: ae ra, e ahei ana i a tatou te kite i te ritenga i tenei taima, o ana kupu i korero ai ia ki a Rihai, i mea ai.
- 20 Ka koa koe me au tamariki; a ka manaakitia ratou, ki te mea ka pupuri ratou i aku whakahaunga, ka kake ratou i runga i te whenua. Engari, me mahara tonu, ki te kore ratou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga, na, ka hatepea atu ratou i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 21 A ka kite tatou i enei kupu whakaari kua mana ki te iwi o Niwhai; no te mea na a ratou ngangaretanga, me a ratou tautohetohenga, ae ra, me a ratou kohurutanga, me a ratou pahuatanga, na a ratou karakia ki nga whakapakoko, na a ratou puremutanga, na a ratou mahi whakarihariha i roto ra i a ratou ano i puta ai a ratou whawhai me o ratou whakangaromanga ki a ratou.
- 22 A ko te hunga i u tonu ai ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Ariki, na, i whakaorangia ratou i nga wa katoa, i nga mano o o ratou teina kino i tukua atu ki te ponongatanga, ki te mate ranei i te hoari, kia heke haere ranei o ratou whakapono me te whakahoa atu ano ratou ki nga Ramana.
- 23 Na, kahore noa he takiwa i nui atu ai i to nga ra o Moronai, te hari i roto i te iwi o Niwhai mai i nga ra o Niwhai: ae ra, i tenei takiwa, i te rua tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.
- 24 Nawai a, ka pahemo ano te rua tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, i runga i te rangimarie; ae ra, ko te rua tekau ma toru ano hoki o nga tau.
- 25 Nawai a, i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma wha o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, kua hua tonu ano te rangimarie i roto i te iwi o Niwhai, me i kore tetahi tautohetohenga i tupu i roto i a ratou mo te whenua o Rihai, me te whenua o Moriatono, e tutuki ana ki nga rohe o Rihai, ko nga whenua e rua enei e takoto ana i nga rohe i te taha takutai.

And thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men; yea, we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land. But remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrellings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

And those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times, whilst thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

But behold there never was a happier time among the people of Nephi, since the days of Nephi, than in the days of Moroni, yea, even at this time, in the twenty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that the twenty and second year of the reign of the judges also ended in peace; yea, and also the twenty and third year.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges, there would also have been peace among the people of Nephi had it not been for a contention which took place among them concerning the land of Lehi, and the land of Morianton, which joined upon the borders of Lehi; both of which were on the borders by the seashore.

- 26 Ta te mea i ki te iwi nona nei te whenua o Moriatono, no ratou ano tetahi wahi o te whenua o Rihai; koia i tupu ai he tautohetohe nanakia i waenganui i a ratou, no ka hapai patu te iwi o Moriatono ki o ratou teina, a u tonu ana to ratou whakaaro ki te whakamate i a ratou ki te hoari.
- 27 Heoi, oma atu ana te iwi i nohoia ai te whenua o Rihai ki te puni o Moronai, a tonu ana ki a ia kia awhina i a ratou; no te mea kahore ratou i te he.
- 28 Nawai a, i te kitenga o te iwi Moriatono, i arahina nei e tetahi tangata nona nei te ingoa ko Moriatono, i te iwi o Rihai kua oma atu ki te puni o Moronai, ka pa te wehi nui ki a ratou, kei haere mai te taua a Moronai kei whakamate i a ratou;
- 29 Na, ka whakakiki a Moriatono i o ratou ngakau kia rere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, e kapi ana i nga roto nunui, kia nohoia ai e ratou taua whenua whaka-te-nota.
- 30 Nana, tera e rite i a ratou tenei whakaaro. (a penei kua waiho he take whakapouri,) me i kore a Moriatono, he tangata ngakau wera nui hoki ia, i riri ki tetahi o ana pononga wahine, a hinga ana ki a ia, patu nui ana i a ia.
- 31 A rere atu ana tera, haere atu ana ki te puni o Moronai me te korero ano i nga mea katoa ki a Moronai mo taua mea; mo a ratou whakaaro ano hoki ki te rere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota.
- 32 Na, ka pa te wehi ki te iwi i te whenua Momona, ara, ki a Moronai kei whakarongo ratou ki nga kupu a Moriatono, me te whakauru ano ki tona iwi, a penei ka whiwhi ia ki te tikanga o aua wahi o te whenua e whakatakoto take ai hei putake mo te kino i roto i te iwi o Niwhai; ae ra, era aua putake mo te kino e riro hei turaki i to ratou here-koretanga.
- 33 Na reira ka tonoa e Moronai tetahi taua me o ratou teneti ki te haukoti i te iwi o Moriatono ki te whakamutu i ta ratou rere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota.

For behold, the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were determined by the sword to slay them.

But behold, the people who possessed the land of Lehi fled to the camp of Moroni, and appealed unto him for assistance; for behold they were not in the wrong.

And it came to pass that when the people of Morianton, who were led by a man whose name was Morianton, found that the people of Lehi had fled to the camp of Moroni, they were exceedingly fearful lest the army of Moroni should come upon them and destroy them.

Therefore, Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward, which was covered with large bodies of water, and take possession of the land which was northward.

And behold, they would have carried this plan into effect, (which would have been a cause to have been lamented) but behold, Morianton being a man of much passion, therefore he was angry with one of his maid servants, and he fell upon her and beat her much.

And it came to pass that she fled, and came over to the camp of Moroni, and told Moroni all things concerning the matter, and also concerning their intentions to flee into the land northward.

Now behold, the people who were in the land Bountiful, or rather Moroni, feared that they would hearken to the words of Morianton and unite with his people, and thus he would obtain possession of those parts of the land, which would lay a foundation for serious consequences among the people of Nephi, yea, which consequences would lead to the overthrow of their liberty.

Therefore Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

34 Na, kihai ratou i haukoti i a ratou, a tae noa atu ki nga rohe o te whenua Whakangaromanga; na, ka haukoti ratou i a ratou ki reira, ki te whenua whaiti e takoto haere atu ana ra te taha o te moana ki te whenua whaka-te-nota; ae ra, ra waenganui i te moana, ki te hauauru, ki te rawhiti.

35 Na, ka tutaki te taua i tonoa ai e Moronai, e whakahaeretia ana e tetahi tangata ko tona te ingoa ko Teanakumu, i te iwi o Moriatono; a ka whakapakeke te iwi o Moriatono. (kua whakakiia hoki ratou e tana kino me ana kupu whakapatipati,) no ka timata tetahi whawhai ki waengauni i a ratou, a ka whakamate a Teanakumu i a Moriatono, ka hinga ano tana taua ka whakarauorangia, a hoki ana ki te puni o Moronai. A penei ka mutu te rua tekau ma wha o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

36 A penei i whakahokia te iwi o Moriatono. A i whakahokia ano ratou ki te whenua o Moriatono, i runga i ta ratou kawenata kia ata noho, na, ka whakakotahi ratou ko te iwi o Rihai: a i whakahokia ano hoki ratou ki o ratou whenua.

37 Na, i taua tau ano i whakahokia ano te rangimarie ki te iwi o Niwhai, na, ka mate a Nepiha te tuarua o nga Kai-whakariterite Nui, na, kua rite i a ia te nohoanga whakawa i runga i te tika ki te aroaro o te Atua:

38 Ahakoa ra, i whakakahore ia ki ta Arami kia mau ia ki te tikanga o aua tuhituhinga me aua mea i whakaaroa e Arami ratou ko ona tupuna he tino tapu rawa: koia a Arami i tuku ai i aua mea ki tana tama ki a Heramana.

39 Nana, i whakaritea te tama a Nepiha hei noho i te nohoanga whakawa i muri i tona papa: ae ra, i whakaritea ia hei Kai-whakariterite Nui hei Kawana i runga i te iwi, he mea oati me te whakaritenga tapu kia whakaritea ai e ia nga whakawa i runga i te tika, kia tiakina ai hoki te ata noho, me te here-koretanga o te iwi, kia tukua atu ano hoki ki a ratou o ratou ake tikanga tapu mo te karakia ake ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua; ae ra, kia tautokona, kia whakapumautia hoki te tikanga a te Atua i ona ra katoa, kia whakataua ano hoki te mea tika ki te hunga kino kia rite ki te ahua o o ratou kino.

And it came to pass that they did not head them until they had come to the borders of the land Desolation; and there they did head them, by the narrow pass which led by the sea into the land northward, yea, by the sea, on the west and on the east.

And it came to pass that the army which was sent by Moroni, which was led by a man whose name was Teancum, did meet the people of Morianton; and so stubborn were the people of Morianton, (being inspired by his wickedness and his flattering words) that a battle commenced between them, in the which Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni. And thus ended the twenty and fourth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus were the people of Morianton brought back. And upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi; and they were also restored to their lands.

And it came to pass that in the same year that the people of Nephi had peace restored unto them, that Nephiah, the second chief judge, died, having filled the judgment-seat with perfect uprightness before God.

Nevertheless, he had refused Alma to take possession of those records and those things which were esteemed by Alma and his fathers to be most sacred; therefore Alma had conferred them upon his son, Helaman.

Behold, it came to pass that the son of Nephiah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father; yea, he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously, and to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God, yea, to support and maintain the cause of God all his days, and to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

40 Na, ko Pahorana tona ingoa. A ka nohoia e  
Pahorana te nohoanga o tona papa, na, ka timata ia i  
tana whakahaeretanga, i te mutunga o te rua tekau  
ma wha o nga tau, i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

Now behold, his name was Pahoran. And Pahoran  
did fill the seat of his father, and did commence his  
reign in the end of the twenty and fourth year, over  
the people of Nephi.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 51

- 1 Na, i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma rima o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, kua mau te rongo i waenganui i te iwi o Rihai i te iwi o Moriatono, mo o ratou whenua, a kua timata te rua tekau ma rima o nga tau i runga i te rangimarie;
- 2 Otira, kihai i mau roa te tino rangimarie i runga i te whenua, ina hoki i tupu tetahi tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi mo te Kai-whakariterite Nui, mo Pahorana: no te mea i hiahia tetahi wahi o te iwi kia whakarereketia etahi tino tikanga torutoru nei o te ture.
- 3 Heoi, kihai a Pahorana i pai ki te whakarereke kia tukua ranei kia whakarereketia te ture: na konei kihai ia i whakarongo ki a ratou korero me a ratou pitihana mo te ture kia whakarereketia:
- 4 No reira, ka riri ki a ia taua hunga i hiahia kia whakarereketia te ture, a ka hiahia ano ratou kia mutu ia hei Kai-whakariterite Nui i runga i te whenua: no reira i ara ai he tautohetohe nui mo taua mea: otira kihai i tae ki te whakahaekenga toto.
- 5 Na, i karangatia te hunga i hiahia kia turakina a Pahorana i runga i te nohoanga whakawa, he tangata whai kingi, no te mea i hiahia ratou kia whakarereketia te ture hei turaki i te kawanatanga a te iwi kia whakaturia ai he kingi i runga i te whenua.
- 6 A ko te hunga i hiahia kia waiho tonu a Pahorana hei Kai-whakariterite Nui i runga i te whenua, i mau ki runga ki a ratou te ingoa tangata-here-kore: a i pera te wehenga i roto i a ratou: no te mea i oati, ara, i kawenata nga tangata-here-kore kia tiakina o ratou tikanga me nga ritenga o te ratou karakia, i runga i te kawanatanga a te iwi.
- 7 Nawai a, i whakataua tenei tautohetohenga i runga i te pooti a te iwi. A ka puta te pooti a te iwi hei tautoko mo nga tangata-here-kore, na, ka puritia e Pahorana te nohoanga whakawa, na konei i hari nui ai nga teina o Pahorana me nga tangata maha ano o te iwi o te herekoretanga; nana ano i puru te waha o nga tangata whai kingi tē maia ratou ki te whakahē, heoi meinga ana ratou kia tiaki i te tikanga here-kore.

## Alma 51

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, they having established peace between the people of Lehi and the people of Morianton concerning their lands, and having commenced the twenty and fifth year in peace;

Nevertheless, they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land, for there began to be a contention among the people concerning the chief judge Pahoran; for behold, there were a part of the people who desired that a few particular points of the law should be altered.

But behold, Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered; therefore, he did not hearken to those who had sent in their voices with their petitions concerning the altering of the law.

Therefore, those who were desirous that the law should be altered were angry with him, and desired that he should no longer be chief judge over the land; therefore there arose a warm dispute concerning the matter, but not unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the land.

And those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen; and thus was the division among them, for the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

And it came to pass that this matter of their contention was settled by the voice of the people. And it came to pass that the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen, and Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the people of liberty, who also put the king-men to silence, that they durst not oppose but were obliged to maintain the cause of freedom.

- 8 Na, ko te hunga rangatira tera i aro ai ki te tikanga kingi; a whai ana ratou kia tu kingi; i tautokona ano hoki ratou e te hunga i whai i te mana, i te kaha, ki runga ki te iwi.
- 9 Heoi, he takiwa kino tenei mo nga tautohetohenga kia tupu ake i roto i te iwi o Niwhai; no te mea i whakakiia ano nga ngakau o te iwi o Ramana e Amarihiha ki te iwi o nga Niwhai, a whakamine hoia ana ia, i nga wahi katoa o tona whenua, me te hoatu patu whawhai ma ratou, e takare tonu ana ano ia ki te whakariterite mea mo te whawhai; no te mea hoki kua puta tana oati kia inumia te toto o Moronai.
- 10 Heoi, era tatou e kite e hikaka ana āna korero i korero ai ia; ahakoa ra, i whakariterite ia i a ia ano me ana taua mo te haere mai ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.
- 11 Na, kahore i rite ana taua te nui ki to mua i te maha hoki o nga mano i patua e te ringaringa o nga Niwhai; otira he ahakoa to ratou whakamatenga nui, kua whakaminea e Amarihiha he taua nui whakaharahara, no ka kore ona wehi ki te haere mai ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera.
- 12 Ae ra, ka haere mai a Amarihiha ki raro ko ia tonu i mua i nga Ramana. Na, ko te rua tekau ma rima tenei o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite; ko taua takiwa ano hoki i anga ai ratou ki te whakariterite i o ratou tautohetohenga mo te Kai-whakariterite Nui, mo Pahorana.
- 13 Nawai a, i te rongonga o nga tangata i karangatia ai he tangata whai kingi kei te haere mai nga Ramana ki raro ki te whawhai ki a ratou, ka hari o ratou ngakau, a whakakeke ana ratou ki te hapai patu; he nui hoki no to ratou riri ki te Kai-whakariterite Nui, ki te iwi ano o te here-koretanga, a kihai ratou i pai ki te hapai patu hei tiaki i to ratou whenua.
- 14 Ano ka kite a Moronai i tenei, me tana kitenga ano i nga Ramana e haere mai ana ki roto ki nga rohe o te whenua ka rahi rawa tana riri ki te tututanga o taua iwi, i mahi ai ia i runga i te manawanui hei tiaki i a ratou; ae ra, he rahi rawa tana riri; kī tonu tona ngakau i te riri ki a ratou.

Now those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and they sought to be kings; and they were supported by those who sought power and authority over the people.

But behold, this was a critical time for such contentions to be among the people of Nephi; for behold, Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the Lamanites against the people of the Nephites, and he was gathering together soldiers from all parts of his land, and arming them, and preparing for war with all diligence; for he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

But behold, we shall see that his promise which he made was rash; nevertheless, he did prepare himself and his armies to come to battle against the Nephites.

Now his armies were not so great as they had hitherto been, because of the many thousands who had been slain by the hand of the Nephites; but notwithstanding their great loss, Amalickiah had gathered together a wonderfully great army, insomuch that he feared not to come down to the land of Zarahemla.

Yea, even Amalickiah did himself come down, at the head of the Lamanites. And it was in the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges; and it was at the same time that they had begun to settle the affairs of their contentions concerning the chief judge, Pahoran.

And it came to pass that when the men who were called king-men had heard that the Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms, for they were so wroth with the chief judge, and also with the people of liberty, that they would not take up arms to defend their country.

And it came to pass that when Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people whom he had labored with so much diligence to preserve; yea, he was exceedingly wroth; his soul was filled with anger against them.

- 15 A ka tuku atu ia i tetahi pitihana me te pooti a te iwi ki te kawana o te whenua, e hiahia ana kia korerotia tera e ia, a mana e homai ki a ia, (ki a Moronai,) te mana ki te tono i aua tangata kotiti ke kia tiaki i to ratou whenua, ki te kore ka whakamatea ratou;
- 16 No te mea ko tana tuatahi tena hei pehi i nga tautohetohenga me nga wehewehenga i roto i te iwi; no te mea ko te take tenei o o ratou whakamatenga katoatanga i mua. Na, ka whakaaetia tenei rite tonu ki te pooti a te iwi.
- 17 Na, ka whakahauhau a Moronai ki tana taua kia haere atu hei tatau atu ki aua tangata whai kingi, kia whakakorea iho to ratou whakapehapeha me to ratou tu rangatira, me te whakahoki iho i a ratou ki raro ki te papatairite o te whenua, ki te kore me hapai patu ratou me te tautoko i te tikanga herekore.
- 18 Nawai a, ka haere atu nga taua hei tatau atu ki a ratou; a turakina iho ana to ratou whakapehapeha me to ratou tu rangatira, no ka haua iho ratou kia rite ki to te whenua papatairite i a ratou ka hapai i a ratou patu whawhai ki te whawhai ki nga tangata o Moronai.
- 19 Nawai a, ka wha mano o aua tangata tutu i haua iho ki te hoari; a ko te morehu o o ratou kai whakahaere kihai nei i patua i roto i te whawhai, na, i hopukia ratou i makā ki te whare herehere, kahore hoki i whai taima ki te whakawa i a ratou i taua takiwa;
- 20 A ko te morehu o aua tangata tutu, ki ta ratou, pai ke atu te tuku i a ratou ki te kara o te here-koretanga. i te haua iho o ratou e te hoari ki te whenua, a i tonoa ratou kia hapai i te tuhituhinga here-koretanga ki runga ki o ratou pourewa, ki roto hoki ki o ratou pa, me te hapai patu ano hoki hei tiaki i to ratou whenua.
- 21 A penei na Moronai i whakakore aua tangata whai kingi, a kahore he tangata i mohiotia ki te ingoa tangata whai kingi: a penei ano nana i whakamutu te pakeketanga me te whakapehapehatanga o taua hunga i ki ai he tangata toto rangatira ratou: heoi i whakahokia iho ratou ki raro kia whakaiti i a ratou ano kia rite tonu ki o ratou teina, me te whawhai toa ano ratou mo to ratou putanga mai i te ponongatanga

And it came to pass that he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

For it was his first care to put an end to such contentions and dissensions among the people; for behold, this had been hitherto a cause of all their destruction. And it came to pass that it was granted according to the voice of the people.

And it came to pass that Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

And it came to pass that the armies did march forth against them; and they did pull down their pride and their nobility, insomuch that as they did lift their weapons of war to fight against the men of Moroni they were hewn down and leveled to the earth.

And it came to pass that there were four thousand of those dissenters who were hewn down by the sword; and those of their leaders who were not slain in battle were taken and cast into prison, for there was no time for their trials at this period.

And the remainder of those dissenters, rather than be smitten down to the earth by the sword, yielded to the standard of liberty, and were compelled to hoist the title of liberty upon their towers, and in their cities, and to take up arms in defence of their country.

And thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.



- 22 Nana, i a Moronai e penei ana te pehi i nga whawhai me nga tautohetohenga i roto i tona ake iwi, e whakauru ana i a ratou ki raro i te houhanga rongu, me te whakahaere tika, me te whakariterite mo te whawhai ki nga Ramana, nana, kua puta mai nga Ramana ki roto ki te whenua o Moronai, koia i roto nei i nga rohe o te taha takutai.
- 23 A kihai i nui te kaha o nga Niwhai i te pa o Moronai; na konei ka panaia ratou e Amarihiha, a he tokomaha i patua. Na, ka nohoia e Amarihiha te pa; ae ra, o ratou pa whawhai katoa.
- 24 Na, ko te hunga i rere atu i te pa o Moronai i haere mai ki te pa o Nepiha; me te iwi ano hoki o te pa o Rihai i huihui ratou, a whakariterite ana, a noho takatu ana ki te whawhai ki nga Ramana.
- 25 Heoi kihai a Amarihiha i pai ki te tuku i nga Ramana kia haere atu ki te whawhai ki te pa o Nepiha, engari i pupuri ia i a ratou ki raro ki te taha takutai, me te waiho tangata ano ki ia pa, ki ia pa hei pupuri, hei tiaki;
- 26 Na, penei tonu tana whakahaere, a he maha nga pa i nohoia ai e ia; te pa o Nepiha, te pa o Rihai, te pa o Moriatono, te pa o Omonere, te pa o Kire, te pa o Mureke, na, i nga rohe ki te rawhiti aua pa katoa i te tahatai.
- 27 A penei i whiwhi nga Ramana ki nga pa maha, i runga i te mahi tinihanga a Amarihiha he mea ano na o ratou mano tini whaioio, a, ko aua pa katoa i pai te taiepatanga, i runga koia i riro ai hei wahi kaha mo nga Ramana.
- 28 Nawai a, ka haere atu ratou ki nga rohe o te whenua Momona, e a haere ana i nga Niwhai i to ratou aroaro, a he tokomaha i patupatua.
- 29 Otira i tutakina ratou e Teanakumu e te tangata nana i whakamate a Moriatono, i haukoti ano i tona iwi i tona omanga.
- 30 A ka haukotia ano hoki a Amarihiha e ia, i a ia e haere atu ana me tana ope tini, ki te noho i te whenua Momona me te whenua whaka-te-nota ano hoki.

Behold, it came to pass that while Moroni was thus breaking down the wars and contentions among his own people, and subjecting them to peace and civilization, and making regulations to prepare for war against the Lamanites, behold, the Lamanites had come into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that the Nephites were not sufficiently strong in the city of Moroni; therefore Amalickiah did drive them, slaying many. And it came to pass that Amalickiah took possession of the city, yea, possession of all their fortifications.

And those who fled out of the city of Moroni came to the city of Nephihah; and also the people of the city of Lehi gathered themselves together, and made preparations and were ready to receive the Lamanites to battle.

But it came to pass that Amalickiah would not suffer the Lamanites to go against the city of Nephihah to battle, but kept them down by the seashore, leaving men in every city to maintain and defend it.

And thus he went on, taking possession of many cities, the city of Nephihah, and the city of Lehi, and the city of Morianton, and the city of Omner, and the city of Gid, and the city of Mulek, all of which were on the east borders by the seashore.

And thus had the Lamanites obtained, by the cunning of Amalickiah, so many cities, by their numberless hosts, all of which were strongly fortified after the manner of the fortifications of Moroni; all of which afforded strongholds for the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they marched to the borders of the land Bountiful, driving the Nephites before them and slaying many.

But it came to pass that they were met by Teancum, who had slain Morianton and had headed his people in his flight.

And it came to pass that he headed Amalickiah also, as he was marching forth with his numerous army that he might take possession of the land Bountiful, and also the land northward.

- 31 Heoi, ka taka ke tana i tona whakahokitanga e Teanakumu ratou ko ona tangata, he tino toa hoki ratou: no te mea nui atu te kaha me te matau ki te whawhai o ia tangata, o ia tangata o Teanakumu i o nga Ramana, a ka whiwhi kaha ratou ki runga ki nga Ramana.
- 32 A ka whakaekea e ratou, ka patupatua e ratou, a pouri noa. A ka whakaturia e Teanakumu ratou ko ona tangata o ratou teneti ki nga taha o te whenua Momona; a na Amarihiha i whakatu ona teneti ki nga taha o te tahuna ki te tahatai, na, ko te ahua tena i panaia haeretia ai ratou.
- 33 Na, ano ka po, ka haere ngaro atu a Teanakumu raua ko tana pononga, ka haere po atu, a haere atu ana ki roto ki te puni o Amarihiha; na, kua parangia ratou e te moe i te nui hoki o to ratou ngenge, i nga mahi me te tikakatanga o te ra.
- 34 A ka haere ngaro atu a Teanakumu ki roto ki te teneti o te kingi, a werohia ana tona ngakau ki tetahi tao, mate tonu atu te kingi tē whakaara hoki i ana pononga.
- 35 A hoki ngaro ana ia ki tona ake puni, na, kei te moe ana tangata, a whakaara ana ia i a ratou, me te korero ano ki a ratou i nga mea katoa i mea ai ia.
- 36 A mea ana ia i ana taua kia takatu kei ara nga Ramana, a ka haere mai ki runga ki a ratou.
- 37 Na, ko te mutunga tenei o te rua tekau ma rima o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai: a i penei ano te mutunga o nga ra o Amarihiha.

But behold he met with a disappointment by being repulsed by Teancum and his men, for they were great warriors; for every man of Teancum did exceed the Lamanites in their strength and in their skill of war, insomuch that they did gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did harass them, insomuch that they did slay them even until it was dark. And it came to pass that Teancum and his men did pitch their tents in the borders of the land Bountiful; and Amalickiah did pitch his tents in the borders on the beach by the seashore, and after this manner were they driven.

And it came to pass that when the night had come, Teancum and his servant stole forth and went out by night, and went into the camp of Amalickiah; and behold, sleep had overpowered them because of their much fatigue, which was caused by the labors and heat of the day.

And it came to pass that Teancum stole privily into the tent of the king, and put a javelin to his heart; and he did cause the death of the king immediately that he did not awake his servants.

And he returned again privily to his own camp, and behold, his men were asleep, and he awoke them and told them all the things that he had done.

And he caused that his armies should stand in readiness, lest the Lamanites had awakened and should come upon them.

And thus endeth the twenty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus endeth the days of Amalickiah.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 52

- 1 Nawai a, i te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, i te aranga ake o nga Ramana, i te ata tuatahi o te marama tuatahi, na, ka kite ratou i a Amarihiha kua mate i roto i tona ake teneti: ka kite ano hoki ratou i a Teanakumu e takatu ana ki te whawhai ki a ratou i taua ra.
- 2 Na, i te kitenga o nga Ramana i tenei, ka pa te wehi ki a ratou; a whakarere ana ratou i ta ratou whakaaro takato mo te haere ki roto ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, a hoki ana me ta ratou taua katoa ki roto ki te pa o Mureke, a whai ana i te ora i roto i o ratou pa whawhai.
- 3 Nawai a, ka whakaturia te teina o Amarihiha hei kingi i runga i te iwi: a ko Amorono tona ingoa: na, penei kua whakaturia a kingi Amorono, te teina o kingi Amarihiha, hei kingi i muri i a ia.
- 4 Na, ka whakahauhau ia ki tona iwi kia tiakina aua pa i riro ai i a ratou i runga i te whakaheke toto: no te mea kahore he pa i riro i a ratou, engari i runga anake i te nui o te whahekenga o o ratou toto.
- 5 Na, ka kite a Teanakumu i nga Ramana e u ana ki te pupuri i aua pa i riro ai i a ratou, me aua wahi o te whenua kua nohoia e ratou: me te kitenga ano i te kaha o to ratou tokomahatanga, na, ka mahara a Teanakumu kahore e pai te tohe ki te whakaeke i a ratou i roto i o ratou pa whawhai.
- 6 Heoi pupuri ana ia i ana tangata kia tata mai, me te mea e whakariterite mea ana mo te whawhai: a, e tika ana ano, e whakarite mea ana ia hei tiaki i a ia ano i a ratou, he mea na te hanga taiepa awhio noa, awhio noa, me te whakarite kainga hei omanga mo ratou.
- 7 Nawai a, ka penei tonu tana whakariterite mea mo te whawhai, taea noatia te tononga a Moronai i tetahi ope nui o nga tangata hei whakakaha mo tana taua;
- 8 A ka tuku tikanga atu ano hoki a Moronai ki a ia kia puritia nga herehere katoa e taka ana ki roto ki ona ringaringa; i te mea hoki he maha nga herehere i riro i nga Ramana, a mana e pupuri nga herehere katoa o nga Ramana, hei utu mo aua herehere i riro i nga Ramana.

## Alma 52

And now, it came to pass in the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, behold, when the Lamanites awoke on the first morning of the first month, behold, they found Amalickiah was dead in his own tent; and they also saw that Teancum was ready to give them battle on that day.

And now, when the Lamanites saw this they were affrighted; and they abandoned their design in marching into the land northward, and retreated with all their army into the city of Mulek, and sought protection in their fortifications.

And it came to pass that the brother of Amalickiah was appointed king over the people; and his name was Ammoron; thus king Ammoron, the brother of king Amalickiah, was appointed to reign in his stead.

And it came to pass that he did command that his people should maintain those cities, which they had taken by the shedding of blood; for they had not taken any cities save they had lost much blood.

And now, Teancum saw that the Lamanites were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken, and those parts of the land which they had obtained possession of; and also seeing the enormity of their number, Teancum thought it was not expedient that he should attempt to attack them in their forts.

But he kept his men round about, as if making preparations for war; yea, and truly he was preparing to defend himself against them, by casting up walls round about and preparing places of resort.

And it came to pass that he kept thus preparing for war until Moroni had sent a large number of men to strengthen his army.

And Moroni also sent orders unto him that he should retain all the prisoners who fell into his hands; for as the Lamanites had taken many prisoners, that he should retain all the prisoners of the Lamanites as a ransom for those whom the Lamanites had taken.

9 Ka tuku tikanga atu ano ia ki a ia kia whakakahangia te whenua Momona, kia tiakina ano hoki te whenua whaiti e takoto haere atu ana ki te whenua whaka-te-nota kei whiwahi nga Ramana ki tana wahi, a ka whai kaha ki te whakangari ki a ratou i tetahi taha, i tetahi taha.

10 Na, ka tono ano a Moronai ki a ia, e hiahia ana ki a ia kia u ki te tiaki i taua wahi o te whenua, me te kimi huarahi ano hei whakapau i tona kaha ki te whakawhiu i nga Ramana, me kore pea e riro i a ia aua pa, i riro atu i roto i a ratou ringaringa, i runga i te maminga, i tetahi atu huarahi ranei, kia whakakahangia, kia whakapumautia ano hoki e ia nga pa tawhio noa, tawhio noa, kihai nei i taka atu ki roto ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana.

11 A, ka mea ano tera ki a ia, penei kua haere atu ahau kei nga taha o te whenua i te tai hauauru; a e haere atu ki a koutou otira kei runga nga Ramana kei a matou kei nga taha o te whenua i te tai hauauru: a e haere atu ana ahau ki a ratou, no reira e kore ahau e ahei te haere atu ki a koutou.

12 Na, i riro atu te kingi (a Amoron), i roto i te whenua o Harahemera, a i whakaatu atu ia ki te kuini mo te matenga o tona tuakana, a, i whakaminea e ia he ope nui, na, i haere atu ki te tatau ki nga Niwhai, i te taha o te tai hauauru.

13 A penei i tohe ia ki te whakatete atu ki nga Niwhai, me te kukume atu i tetahi wahi o a ratou ope ki taua wahi o te whenua, i te mea kua whakahauhau ia ki taua hunga i waiho ai e ia hei noho i nga pa i riro ai i a ia, kia whakatete atu ano hoki ratou ki nga Niwhai i nga rohe ki te tai rawhiti; me te whakapau ano i o ratou kaha ki te noho i o ratou whenua ki te ritenga o te kaha o a ratou taua.

14 A penei i roto nga Niwhai i aua oranga noatanga, i te mutunga o te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

And he also sent orders unto him that he should fortify the land Bountiful, and secure the narrow pass which led into the land northward, lest the Lamanites should obtain that point and should have power to harass them on every side.

And Moroni also sent unto him, desiring him that he would be faithful in maintaining that quarter of the land, and that he would seek every opportunity to scourge the Lamanites in that quarter, as much as was in his power, that perhaps he might take again by stratagem or some other way those cities which had been taken out of their hands; and that he also would fortify and strengthen the cities round about, which had not fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And he also said unto him, I would come unto you, but behold, the Lamanites are upon us in the borders of the land by the west sea; and behold, I go against them, therefore I cannot come unto you.

Now, the king (Ammoron) had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and had made known unto the queen concerning the death of his brother, and had gathered together a large number of men, and had marched forth against the Nephites on the borders by the west sea.

And thus he was endeavoring to harass the Nephites, and to draw away a part of their forces to that part of the land, while he had commanded those whom he had left to possess the cities which he had taken, that they should also harass the Nephites on the borders by the east sea, and should take possession of their lands as much as it was in their power, according to the power of their armies.

And thus were the Nephites in those dangerous circumstances in the ending of the twenty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

- 15 Heoi, i te rua tekau ma whitu o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ko Teanakumu, i runga i te whakahau a Moronai, a te mea i whakatu taua ai hei tiaki mo nga rohe ki te tonga me nga rohe ano ki te hauauru o te whenua, i turia atu e ia i runga i tana haere ki te whenua Momona, hei kai awhina mo Teanakumu me ana tangata hei whakahoki ano i nga pa i riro atu i a ratou.
- 16 Na, i riro i a Teanakumu nga whakahau kia whakaeke i te pa o Mureke, kia whakahokia mai ano ki a ia me ka taea e ia.
- 17 Nawai a, ka whakariterite a Teanakumu ki te whakaeke i te pa o Mureke, a ka haere atu me tana taua hei tatau atu ki nga Ramana; heoi ka kite ia e kore rawa ratou e taea e ia i a ratou i roto i o ratou pa; koia i whakarere ai ia i ana i whakaaro ai, a hoki ana ano ki te pa o Momona kia tatari atu ki te taenga mai o Moronai kia riro ai i a ia he kaha mo tana taua.
- 18 Nawai a, ka tae a Moronai me tana taua ki te whenua o Momona, i te wahi whakamutunga o te rua tekau ma whitu o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 19 A i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma waru o nga tau, ka tu he runanga whawhai, he mea na Moronai ratou ko Teanakumu ko etahi tokomaha o nga rangatira nui mo ta ratou e mea ai hei mea i nga Ramana kia haere mai ki waho ki te whawhai ki a ratou; ara, kia ahei ai i runga i tetahi tikanga, te whakapatipati i a ratou ki waho o o ratou kainga kaha kia whiwhi kaha, me te riro mai ano i a ratou te pa o Mureke.
- 20 Na, ka tono karere ratou ki te taua a nga Ramana e tiaki ana i te pa o Mureke, ki to ratou kai whakahaere nona nei te ingoa ko Hakopa, e hiahia ana ki a ia kia haere mai ki waho me ana taua kia tutaki i a ratou i runga i nga mania i waenganui i nga pa e rua. Heoi kihai i pai a Hakopa te Horama, ki te haere mai ki waho me tana taua kia tutaki ki a ratou i runga i nga mania.
- 21 A kahore o Moronai tumanako atu kia hangai tana tutaki ki a ratou, no reira i whakaarohia ai e ia he huarahi e poapoa ai i nga Ramana ki waho o o ratou piringa kaha.

But behold, it came to pass in the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, that Teancum, by the command of Moroni—who had established armies to protect the south and the west borders of the land, and had begun his march towards the land Bountiful, that he might assist Teancum with his men in retaking the cities which they had lost—

And it came to pass that Teancum had received orders to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and retake it if it were possible.

And it came to pass that Teancum made preparations to make an attack upon the city of Mulek, and march forth with his army against the Lamanites; but he saw that it was impossible that he could overpower them while they were in their fortifications; therefore he abandoned his designs and returned again to the city Bountiful, to wait for the coming of Moroni, that he might receive strength to his army.

And it came to pass that Moroni did arrive with his army at the land of Bountiful, in the latter end of the twenty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And in the commencement of the twenty and eighth year, Moroni and Teancum and many of the chief captains held a council of war—what they should do to cause the Lamanites to come out against them to battle; or that they might by some means flatter them out of their strongholds, that they might gain advantage over them and take again the city of Mulek.

And it came to pass they sent embassies to the army of the Lamanites, which protected the city of Mulek, to their leader, whose name was Jacob, desiring him that he would come out with his armies to meet them upon the plains between the two cities. But behold, Jacob, who was a Zoramite, would not come out with his army to meet them upon the plains.

And it came to pass that Moroni, having no hopes of meeting them upon fair grounds, therefore, he resolved upon a plan that he might decoy the Lamanites out of their strongholds.

- 22 Koia i mea ai ia kia mau a Teanakumu ki tetahi ope iti o nga tangata, a ka haere ki raro kia tata ki te takutai; a ka haere po a Moronai me tana taua ki roto ki te koraha ki te taha ki te hauauru o te pa Mureke; a penei i te kitenga o nga kai tiaki o nga Ramana i a Teanakumu, aonga ake ano, ka haere ratou a korerotia ana ki a Hakopa ki to ratou kai whakahaere.
- 23 Na, ka haere atu nga taua a nga Ramana ki a Teanakumu, i mea hoki ratou ma to ratou tokomahatanga e taea ai a Teanakumu, he torutoru hoki no ana tangata. Na, i te kitenga o Teanakumu i nga taua a nga Ramana e haere mai ana ki waho ki a ia, ka whati atu ia ki raro, ki te taha o te takutai ki te nota.
- 24 Na, ka maia nga Ramana i ta ratou kitenga i a ia e oma atu ana, a ka whaiwhai i a ratou i runga i te kaha. A i a Teanakumu e poapoa penei ana i nga Ramana e whaiwhai noa nei i a ratou, na, ka whakahauhau a Moronai ki tetahi wahi o tana taua kia haere atu ki roto ki te pa noho ai.
- 25 Na, ka peratia e ratou, ka patua te hunga katoa i waiho hei tiaki mo te pa; ara, te hunga katoa kihai nei i pai ki te homai i a ratou patu whawhai.
- 26 Na penei kua riro i a Moronai te pa o Mureke, he mea na tetahi wahi o tana taua, na ka haere atu me te toenga kia tutaki ki nga Ramana ina hoki mai ratou i te whaiwhai i a Teanakumu.
- 27 A ka whaiwhai nga Ramana i a Teanakumu tae ano ki to ratou whakatatanga atu ki te pa Momona, katahi ratou ka tutakina e Rihai me tetahi ope iti i waiho atu hei tiaki i te pa Momona.
- 28 Na, i te kitenga o nga rangatira nui o nga Ramana i a Rihai me tana taua, e haere mai ana ki a ratou, ka whati pororaru noa iho ratou, kei kore pea ratou e tutuki atu ki te pa Mureke kua mau i a Rihai; kua ngenge hoki ratou i to ratou haere, a ko nga tangata a Rihai he mea hou.
- 29 Na, kihai nga Ramana i mohio ki a Moronai me tana taua kei muri i a ratou; a heoi ano ta ratou i wehi ai ko Rihai ratou ko ana tangata.
- 30 Na, kihai a Rihai i hiahia kia mau ratou kia tutaki ra ano ratou ki a Moronai me tana taua.

Therefore he caused that Teancum should take a small number of men and march down near the seashore; and Moroni and his army, by night, marched in the wilderness, on the west of the city Mulek; and thus, on the morrow, when the guards of the Lamanites had discovered Teancum, they ran and told it unto Jacob, their leader.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did march forth against Teancum, supposing by their numbers to overpower Teancum because of the smallness of his numbers. And as Teancum saw the armies of the Lamanites coming out against him he began to retreat down by the seashore, northward.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that he began to flee, they took courage and pursued them with vigor. And while Teancum was thus leading away the Lamanites who were pursuing them in vain, behold, Moroni commanded that a part of his army who were with him should march forth into the city, and take possession of it.

And thus they did, and slew all those who had been left to protect the city, yea, all those who would not yield up their weapons of war.

And thus Moroni had obtained possession of the city Mulek with a part of his army, while he marched with the remainder to meet the Lamanites when they should return from the pursuit of Teancum.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did pursue Teancum until they came near the city Bountiful, and then they were met by Lehi and a small army, which had been left to protect the city Bountiful.

And now behold, when the chief captains of the Lamanites had beheld Lehi with his army coming against them, they fled in much confusion, lest perhaps they should not obtain the city Mulek before Lehi should overtake them; for they were wearied because of their march, and the men of Lehi were fresh.

Now the Lamanites did not know that Moroni had been in their rear with his army; and all they feared was Lehi and his men.

Now Lehi was not desirous to overtake them till they should meet Moroni and his army.

31 A kahore ano i matara te hokinga o nga Ramana, kua karapotitia ratou e nga Niwhai; e nga tangata a Moronai i tetahi taha, e nga tangata a Rihai i tetahi taha, ratou katoa he mea hou, ki tonu i te kaha; ko nga Ramana ia e mauui ana i te roa o ta ratou haere.

32 Na, ka whakahauhau a Moronai i ana tangata kia kokiri i a ratou, a kia homai ra ano e ratou a ratou atu whawhai.

33 N a, ko Hakopa, to ratou kai whakahaere, he Horama hoki ia, he wairua ano tona e kore nei e taea, a he nanakia rawa tana i arahi ai i nga Ramana kia whawhai ki a Moronai.

34 Na, hangai ana a Moronai ki te ritenga atu o to ratou haere, koia i u ai te whakaaro a Hakopa kia patupatua ratou, kia watea ai tana huarahi ki te pa o Mureke. Heoi, nui atu te kaha o Moronai ratou ko ana tangata; koia ratou i kore ai e tukutuku i te aroaro o nga Ramana.

35 Nawai a, he tino weriweri rawa atu te whawhai i whawhai ai ki tetahi taha, ki tetahi taha; a he nui ano hoki te whakamatenga o tetahi taha o tetahi taha; ae ra, i tu a Moronai, a ko Hakopa i whakamatea.

36 A he nanakia rawa ano te huaki i huaki ai a Rihai me ana tangata kaha ra muri i a ratou, no reira i hoatu ai e nga Ramana i muri a ratou patu whawhai; a he nui te pororaru o te toenga i to ratou kore e mohio, me haere ranei me patu ranei.

37 Na, ka kite a Moronai i to ratou pororaru koia i mea ai ia ki a ratou, ki te pai koutou kia mauria mai a koutou patu whawhai kia tukua mai, nana, ka mutu ta matou whakaheke i o koutou toto.

38 Nawai a, i te rongonga o nga Ramana i enei kupu, ka haere mai o ratou rangatira nui, ratou katoa kahore nei i patua, ka makā iho a ratou patu whawhai ki raro ki nga waewae o Moronai, me te whakahauhau ano i a ratou tangata kia pera hoki ratou;

39 Heoi he tokomaha tera kihai nei i pai: a ko te hunga kihai nei i pai ki te tuku mai i a ratou hoari, i hopukia ratou i hereherea, ko a ratou patu whawhai i tangohia i a ratou, i tonoa hoki ratou kia haere tahi me o ratou teina ki te whenua Momona.

And it came to pass that before the Lamanites had retreated far they were surrounded by the Nephites, by the men of Moroni on one hand, and the men of Lehi on the other, all of whom were fresh and full of strength; but the Lamanites were wearied because of their long march.

And Moroni commanded his men that they should fall upon them until they had given up their weapons of war.

And it came to pass that Jacob, being their leader, being also a Zoramite, and having an unconquerable spirit, he led the Lamanites forth to battle with exceeding fury against Moroni.

Moroni being in their course of march, therefore Jacob was determined to slay them and cut his way through to the city of Mulek. But behold, Moroni and his men were more powerful; therefore they did not give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they fought on both hands with exceeding fury; and there were many slain on both sides; yea, and Moroni was wounded and Jacob was killed.

And Lehi pressed upon their rear with such fury with his strong men, that the Lamanites in the rear delivered up their weapons of war; and the remainder of them, being much confused, knew not whither to go or to strike.

Now Moroni seeing their confusion, he said unto them: If ye will bring forth your weapons of war and deliver them up, behold we will forbear shedding your blood.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had heard these words, their chief captains, all those who were not slain, came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and also commanded their men that they should do the same.

But behold, there were many that would not; and those who would not deliver up their swords were taken and bound, and their weapons of war were taken from them, and they were compelled to march with their brethren forth into the land Bountiful.

40 Na, tera noa atu te tokomahatanga o nga herehere  
i hereheretia i te hunga i whakamatea: ae ra, nui atu i  
te hunga i patua o tetahi taha, o tetahi taha.

And now the number of prisoners who were taken  
exceeded more than the number of those who had  
been slain, yea, more than those who had been slain  
on both sides.



## Te Pukapuka A Arami 53

- 1 Nawai a, ka whakaturia e ratou he kai tiaki i runga i nga herehere o nga Ramana, ka tonoa ratou kia haere atu ki te tanu i o ratou tupapaku; me nga tupapaku ano hoki o nga Niwhai i patua ai: a na Moronai i whakatu he kai tiaki i runga i a ratou i a ratou e mahi ana i a ratou mahi.
- 2 A ka haere tahi a Moronai i a Rihai ki te pa o Mureke ka mau ki te tikanga o te pa, a hoatu ana e ia ki a Rihai. Na, he tangata taua Rihai i a Moronai i te wahi nui o ana whawhai katoa; he tangata ano ia tona rite kei a Moronai; a i hari ano hoki raua i runga i o raua oranga; ae ra, i arohaina raua e raua, i arohaina ano hoki e te iwi katoa o Niwhai.
- 3 Na, ka oti i nga Ramana o ratou tupapaku te tanu, me nga tupapaku ano o nga Niwhai, ka whakahokia ano ki te whenua Momona; a ka mea ano a Teanakumu i a ratou, i runga i nga whakahau a Moronai, kia timata ki te mahi, ki te keru i tetahi waikeri tawhio noa, tawhio noa i te whenua, ara, i te pa Momona;
- 4 A ka mea ano ia kia hanga ratou i tetahi taiepa rakau hei te uma te tiketike i runga i to roto tahataha o te waikeri; a ka maka ratou i te oneone i roto i te i mea ai i nga Ramana kia mahi a karapoti ra ano ratou waikeri ki te taha o te taiepa rakau; a i penei ta ratou i te pa o Momona, taka noa, taka noa ki tetahi taiepa kaha, he mea rakau, he mea oneone, he tino tiketike rawa ano hoki.
- 5 Na, ka meinga tenei pa hei piringa kaha rawa mo nga wa katoa i muri, a i roto ano i tenei pa i tiaki ai ratou i nga herehere o nga Ramana; ae ra, i roto i tetahi taiepa i meinga ai ratou kia hanga ko o ratou ringaringa ake hei mahi. Na, kua tika ma Moronai e mea i nga Ramana kia mahi, no te mea he mea ngawari te tiaki i a ratou i a ratou e mahi ana: a i hiahia ia ki ana ope katoa, ina whawhai atu ia ki nga Ramana.
- 6 A kua whiwhi ano a Moronai ki tetahi wikitoria i runga i tetahi o nga taua nui rawa atu a nga Ramana, a kua riro ano hoki i a ia te pa o Mureke, tetahi o nga pa kaha rawa atu o nga Ramana i runga i te Whenua o Niwhai; a no konei i hanga ai e ia tetahi pa kaha hei tiaki i ana herehere.

## Alma 53

And it came to pass that they did set guards over the prisoners of the Lamanites, and did compel them to go forth and bury their dead, yea, and also the dead of the Nephites who were slain; and Moroni placed men over them to guard them while they should perform their labors.

And Moroni went to the city of Mulek with Lehi, and took command of the city and gave it unto Lehi. Now behold, this Lehi was a man who had been with Moroni in the more part of all his battles; and he was a man like unto Moroni, and they rejoiced in each other's safety; yea, they were beloved by each other, and also beloved by all the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had finished burying their dead and also the dead of the Nephites, they were marched back into the land Bountiful; and Teancum, by the orders of Moroni, caused that they should commence laboring in digging a ditch round about the land, or the city, Bountiful.

And he caused that they should build a breastwork of timbers upon the inner bank of the ditch; and they cast up dirt out of the ditch against the breastwork of timbers; and thus they did cause the Lamanites to labor until they had encircled the city of Bountiful round about with a strong wall of timbers and earth, to an exceeding height.

And this city became an exceeding stronghold ever after; and in this city they did guard the prisoners of the Lamanites; yea, even within a wall which they had caused them to build with their own hands. Now Moroni was compelled to cause the Lamanites to labor, because it was easy to guard them while at their labor; and he desired all his forces when he should make an attack upon the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni had thus gained a victory over one of the greatest of the armies of the Lamanites, and had obtained possession of the city of Mulek, which was one of the strongest holds of the Lamanites in the land of Nephi; and thus he had also built a stronghold to retain his prisoners.

7 A kahore atu ona hiahia ki te whawhai ki nga Ramana i tenei tau, engari ka whakamahi ia i ana tangata hei whakariterite mea mo te whawhai; hei hanga pa hoki hei tiaki i a ratou i nga Ramana; hei whakaputa ano hoki i a ratou wahine me a ratou tamarika i te hemo-kai, i te whakamamaetanga, me te whakarite kai ma a ratou taua.

8 Na, i whiwhi kaha nga taua a nga Ramana i runga ki nga Niwhai i te tai hauauru, ma te tonga, i a Moronai e ngaro ke ana, he mea hoki na tetahi tikanga tinihanga i roto i nga Niwhai i wehewehe ai ratou, a kua riro i nga Ramana etahi o o ratou pa i taua wahi o te whenua;

9 Na tenei, na te kino i roto i te iwi, na nga wehewehenga me nga tikanga tinihanga i roto i a ratou ano, i karapotitia ai ratou e nga oranga noatanga whakaharahara.

10 Na, he korero ano taku mo te iwi o Amona, ko ratou nei he Ramana i te timatanga; engari i whakatahuritia mai ratou ki te Ariki e Amona ratou ko ona teina, ara, he mea na te kaha me te kupu a te Atua; a kua kawea ratou ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera, mai ano i taua wa i tiakina ai ratou.

11 A no ta ratou oati i puritia ai ratou kei hapai patu ki o ratou teina; no te mea i puta ta ratou oati, kia kua rawa ratou e whakaheke toto i muri ake nei; a i runga i ta ratou oati penei kua mate ratou: ae ra, kua tuku i a ratou ano kia taka ki nga ringaringa o o ratou teina; me i kore te aroha me te mate nui i mate nui ai a Amona ratou ko ona teina ki a ratou.

12 No reira kua kawea nei ratou ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera; a kua tiakina tonutia ratou e nga Niwhai.

13 Heoi i to ratou kitenga i te mate, i nga whakamamaetenga maha me nga tutukinotanga i pikau ai nga Niwhai mo te whakaaro ki a ratou, ka oho ratou i te aroha, ka hiahia ratou ki te hapai patu hei tiaki i to ratou kainga.

14 Otiia i a ratou e tata ana ki te mau ki a ratou patu whawhai ka taea ratou e te kaha o Heramana ratou ko ona teina, kua tata hoki ratou te takahi i te oati i oati ai ratou;

And it came to pass that he did no more attempt a battle with the Lamanites in that year, but he did employ his men in preparing for war, yea, and in making fortifications to guard against the Lamanites, yea, and also delivering their women and their children from famine and affliction, and providing food for their armies.

And now it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites, on the west sea, south, while in the absence of Moroni on account of some intrigue amongst the Nephites, which caused dissensions amongst them, had gained some ground over the Nephites, yea, insomuch that they had obtained possession of a number of their cities in that part of the land.

And thus because of iniquity amongst themselves, yea, because of dissensions and intrigue among themselves they were placed in the most dangerous circumstances.

And now behold, I have somewhat to say concerning the people of Ammon, who, in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord; and they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla, and had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

And because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren; for they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more; and according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

And for this cause they were brought down into the land of Zarahemla; and they ever had been protected by the Nephites.

But it came to pass that when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the defence of their country.

But behold, as they were about to take their weapons of war, they were overpowered by the persuasions of Helaman and his brethren, for they were about to break the oath which they had made.

- 15 A i wehi a Heramana kei mate o ratou wairua i runga i te pera: koia i meinga ai te hunga katoa i uru ai ki tenei kawenata kia titiro noa ki o ratou teina e haere ana i roto i o ratou tukinotanga i roto i te mate e uhi nei i runga i a ratou i taua wa.
- 16 Otira he tokomaha o o ratou tamariki tane kihai nei i uru ki tetahi kawenata kia kauaka e mau ki a ratou patu whawhai hei tiaki i a ratou ano i o ratou hoa riri; koia ratou i huihui ai i tenei takiwa, ratou katoa e ahei ana hei hapai patu; a hua ana i a ratou ano ko nga Niwhai;
- 17 A kawenata ana ratou kia whawhai mo te tikanga here-kore o nga Niwhai; ae ra, hei tiaki i te whenua, ā mate noa ratou; ae ra, kawenata ana ratou kia kaua rawa e tuku atu i to ratou here-koretanga, engari kia whawhai i nga wa katoa hei tiaki i nga Niwhai, i a ratou ano hoki i te ponongatanga.
- 18 Na, e rua mano aua taitamariki tane i uru ki tenei kawenata, a mau ana ki a ratou patu whawhai hei tiaki i o ratou whenua.
- 19 Na, kihai rawa ratou i taumaha ki nga Niwhai i mua, a inaianei i tenei takiwa i riro ano ratou hei kai awhina nui; no te mea i mau ratou ki a ratou patu whawhai, a i mea ano ratou ki a Heramana hei kai arahi mo ratou.
- 20 Na, he taitamariki tane anake ratou, a, he hunga marohirohi ano hoki ratou, he maia, he kaha, he kakama ano hoki; Otira, nana, e hara i tenei anake he tangata ratou e pono ana i nga wa katoa i roto i nga mea katoa i whakaaetia ai ki a ratou.
- 21 Ae ra, he tangata pono he tangata whai whakaaro ratou, no te mea i akona ratou kia pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, kia whakahaere tika ano hoki ki tona aroaro.
- 22 Na, ka haere a Heramana i mua i ana rua mano hoia taitamariki, hei tuara mo te iwi i nga rohe o te whenua i te tonga i te tai hauauru.
- 23 A i konei i mutu ai te rua tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, me etahi atu mea ano hoki.

And Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls; therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were compelled to behold their brethren wade through their afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances at this time.

But behold, it came to pass they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves against their enemies; therefore they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as were able to take up arms, and they called themselves Nephites.

And they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the Nephites, yea, to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives; yea, even they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and themselves from bondage.

Now behold, there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their country.

And now behold, as they never had hitherto been a disadvantage to the Nephites, they became now at this period of time also a great support; for they took their weapons of war, and they would that Helaman should be their leader.

And they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all—they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

Yea, they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

And now it came to pass that Helaman did march at the head of his two thousand stripling soldiers, to the support of the people in the borders of the land on the south by the west sea.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 54

- 1 Nawai a, i te rua tekau ma iwa o nga tau o nga Kai-whakariterite, ka tono a Amorono ki a Moronai, e hiahia ana ki a ia kia whakawhitiwhiti i nga herehere.
- 2 A ka hari nui a Moronai ki tenei tono, no te mea i hiahia ia ki nga kai i hoatu ma nga herehere o nga Ramana hei oranga mo tona ake iwi hei whakakaha mo tana taua.
- 3 Na, he maha nga wahine me nga tamariki i riro herehere i nga Ramana, a kahore tahi he wahine he tamariki ranei i roto i nga herehere a Moronai, ara, nga herehere i riro herehere ai i a Moronai; koia a Moronai i whakaaro ai i tetahi tikanga whakapohehe kia riro mai ai i a ia nga herehere katoa o nga Niwhai e taea ana i nga Ramana.
- 4 No reira ka tuhituhia e ia tetahi pukapuka, ka tukua atu ki te pononga a Amorono, ki taua tangata ano nana i mau mai te pukapuka ki a Moronai. Na, ko nga kupu tenei i tuhituhi ai ia ki a Amorono, i mea ai,
- 5 Nana, e Amorono, kua oti i a au te tuhituhi atu ki a koe mo tenei whawhai kua whawhai mai nei koe ki toku iwi, ara, kua whawhai mai nei tou tuakana ki a ratou, a e u tonu ana tau na hei whakahaere i muri i tona matenga.
- 6 Nana, penei kua korero ahau ki a koe mo te tika o te Atua, me te hoari o tana riri kaha rawa, e iri nei i runga ake i a koe ki te kore koe e ripeneta, e whakahoki atu ano i ou taua ki to koutou ake whenua, ara, ki nga whenua o a koutou taonga, koia nei te whenua o Niwhai:
- 7 Ae, penei kua korero ahau i enei mea ki a koe me i ahei i a koe te whakarongo ki enei mea; penei kua korero ahau ki a koe, mo taua reinga whakawehi e whanga nei ki nga kai kohuru, ki nga pena me korua ko tou tuakana, ki te kore koe e ripeneta e whakarere i au tikanga kohuru, me te hoki ano me ou taua ki to koutou whenua ake:
- 8 Heoi i te mea kua whakakahore koe ki enei mea, kua whawhai hoki ki te iwi o te Ariki, waihoki ko tenei he whakaarohanga maku, ara, ka tuaruatia ano e koe.

## Alma 54

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year of the judges, that Ammoron sent unto Moroni desiring that he would exchange prisoners.

And it came to pass that Moroni felt to rejoice exceedingly at this request, for he desired the provisions which were imparted for the support of the Lamanite prisoners for the support of his own people; and he also desired his own people for the strengthening of his army.

Now the Lamanites had taken many women and children, and there was not a woman nor a child among all the prisoners of Moroni, or the prisoners whom Moroni had taken; therefore Moroni resolved upon a stratagem to obtain as many prisoners of the Nephites from the Lamanites as it were possible.

Therefore he wrote an epistle, and sent it by the servant of Ammoron, the same who had brought an epistle to Moroni. Now these are the words which he wrote unto Ammoron, saying:

Behold, Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people, or rather which thy brother hath waged against them, and which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

Behold, I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, and the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

Yea, I would tell you these things if ye were capable of hearkening unto them; yea, I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been, except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

But as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

- 9 Na, e takatu ana matou mo koutou; a ki te kore hoki koutou e whakahoki atu i ta koutou i whakaaro na, nana, ka takina iho e koutou te riri o taua Atua i whakakahoretia e koutou ki runga ki a koutou, ā tae noa ki to koutou whakangaromanga rawatanga;
- 10 Na, e ora ana te Ariki, ka huaki a matou taua ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e hoki atu, a meake ano ka pangia koutou e te mate, no te mea era matou e pupuri i o matou pa me o matou whenua; ae ra, ka tautoko tonu matou i to matou karakia me te whakahaere a to matou Atua.
- 11 Heoi ki taku whakaaro, he maumau korero taku e korero nei ahau ki a koe mo enei mea; ara, ki taku whakaaro he tamaiti koe mo te reinga; koia ahau e whakamutu nei i taku pukapuka i runga i te korerotanga atu ki a koe kahore ahau e pai ki te hokohoko herehere, engari ma tau tukunga mai anake i te tangata ratou ko tana wahine, me ana tamariki, mo te herehere kotahi: ki te mea ka whakaae koe ki te mea i tenei mea, maku e whakawhitiwhiti.
- 12 A ki te kore koe e mea i tenei, maku e haere atu ki a koutou me aku taua; ae ra, maku ano e hoatu patu ma aku wahine me aku tamariki, a ka haere atu ahau ki te tatau atu ki a koutou, me te whai ano i a koutou tae noa ki roto ki o koutou ake whenua, koia te whenua tuatahi i noho ai matou: a ka ai he toto mo te toto; he ora mo te ora; maku hoki e whawhai ki a koutou, ā te whakangaromanga ra ano o koutou i runga i te mata o te whenua.
- 13 Nana, kei roto ahau i toku riri a me taku iwi ano hoki; ae ra, kua whai na koutou kia kohurutia matou, a heoi ano ta matou i whai ai hei tiaki i a matou ano. Heoi ki te whai ano koutou kia whakamate i a matou, ka whai ano hoki matou kia whakamate i a koutou; ae ra, ka whai ano matou i o matou whenua tuatahi i noho ai matou.
- 14 Heoi, ka mutu taku pukapuka. Ko Moronai ahau; he kai whakahaere ahau no te iwi o nga Niwhai.
- 15 Nawai a, ka riri a Amorono i tona whiwhinga i tenei pukapuka; a ka tuhituhi pukapuka ano ia ki a Moronai, na, ko nga kupu enei i tuhituhi ai ia, i mea ai,

And now behold, we are prepared to receive you; yea, and except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

But, as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw, and ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands; yea, and we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

But behold, it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain; or it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell; therefore I will close my epistle by telling you that I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

And behold, if ye do not this, I will come against you with my armies; yea, even I will arm my women and my children, and I will come against you, and I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance; yea, and it shall be blood for blood, yea, life for life; and I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold, I am in my anger, and also my people; ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves. But behold, if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you; yea, and we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Now I close my epistle. I am Moroni; I am a leader of the people of the Nephites.

Now it came to pass that Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry; and he wrote another epistle unto Moroni, and these are the words which he wrote, saying:

16 Ko Amoronu ahau, ko te kingi o nga Ramana; ko te teina ahau o Amarihiha i kohurutia e koutou. Nana, maku ona toto e ngaki ki runga ki a koutou; aera, maku e huaki ki a koutou me aku taua, kahore hoki oku wehi i au kupu whakawehi;

17 Ta te mea i mahi hē o koutou matua ki o ratou tuakana, no ka muru i to ratou tikanga ki te kawanatanga, i te mea e tika ana mo ratou ana tikanga.

18 Na, ki te pai koutou ki te whakatakoto i a koutou patu, me te tuku i a koutou kia whakahaeretia e te hunga no ratou nei te kawanatanga, katahi ahau ka mea i taku iwi kia whakatakoto i a ratou patu, a kaore e whawhai ano.

19 Nana, he maha nga whakawehi i whakapuakina e koe moku mo toku iwi ano hoki; heoi kahore matou e matakoto i a koutou whakawehi;

20 Otira ka tuku hari ahau kia whakawhitiwhiti i nga herehere e rite ana ki tau e tono mai na, kia tiaki ai ahau i aku kai ma aku tangata whawhai; a ka whawhai matou i tetahi whawhai mau tonu, hei whakaiti ranei i nga Niwhai ki o matou mana, hei whakangaro rawa ranei i a ratou mo ake tonu atu.

21 A mo te taha ki taua Atua e ki na koe na matou i whakakahore, nana, kahore matou e mohio ki tetahi mea pera; kahore ano hoki koutou; engari ki te mea he mea pera ano, kahore matou e mohio kua hanga pea a ia i a matou, i a koutou ano hoki;

22 A ki te mea he rewera ano me tetahi reinga, nana, he teka ianei ka tono ia i a koutou ki reira kia noho tahi me toku tuakana i kohurutia e koutou, i kiia e koe kua riro ia ki taua tu wahi? Heoi kahore he tikanga o enei mea.

23 Ko Amoronu ahau, he uri ano no Horama i kumea e o koutou matua i mauria mai nei hoki ki waho o Hiruharama.

24 A inaianei he Ramana ahau; na, kua whawhaitia tenei whawhai hei ngaki i o ratou hē, hei tiaki hei whakawhiwhi i a ratou ki o ratou tikanga ki te kawanatanga; heoi ka mutu i a au taku pukapuka ki a Moronai.

I am Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites; I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered. Behold, I will avenge his blood upon you, yea, and I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

For behold, your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

And now behold, if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

Behold, ye have breathed out many threatenings against me and my people; but behold, we fear not your threatenings.

Nevertheless, I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war; and we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

And as concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being; neither do ye; but if it so be that there is such a being, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

And if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place? But behold these things matter not.

I am Ammoron, and a descendant of Zoram, whom your fathers pressed and brought out of Jerusalem.

And behold now, I am a bold Lamanite; behold, this war hath been waged to avenge their wrongs, and to maintain and to obtain their rights to the government; and I close my epistle to Moroni.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 55

- 1 Na, ka riro i a Moronai tenei pukapuka, ka nui atu tona riri, no te mea i mohio ia kei a Amoronon te tino matauranga ki tana tinihanga; ae ra, i matau ia kua marama tenei i a Amoronon, ehara i te take tika i whawhai ai ia, ki te iwi o Niwhai.
- 2 A ka mea ia, Nana, e kore ahau e whakawhitiwhiti herehere, ki a Amoronon ki te kore ia e whakakahore i tana i hiahia ai, penei me taku i tuhituhi ai i roto i taku pukapuka; no te mea e kore ahau e tuku atu ki a ia i tetahi atu kaha i te mea ra kei a ia inaianei.
- 3 Nana, e mohio ana ahau ki te kainga e tiaki nei nga Ramana i toku iwi, kua riro herehere nei i a ratou, a i te mea kahore a Amoronon e whakaae mai ki nga kupu o taku pukapuka, nana, maku e hoatu ki a ia kia rite ki aku kupu; ae ra, maku e whakamate ratou, kia houhia ra ano te rongon.
- 4 Na, ka mutu i a Moronai enei kupu te whakapuaki, ka mea ia kia rapua i roto i ana tangata, me kore ia e kite i tetahi tangata i tetahi uri no Ramana i roto i a ratou.
- 5 Nawai a, ka kite ratou i tetahi, nona nei te ingoa ko Ramana; na, ko ia tetahi o nga pononga a te kingi i kohurutia e Amalickiah.
- 6 Na, ka mea a Moronai i a Ramana me etahi o ana tangata, kia haere atu ki nga kai tiaki i runga ra i nga Niwhai.
- 7 Na, i tiakina nga Niwhai i roto i te pa o Kire; no reira a Moronai i whakatu ai i a Ramana me te tonon i etahi tangata kia haere hei hoa mona.
- 8 Ano ka ahiahi ka haere atu a Ramana ki nga kai tiaki i runga ra i nga Niwhai, na, ka kite ratou i a ia e whanake ana, ka karanga ki a ia; heoi ka mea atu ia ki a ratou, kei wehi; nana, he Ramana ahau. Na, kua mawhiti matou i nga Niwhai, a e moe ana ratou; na, kua mau matou ki tetahi wahi o a ratou waina, a mauria mai ana e matou.
- 9 Na, i te rongonga o nga Ramana i enei kupu, ka hari ratou; me te mea ano ki a ia, homai ma matou tetahi wahi o tou waina, hei inumanga ma matou; e hari ana matou mou kua mau waina mai, no te mea e mauiu ana matou.

## Alma 55

Now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry, because he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud; yea, he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

And he said: Behold, I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle; for I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than what he hath got.

Behold, I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people whom they have taken prisoners; and as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I will give unto him according to my words; yea, I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had said these words, he caused that a search should be made among his men, that perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman among them.

And it came to pass that they found one, whose name was Laman; and he was one of the servants of the king who was murdered by Amalickiah.

Now Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

Now the Nephites were guarded in the city of Gid; therefore Moroni appointed Laman and caused that a small number of men should go with him.

And when it was evening Laman went to the guards who were over the Nephites, and behold, they saw him coming and they hailed him; but he saith unto them: Fear not; behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their wine and brought with us.

Now when the Lamanites heard these words they received him with joy; and they said unto him: Give us of your wine, that we may drink; we are glad that ye have thus taken wine with you for we are weary.

10 Na, ka mea atu a Ramana ki a ratou, me pupuri a tatou waina mo te haerenga ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai; heoi na tenei kupu i nui rawa ai to ratou hiahia ki te inu waina;

11 No te mea i ki ratou, e mauiu ana matou, mo konei ra kia inu matou i te waina, a taihoa ka riro mai ano he waina ano, he mea tuwha ki a matou, koia hei whakakaha i a tatou mo te haere atu ki te tatau atu ki nga Niwhai.

12 A ka ki atu a Ramana ki a ratou, ka tukua koutou kia mea kia rite ki a koutou na hiahia.

13 Nawai a, ka inu nui ratou i te waina, a he reka ano ia ki te kai; koia i inu nui atu ai ratou; na, e kaha ana ia, he mea mahi hoki kia kaha.

14 Na, ka inu ratou, ka hari, a muri iho kua haurangi katoa ratou.

15 Na, i te kitenga o Ramana ratou ko ona tangata i a ratou katoa kua haurangi, a he moe au ano to ratou, ka hoki ratou ki a Moronai, a korero ana i nga mea katoa i pa ai ki a ratou.

16 Na, rite tonu tenei ki ta Moronai i hiahia ai. A kua whakawhiwhi a Moronai i ana tangata ki nga patu whawhai; a ka tonoa atu ki te pa o Kire i nga Ramana e au ana te moe, e haurangi ana, a maka ana nga patu whawhai ki roto ki nga herehere, no ka whai patu ratou katoa;

17 Ae ra, tae noa ki a ratou wahine me a ratou tamariki katoa, nga mea e ahei ana te hapai patu whawhai, ka oti i a Moronai aua herehere te whakawhiwhi; na, i meatia pukutia aua mea katoa.

18 Otira me i whakaara ratou i nga Ramana, na, e haurangi ana ratou, ma konei kua ahei i nga Niwhai te patupatu i a ratou.

19 Heoi ehara tenei i te hiahia o Moronai; kahore hoki ona ahuareka atu ki te kohuru, ki te whakaheke toto ranei, engari i ahuareka atu ia ki te whakaoranga mai o tona iwi i te whakangaromanga; a na konei kihai ia i pai ki te hinga ki runga ki nga Ramana, ki te whakamate i a ratou i runga i to ratou haurangi kei takina iho te whakahe mona.

But Laman said unto them: Let us keep of our wine till we go against the Nephites to battle. But this saying only made them more desirous to drink of the wine;

For, said they: We are weary, therefore let us take of the wine, and by and by we shall receive wine for our rations, which will strengthen us to go against the Nephites.

And Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

And it came to pass that they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong, having been prepared in its strength.

And it came to pass they did drink and were merry, and by and by they were all drunken.

And now when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

And now this was according to the design of Moroni. And Moroni had prepared his men with weapons of war; and he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, inso-much that they were all armed;

Yea, even to their women, and all those of their children, as many as were able to use a weapon of war, when Moroni had armed all those prisoners; and all those things were done in a profound silence.

But had they awakened the Lamanites, behold they were drunken and the Nephites could have slain them.

But behold, this was not the desire of Moroni; he did not delight in murder or bloodshed, but he delighted in the saving of his people from destruction; and for this cause he might not bring upon him injustice, he would not fall upon the Lamanites and destroy them in their drunkenness.



20 Oтира, kua whiwhi ia ki ana i hiahia ai; ina hoki kua whakawhiwhi ia i aua herehere o nga Niwhai i roto ra i nga taiepa o te pa, a kua hoatu ano hoki e ia ki a ratou te kaha hei mau ki te tikanga o aua wahi i roto ra i nga taiepa;

21 Katahi ia ka mea i nga tangata i a ia kia neke atu ki te whanga, a ka karapoti i nga taua a nga Ramana.

22 Na, i mahia tenei i te po, a i te aranga o nga Ramana i te ata, ka kite ratou ko waho kua karapotitia e nga Niwhai, a, ko nga herehere i roto kua whai patu.

23 A penei ka kite ratou kei nga Niwhai te kaha ki runga ki a ratou; a i runga i enei ahuatanga, ka kite ratou e kore e tika te whawhai ki nga Niwhai; no reira i tono ai o ratou rangatira nui ki a ratou patu whawhai, a mauria mai ana e ratou, maka ana ki nga waewae o nga Niwhai, me te tohe ano kia tohungia.

24 Na, ko te hiahia tenei o Moronai. Ka herehere ratou e ia, ka mau ano ki te tikanga o te pa, a meinga ana kia tukua nga herehere katoa o nga Niwhai; a uru ana ratou ki te taua a Moronai, a he kaha nui ano ratou ki tana taua.

25 Na, ka mea ano ia i nga Ramana, kua riro herehere nei i a ia, kia timata ratou i tetahi mahi hei whakakaha i nga taiepa, tawhio noa, tawhio noa i te po o Kire.

26 Ano ka oti i a ia te pa o Kire te whakakaha, kia rite ki tana hiahia, ka mea ia kia kawea atu ana herehere ki te pa Momona; a ka tiakina ano hoki e ia taua pa ki tetahi ope kaha rawa.

27 Na, he ahakoa nga tikanga whakapohehe katoa a nga Ramana, ka pupuri ratou, ka tiaki i nga herehere i riro herehere nei i a ratou, me te pupuri ano hoki i te whenua katoa me te kaha kua riro mai ano i a ratou.

28 A ka timata ano nga Niwhai te whai wikitoria, te whiwhi ano ki o ratou tikanga me o ratou ritenga.

29 Na, he maha nga whakamatauranga a nga Ramana ki te karapoti i a ratou i te po, heoi he maha o ratou i riro herehere i runga i aua tohetohenga.

But he had obtained his desires; for he had armed those prisoners of the Nephites who were within the wall of the city, and had given them power to gain possession of those parts which were within the walls.

And then he caused the men who were with him to withdraw a pace from them, and surround the armies of the Lamanites.

Now behold this was done in the night-time, so that when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

And thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them; and in these circumstances they found that it was not expedient that they should fight with the Nephites; therefore their chief captains demanded their weapons of war, and they brought them forth and cast them at the feet of the Nephites, pleading for mercy.

Now behold, this was the desire of Moroni. He took them prisoners of war, and took possession of the city, and caused that all the prisoners should be liberated, who were Nephites; and they did join the army of Moroni, and were a great strength to his army.

And it came to pass that he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

And it came to pass that when he had fortified the city Gid, according to his desires, he caused that his prisoners should be taken to the city Bountiful; and he also guarded that city with an exceedingly strong force.

And it came to pass that they did, notwithstanding all the intrigues of the Lamanites, keep and protect all the prisoners whom they had taken, and also maintain all the ground and the advantage which they had retaken.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

Many times did the Lamanites attempt to encircle them about by night, but in these attempts they did lose many prisoners.

30 He maha ano hoki o ratou tohetohenga ki te homai waina ki nga Niwhai, hei whakangaro i a ratou ki te kai whakamate, ki te haurangitanga ranei.

31 Otira kihai nga Niwhai i puhoi ki te mahara ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, i runga i to ratou na takiwa mamae. Kihai ratou i taea te hopu e a ratou mahanga: ae ra, kihai ratou i pai ki te pa ki a ratou waina, ki te kore ratou i hoatu i te tuatahi ki etahi o nga herehere Ramana.

32 A i pera ta ratou tupato kei whangaia tetahi kai whakamate ki a ratou; ki te mea hoki ka whakamate ta ratou waina i tetahi Ramana, ka whakamate ano hoki tera i tetahi Niwhai: a i pera tonu ta ratou whakaumatautau i a ratou mea inu katoa.

33 Nawai a, ka takoto te tikanga kia whakariterite a Moronai ki te whakaeke i te pa o Moriatono; ta te mea i runga i a ratou mahi kua whakakahangia te pa Moriatono e nga Ramana, a roiro ana hei piringa kaha rawa;

34 A hono tonu ano hoki ta ratou kawe ope hou ki roto ki taua pa, me te mau mai ano i nga kai hou.

35 Na, ko te mutunga tenei o te rua tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a anga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

And many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

But behold, the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction. They could not be taken in their snares; yea, they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

And they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them; for if their wine would poison a Lamanite it would also poison a Nephite; and thus they did try all their liquors.

And now it came to pass that it was expedient for Moroni to make preparations to attack the city Morianton; for behold, the Lamanites had, by their labors, fortified the city Morianton until it had become an exceeding stronghold.

And they were continually bringing new forces into that city, and also new supplies of provisions.

And thus ended the twenty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 56

- 1 Na, i te timatanga o te toru tekau o nga tau o te whahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, i te rua o nga ra o te marama tuatahi, ka riro i a Moronai tetahi pukapuka na Heramana e whakaatu atu ana i te ahua o te iwi i taua wahi o te whenua.
- 2 Na, ko nga kupu enei i tuhituhi ai ia, i mea ai, E Moronai, e toku tuakana e arohaina nuitia ana, i roto i te Ariki, i roto ano hoki i nga tukinotanga o to tatou whawhai; nana, e taku tuakana aroha, he korero taku ki a koe mo ta matou whawhai i tenei wahi o te whenua.
- 3 Nana, e rua mano nga tamariki tane o te hunga i mauria mai ra e Amona ki waho o te whenua o Niwhai, Na, e mohio ana koe, he uri enei na Ramana, koia nei te matamua a to tatou tupuna a Rihai.
- 4 Na, kahore he tikanga e whakaatu atu ai ahau ki a koe mo a ratou whakarereanga iho mo to ratou whakapono kore ranei, e mohio ana hoki koe ki enei mea katoa.
- 5 No reira kati noa maku ko te whakaatu ki a koe e rua mano o enei taitamariki tane kua mau ki a ratou patu whawhai, a e mea ana ratou ko ahau to ratou kai arahi, na, kua haere mai matou hei tiaki mo to tatou whenua.
- 6 Na, e mohio ana ano koe ki te kawenata i kawenata ai o ratou matua kia kauaka e hapai i a ratou patu whawhai hei tatau atu ki o ratou teina hei whakahaheke toto.
- 7 Heoi i te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau, i to ratou kitenga i o tatou whakamamaetanga me o tatou tukinotanga, he whakaaro ki a ratou, wahi iti kua takahi ratou i te kawenata i kawenata ai ratou, kua hapai i a ratou patu whawhai hei tiaki mo tatou.
- 8 A kihai ahau i tuku i a ratou kia takahi i tenei kawenata i kawenata ai ratou, ki taku whakaaro hoki ka whakakahangia tatou e te Atua, a ka kore e nui atu o tatou pouritanga i runga i te whakaritenga i te oati i oati ai ratou.

## Alma 56

And now it came to pass in the commencement of the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges, on the second day in the first month, Moroni received an epistle from Helaman, stating the affairs of the people in that quarter of the land.

And these are the words which he wrote, saying: My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the tribulations of our warfare; behold, my beloved brother, I have somewhat to tell you concerning our warfare in this part of the land.

Behold, two thousand of the sons of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of Nephi—now ye have known that these were descendants of Laman, who was the eldest son of our father Lehi;

Now I need not rehearse unto you concerning their traditions or their unbelief, for thou knowest concerning all these things—

Therefore it sufficeth me that I tell you that two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of war, and would that I should be their leader; and we have come forth to defend our country.

And now ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against their brethren to shed blood.

But in the twenty and sixth year, when they saw our afflictions and our tribulations for them, they were about to break the covenant which they had made and take up their weapons of war in our defence.

But I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant which they had made, supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which they had taken.

- 9 Oтира tenei tetahi mea hei haringa nui mo tatou. Ta te mea, na, i te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau i haere ahau, a Heramana, i mua i enei mano e rua o nga taitamariki tane ki te pa o Huria, ki te awhina i a tipu i whakaturia ai e koe hei kai whakahaere i runga i te iwi o taua wahi o te whenua.
- 10 A naku i whakauru atu taku rua mano o nga tamariki tane (e tika ana hoki ratou kia karangatia he tamariki tane) ki te taua a Anatipu, a i hari nui a Anatipu ki tenei whakakaha; no te mea hoki i whakaititia tana taua e nga Ramana, na o ratou ope hoki i patu he tokomaha noa atu o a tatou tangata, no tenei take e tangi nei matou.
- 11 Oтира me marire o tatou ngakau i runga i tenei, i mate ratou i runga i te whakaaro ki to ratou whenua me to ratou Atua, a e hari ana ratou.
- 12 Na, he maha ano nga herehere i mauria e nga Ramana, he rangatira nui anake ratou, kahore hoki tetahi atu i tohungia. Na, ki ta matou whakaaro, kei te whenua o Niwhai ratou inaianei i tenei taima; e tika ana tenei ki te mea kahore ratou i whakamatea.
- 13 Na, ko nga pa enei i roto atu i nga Ramana i runga i te whakahekenga i te toto o a tatou tangata toa tokomaha:—
- 14 Ko te whenua o Manati, ara, te pa o Manati, me te pa o Teroma, te pa o Kumeni me te pa o Anati para.
- 15 Na, ko nga pa ena e nohoia ana e ratou i taku taenga mai ki te pa o Huria; a rokohanga ana e ahau ko Anatipu ratou ko ana tangata e mahi ana i runga i to ratou uaua hei whakakaha i te pa;
- 16 A e pehia ana o ratou tinana e peratia ana me o ratou wairua, no te mea i kaha ta ratou whawhai i te ao, i mahi hoki i te po, hei tiaki i o ratou pa; a penei i mamae ratou i nga mamae nunui o ia ahua, o ia ahua.
- 17 Na, i u to ratou whakaaro kia whai wikitoria i roto i tenei kainga, kia mate rawa ranei; no reira me mohio koe, i puta ake ki a ratou te tumanako me te hari nui i tenei ope nohinohi i mauria mai nei e ahau, ara, i aua tamariki tane aku.

But behold, here is one thing in which we may have great joy. For behold, in the twenty and sixth year, I, Helaman, did march at the head of these two thousand young men to the city of Judea, to assist Antipus, whom ye had appointed a leader over the people of that part of the land.

And I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus did rejoice exceedingly; for behold, his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their forces had slain a vast number of our men, for which cause we have to mourn.

Nevertheless, we may console ourselves in this point, that they have died in the cause of their country and of their God, yea, and they are happy.

And the Lamanites had also retained many prisoners, all of whom are chief captains, for none other have they spared alive. And we suppose that they are now at this time in the land of Nephi; it is so if they are not slain.

And now these are the cities of which the Lamanites have obtained possession by the shedding of the blood of so many of our valiant men:

The land of Manti, or the city of Manti, and the city of Zeezrom, and the city of Cumeni, and the city of Antiparah.

And these are the cities which they possessed when I arrived at the city of Judea; and I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the city.

Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit, for they had fought valiantly by day and toiled by night to maintain their cities; and thus they had suffered great afflictions of every kind.

And now they were determined to conquer in this place or die; therefore you may well suppose that this little force which I brought with me, yea, those sons of mine, gave them great hopes and much joy.

18 A i te kitenga o nga Ramana kua nui atu te kaha o te taua a Anatiu, katahi ratou ka whakahaua e Amoronu, kia kaua e whakatika mai ki te pa o Huria, ara ki a matou, ki te whawhai.

19 A, i penei te manako mai o te Ariki ki a matou; no te mea, na, me i huaki mai ratou ki a matou i te wa e ngoikore ana matou, tera pea kua whakangaromia ta matou taua nohinohi; ko tenei kua tohungia matou.

20 Na, i whakahaua ratou e Amoronu kia tiaki i nga pa kua riro nei i a ratou. A i pera te mutunga o te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau. Na, i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma whitu o nga tau kua rite i a matou pa me matou ano hoki kua rite hei tiaki.

21 A i hiahia ano matou kia huaki mai nga Ramana ki a matou; no te mea kahore o matou hiahia ki te huaki atu ki a ratou i roto i o ratou pa kaha.

22 Na, kei a matou nga tutei kei waho, tawhio noa, tawhio noa, hei tutei i nga haerenga o nga Ramana, kei pahure ke ratou i te po, i te ao ranei kei whakaekengia o matou pa, i te taha whaka-te-nota:

23 No te mea i mohio matou e kore e kaha era o matou pa, ki te whawhai ki a ratou; na reira matou i whakaaro ai, me tuku ta ratou taua kia pahure i a matou, ka kokiri ai a muri; a, mehemea ka kokiri atu matou i muri hei taua wa pu ano me kokiri mai hoki a mua. Ki to matou whakaaro hoki, ka taea ratou e matou; otira raru ana matou.

24 Kahore ratou i maia ki te haere kia hipa ake i a matou, me ta ratou taua katoa, me tetahi wahi noa ranei, he wehi kei tokoitiiti ratou ka taea.

25 A kahore hoki ratou i maia ki te haere ki te pa o Harahemera; kahore hoki ratou i maia ki te whakawhiti atu i te matapuna o Hairona, ki te pa o Nepiha.

26 A, ko te ahua tenei i whakaaro ai ratou, kia puritia tonutia e a ratou taua nga pa katoa i riro mai nei i a ratou.

27 Na, i te rua o nga marama, o tenei tau, he nui te kai i mauria mai i nga matua o aua tamariki tane aku e rua nei mano.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Antipus had received a greater strength to his army, they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

And thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army; but thus were we preserved.

They were commanded by Ammoron to maintain those cities which they had taken. And thus ended the twenty and sixth year. And in the commencement of the twenty and seventh year we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

Now we were desirous that the Lamanites should come upon us; for we were not desirous to make an attack upon them in their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities which were on the northward.

For we knew in those cities they were not sufficiently strong to meet them; therefore we were desirous, if they should pass by us, to fall upon them in their rear, and thus bring them up in the rear at the same time they were met in the front. We supposed that we could overpower them; but behold, we were disappointed in this our desire.

They durst not pass by us with their whole army, neither durst they with a part, lest they should not be sufficiently strong and they should fall.

Neither durst they march down against the city of Zarahemla; neither durst they cross the head of Sidon, over to the city of Nephihah.

And thus, with their forces, they were determined to maintain those cities which they had taken.

And now it came to pass in the second month of this year, there was brought unto us many provisions from the fathers of those my two thousand sons.

28 E rua ano hoki mano nga tangata i tonoa mai ki a matou i te whenua o Harahemera. A penei kua rite matou, ara, nga tangata kotahi tekau mano, me nga kai ma ratou, me a ratou wahine me a ratou tamariki.

29 A, ko nga Ramana e kite mai ana i a matou ope e nui haere ana, i tenei ra, i tenei ra, me nga kai hoki e tae mai ana hei oranga mo matou, ka pa te wehi ki a ratou, ka timata te kokiri me kore e taea te aukati nga kai, me nga kaha i a matou.

30 Na, i to matou kitenga i nga Ramana e penei ana te wehi, ka hiahia matou ki te tinihanga i a ratou: na reira, ka whakahaua ahau e Anatipu, kia haere me aku tamariki tane nonohi ki tetahi pa e tata atu ana, me te mea e mau kai atu ana ki tetahi pa e tata mai ana.

31 A kua takoto te tikanga ko matou e whakatata atu ki te pa o Antipara me te mea e haere ana matou ki te pa ki ko atu, ki nga rohe ki te takutai.

32 Nawai a, haere atu ana matou, ano e mau ana i a matou kai, kia haere ki taua kainga.

33 A ka haere ano a Anatipu, me tetahi wahi o tana taua, ka waiho te toenga hei pupuri i te pa. Heoi kihai ia i haere atu, taea noatia taku rironga atu me taku taua nohinohi, a kua tata atu hoki ki te pa o Antipara.

34 Na, i te pa o Antipara, e noho ana te taua tino kaha a nga Ramana; ae ra te taua nui.

35 Nawai a, i te korerotanga i tenei ki a ratou o a ratou tutei, ka puta mai ratou me ta ratou taua, ka haere mai ki a matou.

36 A rere atu ana matou i mua i a ratou, whaka-tenota. A i penei ta matou poapoa atu i te taua tino kaha a nga Ramana;

37 Ae ra ki te wahi pamamao rawa, no ka kore ratou e peka ki matau, ki mau ranei, i a ratou ka kite nei i te taua a Anatipu, e whai ana i a ratou i runga i to ratou kaha; na reira, ka tika tonu ta ratou whai haere mai i a matou; a, i whakaaro ratou ka mate matou i a ratou, i te mea kahore ano ratou i mau i a Anatipu; mehemea hoki i pera, penei kua karapotitia ratou e to matou iwi.

And also there were sent two thousand men unto us from the land of Zarahemla. And thus we were prepared with ten thousand men, and provisions for them, and also for their wives and their children.

And the Lamanites, thus seeing our forces increase daily, and provisions arrive for our support, they began to be fearful, and began to sally forth, if it were possible to put an end to our receiving provisions and strength.

Now when we saw that the Lamanites began to grow uneasy on this wise, we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them; therefore Antipus ordered that I should march forth with my little sons to a neighboring city, as if we were carrying provisions to a neighboring city.

And we were to march near the city of Antiparah, as if we were going to the city beyond, in the borders by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did march forth, as if with our provisions, to go to that city.

And it came to pass that Antipus did march forth with a part of his army, leaving the remainder to maintain the city. But he did not march forth until I had gone forth with my little army, and came near the city Antiparah.

And now, in the city Antiparah were stationed the strongest army of the Lamanites; yea, the most numerous.

And it came to pass that when they had been informed by their spies, they came forth with their army and marched against us.

And it came to pass that we did flee before them, northward. And thus we did lead away the most powerful army of the Lamanites;

Yea, even to a considerable distance, insomuch that when they saw the army of Antipus pursuing them, with their might, they did not turn to the right nor to the left, but pursued their march in a straight course after us; and, as we suppose, it was their intent to slay us before Antipus should overtake them, and this that they might not be surrounded by our people.

38 Na, i te kitenga o Anatipu wahi iti kua mau matou, katahi ka akiaki kia kaha te haere o tana taua. Otira, kua po; no reira, i te mea kihai matou i mau i a ratou, me ratou hoki kihai i mau i a Anatipu; no kona, ka noho matou mo te po.

39 Nawai a, whai ana ano nga Ramana i a matou, i te me kahore ano kia takiri te ata. Na, kahore i rite to matou tokomaha ki to ratou hei whawhai ki a ratou; a kihai ahau i pai ki te tuku i aku tamariki tane nonohi kia taka ki o ratou ringaringa; no reira i haere tonu ai matou, a haere atu ana matou ki te koraha.

40 Na, kahore ratou i maia ki te peka ki matau ki maui ranei kei karapotitia ratou; a ko au ano kahore i pai ki te peka ki matau ki maui ranei, kei mau ahau i a ratou, e kore hoki matou e kaha ki te tu atu ki a ratou, engari ka whakamatea, a ko ratou ka mawhiti; na, i pera ta matou rere i taua ra katoa tae noa ki te po, ki roto ki te koraha.

41 Nawai a, i te takiritanga ano o te ata, ka kite matou i nga Ramana kei runga i a matou, a ka rere atu ano matou i mua i a ratou.

42 Otira kahore i roa ta ratou whai i a matou, kua noho; a ko te ra tuatoru ia o te whitu o nga marama.

43 Na, kahore matou i mohio kua mau ranei ratou i a Anatipu kahore ranei, heoi ka mea atu ahau ki aku tangata, nana, kahore tatou e mohio ko ta ratou noho pea kia tu atu ai tatou ki a ratou, kia taka ai ki ta ratou mahanga;

44 No reira pehea ta koutou kupu, e aku tamariki tane, ka whakaae ranei koutou kia haere ki te whawhai ki a ratou?

45 Na, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koe, e taku tuakana aroha, e Moronai, kahore ahau i kite i te toa e rite ana ki tenei te nui, kahore i roto i nga Niwhai katoa.

46 Ina hoki i karanga tonu ahau i a ratou he tamariki tane naku (no te mea he tino tamariki ratou katoa,) no reira, ka mea mai ratou ki a au, E pa na, kei a tatou to tatou Atua, a e kore ia e tuku i a tatou kia hinga: na, hoki atu tatou; kahore tatou e whakamate i o tatou tuakana me he mea ka waiho mai tatou e ratou; mo konei ra me hoki ano tatou kei taea hoki e ratou te taua a Anatipu.

And now Antipus, beholding our danger, did speed the march of his army. But behold, it was night; therefore they did not overtake us, neither did Antipus overtake them; therefore we did camp for the night.

And it came to pass that before the dawn of the morning, behold, the Lamanites were pursuing us. Now we were not sufficiently strong to contend with them; yea, I would not suffer that my little sons should fall into their hands; therefore we did continue our march, and we took our march into the wilderness.

Now they durst not turn to the right nor to the left lest they should be surrounded; neither would I turn to the right nor to the left lest they should overtake me, and we could not stand against them, but be slain, and they would make their escape; and thus we did flee all that day into the wilderness, even until it was dark.

And it came to pass that again, when the light of the morning came we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day of the seventh month.

And now, whether they were overtaken by Antipus we knew not, but I said unto my men: Behold, we know not but they have halted for the purpose that we should come against them, that they might catch us in their snare;

Therefore what say ye, my sons, will ye go against them to battle?

And now I say unto you, my beloved brother Moroni, that never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

47 Na, kihai ano ratou i whawhai noa, ahakoa ra kahore ratou i wehi i te mate; a he nui atu to ratou whakaaro ki te here-koretanga o o ratou matua i to ratou whakaaro ki a ratou ake ano; ae ra, he mea whakaako na o ratou whaea, ki te mea kahore o ratou ngakau ruarua ka whakaputaina ratou e te Atua.

48 Na, whakahua mai ana ratou i nga kupu a o ratou whaea, mea mai ana, e whakapono ana matou ki o matou whaea i matau ki tenei.

49 Nawai a, hoki atu ana ahau me taku rua mano, ki te tatau atu ki nga Ramana i whai nei i a matou. Nana, kua mau ratou i nga taua a Anatipu, a kua timata he whawhai nanakia.

50 E mauui ana te taua a Anatipu i te roa o te whenua i haere ai ratou i te taima poto, a whano ka taka ratou ki roto ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana; a me i kore ahau i hoki atu me aku mano e rua, penei kua tutuki ta ratou i whakaaro ai:

51 Ina hoki i hinga a Anatipu i te hoari, me te nuinga ano o ana kai whakahaere, he nui no to ratou ngenge i te hohoro o ta ratou haere; a i poraruru ano nga tangata a Anatipu i te hingahinga o o ratou kai whakahaere, koia ratou i timata ai te horo i mua i nga Ramana.

52 Nawai a, ka maia nga Ramana, ka timata te whai i a ratou: a, rokohanga atu i te huakitanga a Heramana me taua rua mano e tino kaha ana te whai a nga Ramana i a ratou, na, ka timata ia ki te patupatu i a ratou i runga i te kaha; na reira, te taua katoa a nga Ramana i tu ai, i tahuri mai ai kia Heramana.

53 Na, i te kitenga o nga tangata o Anatipu i nga Ramana kua tahuri ke, ka whakamine ano ratou i o ratou tangata ka huaki ano i muri o nga Ramana.

54 Nawai a, ko matou ko te iwi o Niwhai, ara te iwi o Anatipu me matou, ko aku rua mano i karapoti i nga Ramana, i patupatu i a ratou; a meinga ano ratou kia tuku mai i a ratou patu whawhai, me ratou ano hoki hei herehere.

55 Ano ka oti ratou te tuku mai e ratou ano ki a matou, ka tatau ahau i aua taitamariki tane i whawhai tahi ra matou, he pairi noku kei tokomaha o ratou kua whakamatea.

Now they never had fought, yet they did not fear death; and they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives; yea, they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

And they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

And it came to pass that I did return with my two thousand against these Lamanites who had pursued us. And now behold, the armies of Antipus had overtaken them, and a terrible battle had commenced.

The army of Antipus being weary, because of their long march in so short a space of time, were about to fall into the hands of the Lamanites; and had I not returned with my two thousand they would have obtained their purpose.

For Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders, because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march—therefore the men of Antipus, being confused because of the fall of their leaders, began to give way before the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites took courage, and began to pursue them; and thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

Now when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

And now it came to pass that we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

And now it came to pass that when they had surrendered themselves up unto us, behold, I numbered those young men who had fought with me, fearing lest there were many of them slain.



56 Heoi, he nui atu taku hari, no te mea kore rawa tetahi o ratou i hinga ki te whenua; a, i whawhai ratou me te mea he kaha Atua to ratou; ae ra, kihai i matauria noatia he tangata whawhai i rite ki to ratou kaha te whakamiharo; a, i tahuri ratou ki nga Ramana i runga i te kaha nui, na reira nga Ramana i wehi ai; na konei hoki nga Ramana i tuku mai ai i a ratou ano hei herehere.

57 A, i te mea kahore a matou wahi hei puni mo a matou herehere, hei tiaki mai i a ratou i nga taua a nga Ramana, na kona ratou i tukua ai e matou ki te whenua o Harahemera, a, i tukua atu ano me ratou etahi o nga tangata a Anatipu kihai nei i whakamatea; ko te toenga o ratou i whakaurua mai e ahau ki taku ope tamariki o nga Amona, a, hoki atu ana ano matou ki te pa o Huria.

But behold, to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth; yea, and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

And as we had no place for our prisoners, that we could guard them to keep them from the armies of the Lamanites, therefore we sent them to the land of Zarahemla, and a part of those men who were not slain of Antipus, with them; and the remainder I took and joined them to my stripling Ammonites, and took our march back to the city of Judea.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 57

- 1 Nawai a, ka tae mai ki a au tetahi pukapuka a Amorononaki te kingi, e ki ana, ki te pai ahau ki te tuku atu i aua herehere i riro herehere ra i a matou ka whakaae mai ia ki te tuku mai i te pa Anatipara ki a matou.
- 2 Heoi ka tuku pukapuka atu ahau ki te kingi, ka mea, e tino mohio ana matou ki a matou ope e rite ana hei tango i te pa o Anatipara; a me he mea ka tukua atu nga herehere mo taua pa, ka whakaaro iho matou e pai ai ko te tuku atu i nga herehere hei whakawhitiwhiti i nga herehere.
- 3 A whakakahore ana a Amorononaki taku pukapuka, kihai hoki ia i pai ki te whakawhitiwhiti herehere; koia i tahuri ai matou ki te whakariterite mea mo te whakatika atu ki te pa o Anatipara.
- 4 Heoi whakarere ana te iwi o Anatipara i te pa, a oma atu ana ki era atu pa o ratou, kua nohoia nei e ratou, a reira ki te hanga pa whawhai; no reira i riro mai ai i a matou te pa o Anatipara.
- 5 A i pera te mutunga o te rua tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.
- 6 Nawai a, i te timatanga o te rua tekau ma iwa o nga tau, ka riro mai i a matou he maha nga kai me tetahi taua i uru ki ta matou taua, no te whenua o Harahemera, me te whenua e patata ana, e ono mano tangata to ratou tokomahatanga, haunga ra nga tamariki tane e ono tekau o nga Amona, i haere mai kia uru ki o ratou teina, ara ki taku ope iti e rua nei nga mano. Nana, kua kaha matou, he ranea hoki te kai i mauria mai ki a matou.
- 7 Na, ka hiahia matou ki te whawhai ki te taua i whakaturia hei tiaki mo te pa Kumeni.
- 8 Na, maku e whakaatu ki a koe, kua rite i a matou ta matou hiahia; ae ra, i karapotia matou i te pa Kumeni, he mea mahi po, ki ta matou taua kaha, ara ki tetahi wahi o ta matou taua kaha i mua tata i te wa ka riro ai i a ratou etahi kai.
- 9 A he maha nga po i nohoia ai e matou te pa, awhiono; otira i moe matou ki runga ki a matou hoari, me te whakatu kai tiaki ano, kei haere mai nga Ramana i te po ki te patu i a matou, he maha nei hoki o ratou tohetohenga ki te pera; otira i whakahaheka o ratou toto i nga wa katoa i tohetohe pera ai ratou.

## Alma 57

And now it came to pass that I received an epistle from Ammoron, the king, stating that if I would deliver up those prisoners of war whom we had taken that he would deliver up the city of Antiparah unto us.

But I sent an epistle unto the king, that we were sure our forces were sufficient to take the city of Antiparah by our force; and by delivering up the prisoners for that city we should suppose ourselves unwise, and that we would only deliver up our prisoners on exchange.

And Ammoron refused mine epistle, for he would not exchange prisoners; therefore we began to make preparations to go against the city of Antiparah.

But the people of Antiparah did leave the city, and fled to their other cities, which they had possession of, to fortify them; and thus the city of Antiparah fell into our hands.

And thus ended the twenty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the twenty and ninth year, we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand. And now behold, we were strong, yea, and we had also plenty of provisions brought unto us.

And it came to pass that it was our desire to wage a battle with the army which was placed to protect the city Cumeni.

And now behold, I will show unto you that we soon accomplished our desire; yea, with our strong force, or with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards, that the Lamanites could not come upon us by night and slay us, which they attempted many times; but as many times as they attempted this their blood was spilt.

- 10 Nawai a, ka tae mai a ratou kai, a e tata ana ano ratou te tomo ki roto ki te pa i te po. A ko matou he Niwhai: koia matou i mau ai ki a ratou me a ratou kai.
- 11 Na, he ahakoa i katia nga Ramana i to ratou oranga, i u tonu ta ratou whakaaro ki te pupuri i te pa; na konei ra i mea ai matou kia tangohia aua kai kia tukua atu ki Huria, a ko a matou herehere ki te whenua o Harahemera.
- 12 A he torutoru nei nga ra i pahemo kua kore nga Ramana e whiwhi kai ma ratou; koia ratou i tuku mai ai i te pa ki roto ki o matou ringaringa; a penei kua rite i a matou a matou whakaaro whakatakoto, i te rironga mai o te pa Kumeni.
- 13 Heoi no te tini o o matou herehere, a ahakoa te tini o to matou tokomahatanga, i meinga ai matou kia waiho to matou ope katoa hei pupuri i a ratou, hei whakamate ranei i a ratou.
- 14 No te mea, ko ta ratou he tutu mai i roto i nga ope nui, ki te whawhai me nga kohatu, me nga patu, ara me tenei mea, me tera mea i ahei ai i o ratou ringaringa te mau, a nuku atu i te rua o nga mano i patua e matou, i muri i ta ratou tukunga mai i a ratou ano hei herehere;
- 15 Na reira i tika ai kia whakamatea ratou e matou, kia tiakina ranei ratou ki te ringaringa mau hoari, a tae noa ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera; a ko a matou kai ano hoki kahore i nui atu i te mea tika mo to matou iwi ake, he ahakoa nga kai i tangohia mai ai e matou i nga Ramana.
- 16 Na, i roto i aua wa o te whano mate i roto tenei hei mea tino taumaha te whakatakoto whakaaro mo enei herehere; ahakoa ra, i puta ta matou kia tonoa ratou ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera; koia matou i whiriwhiri ai tetahi wahi o a matou tangata, a hoatu ana ma ratou te tikanga i runga i a matou herehere, kia haere ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera.
- 17 Otira ao ake ano ka hoki mai ratou. A kahore matou i ui atu ki a ratou mo nga herehere; no te mea i runga nga Ramana i a matou, a i hoki mai ratou i te takiwa pai hei whakaora i a matou i te takanga ki roto ki o ratou ringaringa. Ta te mea, na Amorono i tuku mai ki a ratou etahi kai hou, me tetahi taua tini ano hoki o nga tangata.

At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

And notwithstanding the Lamanites being cut off from their support after this manner, they were still determined to maintain the city; therefore it became expedient that we should take those provisions and send them to Judea, and our prisoners to the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands; and thus we had accomplished our designs in obtaining the city Cumeni.

But it came to pass that our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

For behold, they would break out in great numbers, and would fight with stones, and with clubs, or whatsoever thing they could get into their hands, inasmuch that we did slay upwards of two thousand of them after they had surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

Therefore it became expedient for us, that we should put an end to their lives, or guard them, sword in hand, down to the land of Zarahemla; and also our provisions were not any more than sufficient for our own people, notwithstanding that which we had taken from the Lamanites.

And now, in those critical circumstances, it became a very serious matter to determine concerning these prisoners of war; nevertheless, we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla; therefore we selected a part of our men, and gave them charge over our prisoners to go down to the land of Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that on the morrow they did return. And now behold, we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands. For behold, Ammoron had sent to their support a new supply of provisions and also a numerous army of men.

18 Na, ka tae mai aua tangata i tonu ai matou ki te mau atu i nga herehere i te wa pai hei pehi i a ratou i a matou whano kua taea e ratou.

19 Otiia he nanakia rawa te whawhai i whawhai ai taku ope iti, taku rua mano e ono tekau; ae ra, u tonu ana ratou ki mua i nga Ramana, a whakamatea ana te hunga katoa i tu atu ki a ratou:

20 A i te mea e tata ana te toenga o to matou taua te ngoikore i mua i nga Ramana, nana, e u ana e wehikore ana taua rua mano e ono tekau;

21 Na, ka rongo ratou ka whakaaro kia tino whakarite i nga kupu whakahau katoa; a i rite ano ki to ratou whakapono te meatanga ki a ratou; na, ka mahara ahau ki nga kupu i ki mai ai ratou ki a au na o ratou whaea i whakaako iho ki a ratou.

22 Na, na enei tamariki tane aku me aua tangata i whiriwhiria ai hei mau atu i nga herehere tenei wikitoria nui o matou; no te mea na ratou i hinga ai nga Ramana; no reira i aia atu ai ratou ki te pa o Manati.

23 A pupuri ana matou i to matou pa Kumeni, kahore hoki i whakamatea katoatia matou ki te hoari; otira he tokomaha o matou i whakamatea.

24 Nawai a, i muri i te omanga o nga Ramana ka whakahau wawe ahau kia tangohia mai aku tangata i tu ai i roto i te hunga mate, a mea ana kia takaia o ratou tunga.

25 Na, e rua rau, i roto i taku rua mano e ono tekau i hemo i te kore toto; otira i runga i te painga o te Atua, me te miharo nui mo matou, me nga hoa riri ano hoki o to matou taua katoa, kahore tahi he tangata o ratou i mate; kahore tahi ano hoki he tangata i roto i a ratou kahore nei i maha ona tunga.

26 Na, he mea whakamiharo ki ta matou taua katoa to ratou tiakanga; ae ra, te tiakanga o ratou i te mea he mano o o matou tuakana i patua. Na, e tika ana ta matou ki, na te kaha whakamiharo o te Atua tenei, he mea hoki na to ratou whakapono nui ki taua mea i whakaakona ai hei whakapontanga ma ratou, ara he Atua tika ano; a ko te hunga kahore nei o ratou ngakau ruarua ka tiakina e tona kaha whakamiharo.

And it came to pass that those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

But behold, my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately; yea, they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

And as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and undaunted.

Yea, and they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness; yea, and even according to their faith it was done unto them; and I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

And now behold, it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites; therefore they were driven back to the city of Manti.

And we retained our city Cumeni, and were not all destroyed by the sword; nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

And it came to pass that after the Lamanites had fled, I immediately gave orders that my men who had been wounded should be taken from among the dead, and caused that their wounds should be dressed.

And it came to pass that there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood; nevertheless, according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish; yea, and neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

And now, their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, yea, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain. And we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe—that there was a just God, and whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

27 Na, ko te whakapono tenei o taua hunga kua korerotia nei e au; he taitamariki ratou, a e u ana o ratou whakaaro; a e whakawhirinaki tonu ana ratou ki runga ki te Atua.

28 Nawai a, i muri iho i ta matou mahi pera i o matou tangata i tu me te tanu ano i o matou tupapaku, me nga tupapaku ano hoki o nga Ramana, koia he maha, nana, ka uiui matou ki a Kire mo nga herehere i turia atu e ratou kia kawea ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera.

29 Na, ko Kire te rangatira nui i runga i taua ope i whakaritea hei tiaki i a ratou ki raro ki te whenua.

30 Na, ko nga kupu enei i korero mai ai a Kire ki a au, Nana, i whakatika atu matou ki te haere ki raro ki te whenua o Harahemera me o matou herehere. Nawai a, ka tutaki matou ki nga tutei a o matou taua, i tonoa mai ratou ki waho ki te tutei i te puni o nga Ramana.

31 A karanga mai ana ratou ki a matou, mea mai ana, Nana, e ahu ana nga taua a nga Ramana whaka-te-pa o Kumeni; nana, ka kokiritia ratou e ratou, a ka whakangaromia to tatou iwi.

32 Na, whakarongo iho ana o matou herehere i a ratou karanga, a whai maia ake ratou; na, whakatika ana, tutu ana ki a matou.

33 Na, ka pa a matou hoari ki runga ki a ratou, he mea hoki mo ratou i tutu. Nawai a, ka rere topu mai ratou ki runga ki a matou hoari, na konei i whakamatea ai te nuinga o ratou; ko te morehu i puta, a oma atu ana i a matou.

34 Na, i te mea kua rere ratou, a kahore matou i kaha ki te mau i a ratou, ka hohoro ta matou haere whaka-te-pa o Kumeni; a tae wawe ana matou hei kai awahina mo o matou teina ki te tiaki i te pa.

35 A kua whakaorangia ano tatou i roto i nga ringaringa o o tatou hoa riri. Na, kia whakapaingia te ingoa o to tatou Atua; no te mea ko ia tera nana nei tatou i whakaora: ae ra, nana tenei mea nui i mea mo tatou.

Now this was the faith of these of whom I have spoken; they are young, and their minds are firm, and they do put their trust in God continually.

And now it came to pass that after we had thus taken care of our wounded men, and had buried our dead and also the dead of the Lamanites, who were many, behold, we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

Now Gid was the chief captain over the band who was appointed to guard them down to the land.

And now, these are the words which Gid said unto me: Behold, we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners. And it came to pass that we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

And they cried unto us, saying—Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

And it came to pass that our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

And it came to pass because of their rebellion we did cause that our swords should come upon them. And it came to pass that they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

And behold, when they had fled and we could not overtake them, we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni; and behold, we did arrive in time that we might assist our brethren in preserving the city.

And behold, we are again delivered out of the hands of our enemies. And blessed is the name of our God; for behold, it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

36 Na, i toku i to Heramana rongonga i enei kupu a Kire, ki tonu ahau i te hari whakaharahara, he mea mo te pai o te Atua hei tiaki i a matou, kei mate matou katoa; a e tumanako atu ana ahau ki nga wairua o te hunga i whakamatea, kua tomo ki roto ki te okiokinga o to ratou Atua.

Now it came to pass that when I, Helaman, had heard these words of Gid, I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish; yea, and I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 58

- 1 Nana, ko to matou hiahia i muri iho koia tenei kia riro i a matou te pa o Manati; otiia kahore he huarahi e taea ai ratou e a matou ope nonohi te poapoa mai ki waho i te pa. No te mea, na, ka mahara tonu ratou ki ta matou i mea ai i mua; no reira kahore i ahei i a matou te whakapatipati mai i a ratou ki waho i o ratou pa kaha;
- 2 A he tini noa atu ratou i ta matou taua, a kahore o matou maia ki te haere atu ki te tu atu i a ratou i roto i o ratou pa kaha.
- 3 A kua tika kia whakamahia a matou tangata hei tiaki i aua wahi o te whenua, i puritia ai e matou o o matou kainga; na reira i tika ai kia tatari matou kia whiwhi kaha ano matou no te whenua o Harahemera, me etahi atu kai hou ano hoki.
- 4 Nawai a, ka tono tangata ahau ki te kawana o to matou whenua, ki te whakaatu atu ki a ia i te ahua o to matou iwi. A tatari ana matou kia whiwhi kai, kaha, no te whenua o Harahemera.
- 5 Heoi he iti te pai i puta ake ai i tenei; no te mea e whiwhi kaha nui ana nga Ramana, i tenei ra, i tenei ra, a he nui ano hoki te kai; na, e penei ana to matou ahua i taua wa.
- 6 Na, e putaputa mai ana nga Ramana hei tatau mai ki a matou i tenei taima, i tenei taima, e mea ana kia whakangaro i a matou i runga i te tikanga tinihanga; ahakoa ra kihai matou i ahei te haere ki te whawhai ki a ratou, i o ratou wahi i rere ai ratou, me o ratou piringa kaha.
- 7 Nawai a, ka tatari matou i roto i enei tikanga whakauaua, a te pahemotanga o nga marama maha, tae noa ki te wa whano kua mate matou i te kai.
- 8 Heoi ka riro mai i a matou he kai, he mea tiaki haere mai ki a matou e tetahi taua, e rua mano o nga tangata, hei awihina i a matou; a heoi ano te whakawhiwhinga i whakawhiwhia ai matou ko tenei, hei tiaki i a matou ano me o matou whenua kei taka atu ki roto ki nga ringaringa o o matou hoa whawhai; ae ra, hei tautohetohe atu ki etahi hoa riri e kore nei e taea te tatau.

## Alma 58

And behold, now it came to pass that our next object was to obtain the city of Manti; but behold, there was no way that we could lead them out of the city by our small bands. For behold, they remembered that which we had hitherto done; therefore we could not decoy them away from their strongholds.

And they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

Yea, and it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions; therefore it became expedient that we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

And it came to pass that I thus did send an embassy to the governor of our land, to acquaint him concerning the affairs of our people. And it came to pass that we did wait to receive provisions and strength from the land of Zarahemla.

But behold, this did profit us but little; for the Lamanites were also receiving great strength from day to day, and also many provisions; and thus were our circumstances at this period of time.

And the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us; nevertheless we could not come to battle with them, because of their retreats and their strongholds.

And it came to pass that we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

But it came to pass that we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance; and this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies, yea, to contend with an enemy which was innumerable.

- 9 Na, kahore matou i mohio ki te take o enei mate o matou, ara, te take kahore i nui atu te kaha i tuku mai ai ratou ki a matou; koia matou i pouri ai, i ki ai ano i te wehi kei pangia pea o matou whenua e nga whakawakanga a te Atua hei turaki, hei whakangaro rawa i a matou.
- 10 Na konei ra i ringihia atu ai o matou wairua e matou i runga i te inoi ki te Atua, kia whakakahangia matou kia whakaputaina hoki matou i roto i nga ringaringa o o matou hoa riri; ae ra, me te homai ano ki a matou te kaha e pupuri ai matou i o matou pa, i o matou whenua me o matou taputapu hei oranga mo o matou iwi.
- 11 Nawai a; ka torotoro te Ariki, te Atua i a matou i runga i te tino mohio, ka whakaputaina matou e ia, ae ra, no ka korero ia i te rangimarie ki o matou wairua me te tuku mai ano ki a matou i te whakapono nui, me te mea ano hoki i a matou kia tumanako atu ki to matou whakaoranga i roto i a ia.
- 12 Na, ka whai maia matou i runga i te ope nohinohi i riro mai ai i a matou, a pumau ana a matou whakaaro kia whai wikitoria i runga i o matou hoa riri, me te tiaki i o matou whenua, i o matou kainga, i a matou wahine, me a matou tamariki. me te tikanga ano hoki o to matou here-koretanga.
- 13 A penei ka haere atu matou i runga i to matou kaha katoa, hei tatau atu ki nga Ramana, e noho ana i roto i te pa o Manati; a whakatu ana matou i o matou teneti i te taha o te koraha, e tata atu ana ki te pa.
- 14 Na, i te aonga ake ano, i te kitenga o nga Ramana kei nga taha matou o te koraha e tata atu ra ki te pa, ka tonoa mai a ratou tutei tawhio noa, tawhio noa i a matou, hei tutei i te tokomahatanga me te kaha o to matou taua.
- 15 A i to ratou kitenga kahore o matou kaha, ki te ritenga o to matou tokomahatanga, me te wehi ano kei kati atu matou i a ratou i to ratou oranga, ki te kore ratou e haere mai ki te whawhai mai ki a matou, ki te whakamate i a matou; a i mahara ano ratou he mea ngawari noa iho te whakangaro i a matou ki a ratou mano tini, koia ratou i tahuri ai ki te whakariterite mo te haere mai ki te whawhai ki a matou.

And now the cause of these our embarrassments, or the cause why they did not send more strength unto us, we knew not; therefore we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

Therefore we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, yea, and also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

Yea, and it came to pass that the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us; yea, insomuch that he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

And we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

And thus we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side, which was near to the city.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, that when the Lamanites saw that we were in the borders by the wilderness which was near the city, that they sent out their spies round about us that they might discover the number and the strength of our army.

And it came to pass that when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.



16 Ano ka kite matou e whakariterite ana ratou mo te whakatika mai ki a matou, na, ka mea ahau i a Kire, me tetahi ope iti kia huna ki roto ki te koraha, me Teomonere ano hoki ratou ko tetahi ope iti kia huna ratou ki roto ki te koraha.

17 Na, kei matau a Kire ratou ko ona tangata, a ko era atu kei mau; ano ka pera ta ratou huna i a ratou, nana, ka noho ahau me te toenga o taku taua, i taua wahi ano i oroko tu ai o matou teneti, a ka tatari atu ki te wa e haere mai ai nga Ramana ki te whawhai.

18 Nawai a, ka haere mai nga Ramana me ta ratou taua tini ki a matou. Ano ka tae mai ratou, ka tata te kokiri i a matou ki te hoari, ka mea ahau i aku tangata, i te hunga i a au nei, kia hoki atu ki roto ki te koraha.

19 Nawai a, ka tere rawa te whai haeretanga a nga Ramana i muri i a matou, no te mea he nui rawa atu ta ratou hiahia kia mau matou ki te whakamate hoki i a matou; koia i whai ai ratou i a matou ki roto ki te koraha; na, ka haere matou ki waenganui i a Kire ma, i a Teomonere ma, a kahore ratou i kitea e nga Ramana.

20 Ano ka pahemo nga Ramana, ara, te taua, ka whakatika ake a Kire ma me Teomonere ma i roto i o ratou wahi huna, ka haukoti i nga tutei o nga Ramana, kei hoki ratou ki te pa.

21 Ano ka haukoti i a ratou, ka oma ratou ki te pa, a kokiri ana i nga kai tiaki i waiho hei tiaki i te pa, a whakangaromia ana ratou, a noho ana i te pa.

22 Na, i meatia tenei no te mea i tukua e nga Ramana ta ratou taua katoa, haunga ra etahi kai tiaki torutoru, kia poaina atu ki te koraha.

23 A, na konei ra i nohoia ai e Kire raua ko Teomonere o ratou piringa kaha. Nawai a, i muri i ta matou haerenga roatanga i roto i te koraha, ka turia atu e matou whaka-te-whenua o Harahemera.

And when we saw that they were making preparations to come out against us, behold, I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

Now Gid and his men were on the right and the others on the left; and when they had thus secreted themselves, behold, I remained, with the remainder of my army, in that same place where we had first pitched our tents against the time that the Lamanites should come out to battle.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us. And when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did follow after us with great speed, for they were exceedingly desirous to overtake us that they might slay us; therefore they did follow us into the wilderness; and we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, inso-much that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites had passed by, or when the army had passed by, Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

And it came to pass that when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

Now this was done because the Lamanites did suffer their whole army, save a few guards only, to be led away into the wilderness.

And it came to pass that Gid and Teomner by this means had obtained possession of their strongholds. And it came to pass that we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

24 A i te kitenga o nga Ramana i a ratou e haere ana whaka-te-whenua o Harahemera, ka pa te wehi nui ki a ratou, kei whakatakotoria he tikanga hei arahi i a ratou ki te whakangaromanga; no reira ka timata ratou te hoki ano ki roto ki te koraha, ae ra, ma taua ara ra ano i haere mai ai ratou.

25 Na, ka po, a ka whakaturia o ratou teneti, i mahara hoki nga rangatira nui o nga Ramana, e ngenge ana nga Niwhai i ta ratou haere; me te mahara ano kua panaia e ratou ta ratou taua katoa, no reira kahore o ratou manukanuka ki te pa o Manati.

26 Na, ano ka po, ka mea ahau i aku tangata kia kauaka e moe, engari kia haere ratou ra tetahi ara ke atu whaka-te-whenua o Manati.

27 A na tenei haerenga a matou i te po, na, aonga ake ano, kua tae matou ki ko atu i nga Ramana a tae atu matou ki te pa Manati i mua i a ratou.

28 A penei, na tenei tikanga tinihanga i nohoia ai e matou te pa o Manati, kahore hoki i whakaheke toto.

29 A, i te whakatatanga a nga Ramana ki te pa me to ratou kitenga ano kua takatu matou ki te tutaki ki a ratou, ka nui to ratou miharo, ka pangia ano e te wehi nui, no ka rere atu ratou ki te koraha.

30 Na, ka rere atu nga taua a nga Ramana ki waho o tenei wahi katoa. Otira, he maha nga wahine me nga tamariki kua kawea atu e ratou ki waho o te whenua.

31 A ko aua pa i riro atu nei i nga Ramana, na, e nohoia katoatia ana e matou i tenei taima; a e hokihoki ana o matou matua me a matou wahine me a matou tamariki, ki o ratou kainga, ara, ko te hunga katoa haunga ra ratou i riro herehere atu, i mauria atu e nga Ramana.

32 Heoi, he iti rawa a matou taua hei tiaki i enei pa maha, me nga taputapu nunui.

33 Otira, e tumanako atu ana matou ki to tatou Atua, nana nei i homai ki a matou te wikitoria i runga i aua whenua, no ka riro mai ano i a matou aua pa me aua whenua no tatou nei i mua.

And when the Lamanites saw that they were marching towards the land of Zarahemla, they were exceedingly afraid, lest there was a plan laid to lead them on to destruction; therefore they began to retreat into the wilderness again, yea, even back by the same way which they had come.

And behold, it was night and they did pitch their tents, for the chief captains of the Lamanites had supposed that the Nephites were weary because of their march; and supposing that they had driven their whole army therefore they took no thought concerning the city of Manti.

Now it came to pass that when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

And because of this our march in the night-time, behold, on the morrow we were beyond the Lamanites, insomuch that we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

And thus it came to pass, that by this stratagem we did take possession of the city of Manti without the shedding of blood.

And it came to pass that when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

Yea, and it came to pass that the armies of the Lamanites did flee out of all this quarter of the land. But behold, they have carried with them many women and children out of the land.

And those cities which had been taken by the Lamanites, all of them are at this period of time in our possession; and our fathers and our women and our children are returning to their homes, all save it be those who have been taken prisoners and carried off by the Lamanites.

But behold, our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

But behold, we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

34 Na, kahore matou e mohio ki te take kahore nei te kawanatanga e tuku mai ki a matou i tetahi atu kaha; kahore ano hoki aua tangata i haere mai nei ki a matou i mohio ki te take kihai nei matou i whakawhiwhia ki tetahi kaha atu.

35 Nana, kahore matou e mohio kei te kore whiwhi pea koe, a nau i kukume nga ope ki tena wahi o te whenua; na, ki te penei, kahore matou e hiahia kia amuamu.

36 A ki te mea ehara i te pena, nana, e hopohopo ana matou ki te kawanatanga he wehenga pea kua tupu i roto, e kore nei ratou e tono mai i etahi atu tangata hei kai awhina mo matou; ina hoki e mohio ana matou ki a ratou, he tini noa atu i enei kua tonoa mai nei e ratou.

37 Otira, kahore he tikanga: e whakawhirinaki ana matou ki te Atua mana matou e whakaora, he ahakoa te ngoikoretanga o a matou taua, ae ra, mana matou e whakaora i nga ringaringa o o matou hoa riri.

38 Nana, ko te rua tekau ma iwa tenei o nga tau, ko te wahi whakamutunga, a e nohoia ana e matou o matou whenua; a ko nga Ramana kua oma atu ki te whenua o Niwhai.

39 Na, kei a au, kei te pa o Manati, aua tamariki tane o te iwi o Amona, kua korerotia nuitia nei e au: a na te Ariki ano ratou i tautoko i pupuri, kei hinga i te hoari, a kihai tetahi o ratou i patua.

40 Heoi, he maha nga tunga i tu ai ratou; otiia e tu pumau ana ratou i runga i taua mawhetotanga i mawhetotia ai ratou e te Atua; a e uaua ana ano ratou ki te mahara tonu ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua i tenei ra, i tenei ra; ae ra, e whakaaro ana ratou ki te pupuri tonu i ana ture me ana tikanga, me ana whakahaunga i nga wa katoa; e kaha ana hoki to ratou whakapono ki nga poropititanga mo nga mea e puta ana.

41 Heoi, e toku teina aroha, e Moronai, ma te Ariki ma to taua Atua nana nei taua i hoko, i mea he herekore, koe e pupuri tonu ki tona aroaro; a mana ano e aro mai ki tenei iwi, kia waimarie ai koe i runga i te rironga i a koe o nga mea katoa kua riro atu i nga Ramana i a tatou, koia ra to tatou oranga. Na, hei konei mutu ai taku pukapuka. Ko Heramana ahau ko te tama a Arami.

Now we do not know the cause that the government does not grant us more strength; neither do those men who came up unto us know why we have not received greater strength.

Behold, we do not know but what ye are unsuccessful, and ye have drawn away the forces into that quarter of the land; if so, we do not desire to murmur.

And if it is not so, behold, we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

But, behold, it mattereth not—we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

Behold, this is the twenty and ninth year, in the latter end, and we are in the possession of our lands; and the Lamanites have fled to the land of Nephi.

And those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti; and the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

But behold, they have received many wounds; nevertheless they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free; and they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day; yea, they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually; and their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

And now, my beloved brother, Moroni, may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence; yea, and may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support. And now, behold, I close mine epistle. I am Helaman, the son of Alma.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 59

- 1 Na, i te toru tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, i muri i te rironga o te pukapuka a Heramana i a Moronai me tana korerotanga ki a ia, na, ka nui rawa tana hari i hari ai ia i te ora, ae ra hoki, i te waimarie nui i waimarie ai a Heramana, i runga i te rironga mai i a ia o aua whenua i ngaro;
- 2 Ae ra, ka whakaaturia atu ano e ia ki tona iwi katoa, i runga i te whenua katoa e patata ana ki taua kainga i noho ai ia, kia hari ai ano hoki ratou.
- 3 A ka tuku tonu atu ia i tetahi pukapuka ki a Pahorana, e hiahia ana ki a ia kia mea i nga tangata kia whakamine hei whakakaha mo Heramana, ara, mo nga taua a Heramana, kia ngawari ai tana tiakanga i taua wahi o te whenua i puritia ai e ia i runga i te manaaki nui whakamiharo.
- 4 Nawai a, i muri i te tukunga atu o tenei pukapuka ki te whenua o Harahemera e Moronai, ka tahuri ano ia ki te whakatakoto whakaaro e whiwhi ai ia ki te toenga o aua kainga me aua pa i tangohia e nga Ramana.
- 5 A i Moronai e whakariterite pera ana mo te whakatika atu ki te whawhai ki nga Ramana, nana, ka whakaekea e nga Ramana te iwi i Nepiha, kua huihui mai nei i te pa o Moronai, i te pa o Rihai, me te pa o Moriatono.
- 6 Ae ra, ko te hunga i meinga kia rere atu i te whenua o Manati, me nga whenua e patata ana, kua haere mai, kua uru ki nga Ramana i tenei wahi o te whenua:
- 7 A he iwi tini noa atu ratou, a e whiwhi kaha ana ano hoki ratou i tenei ra, i tenei ra, he mea na te whakahauhau a Amoronoi i haere mai ai ratou hei tatau mai ki te iwi i Nepiha, na, anga ana ratou, patupatu ana i a ratou, a he nui rawa te whakamatenga.
- 8 Na, he nui no a ratou taua i meinga ai te morehu o te iwi i Nepiha kia oma atu i mua i a ratou; a haere mai ana ratou, uru mai ana ki te taua a Moronai.

## Alma 59

Now it came to pass in the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, after Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare, yea, the exceeding success which Helaman had had, in obtaining those lands which were lost.

Yea, and he did make it known unto all his people, in all the land round about in that part where he was, that they might rejoice also.

And it came to pass that he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran, desiring that he should cause men to be gathered together to strengthen Helaman, or the armies of Helaman, insomuch that he might with ease maintain that part of the land which he had been so miraculously prospered in regaining.

And it came to pass when Moroni had sent this epistle to the land of Zarahemla, he began again to lay a plan that he might obtain the remainder of those possessions and cities which the Lamanites had taken from them.

And it came to pass that while Moroni was thus making preparations to go against the Lamanites to battle, behold, the people of Nephihah, who were gathered together from the city of Moroni and the city of Lehi and the city of Morianton, were attacked by the Lamanites.

Yea, even those who had been compelled to flee from the land of Manti, and from the land round about, had come over and joined the Lamanites in this part of the land.

And thus being exceedingly numerous, yea, and receiving strength from day to day, by the command of Ammoron they came forth against the people of Nephihah, and they did begin to slay them with an exceedingly great slaughter.

And their armies were so numerous that the remainder of the people of Nephihah were obliged to flee before them; and they came even and joined the army of Moroni.

- 9 Na, kua mahara a Moronai e tika ana kia tonoa he tangata ki te pa o Nepiha, hei awhina mo te iwi ki te tiaki i taua pa, a i mohio ano ia he mea ngawari rawa te pupuri i te pa kei taka atu ki roto ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana, i te rironga tuaruatanga i a ratou i te mea kua taka atu, koia i whakaaro ai ia he mahi ngawari ma ratou te tiaki i taua pa;
- 10 No konei ra i puritia ai e ia ana ope katoa hei tiaki mo aua kainga kua riro mai nei i a ia.
- 11 A i te kitenga o Moronai kua riro atu te pa o Nepiha, ka pa te hinapouri ki a ia, a ka timata tona ngakau te ruarua, i te kino hoki o te iwi, ka taka ranei ratou ki roto ki nga ringaringa o o ratou teina.
- 12 Na: i pera ano ana rangatira nunui katoa, i ruarua ratou, i ohore ano hoki, i te kino o te iwi; na, he mea tenei na te waimarietanga o nga Ramana i runga i a ratou.
- 13 A ka riri a Moronai ki te kawanatanga, mo te whakaaro-kore ki te here-koretanga o to ratou whenua.

And now as Moroni had supposed that there should be men sent to the city of Nephiah, to the assistance of the people to maintain that city, and knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

Therefore he retained all his force to maintain those places which he had recovered.

And now, when Moroni saw that the city of Nephiah was lost he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

Now this was the case with all his chief captains. They doubted and marveled also because of the wickedness of the people, and this because of the success of the Lamanites over them.

And it came to pass that Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 6o

- 1 Nawai a, ka tuhituhi atu ano ia ki te kawana o te whenua, ki a Pahorana, a ko nga kupu enei i tuhituhi ai ia, i mea ai, Nana, ka tuhituhi atu ahau i taku tuhituhinga ki a Pahorana, kei te pa o Harahemera, koia nei te Kai-whakariterite Nui, me te Kawana i runga i te whenua, ki te hunga katoa ano hoki i whiriwhiria ai e tenei iwi hei kawana, hei kai whakahaere mo nga tikanga o tenei whawhai;
- 2 No te mea kei a au tetahi korero whakahe hei korerotanga maku ki a ratou; no te mea e mohio ana koutou ko koutou ake, kua whakaturia hei whakahuihui tangata hei whakawhiwhi ano i a ratou ki te hoari, ki te hoari poto, ki nga tu patu whawhai katoa ano hoki o ia ahua, o ia ahua, me te tono ano i a ratou hei tatau atu ki nga Ramana, ki nga kainga katoa e puta mai ai ratou ki roto ki to tatou whenua.
- 3 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kua mate ahau me aku tangata hoki, me Heramana ano ratou me ona tangata i nga mate nunui; ae ra, i te kai, i te inu, i te nenge me nga tukinotanga katoatanga o ia tu, o ia tu.
- 4 Heoi me he mea ko enei anake nga mea i mamae ai matou, penei kua kore a matou amuamu, a matou whakahe ranei;
- 5 Ko tenei, kua nui te parekura i roto i to matou iwi; ae ra, kua hinga nga mano noa iho i te hoari, e kore e tika kia penei me i tukua mai e koutou ki a matou tana he kaha me te awhina i a ratou. Ae ra, i nui to koutou whakaaro-kore ki a matou.
- 6 Na, e hiahia ana matou kia mohio ki te putake o tenei whakaaro-kore i nui ai; ae ra, e hiahia ana matou kia mohio ki te take o to koutou whakaaro-kore.
- 7 E ahei ana ianei i a koutou tenei whakaaro, ara, te noho i o koutou torona i runga i tetahi tikanga whakaaro-kore, i o koutou hoa riri e whakahorapa haere ana i te mahi whakamate taka noa, taka noa i a koutou? Ae ra, i a ratou e kohuru ana i nga mano noa iho o o koutou teina;

## Alma 6o

And it came to pass that he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran, and these are the words which he wrote, saying: Behold, I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

For behold, I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation; for behold, ye yourselves know that ye have been appointed to gather together men, and arm them with swords, and with cimeters, and all manner of weapons of war of every kind, and send forth against the Lamanites, in whatsoever parts they should come into our land.

And now behold, I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

But behold, were this all we had suffered we would not murmur nor complain.

But behold, great has been the slaughter among our people; yea, thousands have fallen by the sword, while it might have otherwise been if ye had rendered unto our armies sufficient strength and succor for them. Yea, great has been your neglect towards us.

And now behold, we desire to know the cause of this exceedingly great neglect; yea, we desire to know the cause of your thoughtless state.

Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you? Yea, while they are murdering thousands of your brethren—

- 8 Ae ra, te hunga kua okioki ki runga ki a koutou kia tiakina; ae ra, nana koutou i whakanoho ki tetahi nohoanga e ahei ai koutou te awhina i a ratou; ae ra, e ahei ai koutou te tono taua ki a ratou, hei whakakaha mo ratou, a ka whakaora i nga mano o ratou kei hinga i te hoari.
- 9 Nana, kahore e mutu i tenei, i kaiponuhia e koutou a koutou kai i a ratou, a he tokomaha o ratou i whawhai, i heke te toto, a pau ake o ratou manawaora, he nui hoki no to ratou hiahia ki te pai mo tenei iwi; ae ra, i peratia e ratou i a ratou e whano mate ana i te kai, he mea na te nui o to koutou whakaarokore ki a ratou.
- 10 Tena ra, e aku teina e arohaina atu nei, no te mea e tika ana kia arohaina koutou; ae ra, e tika ana kia nui atu to koutou takaretanga hei whakaaro ki te pai ki te herekoretanga mo tenei iwi; ko tenei, kua whakaaro-kore koutou ki a ratou, a ka tau te toto o nga mano ki runga ki o koutou mahunga kia utua: ina hoki e matauria ana e te Atua a ratou aue katoa, me o ratou whakamamaetanga katoa.
- 11 Na, i ahei ianei i a koutou te mahara ki a koutou ka tukua kia noho ki runga i o koutou torona, a mo te pai whakaharahara o te Atua ka whakaputa ia i a koutou i runga i te noho noa iho? Nana, mehemea i penei a koutou whakaaro, kua whakaaro noa koutou:—
- 12 Ko ta koutou whakaaro ianei tena, i te mea he tokomaha o koutou teina kua whakamatea, na o ratou hara te take? Ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, me i pena ta koutou whakaaro, e he ana. No te mea ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou he tokomaha kua hinga i te hoari; nana hei whakaheanga tena mo koutou:
- 13 No te mea e tukua ana e te Ariki te hunga tika kia whakamatea, kia puta ai tana tika me tana whawakanga ki te hunga kino; no reira kei mahara koutou kua ngaro te hunga tika mo ratou i patua; engari e tomo ana ratou ki roto ki te okiokinga o te Ariki o to ratou Atua.
- 14 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, he wehi nui taku kei pa te whakawakanga a te Atua ki tenei iwi, mo to ratou tino mangeretanga; ae ra, mo te mangeretanga o to tatou kawanatanga me te nui o to ratou whakaaro-kore i whakaaro-kore ai ratou ki o ratou teina, ki te hunga kua patua nei:

Yea, even they who have looked up to you for protection, yea, have placed you in a situation that ye might have succored them, yea, ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them, and have saved thousands of them from falling by the sword.

But behold, this is not all—ye have withheld your provisions from them, insomuch that many have fought and bled out their lives because of their great desires which they had for the welfare of this people; yea, and this they have done when they were about to perish with hunger, because of your exceedingly great neglect towards them.

And now, my beloved brethren—for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people; but behold, ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their sufferings—

Behold, could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you? Behold, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain.

Do ye suppose that, because so many of your brethren have been killed it is because of their wickedness? I say unto you, if ye have supposed this ye have supposed in vain; for I say unto you, there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked; therefore ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain; but behold, they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

And now behold, I say unto you, I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness, yea, even the slothfulness of our government, and their exceedingly great neglect towards their brethren, yea, towards those who have been slain.

- 15 Me i kore hoki te kino i matua timata ai i to tatou upoko penei kua ahei i a tatou te tu maia atu ki o tatou hoa riri, a kua kore o ratou kaha ki runga ki a tatou;
- 16 Na, me i kore te whawhai i tupu i roto i a tatou; ae ra, me i kore aua tangata-kingi, nana i mea nga whakaheke-toto nui i roto i a tatou ano; ae ra, i taua wa i ngangare ai tatou i roto i a tatou ano, me i whakakotahi tatou i o tatou kaha me i pera me ta tatou i mea ai i mua; ae ra, me i kore nga hiahia ki te whakatupu mana, kaha, i hiahia ai aua tangata-kingi ki runga ki a tatou; me i u tonu ratou ki te tikanga o to tatou here-koretanga, a ka huihui tahi mai me tatou, a ka riro atu hei tatau atu ki o tatou hoa riri, i te huri mai i te hapai patu ki a tatou, na reira, te whakaheke toto i nui ai i roto i a tatou ano; ae ra, me i whakatika atu tatou tahi ki a ratou i runga i te kaha o te Ariki, na, penei kua whakamararatia o tatou hoa riri e tatou: kua meatia tenei hei whakaritenga mo tana kupu.
- 17 Tena ko tenei, e huaki mai ana nga Ramana ki a tatou, a e kohuru ana ratou i to tatou iwi ki te hoari: ae ra, i a tatou wahine me a tatou tamariki: e noho ana ki o tatou whenua, a e riro herehere ana i a ratou: e mea ana i a ratou kia tukua ki nga tu whakamamaetanga katoa; a ko tenei mo te kino nui o te hunga e whai ana kia whakatupu mana, kaha; ae ra, o aua tangata-kingi.
- 18 He aha maku kia korero mo te taha ki tenei mea, ko wai matou ka mohio kaore koutou i te whakatupu rangatira i a koutou? Ko wai hoki matou ka mohio akuanei pea ko koutou ano he hunga tuku whenua?
- 19 Ara, kua wareware ianei koutou ki a matou, no te mea kei waenganui koutou o to tatou whenua; a, e karapotitia ana e te oranga; kaore hoki koutou i te tuku kai mai ma matou, tangata ranei hei whakakaha i a matou taua?
- 20 Na, kua wareware ianei i a koutou nga whakahaunga a te Ariki a to koutou Atua? Kua wareware oti i a koutou te rironga herehere o o tatou tupuna? Kua wareware ianei i a koutou o tatou whakaputanga maha i roto i nga ringaringa o o tatou hoa riri?

For were it not for the wickedness which first commenced at our head, we could have withstood our enemies that they could have gained no power over us.

Yea, had it not been for the war which broke out among ourselves; yea, were it not for these king-men, who caused so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done; yea, had it not been for the desire of power and authority which those king-men had over us; had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us, and gone forth against our enemies, instead of taking up their swords against us, which was the cause of so much bloodshed among ourselves; yea, if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies, for it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

But behold, now the Lamanites are coming upon us, taking possession of our lands, and they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority, yea, even those king-men.

But why should I say much concerning this matter? For we know not but what ye yourselves are seeking for authority. We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

Or is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God? Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers? Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?



21 Ki ta koutou whakaaro ranei ka whakaputa tonu te Ariki i a tatou i a tatou e noho ana i runga i o tatou torona, a e kore nei e whakamahi i ta te Ariki i homai ai ki a tatou?

22 Na, ka noho mangare tonu ianei koutou i a koutou e karapotitia ana e nga mano noa iho o te hunga, ae ra, e nga tekau mano, e noho mangere nei hoki, te mea he mano noa iho tawhio noa, tawhio noa i nga rohe o te whenua e hingahinga ana i te hoari, ae ra, e tu ana, e toto ana?

23 Ki ta koutou whakaaro, ka tirohia he-koretia koutou e te Atua i a koutou e ata noho ana, e titiro noa iho ana ki enei mea? Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kahore. Na, e mea ana ahau kia mahara koutou kua ki mai te Atua kia matua horoia to roto oko, katahi ka horoia to waho oko ano hoki.

24 Na, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta ki ta koutou i mea ai, e tahuri ano e hihiko ki te mahi me te tuku kai me nga tangata ki a matou ki a Heramana ano hoki, kia tautoko ai ia i aua wahi o to tatou whenua i puritia e ia, kia riro ai ano hoki i a matou nga toenga o o tatou kainga i enei wahi, nana, ka tika kauaka matou e tautohetohe ano ki nga Ramana kia matua horoia e matou to roto oko; ara, te upoko nui o to tatou kawanatanga.

25 A ki te kore e whakaaetia e koutou taku pukapuka, e whakakitea mai hoki ki a au to wairua pono o te here-koretanga, me te totohe ano ki te whakatupu, ki te whakakaha i a matou taua, me te tuku kai hei oranga mo ratou, na, ka waiho e ahau tetahi wahi o aku tangata here-kore hei tiaki i tenei wahi o to tatou whenua, a ka waiho ano e ahau te kaha me nga manaakitanga a te Atua ki runga ki a ratou, kei taea e tetahi atu kaha te aha ki a ratou;

26 A ko tenei mo to ratou whakapono nui me to ratou manawanui i runga i o ratou tukinotanga;

27 A ka haere atu ahau ki a koutou, a ki te mea he tangata i roto i a koutou he hiahia tona ki te herekoretanga, ae ra, ki te mea he korakora kau no te here-koretanga e toe ana, na, ka whakatupu ngangau ahau i roto i a koutou, a te korenga ra ano o te hunga e hiahia na ki te whakatupu mana, kaha.

Or do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

Yea, will ye sit in idleness while ye are surrounded with thousands of those, yea, and tens of thousands, who do also sit in idleness, while there are thousands round about in the borders of the land who are falling by the sword, yea, wounded and bleeding?

Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things? Behold I say unto you, Nay. Now I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

And now, except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel, yea, even the great head of our government.

And except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them—

And this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations—

And I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

- 28 Na, kahore ahau e wehi i to koutou waha, i to koutou mana ranei, engari ko toku Atua taku e wehi nei, a he mea hoki e rite tonu ana ki ana whakahaunga e mau nei ahau ki taku hoari hei tiaki i te tikanga o toku kainga, a he mea ano na o koutou tutu i aitua nui ai matou.
- 29 Na, ko te wa tenei, a tenei ano inaianei, ki te kore e hohoro ta koutou tiaki i to koutou whenua me a koutou tamariki nonohi, kei te iri te hoari a te tika i runga ake i a koutou; a ka taka ano hoki ki runga ki a koutou, ka tiro tiro i a koutou tae noa ki to koutou whakangaromanga rawatanga atu.
- 30 Na, e tatari atu ana ahau kia awhinatia e koutou, a ki te kore hoki koutou e homai mea hei awhina i a matou, na, ka whakatika atu ahau ki a koutou, ki te whenua o Harahemera, a ka haua iho koutou ki te hoari, a ka kore ake to koutou kaha hei whakaware i te tupu o tenei iwi i runga i te tikanga o to tatou herekoretanga;
- 31 No te mea, na, e kore te Ariki e tuku kia ora koutou me te tupu kia kaha i runga i o koutou kino hei whakangaro i tana iwi tika.
- 32 Na, e ahei ana oti i a koutou te ki, ka tohu te Ariki i a koutou me te puta mai ano i runga i te whakawa ki nga Ramana, i te mea na nga whakarereanga iho a o ratou tupuna i mau ai to ratou mauahara; a i takiruatia hoki tena e te hunga i puta atu i roto i a tatou; i a koutou e kino na he mea na to koutou aroha ki te kororia, me nga mea tekateka noa o te ao nei?
- 33 Kei te mohio koutou e takahi ana koutou i nga ture a te Atua, a e mohio ana ano koutou e takatakahi ana i ana ture i raro i o koutou waewae. Nana, e ki mai ana te Ariki ki a au, ki te kore te hunga i whakaturia ai e koutou hei kawana e ripeneta ki o ratou kino, me o ratou hara, na, me haere atu koutou ki te whawhai ki a ratou.
- 34 Nana, e akiakina ana ahau, a Moronai, ki te ritenga o te kawenata i kawenata ai ahau kia pupuri i nga ture a toku Atua; no reira e mea ana ahau kia whakarongo koutou ki te kupu a te Atua, kia hohoro hoki te tuku mai ki a au i a koutou kai me a koutou tangata, ki a Heramana ano hoki.

Yea, behold I do not fear your power nor your authority, but it is my God whom I fear; and it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country, and it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

Behold it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you; yea, and it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

Behold, I wait for assistance from you; and, except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword, insomuch that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

For behold, the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

Behold, can you suppose that the Lord will spare you and come out in judgment against the Lamanites, when it is the tradition of their fathers that has caused their hatred, yea, and it has been redoubled by those who have dissented from us, while your iniquity is for the cause of your love of glory and the vain things of the world?

Ye know that ye do transgress the laws of God, and ye do know that ye do trample them under your feet. Behold, the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities, ye shall go up to battle against them.

And now behold, I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God; therefore I would that ye should adhere to the word of God, and send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

35 A ki te kore koutou e pai ki tenei, na, ka hohoro taku haere atu ki a koutou; no te mea e kore te Atua e tuku kia mate matou i te kai; no reira ka homai e ia a koutou kai ma matou, ahakoa ka meatia i runga i te hoari. Na, me titiro koutou ki tenei kia whakariterite i te kupu a te Atua.

36 Heoi, ko Moronai ahau, ko to koutou rangatira whawhai nui. Kahore au e tohe ki te whakatupu rangatira, engari ki te taki iho i taua mea ki raro. Kahore au e whai i te whakahonore o te ao nei, engari i te kororia o toku Atua me te here-kore, me te pai mo taku whenua. A penei ka mutu i a au taku pukapuka.

And behold, if ye will not do this I come unto you speedily; for behold, God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger; therefore he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword. Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

Behold, I am Moroni, your chief captain. I seek not for power, but to pull it down. I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God, and the freedom and welfare of my country. And thus I close mine epistle.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 61

- 1 Na, i muri tata iho i ta Moronai tukunga atu i tana pukapuka ki te kawana nui, ka tae mai ki a ia he pukapuka na Pahorana, na te kawana nui. A ko nga kupu enei i tae mai ai ki a ia:—
- 2 Ko ahau ko Pahorana, te kawana nui i runga i tenei whenua, ka tuku atu nei i tenei kupu ki a Moronai ki te rangatira nui i runga i te taua, nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koe, e Moronai, kahore oku hari ki o koutou whakamamaetanga nui: ara, e pouri ana toku wairua i tena.
- 3 Otira tenei ano he hunga e hari ana ki o koutou whakamamaetanga; a kua whakatika mai ratou i runga i te tutu ki a au, me te hunga ano o toku iwi o te here-koretanga, na, ko te hunga kua whakatika mai nei he tini ratou:
- 4 Na, ko te hunga tenei i whai ai kia tangohia atu i a au te nohoanga whakawa, nana tenei kino nui, no te mea ko ta ratou he whakapatipati nui, a na ratou ano i whakakotiti ke te ngakau o nga tangata maha o tenei iwi, i puta ai te tukinotanga nui i waenganui i a tatou: na ratou i kaiponu o matou kai i whakawehi a matou tangata-here-kore te haere atu ai ratou ki a koe.
- 5 A na ratou ahau i pana i mua i a ratou, na, kua oma mai ahau ki te whenua o Kireono, me nga tangata katoa i ahei ai au te mau.
- 6 A kua tuku kupu atu ahau puta noa i tenei wahi o te whenua; na, e huihui mai ana ratou ki a matou i tenei ra, i tenei ra, ki a ratou patu whawhai, hei tiaki i o ratou whenua me to ratou here-koretanga, hei ngaki mate hoki mo o matou he.
- 7 Tenei kua huihui mai ratou ki a matou no ka whakwehi i te hunga i tutu ai ki a matou, ae ra, no ka wehi ratou i a matou, a kahore ratou i maia ki te whakatika mai ki te whawhai ki a matou.

## Alma 61

Behold, now it came to pass that soon after Moroni had sent his epistle unto the chief governor, he received an epistle from Pahoran, the chief governor. And these are the words which he received:

I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send these words unto Moroni, the chief captain over the army. Behold, I say unto you, Moroni, that I do not joy in your great afflictions, yea, it grieves my soul.

But behold, there are those who do joy in your afflictions, yea, insomuch that they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of my people who are freemen, yea, and those who have risen up are exceedingly numerous.

And it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they have used great flattery, and they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be the cause of sore affliction among us; they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our freemen that they have not come unto you.

And behold, they have driven me out before them, and I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were possible that I could get.

And behold, I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land; and behold, they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

And they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance, yea, insomuch that they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

8 Kua nohoia e ratou te whenua, ara, te pa o Harahemera: kua whakaturia e ratou he kingi ki runga ki a ratou, a nana i tuhituhi atu ki te Kingi o nga Ramana, kia whakauru atu ki a ia; hei whakaaetanga atu ki te pupuri i te pa o Harahemera, ki tana whakaaro ma tenei e ahei ai i nga Ramana te whai wikitoria i runga i te toenga o te whenua, na, ko ia ka whakaturia hei kingi mo runga i tenei iwi, ina pehia ratou ki raro i nga Ramana.

9 Na, i roto i to pukapuka e whakahengia ana ahau e koe, otira kahore he tikanga, kahore tahi oku riri, engari e koa ana ahau ki to ngakau nui. Kahore oku, o Pahorana, tohe ki te whakatupu mana ko te mana anake e pupuri ai ahau i taku nohoanga whakawa, kia ahei ai i a au te tiaki i nga tikanga me te herekoretanga o toku iwi. E tu pumau ana toku wairua i runga i taua here-koretanga, i here-koretia ai tatou e te Atua.

10 Na, ka pehi tenei tatou i te kino, a te whakahekenga rawatanga o te toto. Penei kua kore tatou e whakaheke i te toto o nga Ramana me he mea i pai ratou ki te noho atu ki o ratou ake whenua.

11 Kua kore tatou e whakaheke i te toto o o tatou tuakana, me he mea kahore ratou e tutu, e hapai hoari ki a tatou.

12 Kua pai tatou ki te whakaiti i a tatou ki te ioka o te ponongatanga, me he mea e tika ana kia pera i runga, i ta te Atua tika, ki te whakahauhau ranei ia i a tatou kia pera.

13 Ko tenei, kahore ana whakahau mai ki a tatou kia whakaiti tatou i a tatou ano ki o tatou hoa riri, engari kia whakawhirinaki atu tatou ki a ia, a mana tatou e whakaputa;

14 Na, e toku teina aroha, e Moronai, kia pehi taua i te kino, a ko nga kino e kore e taea e taua te pehi ki a taua kupu, ara nga tututanga, me nga mawehenga, kia pehia e taua ki a taua hoari, kia tiaki ai taua i to taua here-koretanga, kia koa ai ano hoki taua i runga i te tikanga nui o to taua hahi, i te tikanga ano o to taua Kai-hoko, o to taua Atua.

They have got possession of the land, or the city, of Zarahemla; they have appointed a king over them, and he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites, in the which he hath joined an alliance with him; in the which alliance he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land, and he shall be placed king over this people when they shall be conquered under the Lamanites.

And now, in your epistle you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart. I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people. My soul standeth fast in that liberty in the which God hath made us free.

And now, behold, we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed. We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

But behold he doth not command us that we shall subject ourselves to our enemies, but that we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

Therefore, my beloved brother, Moroni, let us resist evil, and whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords, that we may retain our freedom, that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

- 15 Mo konei ra, kia hohoro te haere mai ki a au, me etahi torutoru nei o au tangata, a ko te toenga me waiho atu ki raro i te whakahau a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu; hoatu ano ki a raua te kaha hei whakahaere i te whawhai i runga i tena wahi o te whenua, ki te ritenga o te Wairua o te Atua, koia nei te wairua o te here-koretanga i roto na i a raua.
- 16 Na, kua tukua atu e ahau etahi kai iti ki a ratou kei mate ratou kia tae mai ra ano koe ki a au.
- 17 Huia nga tangata e taea ana e koe i a koe e haere mai ana, a ka hohoro ta tatou haere atu ki aua tangata tutu i runga i te kaha o te Atua, ki te ritenga hoki o te whakapono i roto nei i a tatou.
- 18 A ka riro i a tatou te pa o Harahemera kia whiwhi ai tatou ki etahi atu kai hei tukunga atu ki a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu; ae ra, ka haere atu tatou hei tatau atu ki a ratou i runga i te kaha o te Ariki, a ka whakamutu tatou i tenei kino nui.
- 19 Na, e Moronai, e hari ana toku ngakau i runga i te rironga mai o tau pukapuka, no te mea i raru toku whakaaro ki ta matou e mea ai, e tika ana ranei ma matou te whakatika atu ki o tatou teina.
- 20 Ko tenei i ki mai koe kua oti i te Ariki te whakahau mai ki a koe kia whakatika atu ki a ratou, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta.
- 21 Na, kei wareware koe ki te whakau i a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu i roto i te Ariki: ki atu ki a raua kia kauaka e wehi, no te mea ka whakaputa te Atua i a raua; i te hunga katoa ano hoki e tu pumau ana i roto i taua here-koretanga i whakahere-koretia ai ratou e te Atua. Heoi hei konei mutu ai taku pukapuka ki toku teina aroha, ki a Moronai.

Therefore, come unto me speedily with a few of your men, and leave the remainder in the charge of Lehi and Teancum; give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God, which is also the spirit of freedom which is in them.

Behold I have sent a few provisions unto them, that they may not perish until ye can come unto me.

Gather together whatsoever force ye can upon your march hither, and we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

And we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla, that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum; yea, we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord, and we will put an end to this great iniquity.

And now, Moroni, I do joy in receiving your epistle, for I was somewhat worried concerning what we should do, whether it should be just in us to go against our brethren.

But ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

See that ye strengthen Lehi and Teancum in the Lord; tell them to fear not, for God will deliver them, yea, and also all those who stand fast in that liberty wherewith God hath made them free. And now I close mine epistle to my beloved brother, Moroni.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 62

- 1 Nawai a, i te rironga i a Moronai o tenei pukapuka, ka maia tona ngakau, a ki tonu i te hari nui whakaharahara, mo te u o Pahorana, a ehara ia i te kai tuku i te here-koretanga me te tikanga o tona whenua.
- 2 Otira he rahi ano hoki tona tangi, i te tutu o te hunga i pei atu ra i a Pahorana i runga i te nohoanga whakawa; ae ra, i te tutu hoki o te iwi ki nga tikanga o to ratou kainga o to ratou Atua.
- 3 Nawai a, ka mau a Moronai ki tetahi ope iti, ka pera me ta Pahorana i hiahia ai, a hoatu ana ki a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu te tikanga mo runga i te toenga o tana taua, a haere atu ana whaka-te-whenua o Kireono.
- 4 A whakaarahia ana e ia te kara o te here-koretanga i nga kainga katoa i tomo ai ia, mauria ana nga tangata katoa i ahei ai ia i runga i ana haere katoa i haere ai ia whaka-te-whenua o Kireono.
- 5 Nawai a, ka huihui nga mano ki tana kara, a hapai hoari ana hei tiaki i to ratou here-koretanga, kei riro hoki ratou ki roto ki te ponongatanga;
- 6 A penei kua kohikohia e Moronai nga tangata katoa i ahei ai ia i runga i tana haere, ka tae atu ia ki te whenua o Kireono; ka honoa atu ana ope ki ta Pahorana, a riro ana hei tino kaha, ae ra, he kaha i nga tangata a Pakuha, koia nei te kingi o aua tangata tutu i pana ra i nga tangata here-kore ki waho o te whenua o Harahemera, a i noho hoki i te whenua.
- 7 Nawai a, ka haere a Moronai raua ko Pahorana ki raro me a raua taua ki te whenua o Harahemera, a haere atu ana ki te tatau atu ki te pa, tutataki atu ana ki nga tangata a Pakuha, a whawhai ana ratou.
- 8 Na, ka whakamatea a Pakuha, a ka riro herehere ona tangata, na, ka whakahokia a Pahorana ki runga ki tona nohoanga whakawa.

## Alma 62

And now it came to pass that when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy because of the faithfulness of Pahoran, that he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

But he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat, yea, in fine because of those who had rebelled against their country and also their God.

And it came to pass that Moroni took a small number of men, according to the desire of Pahoran, and gave Lehi and Teancum command over the remainder of his army, and took his march towards the land of Gideon.

And he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could in all his march towards the land of Gideon.

And it came to pass that thousands did flock unto his standard, and did take up their swords in the defence of their freedom, that they might not come into bondage.

And thus, when Moroni had gathered together whatsoever men he could in all his march, he came to the land of Gideon; and uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong, even stronger than the men of Pachus, who was the king of those dissenters who had driven the freemen out of the land of Zarahemla and had taken possession of the land.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran went down with their armies into the land of Zarahemla, and went forth against the city, and did meet the men of Pachus, insomuch that they did come to battle.

And behold, Pachus was slain and his men were taken prisoners, and Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

- 9 Na, ka tu he whakawa mo nga tangata a Pakuha ki te ritenga o te ture, mo aua tangata-kingi ano hoki i hopukia, i maka ki te whare herehere; na, ka whakamatea ratou ki te ritenga o te ture; ae ra, ko aua tangata a Pakuha me aua tangata-kingi, ara, nga tangata katoa kihai nei i pai ki te hapai patu hei tiaki i to ratou whenua engari ki te whawhai ki to ratou whenua, i whakamatea;
- 10 A penei ka takoto te tikanga kia tino whakaritea tenei ture hei oranga mo to ratou whenua; ae ra, ka whakamatea tonutia i runga i te ture te hunga katoa i kitea, e whakakahore ana ki to ratou here-koretanga.
- 11 A i pera te mutunga o te toru tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai; i whakahokia e Moronai raua ko Pahorana te ata noho i runga i te whenua o Harahemera, ki roto ki o raua iwi ake, i whakamatea te hunga katoa kahore nei i u ki te tikanga here-kore.
- 12 Nawai a, i te timatanga o te toru tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka mea a Moronai kia tukua atu he kai, me tetahi taua ano hoki e ono mano nga tangata, ki a Heramana hei kai awhina mona ki te tiaki i taua wahi o te whenua;
- 13 A ka mea ano hoki ia kia tonoa he taua kia ono mano nga tangata, me etahi kai e rite ana, ki nga taua a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu. Na, i meatia tenei hei hanga pa whawhai i te whenua kei riro atu i nga Ramana.
- 14 Nawai a, ka waiho e Moronai raua ko Pahorana tetahi ope nui i te whenua o Harahemera, a haere atu ana me tetahi ope nui ki te whenua o Nepiha, u tonu hoki o raua whakaaro kia turakina nga Ramana i taua pa.
- 15 Na, i a ratou e haere ana ki tera whenua, ka hopukia e ratou tetahi ope nui o nga Ramana, he tokomaha o ratou i whakamatea, a tangohia ana a ratou kai me a ratou patu whawhai.
- 16 Nawai a, i muri i te hopukanga i a ratou, ka mea ratou i a ratou kia uru ki tetahi kawenata, kia kaua rawa e hapai patu ano ki nga Niwhai i nga ra e takoto ake nei.
- 17 Ano ka uru ratou ki tenei kawenata, ka tonoa kia noho i te iwi o Amona, na, to ratou tokomahatanga e tata ana ki te wha mano, kihai nei i whakamatea.

And the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law; yea, those men of Pachus and those king-men, whosoever would not take up arms in the defence of their country, but would fight against it, were put to death.

And thus it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country; yea, and whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

And thus ended the thirtieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; Moroni and Pahoran having restored peace to the land of Zarahemla, among their own people, having inflicted death upon all those who were not true to the cause of freedom.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

And he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum. And it came to pass that this was done to fortify the land against the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Pahoran, leaving a large body of men in the land of Zarahemla, took their march with a large body of men towards the land of Nephiah, being determined to overthrow the Lamanites in that city.

And it came to pass that as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

And it came to pass after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

And when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon, and they were in number about four thousand who had not been slain.



18 Ano ka tonoa atu ratou ka haere ratou ki te ritenga atu ki te whenua o Nepiha. Ano ka tae atu ratou ki te pa o Nepiha, ka whakaturia e ratou o ratou teneti i nga mania o Nepiha, e tata atu ana ki te pa o Nepiha.

19 Na, ka hiahia a Moronai kia haere mai nga Ramana ki waho ki nga mania ki te whawhai ki a ratou: otia i mohio nga Ramana ki to ratou tino toa, a i te kitenga ano i to ratou tokomahatanga he rahi rawa, na, ka wehi ratou ki te whakatika atu ki a ratou, no reira kihai ratou i haere atu ki te whawhai i taua ra.

20 Po iho ka haere atu a Moronai ka tae ki runga o te taiepa, ki te titiro atu ko tehea wahi o te pa e nohoia ana e nga Ramana me ta ratou taua.

21 Na, i te rawhiti ratou, i te taha o te tomokanga: a e moe ana ratou katoa. Na, hoki ana a Moronai ki tana taua, mea ana kia hohoro ta ratou whakarite i nga aho kaha me nga arawhata, kia tukua iho i runga o te taiepa ki roto o te taiepa.

22 Nawai a, ka meatia e Moronai ana tangata kia haere, a, kia piki ki runga o te taiepa, me te heke iho ano ki roto ki tana wahi o te pa i te pito hauauru, kahore nei i nohoia e nga Ramana me a ratou taua.

23 Nawai a, tukutukua katoatia ana ratou iho ki roto ki te pa i te po, he mea na a ratou aho kaha me a ratou arawhata; a penei i te takiritanga o te ata kei roto katoa ratou kei nga taiepa o te pa.

24 Na, i te aranga o nga Ramana, ka kite ratou i nga taua a Moronai kei roto kei nga taiepa, ka nui rawa to ratou wehi, no ka rere atu ratou ra te putanga atu.

25 Ano ka kite a Moronai i a ratou e rere ana i mua i a ia, ka mea ia i ana tangata kia haere atu ki a ratou, a he tokomaha i patupatua, he tokomaha atu ano i karapotitia, i riro herehere; a i oma atu te morehu ki te whenua o Moronai, ki nga rohe, i te taha takutai.

26 A penei, i riro i a Moronai raua ko Pahorana te pa o Nepiha, a kihai i ngaro tetahi wairua; a he tokomaha nga Ramana i patua.

And it came to pass that when they had sent them away they pursued their march towards the land of Nephiah. And it came to pass that when they had come to the city of Nephiah, they did pitch their tents in the plains of Nephiah, which is near the city of Nephiah.

Now Moroni was desirous that the Lamanites should come out to battle against them, upon the plains; but the Lamanites, knowing of their exceedingly great courage, and beholding the greatness of their numbers, therefore they durst not come out against them; therefore they did not come to battle in that day.

And when the night came, Moroni went forth in the darkness of the night, and came upon the top of the wall to spy out in what part of the city the Lamanites did camp with their army.

And it came to pass that they were on the east, by the entrance; and they were all asleep. And now Moroni returned to his army, and caused that they should prepare in haste strong cords and ladders, to be let down from the top of the wall into the inner part of the wall.

And it came to pass that Moroni caused that his men should march forth and come upon the top of the wall, and let themselves down into that part of the city, yea, even on the west, where the Lamanites did not camp with their armies.

And it came to pass that they were all let down into the city by night, by the means of their strong cords and their ladders; thus when the morning came they were all within the walls of the city.

And now, when the Lamanites awoke and saw that the armies of Moroni were within the walls, they were affrighted exceedingly, insomuch that they did flee out by the pass.

And now when Moroni saw that they were fleeing before him, he did cause that his men should march forth against them, and slew many, and surrounded many others, and took them prisoners; and the remainder of them fled into the land of Moroni, which was in the borders by the seashore.

Thus had Moroni and Pahoran obtained the possession of the city of Nephiah without the loss of one soul; and there were many of the Lamanites who were slain.

- 27 Na, he tokomaha nga Ramana kua riro herehere, ka hiahia kia uru ki te iwi o Amona, kia meinga hoki ratou hei iwi here-kore.
- 28 A ko te hunga katoa i hiahia, na, i whakaaetia ta ratou, i rite tonu ki o ratou hiahia;
- 29 A, uru katoa ana nga herehere Ramana ki te iwi o Amona, tahuri ana ano ki te mahi rawa, ki te ngaki whenua, ki te whakatupu i nga kareene, me nga kahui katoa o ia tu, o ia tu; a penei i tangohia tetahi taimaha nui i runga i nga Niwhai; ae ra, no ka kore ake he herehere Ramana.
- 30 Na, ko Moronai, i muri i te rironga o te pa o Nepiha i a ia, he maha hoki nga herehere i riro mai, no konei hoki i iti haere ai nga taua a nga Ramana, i muri hoki i te rironga i a ia o nga Niwhai tokomaha i riro herehere; a, na konei hoki i nui haere ai te kaha o te taua a Moronai; na reira ka haere atu a Moronai i te whenua o Nepiha ki te whenua o Rihai.
- 31 A, te kitenga o nga Ramana i a Moronai e haere mai ana ki a ratou, ka wehi ano ratou, ka oma atu i mua i te taua a Moronai.
- 32 Nawai a, whaiwhai ana a Moronai me tana taua i a ratou i tetahi pa ki tetahi pa, a tutakina rawatia ana ratou e Rihai raua ko Teanakumu; a oma atu ana nga Ramana i a Rihai raua ko Teanakumu ki raro ki nga rohe i te taha o te takutai, tae noa ana ratou ki te whenua o Moronai.
- 33 A kua poto katoa nga taua a nga Ramana te huihui, he ropu kotahi ratou katoa i te whenua o Moronai, Na, i a ratou hoki a Amorono, te kingi o nga Ramana.
- 34 A noho ana a Moronai, a Rihai, a Teanakumu me a ratou taua, tawhio noa, tawhio noa puta noa nga rohe o te whenua o Moronai; i penei te ahua o te karapotitanga i nga Ramana, he koraha i te taha tonga, he koraha ano hoki i te taha ki te rawhiti.

Now it came to pass that many of the Lamanites that were prisoners were desirous to join the people of Ammon and become a free people.

And it came to pass that as many as were desirous, unto them it was granted according to their desires.

Therefore, all the prisoners of the Lamanites did join the people of Ammon, and did begin to labor exceedingly, tilling the ground, raising all manner of grain, and flocks and herds of every kind; and thus were the Nephites relieved from a great burden; yea, insomuch that they were relieved from all the prisoners of the Lamanites.

Now it came to pass that Moroni, after he had obtained possession of the city of Nephihah, having taken many prisoners, which did reduce the armies of the Lamanites exceedingly, and having regained many of the Nephites who had been taken prisoners, which did strengthen the army of Moroni exceedingly; therefore Moroni went forth from the land of Nephihah to the land of Lehi.

And it came to pass that when the Lamanites saw that Moroni was coming against them, they were again frightened and fled before the army of Moroni.

And it came to pass that Moroni and his army did pursue them from city to city, until they were met by Lehi and Teancum; and the Lamanites fled from Lehi and Teancum, even down upon the borders by the seashore, until they came to the land of Moroni.

And the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body in the land of Moroni. Now Ammoron, the king of the Lamanites, was also with them.

And it came to pass that Moroni and Lehi and Teancum did encamp with their armies round about in the borders of the land of Moroni, insomuch that the Lamanites were encircled about in the borders by the wilderness on the south, and in the borders by the wilderness on the east.

35 Na, ka penei to ratou noho mo tenei po. No te mea hoki e ngenge ana nga Niwhai me nga Ramana ano hoki i te nui o te haere; no reira kihai ratou i whakatakoto whakaaro mo tetahi tinihanga i te po, ko Teanakumu anake; no te mea he rahi rawa tona riri ki a Amorono, a ki tana whakaaro ko Amorono raua ko tona teina ko Amarihiha nga putake o tenei whawhai nui mau roa i waenganui i a ratou i nga Ramana, i aranga ai te whawhai nui me te whakaheke toto nui, ae ra, me te hemo-kai nui ano hoki.

36 Nawai a, ka haere atu a Teanakumu, i runga i tana riri ki roto ki te puni o nga Ramana, a tuku iho ana i runga o te taiepa ki roto i te pa. Na, haere atu ana ia me tetahi aho, ki tena wahi ki tena wahi, a kitea rawatia ana e ia te kingi; maka ana he tao ki a ia, ngoto rawa ana i a ia tata tonu ki te manawa. Heoi, ka whakaoho te kingi i ana pononga i te mea kahore ano ia i mate, a whaia ana a Teanakumu e ratou a whakamatea ana ia.

37 Na, ano ka mohio a Rihai raua ko Moronai kua mate a Teanakumu, ka pa te hinapouri ki a raua: no te mea he tangata marohirohi ia, i whawhai hoki ia mo tona whenua, ae ra, he hoa pono ia ki te herekoretanga; a he maha ano nga whakamamaetanga nui i whakamamaetia ai ia. Heoi, ko tenei kua mate ia, kua riro ra te huarahi e haere ai te ao katoa.

38 Na, ao ake ano ka haere atu a Moronai, ka huaki ki nga Ramana, no ka patupatua ratou, a he nui te whakamatenga; na, ka panaia atu ratou i roto i te whenua; na, rere atu ana ratou, a kihai, ratou i hoki mai ano, i taua takiwa ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.

39 A, i penei te mutunga o te toru tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai; a i a ratou nga whawhai, nga whakaheke toto, me nga hemo-kai, me nga whakamamaetanga mo nga tau maha.

40 A i roto ano nga kohurutanga, nga tautohetohenga, nga ngangau, me nga tu kino katoa i te iwi o Niwhai; otira he whakaaro ki te hunga tika, ae ra, he mea na nga inoi a te hunga tika, i tohungia ai ratou.

And thus they did encamp for the night. For behold, the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march; therefore they did not resolve upon any stratagem in the night-time, save it were Teancum; for he was exceedingly angry with Ammoron, insomuch that he considered that Ammoron, and Amalickiah his brother, had been the cause of this great and lasting war between them and the Lamanites, which had been the cause of so much war and bloodshed, yea, and so much famine.

And it came to pass that Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city. And he went forth with a cord, from place to place, insomuch that he did find the king; and he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart. But behold, the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

Now it came to pass that when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful; for behold, he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty; and he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions. But behold, he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

Now it came to pass that Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites, insomuch that they did slay them with a great slaughter; and they did drive them out of the land; and they did flee, even that they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

And thus ended the thirty and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi; and thus they had had wars, and bloodsheds, and famine, and affliction, for the space of many years.

And there had been murders, and contentions, and dissensions, and all manner of iniquity among the people of Nephi; nevertheless for the righteous' sake, yea, because of the prayers of the righteous, they were spared.

41 Heoi, na te tino roa o te whawhai i waenganui i nga Niwhai i nga Ramana, whakapakeke ana te nuinga o nga tangata i o ratou ngakau, ara na te roa rawa o te whawhai; otira, he tokomaha ano i whakangawaritia o ratou ngakau, he mea na nga tukinotanga, no reira, ka whakaiti ratou i a ratou ano ki te aroaro o te Atua; ae ra, ko te tino tuturutanga o te whakaiti.

42 Na, i te mea kua oti i a Moronai aua wahi o te whenua e tu hangai ana ki nga Ramana te whakakaha, a kua nui te kaha ka hoki ano ia ki te pa o Harahemera, me Heramana ano hoki, ka hoki ano ia ki tona kainga tupu; na, ka whakapumautia ano te ata noho i waenganui i te iwi o Niwhai.

43 Na, ka tuku iho a Moronai i te mana whakahaere mo ana taua ki tana tama, nona nei te ingoa ko Moroniha; a hoki ana ia ki tona ake whare kia mutu ai te toenga o ona ra i runga i te rangimarie.

44 A hoki ana ano a Pahorana ki tana nohoanga whakawa; a ko Heramana i mau ki runga ki a ia te tikanga mo te kauwhau i te kupu a te Atua ki te iwi; no nga whawhai maha hoki me nga tautohetohenga, i tika ai kia whakaritea ano tetahi tikanga i roto i te hahi:

45 Koia a Heramana ratou ko ona teina i whakapuaki haere ai i te kupu a te Atua i runga i te kaha nui, a whakaatu atu ana ki nga iwi maha i to ratou kino, koia i meinga ai ratou kia ripeneta ki o ratou hara, kia rumakina ai ano hoki ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua.

46 Nawai a, ka whakatutu ano ratou i te hahi a te Atua puta noa i te whenua katoa;

47 Ae ra, ka whakarite tikanga ano mo to ratou ture. A ka whiriwhiria o ratou kai whakawa, me o ratou kai whakawa nui.

48 A ka kaha ano te iwi o Niwhai i runga i te whenua, ka whakatokomaha, ka tupu ano kia tino kaha i runga i te whenua. A ka timata ano ratou te whai taonga nui;

49 Heoi he ahakoa o ratou taonga, to ratou kaha, to ratou whai pai, kihai ratou i neke ake i runga i te whakakake o o ratou kanohi; kihai ano hoki ratou i puhoi ki te mahara ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua; engari he nui rawa to ratou whakaiti i a ratou ano ki tona aroaro;

But behold, because of the exceedingly great length of the war between the Nephites and the Lamanites many had become hardened, because of the exceedingly great length of the war; and many were softened because of their afflictions, insomuch that they did humble themselves before God, even in the depth of humility.

And it came to pass that after Moroni had fortified those parts of the land which were most exposed to the Lamanites, until they were sufficiently strong, he returned to the city of Zarahemla; and also Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance; and there was once more peace established among the people of Nephi.

And Moroni yielded up the command of his armies into the hands of his son, whose name was Moronihah; and he retired to his own house that he might spend the remainder of his days in peace.

And Pahoran did return to his judgment-seat; and Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God; for because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

Therefore, Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

Yea, and regulations were made concerning the law. And their judges, and their chief judges were chosen.

And the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land. And they began to grow exceedingly rich.

But notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes; neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God; but they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

50 Ae ra, i mahara ratou ki nga mea nunui i mahi ai te Ariki mo ratou, i whakaora ai ia i a ratou i te mate, i nga mekameka, i nga whare herehere, i nga tukinotanga o ia ahua, o ia ahua; a i whakaputa ano hoki ia i a ratou i roto i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri.

51 A ka hono tonu ta ratou inoi ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, a ka manaaki ia i a ratou, ki te ritenga o tana kupu, a ka tupu ratou i runga i te kaha, ka kake haere i runga i te whenua.

52 Na, ka oti enei mea katoa. A ka mate a Heramana i te toru tekau ma rima o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

Yea, they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them, that he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from prisons, and from all manner of afflictions, and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

And they did pray unto the Lord their God continually, insomuch that the Lord did bless them, according to his word, so that they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that all these things were done. And Helaman died, in the thirty and fifth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Te Pukapuka A Arami 63

- 1 Na, i te timatanga o te toru tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka riro i a Hipirona aua mea tapu i tukua iho ki a Heramana e Arami;
- 2 Na, he tangata tika tera, he tika ano tana whakahaere i te aroaro o te Atua; ka whakaaro hoki ia ki te mahi pai i nga wa katoa, ki te mau ano ki nga whakahaunga a te Ariki a tona Atua; a i pera ano hoki tona teina.
- 3 Nawai a, ka mate hoki a Moronai. A penei, ka mutu te toru tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.
- 4 Na, i te toru tekau ma whitu o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka whakatika atu i te whenua o Harahemera tetahi ope nui, tae ana ki te rima mano e wha rau nga tangata, me a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, a haere ana ki te whenua whaka-te-nota.
- 5 A he tino whanoke a Hakota, no reira ka haere atu ia ki nga rohe o te whenua Momona, i te taha o te whenua Whakangarmoanga, a hanga ana mona he kaupuke nui whakaharahara, a toia atu ana ki roto ki te moana hauauru, i te taha o te whenua whaiti e tika atu ana ki te whenua whaka-te-nota.
- 6 Na, he tokomaha o nga Niwhai i tomo ki roto, a rere atu ana me nga kai maha, me nga wahine ano hoki ratou ko nga tamariki; a rere atu ana ratou i runga i te ritenga atu ki te nota. A penei ka mutu te toru tekau ma whitu o nga tau.
- 7 A i te toru tekau ma waru o nga tau na tenei tangata ano i hanga etahi atu kaupuke. Na, ka hoki mai te kaupuke tuatahi, a he maha atu tangata i tomo ki roto: he nui ano te kai i mauria e ratou, a haere atu ano ki te whenua whaka-te-nota.
- 8 Na, kahore he rongoro korero mo ratou i muri atu. A ki ta matou whakaaro, i horomia ake ratou ki roto ki te rire o te moana. Nawai a, ka rere atu ano tetahi atu kaupuke: a kahore matou e mohio ki tana wahi i rere ai.
- 9 Na, i tenei tau ano, he tokomaha nga tangata i haere ki te whenua whaka-te-nota. A penei ka mutu te toru tekau ma waru o nga tau.

## Alma 63

And it came to pass in the commencement of the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, that Shiblon took possession of those sacred things which had been delivered unto Helaman by Alma.

And he was a just man, and he did walk uprightly before God; and he did observe to do good continually, to keep the commandments of the Lord his God; and also did his brother.

And it came to pass that Moroni died also. And thus ended the thirty and sixth year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass that in the thirty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, there was a large company of men, even to the amount of five thousand and four hundred men, with their wives and their children, departed out of the land of Zarahemla into the land which was northward.

And it came to pass that Hagoth, he being an exceedingly curious man, therefore he went forth and built him an exceedingly large ship, on the borders of the land Bountiful, by the land Desolation, and launched it forth into the west sea, by the narrow neck which led into the land northward.

And behold, there were many of the Nephites who did enter therein and did sail forth with much provisions, and also many women and children; and they took their course northward. And thus ended the thirty and seventh year.

And in the thirty and eighth year, this man built other ships. And the first ship did also return, and many more people did enter into it; and they also took much provisions, and set out again to the land northward.

And it came to pass that they were never heard of more. And we suppose that they were drowned in the depths of the sea. And it came to pass that one other ship also did sail forth; and whither she did go we know not.

And it came to pass that in this year there were many people who went forth into the land northward. And thus ended the thirty and eighth year.

- 10 Na, i te toru tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite ka mate hoki a Hipirona, a ko Korianato kua riro atu ma te kaupuke, ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, ki te mau kai atu ki te iwi i haere ai ki taua whenua;
- 11 Koia i tika ai kia tukua iho e Hipirona ana mea tapu ki te tama a Heramana, i te mea kahore ano ia kia mate noa, i huaina ia ko Heramana, i karangatia hoki ki a ia te ingoa o tona papa.
- 12 Na, i tuhituhia, i tukua atu ano hoki ki roto ki nga tamariki a te tangata puta noa i te whenua katoa aua tuhituhinga katoa i a Heramana, engari kahore te wahi i kiia e Arami kia kauaka e tukua atu.
- 13 Otira ko te tikanga tenei kia puritia taputia enei mea, kia tukua iho ano hoki ki tetahi whakaturanga, ki tetahi whakaturanga; na konei i tukua iho ai ki a Heramana, i tenei tau, i mua i te matenga o Hipirona.
- 14 Na, i tenei tau ano, kua haere atu etahi tangata puta ke ki nga Ramana; a i whakakiki ano i a ratou kia riri ki nga Niwhai.
- 15 A i tenei tau ano hoki, ka haere mai ratou me tetahi taua tini ki te whawhai ki te iwi o Moroniha, ara, ki te taua a Moroniha, a i taea ratou, i panaia atu ano ki o ratou ake whenua, a he nui ano te aitua i pa ki a ratou.
- 16 A, i penei te mutunga o te toru tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 17 A, i penei ano te mutunga o te tuhituhinga a Arami raua ko Heramana ko tana tama, me Hipirona ano hoki he tama nana.

And it came to pass in the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, Shiblon died also, and Corianton had gone forth to the land northward in a ship, to carry forth provisions unto the people who had gone forth into that land.

Therefore it became expedient for Shiblon to confer those sacred things, before his death, upon the son of Helaman, who was called Helaman, being called after the name of his father.

Now behold, all those engravings which were in the possession of Helaman were written and sent forth among the children of men throughout all the land, save it were those parts which had been commanded by Alma should not go forth.

Nevertheless, these things were to be kept sacred, and handed down from one generation to another; therefore, in this year, they had been conferred upon Helaman, before the death of Shiblon.

And it came to pass also in this year that there were some dissenters who had gone forth unto the Lamanites; and they were stirred up again to anger against the Nephites.

And also in this same year they came down with a numerous army to war against the people of Moronihah, or against the army of Moronihah, in the which they were beaten and driven back again to their own lands, suffering great loss.

And thus ended the thirty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended the account of Alma, and Helaman his son, and also Shiblon, who was his son.

# Ko Te Pukapuka A Heramana.

*He tubitubinga mo nga Niwhai. Ko a ratou wharwhainga, me nga tautohetohenga, me o ratou webewebenga. Ko nga poropititanga hoki a nga poropiti tapu maha, i mua i te haerenga mai o te Karaiti, e rite ana ki nga tubitubinga a Heramana, ko ia nei te tama a Heramana, e rite ana ano hoki ki nga tubitubinga a ana tamariki, tae noa ki te haerenga mai o te Karaiti. He tokomaha hoki nga Ramana i whakataburititia mai. He whakaaturanga mo to ratou whakataburitanga. He tubitubinga mo te tika o nga Ramana, mo te kino me nga mea whakariharaha o nga Niwhai, e rite ana ki te tubitubinga a Heramana mo ana tamariki, tae noa ki te haerenga mai o te Karaiti, e karangatia nei ko te pukapuka a Heramana, me etahi atu mea ano hoki.*

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 1

- 1 Na, i te timatanga o te wha tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka timata tetahi raruraru whakapawera i roto i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 2 Nana, kua mate hoki a Pahorana, kua haere i te huarahi e haere ai te ao katoa; a ka timata tetahi tautohetohenga whakapawera mo te tangata hei noho i te nohoanga whakawa, i roto i nga tamariki a Pahorana, ara, ko ratou he tuakana he teina.
- 3 Na, ko enei o ratou ingoa, o te hunga i tautohetohe ra ki te nohoanga whakawa, na ratou hoki i mea te iwi kia tautohetohe: ko Pahorana, ko Paanihi, ko Pakumeni.
- 4 Na, kahore enei i nga tamariki katoa a Pahorana, (he tokomaha hoki i a ia,) engari ko enei nga mea i tautohetohe ki te nohoanga whakawa; no reira e toru nga wahanga i meinga ai e ratou i roto i te iwi.
- 5 Ahakoa ra, ka whakaritea ko Pahorana, e te pooti a te iwi, hei Kai-whakariterite Nui, hei Kawana hoki mo runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 6 Na, i te kitenga o Pakumeni, kahore i riro i a ia te nohoanga whakawa, ka uru ia ki roto ki te pooti a te iwi.

# The Book of Helaman

*An account of the Nephites. Their wars and contentions, and their dissensions. And also the prophecies of many holy prophets, before the coming of Christ, according to the records of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, and also according to the records of his sons, even down to the coming of Christ. And also many of the Lamanites are converted. An account of their conversion. An account of the righteousness of the Lamanites, and the wickedness and abominations of the Nephites, according to the record of Helaman and his sons, even down to the coming of Christ, which is called the book of Helaman, and so forth.*

## Helaman 1

And now behold, it came to pass in the commencement of the fortieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there began to be a serious difficulty among the people of the Nephites.

For behold, Pahoran had died, and gone the way of all the earth; therefore there began to be a serious contention concerning who should have the judgment-seat among the brethren, who were the sons of Pahoran.

Now these are their names who did contend for the judgment-seat, who did also cause the people to contend: Pahoran, Paanchi, and Pacumeni.

Now these are not all the sons of Pahoran (for he had many), but these are they who did contend for the judgment-seat; therefore, they did cause three divisions among the people.

Nevertheless, it came to pass that Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, when he saw that he could not obtain the judgment-seat, he did unite with the voice of the people.



7 Heoi ka tino riri a Paanihi, me taua wahi o te iwi e hiahia ana ki a ia hei kawana mo ratou; a tata ana ia te whakaoho i aua iwi kia tutu ki o ratou teina.

8 A, i a ia ka anga ki te mea i tenei mea, na, ka mau ia, ka whakawakia i runga i te pooti a te iwi, a ka kiia kia mate; kua whakatika hoki ia ki te tutu, kua whai ano hoki ki te whakataka i te tikanga here-kore o te iwi.

9 Ano ka kite aua iwi e hiahia nei ki a ia hei kawana mo ratou, kua whakataua ia kia mate, na, ka riri ratou, a ka tonoa e ratou tetahi, ko Kihikumene kia tae rawa ki te nohoanga whakawa o Pahorana, a kohurutia ana a Pahorana i a ia e noho ana i runga i te nohoanga whakawa.

10 Na, whaia ana ia e nga pononga a Pahorana; otiia he terē no te rere a Kihikumene, kihai ia i mau i tetahi tangata.

11 A haere ana ia ki te hunga i tonu ra i a ia, na, uru ana ratou katoa ki tetahi kawenata, ae ra, oati ana ratou i runga i to ratou Kai-hanga ora tonu, kia kaua e korerotia atu e ratou ki tetahi tangata na Kihikumene i kohuru a Pahorana;

12 Na, kahore i mohiotia a Kihikumene i roto i te iwi o Niwhai, i whakaahuatia ketia hoki ia i te wa i kohuru ai ia i a Pahorana. A, ko Kihikumene, ratou ko tana ope i kawenata ra ki a ia, ka whakauru ki roto ki te iwi, a kore ake ratou katoa i kitea; heoi ko nga mea i kitea whakataua iho kia whakamatea.

13 Na, ka whakaritea ko Pakumene, he mea na te pooti a te iwi, hei Kai-whakariterite Nui hei Kawana i runga i te iwi, hei whakahaere i muri i tona tuakana, i a Pahorana; e rite ana hoki tana turanga mona. A i meatia tenei katoa i te wha tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite; a ka mutu tenei tau.

14 A i te wha tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, na, kua whakaminea ngatahitia e nga Ramana tetahi taua tona tini te taea te tatau, kua hoatu hoki he hoari, he hoari poto, he kopere, he pere, he tiaki mahunga, he whakangungurakau, me nga puapua katoa o nga ahua katoa;

But behold, Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth; therefore, he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

And it came to pass as he was about to do this, behold, he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death; for he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

Now when those people who were desirous that he should be their governor saw that he was condemned unto death, therefore they were angry, and behold, they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

And he was pursued by the servants of Pahoran; but behold, so speedy was the flight of Kishkumen that no man could overtake him.

And he went unto those that sent him, and they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

Therefore, Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran. And Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people, in a manner that they all could not be found; but as many as were found were condemned unto death.

And now behold, Pacumene was appointed, according to the voice of the people, to be a chief judge and a governor over the people, to reign in the stead of his brother Pahoran; and it was according to his right. And all this was done in the fortieth year of the reign of the judges; and it had an end.

And it came to pass in the forty and first year of the reign of the judges, that the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of men, and armed them with swords, and with cimeters and with bows, and with arrows, and with head-plates, and with breastplates, and with all manner of shields of every kind.

15 Na, ka haere iho ano ratou ki te tatau ki nga Niwhai. Ka arahina ratou e tetahi tangata nona nei te ingoa ko Koriatuma; he uri no Harahemera; he tangata kua puta atu i roto i nga Niwhai; he tangata kaha ia, he tangata marohirohi;

16 No reira, te kingi o nga Ramana, nona nei te ingoa ko Tuparoto, ko ia ano hoki te tama a Amorono, i whakaaro ai kia tonoa atu a Koriatuma, i runga i tana mahara ka taea e ia nga Niwhai, he tangata marohirohi hoki ia, me kore e riro i a ia te mana ki runga ki nga Niwhai, i runga i tona kaha i tona whai whakaaro.

17 Na reira ka whakaohokia ratou e ia ki te riri, a whakaminea ngatahitia ana e ia ana taua, whakaritea ana ko Koriatuma to ratou kai arahi, a meinga ana kia haere ratou ki te whenua o Harahemera, ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.

18 A i te nui o te tautohetohe me te raruraru nui i roto i te kawanatanga, kahore i maha nga kai tiaki i puritia e ratou i roto i te whenua o Harahemera; hua noa hoki ratou e kore nga Ramana e maia ki te haere mai ki roto rawa ki o ratou whenua, whakaeke ai i taua pa nui i Harahemera.

19 Otira ka haere atu a Koriatuma i mua i ana mano tini, a huaki mai ana ki nga tangata o te pa, he tino tere rawa to ratou haerenga mai, no ka kore nga Niwhai e whai taima ki te huihui i a ratou taua;

20 Na, haua iho atu ana e Koriatuma te kai tiaki i te tomokanga ki te pa, a haere ana ia me tana taua katoa ki roto ki te pa, patua ana nga tangata i tu atu ki a ratou, no ka riro i a ratou te pa katoa.

21 A ko Pakumeni ko ia nei te Kai-whakawa Nui, oma atu ana i mua i a Koriatuma, a tae noa ki nga taiepa o te pa. Na, patua ana ia e Koriatuma ki te taha o nga taiepa, no ka mate ia. A ka mutu nga ra o Pakumeni.

22 Na, te kitenga o Koriatuma kua riro i a ia te pa o Harahemera, me tona kitenga hoki kua oma atu nga Niwhai i a ratou, kua patua hoki, kua mau, kua maka ki te whare herehere, a kua riro ano hoki i a ia te pa kaha rawa atu i roto i te whenua katoa, na, ka maia tona ngakau, no ka whakaaro ia kia haere ki te whawhai ki te whenua katoa.

And they came down again that they might pitch battle against the Nephites. And they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr; and he was a descendant of Zarahemla; and he was a dissenter from among the Nephites; and he was a large and a mighty man.

Therefore, the king of the Lamanites, whose name was Tubaloth, who was the son of Ammoron, supposing that Coriantumr, being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites—

Therefore he did stir them up to anger, and he did gather together his armies, and he did appoint Coriantumr to be their leader, and did cause that they should march down to the land of Zarahemla to battle against the Nephites.

And it came to pass that because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land of Zarahemla; for they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

But it came to pass that Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host, and came upon the inhabitants of the city, and their march was with such exceedingly great speed that there was no time for the Nephites to gather together their armies.

Therefore Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city, and did march forth with his whole army into the city, and they did slay every one who did oppose them, insomuch that they did take possession of the whole city.

And it came to pass that Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before Coriantumr, even to the walls of the city. And it came to pass that Coriantumr did smite him against the wall, insomuch that he died. And thus ended the days of Pacumeni.

And now when Coriantumr saw that he was in possession of the city of Zarahemla, and saw that the Nephites had fled before them, and were slain, and were taken, and were cast into prison, and that he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go forth against all the land.

- 23 A kahore ia i roa ki te whenua o Harahemera, heoi, haere atu ana ia me tetahi taua nui, whaka-te-pa o Momona; tana whakaaro tuturu hoki tenei kia haere atu kia topea he huarahi mona ki te hoari, kia riro ai i a ia nga wahi whaka-te-nota o te whenua;
- 24 I runga i tona whakaaro kei waenganui o te whenua to ratou tino kaha, no reira, ka haere atu ia, te whai wa ratou ki te huihui mai i a ratou taua, heoi ano he ope ririki nei: a, koia tenei to ratou ahua, ka huaki atu nei nga Ramana, ka tapahia iho ratou ki te whenua.
- 25 Heoi, i runga i tenei haerenga a Koriatuma ra waenga i te whenua, a ahakoa he nui nga Niwhai i whakamatea, ka whiwhi tonu ano a Moroniha he kaha nui ki runga ki a ratou;
- 26 Ina hoki kua whakaaro a Moroniha kahore o nga Ramana maia ki te haere mai ki roto rawa ki te whenua, engari ki nga rohe huaki ai ki nga pa e tutata ana, pera hoki ta ratou tikanga o mua iho; na reira a Moroniha i mea ai ma nga taua kaha e tiaki aua wahi tawhio noa i nga rohe.
- 27 Heoi kahore o nga Ramana wehi kahore i rite ki tana whakaaro, engari kua haere mai ratou ki roto rawa ki te whenua, kua riro i a ratou te tino pa, koia ano te pa o Harahemera, a e haere ana ratou ra roto i nga tino wahi e whakamate ana i te iwi, he nui hoki te whakamatenga, he tane, he wahine, he tamariki, a riro ana i a ratou nga pa maha me nga piringa kaha.
- 28 Heoi, i te kitenga o Moroniha i tenei, ka hohoro tana tono atu ia i a Rihai me tetahi taua hei haukoti i a ratou, i te mea kahore ano ratou i tae atu ki te whenua o Momona.
- 29 Na, ka peratia e ia; a ka haukotia ratou e ia i te mea kahore ano ratou i tae ki te whenua o Momona, a ka hoatu whawhai ki a ratou, no ka timata ratou te hoki whaka-te-whenua o Harahemera.
- 30 Na, i a ratou e hoki whakamuri ana, ka haukotia ratou e Moroniha, a hoatu whawhai ana ki a ratou, no ka meinga hei whawhai nui rawa te whakaheke tote; ae ra, he tokomaha i whakamatea, a, i roto i te hunga i whakamatea ko Koriatuma tetahi.

And now he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla, but he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of Bountiful; for it was his determination to go forth and cut his way through with the sword, that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

And, supposing that their greatest strength was in the center of the land, therefore he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble themselves together save it were in small bodies; and in this manner they did fall upon them and cut them down to the earth.

But behold, this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave Moronihah great advantage over them, notwithstanding the greatness of the number of the Nephites who were slain.

For behold, Moronihah had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the center of the land, but that they would attack the cities round about in the borders as they had hitherto done; therefore Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should maintain those parts round about by the borders.

But behold, the Lamanites were not frightened according to his desire, but they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the capital city which was the city of Zarahemla, and were marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children, taking possession of many cities and of many strongholds.

But when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they should come to the land Bountiful.

And thus he did; and he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and gave unto them battle, insomuch that they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody battle; yea, many were slain, and among the number who were slain Coriantumr was also found.

31 Na, kahore nga Ramana i ahei te oma ma whea, ma whea ranei; kahore ma te nota, kahore ma te tonga, kahore ano hoki ma te rawhiti ma te hauauru ranei, no te mea kua karapotitia ratou e nga Niwhai i nga taha katoa.

32 A penei kua panga e Koriatuma nga Ramana ki waenganui i nga Niwhai, a kei roto ratou i te mana o nga Niwhai, a ko ia ake ano kua whakamatea, na, tukua ana nga Ramana e ratou ano ki nga ringaringa o nga Niwhai.

33 Nawai a, ka nohoia ano e Moronihah te pa o Harahemera, ka meinga nga Ramana kua whakarauorangia nei kia haere marie atu i te whenua.

34 Na, penei ka mutu te wha tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

And now, behold, the Lamanites could not retreat either way, neither on the north, nor on the south, nor on the east, nor on the west, for they were surrounded on every hand by the Nephites.

And thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites, and he himself was slain, and the Lamanites did yield themselves into the hands of the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

And thus ended the forty and first year of the reign of the judges.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 2

- 1 Nawai a; i te wha tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, i te mea kua whakatuturu ano a Moroniha i te rongo mau ki waenganui i nga Niwhai me nga Ramana, nana, kahore he tangata hei noho i te nohoanga whakawa; no reira ka timata ano he tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi mo te tangata mana e noho te nohoanga whakawa.
- 2 Nawai a, ka whakaritea ko Heramana, ko ia nei te tama a Heramana, hei noho i te nohoanga whakawa, he mea whakarite e te pooti a te iwi;
- 3 Heoi ko Kihikumene, nana nei i kohuru a Pahorana, i whanga kia whakamatea a Heramana ano hoki: a na ona hoa ia i tautoko, na ratou i uru ki tetahi kawenata kei kite tetahi i tana kino;
- 4 Tera ano hoki tetahi, ko Karianato he tino mohio ia ki te korero i nga kupu maha, ki tana mahi tohunga hoki, hei whakahaere i te mahi kohuru ngaro me te mahi tahae; koia i roto ai ia hei rangatira mo te ope a Kihikumene;
- 5 A, ka korero whakapatipati ia ki a ratou, ki a Kihikumene ano hoki, ara, ki te whakanohoia ia e ratou ki runga ki te nohoanga whakawa, ka whakawhiwhia te hunga o tana ope ki te kaha ki te mana i runga i te iwi: no reira ka rapu a Kihikumene ki te whakamate i a Heramana.
- 6 A, i a ia e haere atu ana ki te nohoanga whakawa, ki te whakamate i a Heramana, nana, ko tetahi o nga pononga a Heramana, i te haereere i waho i te po, a he mea whakaahua ke ia i whiwhi ai ia ki te matauranga ki aua tikanga whakatakoto i whakatakotoria nei e tenei ope hei whakamate i a Heramana.
- 7 A ka tutaki ia ki a Kihikumene, na, ka hoatu e ia tetahi tohu ki a ia; no reira ka whakaaturia mai e Kihikumene ki a ia te mea e hiahia nei ia, me te hiahia ano kia arahina atu ia e ia ki te nohoanga whakawa, kia kohuru ai ia i a Heramana.

## Helaman 2

And it came to pass in the forty and second year of the reign of the judges, after Moronihah had established again peace between the Nephites and the Lamanites, behold there was no one to fill the judgment-seat; therefore there began to be a contention again among the people concerning who should fill the judgment-seat.

And it came to pass that Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

But behold, Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also; and he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

For there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery; therefore he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

Therefore he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people; therefore Kishkumen sought to destroy Helaman.

And it came to pass as he went forth towards the judgment-seat to destroy Helaman, behold one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman—

And it came to pass that he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign; therefore Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire, desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that he might murder Helaman.

- 8 A, ano ka marama te pononga a Heramana ki nga whakaaro katoa o Kihikumene, ki tana hanga hoki he kohuru, ki te hanga ano hoki a te hunga katoa o tana ope he kohuru, he tahae, he whakatupu rangatira, (ko ta ratou hanga ngaro hoki tenei, me ta ratou whakakotahitanga). Na, ka mea atu te pononga a Heramana ki a Kihikumene, tena kia haere atu taua ki te nohoanga whakawa.
- 9 Na, he mea whakaahuareka rawa atu tenei ki a Kihikumene, hua noa hoki ia tera e rite i a ia tana i whakaaro ai; heoi i a raua e haere atu ana ki te nohoanga whakawa, nana, ka werohia a Kihikumene e te pononga a Heramana, ngoto rawa ki te ngakau, a hinga mate ana, kihai hoki i aurere. A oma ana ia, korerotia ana e ia ki a Heramana nga mea katoa i kite ai, i rongo ai, i mahi ai ia.
- 10 Na, ka tono tangata atu a Heramana ki te mau i taua ope tahae, ope kohuru ngaro, kia whakamatea ai ratou i runga i te ture.
- 11 Otira ka kite a Karianato kahore a Kihikumene i hoki mai, ka wehi ia kei whakamatea ia; na reira ka meinga e ia tana ope kia whai i muri i a ia. A rere atu ana ratou i roto i te whenua, ra tetahi ara ngaro, ki roto ki te koraha: na, te tononga a Heramana i nga tangata ki te mau i a ratou, kahore ratou i kitea i tetahi wahi.
- 12 A ka korero ano ahau mo tenei Karianato a muri ake nei. A penei ka mutu te wha tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 13 Nana, i te wahi whakamutunga o tenei pukapuka, ka kite koutou ka turakina e tenei Karianato, ae ra, wahi iti ka whakangaromia katoatia e ia te iwi o Niwhai.
- 14 Na, kahore au e mea i te wahi whakamutunga o tenei pukapuka a Heramana, engari i te mutunga o te pukapuka a Niwhai, i tangohia mai e ahau i reira enei whakaaturanga katoa kua tuhituhia nei e au.

And when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder, and also that it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to murder, and to rob, and to gain power, (and this was their secret plan, and their combination) the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth unto the judgment-seat.

Now this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that he should accomplish his design; but behold, the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart, that he fell dead without a groan. And he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and heard, and done.

And it came to pass that Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

But behold, when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he feared lest that he should be destroyed; therefore he caused that his band should follow him. And they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the wilderness; and thus when Helaman sent forth to take them they could nowhere be found.

And more of this Gadianton shall be spoken hereafter. And thus ended the forty and second year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And behold, in the end of this book ye shall see that this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi.

Behold I do not mean the end of the book of Helaman, but I mean the end of the book of Nephi, from which I have taken all the account which I have written.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 3

- 1 Na, i te wha tekau ma toru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, kahore he tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi o Niwhai, ko tetahi whakapehapeha iti anake i roto i te hahi, i meatia hoki e tenei etahi wehewehenga nohinohi i roto i te iwi, a ko enei mea i whakatikaia i te whakamutunga o te wha tekau ma toru o nga tau.
- 2 A kahore he tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi i te wha tekau ma wha o nga tau; kahore ano hoki i nui te tautohetohenga i te wha tekau ma rima o nga tau.
- 3 Nawai a, i te wha tekau ma ono, na, he nui rawa nga tautohetohenga me nga wehewehenga maha; na tenei hoki ka hira noa ake nga tangata i puta atu i roto i te whenua o Harahemera, a ka haere ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, hei noho i te whenua;
- 4 A haere atu ana ratou ki tawhiti noa atu, a tae ana ki nga wai nui, me nga awa maha;
- 5 Na, ka marara haere ratou ki nga wahi katoa o te whenua, ki nga wahi kihai nei i titohea, kihai hoki i kore he rakau he mea na te nui o nga tangata i nohoia ai te whenua i mua.
- 6 Na, kahore he wahi titohea o te whenua, he korenga anake no nga rakau me nga mea pera; otira na te nui o te whakangaronga o te iwi nana nei i noho te whenua i karangatia ai he whenua titohea.
- 7 A iti noa iho nga rakau i runga i te mata o te whenua, ahakoa ra ko te iwi i haere atu ra, ka riro hei tino tautohito ki te mahi konatunatu paru; koia ratou i hanga ai i nga whare ki te paru i konatunatua, a noho ana i roto.
- 8 Nawai a, ka tokomahatia ratou, ka marara hoki, a haere ana i te whenua whaka-te-tonga ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, a marara ana kapi ana te mata o te whenua katoa i a ratou, i te moana ki te tonga, tae noa ki te moana ki te nota, i te moana ki te hauauru tae noa ki te moana ki te rawhiti.

## Helaman 3

And now it came to pass in the forty and third year of the reign of the judges, there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled in the ending of the forty and third year.

And there was no contention among the people in the forty and fourth year; neither was there much contention in the forty and fifth year.

And it came to pass in the forty and sixth, yea, there was much contention and many dissensions; in the which there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla, and went forth unto the land northward to inherit the land.

And they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water and many rivers.

Yea, and even they did spread forth into all parts of the land, into whatever parts it had not been rendered desolate and without timber, because of the many inhabitants who had before inherited the land.

And now no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber; but because of the greatness of the destruction of the people who had before inhabited the land it was called desolate.

And there being but little timber upon the face of the land, nevertheless the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement; therefore they did build houses of cement, in the which they did dwell.

And it came to pass that they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward, and did spread insomuch that they began to cover the face of the whole earth, from the sea south to the sea north, from the sea west to the sea east.

- 9 Na, ko te iwi i te whenua whaka-te-nota, kei nga teneti, kei nga whare paru i konatunatua, e noho ana, a ki te pihia ake tetahi rakau i runga i te mata o te whenua. ka tukua e ratou kia tupu, kia whiwhi ai ratou ki nga rakau hei hanga whare mo ratou, ae ra, hei hanga pa mo ratou, hei hanga temepara, hei hanga whare karakia, hei hanga whare tapu, hei hanga whare o nga ahua katoa mo ratou.
- 10 Na, i te mea he iti noa iho te rakau o te whenua whaka-te-nota, he nui i tukua atu e ratou ra runga kaupuke:
- 11 A, i penei te ahua o ta ratou awhina i te hunga i te whenua whaka-te-nota, kia hanga e ratou nga pa maha, ki te rakau, ki te paru i konatunatua ano hoki.
- 12 Na, tera ano hoki he tokomaha no te iwi o Amona, i whanau mai nei i nga Ramana, i haere ki tenei whenua.
- 13 A tera ano nga tuhituhinga maha e tuhia ana mo runga i nga whakahaere o tenei iwi, e nga tangata tokomaha o tenei iwi, he mea ata whakataki, he mea nui rawa hoki e whakaatu ana mo ratou;
- 14 Heoi ko te wahi whaka-te-rau o nga whakahaeretanga a tenei iwi, ara, o te whakaaturanga mo nga Ramana, mo nga Niwhai, mo a ratou whawhaitanga, me nga tautohetohenga, me nga wehewehenga, me a ratou kauwhautanga, me a ratou poropititanga me ta ratou utanga kaupuke, me ta ratou hanga kaupuke, me ta ratou hanga temepara, me ta ratou hanga whare karakia, me ta ratou hanga whare tapu, me ta ratou tika, me ta ratou he, me a ratou kohurutanga, me a ratou tahaetanga, me a ratou pahuatanga, me nga mea whakarihariha o nga ahua katoa, me nga puremu, e kore e poto ki roto ki tenei pukapuka;
- 15 Otira tera ano nga pukapuka maha me nga whakapaparanga maha o nga ahua katoa, a ko te tini o aua mea kua tuhituhia e nga Niwhai;
- 16 Na, i tukua iho i tetahi whakatupuranga ki tetahi whakatupuranga e nga Niwhai, tae iho ra ano ki to ratou takanga ki te he, a kua kohurutia, kua pahuatia, kua whaia, kua aia atu, kua patua, kua whakamararatia i runga i te mata o te whenua, kua whakauruuru ki nga Ramana, no ka kore e karangatia ratou he Niwhai, a riro ana hei hunga kino, hei mohoa, hei nanakia, ae ra, riro ana ratou hei Ramana.

And the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up, that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

And it came to pass as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

And thus they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

And it came to pass that there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

And now there are many records kept of the proceedings of this people, by many of this people, which are particular and very large, concerning them.

But behold, a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people, yea, the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites, and their wars, and contentions, and dissensions, and their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and their building of ships, and their building of temples, and of synagogues and their sanctuaries, and their righteousness, and their wickedness, and their murders, and their robbings, and their plundering, and all manner of abominations and whoredoms, cannot be contained in this work.

But behold, there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

And they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites, even until they have fallen into transgression and have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth, and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth, and mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites, becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.



17 Na, ka hoki tenei ahau ki taku whakaaturanga; a ko nga mea kua korerotia ake nei e ahau i pahemo atu era i muri mai i nga tautohenga nui, i nga ngangaretanga, i nga whawhaitanga, i nga wehewehenga, i roto i te iwi o Niwhai.

18 Na, ka mutu te wha tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

19 A he nui tonu te tautohetohenga i roto i te whenua, ae, i te wha tekau ma whitu o nga tau, i te wha tekau ma waru o nga tau ano hoki;

20 Ahakoa ra ka noho a Heramana ki te nohoanga whakawa i runga i te tika me te pono; ae ra, ka mahara tonu ia ki te whakarite i nga ture, i nga whakawa me nga whakahaunga a te Atua; ka mahi tonu ano hoki ia i te mea tika ki te titiro iho a te Atua i nga wa katoa: a haere ana ano ia i runga i nga ara o tona papa, no ka nui ia i runga i te whenua.

21 Na, e rua ana tamariki tane. A huaina ana e ia te ingoa mo to mua, ko Niwhai, mo to muri, ko Rihai. Na, ka anga raua ka tupu ake i roto i te Ariki.

22 Nawai a, i te wahi whakamutunga o te wha tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka ahua iti haere te tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi o nga Niwhai.

23 A i te wha tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka mau tonu te rongoi runga i te whenua, haunga ra nga huihuinga ngaro i whakaturia ai e te kai pahua, e Karianato, i roto i nga wahi o te whenua e nohoia nuitia ana, a kihai era i mohiotia i taua wa e te hunga i te upoko o te kawanatanga; no reira kahore ratou i whakangaromia atu i runga i te whenua.

24 A, he tino nui rawa te pai i roto i te hahi i tenei tau, no reira, he maha nga mano i uru ai ki te hahi, a, rumakina ana hei mea ripenetatanga.

25 Na, i te nui o te kake o te hahi me te tini o nga manaakitanga i ringihia nei ki runga ki te iwi, ka tino miharo nga tohunga nui me nga kai whakaako.

And now I return again to mine account; therefore, what I have spoken had passed after there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

The forty and sixth year of the reign of the judges ended;

And it came to pass that there was still great contention in the land, yea, even in the forty and seventh year, and also in the forty and eighth year.

Nevertheless Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God; and he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually; and he did walk after the ways of his father, insomuch that he did prosper in the land.

And it came to pass that he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi. And they began to grow up unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites, in the latter end of the forty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

And it came to pass that in this same year there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church, insomuch that there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church and were baptized unto repentance.

And so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished beyond measure.

26 A kake haere ana te mahi a te Ariki i runga i te rumaki me te hono i te tini o nga wairua ki te hahi a te Atua; ae ra, i nga tekau mano o nga wairua.

27 Na, penei ka kite tatou he mahi tohu ta te Atua ki te hunga katoa e karanga ana ki tona ingoa tapu, i runga i te tapatahitanga o o ratou ngakau;

28 Ae, penei ka kite tatou e puare ana te tatau o te rangi ki te katoa, ara, ki te hunga e whakapono ana ki te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti, ko ia nei te Tama a te Atua;

29 Ae, ka kite tatou ko te tangata e mau ana ki te kupu a te Atua, e ora tonu nei, e mana tonu nei, e wehe nei i nga tinihanga katoa, i nga mahanga, me nga whakawainga a te rewera, e arahi nei hoki i ta te Karaiti tangata i roto i nga huarahi tika, huarahi whaiti, e whakawhiti atu ana i te tawha mau tonu o te pouritanga, kua whakaritea nei hei horomanga ake mo te hunga kino,

30 Me te kawe i o ratou wairua, ae ra, i o ratou wairua mate-kore, ki te ringa matau o te Atua, ki roto ki te kingitanga o te rangi, kia noho tahi me Aperahama, me Ihaka, me Hakopa, me o tatou matua tapu katoa ano hoki, a heoi ano te putanga ki waho.

31 Na, hono tonu te hari i tenei tau i roto i te whenua o Harahemera, i nga wahi katoa hoki e patata ana, i te whenua katoa ano hoki e nohoia ana e nga Niwhai.

32 A he rangimarie, he koa nui i te toenga o te wha tekau ma iwa o nga tau: ae ra, hua tonu ano hoki te rangimarie me te koa nui i te rima tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

33 A i te rima tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i mau tonu te rangimarie, haunga te whakapehapeha ka timata nei te puta i roto i te hahi: he teka ki te hahi a te Atua, engari ki roto ki nga ngakau o te iwi nana nei te ki, no te hahi ratou a te Atua;

34 A ka neke ake ratou i runga i te whakahihi, no ka whakatoi ratou i te tini o o ratou teina. Na, he kino nui tenei, na konei i meinga ai te wahi o te iwi he ngakau iti to ratou, kia mamae i nga whakatoinga taimaha, kia haere i roto i te pouri nui;

And it came to pass that the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting to the church of God, many souls, yea, even tens of thousands.

Thus we may see that the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their hearts, call upon his holy name.

Yea, thus we see that the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

Yea, we see that whosoever will may lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful, which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and the wiles of the devil, and lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the wicked—

And land their souls, yea, their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of heaven, to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with all our holy fathers, to go no more out.

And in this year there was continual rejoicing in the land of Zarahemla, and in all the regions round about, even in all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that there was peace and exceedingly great joy in the remainder of the forty and ninth year; yea, and also there was continual peace and great joy in the fiftieth year of the reign of the judges.

And in the fifty and first year of the reign of the judges there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church—not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God—

And they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren. Now this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

35 Ahakoa ra honohono tonu a ratou inoi me a ratou noho puku, a ka tupu ka kaha, ka kaha rawa i runga i to ratou whakaititanga, ka u rawa i runga i te whakapono o te Karaiti, no ka ki tonu o ratou wairua i te hari i te rangimarie, ae ra, ka whakamakia, ka whakatapua o ratou ngakau, a ko taua whakatapunga he mea na ta ratou tukunga atu i o ratou ngakau ki te Atua.

36 Nawai a, ka mutu ano hoki te rima tekau ma rua o nga tau i runga i te rangimarie, haunga ra te tino whakahihi nui kua tupu ake i roto i nga ngakau o te iwi; he mea hoki tenei na o ratou taonga nui rawa me to ratou whai pai i runga i te whenua; a tupu tonu ana tenei i roto i a ratou i tenei ra, i tenei ra.

37 Na, i te rima tekau ma toru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka mate a Heramana, a ko tana tama matamua ko Niwhai te kai whakahaere i muri i a ia. A ka noho ia i te nohoanga whakawa i runga i te tika i te pono; ae, ka pupuri ia i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, ka haere hoki i nga ara o tona papa.

Nevertheless they did fast and pray oft, and did wax stronger and stronger in their humility, and firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ, unto the filling their souls with joy and consolation, yea, even to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts, which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

And it came to pass that the fifty and second year ended in peace also, save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people; and it was because of their exceedingly great riches and their prosperity in the land; and it did grow upon them from day to day.

And it came to pass in the fifty and third year of the reign of the judges, Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead. And it came to pass that he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity; yea, he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 4

- 1 Na, i te rima tekau ma wha o nga tau he maha nga wehewehenga i roto i te hahi, he tautohetohenga ano hoki i roto i te iwi, no ka nui rawa te whakaheke toto;
- 2 Na, ko te wahi tutu ka patupatua, ka aia atu i te whenua, a haere atu ana ratou ki te kingi o nga Ramana.
- 3 Nawai a, ka whakamatau ratou ki te whakaoho i nga Ramana kia haere mai ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai; engari, he nui te wehi o nga Ramana, i kihai ratou i whakarongo ki nga kupu a taua hunga kotiti ke.
- 4 Heoi i te rima tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka haere etahi atu tangata puta ke no nga Niwhai ki nga Ramana; a ka rite ta ratou ki ta era hei whakaoho i nga Ramana kia riri ki nga Niwhai; a pau noa taua tau katoa i a ratou e whakariterite ana mo te whawhai.
- 5 Na, i te rima tekau ma whitu o nga tau, ka haere iho ratou ki nga Niwhai ki te whawhai, a ka timata ratou ki te mahi whakamate: ae ra, no ka riro i a ratou, i te rima tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whaka haeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, te whenua o Harahemera; ae ra, me nga whenua katoa ano hoki, tae noa atu ki te whenua a tata atu nei ki te whenua o Momona;
- 6 A aia atu ana nga Niwhai, me nga taua a Moroniha, ki roto ki te whenua o Momona;
- 7 A ka hanga pa whawhai ratou ki reira hei tuunga atu ki nga Ramana; i te moana ki te hauauru tae noa atu ki te rawhiti; kotahi tonu hoki te ra e haere ai tetahi o nga Niwhai i runga i te rohe kua hanga nei e ratou nga pa whawhai kua whakanohoia nei hoki a ratou taua, hei tiaki i to ratou whenua ki te nota.
- 8 A penei ko aua hunga puta ke no nga Niwhai, i runga i te awhinatanga a tetahi taua nui a nga Ramana, ka whiwhi ki nga kainga katoa o nga Niwhai i roto nei i te whenua whaka-te-tonga. Na, i meatia katoatia tenei i te rima tekau ma waru, ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

## Helaman 4

And it came to pass in the fifty and fourth year there were many dissensions in the church, and there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

And the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land, and they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites; but behold, the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid, insomuch that they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

But it came to pass in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites; and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites; and they were all that year preparing for war.

And in the fifty and seventh year they did come down against the Nephites to battle, and they did commence the work of death; yea, insomuch that in the fifty and eighth year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla; yea, and also all the lands, even unto the land which was near the land Bountiful.

And the Nephites and the armies of Moronihah were driven even into the land of Bountiful;

And there they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day's journey for a Nephite, on the line which they had fortified and stationed their armies to defend their north country.

And thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward. And all this was done in the fifty and eighth and ninth years of the reign of the judges.

- 9 Na, i te ono tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka riro mai ano i a Moroniha ratou ko ana taua nga wahi maha o te whenua; ae ra, ka riro ano i a ratou nga pa maha kua taka nei ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana.
- 10 A i te ono tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka riro ano i a ratou te hawhe o o ratou kainga katoa.
- 11 Na, me i kore ta nga Niwhai kino me ta ratou mahi whakarihariha i roto i a ratou, ae, i roto ra i te hunga na ratou ano te kino te hahi ratou o te Atua, penei, kua kore tenei matenga e tupono ki a ratou, me te patunga nui i roto i a ratou;
- 12 A he meatanga tenei na te whakahi o o ratou ngakau, mo a ratou taonga whakaharahara, ae ra, mo ta ratou tukino ki te rawa-kore, mo te kaiponu i a ratou kai ki te hunga mate-kai, mo te kaiponu i o ratou kakahu ki te hunga kakahu-kore, mo te papaki i te paparinga o o ratou teina ngakau iti, mo te tawai ki nga mea tapu, mo te whakakorekore ki te Wairua o te poropititanga, o te whakakitenga, mo te kohuru, mo te patu, mo te tekateka, mo te mahi puremu, mo te whakaara tautohetohenga nunui, mo te putanga ketanga atu ki te whenua o Niwhai ki roto ki nga Ramana;
- 13 A mo tenei mo ta ratou kino nui, me to ratou whakahihi i runga i to ratou ake kaha, na, ka waiho ratou ki to ratou ake kaha; na reira kihai ratou i kake, engari i whakamamaetia, i pakia, i aia atu hoki i mua i te aroaro o nga Ramana, a wahi iti kua ngaro atu i a ratou o ratou whenua katoa.
- 14 Otira, ka kauwhau atu a Moroniha i nga mea maha ki te iwi, he mea na to ratou kino, me Niwhai hoki raua ko Rihai, ko nga tamariki enei a Heramana, ka kauwhau atu i nga mea maha ki te iwi; ae ra, ka poropiti hoki i nga mea maha ki a ratou mo a ratou he, me te mea hoki e puta mai ai ki a ratou ki te kore ratou e ripeneta ki o ratou hara.
- 15 Nawai a, ka ripeneta ratou, a i a ratou ka ripeneta nei, ka anga ka whai pai ratou;
- 16 Na, i te mea, ka kite a Moroniha, i to ratou ripenetatanga, ka maia ia ki te arahi atu i a ratou ki tenei wahi, ki tenei wahi, ki tenei pa, ki tenei pa, tae noa ki te rironga i a ratou o te hawhe o o ratou taonga me te hawhe o o ratou whenua katoa.

And it came to pass in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land; yea, they regained many cities which had fallen into the hands of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

Now this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them; yea, and it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

And it was because of the pride of their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, yea, it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked, and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek, making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation, murdering, plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery, rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites—

And because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength, they were left in their own strength; therefore they did not prosper, but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

But behold, Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity, and also Nephi and Lehi, who were the sons of Helaman, did preach many things unto the people, yea, and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities, and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

And it came to pass that they did repent, and inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

For when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place, and from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property and the one-half of all their lands.

17 Na, penei ka mutu te ono tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

18 A i te ono tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka kore a Moroniha e whiwhi ki tetahi atu kainga i nga Ramana;

19 No reira, i whakarere ai ratou i ta ratou whakaaro puku, kia riro mai ano i a ratou te toenga o o ratou whenua, na te tokomaha hoki o nga Ramana i kore ai e ahei i nga Niwhai te whai mana ki runga ki a ratou: no reira ka meinga e Moroniha ana taua katoa hei tiaki mo aua wahi kua riro mai nei i a ia.

20 Na, i te tini o nga Ramana ka wehi nui nga Niwhai, kei taea ratou, kei takahia iho, kei patua, kei whakamatea rawatia;

21 Ae ra, ka anga ka mahara ratou ki nga poropititanga a Arami, ki nga kupu hoki a Mohia; a ka kite ratou he iwi kaki maro ratou, kua whakakahore ano hoki ratou i nga whakahaunga a te Atua;

22 Kua whakaputaia ketia e ratou, kua takatakahia e o ratou waewae nga ture a Mohia, ara, te mea i whakahaua ai e te Ariki ki a ia kia homai e ia ki te iwi; a penei ka kite tatou kua whakananua a ratou ture ki te kino, a ko ratou kua meinga hei iwi kino ratou, he pera me nga Ramana.

23 A na to ratou kino i timata ai te iti haere o te hahi; a ka anga ratou ka whakahawea ki te Wairua o te poropititanga, ki te Wairua ano hoki o te whakakitenga; na, tu ana he kanohi, he kanohi nga whakawakanga a te Atua ki a ratou.

24 A ka kite ano ratou kua ngoikore ratou, kua rite ki o ratou teina ki nga Ramana, a heoi ano to te Wairua o te Ariki tiakanga i a ratou; ae ra, ko ia i wehe atu i a ratou no te mea e kore te Wairua o te Ariki e noho i nga temepara poke;

25 Na konei i mutu ai ta te Atua tiaki i a ratou, i runga i tona kaha whakamiharo, i tona kaha kahore nei ona rite, no te mea kua taka ratou ki roto ki te whakapono kore, ki roto ki te kino weriweri, na, ka kite ratou nui noa ake nga Ramana i a ratou, a ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, kahore e kore te mate mo ratou.

And thus ended the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And it came to pass in the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges, that Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

Therefore they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands, for so numerous were the Lamanites that it became impossible for the Nephites to obtain more power over them; therefore Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

And it came to pass, because of the greatness of the number of the Lamanites the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

Yea, they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, and also the words of Mosiah; and they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, and that they had set at naught the commandments of God;

And that they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give unto the people; and they saw that their laws had become corrupted, and that they had become a wicked people, insomuch that they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

And because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; and they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation; and the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

And they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites, and that the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; yea, it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples—

Therefore the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness; and they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God they must unavoidably perish.

26 Ina hoki, ka kite ratou i te kaha o nga Ramana, ka rite nei ki to ratou kaha, ae ra, he tangata mo te tangata. Na, penei kua taka ratou ki tenei he nui; ae, penei kua ngoikore ratou, he mea na ta ratou he, i enei tau ruarua.

For behold, they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as their strength, even man for man. And thus had they fallen into this great transgression; yea, thus had they become weak, because of their transgression, in the space of not many years.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 5

- 1 Nawai a, i taua tau ra ano, ka tukua atu e Niwhai te nohoanga whakawa ki tetahi tangata nona nei te ingoa ko Hetorama.
- 2 I te mea hoki ko a ratou ture me a ratou tikanga mo te kawanatanga he mea whakarite e te pooti a te iwi, a ko te hunga i whiriwhiri nei i te kino nui noa ake i te hunga i whiriwhiri nei i te pai, no reira e pakari ana ratou mo te whakangaromanga, no te mea kua whakananua a ratou ture;
- 3 A ehara tenei i te katoa; he iwi kaki maro ratou, no ka kore ratou e whakahaeretia e te ture, e te tika ranei, ki te kore ratou e whakangaromia.
- 4 Na, kua hoha a Niwhai i to ratou kino hoki; a tukua atu ana e ia te nohoanga whakawa, a mau ana ki runga ki a ia te tikanga ki te kauwhau i te kupu a te Atua i te toenga o ona ra katoa, me tona teina hoki me Rihai, te toenga o ona ra katoa;
- 5 Ka mahara hoki raua ki nga kupu i korero ai to raua papa ki a raua. Na, ko enei nga kupu i korero ai ia:
- 6 Nana, e aku tamariki tane, e hiahia ana ahau kia mahara tonu korua ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua; a e mea ana hoki ahau kia whakapuakina atu e korua enei kupu ki te iwi, na, kua hoatu nei e ahau nga ingoa o o tatou matua tuatahi, i haere mai ai i roto i te whenua o Hiruharama, hei ingoa mo korua; a kua meatia tenei e au, hei whakamaharatanga i a korua ki a raua, ina mahara korua ki a korua na ingoa; a ina mahara korua ki a raua kia mahara ano hoki korua ki a raua mahi: a ina mahara korua ki a raua mahi, ka mohio ano hoki korua ki te mea i korerotia, i tuhituhia hoki, he pai aua mea;
- 7 Na, e aku tamariki tane, e mea ana ahau kia mahi korua i te pai, kia rite ai nga kupu i korerotia mo korua, me nga tuhituhinga ano hoki ki nga kupu kua korerotia kua tuhituhia mo raua.

## Helaman 5

And it came to pass that in this same year, behold, Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name was Cezoram.

For as their laws and their governments were established by the voice of the people, and they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose good, therefore they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become corrupted.

Yea, and this was not all; they were a stiffnecked people, insomuch that they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were to their destruction.

And it came to pass that Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity; and he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to preach the word of God all the remainder of his days, and his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

For they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake unto them. And these are the words which he spake:

Behold, my sons, I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments of God; and I would that ye should declare unto the people these words. Behold, I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem; and this I have done that when you remember your names ye may remember them; and when ye remember them ye may remember their works; and when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

Therefore, my sons, I would that ye should do that which is good, that it may be said of you, and also written, even as it has been said and written of them.



- 8 Na, e aku tamariki tane, tetahi atu mea aku e hiahia atu nei ahau mo korua, koia tenei, kei mea korua i enei mea hei whakamanamana ma korua, engari kia meatia enei mea e korua hei puranga ake i tetahi taonga ma korua ki roto i te rangi, i tetahi mea mau tonu, i tetahi mea kaore e memeha atu; kia whiwhi ai hoki korua ki taua homaitanga utu nui, ara, ki te oranga tonutanga, nga mea e whakaaro nei tatou kua hoatu ki o tatou tupuna.
- 9 Kia mahara, kia mahara, e aku tamariki tane, ki nga kupu i korerotia e kingi Peniamine ki tona iwi: ae ra, kia mahara, kahore atu he huarahi e whakaorangia ai te tangata, ma runga anake i nga toto houhanga rongo o Ihu Karaiti, e haere mai ana: ae ra, kia mahara kei te haere mai ia ki te hoko i te ao.
- 10 Kia mahara ano hoki ki nga kupu i korerotia e Amureke ki a Teroma, i te pa o Amonihah; i mea hoki ia ki a ia, he pono era e haere mai te Ariki ki te hoko i tona iwi; otira e kore ia e haere mai ki te hoko i a ratou i roto i o ratou hara, engari ki te hoko mai i a ratou ki waho i o ratou hara.
- 11 A kua homai e te Matua ki a ia te mana, hei hoko mai i a ratou i o ratou hara i runga i te ripenetatanga; koia i tonoa ai e ia ana anahera ki te whakapuaki i nga tikanga o te ripenetatanga, e whakaputaina ai ki raro i te mana o te Kai-hoko, hei whakaora i o ratou wairua.
- 12 Na, e aku tamariki tane, kia mahara, kia mahara hei runga hei te kamaka o to tatou Kai-hoko, koia nei a te Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua, e hanga ai korua i to korua turanga, a ka tonoa e te rewera ana hau kaha; ae ra, ana pere i roto i te awhiowhio; a, te panga ano hoki o ana whatu katoa me ana marangai nunui ki runga ki a korua ka kore e whai kaha ki runga i a korua hei kukume iho i a korua ki roto ki te tawha o te pouri, o te aue mutunga kore, no te kamaka hoki kua hanga nei korua ki runga, koia he turanga tuturu, a ki te hanga nga tangata ki runga ki tenei turanga, e kore ratou e hinga.
- 13 Na, ko nga kupu enei i whakaakona ra e Heramana ki ana tamariki tane; ae, he maha nga mea kahore i tuhituhia, i whakaako na ki a raua, me nga mea maha ano hoki kua oti te tuhituhi.

And now my sons, behold I have somewhat more to desire of you, which desire is, that ye may not do these things that ye may boast, but that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven, yea, which is eternal, and which fadeth not away; yea, that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life, which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

O remember, remember, my sons, the words which king Benjamin spake unto his people; yea, remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved, only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, who shall come; yea, remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

And remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom, in the city of Ammonihah; for he said unto him that the Lord surely should come to redeem his people, but that he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

And he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance; therefore he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

And now, my sons, remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation; that when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds, yea, his shafts in the whirlwind, yea, when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

And it came to pass that these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons; yea, he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

14 Na, ka mahara raua ki ana kupu; koia raua ka haere atu, me te pupuri ano i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, ki te whakaako i te kupu a te Atua i roto i te iwi katoa o Niwhai, ka timata ai i te pa o Momona;

15 A, i reira atu ki te pa o Kire; a, i te pa o Kire ki te pa o Mureke;

16 A ki tenei pa, ki tenei pa, a puta noa i te iwi katoa o Niwhai, e noho ana i te whenua whaka-te-tonga: a, i reira mai ki roto ki te whenua o Harahemera, ki waenganui i nga Ramana.

17 Nawai a, ka kauwhau raua i runga i te kaha nui no ka whakapororarutia e raua te tini o te hunga i puta atu, i haere atu i nga Niwhai, a haere mai ana ratou, me te whaki ano i o ratou hara, a ka rumakina ratou, hei mea ripenetatanga, na, hoki wawe ana ki nga Niwhai, tohetohē ana ki te whakatikatika i nga he i meatia ai e ratou.

18 A ka kauwhau a Niwhai raua ko Rihai ki nga Ramana i runga i te kaha nui me te mana, i homai hoki he kaha, he mana ki a raua kia korero ai raua; a homai ana ki a raua ta raua e korero ai;

19 Koia i korero ai raua hei mea whakamiharo nui ki nga Ramana, hei whakamohio i a ratou, no ka waru mano o nga Ramana i roto i te whenua o Harahemera, me nga wahi tutata hoki, ka rumakina, hei mea ripenetatanga, kua whakamohiotia ano hoki ratou ki te kino o nga whakarereanga iho a o ratou tupuna.

20 Na, ka haere atu a Niwhai raua ko Rihai i reira ki te whenua o Niwhai.

21 Na, ka mau raua i tetahi taua a nga Ramana, a maka ana ki roto ki te whare herehere; ae ra, ki roto ki taua whare herehere ra ano i maka ra a Amona ratou ko ona teina e nga pononga a Rimihī.

22 Nawai a, i muri i to raua makanga ki roto ki te whare herehere mo nga ra maha kahore hoki he kai, nana, ka haere atu ratou ki roto ki te whare herehere, ki te mau i a raua kia patua.

And they did remember his words; and therefore they went forth, keeping the commandments of God, to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi, beginning at the city Bountiful;

And from thenceforth to the city of Gid; and from the city of Gid to the city of Mulek;

And even from one city to another, until they had gone forth among all the people of Nephi who were in the land southward; and from thence into the land of Zarahemla, among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites, insomuch that they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority, for they had power and authority given unto them that they might speak, and they also had what they should speak given unto them—

Therefore they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them, insomuch that there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did proceed from thence to go to the land of Nephi.

And it came to pass that they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison; yea, even in that same prison in which Ammon and his brethren were cast by the servants of Limhi.

And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

23 Na, ka karapotitia a Niwhai raua ko Rihai ki tetahi mea ano he ahi, no ka kore o ratou maia kia pa atu o ratou ringaringa ki a raua, i te wehi hoki kei wera ratou. Ko Niwhai ia raua ko Rihai kihai i wera, na, e tu ana raua i roto i te ahi, a kihai raua i wera.

24 Na, to raua kitenga e karapotitia ana raua e tetahi pou ahi, a kahore raua i wera, ka maia ake o raua ngakau.

25 Ka kite hoki raua i nga Ramana kahore i maia kia pa mai o ratou ringaringa ki a raua; kahore ano hoki i maia kia whakatata mai ki a raua, engari ka tu atu ratou me te mea kua reo-kore i te ohorere.

26 Na, ka tu atu a Niwhai raua ko Rihai, ka anga ka korero atu ki a ratou, ka mea, Kaua e wehi, ina hoki na te Atua tenei mea whakamiharo i whakaatu ki a koutou, a na tenei hoki i whakaatu ki a koutou e kore o koutou ringaringa e ahei te pa mai ki a maua hei patu i a maua.

27 Nana, i ta raua korerotanga i enei kupu, he nui te ngaueuetanga o te whenua, a ngaueue ana ano nga pakitara o te whare herehere, me te mea e tata ana te hinga ki te whenua; otira kihai i hinga. Na, ko te hunga i roto nei i te whare herehere, he Ramana, he Niwhai, ara ko nga Niwhai kotiti ke.

28 Na, ka taumarumarua iho ratou e tetahi kapua pouri, ka pa te wehi nui whakapawera ki a ratou.

29 A ka puta mai tetahi reo me te mea kei runga ake ia i te kapua pouri ka mea mai, Ripeneta koutou, ripeneta koutou, kati ano te rapu i te whakangaromanga mo aku pononga kua tonoa nei e ahau ki a koutou, ki te whakapuaki i nga rongu whakahari.

30 Ano ka rongu ratou i tenei reo, a ka mohio ehara ia i te reo whatitiri; ehara hoki ia i te reo ngangau nui; engari he reo iti, he mea tino rangimarie, ano he kohimuhimu, a ngoto rawa ki te tino wairua.

31 A ahakoa he mea rangimarie te reo, he nui rawa te ngaueue o te whenua, a ka ngaueue ano nga pakitara o te whare herehere, me te mea tata pu te hinga iho ki te whenua; a mau tonu ana te kapua i taumarumarua iho ki runga ki a ratou.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned. Nevertheless, Nephi and Lehi were not burned; and they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

And when they saw that they were encircled about with a pillar of fire, and that it burned them not, their hearts did take courage.

For they saw that the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

And it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them, saying: Fear not, for behold, it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing, in the which is shown unto you that ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

And behold, when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble to the earth; but behold, they did not fall. And behold, they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who were dissenters.

And it came to pass that they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness, and an awful solemn fear came upon them.

And it came to pass that there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

And it came to pass when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice of thunder, neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise, but behold, it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul—

And notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth shook exceedingly, and the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to tumble to the earth; and behold the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not disperse—

32 Na, puta mai ana ano te reo, mea mai ana, Ripeneta koutou, ripeneta koutou, kei te tata mai hoki te kingitanga o te rangi; kati ano te rapu i te whakangaromanga mo aku pononga. A, ngaueue ana ano te whenua, a ngaueue ana nga pakitara;

33 Na, puta mai ana ano te reo, ko te tuatoru o nga putanga mai, a whakapuaki mai ana ki a ratou i nga kupu whakamiharo e kore nei e taea e te tangata te whakapuaki; na, ngaueue ana ano nga pakitara, ngaueue ana ano hoki te whenua, me te mea tata pu te pakaru i waenganui.

34 Na, kahore nga Ramana i kaha ki te oma atu, he mea na te kapua i taumarumarua nei ratou; ae ra, te taea e ratou te korikori, he mea na te wehi i pa nei ki a ratou.

35 Na, tera tetahi tangata i roto i a ratou, he Niwhai ia i tona whanautanga, no roto hoki ia i te hahi o te Atua i mua, heoi kua puta i roto i a ratou.

36 Na, ka tahuri tenei, a ka kite ia i nga mata o Niwhai raua ko Rihai i roto i te kapua pouri; anana, te tino whitinga o te kanapatanga, ano he mata anahera. Ka kite ano ia kei te anga o raua kanohi ki te rangi; a to raua ahua, me te mea e korero ana, ara, e pa atu ana to raua reo ki tetahi tangata i kite nei raua.

37 Na, ka karanga atu tenei tangata ki te mano, kia tahuri mai ratou kia kite. Nana, ka homai he kaha ki a ratou, a ka tahuri mai ratou kia kite; a ka kite ratou i nga mata o Niwhai raua ko Rihai.

38 Na, ka ki mai ratou ki taua tangata, Nana, he aha te tikanga o enei mea? a ko wai tera e korero tahi nei enei tangata ki a ia?

39 Na, te ingoa o tenei tangata ko Aminatapa. A ka ki mai a Aminatapa ki a ratou, e korero tahi ana ratou ko nga anahera a te Atua.

40 A ka mea mai nga Ramana ki a ia, Me aha matou, e tangohia atu ai tenei kapua pouri e taumarumarua iho nei i a matou?

41 Na, ka mea atu a Aminatapa ki a ratou, Me ripeneta koutou, me karanga ki te reo, a kia whakapono ra ano koutou ki a te Karaiti, i whakaakona atu nei ki a koutou e Arami, e Amureke, e Teroma; katahi ka tangohia atu tenei e taumarumarua iho nei i a koutou.

And behold the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand; and seek no more to destroy my servants. And it came to pass that the earth shook again, and the walls trembled.

And also again the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man; and the walls did tremble again, and the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness which did overshadow them; yea, and also they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon them.

Now there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented from them.

And it came to pass that he turned him about, and behold, he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and Lehi; and behold, they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels. And he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven; and they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to some being whom they beheld.

And it came to pass that this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and look. And behold, there was power given unto them that they did turn and look; and they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

And they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean, and who is it with whom these men do converse?

Now the man's name was Aminadab. And Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites said unto him: What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

And Aminadab said unto them: You must repent, and cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom; and when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

42 Nawai a, ka karanga ratou katoa ki te reo o tera nana nei i whakangaeue te whenua; koia ka karanga tonu ratou, a te ngaronga ra ano o te kapua pouri.

43 Na, i to ratou tirohanga ake kua ngaro te kapua pouri i taumarumarua iho nei i a ratou, nana, ka kite ratou e karapotitia ana ratou, ae ra, nga wairua katoa e te pou ahi.

44 A kei waenganui ano a Niwhai raua ko Rihai i a ratou kei te kapura muramura, otira kihai ratou i ahatia, kihai ano hoki nga pakitara o te whare herehere i pau; a ki tonu ratou i taua hari e kore nei e taea te korero, e ki tonu nei i te kororia.

45 Nana, ka tau iho te Wairua Ora o te Atua i te rangi, a tomo ana ki roto ki o ratou ngakau, na, ki tonu ratou me te mea he ahi, a ka ahei ratou te korero i nga kupu whakamiharo.

46 Na, ka puta mai tetahi reo ki a ratou, ae, he reo hari, me te mea he kohimuhimu, ka mea,

47 Kia tau te rangimarie, kia tau te rangimarie ki a koutou, he mea na to koutou whakapono ki taku e aroha nei, no te orokohanganga mai ia o te ao.

48 Na, i to ratou rongonga i tenei, ka titiro ake o ratou whatu he mea kia kite i te wahi i puta mai ai te reo; nana, ka kite ratou i nga rangi e tuwhera ana: me nga anahera e heke iho ana i te rangi, na, minita mai ana ki a ratou.

49 A, tata ki te toru rau nga wairua i kite i rongo i enei mea; a, ka whakahaua ratou kia haere atu, kia kaua e miharo, kia kaua ano hoki e ruarua.

50 A haere atu ana ratou, minita ana ki te iwi, whakapuaki ana i roto i nga wahi katoa e patata ana, i nga mea katoa i rongo ai, i kite ai ratou, no ka whakaae te wahi nui o nga Ramana ki ta ratou, he mea hoki na te nui o nga mea i whakaaturia ki a ratou;

51 A ko nga mea i whakatahuritia mai ka papare ake i a ratou mea whawhai, i o ratou kino, me nga whakarereanga iho a o ratou tupuna.

52 Nawai a, ka whakahokia atu e ratou ki nga Niwhai nga whenua i nohoia ai e ratou.

And it came to pass that they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth; yea, they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

And it came to pass that when they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them, behold, they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

And Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them; yea, they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison; and they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

And behold, the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts, and they were filled as if with fire, and they could speak forth marvelous words.

And it came to pass that there came a voice unto them, yea, a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper, saying:

Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

And now, when they heard this they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came; and behold, they saw the heavens open; and angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

And there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things; and they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

And it came to pass that they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen, insomuch that the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

And as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 6

- 1 Na, i te wa i mutu ai te ono tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, kua rite enei mea katoa, a ko nga Ramana, ara, te wahi nui o ratou, kua riro hei iwi tika, no ka nui ake to ratou tika i to nga Niwhai, he mea na to ratou u, na to ratou pumau i roto i te whakapono.
- 2 No te mea, he tokomaha o nga Niwhai kua riro hei tangata pakeke, hei tangata ripeneta kore, hei tangata kino whakaharahara, no ka whakaparahako ratou ki te kupu a te Atua, me nga kauwhautanga katoa, me nga poropititanga i puta mai ai ki waenganui i a ratou.
- 3 Ahakoa ra, i hari nui te iwi o te hahi, i te whakatahuritanga mai o nga Ramana; ae ra, mo te hahi o te Atua kua whakaturia ki waenganui i a ratou. A, ka whakauruuru ratou ki a ratou, ka hari, ka tino ki ano i te koa.
- 4 Na, ka haere iho nga Ramana tokomaha ki roto ki te whenua o Harahemera, me te whakaatu atu ano ki te iwi o nga Niwhai i te ahua o to ratou whakatahuritanga mai me te whakahauhau ano i a ratou kia whakapono kia ripeneta;
- 5 Na, he tokomaha o ratou ka kauwhau i runga i te kaha me te mana nui no ka whakahokia iho he tini o ratou kia ngakau papaku, hei hunga ngakau iti e aru ana i te Atua raua ko te Reme.
- 6 Na, he tini hoki o nga Ramana ka haere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota; me Niwhai ano raua ko Rihai i haere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, ki te kauwhau ki te iwi. A penei ka mutu te ono tekau ma toru o nga tau.
- 7 Na, ka mau te rongo puta noa i te whenua katoa, no ka haere nga Niwhai ki ta ratou wahi o te whenua i pai ai, ahakoa ki roto ki nga Niwhai, ki roto ranei ki nga Ramana.
- 8 A ka haere ano hoki nga Ramana ki ta ratou wahi i pai ai, ahakoa ki roto ki nga Ramana, ahakoa ranei ki roto ki nga Niwhai, a e penei ana ta ratou uruuru noa tetahi ki tetahi, ki te hoko atu, ki te hoko mai, ki te mahi taonga ano hoki, i runga i ta ratou hiahia.

## Helaman 6

And it came to pass that when the sixty and second year of the reign of the judges had ended, all these things had happened and the Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people, inso-much that their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites, because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

For behold, there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened and impenitent and grossly wicked, inso-much that they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

Nevertheless, the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites, yea, because of the church of God, which had been established among them. And they did fellowship one with another, and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion, and did exhort them to faith and repentance.

Yea, and many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility, to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

And it came to pass that many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward; and also Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people. And thus ended the sixty and third year.

And behold, there was peace in all the land, inso-much that the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites; and thus they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

- 9      Nawai a, ka whai taonga nui rawa ratou, nga Ramana me nga Niwhai ano hoki; na, ranea tonu a ratou koura, a ratou hiriwa, me nga kohatu utu nui o nga ahua katoa, i te whenua ki te tonga, i te whenua ano hoki ki te nota.
- 10     Na, e karangatia ana te whenua ki te tonga ko Rihai, te whenua ki te nota e karangatia ana ko Mureke, koia nei te karangatanga ki te tama a Terekia; ka kawea hoki e te Ariki ko Mureke ki te whenua ki te nota, ko Rihai ki te whenua ki te tonga.
- 11     Na, ko nga ahua katoa o te koura kei enei whenua e rua, o te hiriwa, o nga oa hoki o ia tu, o ia tu: a he tautohito ano, na ratou i mahi nga tu oa katoa, a na ratou ano i tahu; a penei ka whai taonga ratou.
- 12     A he ranea te kereene i whakatupuria e ratou, i te whenua ki te nota, i te whenua hoki ki te tonga; a kake nui ana ratou i te nota, i te tonga. A ka tokomaha haere ratou, ka tupu, ka kaha rawa i runga i te whenua. A he maha a ratou kahui o nga ahua katoa, ae ra, he maha ano nga kua o momona i whakatupu ai ratou.
- 13     Na, ko a ratou wahine ka mahi ka miro, ka hanga i nga kakahu katoa ki te rinena miro pai, me nga tu kakahu katoa, hei kakahu mo o ratou wahi tahanga. A penei ka pahemo atu i runga i te rangimarie te ono tekau ma wha o nga tau.
- 14     A he nui ano to ratou hari me to ratou koa i te ono tekau ma rima o nga tau; ae, he nui ano nga kauwhautanga me nga poropititanga mo nga mea e takoto ake nei. Na, i penei te pahemotanga atu o te ono tekau ma rima o nga tau.
- 15     Na, i te ono tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, nana, ka kohurutia a Hetorama i a ia e noho ana i runga i te nohoanga whakawa, e tetahi ringa kahore nei i mohiotia. A i taua tau ano, ko tana tama hoki, kua whakaritea nei hei kai whakakapi mona e te pooti a te iwi, ka kohurutia ano. A i penei te mutunga o te ono tekau ma ono o nga tau.
- 16     Na, i te timatanga o te ono tekau ma whitu o nga tau, ka timata ano te iwi te kino haere.

And it came to pass that they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the Nephites; and they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals, both in the land south and in the land north.

Now the land south was called Lehi, and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

And behold, there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind; and there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it; and thus they did become rich.

They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south; and they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south. And they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land. And they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

Behold their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness. And thus the sixty and fourth year did pass away in peace.

And in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace, yea, much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come. And thus passed away the sixty and fifth year.

And it came to pass that in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon the judgment-seat. And it came to pass that in the same year, that his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead, was also murdered. And thus ended the sixty and sixth year.

And in the commencement of the sixty and seventh year the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

17 Ina hoki, i roa te wa i manaakitia ai ratou e te Ariki ki nga taonga o te ao, a kihai i whakaohokia ratou ki te riri, ki te whawhai, ki te whakaheke toto ranei; koia ka tau nei o ratou ngakau ki a ratou taonga; ae ra, ka whai ratou i nga taonga he, kia kake ake ai ratou tetahi i tetahi; koia ano hoki ka anga nei ratou ka mahi i nga kohuru ngaro, ka tahae, ka muru, kia riro ai i a ratou nga taonga he.

18 Nana, ko enei kai kohuru me nga kai pahua, he ope ratou i whakaritea e Kihikumene raua ko Karianato. Na, he tokomaha ratou, o te ope o Karianato, i roto ano i nga Niwhai. Heoi hira noa ake to ratou tokomahatanga i roto i te wahi kino rawa o nga Ramana. A huaina ana ratou, ko nga kai pahua me nga kai kohuru a Karianato;

19 A na ratou i kohuru te Kai-whakariterite Nui, a Hetorama, raua ko tana tama i a raua i runga i te nohoanga whakawa; a kihai ratou i kitea.

20 Na, ano ka kite nga Ramana he kai pahua ano ki roto i a ratou, ka tino pouri ratou; a whakapaua ana e ratou to ratou kaha katoa kia hatepea atu ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua.

21 Heoi, ko Hatana te whakaoho ana i nga ngakau o te wahi nui o nga Niwhai no ka whakauru ratou ki roto ki aua ope pahua, a uru ana ki a ratou kawenata, me a ratou oati, kia tiakina, kia tohungia ratou tetahi e tetahi, i roto i nga oranga noatanga e tae ai ratou, kei mate ratou mo a ratou kohurutanga, mo a ratou pahuatanga, me a ratou tahaetanga.

22 Na, kei a ratou a ratou tohu, ae ra, a ratou tohu ngaro, me a ratou kupu ngaro; a he mea tenei kia mohio ai ratou ki te teina e uru mai nei ki te kawenata, a ahakoa he aha ranei te kino e meatia ai e tona teina, e kore ia e ahatia e tona teina, e te hunga ranei o tona ope, kua uru nei ki tenei kawenata;

23 A penei ka ahei i a ratou te kohuru, te pahua, te tahae, te mahi i nga puremutanga, me nga mea kino katoa, e whakahengia nei e nga ture o to ratou whenua, e nga ture ano hoki a te Atua;

For behold, the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to bloodshed; therefore they began to set their hearts upon their riches; yea, they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one above another; therefore they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to plunder, that they might get gain.

And now behold, those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been formed by Kishkumen and Gadianton. And now it had come to pass that there were many, even among the Nephites, of Gadianton's band. But behold, they were more numerous among the more wicked part of the Lamanites. And they were called Gadianton's robbers and murderers.

And it was they who did murder the chief judge Cezoram, and his son, while in the judgment-seat; and behold, they were not found.

And now it came to pass that when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among them they were exceedingly sorrowful; and they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the face of the earth.

But behold, Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites, insomuch that they did unite with those bands of robbers, and did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult circumstances they should be placed, that they should not suffer for their murders, and their plunderings, and their stealings.

And it came to pass that they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their secret words; and this that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

And thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.



- 24 A ki te mea ka whakaatu tetahi o te hunga o to ratou ope i ta ratou kino me a ratou mea whakarihariha ki te ao, ka whakawakia tera, kahore i runga i nga ture o to ratou whenua, engari i runga i nga ture o ta ratou kino, i homai ra ki a ratou e Karianato raua ko Kihikumene.
- 25 Nana, ko enei oati ngaro me nga kawenata i whakahaua iho e Arami ki tana tama, kei tukua atu ki te ao, kei riro hei mea e ngaro ai te iwi.
- 26 Heoi, kihai i puta atu aua oati ngaro me nga kawenata ki a Karianato i roto i nga tuhituhinga i tukua iho ki a Heramana; engari he mea homai enei ki roto ki te ngakau o Karianato, e taua mea ra ano nana nei i whakawai o tatou tupuna tuatahi kia kai i te hua kua oti te rahui.
- 27 Ae ra, ko taua mea ra ano i korororero tahi nei me Kaina, ki te mea ka patu ia i tona teina, i a Aperu, e kore e mohiotia e te ao. A korero tonu ana ia ki a Kaina ki nga tangata ano hoki e aru nei i a ia i taua wa mai ra ano.
- 28 A ko ia ano tera nana nei i whakaki nga ngakau o te iwi kia hanga i tetahi pourewa ma tona tiketike e tae ake ai ratou ki te rangi. Ko ia taua mea ra ano nana i whakaki te hunga i haere mai i taua pourewa ki tenei whenua; nana i whakahorapa haere nga mahi o te pouritanga, o te whakarihariha i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, a takina iho ana e ia te iwi ki te whakangaromanga rawatanga, ki te reinga mutungakore ano hoki;
- 29 Ae ra, ko ia taua mea ra ano nana i whakaki te ngakau o Karianato, kia whakahaere ano i te mahi o te pouritanga, me te kohurutanga ngaro; na, whakaputaina mai ana tenei e ia no te timatanga ra ano o te tangata, a tae noa ki tenei wa.
- 30 Nana, ko ia hoki te putake o nga hara katoa. Nana, kei te whakahaere tonu ia i ana mahi o te pouritanga me nga kohurutanga ngaro, kei te tuku iho hoki ia i a ratou tikanga, i a ratou oati, i a ratou kawenata, me a ratou kino whakarihariha, ki tenei whakatupuranga, ki tenei whakatupuranga, e rite ana ki tana kaha hei mau i nga ngakau o nga tamariki a te tangata.

And whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

Now behold, it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

Now behold, those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman; but behold, they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit—

Yea, that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world. And he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

And also it is that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven. And it was that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

Yea, it is that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder; and he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

And behold, it is he who is the author of all sin. And behold, he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, and doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants, and their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

- 31 Nana, kua whai kaha nui ia ki nga ngakau o nga Niwhai: ae ra, no ka kino rawa ratou; koia ko te wahi nui o ratou kua tahuri ke atu i te huarahi o te tika, kua takahia ki raro i o ratou waewae nga whakahaunga a te Atua, a tahuri atu ana ratou ki o ratou ake huarahi, hanga ana ma ratou nga whakapakoko ki a ratou koura me a ratou hiriwa.
- 32 Na, ko enei kino katoa kua puta mai ki a ratou, i nga tau torutoru nei, a ko te wahi nui i puta ki a ratou i te ono tekau ma whitu o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 33 A tupu ana ano ratou i roto i o ratou kino, i te ono tekau ma waru hoki o nga tau, ko te mea hoki tenei i pouri nui ai, i aue ai nga tangata tika.
- 34 A penei ka kite tatou ka iti haere te whakapono o nga Niwhai, ka tupu i roto i te kino i nga whakarihariha, ko nga Ramana ia ka tupu nui rawa i roto i te matauranga ki te Atua; ae ra, ka anga ka pupuri ratou i ana ture me ana whakahaunga, ka haere hoki i runga i te pono me te tika ki tona aroaro.
- 35 A, no reira ka kite tatou ko te Wairua o te Ariki ka timata te mawehe atu i nga Niwhai, he mea na te kino me te pakeke o o ratou ngakau.
- 36 A ka kite tatou ka riringi te Ariki i tona Wairua ki runga ki nga Ramana, he mea hoki na to ratou ngawari me to ratou hihiko ki te whakapono ki ana kupu.
- 37 Nawai a, ka rapu haere nga Ramana i taua ope o nga kai pahua o Karianato: ka kauwhau ratou i te kupu a te Atua i roto i nga wahi kino rawa o ratou, no ka tino whakakorea rawatia tenei ope o nga kai pahua i roto i nga Ramana.
- 38 Ko nga Niwhai ia i whakatupu i tautoko i a ratou, timata ai i to ratou wahi e nui ana te kino, a horapa noa ki runga ki te whenua katoa o nga Niwhai, a whakakotiti ke ana i te wahi nui o nga tangata tika, a ka heke iho ratou ka whakapono ki a ratou mahi, ka whiwhi tahi ki a ratou parakete, a uru tahi ana ratou ki roto ki a ratou kohurutanga ngaro me a ratou whakakotahitanga.

And now behold, he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; yea, insomuch that they had become exceedingly wicked; yea, the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness, and did trample under their feet the commandments of God, and did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

And it came to pass that all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years, insomuch that a more part of it had come unto them in the sixty and seventh year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And they did grow in their iniquities in the sixty and eighth year also, to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

And thus we see that the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations, while the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God; yea, they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

And thus we see that the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

And thus we see that the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; and they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them, insomuch that this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

And it came to pass on the other hand, that the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites, and had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

39 A penei ka whiwhi ratou ki te whakahaeretanga katoa o te kawanatanga, a takahia ana ki raro i o ratou waewae, patupatua ana, haehaetia ana, me te tahuri ano o ratou tuara ki te hunga rawa-kore, ki te hunga mahaki, ki te hunga ngakau iti e aru ana i te Atua.

40 Na, ka kite tatou i to ratou ahua he mea whakawehi, e pakari ana mo te whakangaromanga tonutanga.

41 Na, i penei te mutunga o te ono tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

And thus they did obtain the sole management of the government, insomuch that they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

And thus we see that they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that thus ended the sixty and eighth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

*KO TE POROPITITANGA A NIWHAI, A TE TAMA A HERAMANA.—Ka whakawebi te Atua i te iwi o Niwhai, tera ia e tiro tiro i a ratou i runga i tona riri, bei tino whakangaro i a ratou, ki te kahore ratou e ripeneta ki a ratou kino. Ka patua te iwi o Niwhai e te Atua ki tetabi mate uruta; ka ripeneta ratou, ka taburi mai ki a ia. Ka poropiti a Hamuera, he Ramana, ki te iwi o Niwhai.*

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 7

- 1 Na, i te ono tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ka hoki mai a Niwhai, tama a Heramana, ki te whenua o Harahemera, i te whenua whaka-te-nota;
- 2 I roto hoki ia i te iwi e noho ana i te whenua whaka-te-nota, e kauwhau ana i te kupu a te Atua ki a ratou, e poropiti ana i nga mea maha ki a ratou;
- 3 Na, ka whakaparahako ratou ki ana kupu katoa, no ka kore e ahei i a ia te noho i roto i a ratou, engari ka hoki mai ano ki tona whenua tupu:
- 4 Na, tona kitenga i te iwi i roto i tenei kino whakarihariha, me aua kai pahua o Karianato e noho ana i nga nohoanga whakawa; kua riro hoki i a ratou te kaha me te mana o te whenua; a he mea whakarere na ratou nga whakahaunga a te Atua, kahore rawa hoki o ratou tika i tona aroaro; kahore ano hoki ratou i mahi tika ki nga tamariki a te tangata;
- 5 Whakahe iho ana ratou i te hunga tika mo to ratou tika; a tuku noa ana i te hunga whai hara me te hunga kino, whakaaro hoki ki ta ratou moni; kia puritia tonutia hoki hei kai whakahaere tikanga i te upoko o te kawanatanga, kia whakahaere ratou kia mahi kia rite ki ta ratou e pai ai, kia whai taonga ai ratou, kia whai kororia ai i te ao; he mea ano kia ngawari ake ai te huarahi mo ratou kia mahi puremu, kia tahae, kia patu, kia mahi hoki kia rite ki a ratou ake e pai ai.
- 6 Na, kua puta mai tenei kino nui ki nga Niwhai i nga tau torutoru noa; a te kitenga o Niwhai, ka ki tona ngakau i te pouri i roto i tona uma, a hamama ana ia i te mamae o tona wairua,

*THE PROPHECY OF NEPHI, THE SON OF HELAMAN—God threatens the people of Nephi that he will visit them in his anger, to their utter destruction except they repent of their wickedness. God smiteth the people of Nephi with pestilence; they repent and turn unto him. Samuel, a Lamanite, prophesies unto the Nephites.*

## Helaman 7

Behold, now it came to pass in the sixty and ninth year of the reign of the judges over the people of the Nephites, that Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

For he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward, and did preach the word of God unto them, and did prophesy many things unto them;

And they did reject all his words, insomuch that he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

And seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness, and those Gadianton robbers filling the judgment-seats—having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God, and not in the least aright before him; doing no justice unto the children of men;

Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness; letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money; and moreover to be held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world, and, moreover, that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills—

Now this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years; and when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast; and he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

- 7 Aue, me i whiwhi ahau ki oku ra i nga ra i haere mai ai toku matua a Niwhai i te tuatahi i te whenua o Hiruharama, kia hari tahi ai me ia i te whenua i whakaaria; i reira e ngawari ana tona iwi kia akiakina, e u ana ano ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua, e puhoi ana kia arahina ki te mahi kino, a e hihiko ana ki te whakarongo ki nga kupu a te Ariki;
- 8 Ae ra, me he mea ko oku ra i taua wa, penei kua whai hari toku wairua i runga i te tika o oku teina.
- 9 Heoi kua tukua ahau ko oku ra enei, a ki tonu toku wairua i te pouri, mo tenei kino o oku teina.
- 10 Nana, kei runga ia kei tetahi pourewa, i roto i te kari o Niwhai, i te taha o te huanui e tika tonu atu ana ki te tino kainga hokohoko, i roto i te pa o Harahemera: a kua tuohu a Niwhai i runga i te pourewa i roto i tona kari, e tata ana ano hoki taua pourewa ki te kuwaha e tika ana ra te huanui.
- 11 Na, te haerenga atu o etahi tangata ra reira, ka kite i a Niwhai i runga i te pourewa e riringi ana i tona wairua ki tona Atua, na, oma atu ana ratou, korerotia atu ana ki te iwi te mea i kite ra ratou, na, huihui mai ana te iwi kia mohio ki te take o tenei pouri nui mo te kino o te iwi.
- 12 A ano ka ara a Niwhai, ka kite ia i nga mano o te iwi kua huihui mai.
- 13 Na, ka puaki tona mangai, ka mea atu ki a ratou, Nana, he aha koutou i huihui mai ai? Kia korero atu ianei ahau ki a koutou i o koutou kino?
- 14 Moku ianei i piki ake ki runga i toku pourewa, kia ringihia e ahau toku wairua ki waho ki toku Atua, i te tino pouri nui hoki o toku ngakau, he mea na to koutou kino?
- 15 A moku i tangi, moku i aue, kua whakamine mai koutou i a koutou ano, me te oho mai ano: na, tika rawa kia oho ake koutou, ae ra, tika tonu kia oho koutou, no te mea kua tukua atu koutou ki te rewera, a e puritia ana o koutou ngakau e ia;

Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem, that I could have joyed with him in the promised land; then were his people easy to be entreated, firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity; and they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord—

Yea, if my days could have been in those days, then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

But behold, I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

And behold, now it came to pass that it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla; therefore, Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

And it came to pass that there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower; and they ran and told the people what they had seen, and the people came together in multitudes that they might know the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

And now, when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

And it came to pass that he opened his mouth and said unto them: Behold, why have ye gathered yourselves together? That I may tell you of your iniquities?

Yea, because I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

And because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel; yea, and ye have great need to marvel; yea, ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

- 16 Na, he aha koutou i ngawari ai ki tana whakawai, ki ta te mea e whai nei ki te maka iho i o koutou wairua ki te mamae mau tonu, ki te aue e kore nei e mutu:
- 17 Ripeneta koutou, ripeneta koutou! mo te aha koutou kia mate? Tahuri mai koutou, tahuri mai koutou ki te Ariki ki to koutou Atua. Na te aha koutou i mahue ai i a ia?
- 18 Na koutou i whakapakeke i o koutou ngakau; ae ra, kahore o koutou pai ki te whakarongo ki te reo o te hepara pai; a kua whakapataritari koutou i a ia kia riri ki a koutou.
- 19 Nana, mo te whakaminemine i a koutou ka whakamararatia atu koutou e ia; ki te kore koutou e ripeneta, a ka waiho atu koutou hei kai ma nga kuri me nga kararehe mohoa.
- 20 Aue! i peheatia e koutou i wareware ai koutou ki to koutou Atua i te ra i whakaorangia ai koutou e ia?
- 21 Heoi, he mea tenei kia whai taonga ai koutou, kia whakamoemititia ai e nga tangata: ae ra, kia riro ai i a koutou he koura, he hiriwa. A kua tau o koutou ngakau ki nga taonga, ki nga mea memeha noa o tenei ao, he whakaaro hoki ki tenei e kohuru nei koutou, e pahua nei, e tahae nei, e whakapae teka nei ki o koutou hoa, me te mahi ano hoki i nga kino katoa:
- 22 Mo konei ra, aue te mate e puta mai ana ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta. Ki te kore hoki koutou e ripeneta, nana, ko tenei pa nui, me enei pa nunui katoa i nga taha katoa, i roto i to tatou whenua e noho nei tatou, ka riro atu, a e kore koutou e whai wahi i roto; e kore hoki te Ariki e tuku kaha ki a koutou, e kore e pera me tana i mea ai i mua, hei tu ki o koutou hoa whawhai.
- 23 Ta te mea, ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki, e kore ahau e whakakite atu i toku kaha ki te hunga kino, kia nui ake ki tetahi i to tetahi, engari ki te hunga e ripeneta ana ki o ratou hara, me te whakarongo ano ki aku kupu; no reira e mea ana ahau kia mohio mai koutou, e aku teina, engari te pai mo nga Ramana i te mea mo koutou, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta;

Yea, how could you have given way to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

O repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die? Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God. Why has he forsaken you?

It is because you have hardened your hearts; yea, ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd; yea, ye have provoked him to anger against you.

And behold, instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

O, how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he has delivered you?

But behold, it is to get gain, to be praised of men, yea, and that ye might get gold and silver. And ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal, and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all manner of iniquity.

And for this cause wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent. For if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in them; for behold, the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto done, to withstand against your enemies.

For behold, thus saith the Lord: I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and hearken unto my words. Now therefore, I would that ye should behold, my brethren, that it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall repent.

- 24 No te mea, nui atu to ratou tika i to koutou, kahore hoki ratou i he ki tena matauranga nui kua whiwhi na koutou: no reira ka mahi tohu mai te Ariki ki a ratou; ae ra, ka whakaroa ia i o ratou ra, ka whakanui i o ratou uri, ina tuturu to koutou whakangaromanga, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta:
- 25 Na, aue te mate mo koutou mo tena mea whakarihariha nui kua puta na ki roto ki a koutou; kua uru nei hoki koutou ki roto; ae ra, ki roto ki taua ope i whakaritea e Karianato;
- 26 Ae ra, aue te mate e puta mai ki a koutou mo taua whakahihi i tukua ai e koutou kia tomo ki roto ki o koutou ngakau, nana nei i whakaneke koutou ki runga ake ki te mea pai, he mea hoki na o koutou tino taonga nui rawa;
- 27 Ae ra, aue te mate mo koutou, mo to koutou kino me ta koutou mahi whakarihariha.
- 28 A ki te kore koutou e ripeneta era koutou e mate: koia, ka tangohia ano hoki i a koutou o koutou whenua, a ka whakangaromia atu koutou i runga i te mata o te whenua.
- 29 Nana, ehara i a au ake te korero, tera e puta mai enei mea, ehara hoki i te mea naku ake te matauranga ki enei mea, engari e matau ana ahau he pono enei mea no te mea kua whakaaturia mai ki a au e te Ariki, e te Atua, koia ahau ka whakaatu atu nei era enei mea e puta.

For behold, they are more righteous than you, for they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye have received; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them; yea, he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

Yea, wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has come among you; and ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band which was established by Gadianon!

Yea, wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

Yea, wo be unto you because of your wickedness and abominations!

And except ye repent ye shall perish; yea, even your lands shall be taken from you, and ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

Behold now, I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is not of myself that I know these things; but behold, I know that these things are true because the Lord God has made them known unto me, therefore I testify that they shall be.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 8

- 1 Nawai a, ka oti a Niwhai enei kupu te korero, nana, ko etahi o taua hunga he Kai-whakawa, no te ope ngaro ano hoki o Karianato, na, ka riri ratou, ka karanga ake i te he mona, ka mea atu ki te iwi, He aha koutou te mau ai ki tenei tangata ka kawe mai i a ia kia whakawakia kia rite ki te he kua meatia ra e ia?
- 2 He aha i titiro ai ki tenei tangata, i whakarongo ai ki a ia e taunu ana ki tenei iwi, ki o tatou ture ano hoki?
- 3 No te mea kua korero atu a Niwhai ki a ratou mo te kino o o ratou ture, ae, he maha nga mea i korerotia e Niwhai, e kore e taea te tuhituhi; a kahore he mea i korerotia e ia e rereke ana i nga whakahaunga a te Atua.
- 4 Na, i riri aua kai whakawa ki a ia mona i korero marama ki a ratou mo a ratou mahi ngaro o te pouritanga; otira kahore ratou i maia kia pa atu o ratou ringaringa ki a ia, i wehi hoki ratou i te iwi, kei karanga ake ratou i te he mo ratou;
- 5 Na reira i karanga atu ai ratou ki te iwi, i mea ai, He aha koutou i tuku ai i tenei tangata kia taunu i a tatou? Nana, kei te whakahe mai ia i tenei iwi katoa, tae noa ki te whakangaromanga ra ano; me enei pa nui o tatou, kia tangohia i a tatou, kei whai wahi tatou i roto.
- 6 Ko tenei e matau ana tatou e kore tenei e taea, ina hoki, e kaha ana tatou, e nui ana hoki o tatou pa, no reira e kore e ahei o tatou hoa whawhai kia whai kaha ki runga ki a tatou.
- 7 A e penei ana ta ratou whakaoho i te iwi kia riri ki a Niwhai, me to ratou whakaara ano i nga tautohetohenga i roto i a ratou; ko etahi hoki e karanga ana, waiho atu tenei tangata, he tangata pai hoki ia, a he pono tera e rite aua mea e korero nei ia, ki te kore tatou e ripeneta;
- 8 Ae ra, tera e pa mai ki a tatou aua whakawakanga katoa i whakaaturia mai e ia ki a tatou; no te mea e mohio ana matou he tika tana whakaaturanga ki a tatou mo a tatou he. Nana, he maha hoki era, a e rite ana tona matau ki nga mea e tupono mai ki a tatou, ki tona matau ki o tatou he;

## Helaman 8

And now it came to pass that when Nephi had said these words, behold, there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry, and they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be condemned according to the crime which he has done?

Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this people and against our law?

For behold, Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of their law; yea, many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written; and nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

And those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness; nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, for they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us? For behold he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction; yea, and also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

And now we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great, therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

And it came to pass that thus they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them; for there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man, and those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

Yea, behold, all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us; for we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities. And behold they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;



- 9 Na, me he mea ehara ia i tetahi poropiti, penei kua kore ona kaha ki te whakaatu mo aua mea.
- 10 Nawai a, ko te hunga i whai ki te whakangaro i a Niwhai, ka meinga e to ratou wehi kia kore o ratou ringaringa e pa ki a ia; no reira ka anga ano ia, ka korero atu ki a ratou, i te mea e kite ana ia kua arongia mai ia e nga kanohi o etahi, a wehi noa iho te toenga o ratou;
- 11 Koia i akiakina ai ia kia korero ano ki a ratou, kia mea, Nana, e aku teina, he teka ianei kua korerotia e koutou i hoatu e te Atua he kaha ki tetahi tangata, ara, ki a Mohi, kia hahau iho ki runga ki nga wai o te Moana Whero, a wehe mai ana, wehe atu ana, no ka haere nga Iharaira, ara o tatou matua i runga i te whenua maroke, na, hoki ana nga wai, a horomia ake nga Ihipiana?
- 12 Nana, ki te mea i homai e te Atua tenei kaha nui ki tenei tangata, na te aha koutou i tautohetohe ai, i mea ai, kahore tahi he kaha i homai e ia ki a au i matau ai ahau ki nga whakawakanga era e pa mai ki runga ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta?
- 13 Tena ko tenei, ehara i aku kupu anake e whakateka na koutou, engari ko nga kupu katoa ka oti nei te korero e o tatou tupuna ta koutou e whakateka na, me nga kupu ano ka oti nei te korero e taua tangata, e Mohi, i homai nei ki a ia taua kaha nui; ae ra, nga kupu ka oti nei e ia te korero mo te haerenga mai o te Mihaia.
- 14 Na, he teka ianei i whakaatu mai ia, tera e haere mai te Tama a te Atua? A pera me tana whakairinga i te nakahi parahi i te koraha waihoki ka whakairinga ake ia e haere mai nei.
- 15 A nga tangata katoa e titiro ake ana ki taua nakahi ka ora, waihoki e ora nga tangata katoa e titiro atu ana ki te Tama a te Atua, i runga i te whakapono, me te wairua iro, ara ka ora tonu.
- 16 Nana, ehara i te mea ko Mohi anake i whakaatu mo enei mea, engari ko nga poropiti katoa ano hoki i whakaatu mona, atu i ona ra tae noa atu ki o Aperahama.
- 17 Ae ra, na Aperahama i kite tona haerenga mai, a ki tonu ia i te hari me te koa.

Yea, and behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

And it came to pass that those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him; therefore he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

Therefore he was constrained to speak more unto them saying: Behold, my brethren, have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

And now behold, if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

But, behold, ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers, and also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him, yea, the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

Yea, did he not bear record that the Son of God should come? And as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

And as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

And now behold, Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

Yea, and behold, Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

- 18 Na, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, he teka ko Aperahama anake i mohio ki enei mea, he tokomaha ano hoki i mua atu i nga ra o Aperahama i karangatia ai i runga i te ritenga a te Atua: ae, i runga i te ritenga o tana Tama; a i pera ai kia whakakitea atu ai ki te iwi, he maha nga mano tau i mua i tona haerenga mai ka puta mai ai te whakaoranga ki a ratou.
- 19 Na e hiahia ana ahau kia mohio mai koutou, mai i nga ra o Aperahama, he tokomaha nga poropiti i whakaatu atu i enei mea; ae ra, ko te poropiti hoki ko Hinohi i whakaatu i runga i te maia; a mo tenei hoki i whakamatea ai ia.
- 20 Nana, ko Henoka ano hoki ratou ko Ehaia, ko Ihaia, ko Heremaia. (ko taua poropiti ano ko Heremaia nana i whakaatu te whakangaromanga mo Hiruharama.) Na e matau ana tatou kua whakangaromia a Hiruharama e rite ana ki nga kupu a Heremaia. Kati, he aha te Tama a te Atua e kore ai e haere mai e rite ai ki tana poropititanga?
- 21 Na, ka whakateka mai ianei koutou ki te whakangaromanga o Hiruharama? Ka ki mai ianei koutou kihai i whakamatea nga tamariki tane a Terekia, haunga a Mureke? A he teka ianei kei a tatou nga uri o Terekia, a i panaia mai hoki ratou i roto i te whenua o Hiruharama? Heoi e kore e mutu i konei.
- 22 Ko to tatou matua, ko Rihai, i panaia mai ki waho i Hiruharama, mona i whakaatu i enei mea. I whakaatu atu ano a Niwhai mo enei mea, a tata pu ko o tatou tupuna katoa ano hoki, tae noa mai ki naianei; ae, i whakaatu atu ratou i te haerenga mai o te Karaiti, me te titiro ake, me te hari ano ki tona ra e haere ake nei.
- 23 Na, ko te Atua ia, a kei a ratou ia, i whakakite hoki ia i a ia ano ki a ratou, a hokona ana ratou e ia; na, hoatu ana ano e ratou ki a ia te kororia, mo taua mea e puta mai.
- 24 Na, i te mea e mohio ana koutou ki enei mea, a e kore hoki e taea te whakakahore, ki te kore koutou e teka, no reira kua he koutou i runga i tenei mea, no te mea kua whakaparahako koutou ki enei mea katoa, ahakoa he nui rawa nga whakaaturanga kua whakaaturia nei ki a koutou; ae, kua whiwhi koutou ki nga mea katoa i te rangi i te whenua, hei kai whakaatu i te pono o enei mea.

Yea, and behold I say unto you, that Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God; yea, even after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

And now I would that ye should know, that even since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things; yea, behold, the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

And behold, also Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem) and now we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah. O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

And now will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed? Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek? Yea, and do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem? But behold, this is not all—

Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he testified of these things. Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time; yea, they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

And behold, he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him; and they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

And now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned, for ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received; yea, even ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

- 25 Heoi kua whakaparahako koutou ki te pono, kua tutu hoki ki to koutou Atua tapu; a i tenei wa pu ano, kahore koutou i te puranga taonga mo koutou ki te rangi, ki te wahi e kore e kino tetahi mea, ki te wahi hoki e kore tetahi mea poke e tae, engari e puranga ana koutou i te riri mo koutou, mo te ra whakawa.
- 26 Ae ra, e pakari haere ana koutou he mea na a koutou kohurutanga, me a koutou puremutanga me a koutou kino i tenei wa tonu, mo te whakangaromanga mutunga kore; a era tenei e puta wawe ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta;
- 27 Ae ra, tenei ano kei o koutou tatau; na, haere atu koutou ki te nohoanga whakawa, e rapu; nana, kua kohurutia to koutou Kai-whakawa, a e takoto ana ano ia i roto i ona toto; a kua kohurutia ia e tona teina, e whai nei kia nohoia te nohoanga whakawa.
- 28 Nana ko raua tokorua no to koutou ope ngaro, a tona putake ko Karianato raua ko te mea kino e whai nei kia whakangaromia nga wairua o nga tangata.

But behold, ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God; and even at this time, instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

Yea, even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction; yea, and except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

Yea, behold it is now even at your doors; yea, go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood; and he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

And behold, they both belong to your secret band, whose author is Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 9

- 1 A ano ka korero a Niwhai i enei kupu, na, ko etahi tangata i roto i a ratou ka oma atu ki te nohoanga whakawa; ae ra, tokorima ratou i haere, a kororeroro ana ratou ki a ratou ano, i a ratou e haere ana.
- 2 Na, ma tenei tatou ka matau ai, he poropiti ranei tenei tangata he mea whakahau na te Atua kia poropiti i enei mea whakamiharo ki a tatou, pehea ranei. Nana, kahore o tatou whakapono nana ia i whakahau; kahore hoki o tatou whakapono he poropiti ia; otiia, ki te mea he pono tenei mea kua korerotia mai nei e ia mo te Kai-whakawa Nui ara, mo tona matenga, katahi ka whakapono tatou ki era atu kupu i korerotia e ia e pono ana.
- 3 A oma atu ana ratou i runga i to ratou kaha, tae atu ana ki te nohoanga whakawa; nana, kua hinga te Kai-whakawa Nui ki te whenua, a e takoto ana ano i roto i ona toto.
- 4 Na, i to ratou kitenga i tenei, ka miharo rawa ratou, a hinga ana ratou ki te whenua; no te mea kihai ratou i whakapono ki nga kupu i korero ai a Niwhai mo te Kai-whakawa Nui;
- 5 Heoi i to ratou kitenga, ka whakapono ratou, a pa ana te wehi ki a ratou, kei pa mai ki te iwi nga whakawakanga katoa kua korerotia nei e Niwhai; na reira i wiriwiri ai ratou a kua hinga ano hoki ki te whenua.
- 6 Na, i te wa tonu i kohurutia ai te Kai whakawa; he mea wero e tona teina, he kakahu huna tona; oma atu ana ia, na, rere ana nga pononga, korerotia atu ana ki te iwi te kupu he kohuru kei roto i a ratou.
- 7 Na, huihui mai ana te iwi i a ratou ano ki te wahi o te nohoanga whakawa; nana, miharo rawa ratou i to ratou kitenga i aua tangata tokorima kua hinga ki te whenua.
- 8 Na, kahore te iwi i mohio ki te hui i huihui ra ki te kari a Niwhai; na reira ka mea ratou ki a ratou ano, ko enei nga tangata nana i kohuru te Kai whakawa, a kua patua ratou e te Atua kei oma atu ratou i a tatou.

## Helaman 9

Behold, now it came to pass that when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat; yea, even there were five who went, and they said among themselves, as they went:

Behold, now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us. Behold, we do not believe that he hath; yea, we do not believe that he is a prophet; nevertheless, if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

And it came to pass that they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; and behold, the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

And now behold, when they saw this they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth; for they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

But now, when they saw they believed, and fear came upon them lest all the judgments which Nephi had spoken should come upon the people; therefore they did quake, and had fallen to the earth.

Now, immediately when the judge had been murdered—he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

And behold the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat—and behold, to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

And now behold, the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi; therefore they said among themselves: These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

- 9 Na, ka hopukia ratou, ka hereherea, ka maka hoki ki te whare herehere. Tukua atu ana ano hoki tetahi panui e whakaatu ana kua mate te Kai whakawa, a kua mau nga kai kohuru, kua maka hoki ki te whare herehere.
- 10 Na, i te aonga ake, ka huihui mai te iwi ki te tangi ki te noho puku, i te tanumanga o te Kai-whakawa Nui kua patua nei.
- 11 A, ko aua kai-whakawa i tae ra ki te kari a Niwhai, i whakarongo ra ki ana kupu, kei reira ano hoki ratou kei te tanumanga.
- 12 A ka uiui atu ratou ki te iwi, ka mea, kei hea nga tangata tokorima i tonoa ra ki te ui mo te Kai whakawa Nui mehemea kua mate ia? A ka whakahokia e ratou, ka mea mo enei tangata tokorima e ki na koutou i tonoa mai e koutou, kahore matou e mohio; heoi tokorima te hunga nana te kohuru kua maka e matou ki roto ki te whare herehere.
- 13 Na, ka mea nga kai whakawa kia tikina atu ratou; a ka tikina ratou, nana, ko aua tangata tokorima ratou i tonoa ra; na, ka ui atu nga kai whakawa ki a ratou kia mohio ki tenei mea, a ka korero mai ratou i nga mea katoa i mea ai ratou, ka mea,
- 14 I oma mai matou ka tae mai ki te kainga whakawa, a ano ka kite matou i nga mea katoa, e rite ana ki ta Niwhai i whakaatu ai, ka oho matou, a hinga ana ki te whenua; ano ka mutu to matou oho mauri, ka maka matou e ratou ki roto ki te whare herehere.
- 15 Na, mo te kohurutanga i tenei tangata kahore matou e mohio na wai tenei i mea, heoi ana to matou mohio, ka oma mai matou ka haere mai, ka rite ki ta koutou i hiahia ai, a kua mate ia, kua rite ki nga kupu a Niwhai.
- 16 Na, ka whakaatu nga kai whakawa i tenei mea ki te iwi, ka karanga whakahe mo Niwhai, ka mea, Nana, e matau ana matou na tenei Niwhai i whakarite ki tetahi tangata kia whakamatea te Kai whakawa, katahi ia ka korero mai ki a tatou, kia whakatahuritia ai tatou e ia ki tona whakapono, e whakateitei ake ana i a ia ano, hei tangata nui, hei mea whiriwhiri ma te Atua, hei poropiti hoki.

And it came to pass that they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison. And there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

And it came to pass that on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

And thus also those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

And it came to pass that they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead? And they answered and said: Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

And it came to pass that the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent; and behold the judges inquired of them to know concerning the matter, and they told them all that they had done, saying:

We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when we saw all things even as Nephi had testified, we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth; and when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they cast us into prison.

Now, as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it; and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of Nephi.

And now it came to pass that the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry out against Nephi, saying: Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some one to slay the judge, and then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto his faith, that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God, and a prophet.

17 Na, tenei tatou ka hura i ta tenei tangata, a mana hoki e whaki mai tona he, me te whakaatu mai ano ki a tatou i te kai kohuru pono o tenei kai whakawa.

18 Na, ka tukua noatia aua tangata tokorima, i te ra o te tanumanga. Ahakoa ra, ka riria e ratou nga kai whakawa mo nga kupu i korero ai ratou mo Niwhai, a tohetohe takitahi atu ana ratou ki a ratou, no ka whakapororarutia a ratou.

19 Heoi mea ana ratou kia hopukia a Niwhai kia herea kia kawea mai ki te mano, a anga ana ratou uiui ana ki a ia i runga i nga huarahi maha kia mau ai ia i a ratou, kia whakapae ai ano hoki ratou i a ia kia mate.

20 Mea atu ana ki a ia, He tangata whai hoa koe; tena ko wai tenei tangata nana tenei kohuru? Tena ra korerotia mai ki a matou, whakina mai tou he, me te mea atu ano. Na, he moni mau; ka tukua ano hoki koe kia ora, ki te whakaatu mai koe ki a matou, me te whaki ano i ta korua i whakarite ai.

21 Heoi ka mea mai a Niwhai ki a ratou, E nga kuare, e te hunga ngakau kokoti-kore, e te hunga matapo, e te hunga kaki maro, e matau ana ianei koutou ki te roa e tuku ai te Ariki, to koutou Atua, i a koutou kia haere i roto i to koutou huarahi he?

22 Aue, ko te mea tika ma koutou kia timata te tangi me te aue mo te whakangaromanga nui e tatari ana ki a koutou inaianei, ki te kahore koutou e ripeneta.

23 Na, e ki ana koutou kua whakarite ahau ki te tahi tangata kia kohuru i a Hetorama, i to tatou Kaiwhakawa Nui. Heoi ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, he mea tenei moku i whakaatu atu ki a koutou, kia mohio ai koutou ki tenei mea; ae ra, hei kai whakaatu ki a koutou kua mohio ahau ki te kino me te whakarihariha kei roto na i a koutou.

24 A moku i penei, na, kei te ki mai koutou, kua whakarite ahau ki tetahi tangata hei mahi i tenei mea; ae ra, moku i whakaatu atu i tenei tohu ki a koutou, kei te riri mai koutou ki a au, kei te whai hoki kia whakamatea ahau.

25 Nana, maku e whakaatu tetahi atu tohu ki a koutou, hei reira kitea ai mehemea ka whai tonu koutou kia whakamatea ahau i runga i tenei mea.

26 Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, Me haere koutou ki te whare o Heanatuma, ko ia nei te teina o Heetorama, ka mea atu ki a ia,

And now behold, we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

And it came to pass that the five were liberated on the day of the burial. Nevertheless, they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one, insomuch that they did confound them.

Nevertheless, they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and brought before the multitude, and they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross him, that they might accuse him to death—

Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that hath done this murder? Now tell us, and acknowledge thy fault; saying, Behold here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

But Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

O ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

Behold ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge. But behold, I say unto you, that this is because I have testified unto you that ye might know concerning this thing; yea, even for a witness unto you, that I did know of the wickedness and abominations which are among you.

And because I have done this, ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should do this thing; yea, because I showed unto you this sign ye are angry with me, and seek to destroy my life.

And now behold, I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

Behold I say unto you: Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him—

27 Na Niwhai ranei, na te poropiti teka, nana i poropiti te kino nui mo tenei iwi, i whakarite ki a koe kia kohuru koe i a Heetorama, ko ia nei tou tuakana?

28 Nana, tera ia e ki mai ki a koutou, Kahore.

29 Na, e mea atu koutou ki a ia, Kua kohuru ranei koe i tou tuakana?

30 Na, ka tu wehi ia, me te kore e mohio ki tana e mea ai. A ka whakakorekore mai ia ki a koutou; ka tinihanga hoki ia me te mea he ohore tona; a ahakoa ra, ka whakaatu mai ia ki a koutou, kahore ona he.

31 Heoi me tiro tiro koutou ki a ia, a e kite koutou i te toto i runga i nga remu o tona koroka.

32 Ano ka kite koutou i tenei, me ki atu, No hea tenei toto? E kore ianei matou e mohio ko te toto tenei o tou tuakana?

33 Katahi ka tuoi ia, ka ma hoki tona ahua me te mea kua pa mai te mate ki a ia.

34 Katahi koutou ka mea atu, e matau ana matou e he ana koe, ina hoki tenei wehi ou me tenei koma kua puta ki to mata.

35 Katahi ka nui atu te wehi e pa ki a ia; katahi hoki ka whakina mai e ia ki a koutou, a mutu tonu hoki tana whakakahore nana tonu tenei kohurutanga.

36 Katahi ia ka mea mai ki a koutou, kahore aku, a Niwhai mohio ki tenei mea, ki te kahore i homai ki a au e te mana o te Atua. A ko reira koutou matau ai he tangata tika ahau, kua tonoa mai hoki ahau ki a koutou i te Atua.

37 Nawai a, ka haere ratou, a ka pera me ta Niwhai i korero ai ki a ratou. Nana, he pono nga kupu i korero ai ia; ka rite hoki ki nga kupu tana i whakakorekore ai, a ka rite ano hoki ki nga kupu tana i whaki ai.

38 A ka meinga a ia ano hei kai whakaatu ko ia tonu te kai kohuru, a ka tukua taua tokorima me Niwhai ano hoki.

39 Na, ko etahi o nga Niwhai i whakapono ki nga kupu a Niwhai; ko etahi ano hoki i whakapono ai, i te whakaaturanga a taua tokorima, i whakatahuritia mai hoki ratou i a ratou i te whare herehere.

40 A ko etahi i roto i te iwi, i mea, he poropiti a Niwhai;

Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

And behold, he shall say unto you, Nay.

And ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

And he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say. And behold, he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished; nevertheless, he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

But behold, ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

And when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

And then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

And then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

And then shall greater fear come upon him; and then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

And then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God. And then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

And it came to pass that they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them. And behold, the words which he had said were true; for according to the words he did deny; and also according to the words he did confess.

And he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

And there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of Nephi; and there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

And now there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

41 A ko etahi atu i mea, nana, he Atua ia, e kore hoki e ahei ia te mohio ki nga mea katoa, ki te mea ehara ia i te Atua. Nana, kua korerotia mai e ia ki a tatou nga whakaaro o o tatou ngakau, me nga mea ano hoki; kua whakakitea mai ano hoki e ia ki a tatou te kai kohuru pono o to tatou Kai-whakawa Nui.

And there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things. For behold, he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.



## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 10

- 1 Nawai a, i a ia e tu ana i waenganui i a ratou, ka ara tetahi tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi, no ka wehewehe atu ka wehewehe mai, a, haere atu ana i runga i a ratou haere, mahue ana ko Niwhai anake.
- 2 Na, ka haere a Niwhai ka anga atu ki tona whare ake me te whakaaroaro ano mo nga mea kua whakakitea nei e te Atua ki a ia.
- 3 A i a ia e whakaaroaro penei ana,—e pehia nuitia ana mo te kino o te iwi o Niwhai, mo a ratou mahi ngaro o te pouritanga, mo a ratou kohurutanga, me a ratou pahuatanga, me nga tukino katoa ano hoki—a i a ia e whakaaroaro penei ana i roto i tona ngakau, nana, ka puta mai tetahi reo ki a ia, ka mea.
- 4 Ka koa koe e Niwhai, mo ena mea kua meatia na e koe; kua kite hoki ahau i a koe e whakapuaki ana i runga i te hoha kore i te kupu i hoatu nei e ahau ki a koe. A kahore koe i wehi i a ratou, kahore hoki koe i whai ki to ora ake, engari i whai koe i taku i pai ai, me te pupuri ano i aku whakahaunga.
- 5 A mou i mea i tenei i runga i te hoha kore, nana, ka manaakitia tonutia koe e au ake ake; a maku koe e mea hei marohirohi i runga i te kupu i runga i te mahi, i runga i te whakapono, i runga i nga mahi: ae ra, kia meatia nga mea katoa ki a koe kia rite ki tau kupu, e kore ano hoki koe e inoi ki tetahi mea e tika ke ana i taku e pai ai.
- 6 Nana, ko koe a Niwhai, a ko ahau te Atua. Nana, he whakapuaki taku i tenei i te aroaro o aku anahera, ka whai mana koe ki runga ki tenei iwi, a ka patu koe i te whenua ki te mate-kai, ki te mate uruta, ki te whakangaromanga, e rite ana ki te kino o tenei iwi.
- 7 Nana, ka hoatu e ahau ki a koe he mana, ko tau e hiri ai i te whenua, e hiritia ano i te rangi; a ko tau e wewete ai i te whenua, e wetekia ano i te rangi; a ka penei tou mana i roto i tenei iwi.
- 8 A penei, ki te mea atu koe ki tenei temepara, kia pakaru koe kia rua nga wahi, ka meatia ano.
- 9 A ki te mea atu koe ki tenei maunga, kia whakahoroa iho koe kia papatairite, ka meatia ano.
- 10 Na, ki te mea koe, ka patu te Atua i tenei iwi, ka mana ano.

## Helaman 10

And it came to pass that there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

And it came to pass as he was thus pondering—being much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities—and it came to pass as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unweariness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people. And thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life, but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

And now, because thou hast done this with such unweariness, behold, I will bless thee forever; and I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in works; yea, even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy word, for thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

Behold, thou art Nephi, and I am God. Behold, I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to the wickedness of this people.

Behold, I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven; and thus shall ye have power among this people.

And thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it shall be done.

And if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and become smooth, it shall be done.

And behold, if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to pass.

- 11 Nana, ko taku whakahau tenei ki a koe, kia haere koe kia whakapuaki ki tenei iwi, Ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki, a te Atua, a te Mea Kaha Rawa, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta, ka patua koutou, a, whakangaromia rawatia atu hoki.
- 12 Nana, i te korerotanga a te Ariki i enei kupu ki a Niwhai, ka kore ia e haere ki tona whare ake, engari ka hoki ia ki nga mano e noho marara atu ana i runga i te mata o te whenua, ka anga ka whakapuaki ki a ratou i te kupu a te Ariki kua korerotia ra ki a ia mo to ratou whakangaromanga, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta.
- 13 Na, he ahakoa taua merekara nui, i mea ai a Niwhai i runga i tana korerotanga ki a ratou i te matenga o te Kai-whakawa Nui, ka whakapakeke ratou i o ratou ngakau, ka kore hoki e whakarongo mai ki nga kupu a te Ariki;
- 14 Na reira ka whakapuaki a Niwhai i te kupu a te Ariki ki a ratou, ka mea, Ki te kore koutou e ripeneta, e ai ta te Ariki, ka patua koutou, a, whakangaromia rawatia atu hoki.
- 15 A ano ka whakapuakina e Niwhai te kupu ki a ratou, nana ka whakapakeke tonu ratou i o ratou ngakau, kahore hoki i whakarongo mai ki ana kupu; no reira ka taunu ratou i a ia, a ka whai kia pa o ratou ringaringa ki a ia, kia maka ia ki te whare herehere.
- 16 Heoi, i a ia te kaha o te Atua, a kihai ratou i ahei te mau i a ia, te panga ki te whare herehere, ka tangohia hoki ia e te Wairua, ka kawea atu i roto i a ratou.
- 17 A i penei tana haere i roto i te Wairua, ki tenei mano, ki tenei mano, e whakapuaki ana i te kupu a te Atua, a poto noa te iwi katoa ara rongo katoa i te kupu, ki te kore i rongo i tona reo, i tonoa atu te kupu ki roto ki te iwi, tana tuku ranei i te kupu ki roto ki te iwi katoa.
- 18 Na, kahore ratou i whakarongo ki ana kupu, a ka timata nga tautohetohenga, no ka wehewehe ratou i a ratou ano, a ka anga ka patu tetahi i tetahi ki te hoari.
- 19 Na, penei ka mutu te whitu tekau ma tahi o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

And now behold, I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people, that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty: Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

And behold, now it came to pass that when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

Now behold, notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

Therefore Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

And it came to pass that when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; therefore they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

But behold, the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, for he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

And it came to pass that thus he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

And it came to pass that they would not hearken unto his words; and there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

And thus ended the seventy and first year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 11

- 1 Na, i te whitu tekau ma rua o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka nui haere nga tautohetohenga, no ka timata nga pakanga puta noa i te whenua katoa i roto i te iwi katoa o Niwhai.
- 2 Na tenei ope ngaro o nga kai pahua i whakahaere tenei mahi whakangaro mahi kino. A mau tonu ana tenei pakanga i taua tau katoa. Mau tonu ana ano hoki i te whitu tekau ma toru o nga tau.
- 3 Na, i tenei tau ka karanga a Niwhai ki te Ariki, ka mea,
- 4 E te Ariki, kua tenei iwi e tukua kia whakangaromia e te hoari; engari, E te Ariki, tukua he mate-kai ki te whenua, hei whakaoho ake i a ratou kia mahara ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, a tera pea ratou e ripeneta, e tahuri mai ano ki a koe;
- 5 Na, ka peratia ano, rite tonu ki nga kupu a Niwhai. A he mate-kai nui tera i runga i te whenua i roto i te iwi katoa o Niwhai. A pera ano te mate-kai i te whitu tekau ma wha o nga tau, e mau tonu ana, a ka mutu te mahi whakangaro ki te hoari, ka mau tonu ia ko ta te mate-kai.
- 6 A mau tonu ana ano hoki tenei mahi whakangaro i te whitu tekau ma rima o nga tau. No te mea ka patua te whenua kia maroke, a kahore i tuku i ona hua i te po hua: ko te whenua katoa ano hoki ka oti te patu, i roto i nga Ramana, i roto ano i nga Niwhai, no ka patua ratou, a mate ana ratou he mano, he mano, i nga wahi o te whenua e nui ana te kino.
- 7 Nawai a, ka kite te iwi meake ratou ka ngaro i te mate-kai, a ka mahara ratou ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua; ka mahara ano hoki ratou ki nga kupu a Niwhai.
- 8 A ka tono te iwi ki o ratou kai whakawa nui me o ratou rangatira, kia mea atu ratou ki a Niwhai, nana, e mohio ana matou he tangata koe na te Atua, no reira mau e karanga ki te Ariki, ki to tatou Atua, kia tangohia atu e ia tenei mate-kai i a matou, kei rite nga kupu katoa i korerotia e koe mo to matou whakangaromanga.

## Helaman 11

And now it came to pass in the seventy and second year of the reign of the judges that the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

And it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness. And this war did last all that year; and in the seventy and third year it did also last.

And it came to pass that in this year Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword; but O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God, and perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

And so it was done, according to the words of Nephi. And there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi. And thus in the seventy and fourth year the famine did continue, and the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

And this work of destruction did also continue in the seventy and fifth year. For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain; and the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites, so that they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

And it came to pass that the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God; and they began to remember the words of Nephi.

And the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

- 9 Na, ka mea atu nga Kai-whakariterite ki a Niwhai, ka pera me te mea i tonoa ra. Ano ka kite a Niwhai kua ripeneta te iwi, kua whakaiti i a ratou ano, a he taratara ano te kakahu, na, ka karanga ano ia ki te Ariki, ka mea.
- 10 E te Ariki, nana, kei te ripeneta te iwi nei; kua whakakorea atu hoki e ratou te huihuinga o Karianato i roto i a ratou, no ka kore ake ratou, a kua huna hoki e ratou a ratou tikanga ngaro ki roto ki te whenua.
- 11 Tena, e te Ariki, ka pai ranei koe kia puta ke tou riri, he whakaaro hoki ki ta ratou whakaititanga, a kia marie ano tou riri i runga i te whakangaromanga o aua tangata kino ka oti nei i a koe te whakamate?
- 12 E te Ariki, ka pai ranei koe kia puta ke tou riri, ae, tou riri nanakia, me te mea ano kia mutu tenei mate-kai i runga i tenei whenua?
- 13 E te Ariki, ka pai ranei koe kia whakarongo mai ki aau, kia meatia ano hoki ki te ritenga o aku kupu, kia homai te ua ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, kia tukua mai ai e ia ona hua, me ona kakano i te po e hua ai?
- 14 E te Ariki, i whakarongo mai koe ki aku kupu i te wa i mea ai ahau, kia puta he mate-kai, kia mutu ai te mate uruta a te hoari; a e mohio ana ahau tera koe e whakarongo mai ki aku kupu i tenei wa tonu, i ki ra hoki koe, ki te ripeneta tenei iwi, ka tohungia ratou e ahau;
- 15 Ae ra, e te Ariki, ka kite koe kua ripeneta ratou, he mea na te mate-kai, na te uruta, na te whakangaromanga kua pa nei ki a ratou.
- 16 Ko tenei, e te Ariki, ka pai ranei koe ki te whakaputa ke i tou riri, me te whakamatau ano me kore ratou e mahi ki a koe? A ki te pera ratou, ka ahei koe te manaaki i a ratou kia rite ki au kupu i korerotia na e koe.
- 17 Na, i te whitu tekau ma ono o nga tau, ka puta ke i te Ariki tana riri ki te iwi, a meinga ana te ua kia ua ki runga ki te whenua, no ka tukua mai e te whenua ona hua i te po hua. A ka tukua mai e te whenua ona kakano i tona po kakano.

And it came to pass that the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired. And it came to pass that when Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth, he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, behold this people repenteth; and they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

Now, O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger, and let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease; and I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, for thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

Yea, O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

And now, O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee? And if so, O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

And it came to pass that in the seventy and sixth year the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth, insomuch that it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit. And it came to pass that it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

- 18 Nana, ka hari te iwi, ka whakakororia ratou i te Atua, a ki tonu te mata katoa o te whenua i te hari; a heoi ano ta ratou whai kia whakamatea a Niwhai, engari ka kiia ia e ratou he poropiti nui, he tangata no te Atua, he nui te kaha me te mana ka homai nei e te Atua ki a ia.
- 19 Na, kahore kia kotahi te tongi i hoki iho ai tona teina a Rihai i a ia i runga i nga mea tika.
- 20 A penei ka anga ano te iwi o Niwhai ka kake haere i runga i te whenua, a tahuri ana ki te hanga i o ratou wahi kua ururuatia, ka tokomaha haere ka marara atu, no ka kapi tonu te mata o te whenua, i te whakate-nota i te whakate-tonga ano hoki, i te moana i te hauauru puta noa ki te moana i te rawhiti.
- 21 Nawai a, ka mutu te whitu tekau ma ono o nga tau i runga i te rangimarie. A ka timata te whitu tekau ma whitu o nga tau i runga i te rangimarie; a ka horapa haere te hahi puta noa i te mata o te whenua katoa; a no te hahi ano te wahi nui o te iwi, o nga Niwhai, o nga Ramana ano hoki: a he nui rawa to ratou rangimarie i te whenua, a penei ka mutu te whitu tekau ma whitu o nga tau.
- 22 Na, he rangimarie ano hoki to ratou i te whitu tekau ma waru o nga tau, haunga nga tautohetohenga mo nga tikanga o te whakaakoranga kua whakatakatoria e nga poropiti.
- 23 A i te whitu tekau ma iwa o nga tau ka anga ka nui rawa te ngangare. Otira ko Niwhai raua ko Rihai me o raua teina tokomaha i matau ki nga tikanga pono o te whakaakoranga, he maha o ratou whakakitenga i tenei ra, i tenei ra, na reira ka kauwhau ratou ki te iwi, no ka whakamutu ratou i ta ratou ngangare i taua tau ano.
- 24 A i te waru tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, na, tera tetahi hunga puta ke no te iwi o Niwhai, no etahi tau o mua i haere ai ki nga Ramana, me te mau ano ki runga ki a ratou i te ingoa o nga Ramana; a tera ano tetahi hunga he tino uri no nga Ramana, i whakaohokia e ratou, ara, e taua hunga puta ke, no reira ka timata te whawhai ki o ratou teina.

And behold, the people did rejoice and glorify God, and the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; and they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

And behold, Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

And thus it did come to pass that the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to build up their waste places, and began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the whole face of the land, both on the northward and on the southward, from the sea west to the sea east.

And it came to pass that the seventy and sixth year did end in peace. And the seventy and seventh year began in peace; and the church did spread throughout the face of all the land; and the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, did belong to the church; and they did have exceedingly great peace in the land; and thus ended the seventy and seventh year.

And also they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had been laid down by the prophets.

And in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife. But it came to pass that Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

And it came to pass that in the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi, there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of Lamanites, and also a certain number who were real descendants of the Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their brethren.

25 A ka kohuru ratou ka pahua; me i reira ka hoki ratou ki nga maunga, ki te koraha ki nga wahi ngaro hoki, huna ai i a ratou, no ka kore e kitea, a huihui mai ana ki a ratou i tenei ra, i tenei ra, te hunga kotiti ke e haere mai ana ki a ratou;

26 A kahore i roa, ae, kahore i maha nga tau, kua riro ratou hei ope pahua nui whakaharahara; a ka rapua e ratou nga tikanga ngaro katoa a Karianato; a pera ka riro ratou hei kai pahua na Karianato.

27 Nana, he nui te whakararu i mahia e enei kai pahua, ae ra, he nui rawa ta ratou mahi whakangaro i roto i te iwi o Niwhai, i roto ano hoki i te iwi o nga Ramana.

28 Na, kua tika kia whakamutua tenei mahi whakangaro: koia ka tonoa tetahi taua o nga tangata toa ki roto ki te koraha, ki runga hoki ki nga maunga, kia rapua haeretia tenei ope pahua, kia whakangaromia hoki.

29 Heoi ka panaia mai ratou ki roto ki o ratou whenua ake i taua tau ra ano. A ka pera te mutunga o te waru tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

30 Na, i te timatanga o te waru tekau ma tahi o nga tau, ka haere atu ano ratou ki te whawhai ki tenei ope pahua, a he tini i whakamatea; he nui ano hoki te parekura o to ratou nei taha.

31 A meinga ana ano ratou kia hoki atu i te koraha, i nga maunga hoki, ki o ratou whenua ake, he mea na te tokomaha rawa o aua kai pahua i nohoia ai nga maunga me te koraha.

32 Na, ko te mutunga tenei o taua tau. A ka nui haere tonu nga kai pahua ka tino kaha rawa, no ka whakahihi ratou ki nga taua katoa a nga Niwhai, a nga Ramana ano hoki; na ratou hoki i pa ai te wehi nui ki te iwi, i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua;

33 Ae ra, he maha hoki nga wahi o te whenua i tiro tiro haere ai ratou, i mahi ai i te whakangaromanga nui ki reira; ae, he tokomaha i whakamatea, me era atu i whakarauorangia atu ki te koraha; a tera noa ake a ratou wahine me a ratou tamariki.

And they did commit murder and plunder; and then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their numbers, inasmuch as there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

And thus in time, yea, even in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers; and they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton; and thus they became robbers of Gadianton.

Now behold, these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

And it came to pass that it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction; therefore they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and to destroy them.

But behold, it came to pass that in that same year they were driven back even into their own lands. And thus ended the eightieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the eighty and first year they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many; and they were also visited with much destruction.

And they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

And it came to pass that thus ended this year. And the robbers did still increase and wax strong, inasmuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites; and they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

Yea, for they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness, yea, and more especially their women and their children.

34 Na, i whakaohokia ano te iwi e tenei kino nui i pa mai ai ki a ratou he mea mo ta ratou hara, kia mahara ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua.

35 A ka pera te mutunga o te waru tekau ma tahi o nga tau a te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

36 Na, i te waru tekau ma rua o nga tau, ka anga ano ratou ka wareware ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua. A i te waru tekau ma toru o nga tau tino nui to ratou kino. A i te waru tekau ma wha o nga tau, kihai ratou i whakatikatika i ta ratou haere.

37 Nawai a, i te waru tekau ma rima o nga tau ka kake haere tonu, ka kake haere tonu ratou i runga i to ratou whakapehapeha, i to ratou kino; a penei ka pakari haere ano ratou mo te whakangaromanga.

38 A ko te mutunga tenei o te waru tekau ma rima o nga tau.

Now this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

And thus ended the eighty and first year of the reign of the judges.

And in the eighty and second year they began again to forget the Lord their God. And in the eighty and third year they began to wax strong in iniquity. And in the eighty and fourth year they did not mend their ways.

And it came to pass in the eighty and fifth year they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness; and thus they were ripening again for destruction.

And thus ended the eighty and fifth year.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 12

- 1 Na, penei ka kite tatou i te tekateka noa i te ruarua o nga ngakau o nga tamariki a te tangata; ae, ka kite ano tatou he manaaki ta te Ariki, he mea kia whai pai ai i runga i tona pai nui he kore nei e taea te whakaaro, i nga tangata e whakawhirinaki ana ki a ia.
- 2 Āe, ka kite ano tatou ko te wa pu e manaaki ai ia i tona iwi, i runga i te huanga o a ratou mara, o a ratou kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, o a ratou koura, o a ratou hiriwa, o a ratou mea utu nui o ia tu, o ia mahi; me te tohu ano i a ratou kia ora, me te whakaputa i a ratou i roto i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri; me te whakangawari i nga ngakau o o ratou hoa riri, kei whakapuaki ratou i te whawhai hei tatauranga ki a ratou; ae ra hoki, me te mahi ano i nga mea katoa hei painga mo tona iwi; ko reira ano te wa e whakapakeke ai ratou i o ratou ngakau me te wareware ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, me te takahi i te Mea Tapu ki raro ki o ratou waewae; a ko te putake o tenei he mea na to ratou noho ngawari me te nui o to ratou whai pai.
- 3 A penei tatou ka kite ki te kahore te Ariki e papaki i tona iwi ki nga mamaetanga maha, ae ra, ki te kahore ia e torotoro i a ratou i runga i te mate, i te whakawehi, i te mate-kai me nga mate uruta katoa, e kore ratou e mahara ki a ia.
- 4 Aue, ano te kuare, ano te tekateka noa, ano te kino, ano te whakareweratanga, ano te hohoro ki te mahi kino, ano te puhoi ki te mahi pai, o nga tamariki a te tangata; ae, ano te hihiko ki te whakarongo atu ki nga kupu a te mea kino, me o ratou ngakau kia tau ki runga ki nga mea tekateka noa o tenei ao;
- 5 Ae, ano te hohoro ki te kake i runga i te whakapehapeha: ae, ano te hohoro ki te whakamanamana ki te mahi hoki i nga mea katoa e kino ana; ano to ratou puhoi ki te mahara ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, me te whai taringa ki ana kupu ngarahu; ae, ano te puhoi ki te haere i roto i nga huarahi o te whai whakaaro!

## Helaman 12

And thus we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men; yea, we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

Yea, and we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them; yea, and in fine, doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people; yea, then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy One—yea, and this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great prosperity.

And thus we see that except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions, yea, except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not remember him.

O how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children of men; yea, how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

Yea, how quick to be lifted up in pride; yea, how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity; and how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give ear unto his counsels, yea, how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!



6 Nana, kahore o ratou hiahia ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, nana nei ratou i hanga, kia whakahaere, kia kingi ki runga ki a ratou, ahakoa tona painga nui me tona mahi tohu mai ki a ratou; ka whakaparahakotia e ratou ana whakaaro, a kahore a ratou pai ki a ia hei kai arahi mo ratou.

7 Aue, ano te kore noa iho o nga tamariki a te tangata; ae ra, iti noa iho ratou i te puehu o te whenua.

8 No te mea, e kahakina atu ana, e kahakina mai ana te puehu o te whenua, wahi rawa i waenganui, ina whakahau iho to tatou Atua nui, ora tonu;

9 Ae ra, nana, tuoioi ana, ngaueue ana nga pukepuke me nga maunga i tona reo;

10 Pakaru noa ana i te kaha o tona reo, a meinga ana hei papatairite, ano he raorao;

11 Ae ra, ngaueue ana te whenua katoa i te kaha o tona reo;

12 Ae ra, piupiu ana nga turanga, ki roto rawa, i te kaha o tona reo;

13 Ae, ki te mea iho ia ki te whenua, neke atu, ka neke atu ano ia;

14 Ae, ki te mea iho ia ki te whenua, me hoki koe, kia maha atu ai nga haora o te ra, ka meatia ano;

15 A penei ka hoki te whenua i runga i tana kupu, na, ki ta te tangata titiro atu, ko te ra ke e tu ana: nana, koia ano; he pono hoki ko te whenua e haere ana, ehara i te ra.

16 Nana, tenei ano, ki te mea iho ia ki nga wai o te rire nui, kia maroke ake koe, ka meatia ano.

17 Nana, ki te mea atu ia ki tenei maunga, ara ake koe, nuku mai hoki, e hinga ki runga ki tera pa, kia tanumia ai ia, na, ka meatia ano.

18 Nana, ki te huna tetahi tangata he taonga ki roto ki te whenua, a ka mea mai te Ariki kia kanga taua mea, he mea na te kino o te tangata nana i huna, nana, ka kanga ano taua mea;

19 A ki te mea mai ano te Ariki, kia kanga koe, kei kitea e tetahi tangata i tenei wa a ake ake tonu atu, nana, e kore e kitea e tetahi tangata i tenei wa, a ake ake tonu atu.

20 Nana, ki te mea mai te Ariki ki tetahi tangata, mo ou kino, ka kanga tonutia koe, a ake ake ake, ka meatia ano.

Behold, they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his great goodness and his mercy towards them, they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he should be their guide.

O how great is the nothingness of the children of men; yea, even they are less than the dust of the earth.

For behold, the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

Yea, behold at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

And by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

Yea, by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

Yea, by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the very center.

Yea, and if he say unto the earth—Move—it is moved.

Yea, if he say unto the earth—Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen out the day for many hours—it is done;

And thus, according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth unto man that the sun standeth still; yea, and behold, this is so; for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

And behold, also, if he say unto the waters of the great deep—Be thou dried up—it is done.

Behold, if he say unto this mountain—Be thou raised up, and come over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up—behold it is done.

And behold, if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall say—Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who hath hid it up—behold, it shall be accursed.

And if the Lord shall say—Be thou accursed, that no man shall find thee from this time henceforth and forever—behold, no man getteth it henceforth and forever.

And behold, if the Lord shall say unto a man—Because of thine iniquities, thou shalt be accursed forever—it shall be done.

- 21 A ki te mea mai te Ariki, mo ou kino, ka hatepea atu koe i toku aroaro, ka meinga ano e ia kia peratia te meatanga ki a koe.
- 22 Aue te mate mona, mo te tangata e pera ai tana kupu ki a ia, no te mea mo te tangata e mahi ana i te kino tenei, kahore ano hoki e ahei te whakaora ia; na, mo konei ra, i whakapuakina ai te ripenetatanga kia whakaorangia ai nga tangata.
- 23 Na, ka koa te hunga e ripeneta ana, e whakarongo ana hoki ki te reo o te Ariki o to ratou Atua; ko te hunga hoki tenei e whakaorangia ai.
- 24 A ma te Atua e tuku, i runga i tana raneatanga, kia whakatahuritia nga tangata ki te ripeneta, ki nga mahi pai hoki, kia whakahokia mai ai ratou ki te aroha noa, kia rite ki a ratou mahi.
- 25 Na, e hiahia ana ahau kia whakaorangia nga tangata katoa. Otira e korero ana tatou i roto i te pukapuka ko a taua ra nui, ra whakamutunga, tera ano etahi e akiritia atu; ae ra, e akiritia atu ratou i te aroaro o te Ariki;
- 26 A e tukua ano ratou ki te wahi mamae mutungakore, hei whakarite i nga kupu e mea ana, ko te hunga i mahi pai, ka whiwhi ki te oranga tonutanga; a ko te hunga i mahi kino, ka whiwhi ki te whakawakanga mau tonu. A koia ano. Amine.

And if the Lord shall say—Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be cut off from my presence—he will cause that it shall be so.

And wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved; therefore, for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been declared.

Therefore, blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of the Lord their God; for these are they that shall be saved.

And may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works.

And I would that all men might be saved. But we read that in the great and last day there are some who shall be cast out, yea, who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

Yea, who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery, fulfilling the words which say: They that have done good shall have everlasting life; and they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation. And thus it is. Amen.

### Te Pukapuka A Heramana 13

- 1 Na, i te waru tekau ma ono o nga tau, ka noho tonu nga Niwhai i roto i te kino, ae, i roto i te kino whakaharahara, i nga Ramana e uaua tonu ana ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Atua ki te ritenga o te ture a Mohi.
- 2 Na, i tenei tau tera tetahi ko Hamuera, he Ramana, ka haere mai ki roto ki te whenua o Harahemera, ka anga ka kauwhau ki te iwi. A he maha nga ra i kauwhau ai ia i te ripenetatanga ki te iwi, a ka maka ia e ratou ki waho, na, tata ana ia te hoki ki tona whenua ake.
- 3 Heoi ka puta mai te reo o te Ariki ki a ia, kia tahuri ano ia, kia poropiti atu ki te iwi i nga mea katoa e puta mai ana ki roto ki tona ngakau.
- 4 Na, kihai ratou i tuku i a ia kia tomo ki roto ki te pa: na reira ka haere ia ka piki ki runga ki te taiepa o te pa, a ka torona atu tona ringaringa, he nui hoki tona reo ki te karanga atu, a ka poropiti ia ki te iwi i nga mea katoa ka homai nei e te Ariki ki roto ki tona ngakau;
- 5 A ka mea atu ia ki a ratou, Nana, ko ahau, ko Hamuera, ko tetahi Ramana, te whakapuaki atu nei i nga kupu a te Ariki e homai e ia ki roto ki toku ngakau: na, te mea ka oti e ia te homai ki roto ki toku ngakau hei korerotanga atu maku ki tenei iwi, kei te werewere iho te hoari o te tika ki runga i tenei iwi; a e kore e pahemo atu nga tau e wha rau, ka pa te hoari a te tika ki runga ki tenei iwi;
- 6 Ae, e taria ana tenei iwi e te whakangaromanga taimaha, a he pono tera taua mea e pa mai ki tenei iwi, kahore hoki he mea e ora ai tenei iwi, ko te ripeneta anake me te whakapono ki te Ariki ki a Ihu Karaiti, he pono nei tona haerenga mai ki te ao, a e mamae ia i nga mea maha, e whakamatea ano hoki mo tona iwi.

### Helaman 13

And now it came to pass in the eighty and sixth year, the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great wickedness, while the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

And it came to pass that in this year there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people. And it came to pass that he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people, and they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

But behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, that he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

And it came to pass that they would not suffer that he should enter into the city; therefore he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

And he said unto them: Behold, I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart; and behold he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people; and four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

Yea, heavy destruction awaiteth this people, and it surely cometh unto this people, and nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world, and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

- 7 Nana, i whakapuakina mai tenei ki a au e tetahi anahera a te Ariki, i kawea mai hoki e ia nga rongo whakahari ki toku wairua. Na, kua tonoa mai ano hoki ahau ki te whakapuaki i tenei ki a koutou, hei whakawhiwhi i a koutou ki nga rongo whakahari; tena ko tenei kahore koutou i manako mai ki a au;
- 8 Na reira ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki, mo te pakeke o nga ngakau o te iwi o nga Niwhai, ka tangohia e ahau taku kupu i roto i a ratou, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, ka tangohia mai ano hoki e ahau toku wairua i a ratou, ka mutu ake ano taku tohu ki a ratou, a ka puta ke i a au nga ngakau o o ratou teina kia riri ki a ratou;
- 9 A e kore e taka nga tau a wha rau, ka meinga e ahau kia pakia ratou; ae ra, ka whakapangia ratou e ahau ki te hoari, ki te hemo-kai, ki te mate uruta;
- 10 Ae ra, ka tirohia ratou e ahau i runga i taku riri nanakia, a tera ano etahi o te wha o nga whakatupuranga o o koutou hoa riri, e ora, kia kite i to koutou whakangaromanga; a he pono ka mana tenei, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta, e ai ta te Ariki; a ma te hunga o te wha o nga whakatupuranga koutou e whakapa ki te whakangaromanga.
- 11 Heoi ki te mea ka ripeneta koutou, a ka tahuri mai ki te Ariki ki to koutou Atua, na, ka puta ke i a au taku riri, e ai ta te Ariki; ae ra, ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki, Ka koa te hunga e ripeneta ana e tahuri mai ana ki a au, otira aue te mate mo te tangata e kore e ripeneta;
- 12 Ae, aue te mate mo tenei pa nui, mo Harahemera; no te mea he whakaaro ki te hunga tika e tohungia nei; ae, aue te mate mo tenei pa nui, ka kite hoki ahau, e ai ta te Ariki, he tokomaha, ara, te wahi nui o tenei pa whakaharahara, e whakapakeke ana i o ratou ngakau ki a au, e ai ta te Ariki.
- 13 Otira ka koa te hunga e pai nei ki te ripeneta, ka tohungia hoki i ratou e ahau. Otiia me i kore te hunga tika i roto nei i tenei pa nui, penei kua meinga e ahau he ahi kia heke iho i te rangi, hei whakangaro i a ia.

And behold, an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me, and he did bring glad tidings to my soul. And behold, I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also, that ye might have glad tidings; but behold ye would not receive me.

Therefore, thus saith the Lord: Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from them, and I will withdraw my Spirit from them, and I will suffer them no longer, and I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

And four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that they shall be smitten; yea, I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with pestilence.

Yea, I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold your utter destruction; and this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord; and those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

But if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn away mine anger, saith the Lord; yea, thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me, but wo unto him that repenteth not.

Yea, wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved; yea, wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

But blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare. But behold, if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

14 Heoi he whakaaro ki te hunga tika i tohungia ai. Otira e puta mai te wa, e ai ta te Ariki, ina maka atu e koutou te hunga tika i roto i a koutou, ko reira pakari ai koutou mo te whakangaromanga; ae, aue te mate mo tenei pa nui, mo te kino me te whakarihariha i roto nei i a ia;

15 Ae ra, aue te mate mo te pa o Kireono, mo te kino me te whakarihariha i roto i a ia;

16 Ae, aue te mate mo nga pa katoa i te whenua e patata ana e nohoia ana e nga Niwhai, mo te kino me te whakarihariha i roto i enei pa.

17 Nana, ka puta mai he kanga ki runga ki te whenua, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano, he whakaaro hoki ki te hunga i runga nei i te whenua; ae ra, mo a ratou kino me a ratou mahi whakarihariha.

18 A tenei ake, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano, ta to tatou Atua nui pono, ki te huna e tetahi he taonga ki roto ki te whenua, a ehara ia i te tangata tika, me tana e huna ai ehara i te mea ki te Ariki, e kore e kitea ano e ia a muri, i te kanga nui hoki o te whenua.

19 Ko taku hoki e pai ai, e ai ta te Ariki, kia huna ratou i a ratou taonga ki a au; a ka kanga te hunga kahore e huna i a ratou taonga ki a au; kahore hoki he hunga e huna i a ratou taonga ki a au, ko te hunga tika anake; a ko te tangata kahore e huna i tana taonga ki a au, ka kanga ia me tana taonga ano, e kore hoki e kitea e tetahi i te kanga hoki o te whenua.

20 A tenei ake ka haere mai te ra e huna ai ratou i a ratou mea utu nui, no te mea hoki he mea manako a ratou taonga e o ratou ngakau; a mo ratou i manako ki a ratou taonga, maku e huna a ratou taonga ina rere atu ratou i mua i o ratou hoa riri, mo ratou hoki kahore e huna i a ratou mea utu nui ki a au; kia kanga ratou me a ratou taonga ano hoki; a i taua ra ka patua ratou, e ai ta te Ariki.

21 Na, e koutou, e te iwi o tenei pa nui, whakarongo mai ki aku kupu; ae ra, whakarongo mai ki nga kupu e korero atu nei te Ariki; no te mea e ai tana, ka oti koutou te kanga mo a koutou taonga, me a koutou taonga ano hoki ka oti te kanga, no te mea i manakohia e o koutou ngakau me te kore whakarongo ki nga kupu a te mea nana i hoatu aua taonga ki a koutou.

But behold, it is for the righteous' sake that it is spared. But behold, the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction; yea, wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

Yea, and wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

And behold, a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, yea, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God, that whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land, save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

For I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me; and cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me; for none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous; and he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

And the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures, because they have set their hearts upon riches; and because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies; because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures; and in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words; yea, hearken unto the words which the Lord saith; for behold, he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches, and also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

- 22 Kahore koutou e mahara ki te Ariki ki to koutou Atua i runga i nga mea i manaakitia ai koutou e ia, engari e mahara tonu ana koutou ki a koutou taonga, tē whakawhetai ia ki te Ariki ki to koutou Atua mo aua mea; kahore hoki e puta atu o koutou ngakau ki te Ariki, engari tetere ana i runga i te whakahihi nui, e whakapehapeha ana, e pupuhi ana, e hae ana, e ngangare ana, e ngautuara ana, e whakatoī ana, e kohuru ana, e mahi ana i nga mea kino katoa.
- 23 Mo konei ra meinga ai te Ariki, e te Atua, kia puta mai tetahi kanga ki runga ki te whenua, ki runga ano hoki ki a koutou taonga; a he mea tenei mo a koutou kino;
- 24 Na, aue te mate mo tenei iwi, kua tae mai hoki te wa, e maka ai e koutou nga poropiti ki waho, e tawai ai i a ratou, e aki ai i a ratou ki te kohatu, e whakamate ai, me te mea ano i nga mea kino katoa ki a ratou, pera me ta te hunga o nga wa o mua.
- 25 Na, ina koutou korero, mea ai, Mehemea o matou ra, i nga ra o o matou tupuna, e kore matou e whakamate i nga poropiti, e aki i a ratou ki te kohatu, e maka i a ratou ki waho.
- 26 Nana, kino ake koutou i a ratou; e ora ana hoki te Ariki, ki te puta mai tetahi poropiti ki roto ki a koutou me te whakapuaki ano te kupu a te Ariki, e whakaaturia nei o koutou hara me o koutou kino, ka riri koutou ki a ia, ka maka i a ia ki waho, me te whai ano i nga huarahi katoa hei whakangaro i a ai; ae ra, ka mea koutou he poropiti teka ia, he tangata no te rewera, mona i whakaatu i a koutou mahi e kino ana.
- 27 Tena ko tenei, ki te puta mai tetahi tangata ki roto ki a koutou, a ka mea, meatia tenei, kahore hoki he hara; meatia tera, a kahore koutou e mate; ae ra, ka mea mai ia, haere koutou i runga i te whakapehapeha o o koutou ngakau; ae, haere i runga i te whakahi o o koutou kanohi, mahi ano koutou i ta o koutou ngakau e ahuaireka ana; na, ki te puta mai tetahi tangata ki roto ki a koutou me te whakapuaki i tenei, ka manako atu koutou ki a ia, ka mea atu koutou he poropti ia;

Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which he hath blessed you, but ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them; yea, your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions, and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land, and also upon your riches, and this because of your iniquities.

Yea, wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, that ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

And now when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets; we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

Behold ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him; yea, you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

But behold, if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer; yea, he will say: Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth—and if a man shall come among you and say this, ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

28 A ka whakanuia ia e koutou, ka hoatu e koutou ki a ia tetahi wahi o o koutou taonga; ka hoatu e koutou ki a ia, tetahi wahi o a koutou koura, o a koutou hiriwa, a ka whakakakahuria ia e koutou ki te kakahu utu nui, a mona i whakapuaki i nga kupu whakapatipati mai ki a koutou, mona hoki i mea, kei te pai nga mea katoa, katahi ka kore a koutou whakahe mona.

29 E te hunga kino, e te whakatupuranga parori ke, e te iwi pakeke, e te kaki maro, ki ta koutou whakaaro, pehea ake te roa e manawanui ai te Ariki ki a koutou pehea ake hoki te roa e tuku ai koutou i a koutou ano kia arahina e nga kai arahi matapo, e nga kuare? ae ra, pehea ake te roa e whiriwhiri ai koutou i te pouritanga kaore ki te maramatanga?

30 Nana, ka oti te riri a te Atua te tahu hei whiu mo koutou; nana ka oti i a ia te whenua te kanga, mo ta koutou kino;

31 Na, kei te haere mai nga ra e kangā ai a koutou taonga, a ka riro hei mea pahuhu, tē taea e koutou te pupuri; a e kore e riro mai ano i a koutou i nga ra o to koutou rawa-koretanga;

32 A ka karanga ake koutou ki te Ariki i nga ra o to koutou rawa-koretanga; a he karanga noa ta koutou, kua puta hoki to koutou mate ki a koutou, a he mea tuturu ano to koutou whakangaromanga; ko reira ko a taua rangi koutou tangi ai, aue ai, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano. Ko reira hoki koutou tangi ai, mea ai.

33 Aue me i ripeneta ahau, me i kore ahau i whakamate i nga poropiti, i aki i a ratou ki te kohatu, i maka i a ratou ki waho; ae ra, e mea koutou i taua ra, Aue, me i mahara tatou ki te Ariki ki to tatou Atua, i te ra i homai ai e ia a tatou taonga ki a tatou, penei kua kore he pahuhutanga o aua mea e ngaro atu ai i a tatou; no te mea, na, kua ngaro atu i a tatou a tatou taonga.

34 Na, ka whakatakotoria e tatou tetahi mea mo nga mahi ki konei, a apopo kua ngaro atu; a tangohia atu ana i a tatou a tatou hoari i te ra i rapua ai e tatou mo te whawhai.

35 Ae, kua hunā e tatou a tatou taonga, a kua pahuhu atu i a tatou, i te kanga hoki o te whenua.

Yea, ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance; ye will give unto him of your gold, and of your silver, and ye will clothe him with costly apparel; and because he speaketh flattering words unto you, and he saith that all is well, then ye will not find fault with him.

O ye wicked and ye perverse generation; ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people, how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you? Yea, how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind guides? Yea, how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

Yea, behold, the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you; behold, he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

And behold, the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become slippery, that ye cannot hold them; and in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

And in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord; and in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon you, and your destruction is made sure; and then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts. And then shall ye lament, and say:

O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out. Yea, in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them; for behold, our riches are gone from us.

Behold, we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone; and behold, our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

Yea, we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

- 36 Aue me i ripeneta tatou i te rangi i puta mai ai te kupu a te Ariki ki a tatou; ta te mea hoki, ka oti te whenua te kanga, a he mea pahuhu nga mea katoa, tē taea hoki e tatou te pupuri.
- 37 Na, ko tatou e karapotia ana e nga wairua kino, ae, e karapotia ana tatou e ana anahera, ara, e a te mea i whai ki te whakangaro i o tatou wairua. Nana, kua nui o tatou hara. E te Ariki, e kore ianei e ahei i a koe te whakaputa ke i tou riri i a matou? Na, he korero tenei ma koutou i aua ra.
- 38 Heoi, ko nga ra kia tika ta koutou noho kua pahemo kua whakaroa hoki koutou i te ra o to koutou whakaoranga a, tae noa ki te wa e kore ai e hokia ano aua ra no reira e tuturu ana to koutou whakangaromanga; kua whai hoki koutou i nga ra katoa o to koutou noho i te mea e kore e taea e koutou te whiwhi; a kua whai ano koutou i te hari i runga i te mahi hē, i nga mea e tika ke nei i te ahua o te tika i roto nei i to tatou upoko Nui mau tonu.
- 39 E koutou, e te iwi o te whenua, me kore koutou e whakarongo ki aku kupu. A e inoi ana ahau kia puta ke te riri a te Ariki i a koutou, kia ripeneta hoki koutou kia whakaoranga.

O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us; for behold the land is cursed, and all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

Behold, we are surrounded by demons, yea, we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls. Behold, our iniquities are great. O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us? And this shall be your language in those days.

But behold, your days of probation are past; ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is everlastingly too late, and your destruction is made sure; yea, for ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could not obtain; and ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our great and Eternal Head.

O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words! And I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you, and that ye would repent and be saved.



## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 14

- 1 Na, tera ano he maha atu nga kupu i poropiti ai a Hamuera, te Ramana, e kore nei e taea te tuhituhi.
- 2 A i mea atu ra ia ki a ratou, Nana, ka hoatu nei e ahau tetahi tohu ki a koutou; kei te haere mai hoki e rima atu nga tau, na, ko reira te Tama a te Atua haere mai ai ki te hoko i te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki tona ingoa.
- 3 Na, ko te mea tenei ka hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou hei tohu mo tona putangi mai; ta te mea hoki, he nui rawa nga maramatanga kei te rangi, no ka kore ake he pouritanga o te po i mua o tona putanga mai, a tona ahua ki ta te tangata titiro ano he awatea.
- 4 No reira kotahi te ra, kotahi te po, kotahi atu ra hoki, me te mea kotahi tonu te ra, a kahore hoki he po: a ka waiho tenei hei tohu ki a koutou; ka mohio hoki koutou ki te rerenga ake o te ra, ki tona toenetanga hoki; no reira ka tuturu to ratou mohio ka rua nga ra a kotahi ano po; ahakoa ra e kore e whakapouritia te po; a ko ia te po i mua mai o tona whanautanga.
- 5 A ka puta he whetu hou, kahore ano tona rite i kitea noatia; a ko tenei ano hoki ka waiho hei tohu ki a koutou.
- 6 Na, e kore e mutu i tenei, tera ano hoki nga tohu maha me nga mea whakamiharo i te rangi.
- 7 A ka whakapororarutia koutou, ka miharo, no ka hinga koutou ki te whenua.
- 8 Na, tenei ake ko te tangata e whakapono ana ki te Tama a te Atua, he oranga tonutanga tona.
- 9 Nana, ko te whakahau iho tenei a te Ariki ki a au, he mea na tana anahera, kia haere mai ahau kia whakapuaki i enei mea ki a koutou; ae, i whakahaua iho ahau e ia kia poropiti atu ahau i enei mea ki a koutou; ae, i ki mai ra ia ki a au. Karanga atu ki tenei iwi, ripeneta, whakapaia hoki te huarahi o te Airiki.

## Helaman 14

And now it came to pass that Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things which cannot be written.

And behold, he said unto them: Behold, I give unto you a sign; for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.

And behold, this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming; for behold, there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night before he cometh there shall be no darkness, insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.

Therefore, there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one day and there were no night; and this shall be unto you for a sign; for ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting; therefore they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened; and it shall be the night before he is born.

And behold, there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have beheld; and this also shall be a sign unto you.

And behold this is not all, there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

And it shall come to pass that ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall to the earth.

And it shall come to pass that whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall have everlasting life.

And behold, thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel, that I should come and tell this thing unto you; yea, he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto you; yea, he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare the way of the Lord.

- 10 Na, no te mea he Ramana ahau, a noku hoki i whakapuaki i nga kupu i whakahau iho ai te Ariki ki a au, no te mea ano hoki e pakeke ana enei kupu ki a koutou, kei te riri mai koutou me te whai ano kia whakamatea ahau, a na koutou ano hoki ahau i maka atu i roto i a koutou.
- 11 Heoi me rongu mai koutou ki aku kupu, na konei i piki ai ahau ki runga ki nga taiepa o tenei pa, kia rongu ai kia mohio ai koutou ki nga whakawakanga a te Atua e taria nei koutou, he mea mo a koutou he, kia mohio ai ano hoki koutou ki nga tikanga o te ripenetatanga.
- 12 Kia mohio ai ano hoki koutou ki te putanga mai o Ihu Karaiti, o te Tama a te Atua, te Matua o te rangi me te whenua, a te Kai-Hanga o nga mea katoa no te timatanga mai ra ano: kia mohio ai hoki koutou ki nga tohu o tona putanga mai, kia whakapono hoki koutou ki tona ingoa.
- 13 Na, ki te mea he whakapono to koutou ki tona ingoa, ka ripeneta ano hoki ki o koutou hara, ma reira hoki koutou ka whiwhi ai ki te murunga hara i runga i tona pai.
- 14 Nana, tenei ano tetahi tohu e hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou, ara, tetahi tohu mo tona matenga;
- 15 No te mea hoki, he pono era ia e mate, kia puta mai ai te whakaoranga: ae ra, e tika ana ano kia mate ia, hei whakaputa i te aranga o te hunga mate, kia kawea ai nga tangata ki te aroaro o te Ariki:
- 16 Na, i runga i tenei matenga e puta mai ana te aranga, me te hoko ano i nga tangata katoa i te matenga tuatahi—ara i te matenga o te wairua: i runga hoki i to Arama takanga i hatepea atu nga tangata katoa i te aroaro o te Ariki, a kiia ana he mea mate, mo te taha ki nga mea maori, mo te taha hoki ki nga me wairua.
- 17 Tena ko tenei, e hokona ana nga tangata katoa e te aranga o te Karaiti, ae ra hoki, nga tangata katoa, a e whakahokia ana ano ratou ki te aroaro a te Ariki.

And now, because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the words which the Lord hath commanded me, and because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

And ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon the walls of this city, that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do await you because of your iniquities, and also that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

And also that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

And if ye believe on his name ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

And behold, again, another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

For behold, he surely must die that salvation may come; yea, it behooveth him and becometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

Yea, behold, this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death—that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

But behold, the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

- 18 Nana hoki i whakaputa mai te tikanga mo te ripenetatanga, ara, ko te tangata e ripeneta ana, e kore tera e tuakina, e makā atu ki te ahi; ko te tangata ia e kore e ripeneta, e tuakina tenei, e makā atu hoki ki te ahi, a e puta ana ki a ratou te matenga o te wairua, ae ra, te matenga tuarua, no te mea ka hatepea atu ano ratou mo te taha ki nga mea o te tika;
- 19 No reira ripeneta koutou, ripeneta koutou kei tuku koutou i a koutou ano kia riro i te whakawakanga i runga i to koutou matau ki enei mea me te kore e whakarite, a riro iho ana koutou ki tenei matenga tuarua.
- 20 Heoi, me taku e korero atu nei ki a koutou mo tetahi atu tohu, mo te tohu nei o tona matenga, nana i taua ra e mamae ai ia i te mate, ka whakapouritia te ra, ka kaiponuhia ano hoki tona maramatanga ki a koutou: me te marama ano hoki, me nga whetu; a kahore he maramatanga i runga i te mata o tenei whenua, no te wa ra ano e mamae ai ia i te mate, a taka noa nga ra e toru, tae noa ki te wa e ara ai ia i te hunga mate.
- 21 Ae, i te wa e tuku ake ai ia i tona wairua, ka pa he whatitiri he uira mo nga haora maha, a ka tuoioi te whenua, ka ngaueue hoki me nga kohatu ano hoki i runga i te mata o tenei whenua; i runga i te whenua i raro hoki, e matauria nei e koutou i tenei wa e u ana, ara, te wahi nui he mea kotahi e u ana, na, ka pakarukaru;
- 22 Ae ra, ka pakaru enei ki waenganui, a ka kitea tonutia i muri iho he karapiti, he titore, i runga ano hoki i te mata o te whenua katoa, he mea pakarukaru noa iho; ae ra, i runga i te whenua, i raro ano hoki.
- 23 Nana, ka puta ano nga tupuhi nui, a ko nga maunga maha ka whakahokia iho, kia rite ki tetahi raorao, nga wahi maha ano hoki, e kiia nei inaianei he raorao, ka tu hei maunga, to reira tiketike, he nui rawa.
- 24 Ka pakaru ake te tini o nga huanui, a whakaururuatia ana nga pa maha.
- 25 He maha hoki nga rua e whakatuwheratia ana, a tukua mai ana he tokomaha o te hunga kua mate; he tokomaha ano hoki te hunga tapu e puta mai ana a e kitea e te tokomaha.

Yea, and it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance, that whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire; but whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire; and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining to righteousness.

Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second death.

But behold, as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death, behold, in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened and refuse to give his light unto you; and also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise again from the dead.

Yea, at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours, and the earth shall shake and tremble; and the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken up;

Yea, they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of the whole earth, yea, both above the earth and beneath.

And behold, there shall be great tempests, and there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley, and there shall be many places which are now called valleys which shall become mountains, whose height is great.

And many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall become desolate.

And many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their dead; and many saints shall appear unto many.

26 Nana, i penei te korero a te anahera ki a au; i ki mai ra hoki ia ki a au, tera e puta mai he whatitiri, he uira, a pau noa nga haora maha:

27 A i ki mai ano ia ki a au, i nga whatitiri me nga uira, me nga tupuhi e mau ana, a e toru nga ra e kapi ana te mata o te whenua katoa i te pouritanga.

28 A i ki mai ano te anahera ki a au, he tokomaha te hunga e kite i nga mea rahi ake i enei, kia whakapono ai ratou ki enei tohu me enei mea whakamiharo, tera e mana, i runga i te mata katoa o tenei whenua; kia kore ai he putake mo te whakapono-kore i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata;

29 A he mea tenei kia whakaorangia ai te tangata e whakapono ana, a ko ia e kore e whakapono, kia tau ai te whakawa tika ki runga ki a ratou; na, ki te mea hoki ka whakawakia ratou, na ratou ake i taki iho to ratou whakawakanga ki a ratou.

30 Tena, mahara, mahara, e aku teina, ko te tangata e mate ana, e mate ko ia ake; ko te tangata e mahi he ana, e meatia ana ki a ia ano; ta te mea hoki, e watea ana koutou; e tukua ana ki a koutou te tikanga mo te mahi mo koutou ake; ina hoki, kua hoatu e te Atua ki a koutou he matauranga, a nana ano koutou i mea hei here-kore.

31 Nana ano i hoatu ki a koutou kia matau ai koutou ki te pai ki te kino, a nana i hoatu ki a koutou te tikanga ki te whiriwhiri i te ora i te mate ranei; a e ahei ana i a koutou te mahi pai kia whakahokia ano koutou ki te mea pai, ara, kia whakahokia te mea pai ki a koutou; e ahei ana hoki i a koutou te mahi kino, a whakahokia iho ki a koutou ko te mea kino.

And behold, thus hath the angel spoken unto me; for he said unto me that there should be thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours.

And he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted, and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three days.

And the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this land, to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among the children of men—

And this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved, and that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might come upon them; and also if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own condemnation.

And now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever perisheth, perisheth unto himself; and whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself; for behold, ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves; for behold, God hath given unto you a knowledge and he hath made you free.

He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil, and he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death; and ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or have that which is good restored unto you; or ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 15

- 1 Na, e oku teina aroha, tenei ahau te whakaatu atu nei ki a koutou, ka mahue atu o koutou whare kia tu kau ana, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta:
- 2 Ae, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta, ka whai take nui a koutou wahine mo te tangi, i te ra e whangai ana ratou i te u, ka mea hoki koutou kia rere, a kahore he rerenga atu mo koutou: ae, aue te mate mo ratou e hapu ana ka taimaha hoki ratou, a e kore e ahei te rere atu; no reira ka takahia ratou ki raro, a ka whakarerea iho ki te mate:
- 3 Ae, aue te mate mo tenei iwi e karangatia ana ko te iwi o Niwhai, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta ina kite ratou i enei tohu katoa me nga whakamiharo e whakakitea atu ai ki a ratou; no te mea he iwi ratou no te Ariki i mua: ae, i aroha ia ki te iwi o Niwhai, i papaki ano ia i a ratou; ae, i nga ra i o ratou hē i papaki ai ia i a ratou, he aroha hoki nona ki a ratou.
- 4 Otira, e aku teina, i kino ia ki nga Ramana, no te mea i kino tonu a ratou mahi; a ko tenei he mea mo te kino o nga whakererenga iho a o ratou tupuna. Otiia kua puta te whakaoranga ki a ratou, na roto i te kauwhautanga a nga Niwhai; na reira i whakaroa ai te Ariki i o ratou ra.
- 5 A, e hiahia ana ahau kia titiro atu koutou ki te tokomaha o ratou kei roto kei te huarahi e tika ana mo ratou, a tika tonu ta ratou whakahaere i te aroaro o te Atua, mau tonu ana ta ratou whakarite i ana whakahaunga me ana ture, me ana whakariteritenga ki te ritenga o te ture a Mohi.
- 6 Ae ra, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, kei te mahi te tokomaha o ratou i tenei, a he uaua hohakore ta ratou hei whakatahuri i te toenga o o ratou teina ki te matauranga o te pono; no reira he tokomaha ano ratou e honoa mai ana ki a ratou i tenei ra, i tenei ra.

## Helaman 15

And now, my beloved brethren, behold, I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall be left unto you desolate.

Yea, except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn in the day that they shall give suck; for ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge; yea, and wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and cannot flee; therefore, they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

Yea, wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and wonders which shall be showed unto them; for behold, they have been a chosen people of the Lord; yea, the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened them; yea, in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because he loveth them.

But behold my brethren, the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been evil continually, and this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers. But behold, salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the Nephites; and for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

And I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in the path of their duty, and they do walk circumspectly before God, and they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

Yea, I say unto you, that the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with unwearied diligence that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the knowledge of the truth; therefore there are many who do add to their numbers daily.

- 7 Nana kei te mohio koutou, kua kite na hoki koutou, ko te hunga katoa o ratou e meinga ana kia mohio, ki te pono, kia mohio ki nga whakarereanga kino, whakarihariha a o ratou tupuna, meinga ana kia whakaponohia e ratou nga Karaipiture tapu, ara nga poropititanga a nga poropiti tapu kua oti nei te tuhituhi hei arahi i a ratou kia whakapono ki te Ariki, kia ripeneta, e puta ake ai he ngakau hou ki a ratou.
- 8 No reira te hunga katoa o ratou kua tae ki tenei ahua kei te mohio tonu koutou, e u ana e pumau ana ki te whakapono, ki te mea hoki i haere noa ai ratou.
- 9 A e mohio ana ano hoki koutou i tanu ratou i a ratou mea whawhai, a e wehi ana ki te mau ano ki aua mea kei hē ratou; ae, e ahei ana ano i a koutou te kite e wehi ana ratou ki te hara; ta te mea hoki e tuku ana ratou i a ratou ano kia takahia iho, kia patua e a ratou hoa riri, a kahore ratou e pai ki te hapai hoari ki a ratou; he mea hoki na to ratou whakapono ki a te Karaiti.
- 10 Na, mo to ratou u, mehemea ka whakapono ratou ki tetahi mea e whakaponohia ana e ratou; mo to ratou pumau, ina marama ratou, nana ka manaaki te Ariki i a ratou, me te whakaraoa i o ratou ra, ahakoa ra o ratou he;
- 11 Ae ra, ki te mea e iti haere to ratou whakapono, tera ano te Ariki e whakaraoa i o ratou ra a tae noa ki te putanga o te wa i korerotia e o tatou tupuna, e te poropiti hoki, e Hinohi, e etahi atu poropiti maha ano hoki, mo te whakahokinga o o tatou tuakana, o nga Ramana, ki te matauranga ki te pono;
- 12 Ae, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, kua puta nga kupu whakaari a te Ariki mo o tatou tuakana, mo nga Ramana, mo nga wa i muri nei; a he ahakoa ra o ratou mamae maha e pa ai ki ratou, a he ahakoa ra aia atu aia mai ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua, e whaia, e patua, e whakamararatia atu hoki, a kahore o ratou wahi e piri ai, tera te Ariki e atawhai i a ratou;
- 13 A e rite ana tenei ki te poropititanga, ara, tera ratou e whakaputaina mai ki te matauranga pono koia ki te matauranga ki to ratou Kai-hoko ki to ratou Heparā pono nui, ka taua ngatahitia ano hoki me ana hipi.

And behold, ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it, that as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth, and to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their fathers, and are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on the Lord, and unto repentance, which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto them—

Therefore, as many as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

And ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin; yea, ye can see that they fear to sin—for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them, and this because of their faith in Christ.

And now, because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe, for because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, behold, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days, notwithstanding their iniquity—

Yea, even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days, until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers, and also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets, concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth—

Yea, I say unto you, that in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites; and notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have, and notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered abroad, having no place for refuge, the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

And this is according to the prophecy, that they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

- 14 Koia e mea atu nei ahau ki a koutou engari to ratou e mama i to koutou, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta.
- 15 No te mea hoki, me i whakaaturia ki a ratou nga mahi nunui kua whakaaturia atu nei ki a koutou; aera, ki a ratou i iti haere nei to ratou whakapono, he me na nga whakarereanga iho a o ratou tupuna, na, e ahei ana koutou te kite, penei kua kore to ratou whakapono e iti haere ano.
- 16 No reira, e ai ta te Ariki, e kore ahau e whakangaro rawa i a ratou, engari i te ra o taku whakaaro nui, e meinga e ahau kia hoki mai ano ratou ki a au, e ai ta te Ariki.
- 17 Heoi ko te kupu tenei a te Ariki, mo te iwi o nga Niwhai, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, me te mahara ki te mea i taku e pai ai, maku ratou e whakangaro rawa, e ai ta te Ariki, mo to ratou whakapono-kore, he ahakoa te tini o nga mahi nunui i mahi ai ahau ki waenganui i a ratou; a, he pono e ora ana te Ariki, waihoki era enei mea e mana, e ai ta te Ariki.

Therefore I say unto you, it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

For behold, had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been shown unto you, yea, unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the traditions of their fathers, ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have dwindled in unbelief.

Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them, but I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again unto me, saith the Lord.

And now behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites: If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done among them; and as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the Lord.

## Te Pukapuka A Heramana 16

- 1 Na, he tokomaha te hunga i rongō i nga kupu a Hamuera, a te Ramana, i korero ai ia i runga i nga taiepa o te pa, a ko te hunga katoa i whakapono ki tana kupu, ka haere atu ki te rapu i a Niwhai; a to ratou haerenga atu me to ratou kitenga i a ia, na, whakina atu ana e ratou o ratou hē ki a ia, kihai hoki i whakakahore, e hiahia ana kia rumakina ratou.
- 2 Ko te hunga ia kihai i whakapono ki nga kupu a Hamuera, i riri ki a ia; i maka kohatu ki a ia i a ia i runga i te taiepa, he tokomaha ano i kopere i nga pere ki a ia, i a ia e tu ana i runga i te taiepa; heoi i a ia te Wairua o te Ariki, i kore ai e pa a ratou kohatu a ratou pere ranei ki a ia.
- 3 Na, to ratou kitenga, e kore ia e pa i a ratou, ka tokomaha atu te hunga i whakapono ki ana kupu, a, haere atu ana ratou ki a Niwhai kia rumakina.
- 4 Ta te mea hoki, e rumaki ana a Niwhai, e poropiti ana, e kauwhau ana, e karanga ana i te ripeneta ki te iwi; e whakakite ana i nga tohu me nga mea whakamiharo; e mahi merekara ana i roto i te iwi kia mohio ai ratou ko te Karaiti e puta wawe mai.
- 5 E korero atu ana ano ki a ratou i nga mea e puta wawe mai kia mohio ai kia mahara ai ratou i te wa e puta mai ai, kua whakakitea noatia ki a ratou i mua, kia whakapono ai ratou; no reira te hunga katoa i whakapono ki nga kupu a Hamuera ka haere atu ki a ia kia rumakina, ka haere mai hoki ratou e ripeneta ana me te whaki ano i o ratou hara.
- 6 Heoi ko te tokomaha o ratou kihai i whakapono ki nga kupu a Hamuera, no reira i to ratou kitenga kahore i pa atu a ratou kohatu me a ratou pere ki a ia, ka karanga atu ratou ki o ratou rangatira, ka mea atu. E mau ki tenei koroke, herea iho. he rewera hoki tona; a e kore a matou kohatu me a matou pere e pa atu ki a ia no te kaha o te rewera i roto ra i a ia; no reira e mau ki a ia; herea iho, a whakamatea.
- 7 A i a ratou e haere ana kia pa o ratou ringaringa ki a ia, nana, ka rere iho ia i te taiepa, ka oma atu i o ratou whenua, a, tae rawa atu ana ki tona whenua ake, anga ana kauwhau ana, poropiti ana i roto i tona ake iwi.

## Helaman 16

And now, it came to pass that there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the Lamanite, which he spake upon the walls of the city. And as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for Nephi; and when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be baptized unto the Lord.

But as many as there were who did not believe in the words of Samuel were angry with him; and they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot arrows at him as he stood upon the wall; but the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

Now when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many more who did believe on his words, insomuch that they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

For behold, Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching, crying repentance unto the people, showing signs and wonders, working miracles among the people, that they might know that the Christ must shortly come—

Telling them of things which must shortly come, that they might know and remember at the time of their coming that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the intent that they might believe; therefore as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto him to be baptized, for they came repenting and confessing their sins.

But the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel; therefore when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil; and because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit him with our stones and our arrows; therefore take him and bind him, and away with him.

And as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands, yea, even unto his own country, and began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.



8 Na, kahore ia i rangona i muri iho i roto i nga Niwhai; a i penei nga mea o te iwi.

9 A ka penei ano hoki te mutunga o te waru tekau ma ono o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kaiwhakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai, ko te wahi nui o te iwi e noho tonu ana i runga i to ratou tikanga whakahi, i to ratou kino, ko te wahi iti e haere maharahara ana i te aroaro o te Atua.

10 A ka penei ano hoki te mutunga o te waru tekau ma whitu o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kaiwhakariterite.

11 A penei ano te ahua i te waru tekau ma waru o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite.

12 A heoi ano te rereke o nga tikanga a te iwi i te waru tekau ma iwa o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka anga ka nui atu to te iwi pakari i roto i te kino, me te nui haere ano o ta ratou mahi i te mea e rereke ana i nga whakahaunga a te Atua.

13 Na, i te iwa tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite, ka homai nga tohu nui me nga mea whakamiharo ki te iwi; a ka timata ka mana haere nga kupu a nga poropiti:

14 A ka puta mai nga anahera ki nga tangata whaiwhakaaro, ka whakapuaki i nga rongo whakahari o te koa nui ki a ratou; a penei ka mana haere nga karaipiture i tenei tau.

15 He ahakoa ra ka anga ka whakapakeke te iwi katoa i o ratou ngakau, nga Niwhai tonu me nga Ramana, haunga ra te hunga i nui to ratou whakapono: ko te nuinga o te iwi i whakawhirinaki ki to ratou ake kaha, ki to ratou ake matauranga hoki, me te mea ano,

16 Ko etahi pea o nga mea i kiia e ratou era e tupono ki te tika i roto i nga mea maha rawa nei: tena ko tenei, e matau ana tatou e kore e ahei kia rite enei mahi nunui katoa, enei mea whakamiharo ka oti nei te korero.

17 A ka anga ka kororerero ratou, ka tautohetohe ki a ratou ano, ka mea,

And behold, he was never heard of more among the Nephites; and thus were the affairs of the people.

And thus ended the eighty and sixth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

And thus ended also the eighty and seventh year of the reign of the judges, the more part of the people remaining in their pride and wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly before God.

And these were the conditions also, in the eighty and eighth year of the reign of the judges.

And there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity, and do more and more of that which was contrary to the commandments of God, in the eighty and ninth year of the reign of the judges.

But it came to pass in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people, and wonders; and the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

And angels did appear unto men, wise men, and did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy; thus in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts, all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom, saying:

Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

And they began to reason and to contend among themselves, saying:

- 18 E hara tenei i te whakaaro tika, ara, kia puta mai tetahi tangata ko te Karaiti; mehemea ki te tika, a ko ia ano te Tama a te Atua, a te Matua o te rangi, o te whenua pera me te mea ka oti nei te korero, he aha e kore ai ia e whakakite i a ia ano ki a tatou e pera me tana e whakakite ai i a ia ano ki te hunga e noho ana i a Hiruharama?
- 19 Ae, he aha e kore ai ia e whakakite i a ia ano ki tenei whenua, e pera me tana e whakakite ai i a ia ano ki te whenua o Hiruharama?
- 20 Otira, e matau ana tatou he whakarereanga kino tenei, kua tukua iho e o tatou tupuna ki a tatou, ara, te mea i a tatou kia whakapono atu ki tetahi mea nui, whakamiharo, meake puta, kaore ki waenganui i a tatou ake, engari ki tetahi whenua pamamao noa atu, ko taua whenua ano kaore tatou i te mohio; no reira, ka ahei ratou te pupuri i a tatou i roto i te kuaretanga, e kore hoki o tatou kanohi ake e kite i te pono o enei mea.
- 21 A tera ratou e mahi i runga i te tinihanga, me nga mahi ngaro a te mea kino, i tetahi mea ngaro nui e kore e ahei i a tatou te mohio, e puritia ai tatou hei pononga ki a ratou kupu, hei pononga ano hoki ki a ratou, no te mea kei te whakawhirinaki atu tatou ki a ratou hei whakaako i te kupu ki a tatou; a penei ka puritia tatou e ratou kia kuare, ki te mea ka tuku tatou i a tatou ano ki a ratou i nga ra katoa e ora ai tatou.
- 22 Na, tera atu ano tona tini o nga mea i whakaaro ai ratou i roto i o ratou ngakau, nga mea kuare nga mea tekateka noa; a he nui rawa to ratou raru, no te mea ka whakaoho a Hatana i a ratou kia mahi tonu i te hē; ae, ka kopikopiko ia ka kawe korero, ka whakahorapa i nga tautohetohenga i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, kia whakapakeke ai ia i nga ngakau o te iwi ki te mea pai, ki te mea ano e puta mai ana;
- 23 A ahakoa ra nga tohu me nga mahi whakamiharo i meatia i roto i te iwi o te Ariki, me nga merekara maha i meatia ai e ratou, ka whai wahi nui a Hatana ki nga ngakau o te iwi, i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua.
- 24 A ka penei te mutunga o te iwa tekau o nga tau o te whakahaeretanga a nga Kai-whakariterite i runga i te iwi o Niwhai.

That it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

Yea, why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

But behold, we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass, but not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not; therefore they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

And they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery which we cannot understand, which will keep us down to be servants to their words, and also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word; and thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

And many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain; and they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually; yea, he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land, that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

And notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord, and the many miracles which they did, Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

And thus ended the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges over the people of Nephi.

25 Na, i penei ano te mutunga o te pukapuka a  
Heramana, ki te ritenga o te tuhituhinga a Heramana  
ratou ko ana tamariki tane.

And thus ended the book of Helaman, according  
to the record of Helaman and his sons.

# Ko Te Pukapuka A Niwhai.

## A Te Tama A Niwhai, Ko Ia Te Tama A Heramana.

*A ko Heramana te tama a Heramana, ko ia nei te tama a Arami, ko ia nei te tama a Arami, he uri hoki no Niwhai, ko ia nei te tamaiti a Ribai, a tera i haere mai ki waho o Hiruharama i te tau tuatabi i kingi ai a Terekia, kingi o Hura.*

### III. Niwhai. 1

- 1 Nawai a, kua pahemo atu te iwa tekau ma tahi o nga tau, a kua taka ano nga tau e ono rau mai i te takiwa i mahue ai a Hiruharama i a Rihai; a i taua tau ano ko Rakoneu te Kai-whakawa Nui me te Kawana i runga i te whenua.
- 2 Na, kua haere atu a Niwhai, tama a Heramana ki waho o te whenua o Harahemera, kua hoatu hoki e ia ki tana tama, ki a Niwhai, ko ia nei tana matamua, te tikanga mo nga papa parahi me nga tuhituhinga katoa i tuhituhia ai, me aua mea katoa ano i tiakina, i puritia i runga i te tapu mai ano i te wa i puta mai ai a Rihai ki waho o Hiruharama.
- 3 Katahi tera ka puta atu i te whenua, a kahore tetahi tangata i mohio ki te wahi i haere ai ia: a na tana tama, na Niwhai i tuhituhi nga tuhituhinga mo tenei iwi i muri i a ia.
- 4 Na, i te timatanga o te iwa tekau ma rua o nga tau, ka timata te tino tutukitanga o nga poropititanga a nga poropiti; no te mea ko nga tohu me nga merekara i mahia ai i roto i te iwi he rahi atu i o mua.
- 5 Otira ko etahi i timata te ki, kua taka ke te wa mo nga kupu i korero ai a Hamuera, te Ramana, kia tutuki.
- 6 A ka timata ratou te whakamanamana ki o ratou teina, te mea, Na, kua taka ke te taima, a kahore ano i rite nga kupu a Hamuera; no reira, he tekateka noa to koutou hari, me to koutou whakapono mo tenei mea.

# Third Nephi

*And Helaman was the son of Helaman, who was the son of Alma, who was the son of Alma, being a descendant of Nephi who was the son of Lehi, who came out of Jerusalem in the first year of the reign of Zedekiah, the king of Judah.*

### 3 Nephi 1

Now it came to pass that the ninety and first year had passed away and it was six hundred years from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem; and it was in the year that Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

And Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

Then he departed out of the land, and whither he went, no man knoweth; and his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

And it came to pass that in the commencement of the ninety and second year, behold, the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; for there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

But there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

And they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; therefore, your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

- 7      Nawai a, ka ara i a ratou tetahi ngangau nui puta noa i te whenua; a ka pa te hinapouri ki te hunga whakapono kei kore e mana nga mea i korerotia:
- 8      Heoi ka ata whanga ratou ki taua ra, me taua po, me taua ra ano, e rite ai ki te ra kotahi, me te mea kahore he po, kia mohio ai ratou ki to ratou whakapono ehara i te mea tekateka noa.
- 9      Na, i whakaritea tetahi ra e te hunga whakaponokore hei patunga mo te hunga katoa i whakapono ki aua whakarereinga iho, ki te kore e puta te tohu i korerotia e Hamuera poropiti.
- 10     Na, i te kitenga o Niwhai, te tama a Niwhai, i tenei kino a tona iwi, ka pa te hinapouri ki tona ngakau.
- 11     A ka puta atu ia ki waho, a tuohu ana ki te whenua, he nui ano tona reo ki te karanga ki te Atua mo tana iwi; ae ra, mo te hunga whano ka whakamatea, mo ratou i whakapono ki nga whakarereinga iho a o ratou tupuna.
- 12     A he nui tana karanga ki te Ariki i taua ra katoa: na, ka puta mai te reo o te Ariki ki a ia, ka mea.
- 13     Kia ara to mahunga kia maia to ngakau, ta te mea, na, meake te wa, a hei tenei po ano hoatu ai te tohu, a hei apopo au tae atu ai ki roto ki te ao, hei whakaatu atu ki te ao ka mana i a au nga mea katoa i mea ai ahau kia korerotia e nga mangai o aku poropiti tapu.
- 14     Na, ka haere atu ahau ki aku ake, kia rite ai nga mea katoa i whakaatu ai ahau ki nga tamariki a te tangata, no te orokohanganga o te ao, hei whakarite hoki i ta te Matua raua ko te Tama i pai ai; ta te Matua, he mea moku ake; ta te Tama, he mea mo oku kikokiko. Na, kua tata te taima, a hei tenei po ano hoatu ai te tohu.
- 15     Na, ka rite nga kupu i puta mai ai ki a Niwhai, ka pera tonu me te ahua i korerotia mai ai; no te mea, na, i te tōnga o te ra, kahore he pouri; a ka oho te iwi i te kore pouritanga i te mea kua tae ki te wa o te po.

And it came to pass that they did make a great uproar throughout the land; and the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

But behold, they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

Now it came to pass that there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

Now it came to pass that when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

And it came to pass that he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people, yea, those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

And it came to pass that he cried mightily unto the Lord all that day; and behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

Lift up your head and be of good cheer; for behold, the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfil all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

Behold, I come unto my own, to fulfil all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world, and to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son—of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh. And behold, the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

And it came to pass that the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken; for behold, at the going down of the sun there was no darkness; and the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

16 A he tokomaha kihai nei i whakapono ki nga kupu a nga poropiti, na, hinga ana ki te whenua, me te mea kua mate, i mohio hoki ratou kua hinga te tikanga nui o te whakangaromanga i whakatakoto ai ratou mo te hunga i whakapono ki nga kupu a nga poropiti; no te mea kua tae mai te tohu i korerotia ai:

17 A ka timata ratou te mohio, ka tata te puta mai te Tama a te Atua; ae ra hoki, ko te iwi katoa i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, i te hauauru puta noa ki te rawhiti, i te whenua whaka-te-nota, i te whenua whaka-te-tonga ano hoki, hinga rawa ana ratou ki te whenua i te miharo nui;

18 No te mea i mohio ratou he maha nga tau i whakaatu ai nga poropiti mo enei mea, kua tae mai ano hoki te tohu i homai nei; a ka timata ratou te wehi mo to ratou kino mo to ratou whakapono kore.

19 Na, kahore he pouritanga i taua po katoa, engari he marama he pera me to te poutumarotanga. Nawai a, rere mai ana ano te ra i te ata; i runga i tona ritenga tika; a ka mohio ratou ko te ra whanau tera mo te Ariki, he mea hoki na te tohu kua homai nei.

20 Na, kua tutuki tenei mea, ae ra, nga mea katoa, tenei tongi, tenei tongi, rite tonu ki nga kupu a nga poropiti.

21 Nawai a, puta mai ana ano he whetu hou, rite tonu ki te kupu i kiia ai.

22 Na, no taua wa ake, ka tukua atu nga korero teka ki roto ki te iwi, e Hatana hei whakapakeke i o ratou ngakau kei whakaponohia e ratou aua tohu me aua whakamiharo kua kite nei ratou; heoi he ahakoa ra enei korero teka me enei tinihanga, ka whakapono tonu te wahi nui o te iwi, a tahuri mai ana ki te Ariki.

23 A haereere ana a Niwhai i roto i te iwi, me etahi atu tokomaha ano hoki, e rumaki ana hei mea ripenetatanga, a he nui nga hara i murua. A penei ka timata ano te ata noho o te iwi i runga i te whenua;

24 A kore ake he tautohetohenga, heoi ano ko etahi tangata torutoru nei i kauwhau, i whakamatau ki te whakaatu i roto i te karaipiture, kahore atu he tikanga o te whakarite i te ture a Mohi. Na, i hē ratou i runga i tenei mea, tē matau hoki ki nga karaipiture.

And there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead, for they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated; for the sign which had been given was already at hand.

And they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear; yea, in fine, all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

For they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for many years, and that the sign which had been given was already at hand; and they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

And it came to pass that there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as though it was mid-day. And it came to pass that the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper order; and they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born, because of the sign which had been given.

And it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the words of the prophets.

And it came to pass also that a new star did appear, according to the word.

And it came to pass that from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they had seen; but notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others, baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great remission of sins. And thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

And there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses. Now in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

25 Oтира kahore i taro kua whakaaturia to ratou hē, a kua kite ratou i to ratou pohehe, no te mea i whakaaturia ki a ratou kahore ano te ture kia rite noa, a me rite rawa te katoa; ae ra, i puta te kupu ki a ratou me rite tera: e kore e pahemo tetahi tohu, tongi ranei, engari kia rite ra ano te katoa; no reira i tenei tau ano ka tae ratou ki te matauranga ki to ratou pohehe, a whakina ana o ratou hē.

26 A penei ka pahemo te iwa tekau ma rua o nga tau, e whakaputa mai ana i nga rongo whakahari ki te iwi, he mea mo nga tohu i rite, e rite ana ki nga kupu o nga poropititanga a nga poropiti tapu katoa.

27 Nawai a, ka pahemo ano te iwa tekau ma toru o nga tau i runga i te ata noho, haunga ra nga kai pahua Karianato, i noho ra i runga i nga maunga, i hono tonu hoki a ratou whakararuraru i te whenua; he kaha hoki no o ratou piringa me o ratou wahi ngaro i kore ai e taea e te iwi; koia ratou i mahi ai i nga kohurutanga maha, a he nui te whakamatenga i roto i te iwi.

28 Na, i te iwa tekau ma wha o nga tau, ka tokomaha haere ratou ka nui rawa, no te mea he maha nga tangata puta ke o nga Niwhai i rere atu ki a ratou, a ko te mea tenei i pa ai te pouri nui ki aua Niwhai i noho tonu ki te whenua;

29 Na, he take pouri nui ano i roto i nga Ramana; no te mea, he maha a ratou tamariki i tupu ake, i pakeke, no ka tango i a ratou ake whakaaro, heoi, i whakakotiti ketia ratou e etahi o nga Horama, i runga i a ratou korero teka me a ratou kupu whakapatipati, a uru ana ki aua kai pahua Karianato;

30 A penei ka tukinotia ano hoki nga Ramana, a ka timata te heke haere o to ratou whakapono me to ratou tika, he mea na te kino o aua tamariki e tupu ake nei.

But it came to pass that they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in, for it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, and that it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled; yea, that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled; therefore in this same year were they brought to a knowledge of their error and did confess their faults.

And thus the ninety and second year did pass away, bringing glad tidings unto the people because of the signs which did come to pass, according to the words of the prophecy of all the holy prophets.

And it came to pass that the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them; therefore they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

And it came to pass that in the ninety and fourth year they began to increase in a great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them, which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

And there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites; for behold, they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

And thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

### III. Niwhai. 2

- 1 A i pera hoki te pahemotanga o te iwa tekau ma rima o nga tau, ka wareware haere te iwi ki aua tohu me aua mea whakamiharo i rongo ai ratou, ka iti haere tonu hoki to ratou miharo ki tetahi tohu mea whakamiharo ranei no te rangi, no ka timata te pakeke o o ratou ngakau me te kapotanga o o ratou whakaaro; a ka anga ratou ka whakateka ki nga mea katoa i rongo ai ratou i kite ai.
- 2 Whakaaro horihori ake ana i roto i o ratou ngakau, ara, he mea mahi era na te tangata, me te kaha o te rewera hei whakakotiti ke hei maminga i nga ngakau o te iwi; a penei ka riro ano i a Hatana nga ngakau o te iwi, no ka whakamatapotia e ia o ratou kanohi, ka whakaputaina ketia o ratou whakapono ki te whakaakoranga o te Karaiti he mea kuare, he mea horihori.
- 3 Nawai a, ka tupu ka kaha te iwi i roto i te kino, me te whakarihariha; a kahore o ratou whakapono, tera e homai etahi atu tohu, mea whakamiharo ranei, a ka haereere a Hatana, ka whakakotiti ke i nga ngakau o te iwi, e whakamatautau ana i a ratou, e mea ana i a ratou kia mahi i nga kino nunui i runga i te whenua.
- 4 A i pera ano te pahemotanga o te iwa tekau ma ono o nga tau; me te iwa tekau ma whitu o nga tau; me te iwa tekau ma waru ano hoki o nga tau; me te iwa tekau ma iwa o nga tau;
- 5 A kotahi rau hoki nga tau i pahemo i muri mai i nga ra i a Mohia, i te kingi, i runga i te iwi o nga Niwhai.
- 6 A e ono rau ma iwa nga tau kua pahemo atu i te mahuetanga o Hiruharama i a Rihai;
- 7 A e iwa nga tau kua pahemo mai o te wa i homai ai te tohu i korerotia e nga poropiti, mo te Karaiti kia puta mai ki te ao.
- 8 Na, i timata nga Niwhai te tatau i to ratou taima i te wa i homai ai te tohu, ara, i te taenga mai o te Karaiti: no reira kua pahemo nga tau e iwa.
- 9 Na, kihai a Niwhai, te papa o Niwhai, i a ia ra nga tuhituhinga e tiaki ana, i hoki ki te whenua o Harahemera, a kihai ano i kitea i runga i te whenua katoa.

### 3 Nephi 2

And it came to pass that thus passed away the ninety and fifth year also, and the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard, and began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven, insomuch that they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, and began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen—

Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts, that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people; and thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again, insomuch that he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

And it came to pass that the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations; and they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given; and Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

And thus did pass away the ninety and sixth year; and also the ninety and seventh year; and also the ninety and eighth year; and also the ninety and ninth year;

And also an hundred years had passed away since the days of Mosiah, who was king over the people of the Nephites.

And six hundred and nine years had passed away since Lehi left Jerusalem.

And nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

Now the Nephites began to reckon their time from this period when the sign was given, or from the coming of Christ; therefore, nine years had passed away.

And Nephi, who was the father of Nephi, who had the charge of the records, did not return to the land of Zarahemla, and could nowhere be found in all the land.



- 10 A i noho tonu te iwi i runga i te kino, he ahakoa te nui o te kauwhautanga me te poropititanga i tukua atu ki roto ki a ratou; a penei ka pahemo ano te tekau o nga tau; me te tekau ma tahi ano hoki o nga tau i pahemo i runga i te hara.
- 11 Nawai ra, i te tekau ma toru o nga tau, ka tupu nga whawhai me nga tautohetohenga puta noa i te whenua katoa; no te mea kua tini nga kai pahua Karianato, a he tokomaha o te iwi i patupatua, me nga pa maha ano i horo i a ratou, a na ratou ano i hora te mate nui me te kohuru puta noa i te whenua no ka riro hei take nui mo te iwi katoa, mo nga Niwhai me nga Ramana ano hoki, kia hapai patu ki a ratou;
- 12 Koia nga Ramana katoa kua tahuri mai nei ki te Ariki, i huihui ai ki o ratou teina, ki nga Niwhai, a i meinga ratou, he whakaaro hoki ki to ratou oranga, me a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, kia hapai patu ki aua kai pahua Karianato; ae ra, me te tiaka hoki i o ratou tikanga, me o ratou ritenga o to ratou hahi, o to ratou karakia, me to ratou mawehetanga me to ratou here-koretanga.
- 13 A i te mea kaore ano kia pahemo te tekau ma toru o nga tau, ka whakawehia nga Niwhai ki te whakangaromanga rawatanga, he mea na tenei whawhai, koia i riro hei mea nanakia rawa atu.
- 14 Na, i taua ngatahitia me nga Niwhai aua Ramana i huihui ai ki nga Niwhai;
- 15 I whakakorea te kanga i runga i a ratou, a meinga ana o ratou kiri kia ma kia pera ano me nga Niwhai;
- 16 Ko a ratou taitamariki me a ratou taitamahine i riro hei mea ataahua rawa, a i taua nagatahitia ratou me nga Niwhai, i huaina hoki he Niwhai. A i penei te mutunga o te tekau ma toru o nga tau.
- 17 Na, i te timatanga o te tekau ma wha o nga tau, ka haere tonu te whawhai i waenganui o nga kai pahua me te iwi o Niwhai, a ka tino kaha rawa ano; otira i whiwhi kaha te iwi o Niwhai ki runga ki nga kai pahua, a panaia ana ratou e ratou ki waho o o ratou whenua ki roto ki nga maunga, me o ratou wahi ngaro.

And it came to pass that the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them; and thus passed away the tenth year also; and the eleventh year also passed away in iniquity.

And it came to pass in the thirteenth year there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land; for the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

Therefore, all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites, and were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers, yea, and also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

And it came to pass that before this thirteenth year had passed away the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

And their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

And their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called Nephites. And thus ended the thirteenth year.

And it came to pass in the commencement of the fourteenth year, the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore; nevertheless, the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

18 A i penei te mutunga o te tekau ma wha o nga tau. A i te tekau ma rima o nga tau, ka whakatika mai ratou ki te iwi o Niwhai; a he nui te kaha i whiwhi ai nga kai pahua o Karianato ki runga ki a ratou, he mea na te kino o te iwi o Niwhai, me a ratou tautohetohenga, me a ratou wehewehenga.

19 Heoi ka mutu te tekau ma rima o nga tau, a e noho ana te iwi i roto i nga mamae maha; e iri ana ano te hoari whakangaro i runga ake i a ratou, a e tata ana ratou te haua iho, he mea mo a ratou kino.

And thus ended the fourteenth year. And in the fifteenth year they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

And thus ended the fifteenth year, and thus were the people in a state of many afflictions; and the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

### III. Niwhai. 3

- 1 Nawai a, i te tekau ma ono o nga tau o te taenga mai o te Karaiti, ka whiwhi a Rakoneu, te kawana o te whenua, ki tetahi pukapuka na te kai whakahaere, te kawana o tenei ope kai pahua; a ko nga kupu enei i tuhituhia ai i mea ai.
- 2 E Rakoneu, e te Kawana Nui pai rawa o te whenua, tenei ahau te tuhituhi atu nei i tenei pukapuka ki a koe, me te whakamihi nui atu ano ki a koe mo tou u, me te u o tou iwi, i runga i te tiakanga i ena mea e ki na koutou he tikanga, he herekoretanga no koutou; na, ka nui to koutou kaha ki te tu, me te mea e tautokona ana koutou e te ringa o tetahi Atua, i runga i te tiakanga o to koutou herekoretanga, o o koutou taonga, o to koutou kainga, ara, e pena ana ta koutou whakahua he kainga no koutou.
- 3 Na, he mea pouri ki a au, e Rakoneu, e te tangata pai rawa, ta koutou whakaaro kuare tekateka noa, e whakaaro na koutou, e ahei ana koutou te tu mai ki enei toa maha, i raro nei i taku whakahau, e tu nei inaianei, i tenei takiwa nei ano i roto i o ratou kakahu whawhai, e tatari nei i runga i te ngakau nui ki tenei kupu, me haere ki raro ki nga Niwhai whakangaro ai i a ratou.
- 4 A e mohio ana ahau ki o ratou wairua e kore nei e taea te pehi, ka oti nei hoki ratou te whakamatautau e au i runga i te parekura, me taku mohio ana hoki ki ta ratou mauahara mutunga-kore ki a koutou, i nga he maha i meatia ai e koutou ki a ratou, na konei ra ki te haere ratou ki raro ki te whawhai ki a koutou, na, ka whakangaromia rawatia koutou e ratou;
- 5 Koia ahau ka tuhituhi atu nei i tenei pukapuka, a ma toku ake ringa ano e hiri, he whakaaro noku ki te pai mo koutou, mo to koutou u ki te mea e whakapono na koutou he tika, me o koutou wairua maia i runga i te parekura;
- 6 No reira ka tuhituhi atu ahau ki a koe, he tonono ki a koe kia tukua mai ki toku iwi, o koutou pa, o koutou whenua, me a koutou taonga, engari hoki tenei i ta ratou whiungia i a koutou ki te hoari, me te panga o te whakangaromanga ki a koutou;

### 3 Nephi 3

And now it came to pass that in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers; and these were the words which were written, saying:

Lachoneus, most noble and chief governor of the land, behold, I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty; yea, ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country, or that which ye do call so.

And it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word—Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

And I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

Therefore I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare, because of your firmness in that which ye believe to be right, and your noble spirit in the field of battle.

Therefore I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

7 Ara, kia tukua mai koutou e koutou ano ki a matou; kia uru hoki ki a matou, kia ako i a matou mahi ngaro, a ka riro mai hei teina ki a matou, kia rite koutou ki a matou; ehara i te mea hei pononga ki a matou engari hei teina ki a matou, hei hoa hoki ki a matou i runga i a matou rawa katoa.

8 Na, ko taku oati tenei ki a koe, ki te whakaae koutou ki tenei, me tetahi oati, e kore koutou e whakangaromia; otira ki te kore koutou e whakaae mai ki tenei, na, taku oati e oati nei ahau ki a koe, hei apopo kia kotahi te marama, ka whakahau iho ahau kia haere atu aku taua ki raro ki te whawhai ki a koutou, a e kore e puritia e ratou o ratou ringaringa, e kore hoki e tohu tangata, engari ka patupatua koutou, ka tukua te hoari kia hinga ki runga ki a koutou, a, te whakangaromanga rawatanga mo koutou.

9 Nana, ko Kirianahi ahau; ko au ano te kawana o tenei huihui ngaro o Karianato; a e mohio ana ano ahau ki tenei huihui, me ana mahi, koia he pai: he mea nonamata, he mea tuku iho ano hoki ki a matou,

10 A ka tuhituhi atu ahau i tenei pukapuka ki a koe, ki a Rakoneu, me te tumanako atu ano ka tuku mai koutou i o koutou whenua, me o koutou taonga, i runga i te kore whakaheke toto, kia riro mai ano i toku iwi o ratou tikanga, me to ratou kawanatanga, i mawehe mai ratou i a koutou, he mea na o koutou kino i runga i te kaiponuhanga o o ratou tikanga hei kawana ki a ratou, na, ki te kore e rite i a koe tenei, era ahau e ngaki mate mo o ratou he. Na, ko Kirianahi ahau.

11 Na, i te taenga mai o tenei pukapuka ki a Rakoneu, ka rahi rawa tona oho i te maia o Kirianahi e tono mai ana i te whenua o nga Niwhai, me te whakawehi ano i te iwi me te rapu utu mo nga he o te hunga kahore ano kia whakawhiwhia ki te he ki aua kai pahua kino whakarihariha.

Or in other words, yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us and become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us—not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

And behold, I swear unto you, if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; but if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

And behold, I am Giddianhi; and I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

And I write this epistle unto you, Lachoneus, and I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government, and except ye do this, I will avenge their wrongs. I am Giddianhi.

And now it came to pass when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

- 12 Na, he tangata tika tenei Rakoneu, te kawana, a kihai ia i taea e nga tonono me nga whakawehi a tetahi kai pahua te whakawehi; no reira kihai ia i aro atu ki te pukapuka a Kirianahi, a te kawana o nga kai pahua, heoi meinga ana e ia tona iwi kia karanga ake ki te Ariki kia whakakahangia mo te wa e whakatika mai ai nga kai pahua ki a ratou;
- 13 A ka tuku kupu ano ia puta noa i te iwi katoa, kia whakawhaiti ratou i a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, me a ratou kahui o ia ahua, o ia ahua, me a ratou rawa katoa, haunga te whenua, ki te wahi kotahi.
- 14 A ka mea ano ia kia hanga he pa tawhio noa, tawhio noa i a ratou, to reira kaha kia kaha rawa atu. Ka mea ano ia i nga taua a nga Niwhai, a nga Ramana ano hoki, ara, o te hunga katoa e taua ngatahitia ana me nga Niwhai, kia whakaturia taka noa, taka noa hei kai tiaki mo ratou, hei tiaki i a ratou i nga kai pahua, i te ao, i te po;
- 15 Na, ka mea ia ki a ratou, e ora ana te Ariki, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta ki o koutou kino katoa, me te karanga ano ki te Ariki, e kore rawa koutou e whakaorangia i nga ringaringa o aua kai pahua Karianato.
- 16 A i runga i te nui me te whakamiharo o nga kupu me nga poropititanga a Rakoneu, ka pa te wehi ki te iwi katoa, ka whakapau i to ratou kaha katoa ki te whakarite i nga kupu a Rakoneu.
- 17 Nawai a, ka whakaturia nga rangatira nui e Rakoneu i runga i nga taua katoa a nga Niwhai, hei whakahau i a ratou a te wa e haere iho ai nga kai pahua ki waho o te koraha ki te whawhai ki a ratou.
- 18 Na, i whakaturia te rangatira nui o nga rangatira katoa, te kai whakahau nui o nga taua katoa a nga Niwhai, ko Kikironi tona ingoa.
- 19 Na, ko te ritenga i roto i nga Niwhai katoa, ina whakatu rangatira nui mo ratou, haunga ra nga wa e kino ana ratou, ko tetahi tangata kei a ia nei te Wairua o te whakakitenga, o te poropititanga hoki; no reira, he poropiti nui tenei Kikironi i roto i a ratou, a ko te Kai-whakawa Nui ano ia.

Now behold, this Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber; therefore he did not hearken to the epistle of Giddianhi, the governor of the robbers, but he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

Yea, he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

And he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great. And he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

Yea, he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

And so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

And it came to pass that Lachoneus did appoint chief captains over all the armies of the Nephites, to command them at the time that the robbers should come down out of the wilderness against them.

Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of all the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

Now it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy; therefore, this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

20 Na, ka mea atu te iwi ki a Kikironi, inoi atu ki te Ariki, a tatou ka piki ake ki runga ki nga maunga, ki te koraha hoki, kia kokiri ai tatou i nga kai pahua, ki te whakamate i a ratou i roto i o ratou ake whenua.

21 Heoi ka mea atu a Kikironi ki a ratou, kahore rapea: ki te mea hoki ka piki ake tatou ki te whawhai ki a ratou, ka tukua tatou e te Ariki ki roto ki o ratou ringaringa; no reira ka whakarite tatou i a tatou i waenganui pu o o tatou whenua, a ka whakamine tatou i a tatou taua katoa, e kore tatou e whakatika atu ki a ratou, engari ka whanga kia tae mai ratou ki te whawhai ki a tatou; a ma konei ki te penei tatou, e ora ana te Ariki, ka tukua mai ratou ki roto ki o tatou ringaringa.

22 Na, i te tekau ma whitu o nga tau, i te wahi whakamutunga o te tau, kua riro atu te kupu a Rakoneu puta noa i te mata katoa o te whenua, a ka mau ratou ki o ratou hoiho, ki o ratou hariata, ki a ratou kau, ki a ratou kahui o ia ahua, o ia ahua, ki o ratou kereene, me a ratou rawa katoa, a ka haere, he mano, he tekau mano, a ka poto katoa ratou te haere ki te wahi i whakaritea hei kainga huihui mo ratou hei tiaki i a ratou ano i o ratou hoa riri.

23 A ko te whenua i whakaritea ko te whenua o Harahemera me te whenua o Momona; ae ra, tae noa atu ki te rohe i waenganui o te whenua Momona o te whenua Whakangaromanga;

24 He mano tini te iwi i huaina nei ko nga Niwhai, i huihui ki tenei whenua. Na, i mea a Rakoneu i a ratou kia huihui ki roto ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga, na te kanga nui hoki i runga i te whenua whaka-te-nota;

25 A ka hanga pa ratou mo ratou ano mo te whawhai ki o ratou hoa riri; kotahi ano whenua i noho ai ratou, kotahi ano hoki tinana, a ka wehi ratou i nga kupu i korerotia e Rakoneu, no ka ripeneta ratou mo o ratou hara katoa; a ka puta ake a ratou inoi ki te Ariki ki to ratou Atua, kia whakaoranga ratou ina haere mai o ratou hoa riri ki te whawhai ki a ratou.

Now the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

But Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid; for if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands; therefore we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we will gather all our armies together, and we will not go against them, but we will wait till they shall come against us; therefore as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our hands.

And it came to pass in the seventeenth year, in the latter end of the year, the proclamation of Lachoneus had gone forth throughout all the face of the land, and they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle, and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to defend themselves against their enemies.

And the land which was appointed was the land of Zarahemla, and the land which was between the land Zarahemla and the land Bountiful, yea, to the line which was between the land Bountiful and the land Desolation.

And there were a great many thousand people who were called Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land. Now Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves together in the land southward, because of the great curse which was upon the land northward.

And they did fortify themselves against their enemies; and they did dwell in one land, and in one body, and they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus, insomuch that they did repent of all their sins; and they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come down against them to battle.

26 Heoi ka pa te pouri nui ki a ratou mo o ratou hoa riri. A ka mea a Kikironi i a ratou kia hanga i nga patu whawhai o ia tu, o ia tu, kia kaha ano hoki ratou i o ratou kakahu whawhai, puapua, whakangungu-rakau, kia rite hoki ki tana whakaakoranga.

And they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies. And Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

### III. Niwhai. 4

- 1 Nawai a, i te wahi whakamutunga o te tekau ma waru o nga tau, kua rite nga taua a aua kai pahua mo te whawhai, a ka timata ratou te haere mai ki raro, te putaputa mai i nga puke, i nga maunga, i te koraha, i o ratou piringa kaha, me o ratou wahi ngaro, a timata ana te noho i nga whenua whaka-te-tonga, i te whenua whaka-te-nota ano hoki, a timata ana nohoia ana e ratou nga whenua katoa i mahue i nga Niwhai, me nga pa i mahue kia takoto kau ana.
- 2 Otiia kahore he kararehe mohoa, he mea ranei hei patunga i roto i aua whenua i mahue i nga Niwhai, a kahore he patunga ma nga kai pahua, kei te koraha anake;
- 3 A kahore he oranga mo nga kai pahua, kei te koraha anake, kahore hoki he kai; no te mea kua mahue i nga Niwhai o ratou whenua kia takoto noa ana, a kua whakawhaititia e ratou a ratou kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, me a ratou rawa katoa, a kei te noho topu ratou;
- 4 No reira kahore he huarahi pahua mo nga kai pahua e whiwhi kai ai ratou, mo te whakatika nui anake ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai; a e noho topu ana nga Niwhai, he tini ano ratou, i tiakina ano e ratou he kai ma ratou, he hoiho, he kau, me nga kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, e ora ai ratou mo nga tau e whitu, i tumanako hoki ratou kia whakangaromia atu nga kai pahua i runga i te mata o te whenua i taua wa. A i penei te pahemotanga atu o te tekau ma waru o nga tau.
- 5 Nawai a, i te tekau ma iwa o nga tau ka kite a Kirianahi e tika ana me haere ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai, no te mea e kore ratou e ora, ki te kore e haere i runga i te pahua, i te tahae, i te kohuru.
- 6 A e wehi ana ratou ki te marara atu i runga i te whenua, e ahei ai ratou te whakatupu kereene kei huaki mai nga Niwhai ki a ratou, kei whakamate i a ratou; koia a Kirianahi i whakahau ai ki ana taua kia whakatika atu ratou i tenei tau ki te whawhai ki nga Niwhai.

### 3 Nephi 4

And it came to pass that in the latter end of the eighteenth year those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, and began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places, and began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north, and began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

But behold, there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

And the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food; for the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

Therefore, there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites; and the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to destroy the robbers from off the face of the land; and thus the eighteenth year did pass away.

And it came to pass that in the nineteenth year Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to battle against the Nephites, for there was no way that they could subsist save it were to plunder and rob and murder.

And they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should come upon them and slay them; therefore Giddianhi gave commandment unto his armies that in this year they should go up to battle against the Nephites.



- 7      Nawai a, haere mai ana ratou ki runga ki te whawhai; ko te ono ano tenei o nga marama; nana, he ra nui whakawehi taua ra i haere mai ai ratou ki te whawhai; a i whitikiria ano ratou i runga i to nga kai pahua ritenga: he kiri-reme to ratou whitiki ki o ratou hope, he mea pani hoki ratou ki te toto, o ratou mahunga he mea heu, a he tiaki mahunga o ratou ka oti te potae: a he mea nui whakawehi te ahua o nga taua a Kirianahi, na o ratou kakahu whawhai hoki, na to ratou paninga hoki i a ratou ki te toto.
- 8      Na, i te kitenga o nga taua a nga Niwhai i te ahua o te taua a Kirianahi, ka hinga ratou ki te whenua, ka karanga ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, kia tohungia ratou, kia whakaputa hoki i a ratou ki waho i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri.
- 9      Ano ka kite nga taua a Kirianahi i tenei, he nui to ratou reo ki te hamama, he koanga hoki no ratou, no te mea i mahara ratou kua hinga nga Niwhai i te wehi, he mea na te whakawehi o a ratou taua;
- 10     Heoi he pohehe tenei no ratou, kahore hoki o nga Niwhai wehi i a ratou, engari i wehi ratou i to ratou Atua, a inoi ana ki a ia kia tiakina; no reira i te huakanga o nga taua a Kirianahi ki a ratou kua rite ratou mo te tutaki ki a ratou; ae ra, i tutaki ratou ki a ratou i runga i te kaha o te Ariki.
- 11     Na, i timata te whawhai i tenei i te ono o nga marama; a he mea nui whakamataku to reira riri, ae ra, he mea nui whakamataku to reira whakamatenga, a kahore i mohiotia he whakamatenga hei rite mo tenei te nui i roto i te iwi katoa o Rihai mai o te mahuetanga o Hiruharama i a ia.
- 12     Na, he ahakoa nga whakawehi me nga oati i oati ai a Kirianahi, ka taea ratou e nga Niwhai, no ka whati atu ratou i mua i o ratou aroaro.
- 13     A ka whakahauhau a Kikironi i ana taua kia whai i a ratou tae noa ki nga rohe o te koraha, kia kauaka hoki ratou e tohu i tetahi tangata e taka ana ki roto ki o ratou ringaringa, a penei ka whaiwhai ratou i a ratou ka patupatu i a ratou, tae noa atu ki nga rohe o te koraha, a rite ana i a ratou te whakahau a Kikironi.

And it came to pass that they did come up to battle; and it was in the sixth month; and behold, great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle; and they were girded about after the manner of robbers; and they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in blood, and their heads were shorn, and they had head-plates upon them; and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of Giddianhi, because of their armor, and because of their being dyed in blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

And it came to pass that when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with a loud voice, because of their joy, for they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear because of the terror of their armies.

But in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not fear them; but they did fear their God and did supplicate him for protection; therefore, when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were prepared to meet them; yea, in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

And the battle commenced in this the sixth month; and great and terrible was the battle thereof, yea, great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that there never was known so great a slaughter among all the people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

And notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them, insomuch that they did fall back from before them.

And it came to pass that Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not spare any that should fall into their hands by the way; and thus they did pursue them and did slay them, to the borders of the wilderness, even until they had fulfilled the commandment of Gidgiddoni.

- 14 Na, i whaia a Kirianahi, te tangata i tu ai i whawhai maia ai, i a ia e rere ana; a e ngenge ana ia i te nui o tana whawhai, no reira ia i mau ai, a ka whakamatea. A ko te whakamutunga tenei o Kirianahi, o te kai pahua.
- 15 Na, hoki ana nga taua a nga Niwhai ki to ratou kainga ora. A kihai nga kai pahua i haere mai ano ki te whawhai i te pahemotanga o te tekau ma iwa o nga tau; kihai ano hoki ratou i haere mai i te rua tekau o nga tau;
- 16 A i te rua tekau ma tahi o nga tau kahore ratou i haere mai ki te whawhai, otira i haere mai ratou i nga taha katoa e whakapae mai ana awhio noa i te iwi o Niwhai: no te mea i mahara ratou, ki te kati atu ratou i te iwi o Niwhai i o ratou whenua, me te whakapae i a ratou i tetahi taha, i tetahi taha, ki te mea hoki ka kati ratou i a ratou ki o ratou tikanga katoa o waho, ka meinga ratou kia tuku i a ratou ano ki te ritenga o a ratou hiahia.
- 17 Na, i whakatu ratou i tetahi atu kai whakahaere mo ratou, tona ingoa ko Temariha; no reira na Temariha i mea tenei whakapaenga.
- 18 Heoi he pai noa atu tenei ki nga Niwhai; no te mea e kore e taea e nga kai pahua te kukume ta ratou whakapaenga kia roa rawa e ahatia ai nga Niwhai, he nui hoki no a ratou kai i rongotia e ratou.
- 19 No te mea he iti nga kai a nga kai pahua; heoi ano ta ratou ko te kikokiko hei oranga mo ratou, ko taua kikokiko i whiwhi ai ratou o te koraha.
- 20 Nawai a, ka iti nga kararehe mohoa hei patunga ma ratou i roto i te koraha, a tata ana nga kai pahua te mate i te kai.
- 21 A e hono tonu ana te haere atu a nga Niwhai i te ao i te po, e kokiri ana i a ratou taua, e hatepe atu ana i a ratou he mano, he tekau mano.
- 22 A penei ka hiahia te iwi o Temariha kia unuhia ta ratou whakaaro, he mea hoki no te whakangaromanga nui i pa ki a ratou i te ao i te po.

And it came to pass that Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much fighting he was overtaken and slain. And thus was the end of Giddianhi the robber.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of security. And it came to pass that this nineteenth year did pass away, and the robbers did not come again to battle; neither did they come again in the twentieth year.

And in the twenty and first year they did not come up to battle, but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the people of Nephi; for they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

Now they had appointed unto themselves another leader, whose name was Zemnariyah; therefore it was Zemnariyah that did cause that this siege should take place.

But behold, this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

And because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers; for behold, they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

And it came to pass that the wild game became scarce in the wilderness insomuch that the robbers were about to perish with hunger.

And the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

And thus it became the desire of the people of Zemnariyah to withdraw from their design, because of the great destruction which came upon them by night and by day.

23 Na, ka whakahau a Temariha ki te iwi kia whakamutua ta ratou whakapae, kia haere atu ki nga wahi o ko rawa atu o te whenua whaka-te-nota.

24 Na, kua mohio a Kikironi ki ta ratou whakaaro, a e mohio ana ia ki to ratou ngoikoretanga i te kore kai, i te whakamatenga nui hoki i whakamatea ai ratou, no reira ka tonoa e ia ana taua i te po, a haukotia ana to ratou huarahi e hoki atu ai ratou, me te whakatu ano i ana taua ki to ratou hiku;

25 Na, he mea mahi po tenei na ratou, a ka tae atu ratou ki mua atu i nga kai pahua, a ao ake, i te whakatikanga atu o nga kai pahua, kua tutakina ratou a mua a muri ano hoki e nga taua o nga Niwhai.

26 A i katia ano nga huarahi oma atu mo nga kai pahua i te tonga. Na, he mea whakahau na Kikironi i meatia ai enei mea katoa.

27 Na, he tini nga mano i tuku i a ratou ano hei herehere ma nga Niwhai, a i patua te toenga o ratou.

28 Ko to ratou kai whakahaere tikanga ka hopukia, ka tarewatia ki runga ki tetahi rakau, ae ra, ki runga rawa, a mate noa. I te mea kua mate ia, i a ia ano e tarewa ana, ka topea iho te rakau ki te whenua, a, he nui to ratou reo ki te karanga.

29 Ma te Ariki e tiaki tona iwi i runga i te tika me te tapu o te ngakau kia mea ai ratou i nga tangata katoa e whai ana kia whakamatea ratou, i runga i te mana me nga huihui ngaro, kia topea ki te whenua, kia penei me tenei tangata kua topea nei ki te whenua.

30 A ka hari ratou me te karanga, kotahi ano te reo. Ma te Atua o Aperahama, ma te Atua o Ihaka, ma te Atua o Hakopa, tenei iwi e tiaki i runga i te tika i nga wa katoa e karanga ana ratou ki te ingoa o to ratou Atua kia tiakina.

31 Nawai a, kotahi tonu puakanga i a ratou o te waiata, o te whakamoemiti, ki to ratou Atua, he whakaaro ki te mea nui i mea ai ia mo ratou, hei tiaki i a ratou kei taka atu ki roto ki nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri;

And it came to pass that Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthest parts of the land northward.

And now, Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat, and did place his armies in the way of their retreat.

And this did they do in the night-time, and got on their march beyond the robbers, so that on the morrow, when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

And the robbers who were on the south were also cut off in their places of retreat. And all these things were done by command of Gidgiddoni.

And there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were slain.

And their leader, Zemnarihah, was taken and hanged upon a tree, yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead. And when they had hanged him until he was dead they did fell the tree to the earth, and did cry with a loud voice, saying:

May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret combinations, even as this man hath been felled to the earth.

And they did rejoice and cry again with one voice, saying: May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, protect this people in righteousness, so long as they shall call on the name of their God for protection.

And it came to pass that they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their God for the great thing which he had done for them, in preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

32 Ae ra, karanga ana ratou, Ohana ki te Atua I Runga Rawa; a karanga ana ano ratou, Kia whakapaingia te ingoa o te Ariki, o te Atua Kaha Rawa, o te Atua I Runga Rawa.

33 A pupuhi ana o ratou ngakau i te koa, na reira, ka puta mai nga roimata, mo te pai whakaharahara o te Atua, ki te whakaputa i a ratou ki waho i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri; a, i mohio ratou, na to ratou ripenetatanga, na to ratou ngakau papaku hoki i whakaputaina ai ratou i te whakangaromanga mau tonu.

Yea, they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God. And they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty, the Most High God.

And their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of many tears, because of the great goodness of God in delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; and they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

### III. Niwhai. 5

- 1 Na, kahore tahi he tangata e ora ana i roto i te iwi katoa o nga Niwhai, i ruarua ki nga kupu a nga poropiti tapu katoa i korero ai; no te mea i mohio ratou kaore e kore te rite aua mea;
- 2 A, i mohio ano ratou he pono kua tae mai a te Karaiti, he mea na nga tohu maha kua puta mai, rite tonu ki ta nga poropiti i korero ai; a, no te mea, kua rite ana kupu, waihoki ka mohio ratou tera e mana nga mea katoa, rite tonu ki te mea i korerotia;
- 3 No reira i whakarere ai ratou i o ratou hara katoa, i o ratou whakariharia, i o ratou puremutanga, a takare tonu ana ratou ki te mahi ki te Ariki i te ao i te po.
- 4 Na, i te mea kua mau herehere nga kai pahua katoa, a kahore he mea i mawhiti kihai nei i whakamatea, ka panga e ratou nga herehere ki te whare herehere, ka meinga ano hoki te kupu a te Atua ki a kauwhautia ki a ratou; a ko te hunga katoa i ripeneta mo o ratou hara, i uru hoki ki tetahi kawenata kia mutu te kohuru i nga ra e takoto ake nei, i tukua kia haere;
- 5 Otiia te hunga katoa kihai nei i uru ki tetahi kawenata, engari i mau tonu aua kohuru puku i roto i o ratou ngakau; ae ra, te hunga katoa i kitea e korero whakawehi ana ki o ratou teina, i whakataua te he ki a ratou, i whakawhiua hoki ki te ritenga o te ture.
- 6 A i penei te ahua i whakamutua katoatia ai e ratou aua whakakotahitanga kino, aua whakakotahitanga ngaro, whakariharia hoki, i mahia ai he nui te kino me te kohuru.
- 7 Na, penei kua pahemo te rua tekau ma rua o nga tau, me te rua tekau ma toru ano, me te rua tekau ma wha, me te rua tekau ma rima; a penei kua pahemo nga tau e rua tekau ma rima.
- 8 A he maha ano nga mea kua puta, he mea nui whakamiharo ki te tirohanga a etahi; heoi e kore e poto te katoa te tuhituhi ki roto ki tenei pukapuka; ara, e kore e poto ki tenei pukapuka te wahi whakate-rau o nga meatanga i meatia ai i roto i tetahi iwi penei te tokomaha i nga tau e rua tekau ma rima;

### 3 Nephi 5

And now behold, there was not a living soul among all the people of the Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken; for they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

And they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets; and because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

Therefore they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, and their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

And now it came to pass that when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison, and did cause the word of God to be preached unto them; and as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

But as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, and who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts, yea, as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

And thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

And thus had the twenty and second year passed away, and the twenty and third year also, and the twenty and fourth, and the twenty and fifth; and thus had twenty and five years passed away.

And there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book; yea, this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

- 9 Heoi tera ano nga tuhituhinga kei runga e mau ana nga mahi katoa a tenei iwi; a i tuhituhia he whakaaturanga poto, engari he whakaatu pono, e Niwhai;
- 10 No reira kua tuhituhia e ahau taku tuhituhinga i enei mea e rite ana ki te tuhituhinga a Niwhai, i tuhituhia ai ki runga ki nga papa e karangatia nei ko nga papa a Niwhai.
- 11 Na, e tuhituhi ana ahau i te tuhituhinga ki runga ki nga papa i hanga e ahau he mea na oku ringaringa ake.
- 12 Na, e huaina ana ahau ko Moromona, he mea tapa mai ki a au te ingoa o te whenua o Moromona, te whenua i whakaturia ra e Arami te hahi i roto i te iwi; ae ra, te hahi tuatahi i whakaturia i roto i a ratou i muri i to ratou kotiti ketanga.
- 13 Nana, he akonga ahau na Ihu Karaiti, na te Tama a te Atua. Nana ahau i karanga hei whakapuaki i tana kupu i roto i tona iwi, kia whiwhi ai ratou ki te oranga tonutanga.
- 14 Na, e tika ana kia tuhituhia e ahau he tuhituhinga mo nga mea katoa kua pa mai, kia rite ki ta te Atua e pai ai, he mea e rite ai nga inoi a te hunga kua riro atu, ko ratou hoki he hunga tapu, kia rite ki to ratou whakapono.
- 15 Ae ra, he tuhituhinga poto mo nga mea kua puta nei, mai i te takiwa i mahue ai a Hiruharama i a Rihai a mohoa noa nei;
- 16 No reira ka tuhituhi ahau i taku tuhituhinga no nga whakaaturanga i whakaaturia e te hunga i mua atu i a au, tae noa mai ki te timatanga o toku ra;
- 17 Ko reira ahau tuhituhi ai i tetahi tuhituhinga o nga mea kua kitea nei e oku kanohi ake.
- 18 Na, e mohio ana ahau he tika he pono te tuhituhinga e tuhituhia nei e ahau; otira tera ano nga mea maha e kore nei e ahei i a matou te tuhituhi ki te ritenga o to matou ake reo.
- 19 Na, ka whakamutu ahau i taku korero, ara moku ake, a ka timata ka tuhituhi i taku whakaaturanga i nga mea kua takoto i mua atu i a au.

But behold there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people; and a shorter but true account was given by Nephi.

Therefore I have made my record of these things according to the record of Nephi, which was engraven on the plates which were called the plates of Nephi.

And behold, I do make the record on plates which I have made with mine own hands.

And behold, I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people, yea, the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

Behold, I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

And it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done—

Yea, a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem, even down until the present time.

Therefore I do make my record from the accounts which have been given by those who were before me, until the commencement of my day;

And then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with mine own eyes.

And I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record; nevertheless there are many things which, according to our language, we are not able to write.

And now I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to give my account of the things which have been before me.

20 Ko Moromona ahau, ko tetahi uri  
whakahanumikore o Rihai. He take nui taku hei  
whakanui maku i toku Atua, me toku Kai-whakaora  
ano hoki, me Ihu Karaiti, mona i kawē mai i o matou  
tupuna ki waho i te whenua o Hiruharama, ( a  
kahore tahi he tangata i mohio ko ia anake ratou ko  
te hunga i mauria mai e ia ki waho o taua whenua,)  
mona ano i homai ki a au me toku iwi i tenei  
matauranga nui hei whakaoranga mo o matou  
wairua.

21 He pono nana i manaaki te whare o Hakopa, i  
atawhai te uri o Hohepa.

22 A i te mea kua mau nga tamariki a Rihai ki ana  
whakahaunga i manaakitia ratou e ia, i meinga hoki  
ratou kia whai pai ki te ritenga o tana kupu;

23 A he pono hoki ka whakamohio ano ia i tetahi  
toenga o nga uri o Hohepa ki te matauranga ki te  
Ariki, ki to ratou Atua:

24 A he pono, e ora ana te Ariki ka whakaminea e ia i  
nga topito e wha nga toenga katoa o te uri o Hakopa,  
e noho marara ana i runga i te mata katoa o te  
whenua;

25 A pera ano me ia kua kawenata ki te whare katoa o  
Hakopa, waihoki ka mana taua kawenata i kawenata  
ai ia ki te whare o Hakopa i tana wa e rite ai, hei  
whakarironga mai ano i te whare katoa o Hakopa ki  
te matauranga ki te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki a  
ratou;

26 Ko reira ratou matau ai ki to ratou Kai-hoko koia  
nei a Ihu Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua; ko reira ano hoki  
ratou whakaminea mai ai i nga wahi e wha o te ao ki  
o ratou ake whenua, i whakamararatia atu ai ratou i  
reira; na, e ora ana te Ariki, tera e rite tenei mea.  
Amine.

I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi. I  
have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus  
Christ, that he brought our fathers out of the land of  
Jerusalem, (and no one knew it save it were himself  
and those whom he brought out of that land) and  
that he hath given me and my people so much  
knowledge unto the salvation of our souls.

Surely he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and  
hath been merciful unto the seed of Joseph.

And insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept  
his commandments he hath blessed them and pros-  
pered them according to his word.

Yea, and surely shall he again bring a remnant of  
the seed of Joseph to the knowledge of the Lord their  
God.

And as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in  
from the four quarters of the earth all the remnant of  
the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all  
the face of the earth.

And as he hath covenanted with all the house of  
Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath  
covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his  
own due time, unto the restoring all the house of  
Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he  
hath covenanted with them.

And then shall they know their Redeemer, who is  
Jesus Christ, the Son of God; and then shall they be  
gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto  
their own lands, from whence they have been dis-  
persed; yea, as the Lord liveth so shall it be. Amen.

### III. Niwhai. 6

- 1 Nawai a, ka hoki katoa te iwi o Niwhai ki o ratou whenua ake, i te rua tekau ma ono o nga tau, tena tangata, tena tangata, me tona hapu, me ana kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, ana hoiho me ana kau, me a ratou mea katoa.
- 2 A kahore ano kia pau a ratou kai katoa te kai; no reira mauria ana e ratou nga toenga o a ratou kereene o ia tu, o ia tu, me a ratou koura, me a ratou hiriwa, me a ratou mea utu nui katoa, a hoki ana ratou ki o ratou ake whenua, ki o ratou kainga, ki te nota, ki te tonga, ki runga ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga.
- 3 A ka tuku ano ratou ki aua kai pahua i kawenata ai kia ata noho, ki te hunga i hiahia ai kia waiho tonu hei Ramana, i nga whenua ki te ritenga o to ratou tokomahatanga, kia whai mea ai ratou i runga i a ratou mahi, hei oranga mo ratou; a penei ka whakahokia e ratou te ata noho ki runga ki te whenua katoa.
- 4 A ka anga ka kake ano ratou, ka timata ki te nui; na, ka pahemo atu te rua tekau ma ono, ma whitu o nga tau, a he nui ano te ata noho i runga i te whenua; i hanga hoki ratou i o ratou ture ki te ritenga o te mea tika, o te mea e rite ana.
- 5 Na, kahore tahi he mea i runga i te whenua katoa, hei arai i te iwi kei kake tonu ratou ko to ratou takanga atu anake ki te he.
- 6 Na Kikironi raua ko Rakoneu, te kai whakawa, ratou ko te hunga i whakaturia hei kai whakahaere tikanga i whakapumau tenei ata noho nui i runga i te whenua.
- 7 Nawai a, he maha nga pa i hanga houtia, a he maha ano nga pa tawhito i whakahoutia;
- 8 A he maha ano nga huanui i whakateiteitia ake, me nga huarahi maha i mahia, e takoto haere ana ki tetahi pa, ki tetahi pa, ki tetahi whenua, ki tetahi whenui, ki tetahi wahi, ki tetahi wahi.
- 9 A penei ka pahemo atu te rua tekau ma waru o nga tau, i hono tonu te ata noho o te iwi.

### 3 Nephi 6

And now it came to pass that the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands in the twenty and sixth year, every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

And it came to pass that they had not eaten up all their provisions; therefore they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things, and they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south, both on the land northward and on the land southward.

And they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land, who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers, that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon; and thus they did establish peace in all the land.

And they began again to prosper and to wax great; and the twenty and sixth and seventh years passed away, and there was great order in the land; and they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

And now there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

And now it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

And it came to pass that there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

And there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

And thus passed away the twenty and eighth year, and the people had continual peace.



- 10 Otiia i te rua tekau ma iwa o nga tau, i tupu etahi tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi; a ko etahi i neke ake ki te whakahihi, ki te whakamanamana i runga i to ratou whai taonga, ae ra, tae rawa atu ana nga mahi a etahi ki te tukino.
- 11 Na, he maha nga Kai hokohoko i roto i te whenua, he maha ano hoki nga roia, me te maha noa iho o nga Kai-whakahaere tikanga.
- 12 A i mohiotia te rangatiratanga o te tangata, na ona tangata, na te riro mama mai hoki i a ia o te matauranga: ko etahi i kuare ai, na to ratou rawakoretanga: ko etahi i whiwhi ai ki nga matauranga nunui, na te whai taonga.
- 13 Ko etahi i neke i runga i to ratou whakahi, ko etahi he nui to ratou whakaiti; ko etahi i utu atu i te tawai ki te tawai, ko etahi i whakarere noa i te tawai me te whakatoi, me te tukino o ia ahua, o ia ahua ki a ratou, a kihai ratou i tahuri ki te tawai atu ano, engari he whakaiti he ripeneta ta ratou i te aroaro o te Atua;
- 14 A penei ka ai he rere-ketanga nui puta noa i te whenua katoa, no ka timata te pakaru o te hahi; ae ra, no ka pakaru te hahi puta noa i te whenua katoa, i te toru tekau o nga tau, haunga ia, i waenganui o etahi Ramana, i whakatahuritia mai ratou ki te whakapono tika; a kihai ratou i pai ki te whakarere atu, no te mea e u ana ratou, e pumau ana, te taea te whakakorikori, e whakaae ana i runga i te hiahia o te ngakau ki te pupuri i nga whakahaunga a te Ariki.
- 15 Na, ko te putake o tenei kino o te iwi, koia tenei, i whai mana nui a Hatana, ki te whakaoho i te iwi kia mahi i nga ahua katoa o te kino, kia whakahi i runga i te whakapehapeha, me te whakamatautau ano i a ratou kia rapu i te kaha, i te mana, me te taonga me nga mea tekateka noa o te ao nei.
- 16 A i penei te ahua o te whakakotiti ke a Hatana i nga ngakau o te iwi, kia mahi i nga ahua katoa o te kino: no reira he torutoru nga tau i hari ai ratou i runga i te ata noho.

But it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people; and some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches, yea, even unto great persecutions;

For there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

And the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning; yea, some were ignorant because of their poverty, and others did receive great learning because of their riches.

Some were lifted up in pride, and others were exceedingly humble; some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

And thus there became a great inequality in all the land, insomuch that the church began to be broken up; yea, insomuch that in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it, for they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

Now the cause of this iniquity of the people was this—Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity, and to the puffing them up with pride, tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

And thus Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity; therefore they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

- 17 No reira i te timatanga o te toru tekau o nga tau, i te mea kua tukua atu te iwi mo tetahi takiwa roa kia kahakihakina i runga i nga whakamatautauranga a te rewera ki ana kino i hiahia ai ia hei taenga mo ratou, kia mahi hoki i ana kino i hiahia ai ia hei mahi ma ratou; no reira i te timatanga o te toru tekau o nga tau, kei roto ratou kei tetahi nohoanga whakarihariha.
- 18 Na, kihai ratou i hara kuare, no te mea i mohio ratou ki ta te Atua i pai ai mo ratou, i whakaakona atu hoki ki a ratou; no reira, i ata tutu marire ratou ki te Atua.
- 19 Na, i nga ra tenei o Rakoneu, o te tama a Rakoneu, na Rakoneu hoki i noho te nohoanga o tona papa, i whakahaere te iwi i taua tau.
- 20 A ka timata etahi tangata, he mea whakamana na te Ariki, a tonoa atu ana ratou, tu ana ki waenganui i te iwi puta noa i te whenua katoa, e kauwhau ana e whakapuaki maia ana i nga hara, me nga tutu o te iwi, e whakaatu atu ana ki a ratou mo te hokonga e mahia ai e te Ariki mo tona iwi; ara, te aranga o te Karaiti; a he maia ano ta ratou whakapuaki i tona matenga me ona whakamamaetanga.
- 21 Na, he tokomaha o te iwi he nui to ratou riri, ki taua hunga i whakaatu atu ai i enei mea; a he kai whakawa nui te tokomaha o taua hunga i riri, he tohunga nui he kai whakaako no te ture i mua.
- 22 Na, kahore he kai whakaako o te ture, he kai whakawa ranei, he tohunga nui ranei, e tukua ana ki a ia te mana hei whakatau i te he ki tetahi kia mate rawa, ki te kore e hainatia to ratou whakahenga e te kawana o te whenua.
- 23 Na, he tokomaha o te hunga nana i whakaatu atu nga mea mo te Karaiti, a he maia ano ta ratou whakaatu, i hopukia, i whakamatea pukutia e nga kai whakawa, a kihai i puta atu ki te kawana o te whenua te rongu mo to ratou matenga, engari mo muri i to ratou whakamatenga.
- 24 Na, he mea rereke tenei i nga ture o te whenua kia whakamatea tetahi tangata ki te kore e homai he mana ki a ratou e te kawana o te whenua;

And thus, in the commencement of the thirtieth year—the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil whithersoever he desired to carry them, and to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should—and thus in the commencement of this, the thirtieth year, they were in a state of awful wickedness.

Now they did not sin ignorantly, for they knew the will of God concerning them, for it had been taught unto them; therefore they did wilfully rebel against God.

And now it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus, for Lachoneus did fill the seat of his father and did govern the people that year.

And there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth, standing among the people in all the land, preaching and testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord would make for his people, or in other words, the resurrection of Christ; and they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

Now there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry because of those who testified of these things; and those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges, and they who had been high priests and lawyers; yea, all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

Now there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation was signed by the governor of the land.

Now there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges, that the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

Now behold, this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land—

- 25 No reira i tae ake tetahi whakahe ki te whenua o Harahemera, ki te kawana o te whenua mo aua kai whakawa nana i whakatau te mate ki nga poropiti a te Ariki, kihai hoki tera i rite ki ta te ture.
- 26 Nawai a, ka hopukia ratou, a mauria ana ki te aroaro o te kai whakawa, kia whakawakia to ratou hara i hara ai ratou, kia rite ki te ture i homai nei e te iwi.
- 27 Na, he maha nga hoa me nga whanaunga o aua kai whakawa: a ko te toenga, ae ra, wahi iti kua poto katoa nga kai whakaako o te ture me nga tohunga nui, ka huihui tahi, ka whakauru ki nga whanaunga o aua kai whakawa e whakawakia ra ki te ritenga o te ture;
- 28 A kawenata ana ratou tetahi ki tetahi, ko taua kawenata ano i homai e taua hunga onamata, ko taua kawenata he mea homai, he mea minita e te rewera, hei whakakotahi hei pehi mo te tika katoa;
- 29 Koia ratou i whakakotahi ai hei pehi i te iwi o te Ariki, i kawenata ai hoki kia whakamatea ratou, kia whakaputa hoki i taua hunga kohuru i te kaha o te tika, koia nei e tata ana kia whakawakia ki te ritenga o te ture.
- 30 A ka whakahihi ano ratou ki te ture me nga tikanga o to ratou whenua; a ka kawenata ratou tetahi ki tetahi kia whakamatea te kawana, kia whakaturia hoki he kingi i runga i te whenua, kia mutu ai te herekoretanga o te whenua engari kia uru ki raro i nga kingi.

Therefore a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

Now it came to pass that they were taken and brought up before the judge, to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

Now it came to pass that those judges had many friends and kindreds; and the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

And they did enter into a covenant one with another, yea, even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

Therefore they did combine against the people of the Lord, and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice, which was about to be administered according to the law.

And they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country; and they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor, and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

### III. Niwhai. 7

- 1 Na, maku e whakaatu ki a koutou, kahore ratou i whakapumau i tetahi kingi i runga i te whenua; otira i tenei tau nei ano, i te toru tekau o nga tau, ka whakamatea e ratou i runga i te nohoanga whakawa, ae ra, ka kohurutia te Kai-whakawa Nui o te whenua.
- 2 Na, ka pakaru te iwi, tu a-riri ana tetahi ki tetahi, ae ra, i wehewehe ratou, tena hapu, tena hapu, ia tangata me tona whanau, ona whanaunga, me ona hoa, a, i penei te ahua o ta ratou whakakore i te kawanatanga o te whenua.
- 3 A whakaturia ana e tena hapu, e tena hapu he rangatira, ara, he kai whakahaere i runga i a ratou, a tu ana ratou hei upoko whanau, hei arahi mo ratou.
- 4 Na, kahore tahi he tangata i roto i a ratou, i kore te nui o tona hapu, i te maha hoki o ona whanaunga o ona hoa; no reira, i nui ai o ratou hapu.
- 5 Na, i meatia katoatia tenei, engari kaore i puta he whawhai ki roto ki a ratou; a i horapa tenei kino katoa ki te iwi, mo ratou i tuku atu i a ratou ano ki te kaha o Hatana;
- 6 A i whakangaromia nga whakaritenga o te kawanatanga, he mea hoki na nga whakakotahitanga ngaro a nga hoa me nga whanaunga o taua hunga nana i kohuru nga poropiti.
- 7 A, na ratou i timata ai nga tautohetohenga nui i runga i te whenua, no ka pa atu ki te hunga tika o te iwi, tata ana ratou katoa te taka ki te kino, a tokoiti ana nga tangata tika i roto i a ratou.
- 8 No reira kahore ano kia pahemo nga tau e ono, i muri mai i te tahuritanga atu o te wahi nui o te iwi i to ratou tika, pera i te kuri ki tona ruaki, i te poaka ranei ki tona titakatakatanga i te paru.
- 9 Na, i huihui tenei whakaminenga ngaro, na reira i whakahorapa te kino nui ki te iwi, a whakaturia aua hei upoko mo ratou, tetahi tangata e karangatia ana e ratou ko Hakopa;
- 10 A karangatia ana ia e ratou ko to ratou kingi; koia i riro ai ia hei kingi mo runga i tenei hunga kino: ko ia hoki tetahi o nga tino tangata nana i hoatu tona reo nei whakahe i nga poropiti i poropiti mo Ihu.

### 3 Nephi 7

Now behold, I will show unto you that they did not establish a king over the land; but in this same year, yea, the thirtieth year, they did destroy upon the judgment-seat, yea, did murder the chief judge of the land.

And the people were divided one against another; and they did separate one from another into tribes, every man according to his family and his kindred and friends; and thus they did destroy the government of the land.

And every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them; and thus they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

Now behold, there was no man among them save he had much family and many kindreds and friends; therefore their tribes became exceedingly great.

Now all this was done, and there were no wars as yet among them; and all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

And the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who murdered the prophets.

And they did cause a great contention in the land, insomuch that the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become wicked; yea, there were but few righteous men among them.

And thus six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

Now this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together, and did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

And they did call him their king; therefore he became a king over this wicked band; and he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

- 11 Na, kahore i rite to ratou tokomahatanga ki to te hunga i whakakotahi nei i a ratou; otira, ko o ratou kai whakahaere i whakatu ture mo ratou, ia Kai-whakahaere, ia Kai-whakahaere, ki te ritenga o tona hapu, o tona hapu; ahakoa he hoa riri ratou, tetahi ki tetahi, a, ehara hoki ratou i te hunga tika, heoi i whakakotahi ratou i runga i te mauahara ki te hunga i uru ki roto ki tetahi kawenata kia whakangaromia te kawanatanga;
- 12 No reira, i te kitenga o Hakopa i o ratou hoa riri he rahi atu i a ratou, ko ia hoki te kingi o te ope, ka whakahau ai ia i tona iwi kia rere atu ki te wahi whaka-te-nota rawa o te whenua, ki reira whakatu ai he kingitanga mo ratou ake, kia uru atu ai nga tangata puta ke (i korero whakapatipati hoki ia ki a ratou, tera e maha nga tangata puta ke) a, hei reira ratou kaha ai ki te whawhai ki nga hapu o te iwi. Na, pera ana ratou.
- 13 Na, he hohoro no to ratou haere kihai i taea te whakaware, a, pahemo atu ana i te iwi. Na, penei ka mutu te toru tekau o nga tau: a ka penei te ahua o nga mea o te iwi o Niwhai.
- 14 Nawai a, i te toru tekau ma tahi o nga tau, e wehewehe ana ratou he hapu, he hapu, ia tangata, ia tangata e rite ana ki tona hapu, me ona whanaunga, me ona hoa; otira i whakarite tikanga ratou kia kauaka e whakatika ki te whawhai tetahi ki tetahi; heoi kahore o ratou kotahitanga mo runga i o ratou ture, me te ahua o to ratou kawanatanga, no te mea i whakapumautia aua mea kia rite ki nga whakaaro o o ratou rangatira me o ratou kai whakahaere tikanga. Otira i whakatakotoria e ratou nga ture uaua rawa kia kauaka tetahi hapu e he ki tetahi hapu, na reira, ka ahua ata noho ratou i runga i te whenua; otira ka anga ke o ratou ngakau i te Ariki, i to ratou Atua, a akina ana e ratou nga poropiti ki te kohatu, a panaia atu ana ratou i roto i a ratou.
- 15 Na, kua toroa a Niwhai e nga anahera, e te reo ano hoki o te Ariki, no reira i te mea kua kite ia i nga anahera, kua kite a-kanohi ano ia, kua homai ano hoki he kaha ki a ia e matau ai ia ki te mahi minita o te Karaiti, a he kai titiro ano hoki ia i te hohoro o to ratou hokinga atu i te tika ki o ratou kino, ki o ratou whakarihariha;

And it came to pass that they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together save it were their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe; nevertheless they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people, yet they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

Therefore, Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they, he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land, and there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were joined by dissenters, (for he flattered them that there would be many dissenters) and they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the people; and they did so.

And so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until they had gone forth out of the reach of the people. And thus ended the thirtieth year; and thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass in the thirty and first year that they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family, kindred and friends; nevertheless they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war one with another; but they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of government, for they were established according to the minds of those who were their chiefs and their leaders. But they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not trespass against another, insomuch that in some degree they had peace in the land; nevertheless, their hearts were turned from the Lord their God, and they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among them.

And it came to pass that Nephi—having been visited by angels and also the voice of the Lord, therefore having seen angels, and being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that he might know concerning the ministry of Christ, and also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness unto their wickedness and abominations;

- 16 Na, i pa te pouri ki a ia i te pakeke o o ratou ngakau, i te matapotanga o o ratou hinengaro, koia ka haereere ia i roto i a ratou i taua tau ano, ka anga ka maia tana whakapuaki i te ripeneta, me te murunga hara ma roto i te whakapono ki te Ariki, ki a Ihu Karaiti.
- 17 A he maha nga mea i minita ai ia ki a ratou; e kore e ahei kia tuhituhia katoatia aua mea, a e kore ano hoki e tika ko tetahi wahi anake; no reira kahore i tuhituhia ki tenei pukapuka. Na, i minita a Niwhai i runga i te kaha me te mana nui.
- 18 Nawai a, ka riri ratou ki a ia, no te mea rahi ake tona mana i to ratou, no te mea kihai ratou i ahei te whakateka ki ana korero, i runga hoki i te nui o tona whakapono ki te Ariki, ki a Ihu Karaiti, ka minita nga anahera ki a ia i ia ra, i ia ra;
- 19 A i pei ia i nga rewera me nga wairua poke i runga i te ingoa o Ihu; a ko tona teina ano i whakaarahia ake e ia i te mate, i muri i te akinga i a ia ki te kohatu, i te wa i whakamatea ai ia e te iwi;
- 20 I kite hoki te iwi i taua mea i whakaaturia ano e ratou, a riri ana ki a ia, i tona kaha hoki; na, tera atu ano nga merekara maha i meatia e ia, i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, i te tirohanga o te iwi.
- 21 Na, ka pahemo te toru tekau ma tahi o nga tau, a he torutoru anake i whakatahuritia mai ki te Ariki: otira ko te hunga katoa i tahuri mai i tino whakaatu ki te iwi, kua tirohia ratou e te kaha me te Wairua o te Atua, i roto nei i a Ihu Karaiti, i ta ratou i whakapono ai.
- 22 A ko te hunga katoa i peia ai nga rewera i roto i a ratou i whakaorangia i o ratou mate me o ratou ngoikoretanga, na, i whakaatu pono ratou ki te iwi mo ratou ano kua mahia e te Wairua o te Atua, a kua whakaorangia; i whakakite ano hoki ratou i nga tohu, me te mea ano i etahi merekara i roto i te iwi.
- 23 A penei hoki ka pahemo atu te toru tekau ma rua o nga tau; a ka karanga a Niwhai ki te iwi i te timatanga o te toru tekau ma toru o nga tau; a ka kauwhau ia i te ripeneta me te murunga hara ki a ratou.
- 24 Na, e mea ana ahau kia mahara ano koutou, kahore tetahi tangata i ripeneta i kore te rumakina ki te wai;

Therefore, being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds—went forth among them in that same year, and began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

And he did minister many things unto them; and all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not suffice, therefore they are not written in this book. And Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

And it came to pass that they were angry with him, even because he had greater power than they, for it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words, for so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ that angels did minister unto him daily.

And in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits; and even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been stoned and suffered death by the people.

And the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with him because of his power; and he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people, in the name of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few who were converted unto the Lord; but as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

And as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed; and they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

Thus passed away the thirty and second year also. And Nephi did cry unto the people in the commencement of the thirty and third year; and he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

Now I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

25 No reira i whakarite tangata a Niwhai ki tenei minitanga, kia rumakina ki te wai nga tangata katoa e haere mai ana ki a ratou, a hei whaki tenei, hei kai whakaatu ano hoki ki te aroaro o te Atua, ki te iwi ano hoki, mo ratou kua ripeneta kua whiwhi hoki ki te murunga o o ratou hara.

26 A, i te timatanga o tenei tau he tokomaha i rumakina hei mea ripenetatanga; a penei ka pahemo atu te wahi nui o te tau.

Therefore, there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, that all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water, and this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people, that they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

And there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance; and thus the more part of the year did pass away.

### III. Niwhai. 8

- 1 Na, ki te ritenga o ta matou tuhituhinga, a e mohio ana ano matou he pono ta matou tuhituhinga, ta te mea, na, he tangata tika tera nana te tuhituhinga i tuhituhi; ina hoki he pono he maha nga merekara i mahia e ia i runga i te ingoa o Ihu; a kahore he tangata e whai kaha ana ki te mahi merekara i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, ki te kahore ia e whakamakia i ona hara, ia tongi, ia tongi.
- 2 Na, ki te kore he pohehe o tenei tangata i runga i te tatauranga o to matou taima, na, kua pahemo te toru tekau ma toru o nga tau.
- 3 A ka timata te iwi ka tatari marire atu ki te tohu i homai e te poropiti, e Hamuera te Ramana; ara, ki te takiwa e pa ai te pouritanga ki runga ki te mata o te whenua mo nga ra e toru.
- 4 A ka timata te ruarua nui me nga toutohetohenga i roto i te iwi, he ahakoa te tini o nga tohu i homai.
- 5 Nawai a, i te toru tekau ma wha o nga tau, i te marama tuatahi, i te wha o nga ra o te marama, ka puta tetahi marangai nui, tona rite kahore ano i mohiotia noatia i runga i te whenua katoa;
- 6 A ka pa ano tetahi tupuhi nui whakawehi; a he whatitiri whakamataku ano no ka whakangaueuetia te whenua katoa, me te mea e tata ana te wawahi ki waenganui;
- 7 A i puta ano nga uira koi rawa, te rite kahore ano i mohiotia noatia i runga i te whenua katoa.
- 8 Na, ka mura te pa o Harahemera;
- 9 A ko te pa o Moronai i toremi iho ki roto ki nga rire o te moana, a paremo ana ona tangata;
- 10 A i kahakina atu he oneone ki runga ki te pa o Moroniha, no ka tu ake tetahi maunga nui ki to reira wahi;
- 11 A i pa ano te whakangaromanga nui whakawehi ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga.
- 12 Otira, i pa ki te whenua whaka-te-nota te whakangaromanga nui whakawehi rawa atu: ina hoki i whakarere ketia te mata katoa o te whenua, he mea na te tupuhi, na nga awhiowhio, na nga whatitiri na nga uira, me te whakangaueuetanga nui o te whenua katoa;

### 3 Nephi 8

And now it came to pass that according to our record, and we know our record to be true, for behold, it was a just man who did keep the record—for he truly did many miracles in the name of Jesus; and there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity—

And now it came to pass, if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

And the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite, yea, for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three days over the face of the land.

And there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

And it came to pass in the thirty and fourth year, in the first month, on the fourth day of the month, there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been known in all the land.

And there was also a great and terrible tempest; and there was terrible thunder, insomuch that it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

And there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had been known in all the land.

And the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

And the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof were drowned.

And the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah, that in the place of the city there became a great mountain.

And there was a great and terrible destruction in the land southward.

But behold, there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land northward; for behold, the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds, and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;



13 A ka pakarukaru nga huanui, ka kinokino noa iho  
nga ara papatairite, a he maha ano nga wahi  
maeneene i meinga kia taratara,

14 He maha nga pa rarahi, pa rongonui hoki i toremi  
iho, he maha ano i wera i te ahi, he maha ano hoki i  
whakangaeuetia, a hinga ana nga whare o reira ki  
te whenua, o reira tangata whakamatea ana, a mahue  
iho aua wahi kia takoto kau ana;

15 Ko etahi pa i waiho, tona aituatanga ia he nui  
whakaharahara, a he tokomaha i roto i whakamatea:

16 Ko etahi i kahakina atu i roto i nga awhiowhio: a  
te wahi i tae atu ai ratou, kahore i mohiotia e tetahi  
tangata, heoi to ratou mohio kua kahakina atu ratou:

17 A penei kua rere ke te mata o te whenua katoa i  
nga tupuhi, i nga whatitiri, i nga uira, me te  
whakangaeuetanga o te whenua.

18 A, ko nga kohatu i wahia kia rua; i pakarukaru ki  
runga ki te mata o te whenua katoa, no ka kitea ratou  
kua kongakongatia, kua haehaea, kua matata i runga  
i te mata katoa o te whenua.

19 Nawai a, i te mutunga o nga whatitiri, o nga uira, o  
nga marangai, o nga tupuhi, o nga ngaueuetanga o te  
whenua—Ta te mea, na, e tata ana ki te toru o nga  
haora e mau tonu ana aua mea; a ki ta etahi ki te  
takiwa roa atu i tenei; otira i mahia katoatia enei mea  
nunui whakawehi i nga haora e tata ana ki te toru;  
katahi ka pa te pouri kerekere ki te mata katoa o te  
whenua.

20 A he pouri kerekere i runga i te mata katoa o te  
whenua, no ka ahei i ona tangata kihai nei i hinga, te  
whawha i te kohu o te pouritanga;

21 A kore rawa he maramatanga i te pouri hoki;  
kahore he kanara, kahore he rama; kihai ano hoki i  
taea kia tahuna he ahi ki a ratou wahie whakaka  
maroke rawa, no reira, kore rawa he maramatanga.

22 A kahore tahi he maramatanga i kitea, kahore  
hoki he ahi, he mura noa nei ranei, kahore hoki te  
ra, kahore te marama, kahore ano hoki nga whetu, i  
te nui o te kohu o te pouritanga i runga i te mata o te  
whenua.

And the highways were broken up, and the level  
roads were spoiled, and many smooth places became  
rough.

And many great and notable cities were sunk, and  
many were burned, and many were shaken till the  
buildings thereof had fallen to the earth, and the in-  
habitants thereof were slain, and the places were left  
desolate.

And there were some cities which remained; but  
the damage thereof was exceedingly great, and there  
were many in them who were slain.

And there were some who were carried away in  
the whirlwind; and whither they went no man  
knoweth, save they know that they were carried  
away.

And thus the face of the whole earth became de-  
formed, because of the tempests, and the thunder-  
ings, and the lightnings, and the quaking of the  
earth.

And behold, the rocks were rent in twain; they  
were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, in-  
somuch that they were found in broken fragments,  
and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the  
land.

And it came to pass that when the thunderings,  
and the lightnings, and the storm, and the tempest,  
and the quakings of the earth did cease—for behold,  
they did last for about the space of three hours; and  
it was said by some that the time was greater; never-  
theless, all these great and terrible things were done  
in about the space of three hours—and then behold,  
there was darkness upon the face of the land.

And it came to pass that there was thick darkness  
upon all the face of the land, insomuch that the in-  
habitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the  
vapor of darkness;

And there could be no light, because of the dark-  
ness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could  
there be fire kindled with their fire and exceedingly  
dry wood, so that there could not be any light at all;

And there was not any light seen, neither fire, nor  
glimmer, neither the sun, nor the moon, nor the  
stars, for so great were the mists of darkness which  
were upon the face of the land.

23 A e toru nga ra e mau tonu ana ia, te kitea hoki he maramatanga; na, he rahi ake te uhunga, te aue, me te tangi i taua wa katoa; ae ra, he nui te aue o te iwi, i te pouritanga me te aitua nui kua pa nei ki a ratou.

24 A i tetahi kainga i rangona ta ratou karanga, e mea ana, Aue me i ripeneta tatou i te mea kahore ano tenei ra nui whakawehi, penei kua tohungia o tatou teina, kua kore hoki ratou e wera i roto i taua pa nui i Harahemera.

25 A i tetahi atu kainga i rangona ta ratou karanga, me ta ratou aue, e mea ana, Aue me i ripeneta tatou i te mea kahore ano tenei ra nui whakawehi, me i kore hoki tatou i aki i nga poropiti ki te kohatu me te maka ano i a ratou ki waho: penei kua tohungia o tatou whaea, me a tatou tamahine ataahua, me a tatou tamariki, a kua kore e tapuketia i roto i taua pa nui i Moroniha; a penei he mea nui he mea whakawehi nga aue o te iwi.

And it came to pass that it did last for the space of three days that there was no light seen; and there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all the people continually; yea, great were the groanings of the people, because of the darkness and the great destruction which had come upon them.

And in one place they were heard to cry, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and then would our brethren have been spared, and they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

And in another place they were heard to cry and mourn, saying: O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great city Moronihah. And thus were the howlings of the people great and terrible.

### III. Niwhai. 9

- 1 Nawai a, ka rangona he reo i roto i nga tangata katoa o te ao, i runga i te mata katoa o tenei whenua, e mea ana,
- 2 Aue, aue, aue te mate mo tenei iwi; aue te mate mo nga tangata katoa o te ao, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, no te mea e kata ana te rewera, a e hari ana ana anahera i te whakamatenga o nga tama me nga tamahine ataahua o toku iwi; a na o ratou hara me o ratou kino ano i hinga ai ratou.
- 3 Nana, ko taua pa nui, ko Harahemera, kua tahuna e ahau ki te ahi, me ona tangata ano hoki.
- 4 A ko taua pa nui ko Moronai, kua meinga e ahau kia toremi iho ki roto ki nga rire o te moana, me ona tangata ano hoki kia paremo ki roto ki te wai.
- 5 A ko taua pa nui, ko Moroniha, kua tapuketia iho e ahau ki te oneone, me ona tangata ano hoki, hei huna atu i o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha i mua i toku kanohi, kia kore ai e tae ake nga toto o nga poropiti me o te hunga tapu ki a au hei whakaatu i o ratou he.
- 6 A ko te pa ano o Kirikara kua meinga e ahau kia toremi, ko ona tangata ano hoki kia tapuketia iho ki roto ki te hohonu o te whenua;
- 7 Ae ra, ko te pa o Oniha, me ona tangata, me te pa o Mokumu, me ona tangata, me te pa o Hiruharama, me ona tangata, a kua mea ahau i nga wai kia puta ake mo enei mea, hei huna atu i o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha i mua i toku kanohi, kia kore ai e puta ake nga toto o nga poropiti me te hunga tapu ki a au hei kai whakaatu i o ratou he.
- 8 Nana, ko te pa o Karianari, ko te pa o Kariomona, ko te pa o Hakopa, te pa o Kimikimino, na, ko enei katoa kua meinga e ahau kia tamomi iho, a kua meinga nga maunga me nga raorao kia puta ake i o ratou wahi, a ko nga tangata o reira i tapuketia iho e ahau ki roto ki nga hohonutanga o te whenua, hei huna atu i o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha i mua i toku kanohi, kia kore ai he putanga ake o nga toto o nga poropiti me te hunga tapu ki a au hei whakaatu i o ratou he.

### 3 Nephi 9

And it came to pass that there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth, upon all the face of this land, crying:

Wo, wo, wo unto this people; wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall repent; for the devil laugheth, and his angels rejoice, because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my people; and it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are fallen!

Behold, that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

And behold, that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

And behold, that great city Moronihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

Yea, and the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof, and the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

And behold, the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9 A ko taua pa nui ko Hakopukata, i nohoia e te iwi o te kingi Hakopa, kua meinga e ahau kia tahuna ki te ahi, he mea mo o ratou hara me o ratou kino, koia nei i runga ake i te kino o te ao katoa, he mea na a ratou kohuru ngaro me a ratou whakakotahitanga, no te mea na ratou i whakangaro te rangimarie o toku iwi me te kawanatanga o te whenua: koia ahau i mea ai i a ratou kia tahuna ki te ahi hei whakangaro atu i a ratou i mua i toku kanohi kia kore atu he putanga ake o nga toto o nga poropiti me te hunga tapu ki a au hei whakaatu i o ratou he.

10 A ko te pa o Ramana, ko te pa o Hoha, ko te pa o Kara, me te pa o Kihikumene, kua meinga e ahau kia tahuna ki te ahi, me nga tangata ano hoki o reira, he mea hoki mo o ratou kino i runga i te makanga atu i nga poropiti, me te akinga ki te kohatu o te hunga i tonoa ai e ahau ki te whakapuaki ki a ratou mo o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha;

11 A mo ratou i maka i a ratou katoa ki waho, te waiho he tangata tika i roto i a ratou, naku i tuku iho he ahi hei whakangaro i a ratou, kia hunia atu ai o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha i mua i toku kanohi, kei karanga ake i te whenua nga toto o nga poropiti me te hunga tapu i tonoa e ahau ki waenganui i a ratou, hei whakaatu i o ratou he;

12 A he maha ano hoki nga whakangaromanga nui i meinga e ahau kia pa ki tenei whenua, me tenei iwi, he mea hoki na o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha.

13 E koutou katoa kua tohungia na, he mea na te nuinga ake o to koutou tika i to ratou, e kore ianei koutou e pai kia hoki mai ki a au inaianei, me te ripeneta mo o koutou hara, me te tahuri mai ano hoki kia ora ai koutou i a au?

14 Na, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ki te pai koutou ki te haere mai ki a au, ka whiwhi koutou ki te oranga tonutanga. Nana, e maro tonu atu ana toku ringa tohu tangata ki a koutou, a ki te haere mai tetahi, ko ia taku e manako ai; ka koa ano hoki te hunga e haere mai ana ki a au.

15 Nana, ko Ihu Karaiti ahau, ko te Tama a te Atua. Naku i hanga nga rangi me te whenua, me nga mea katoa i roto nei i a raua. I te Matua ahau i te timatanga iho ra ano. Kei roto ahau i te Matua, kei roto ano hoki te Matua i a au; a na te Matua i whakakororia tona ingoa i roto i a au.

And behold, that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations; for it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land; therefore I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

And behold, the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

And because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

And many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they, will ye not now return unto me, and repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

Yea, verily I say unto you, if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life. Behold, mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever will come, him will I receive; and blessed are those who come unto me.

Behold, I am Jesus Christ the Son of God. I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are. I was with the Father from the beginning. I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

16 I haere mai ahau ki oku, a kihai oku i manako mai ki a au. Na, kua rite nga karaipiture mo toku haerenga mai.

17 Tena ko te hunga i manako mai ki a au, i tukua e ahau ki a ratou kia riro hei tamariki ma te Atua: waihoki ka pera ano taku ki te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki toku ingoa, ta te mea, na, ka puta ake te hokonga i a au, a i roto ano i a au te ture ka tutuki ai.

18 Ko ahau te marama me te ora o te ao. Ko ahau te Arepa me te Omeka, te timatanga me te whakamutunga.

19 Na, ka mutu ake ta koutou tapae ake ki a au i nga whakahere whakaheke toto; ae ra, a koutou patunga tapu me a koutou tahunga tinana ka whakamutua, no te mea e kore ahau e aro atu ano ki tetahi o a koutou patunga tapu me a koutou tahunga tinana;

20 A ko te whakahere e whakahere ai koutou ki a au ko te ngakau maru ko te wairua iro. A ko ia e haere mai ana ki a au he ngakau maru tona he wairua iro, na, ka rumakina ia e ahau ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu, kia rite ki nga Ramana, he mea na io ratou whakapono mai ki a au, i to ratou whakatahuritanga mai i rumakina ai ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu, kihai ano ratou i matau.

21 Nana, i haere mai ahau ki te ao ki te kawe mai i te hokonga ki te ao, ki te whakaora i te ao i te hara:

22 No reira, ko ia e ripeneta ana, e haere mai ana ki a au ano he tamaiti nohinohi, ka manakohia e ahau: no te mea no nga penei te kingitanga o te Atua. Nana, he whakaaro ki nga penei taku i tuku ai i a au ano kia mate, a whakaora ana ano i a au ano: no reira ripeneta me te haere mai ano ki a au, e nga topito o te ao, kia whakaorangia.

I came unto my own, and my own received me not. And the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

And as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name, for behold, by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

I am the light and the life of the world. I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

And ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood; yea, your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away, for I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

And ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit. And whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

Behold, I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world, to save the world from sin.

Therefore, whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God. Behold, for such I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again; therefore repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

### III. Niwhai. 10

- 1 Na, i rongo katoa te iwi o te whenua i enei meatanga, a i whakaatu ano mo aua mea. Na, i muri i te korerotanga i enei kupu, kore he kiki i runga i te whenua a taka noa nga haora maha;
- 2 Na te nui o te ohore o te iwi, i mutu ai ta ratou uhunga, me to ratou aue mo te matenga o o ratou whanaunga kua matemate ra: no reira te wahangu, kore hoki i kiki puta noa te whenua katoa, a taka noa nga haora maha.
- 3 Nawai a, ka puta mai ano tetahi reo ki te iwi, ka mea, ko te iwi katoa ano e whakarongo ana, i whakaatu ano hoki ratou mo taua mea.
- 4 E koutou, e nga iwi o enei pa nunui kua horo na, he uri hoki koutou no Hakopa, ae ra, no te whare o Iharaira, ano te tini o aku whakaminenga i a koutou pera me te heihei e whakamine nei i ana pi ki raro i ona parirau, me aku atawhainga i a koutou.
- 5 Me tenei hoki, ano te tini o aku meatanga kia whakaminea koutou kia peratia me te heihei e whakamine nei i ana pi ki raro ki ona parirau; ae ra, E koutou, e te iwi o te whare o Iharaira, kua hinga na; E koutou, e te iwi o te whare o Iharaira, koutou e noho na i Hiruharama, me koutou hoki kua hinga na; na, ano te tini o aku meatanga kia whakaminea koutou kia peratia me te heihei e whakamine nei i ana pi, a kihai koutou i pai.
- 6 E koutou, e te whare o Iharaira kua tohungia nei e ahau, ano te tini o aku whakaminenga e whakamine ai ahau i a koutou pera me te heihei e whakamine nei i ana pi ki raro ki ona parirau, ki te ripeneta koutou me te tahuri mai ki a au i runga i te whakapaunga o te ngakau.
- 7 Tena ki te kore, E te whare o Iharaira, ka meinga nga wahi e noho na koutou kia takoto kau, a tae noa ki te takiwa e whakaritea ai te kawenata i kawenatatia ki o koutou tupuna.
- 8 Na, ka rongo te iwi ki enei kupu, muri iho ka timata ano ratou te tangi te aue mo te matenga o o ratou whanaunga me o ratou hoa.

### 3 Nephi 10

And now behold, it came to pass that all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it. And after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

For so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain; therefore there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

And it came to pass that there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it, saying:

O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob, yea, who are of the house of Israel, how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

And again, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen; yea, O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen; yea, how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

But if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

And now it came to pass that after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

- 9      Nawai a, ka pera te pahemotanga o aua ra e toru. Na, ko te ata tenei, a ka ngaro atu te pouritanga i runga i te mata o te whenua, mutu ana te tuoioi o te whenua, mutu ana nga kohatu te pakarukaru, me nga ngunguru nui whakawehi i mutu, me te haruru ngangau katoa i mutu.
- 10     A ko te whenua i piri ano, a ka tu ano, ka mutu hoki te uhunga, me te tangihanga me te auetanga o te iwi i tohungia, a puta ke ana to ratou uhunga hei haringa, a ratou aue hei whakamoemiti hei whakawhetai ki te Ariki, ki a Ihu Karaiti, ki to ratou Kai-hoko.
- 11     A tae noa ki tenei wa kua rite nga karaipiture i korerotia e nga poropiti.
- 12     A ko te wahi tika o te iwi i whakaorangia, ko te hunga ano ia i manako ki nga poropiti te aki i a ratou ki te kohatu; a ko te hunga ratou kihai nei i whakaheke i te toto o te hunga tapu i tohungia;
- 13     A i tohungia ratou, kahore i horomia iho i tapuketia ki roto ki te whenua; kahore ano hoki i paremo ki roto ki nga rire o te moana: kahore i tahuna ki te ahi, kahore ano i hingaia i taamia iho ranei kia mate; kahore ano i kahakihakina atu i roto i nga awhiowhio; kahore ano hoki i taea e te kuhu o te paoa me te pouritanga.
- 14     Na, kia matau te kai titiro pukapuka; te tangata ano kei a ia nei nga karaipiture, mana e whakataki, e kite e titiro me kore enei matenga katoa enei whakangaromanga katoatanga ki te ahi, ki te paoa, ki nga tupuhi, ki nga awhiowhio, ki nga waro kua puare ki te whenua hei takanga atu mo ratou, me enei mea katoa, e riro hei whakaritenga mo nga poropititanga a nga poropiti tapu tokomaha.
- 15     Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, he tokomaha nana i whakapuaki enei mo te taenga mai o te Karaiti, na, i whakamatea mo ratou i whakapuaki i enei mea;
- 16     Ae ra, na te poropiti na Hinohi, i whakapuaki enei mea, a na Henoka ano hoki i korero mo enei mea, no te mea i tino whakapuaki rawa ratou mo matou mo te toenga o o ratou uri.

And it came to pass that thus did the three days pass away. And it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land, and the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

And the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease; and their mourning was turned into joy, and their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

And thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

And it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved, and it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not; and it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were spared—

And they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the earth; and they were not drowned in the depths of the sea; and they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and crushed to death; and they were not carried away in the whirlwind; neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of darkness.

And now, whoso readeth, let him understand; he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy prophets.

Behold, I say unto you, Yea, many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and were slain because they testified of these things.

Yea, the prophet Zenos did testify of these things, and also Zenock spake concerning these things, because they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of their seed.

17 Nana, na to matou tupuna hoki, na Hakopa i korero mo tetahi toenga o te uri o Hohepa. A he teka ianei ko matou he toenga no te uri o Hohepa? A ko enei mea e whakaatu nei mo matou he teka ianei i tuhituhia ki runga ki nga papa parahi i mauria mai ra e to matou tupuna, e Rihai ki waho o Hiruharama?

18 A i te whakamutunga o te toru tekau ma wha o nga tau, na, maku e whakaatu ki a koutou, ko te iwi o Niwhai i tohungia ra, me te hunga ano hoki i huaina he Ramana, i tohungia ra ano hoki, i arongia nuitia ratou, i ringihia iho ano hoki nga manaakitanga nunui ki runga ki o ratou mahunga, i muri tata iho i te kakenga ake o te Karaiti ki te rangi, he pono hoki i whakakite ia i a ia ano ki a ratou;

19 E whakakitekite ana i tona tinana ki a ratou, e minita ana ki a ratou; heoi hei muri atu hoatu ai te whakaaturanga mo tana minitanga. Koia ahau ka whakamutu nei i aku kupu mo tenei takiwa.

Behold, our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the seed of Joseph. And behold, are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph? And these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

And it came to pass that in the ending of the thirty and fourth year, behold, I will show unto you that the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them, and great blessings poured out upon their heads, inso-much that soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them—

Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them; and an account of his ministry shall be given hereafter. Therefore for this time I make an end of my sayings.



*Ka whakakite a Ihu Karaiti i a ia ano ki te iwi o Niwhai, i te mano e nobo huihui ana i te whenua o Momona, a ka minita ki a ratou; na, ko te abua tenei i whakakite ai ia i a ia ano ki a ratou.*

### III. Niwhai. 11

- 1 Na, he huihuinga nui tera no te iwi o Niwhai kua huihui mai, tawhio noa i te temepara i roto i te whenua o Momona; a e miharo ana e korerorero ana ratou tetahi ki tetahi, e whakaatu atu ana ano tetahi ki tetahi i te rereke nui whakamiharo kua rereke nei:
- 2 A e korerorero ana ano hoki ratou mo tenei Ihu Karaiti, mona nei, ara, ma tona matenga nga tohu kua homai nei.
- 3 Nawai a, i a ratou e korerorero ana, na, ka rangona e ratou tetahi reo me te mea e ahu mai ana i te rangi; a ka tiro tiro atu o ratou kanohi, kihai hoki ratou i mohio ki te reo i rangona e ratou; na, ehara ia i te reo kaha, ehara ano hoki i te reo nui; otira ahakoa he iti noa te reo, i werohia putia a roto rawa o te hunga i rangona ai, a kahore tetahi wahi o o ratou tinana i kore te meinga kia tuoioi e te reo; ae, i werohia ratou puta rawa ki te tino wairua, a mumura noa ana o ratou ngakau.
- 4 Na, ka rangona ano e ratou te reo, a kihai ratou i mohio:
- 5 Na, ka toru o ratou rongonga i te reo, ka tuwhera o ratou taringa ki te whakarongo atu; ka anga atu hoki o ratou kanohi ki te putanga mai o te reo; a kei te titiro matatau atu ratou ki te rangi, ki te wahi e puta mai ana te reo;
- 6 Nana, i te toru o nga rongonga ka mohio ratou ki te reo i rangona e ratou; a ka mea mai ia ki a ratou.
- 7 Na, ko taku Tama i aroha ai, ko taku i ahuaureka atu ai, nana hoki i whai kororia ai toku ingoa: whakarongo koutou ki a ia.

*Jesus Christ did show himself unto the people of Nephi, as the multitude were gathered together in the land Bountiful, and did minister unto them; and on this wise did he show himself unto them.*

### 3 Nephi 11

And now it came to pass that there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful; and they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

And they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

And it came to pass that while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven; and they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard; and it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice; nevertheless, and notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center, insomuch that there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake; yea, it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to burn.

And it came to pass that again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

And again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their ears to hear it; and their eyes were towards the sound thereof; and they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the sound came.

And behold, the third time they did understand the voice which they heard; and it said unto them:

Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I have glorified my name—hear ye him.

- 8 A i a ratou ka mohio, ka anga atu ano o ratou kanohi ki te rangi; nana, ka kite ratou i tetahi tangata e heke iho ana i te rangi; he kakahu ma tona, a haere mai ana tu ana ki waenganui i a ratou, me te titiro ano nga whatu o te mano katoa ki a ia, a kihai ratou i maia te kuihi, tetahi ki tetahi, kihai hoki i mohio ki te tikanga o taua mea, hua noa hoki ratou he anahera tera kua puta ki a ratou.
- 9 Na, ka torona atu e ia tona ringaringa, a ka korero atu ki te iwi, ka mea;
- 10 Nana, ko Ihu Karaiti ahau, i whakaaturia e nga poropiti tera e puta mai ki te ao;
- 11 Na, ko ahau te marama me te ora o te ao; a kua inumia e ahau te kapa kawa i homai e te matua ki a au, a i whai kororia ai te Matua i runga i taku wahanga i nga hara o te ao, ko te mea tenei i rite ai i a au ta te Matua i pai ai no te timatanga mai ra ano.
- 12 Ano ka oti i a Ihu enei kupu te korero, na, kua hinga te mano katoa ki te whenua, ka mahara hoki ratou kua oti noa atu te poropiti ki waenganui i a ratou, tera e whakakite mai a te Karaiti i a ia ano ki a ratou i muri iho i tona kakenga ki te rangi.
- 13 Nawai a, ka korero atu te Ariki ki a ratou, ka mea,
- 14 Whakatika, haere mai hoki ki a au, kia kuhua ai e koutou o koutou ringaringa ki toku kaokao, kia whawharia ai hoki e koutou nga ngaunga a nga whao i oku ringaringa me oku waewae, kia mohio ai koutou ko ahau te Atua o Ihairaira, te Ātua ano hoki o te ao katoa, a kua whakamatea ahau mo nga hara o te ao.
- 15 Na, ka haere atu te mano ka kuhu i o ratou ringaringa ki tona kaokao, ka whawha ano i nga ngaunga a nga whao i ona ringaringa me ona waewae; a ka peratia e ratou he mea haere takitahi, a poto noa te haere atu me te kite ano o ratou whatu me te whawha ano o ratou ringaringa, a tuturu ana to ratou mohio, a whakaatu atu ana ratou ko ia ano tera i tuhituhia ai e nga poropiti era e haere mai.
- 16 A ka poto ratou katoa te haere atu te kite mo ratou ake, na, ka karanga ake ratou kotahi tonu hoki te reo, ka mea,

And it came to pass, as they understood they cast their eyes up again towards heaven; and behold, they saw a Man descending out of heaven; and he was clothed in a white robe; and he came down and stood in the midst of them; and the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him, and they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist not what it meant, for they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

And it came to pass that he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people, saying:

Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall come into the world.

And behold, I am the light and the life of the world; and I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of the world, in the which I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth; for they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

And it came to pass that the Lord spake unto them saying:

Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side, and also that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet, that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet; and this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

And when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

17 Ohana! kia whakapaingia te ingoa o te Atua  
Runga Rawa! Na, ka tapapa iho ratou ki nga waewae  
o Ihu, ka koropiko ki a ia.

18 Nawai a, ka mea atu ia ki a Niwhai, (kei roto hoki  
a Niwhai i te mano,) ka whakahau atu ki a ia kia  
haere mai ia.

19 Na, ka whakatika a Niwhai ka haere atu, ka  
koropiko iho ki te aroaro o te Ariki, ka kihi hoki i  
ona waewae.

20 Na, ka whakahau iho te Ariki i a ia kia whakatika.  
Na, whakatika ake ana tu ana i tona aroaro.

21 Na, ka mea mai te Ariki ki a ia. Ka hoatu e ahau ki  
a koe he mana e rumaki ai koe i tenei iwi ina kake  
ano ahau ki te rangi.

22 A ka karanga ano te Ariki i etahi atu, a ka pera ano  
hoki tana meatanga atu ki a ratou; a i hoatu e ia ki a  
ratou te mana hei rumaki. A, ka mea atu ano ia ki a  
ratou, ko te ahua tenei e rumaki ai koutou; kauaka  
hoki te tautohetohenga i roto i a koutou.

23 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko te  
tangata e ripeneta ana ki ona hara i runga i a koutou  
kupu, me te hiahia ano kia rumakina i runga i toku  
ingoa, na, ko te ahua tenei i rumaki ai koutou i a  
ratou: nana, ka haere iho koutou ka tu ki roto ki te  
wai, a i runga i toku ingoa e rumaki ai koutou i a  
ratou.

24 Nana, ko nga kupu enei hei whakahuatanga ma  
koutou, me karanga i a ratou ki o ratou ingoa, ka  
mea.

25 Kua whakamanaia ahau e Ihu Karaiti, ka  
rumakina koe e ahau i runga i te ingoa o te Matua, o  
te Tama, o te Wairua Tapu. Amine.

26 Katahi koutou ka rumaki i a ratou ki roto ki te wai,  
a haere mai ana ano ki waho i te wai.

27 A hei runga ano i tenei ritenga ta koutou e rumaki  
ai i runga i toku ingoa; ina hoki he pono taku e mea  
atu nei ki a koutou, ko te Matua ko te Tama ko te  
Wairua Tapu he kotahi tonu; a ko ahau kei roto i te  
Matua, me te Matua ano hoki kei roto i a au, kotahi  
tonu maua ko te Matua.

Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High  
God! And they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and  
did worship him.

And it came to pass that he spake unto Nephi (for  
Nephi was among the multitude) and he commanded  
him that he should come forth.

And Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed him-  
self before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

And the Lord commanded him that he should  
arise. And he arose and stood before him.

And the Lord said unto him: I give unto you power  
that ye shall baptize this people when I am again as-  
cended into heaven.

And again the Lord called others, and said unto  
them likewise; and he gave unto them power to bap-  
tize. And he said unto them: On this wise shall ye  
baptize; and there shall be no disputations among  
you.

Verily I say unto you, that whoso repenteth of his  
sins through your words, and desireth to be baptized  
in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them—  
Behold, ye shall go down and stand in the water, and  
in my name shall ye baptize them.

And now behold, these are the words which ye  
shall say, calling them by name, saying:

Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I bap-  
tize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son,  
and of the Holy Ghost. Amen.

And then shall ye immerse them in the water, and  
come forth again out of the water.

And after this manner shall ye baptize in my  
name; for behold, verily I say unto you, that the  
Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one; and  
I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the  
Father and I are one.

28 Na, kia rite ki taku i whakahau atu nei ki a koutou ta koutou e rumaki ai. A kauaka te tautohetohenga i roto i a koutou, pera i mua; kauaka ano hoki te tohetohenga i roto i a koutou i runga i nga tikanga o taku akoranga, pera i mua;

29 No te mea he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko te tangata kei a ia nei te wairua tautohetohe ehara i a au, engari na te rewera, ko ia nei te matua o te tautohetohe, nana hoki i whakaoho nga ngakau o nga tangata ki te tautohetohe i runga i te riri tetahi ki tetahi.

30 Nana, ehara naku tenei whakaakoranga, te whakaoho ake i nga ngakau o nga tangata ki te riri tetahi ki tetahi; engari taku whakaakoranga tenei, kia whakarerea atu nga mea pera.

31 Nana, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, maku e whakapuaki taku whakaakoranga ki a koutou.

32 A tenei taku whakaakoranga, a koia ano te whakaakoranga i homai e te Matua ki a au; a ko ahau hei kai whakaatu mo te Matua, ko te Matua hoki hei kai whakaatu moku, a hei kai whakaatu te Wairua mo maua ko te Matua, a ko ahau ano to te Matua kai whakaatu, ara, nana tenei whakahau ki nga tangata katoa, i nga wahi katoa, kia ripeneta ratou, kia whakapono hoki ki a au;

33 A ko ia e whakapono ana ki a au, a ka oti te rumaki, ka whakaorangia tera; ko te hunga ano hoki ratou e nohoia ai te kingitanga o te Atua.

34 Na, ko ia e kore e whakapono ki a au, e kore ano hoki e rumakina, ka mate.

35 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko taku whakaakoranga tenei, a hei kai whakaatu ahau mo te Matua; a ko ia e whakapono ana ki a au, e whakapono ana ano tera ki te Matua, a ko te Matua hei kai whakaatu ki a ia moku; no te mea ka tirohia hoki ia e ia ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu.

36 A penei hei kai whakaatu te Matua moku; a hei kai whakaatu te Wairua Tapu ki a ia mo maua ko te Matua; no te mea ko te Matua, ko ahau, ko te Wairua Tapu kotahi tonu.

And according as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize. And there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

For verily, verily I say unto you, he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention, and he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

Behold, this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another; but this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, I will declare unto you my doctrine.

And this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me; and I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

And whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved; and they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

And whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

And thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me; for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

37 Na, ka mea atu ano ahau ki a koutou, Me ripeneta koutou, me rite ki tetahi tamaiti nohinohi, me rumaki ano hoki i runga i toku ingoa, ki te kore, kahore rawa e ahei i a koutou te whiwhi ki enei mea.

38 Na, ka mea atu ano ahau ki a koutou, Me ripeneta koutou, me rumaki ano hoki i runga i toku ingoa, me rite hoki ki tetahi tamaiti nohinohi, ki te kore, kahore rawa e ahei i a koutou te whiwhi ki te kingitanga o te Atua.

39 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko taku whakaakoranga tenei, a te tangata e hanga ana ki runga ki tenei, e hanga ana ano ki runga ki taku kamaka, e kore ano hoki ratou e taea e nga kuwaha o te reinga.

40 A ki te mea e nui ake i tenei, e iti iho ranei te whakapuaki a tetahi, a he mea whakapumau ano e ia me te mea ko taku whakaakoranga tera, no te kino ia, ehara ano hoki i te mea hanga ki runga ki toku kamaka, engari tana e hanga nei kei runga kei te turanga onepu; a e tuwhera ana nga kuwaha o te reinga hei tukunga atu mo nga pera, ina puta mai nga waipuke ina aki hoki nga hau ki a ratou.

41 Na, haere atu koutou ki tenei iwi, whakapuakina atu ki nga pito o te whenua nga kupu ka oti nei i a au te korero atu ki a koutou.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, and be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

And again I say unto you, ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that this is my doctrine, and whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock, and the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

And whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock; but he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

Therefore, go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

### III. Niwhai. 12

- 1 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu enei kupu te korero ki a Niwhai, ratou ko te hunga kua karangatia nei, na, tekau ma rua nga tangata kua karangatia, kua whiwhi hoki ki te kaha me te mana hei rumaki, nana, ka torona atu tona ringaringa ki te mano, a ka karanga atu ki a ratou, ka mea, Ka koa koutou ki te mea ka whakarongo mai koutou ki enei tangata tekau ma rua, kua whiriwhiria nei e ahau i roto i a koutou hei minita ki a koutou, hei pononga hoki ki a koutou; na, kua hoatu e ahau ki a ratou he kaha kia rumaki ai ratou i a koutou ki te wai; a ka oti koutou te rumaki ki te wai, nana, maku koutou e rumaki ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu; no reira ka koa koutou ki te mea ka whakapono koutou ki a au, a ka rumakina, i te mea kua kite nei koutou i a au, a kua mohio hoki ko au ano tenei.
- 2 Me tenei ano, nui atu te koa o te hunga e whakapono ana ki a koutou kupu i runga i ta koutou whakaatu atu i to koutou kitenga i a au, me to koutou mohio ano ko au ano tenei. Ae ra, ka koa te hunga e whakapono ana ki a koutou kupu, me te haere mai ano i runga i te hohonutanga o te ngakau whakaiti, a rumakina ana, no te mea ka tirohia ratou ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu, ka whiwhi ano hoki ratou ki te murunga o o ratou hara.
- 3 Ae ra, ka koa te hunga e rawakore ana te wairua e haere mai ana ki a au, no ratou hoki te kingitanga o te rangi.
- 4 Me tenei ano, ka koa te hunga e tangi ana, ka whakamarietia hoki ratou.
- 5 Ka koa te hunga ngakau mahaki, ka riro mai hoki i a ratou te whenua.
- 6 Ka koa te hunga katoa e hiakai ana, e hiainu ana ki te tika, ka makona hoki ratou i te Wairua Tapu.
- 7 Ka koa te hunga tohu tangata, e tohungia hoki ratou.
- 8 Ka koa te hunga ngakau ma katoa, e kite hoki ratou i te Atua.
- 9 Ka koa te hunga hohou rongu katoa, ka huaina hoki ratou he tamariki na te Atua.
- 10 Ka koa te hunga katoa e whakatoia ana mo toku ingoa, no ratou hoki te kingitanga o te rangi.

### 3 Nephi 12

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto Nephi, and to those who had been called, (now the number of them who had been called, and received power and authority to baptize, was twelve) and behold, he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying: Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants; and unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water; and after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost; therefore blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

And again, more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am. Yea, blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized, for they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

Yea, blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

And again, blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

And blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

And blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

And blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

And blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

And blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

And blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name's sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

- 11 Ka koa koutou ina tawai nga tangata i a koutou, ina whakato i a koutou, ina puaki i a ratou nga kupu kino katoa mo koutou, he mea teka, he whakaaro ki a au,
- 12 Ka whiwhi hoki koutou ki te hari me te koa nui, e rahi ana hoki te utu mo koutou i te rangi; he penei hoki ta ratou whakatoinga i nga poropiti i mua i a koutou.
- 13 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko taku e hoatu ai ki a koutou, kia riro hei tote mo te whenua; otira ki te hemo te ha o te tote, ma te aha e whai tikanga tote ai te whenua? Heoi ano te painga o te tote, na, ka akiritia ki waho, ka takahia e nga tangata.
- 14 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko taku e hoatu nei ki a koutou kia riro hei whakamarama mo tenei iwi. E kore e ngaro te pa e tu ana i runga i te maunga.
- 15 Nana, e tahuna ana ianei te rama e te tangata, a whakaturia ana ki raro o te mehua? Kahore, engari e whakaturia ana ki runga ki te turanga, a ka tiaho ki nga tangata katoa i roto i te whare:
- 16 No reira kia tiaho to koutou maramatanga ki te aroaro o tenei iwi, kia kite ai ratou i a koutou hanga pai, kia whakakororia ai hoki i to koutou Matua i te rangi.
- 17 Kei mea koutou i haere mai ahau ki te whakakahore i te ture i nga poropiti ranei. Kihai ahau i haere mai ki te whakakahore, engari ki te whakatutuki;
- 18 He pono hoki taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, kahore tetahi tongi, tetahi tohu ranei o te ture i pahemo, engari kua rite katoa i roto i a au.
- 19 Na, kua hoatu e ahau ki a koutou te ture me nga whakahaunga a toku Matua, kia whakapono koutou ki a au, kia ripeneta hoki koutou ki o koutou hara, me te haere mai ano ki a au i runga i te ngakau maru i runga i te wairua iro. Nana, kei a koutou nga whakahaunga, kei o koutou aroaro, a kua rite te ture;

And blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted? The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you to be the light of this people. A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

Behold, do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

For verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

And behold, I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father, that ye shall believe in me, and that ye shall repent of your sins, and come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit. Behold, ye have the commandments before you, and the law is fulfilled.

20 No reira haere mai koutou ki a au, kia ora ai, he pono hoki taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ki te kore koutou e pupuri i aku whakahaunga, kua whakahaua atu nei e ahau ki a koutou i tenei wa, e kore rawa koutou e tomo ki roto ki te kingitanga o te rangi.

21 Kua rongo koutou, i korerotia e nga tupuna o mua a kei a koutou ano he mea tuhituhi, Kaua e patu tangata, a ki te patu tangata tetahi, ka tika mona te whakawakanga a te Atua.

22 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, ki te riri tetahi ki tona teina, ka tika mona tana whakawakanga. A ki te mea tetahi ki tona teina, Wairangi, ka tika kia komititia; na, ki te mea tetahi, poauau, ka tika mona te kapura o te reinga.

23 Na reira, ki te haere mai koe ki a au, ki te mea ranei kia haere mai ki a au, a ka mahara i hara koe ki tou teina,

24 Haere ki tou teina, matua houhia te rongo ki a ia, ka haere mai ai ki a au i runga i te hiahia katoa o te ngakau, a, maku koe e manako.

25 Kia hohoro te whakarite i ta korua korero, ko tou hoa tauwhaingā, i a korua ano i te huarahi, kei mau koe i a ia a maka ana koe ki te whare herehere.

26 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koe, e kore rawa koe e puta mai i reira, kia utua mai ra ano te henine whakamutunga. A i a koe i roto i te whare herehere e ahei ianei koe te utu atu kia kotahi te henine? He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koe. Kahore.

27 Nana, i tuhituhia e nga tupuna, kaua koe e puremu;

28 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, ki te titiro atu tetahi ki te wahine, he hiahia atu ki a ia, kua puremu ke ki a ia i roto i tona ngakau.

29 Nana, ka hoatu e ahau ki a koutou he ture, kia kauaka enei mea e tukua e koutou kia tae ki roto ki o koutou ngakau;

30 He pai ke atu hoki kia whakakahoretia enei mea ki a koutou, ko tenei hoki hei amonga ripeka ma koutou, i te tuku kia maka koutou ki te reinga.

31 I tuhituhia ano hoki, Ki te whakarere tetahi i tana wahine, me hoatu ki a ia tetahi pukapuka whakarere.

Therefore come unto me and be ye saved; for verily I say unto you, that except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the kingdom of heaven.

Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill, and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

But I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be in danger of his judgment. And whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council; and whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

Therefore, if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me, and rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee—

Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I will receive you.

Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be cast into prison.

Verily, verily, I say unto thee, thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid the uttermost senine. And while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine? Verily, verily, I say unto you, Nay.

Behold, it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

But I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

Behold, I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.



32 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou,  
ki te whakarere tetahi i tana wahine, a ehara i te take  
puremu, e mea ana ia i te wahine kia puremu; a ki te  
marena tetahi i te wahine i whakarerea, e puremu  
ana ia.

33 I tuhituhia ano hoki, kua koe e oati teka, engari  
me whakamana au oati ki te Ariki.

34 Na, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a  
koutou, kua rawa tetahi mea e oatitia; kua te rangi,  
ko to te Atua torona hoki ia;

35 Kua hoki te whenua, no te mea nona ia turanga  
waewae;

36 Kua ano hoki e oatitia tou matenga, e kore hoki e  
ahei i a koe te mea kia ma tetahi makawe, kia mangu  
ranei;

37 Engari ko tenei hei kupu ma koutou, ae, ae,  
kahore, kahore; no te mea ki te maha atu i enei, no te  
kino.

38 Nana, i tuhituhia ano hoki, he kanohi mo te  
kanohi, he niho mo te niho.

39 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kua e  
whakauaua atu ki te kino; engari ki te pakia tou  
paparinga matau e tetahi, hurihia atu hoki tetahi ki a  
ia.

40 A ki te mea tetahi kia whakawakia koe, a kia  
tangohia tou koti, tukua atu hoki tou ngeri ki a ia.

41 A ki te tonoa koe kia haere kotahi ano te maero,  
kia rua au e haere tahi ai me ia.

42 Hoatu ki te tangata e tono mea ana i a koe, kua  
ano e huri atu i te tangata e mea ana ki te tono taonga  
tarewa i a koe.

43 Nana, i tuhituhia ano hoki, kia aroha atu koe ki  
tou hoa tata, kia kino hoki ki tou hoa whawhai;

44 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, arohaina atu o  
koutou hoa whawhai, manaakitia te hunga e kanga  
ana i a koutou, kia pai te mahi ki te hunga e kino ana  
ki a koutou, a inoi atu mo te hunga e whakawhiu ana  
i a koutou, e whakato i ana i a koutou;

45 Kia whakatupu tamariki ai koutou ki to koutou  
Matua i te rangi: e mea nei hoki ia i tona ra kia whiti  
ki runga ki te hunga kino ki te hunga pai;

46 Na reira aua mea o mua, i raro iho nei i te ture i  
roto i a au, kua tutuki katoa.

47 Kua pahemo nga mea tawhito, kua hou nga mea  
katoa.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that whosoever shall  
put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornica-  
tion, causeth her to commit adultery; and whoso  
shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

And again it is written, thou shalt not forswear  
thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

But verily, verily, I say unto you, swear not at all;  
neither by heaven, for it is God's throne;

Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because  
thou canst not make one hair black or white;

But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay;  
for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

And behold, it is written, an eye for an eye, and a  
tooth for a tooth;

But I say unto you, that ye shall not resist evil, but  
whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn  
to him the other also;

And if any man will sue thee at the law and take  
away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go  
with him twain.

Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that  
would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

And behold it is written also, that thou shalt love  
thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

But behold I say unto you, love your enemies,  
bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate  
you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and  
persecute you;

That ye may be the children of your Father who is  
in heaven; for he maketh his sun to rise on the evil  
and on the good.

Therefore those things which were of old time,  
which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

Old things are done away, and all things have be-  
come new.

48 Na, ko taku hiahia kia tika koutou, kia penei me a au, me to koutou Matua ranei i te rangi e tika ana.

Therefore I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

### III. Niwhai. 13

- 1 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, e mea ana ahau kia atawhai koutou i te rawa-kore; kia tupato ia kei atawhai koutou i te rawa-kore i te aroaro o nga tangata, hei tirohanga ma ratou; penei kahore he utu ki a koutou a to koutou Matua i te rangi.
- 2 Na, ka atawhai koutou i te rawa-kore, aua e whakatangihia te tetere i mua i a koutou, kei pera me te hunga tinihanga i roto i nga whare karakia, i nga ara ano hoki kia korerotia ai ratou e nga tangata. He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka riro to ratou utu i a ratou.
- 3 Engari ka atawhaitia e koe te rawa-kore, kei mohio tou ringa maui ki ta tou ringa matau e mea ai;
- 4 Kia ngaro ai tau atawhainga rawa-kore; a ko tou Matua e kite nei i te wahi ngaro, mana koe e utu nui.
- 5 A ka inoi koe, kaua e pera me te hunga tinihanga, ko ta ratou hoki e pai ai ko te inoi tu i roto i nga whare karakia, i nga kokinga o nga huarahi, kia kitea ai ratou e nga tangata. He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka riro to ratou utu i a ratou.
- 6 Na, ka inoi koe, tomo atu ki tou ruma i roto rawa, ano ka kati tou tatau, inoi atu ki tou Matua i te wahi ngaro; a ko tou Matua e kite nei i te wahi ngaro, mana koe e utu nui.
- 7 Na, ka inoi koutou, aua e whakahuatia noatia ko aua kupu ano, kei pera me nga tauwi, ki ta ratou hoki ma nga kupu maha e whakarangona ai ratou.
- 8 Na, kei rite koutou ki a ratou, e matau ana hoki to koutou Matua ki nga mea e matea ana e koutou, i te mea kiano koutou i inoi noa ki a ia.
- 9 Na, kia penei ta koutou inoi, E to matou Matua i te rangi, kia tapu tou ingoa.
- 10 Kia meatia tau e pai ai ki runga ki te whenua kia rite ano ki to te rangi.
- 11 Murua o matou hara me matou hoki e muru nei i o te hunga e hara ana ki a matou.
- 12 Aua hoki matou e kawea kia whakawaia, engari whakaorangia matou i te kino.
- 13 Nou hoki te kingitanga, te kaha, me te kororia, ake ake ake. Amine.

### 3 Nephi 13

Verily, verily, I say that I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

Therefore, when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

That thine alms may be in secret; and thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

And when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Verily I say unto you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret; and thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

But when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil.

For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, forever. Amen.

14 Ki te whakarerea noatia iho hoki e koutou nga he  
a nga tangata, ka whakarerea noatia iho hoki o  
koutou e to koutou Matua i te rangi;

15 A ki te kore e whakarerea noatia iho e koutou nga  
he a nga tangata, e kore ano hoki e whakarerea  
noatia iho a koutou e to koutou Matua.

16 A ka noho puku koutou, kei rite ki te hunga  
tinihanga, kua e whakapoururu te kanohi, e  
whakaahua ke ana hoki ratou i o ratou kanohi, kia  
kitea ai e nga tangata e noho puku ana ratou. He  
pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka riro to ratou  
utu i a ratou.

17 Engari ka noho puku koe, kaukauria tou upoko,  
horoia hoki tou kanohi;

18 Kei kitea koe e nga tangata e noho puku ana,  
engari e tou Matua i te wahi ngaro; a ko tou Matua e  
kite nei i te wahi ngaro, mana koe e utu nui.

19 Kua e purangatia he taonga ki te whenua, ki te  
wahi e whakakinongia ana e te huhu, e te waikura,  
ki te wahi hoki e kerī mai ai nga tahae, e tahae ai.

20 Engari purangatia ma koutou he taonga ki te  
rangi, ki te wahi e kore ai e whakakino te huhu, te  
waikura, ki te wahi hoki e kore ai e kerī nga tahae, e  
tahae ai.

21 Ko te wahi hoki i o koutou taonga, ko reira ano  
hoki o koutou ngakau.

22 Ko te kanohi te rama o te tinana, ki te atea tou  
kanohi, e marama katoa tou tinana.

23 Tena ki te kino tou kanohi, ka pouri katoa tou  
tinana. Na, ki te pouri te maramatanga i roto i a koe,  
ano te nui o tena pouri!

24 Kahore he tangata e pono te mahi ki nga rangatira  
tokorua, ka kino hoki ki tetahi, ka aroha ki tetahi; ka  
u ranei ki tetahi, a ka whakahawea ki tetahi. E kore e  
pono i a koutou te mahi ki te Atua, ki te Taonga.

25 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu enei kupu te whakapuaki,  
ka titiro atu ia kite tekau ma rua kua whiriwhiria e ia  
a ka mea ki a ratou, Maharatia nga kupu kua  
whakapuakina nei e ahau. Ta te mea hoki, ko koutou  
te hunga i whiriwhiria e ahau hei minita ki tenei iwi.  
Koia ahau ka mea atu nei ki a koutou, kua e  
manukanuka ki to koutou oranga, ki ta koutou e pai  
ai, ki ta koutou e inu ai; ki o koutou tinana ranei, ki  
ta koutou ranei e kakahu ai. Ehara oti te oranga i te  
rahi atu i te kai, me te tinana i te kakahu?

For, if ye forgive men their trespasses your heav-  
enly Father will also forgive you;

But if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither  
will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Moreover, when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of  
a sad countenance, for they disfigure their faces that  
they may appear unto men to fast. Verily I say unto  
you, they have their reward.

But thou, when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and  
wash thy face;

That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto  
thy Father, who is in secret; and thy Father, who  
seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth,  
where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break  
through and steal;

But lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven,  
where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and  
where thieves do not break through nor steal.

For where your treasure is, there will your heart be  
also.

The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine  
eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be  
full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee  
be darkness, how great is that darkness!

No man can serve two masters; for either he will  
hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to  
the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God  
and Mammon.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spo-  
ken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he  
had chosen, and said unto them: Remember the  
words which I have spoken. For behold, ye are they  
whom I have chosen to minister unto this people.  
Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your  
life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet  
for your body, what ye shall put on. Is not the life  
more than meat, and the body than raiment?

26 Tirohia nga manu o te rangi, e kore hoki e rui, e kore e kokoti, e kohikohi ranei ki roto ki nga whare witi: heoi e whangainga ana ratou e to koutou Matua i te rangi. Ehara oti koutou i te mea pai ake i a ratou?

27 Ko wai o koutou e taea e ia te whakaaro iho te hono atu tetahi wahi ki tona roa, kia kotahi te whatianga?

28 A he aha koutou i manukanuka, ai ki te kakahu? Maharatia nga rengarenga o te whenua, te tupu; e kore nei e mahi e kore nei ano hoki e miro;

29 Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kihai a Horomona, me tona kororia katoa, i rite ki tetahi o enei te whai kakahu.

30 Ha, ki te penei ta te Atua whakakakahuranga i te tarutaru o te whenua, e whakatarutaru nei inaianei, a apopo ka maka ki roto ki te oumu, waihoki ka pera ano tana whakakakahu i a koutou, ki te mea ehara to koutou i te whakapono iti.

31 Na, kua ra a manukanuka, e mea, He aha ta tatou e kai ai? he aha ta tatou e inu ai, me whakakakahu tatou ki te aha?

32 E matau ana hoki to koutou Matua i te rangi, e matea ana e koutou enei mea katoa.

33 Engari matua rapua te kingitanga o te Atua, me ana mea tika, a ka tapiritia mai enei mea katoa ma koutou.

34 Na, kua ra e manukanuka ki o apopo, ma apopo e manukanuka ana mea ake. Kati ano i tona rangi ano ko te kino ona ake ano.

Behold the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?

Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

And why take ye thought for raiment? Consider the lilies of the field how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin;

And yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

Wherefore, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

Therefore take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

For your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

But seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

### III. Niwhai. 14

- 1 Ano ka oti i a Ihu enei kupu te korero, ka tahuri ano ia ki te mano ka whakapuaki tona mangai ki a ratou, ka mea, He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, kua e whakahe, kei whakahehia koutou.
- 2 Na, ko te whakahenga e whakahe ai koutou, hei whakahenga ano tena mo koutou; a ko te mehua e mehua ai koutou, hei mehua mai ano tena ki a koutou.
- 3 He aha hoki tau e titiro ki te otaota i roto i te kanohi o tou teina, te mahara ki te kurupae i roto i tou kanohi?
- 4 Me pehea ranei tou kupu ki tou teina, iaua, kia kapea atu e ahau te otaota i tou kanohi; a he kurupae ano tena kei roto i tou kanohi?
- 5 E te tangata tinihanga, matua kapea mai e koe te kurupae i roto i to kanohi: katahi koe ka marama ki te kape i te otaota i roto i te kanohi o tou teina.
- 6 Kua e hoatu te mea tapu ki nga kuri, kua ano hoki e maka a koutou peara ki te aroaro o nga poaka, kei takatakahia e o ratou waewae, a ka tahuri mai ka haehae i a koutou.
- 7 Inoia, a ka hoatu ki a koutou; rapua, a ka kitea e koutou; patukia, a ka uakina ki a koutou,
- 8 Ta te mea ka whiwhi nga tangata katoa ina inoi; ka kite ina rapu; ka uakina hoki ki te tangata e patuki ana.
- 9 Ko tehea tangata ranei o koutou, ki te inoi atu ki a ia tana tama ki tetahi taro, e hoatu ranei ki ia he kohatu?
- 10 A ki te inoia he ika, e hoatu ranei ki a ia he nakahi?
- 11 Na, e matau ana koutou te hunga kino ki te hoatu mea papai ki a koutou tamariki, a, tera noa ake te homaitanga o nga mea papai e to koutou Matua i te rangi ki te hunga e inoi ana ki a ia?
- 12 A, nga mea katoa e pai ai koutou kia meatia e nga tangata ki a koutou, meatia ano e koutou ki a ratou, ko ta te ture me ta nga poropiti hoki tenei.
- 13 Tomo atu koutou ma te kuwaha kuiti: he wharahi hoki te kuwaha, he nui noa atu te ara, e tika ana ki te whakangaromanga, a he tokomaha e haere ana ra reira;
- 14 He kuiti ano hoki te kuwaha, e kiki ana te ara, e tika ana ki te ora, a he ruarua te hunga e kitea ai.

### 3 Nephi 14

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again, saying: Verily, verily, I say unto you, Judge not, that ye be not judged.

For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; and with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

And why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

Or how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye—and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

For every one that asketh, receiveth; and he that seeketh, findeth; and to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

Therefore, all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

Enter ye in at the strait gate; for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction, and many there be who go in thereat;

Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

15 Na, kia tupato ki nga poropiti teka, e haere mai nei ki a koutou, he hipi te kakahu, ko roto ia he wuruhi kai kino.

16 Ma o ratou hua ka mohiotia ai ratou e koutou: e whakiia ana ranei te karepe i runga i te tataramoa, te piki ranei i runga i te tumatakuru?

17 Waihoki he hua ataahua nga hua o nga rakau pai katoa; he hua kino ia nga hua o te rakau kino.

18 E kore te rakau pai e ahei te hua i te hua kino, e kore ano hoki te rakau kino e hua i te hua ataahua.

19 Ka tuakina nga rakau katoa e kore e hua i te hua ataahua, ka maka hoki ki te ahi.

20 Ina, ma o ratou hua ka mohiotia ai ratou e koutou.

21 E kore e tomo atu ki roto ki te kingitanga o te rangi nga tangata katoa e mea mai ana ki a au, e te Ariki, e te Ariki, engari ia e mea ana i ta toku Matua i te rangi i pai ai.

22 He tokomaha e mea mai ki a au i taua ra, e te Ariki, e te Ariki, kihai koia matou i poropiti i runga i tou ingoa? i pei rewera hoki i runga i tou ingoa? he tini hoki nga mahi i meatia e matou i runga i tou ingoa?

23 Ko reira ano hoki ahau mea atu ai ki a ratou, kahore rawa ahau i mohio ki a koutou, mawehe atu i a au, e nga kai mahi i te tutu.

24 Na, nga tangata katoa e rongu ana ki enei kupu aku, a e mahia ana e ratou, ka whakaritea e ahau ki te tangata mahara, i hanga i tona whare ki runga ki te kamaka,

25 A ka ua te ua, ka puta nga waipuke, ka pupuhi nga hau, te tino akinga mai ki taua whare; kihai hoki i hinga, no te mea i hanga ki runga ki te kamaka.

26 Me nga tangata katoa hoki e rongu ana ki enei kupu aku, a kahore e mahia, ka whakaritea ki te tangata whakaaro kore, i hanga i tona whare ki runga ki te onepu,

27 Na, ka ua te ua, ka puta nga waipuke, ka pupuhi nga hau, a pa ana ki taua whare; na, kua hinga, he rahi ano hoki tona hinganga.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

Wherefore, by their fruits ye shall know them.

Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven; but he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name, and in thy name have cast out devils, and in thy name done many wonderful works?

And then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

Therefore, whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

And every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand—

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

### III. Niwhai. 15

- 1 Ano ka mutu i a Ihu enei korero te whakapuaki, ka tiiro atu ona kanohi ki te mano, a ka mea ki a ratou, Nana, kua rongo na koutou ki nga mea i whakaakona e ahau i mua i toku kakenga ki toku Matua; no reira, ko te tangata e whakapono ana ki enei korero aku, a e mahia ana e ia, e whakateiteitia ake tera e ahau a te ra whakamutunga.
- 2 Na, ka mutu i a Ihu enei kupu te korero, ka kite ia e miharo ana etahi, e miharo ana ki tana e mea ai mo te ture a Mohi; no te mea kihai ratou i mohio ki te kupu, ara, kua pahemo nga mea tawhito, kua hou nga mea katoa.
- 3 A ka mea ia ki a ratou, Aua ra e miharo ki taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, kua pahemo nga mea tawhito, kua hou nga mea katoa.
- 4 Nana, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, kua tutuki te ture i hoatu ki a Mohi.
- 5 Nana, ko ahau tera nana i hoatu te ture, ko ahau hoki ia nana i kawenata ki toku iwi ki a Iharaira; no reira kua tutuki te ture i a au, kua haere mai hoki ahau ki te whakatutuki i te ture; no reira, kua mutu ake te ture.
- 6 Nana, kahore ahau e whakakahore i nga poropiti; he pono hoki taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, tera e mana nga mea katoa kahore ano kia rite i a au.
- 7 Na, noku i mea atu ki a koutou, kua pahemo nga mea tawhito, kahore ahau i te whakakahore i te mea kua oti nei te korero mo nga mea e puta mai ana.
- 8 Ta te mea hoki, kahore ano kia whakaritea katoatia taku kawenata i kawenata ai ahau ki taku iwi; tena ko te ture i hoatu ki a Mohi, kua mutu i roto i a au nei.
- 9 Nana, ko ahau te ture me te maramatanga; titiro mai ki a au, e u hoki tae noa ki te mutunga, a ka ora koutou, ko taku hoki e hoatu ai ki te tangata e u ana a taea noatia te mutunga he oranga tonutanga.
- 10 Nana, kua hoatu nei e ahau nga whakahaunga ki a koutou; no reira puritia aku whakahaunga. Ko te ture me nga poropiti tenei, he pono hoki hei kai whakaatu enei moku.
- 11 Ano kua korero a Ihu i enei kupu, ka mea atu ia ki taua tekau ma rua i whiriwhiria e ia.

### 3 Nephi 15

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude, and said unto them: Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father; therefore, whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses; for they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

And he said unto them: Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

Behold, I say unto you that the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

Behold, I am he that gave the law, and I am he who covenanted with my people Israel; therefore, the law in me is fulfilled, for I have come to fulfil the law; therefore it hath an end.

Behold, I do not destroy the prophets, for as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

And because I said unto you that old things have passed away, I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

For behold, the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled; but the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

Behold, I am the law, and the light. Look unto me, and endure to the end, and ye shall live; for unto him that endureth to the end will I give eternal life.

Behold, I have given unto you the commandments; therefore keep my commandments. And this is the law and the prophets, for they truly testified of me.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:



12 He akonga koutou naku; hei maramatanga ano hoki koutou mo tenei iwi, tuenga nei ratou no te whare o Hohepa.

13 Nana, ko to koutou whenua tupu tenei; na te Matua ano hoki i homai ki a koutou.

14 Kahore ano te Matua i whakahau noa i a au kia korerotia atu tenei e ahau ki o koutou teina i Hiruharama;

15 Kahore ano hoki te Matua i homai noa he whakahaunga ki a au, kia whakaatu ahau ki a ratou mo era atu hapu o te whare o Iharaira, i arahina atu e te Matua i roto i te whenua.

16 Heoi ano ta te Matua i whakahau ai ki a au, hei kinga atu maku ki a ratou, ara,

17 He hipi atu ano aku, ehara nei i tenei kainga; me arahi mai ratou e ahau, a ka rongo ratou ki toku reo; a e whakakotahitia te kahui, kotahi ano hoki hepara.

18 Na, i te kaki-marō me te whakapono-kore, kihai ratou i mohio ki taku kupu: koia i whakahaua ai ahau e te Matua kia kore aku kupu ki a ratou mo tenei mea.

19 Otira, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, kua whakahaua ahau e te Matua, a e korero atu nei ahau ki a koutou, he mea wehe mai koutou i roto i a ratou he mea na o ratou kino; no reira he kino no ratou, kahore nei ratou e mohio ki a koutou.

20 He pono taku e mea atu nei ano ki a koutou, na te Matua i wehe era atu hapu i a ratou; ko to ratou kino te take kahore ratou i mohio ki era.

21 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko koutou te hunga mo koutou taku ki he hipi atu ano aku; ehara nei i tenei kainga: me arahi mai ratou e ahau, a ka rongo ratou ki toku reo; a e whakakotahitia te kahui, a kotahi ano hoki hepara.

22 A kihai ratou i mohio ki taku i ki ra, no te mea i whakaaro ratou ko ia ano nga Tauwiwi; kahore hoki ratou i mohio ma runga i ta ratou kauwhautanga e tahuri mai ai nga Tauwiwi;

23 Kihai ano ratou i mohio ki taku, i taku korerotanga, ka rongo ratou ki toku reo; a kihai ratou i mohio ki taku, e kore rawa nga Tauwiwi e rongo ki toku reo i tetahi wa; e kore rawa hoki ahau e whakakite i a au ano ki a ratou, engari i runga anake i te Wairua Tapu.

Ye are my disciples; and ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

And behold, this is the land of your inheritance; and the Father hath given it unto you.

And not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

This much did the Father command me, that I should tell unto them:

That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And now, because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the Father concerning this thing unto them.

But, verily, I say unto you that the Father hath commanded me, and I tell it unto you, that ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity; therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

And verily, I say unto you again that the other tribes hath the Father separated from them; and it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

And verily I say unto you, that ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

And they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the Gentiles; for they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted through their preaching.

And they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice; and they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time hear my voice—that I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy Ghost.

24      Tena ko tenei, kua rongō koutou ki toku reo, kua kite ano hoki i a au; a he hipi naku koutou, kua oti hoki koutou te tatau ki roto ki te hunga i homai e te Matua ki a au.

But behold, ye have both heard my voice, and seen me; and ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom the Father hath given me.

### III. Niwhai. 16

- 1 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, he hipi atu ano aku, ehara nei i tenei whenua; ehara nei hoki i te whenua o Hiruharama; ehara nei hoki i nga wahi o taua whenua e patata ana, i tae atu ahau ki te minita.
- 2 Ko te hunga hoki e korerotia nei e ahau, ko te hunga tera kahore ano i rongo noa ki toku reo; kahore ano hoki i whakakite i a au ano ki a ratou.
- 3 Tena kua whiwhi nei ahau ki tetahi whakahaunga i te Matua, kia haere ahau ki a ratou, kia rongo ratou ki toku reo, a kia taua hoki ratou ki roto ki aku hipi, kia kotahi ai te kahui, a kotahi ano hoki hepara; no reira ka haere atu ahau ki te whakakite i a au ano ki a ratou.
- 4 A he whakahau tenei naku ki a koutou kia tuhituhia enei mea e koutou i muri iho i toku haerenga atu, mo te kore te iwi i Hiruharama, i kite ra i a au, i haere tahi ra hoki i a au i toku minitanga, e inoi ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, kia mohio ratou ki a koutou he mea ma te Wairua Tapu, ki era atu hapu ano hoki kahore nei e mohiotia e ratou, na, ka ai enei kupu e tuhituhi ai koutou a ka whakakitea atu ki nga Tauwi, kia riro mai ai ano ra roto i te whakatutukitanga o nga Tauwi, nga morehu o a ratou uri e noho marara ana i runga i te mata o te whenua, he mea na to ratou whakaponokore, ki te matauranga ki a au, to ratou Kai-hoko.
- 5 Ko reira hoki ahau kohikohi mai ai i a ratou i nga topito e wha o te whenua; ko reira ano hoki ahau whakarite ai i te kawenata i kawenata ai te Matua ki te iwi katoa o te whare o Iharaira.
- 6 A ka koa nga Tauwi mo to ratou whakaponokore ki a au, he mea na te Wairua Tapu, ko ia nei hei kai whakaatu ki a ratou moku, mo te Matua ano hoki.
- 7 Nana, mo to ratou whakaponokore ki a au, e ai ta te Matua, a mo to koutou whakaponokore, E te whare o Iharaira, ko a nga ra whakamutunga ka tae te whakaponokore ki nga Tauwi, kia whakakitea katoatia enei mea ki a ratou,

### 3 Nephi 16

And verily, verily, I say unto you that I have other sheep, which are not of this land, neither of the land of Jerusalem, neither in any parts of that land round about whither I have been to minister.

For they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my voice; neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

But I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go unto them, and that they shall hear my voice, and shall be numbered among my sheep, that there may be one fold and one shepherd; therefore I go to show myself unto them.

And I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you by the Holy Ghost, and also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles, that through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

And then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth; and then will I fulfil the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

And blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost, which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

Behold, because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you, O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

- 8 Oтира aue te mate mo te hunga whakapono-kore o nga Tauwi, e ai ta te Matua, ta te mea he ahakoa kua puta ratou ki runga ki te mata o tenei whenua, kua marara hoki i a ratou toku iwi o te whare o Iharaira; a kua maka atu toku iwi o te whare o Iharaira i roto i a ratou; kua takatakahia ki raro e o ratou waewae;
- 9 A i nga atawhainga a te Matua ki nga Tauwi, i nga whakawakanga hoki a te Matua i toku iwi o te whare o Iharaira, na, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, i muri i tenei katoa, me taku meatanga i toku iwi o te whare o Iharaira kia pakia, kia tukinotia, kia patua, kia maka atu ano hoki i roto i a ratou, hei mea e kinongia ana e ratou, a waiho ana hei whakahi hei taunutanga i roto i a ratou.
- 10 Na, i penei te whakahau iho a te Matua, maku e mea atu ki a koutou, ko a taua ra e he ai nga Tauwi ki taku rongopai, e neke ake ai i te whakapehapeha o o ratou ngakau i runga ake i nga iwi katoa, i nga hapu katoa aho hoki o te whenua katoa, e ki tonu ai ano hoki i nga teka katoa, i nga tinihanga, i nga hianga, i nga tekateka katoa, i nga kohurutanga, i nga mahi tinihanga a nga tohunga, i nga puremu, i nga mea whakarihariha ngaro; na, ki te mea ka mahi ratou i enei mea, a ka whakaparahako ki te raneatanga o toku rongopai, nana, ka tangohia e ahau te raneatanga o taku rongopai i roto i a ratou, e ai ta te Matua.
- 11 Ko reira ano hoki ahau mahara ai ki taku kawenata i kawenata ai ahau ki toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira, a ka kawea e ahau toku rongopai ki a ratou.
- 12 Ka whakakite atu hoki ahau ki a koutou, E te whare o Iharaira, e kore nga Tauwi e whai mana ki runga ki a koutou engari ka maharatia e ahau taku kawenata ki a koutou, E te whare o Iharaira, a ka tae koutou ki te matauranga ki te raneatanga o taku rongopai.
- 13 Heoi ki te mea ka ripenata nga Tauwi a ka tahuri mai ki a au, e ai ta te Matua, nana, ka taua ngatahitia ratou me toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira;
- 14 A e kore ahau e tuku i toku iwi, o te whare o Iharaira, kia haere ki waenganui i a ratou hei takatakahi i a ratou ki raro, e ai ta te Matua.

But wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles—for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

And because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles, and also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of the house of Israel, verily, verily, I say unto you, that after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted, and to be slain, and to be cast out from among them, and to become hated by them, and to become a hiss and a byword among them—

And thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, and shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations, and above all the people of the whole earth, and shall be filled with all manner of lyings, and of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, and of secret abominations; and if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of my gospel, behold, saith the Father, I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.

And then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my people, O house of Israel, and I will bring my gospel unto them.

And I will show unto thee, O house of Israel, that the Gentiles shall not have power over you; but I will remember my covenant unto you, O house of Israel, and ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

But if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father, behold they shall be numbered among my people, O house of Israel.

And I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

- 15 Tena ki te kore ratou e tahuri mai ki a au, e whakarongo mai ki toku reo, ka tukua ratou e ahau, ae ra, ka tukua toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira, kia haere atu ratou ki waenganui i a ratou, kia takatakahi hoki i a ratou ki raro, a ka rite ratou ki te tote kua hemo te ha a heoi ano tona pai, a ka akiritia ki waho, ka takahia e nga waewae o toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.
- 16 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko te whakahau iho tenei a te Matua ki a au, maku e hoatu tenei whenua ki te iwi nei hei whenua tupu mo ratou.
- 17 Ano ka rite nga kupu a te poropiti, a Ihaia, e mea nei.
- 18 Ka whakanui te reo o o tutei; ka waiata ngatahi ano to ratou reo, no te mea ka kite atu ratou he kanohi, he kanohi, ina whakahoki te Ariki i a Hiona.
- 19 Hamama, waiata ngatahi koutou, e nga wahi o Hiruharama kua ururuatia; kua whakamarie hoki te Ariki i tona iwi, kua hoko ia i a Hiruharama.
- 20 Kua huhu te ringa tapu o te Ariki ki te aroaro o nga iwi katoa; a, ka kite nga pito katoa o te ao i te whakaoranga a te Atua.

But if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people, O house of Israel, that they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down, and they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor, which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me—that I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

And then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled, which say:

Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing, for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

### III. Niwhai. 17

- 1 Na, ano ka oti i a Ihu enei kupu te korero, ka tiroiro ano ia ki te mano, a ka mea ia ki a ratou, nana, ka tata toku wa.
- 2 Ka kite ahau e ngoikore ana koutou, e kore e ahei i a koutou te mohio ki aku kupu katoa i whakahaua e te Matua ki a au hei korerotanga atu maku ki a koutou i tenei wa;
- 3 No reira, haere koutou ki o koutou kainga, whakaaroa hoki nga mea kua korerotia atu nei e ahau, inoi atu hoki ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, kia mohio koutou, kia rite hoki o koutou hinengaro mo apopo, a ka haere mai ano ahau ki a koutou;
- 4 Heoi e haere ana ahau inaianei ki te Matua, ki te whakakite atu ano hoki i a au ki nga hapu ngaro o Iharaira, kahore hoki ratou i te ngaro ki te Matua, no te mea e mohio ano ia ki te wahi i kawea atu ai ratou e ia.
- 5 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu te korero penei, ka tiroiro atu ano ona kanohi ki te mano, a ka kite e heke ana nga roimata, a e titiro matatau ana ki a ia me te mea he inoi ta ratou kia roa ake tana noho i a ratou.
- 6 A, ka mea atu ia ki a ratou, Nana, ki tonu toku ngakau i te aroha ki a koutou;
- 7 Kei a koutou ianei he turoro i roto i a koutou, kawea mai ratou ki konei. Kei a koutou ianei he kopa, he matapo, he ngongengonge, he turi, he aha ranei to ratou mate? kawea mai ratou ki konei, a maku ratou e whakaora, he aroha hoki noku ki a koutou; ki tonu toku ngakau i te atawhai;
- 8 No te mea e kite ana ahau kei te hiahia koutou kia whakakitea atu e ahau te mea i mea ai ahau ki o koutou teina i Hiruharama, a e kite ana ano hoki ahau he ranea to koutou whakapono hei whakaora maku i a koutou.
- 9 Ano kua penei ana korero, na, kotahi tonu te haerenga atu o te mano me o ratou turoro, me o ratou tangata mate, me o ratou kopa, me o ratou matapo, me o ratou wahangu, me te hunga katoa he aha ranei te mate e mate nei ratou; a ka whakaorangia ratou katoa e ia i a ratou e kawea mai ana ki a ia.

### 3 Nephi 17

Behold, now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about again on the multitude, and he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you at this time.

Therefore, go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I have said, and ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand, and prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

But now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, for they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he hath taken them.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus spoken, he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude, and beheld they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

And he said unto them: Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither. Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner? Bring them hither and I will heal them, for I have compassion upon you; my bowels are filled with mercy.

For I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem, for I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

And it came to pass that when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner; and he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

- 10 Na, ka tuohu ratou katoa ki ona waewae, ko te hunga i whakaorangia ratou ko te hunga ora, a ka koropiko ki a ia; a ko te hunga katoa e ahei ana i te mano, ka haere mai ka kihi i ona waewae, no ka kaukauria ona waewae ki o ratou roimata.
- 11 Na, ka whakahau atu ia kia kawea mai a ratou tamariki nonohi.
- 12 A ka kawea mai ratou i a ratou tamariki, ka whakanohoia ano ki runga ki te oneone ki ona taha, ko Ihu e tu ana ki waenganui; a ka tukua he wahi e te mano, a, poto ake ra ano nga tamariki te kawea mai ki a ia.
- 13 Nawai a, ka poto nga tamariki katoa te kawea mai ki a ia, ko Ihu hoki e tu ana ki waenganui, na, ka whakahau atu ia ki te mano kia tuturi iho ratou ki runga ki te whenua.
- 14 Ano ka tuturi iho ratou ki runga ki te whenua, ka ngunguru a Ihu i roto i a ia, ka mea, E te Matua, e awangawanga ana ahau mo te kino o te whare o Iharaira.
- 15 Ano ka korero ia i enei kupu, ka tuturi ko ia ano ki te whenua; na, ka inoi ia ki te Matua, a e kore e taea nga mea i inoi ai ia te tuhituhi, a hei kai whakaatu te mano i rongoi ai ki a ia.
- 16 Na, i penei ta ratou whakaaturanga: kahore ano te kanoahi i kite noa, kahore ano hoki te taringa i rongoi, i mua, i nga mea nui whakamiharo, e rite ana ki ta matou i kite ai i rongoi ai i a Ihu e korero ake ana ki te Matua:
- 17 Na, e kore e ahei i te arero te whakapuaki, i te tangata ranei te tuhituhi, e kore ano hoki nga ngakau o nga tangata e mohio ki nga mea nui whakamiharo i kite ai i rongoi ai matou i whakapuakina e Ihu; e kore ano hoki e ahei i tetahi tangata te whakaaro iho ki te koa i whakakii ai o matou wairua i te wa i rongoi ai matou ki a ia e inoi ake ana mo matou ki te Matua.
- 18 Na, ka mutu i a Ihu te inoi ki te Matua, ka whakatika ia, ko te mano ia kua taea e te nui o te ratou koa.
- 19 Na, ka korero atu a Ihu ki a ratou, ka ki atu ki a ratou kia whakatika.

And they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him; and as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, insomuch that they did bathe his feet with their tears.

And it came to pass that he commanded that their little children should be brought.

So they brought their little children and set them down upon the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst; and the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

And it came to pass that when they had all been brought, and Jesus stood in the midst, he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down upon the ground.

And it came to pass that when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within himself, and said: Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people of the house of Israel.

And when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the earth; and behold he prayed unto the Father, and the things which he prayed cannot be written, and the multitude did bear record who heard him.

And after this manner do they bear record: The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak unto the Father;

And no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man, neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak; and no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he arose; but so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

And it came to pass that Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

20 A ka whakatika ake ratou i te whenua, a ka mea  
atu ia ki a ratou, Ka koa koutou mo to koutou  
whakaponu. Nana, ka ki tonu toku hari.

21 Na, i tana korerotanga i enei kupu, ka tangi ia, a  
ko te mano te kai titiro mo tenei mea, a ka mau  
takitahi ia ki a ratou tamariki nonohi, ka manaaki i a  
ratou, a ka inoi ki te Matua mo ratou.

22 Ano ka mutu i a ia tenei, ka tangi ano ia,

23 A ka korero atu ia ki te mano, ka mea atu ki a  
ratou, na, a koutou mea nonohi.

24 A i a ratou ka titiro atu kia kite, ka anga ake o  
ratou kanohi ki te rangi, a ka kite ratou i te rangi e  
tuwhera ana, ka kite ano hoki ratou i nga anahera e  
heke iho ana i te rangi me te mea ra, kei waenganui i  
te ahi; a haere mai ana ratou ki raro karapoti ana i  
aua mea nonohi, na, karapotitia ana ratou ki te ahi; a  
minita ana nga anahera ki a ratou,

25 Na, ka kite te mano, ka rongu, ka whakaatu, a e  
mataua ana ratou he pono ta ratou whakaaturanga, no  
te mea ka kite ratou katoa, ka rongu, ko ia tangata,  
ko ia tangata mona ake; na, to ratou tokomahatanga  
e tata ana ki te rua o nga mano e rima rau nga  
wairua; he tane ratou, he wahine, he tamariki.

And they arose from the earth, and he said unto  
them: Blessed are ye because of your faith. And now  
behold, my joy is full.

And when he had said these words, he wept, and  
the multitude bare record of it, and he took their lit-  
tle children, one by one, and blessed them, and  
prayed unto the Father for them.

And when he had done this he wept again;

And he spake unto the multitude, and said unto  
them: Behold your little ones.

And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes  
towards heaven, and they saw the heavens open, and  
they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were  
in the midst of fire; and they came down and encir-  
cled those little ones about, and they were encircled  
about with fire; and the angels did minister unto  
them.

And the multitude did see and hear and bear  
record; and they know that their record is true for  
they all of them did see and hear, every man for him-  
self; and they were in number about two thousand  
and five hundred souls; and they did consist of men,  
women, and children.



### III. Niwhai. 18

- 1 Nawai a, ka whakahau atu a Ihu ki ana akonga kia kawea mai he taro he waina ki a ia.
- 2 A i a ratou ka riro atu ki te tiki i te taro me te waina, ka whakahau atu ia i te mano kia noho ki runga ki te whenua.
- 3 Ano ka tae mai nga akonga me te taro me te waina, ka mau ia ki te taro ka whatiwhatia ka whakapaingia; a ka hoatu e ia ki ana akonga, ka mea kia kai ratou.
- 4 Ano ka kai ratou, ka makona, ka whakahau ia kia hoatu e ratou ma te mano.
- 5 A ka kai te mano, ka makona, ka mea atu ia ki nga akonga, nana, ka whakaritea tetahi i roto i a koutou, a maku e hoatu ki a ia he mana e whatiwhatia ai ia e whakapai ai i te taro, e hoatu ai ano hoki ma te iwi o toku hahi, ma te hunga katoa e whakaponono ana e rumakina ana i runga i toku ingoa.
- 6 A ko tenei mea me whakaaro tonu e koutou i nga wa katoa kia mahia, kia penetitia me taku i mea nei, kia rite ki taku i whatiwhatia nei i te taro me taku i whakapai nei, me taku i hoatu nei ma koutou.
- 7 A ka meatia tenei e koutou hei whakamaharatanga ki toku tinana, kua whakakitea nei e ahau ki a koutou. A hei kai whakaatu ano tenei ki te Matua, e mahara tonu ana koutou ki a au. A ki te mea e mahara tonu ana koutou ki a au, kei a koutou toku wairua e noho ana.
- 8 Ano ka mutu i a ia enei kupu te korero, ka whakahau atu ia ki ana akonga, kia tangohia te waina te kapa, kia inumia. kia hoatu ano hoki ki te mano kia inumia e ratou.
- 9 Na, ka peratia e ratou, ka inumia, a ka makona; ka hoatu ano hoki e ratou ki te mano, a ka inu ratou, ka makona.
- 10 Ano ka oti tenei i nga akonga, ka mea atu a Ihu ki a ratou. Ka koa koutou mo tenei kua meatia na e koutou, he whakaritenga hoki tenei i aku whakahaunga, he mea whakakite atu ano hoki tenei ki te Matua e whakaae ana koutou ki te mea i taku i whakahau ai ki a koutou.

### 3 Nephi 18

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded his disciples that they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

And while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

And when the disciples had come with bread and wine, he took of the bread and brake and blessed it; and he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

And when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

And when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples: Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

And this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

And this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you. And it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And it came to pass that when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take of the wine of the cup and drink of it, and that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

And it came to pass that they did so, and did drink of it and were filled; and they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

And when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them: Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments, and this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

- 11 A ka meatia tonutia tenei e koutou ki te hunga e ripeneta ana, e rumakina ana i runga i toku ingoa; a ka meatia tenei e koutou hei whakamaharatanga ki oku toto, kua whakahekea nei e ahau mo koutou, kia whakaatu atu ai koutou ki te Matua e mahara tonu ana koutou ki a au. Na, ki te mahara tonu koutou ki a au, kei a koutou toku wairua e noho ana.
- 12 Na, he whakahau tenei e hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou kia meatia enei mea. A ki te meatia tonutia enei mea e koutou, ka koa koutou, no te mea ka oti koutou te hanga ki runga ki taku kamaka.
- 13 Tena ki te rahi ake i enei te meatanga a tetahi i roto i a koutou, ki te iti iho ranei, ehara ia i te mea hanga ki runga ki taku kamaka, engari he mea hanga ki runga ki te turanga onepu; na, ka ua nga ua, ka puta nga waipuke, ka pupuhi nga hau, a pa ana ki a ratou, na, ka hinga, a puare noa nga kuwaha o te reinga hei tukunga atu mo ratou;
- 14 Na reira ka koa koutou ki te pupuri i aku whakahaunga, i whakahau mai ai te Matua ki a au maku e hoatu ki a koutou.
- 15 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou. Me mataara me inoi tonu koutou, kei whakamatautauria koutou e te rewera, a ka whakaraua atu koutou e ia.
- 16 Na, kia rite ki taku i inoi ai i roto i a koutou, ta koutou e inoi ai i roto i toku hahi, i roto i toku iwi e ripeneta ana, e rumakina ana i runga i toku ingoa. Nana, ko ahau te maramatanga; kua hoatu e ahau he tauira ma koutou.
- 17 Ano ka korero a Ihu i enei kupu ki ana akonga, ka tahuri ano ia ki te mano, a ka mea atu ki a ratou,
- 18 Nana, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, me mataara me inoi tonu koutou, kei uru koutou ki nga whakamatautauranga; he hiahia hoki to Hatana kia riro atu koutou i a ia; kia tataria koutou e ia ano he witi;
- 19 No reira me inoi tonu koutou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa;
- 20 A ko te mea e inoi ai koutou ki te Matua, ki te mea he tika, me te whakapono tera e riro i a koutou, nana, ka homai ano ki a koutou.

And this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name; and ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you, that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me. And if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

And I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things. And if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye, for ye are built upon my rock.

But whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation; and when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell are ready open to receive them.

Therefore blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

And as I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name. Behold I am the light; I have set an example for you.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude and said unto them:

Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always lest ye enter into temptation; for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

Therefore ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

And whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

21 Inoi koutou ki te Matua i roto i o koutou hapu i runga tonu i toku ingoa, kia manaakitia a koutou wahine me a koutou tamariki.

22 Na, kia putuputu tonu o koutou huihuinga, kua hoki koutou e whakakore i te haerenga mai o tetahi ki roto ki a koutou ina huihui ngatahi koutou engari tukua ratou kia haere mai ki a koutou, kua hoki ratou e araia atu;

23 Engari me inoi koutou mo ratou, aua ano hoki ratou e maka atu; a ki te penei ka hono tonu ta ratou haerenga mai ki a koutou, me inoi koutou ki te Matua mo ratou i runga i toku ingoa.

24 No reira whakaarahia ake to koutou maramatanga, kia whiti atu ki roto ki te ao. Nana, ki ahau te maramatanga e whakaarahia ai e koutou—ko te mea i kite ai koutou i a au e mea ana. Nana, kua kite koutou kua inoi ahau ki te Matua, ko koutou katoa ano nga kai titiro;

25 Ka kite hoki koutou kua whakahau ahau kia kauaka tetahi o koutou e haere atu, engari taku i whakahau ai kia haere mai koutou ki a au, kia whawha koutou kia kite koutou; waihoki kia pena ta koutou e mea ai ki te ao; a ko te tangata e takahi ana i tenei whakahaunga, e tuku ana i a ia ano kia arahina ki roto ki te whakamatautauranga.

26 Ano ka oti i a ihu enei kupu te korero, ka titiro ano ona kanohi ki nga akonga i whiriwhiria e ia, a ka mea atu ki a ratou,

27 Nana, he pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, tenei ano tetahi whakahau e hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou, muri iho ka haere ai ahau ki toku Matua, kia whakarite ai ahau i etahi atu whakahaunga i whakahaua mai e ia ki a au.

28 Na, ko te whakahau tenei e whakahau atu nei ahau ki a koutou, kia kauaka koutou e tuku i tetahi, ki te mea e mohio ana koutou, kia tango he i oku kikokiko me oku toto ina minitatia e koutou;

29 Ko ia hoki e kai he e inu he ana i oku kikokiko me oku toto, e kai ana e inu ana i te whakawakanga mo tona wairua; no reira ki te mea e mohio ana koutou kahore e tika tetahi tangata ki te kai ki te inu i oku kikokiko me oku toto, riria ia e koutou;

Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

And behold, ye shall meet together oft; and ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto you and forbid them not;

But ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out; and if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto the Father, in my name.

Therefore, hold up your light that it may shine unto the world. Behold I am the light which ye shall hold up—that which ye have seen me do. Behold ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have witnessed.

And ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto me, that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world; and whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be led into temptation.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again upon the disciples whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another commandment, and then I must go unto my Father that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

And now behold, this is the commandment which I give unto you, that ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul; therefore if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

- 30 Otiia kauaka koutou e pei atu i a ia i roto i a koutou, engari me minita koutou ki a ia, me inoi mona ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, a ki te ripeneta ia, ki te rumakina hoki i runga i toku ingoa, katahi koutou ka manako ki a ia, ka minita ki a ia i oku kikokiko me oku toto;
- 31 Otira ki te kore ia e ripeneta, e kore ia e taua ngatahitia me toku iwi, kei whakangaro ia i toku iwi, ina hoki, e matau ana ahau ki aku hipi, a ka oti ratou te tatau;
- 32 Ahakoa ra kauaka koutou e pana atu i a ia i roto i o koutou whare tapu, i o koutou whare karakia ranei, no te mea me mau tonu ta koutou mahi minita ki nga mea pera; kahore hoki koutou e mohio tera pea ratou e tahuri mai e ripeneta, e haere mai ano ki a au, me te hiahia katoa o te ngakau, a ka ora ratou i a au, a kua waiho ko koutou te huarahi i puta ai te whakaoranga ki a ratou.
- 33 Mo konei ra puritia e koutou enei korero kua whakahau atu nei ahau ki a koutou, kei whakahengia koutou, ta te mea aue te mate mo te tangata e whakahengia ai e te Matua.
- 34 Na, ka hoatu e ahau ki a koutou enei whakahaunga, no te mea he tautohetohenga tera i roto i a koutou i mua. A ka koa koutou ki te kore a koutou tautohetohenga i roto i a koutou.
- 35 A e haere ana tenei ahau ki te Matua, no te mea e tika ana kia haere ahau ki te Matua, he whakaaro hoki ki a koutou.
- 36 A ka mutu i a Ihu enei kupu, ka pa atu tona ringaringa ki ana akonga i whiriwhiria e ia, he mea takitahi, a poto noa ratou te pa e ia me te korero atu ano ki a ratou i a ia e pa ana ki a ratou;
- 37 A kihai te mano i rongu i nga kupu i korero ai ia, no reira kihai ratou i whakaatu; engari i whakaatu nga akonga i homai e ia ki a ratou te mana e hoatu ai e ratou te Wairua Tapu. A hei muri ake nei maku e whakaatu ki a koutou e tika ana tenei whakaaturanga.
- 38 A ka poto ratou katoa te whakapa atu e Ihu, na, ka puta tetahi kapua, ka taumarumarua iho te mano, kei kite ratou i a Ihu.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name; and if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, and shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

But if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, that he may not destroy my people, for behold I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; for ye know not but what they will return and repent, and come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; and ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

Therefore, keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; for wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

And I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you. And blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

And now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one, even until he had touched them all, and spake unto them as he touched them.

And the multitude heard not the words which he spake, therefore they did not bear record; but the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost. And I will show unto you hereafter that this record is true.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude that they could not see Jesus.

39      A i a ratou e taumarumarua ana, ka mawehe atu ia  
i a ratou, ka kake ki te rangi. A ka kite nga akonga ka  
whakaatu ano hoki i kake ano a Ihu ki te rangi.

And while they were overshadowed he departed  
from them, and ascended into heaven. And the disci-  
ples saw and did bear record that he ascended again  
into heaven.

### III. Niwhai. 19

- 1 Ano ka kake a Ihu ki te rangi, na, wehewehe ana te mano, mau ana, ia tangata, ia tangata ki tana wahine ki ana tamariki, a hoki ana ki tona ake kainga.
- 2 Na, ka haere atu te rongō o tenei ki roto ki te iwi, i te mea kahore ano kia po te ra, ara, kua kite te mano i a Ihu, kua minita hoki ia ki a ratou, a hei apopo hoki ia whakakite ai i a ia ano ki te mano;
- 3 Ae ra, haere ana te rongō a awatea noa mo Ihu; a tono atu ana ratou ki te iwi, no ka tokomaha ratou, ae ra, he tino tokomaha rawa e mahi uaua ana a awatea noa, kia tae ai ratou i te aonga ake ki te wahi e whakakite ai a Ihu i a ia ano ki te mano.
- 4 Nawai a, ao ake i te mea kua nuihui te mano, nana, ko Niwhai tenei, raua ko tona teina i whakaarahia ake nei e ia i te mate, ko tona ingoa, ko Timoti, me tana tama hoki, ko tona ingoa ko Honahi, ratou ko Mationi, ko Mationiha, tona teina, ko Kumene, ko Kumenohi, ko Heremaia, ko Hemono, ko Honahi, ko Terekia, ko Ihaia; ko nga ingoa enei o nga akonga i whiriwhiria e Ihu. A, haere ana ratou, tu ana ki waenganui i te mano.
- 5 Na, i te nui o te mano, ka meinga e ratou kia kotahi tekau ma rua nga wawahanga o te iwi.
- 6 A ka whakaako te tekau ma rua i te mano; nana, ka meinga e ratou te mano kia tuturi ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, kia inoi hoki ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu.
- 7 A ka inoi ano hoki nga akonga ki te Matua, i runga i te ingoa o Ihu. Nawai a, ka whakatika ratou ka minita ki te iwi.
- 8 A, ano ka minita ratou i aua kupu ra ano i korero ai a Ihu—hore he rereke i nga kupu i korero ai a Ihu, na, ka tuturi ano ratou, ka inoi ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu;
- 9 A ka inoia e ratou te mea i hiahiaitia nuitia e ratou, a ko ta ratou i hiahia ai ko te Wairua Tapu kia homai ki a ratou.

### 3 Nephi 19

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse, and every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

And it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

Yea, and even all the night it was noised abroad concerning Jesus; and insomuch did they send forth unto the people that there were many, yea, an exceedingly great number, did labor exceedingly all that night, that they might be on the morrow in the place where Jesus should show himself unto the multitude.

And it came to pass that on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, behold, Nephi and his brother whom he had raised from the dead, whose name was Timothy, and also his son, whose name was Jonas, and also Mathoni, and Mathonihah, his brother, and Kumen, and Kumenonhi, and Jeremiah, and Shemnon, and Jonas, and Zedekiah, and Isaiah—now these were the names of the disciples whom Jesus had chosen—and it came to pass that they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

And behold, the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should be separated into twelve bodies.

And the twelve did teach the multitude; and behold, they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

And the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus. And it came to pass that they arose and ministered unto the people.

And when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken—nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken—behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

And they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

10 Ano ka mutu ta ratou inoi mo taua mea, ka haere iho ratou ki te taha o te wai, me te whai ano te mano i muri i a ratou.

11 Na, ka haere iho a Niwhai ki roto ki te wai, a ka rumakina.

12 A ka puta ake ia i roto i te wai, ka anga hoki ka rumaki. A ka rumaki ia i te hunga katoa i whiriwhiria e Ihu.

13 Nawai a, ka poto katoa ratou te rumaki, me te haere ake ano i roto i te wai, na, ka tau te Wairua Tapu ki runga ki a ratou, a ki tonu ratou i te Wairua Tapu, i te ahi.

14 Na, e karapotitia ana ratou me te mea he ahi tera; i heke iho ano hoki i te rangi, a i kite te mano me te whakaatu ano hoki; a haere iho ana ano hoki nga anahera i te rangi, minita atu ana ki a ratou.

15 A i nga anahera e minita ana ki nga akonga, nana, ka puta mai a Ihu, ka tu ki waenganui, ka minita ano ki a ratou.

16 Na, ka korero atu ia ki te mano, ka whakahau iho kia tuturi ano ratou ki runga ki te whenua, me ana akonga ano hoki kia tuturi ratou ki runga ki te whenua.

17 Ano ka tuturi iho ratou katoa ki runga i te whenua, ka whakahau iho ia ki ana akonga kia inoi ratou.

18 Nana, ka anga ratou ka inoi; a ka inoi ratou ki a Ihu, ka karangatia atu ia ko to ratou Ariki, ko to ratou Atua.

19 Nawai a, ka mawehe atu a Ihu i roto i a ratou, ka haere ki pahaki tata atu, ka tuohu ki te whenua, a ka mea ia,

20 E te Matua, ka whakawhetai ake ahau ki a koe mou i homai i te Wairua Tapu ki enei i whiriwhiria nei e ahau; a naku ano ratou i whiriwhiri i roto i te ao, he mea hoki na to ratou whakapono ki a au.

21 E te Matua, e inoi atu ana ahau ki a koe kia hoatu e koe te Wairua Tapu ki nga tangata katoa e whakapono ai ki a ratou kupu.

22 E te Matua, kua homai nei e koe te Wairua Tapu ki a ratou, no te mea i whakapono ratou ki a au, a kei te kite koe i to ratou whakapono ki a au, no te mea e rongono ana koe i a ratou, a e inoi ana ratou ki a au; a e inoi mai ana ratou ki a au no te mea kei a ratou ahau.

And when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water's edge, and the multitude followed them.

And it came to pass that Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

And he came up out of the water and began to baptize. And he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

And it came to pass when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

And behold, they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record; and angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

And it came to pass that while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold, Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

And it came to pass that he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

And it came to pass that when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

And behold, they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

And it came to pass that Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth, and he said:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen; and it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me; and they pray unto me because I am with them.

23 Tena ra, e te Matua, e inoi ake ana ahau ki a koe mo ratou, mo te hunga katoa ano hoki e whakapono ai ki a ratou kupu, kia whakapono ai ratou ki a au, kei roto ahau kei a ratou, me koe, e te Matua, kei roto i a au, kia kotahi ai tatou.

24 A ano ka inoi penei a Ihu ki te Matua, ka haere mai ia ki ana akonga, nana, e inoi tonu ana ratou, te mutu hoki ta ratou inoi ki a ia; na, kahore i whakatokomahatia e ratou a ratou kupu, no te mea i whakamohoitia ratou, kia inoi mo nga mea e tika ana, a ki tonu ratou i te hiahia.

25 Na, ka manaaki a Ihu i a ratou, i a ratou e inoi ana ki a ia, a ka ahua-reka atu tona mata ki a ratou, me te maramatanga hoki o tona mata e whiti ana ki runga ki a ratou, nana, rite tonu to ratou ma ki to te kanohi me nga kahu o Ihu; a nui atu ano hoki tona ma i nga ma katoa, ae ra, kore rawa tetahi mea i runga i te whenua hei rite mo tona ma.

26 Na, ka mea atu a Ihu ki a ratou, inoi tonu, ahakoa ra kihai i mutu ta ratou inoi.

27 Na, ka tahuri atu ano ia i a ratou, ka haere ki pahaki tata atu, a ka tuohu ki te whenua; ka inoi ake ano ia ki te Matua, ka mea,

28 E te Matua, ka whakawhetai ake ahau ki a koe, no te mea kua ma i a koe enei i whiriwhiri ai ahau i runga i to ratou whakapono, a e inoi ake ana ahau mo ratou, mo te hunga ano hoki e whakapono ai ki a ratou kupu, kia ma ai ratou i a au, i runga i te whakapono ki a ratou kupu, kia pera ano me ratou e ma nei i a au.

29 E te Matua, kahore ahau e inoi mo te ao, engari mo te hunga kua homai nei e koe ki a au i roto i te ao, he mea hoki na to ratou whakapono, kia ma ai ratou i a au, kia noho ai ahau i roto i a ratou, me koe, e te Matua, i roto nei i a au, kia kotahi ai tatou, kia whakakororiatia ai hoki ahau i roto i a ratou.

30 Ano ka whakapuaki a Ihu i enei kupu, ka haere mai ano ia ki ana akonga, nana, e mau ana te inoi ki a ia, kahore hoki i mutu; a ka ahua-reka ano ia ki a ratou; na, he ma hoki ratou, he rite tonu ki a Ihu.

31 A ka haere ano ia ki pahaki tata atu, ka inoi ki te Matua:

And now Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples, and behold, they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him; and they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray, and they were filled with desire.

And it came to pass that Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him; and his countenance did smile upon them, and the light of his countenance did shine upon them, and behold they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus; and behold the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

And Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

And he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth; and he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith, and I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words, that they may be purified in me, through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast given me out of the world, because of their faith, that they may be purified in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

And when Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his disciples; and behold they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him; and he did smile upon them again; and behold they were white, even as Jesus.

And it came to pass that he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;



- 32 Na, e kore e taea e te arero nga kupu i inoi ai ia te whakapuaki, e kore ano hoki e taea e te tangata te tuhituhi nga kupu i inoi ai ia.
- 33 A ka rongu te mano, ka whakaatu atu hoki, ka whakatuwheratia o ratou ngakau, a ka mohio rawa o ratou ngakau ki nga kupu i inoi ai ia.
- 34 Otira, i te nui whakamiharo o nga kupu i inoi ai ia, e kore e taea te tuhituhi, e kore ano hoki e taea e te tangata te whakapuaki.
- 35 Nawai a, ka mutu a Ihu te inoi, ka haere mai ano ia ki nga akonga, a ka mea ki a ratou, kahore ano ahau kia kite noa i te whakapono e pena ana te rahi i roto i nga Hurai katoa; na konei hoki kihai i ahei i a au te whakakite atu ki a ratou i nga merekara e penei ana te nui, i to ratou whakapono-kore hoki.
- 36 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, hore rawa tetahi o ratou i kite i nga mea nunui kua kite na koutou; hore rawa ano hoki ratou i rongu i nga mea nunui kua rongu na koutou.

And tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed, neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

And the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts were open and they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

Nevertheless, so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the disciples, and said unto them: So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews; wherefore I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their unbelief.

Verily I say unto you, there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen; neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

### III. Niwhai. 20

- 1 Nawai a, ka whakahau atu ia ki te mano kia kati ta ratou inoi, me ana akonga ano hoki. Ka whakahau ano ia i a ratou kia kaua e mutu te inoi i roto i o ratou ngakau.
- 2 Ka whakahau ano ia i a ratou kia whakatika, kia tu o ratou waewae ki runga, a ka whakatika ka tu o ratou waewae ki runga.
- 3 Na, ka whatiwhati taro ano ia, a ka whakapaingia, ka hoatu hoki ki ana akonga kia kainga.
- 4 Ano ka kai ratou, ka whakahau ia ki a ratou kia whatiwhati taro, kia hoatu hoki ki te mano.
- 5 A ka oti te hoatu ki te mano, na, ka hoatu e ia he waina kia inumia e ratou, me te whakahau ano ma ratou e hoatu ki te mano.
- 6 Na, kahore he taro, kahore hoki he waina, i kawea mai e nga akonga e te mano ranei;
- 7 Otira he pono i hoatu e ia he taro ki a ratou kia kainga, he waina ano hoki kia inumia;
- 8 A ka mea atu ia ki a ratou, ko ia e kai ana i tenei taro, e kai ana ano i toku tinana mo tona wairua, a ko ia e inu ana i tenei waina, e inu ana ano i oku toto mo tona wairua, a e kore rawa tona wairua e mate i te kai, i te wai, engari ka makona.
- 9 Ano ka kai te mano katoa me te inu, nana, ki tonu ratou i te Wairua, a kotahi ano to ratou reo ki te karanga, ki te hoatu kororia ki a Ihu, ki te mea i kite ai ratou i rongo ai.
- 10 Ano ka hoatu e ratou katoa he kororia ki a Ihu, ka mea ia ki a ratou, Nana, ka whakaoti ahau inaianei i te whakahau i whakahau iho ai te Matua ki a au mo tenei iwi, ko ratou nei he toenga no te whare o Iharaira.
- 11 E mahara ana koutou ki taku i korero ai ki a koutou, i mea ai, mo te wa ina tutuki nga kupu a Ihaia, nana, ka oti nei enei te tuhituhi, kei o koutou aroaro ano, rapua ra.
- 12 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko te wa ina tutuki enei ko reira ano hoki tutuki ai te kawenata i kawenata ai te Matua ki tona iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.

### 3 Nephi 20

And it came to pass that he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples. And he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

And he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet. And they arose up and stood upon their feet.

And it came to pass that he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

And when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

And when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink, and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

Now, there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

But he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

And he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul; and he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

Now, when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit; and they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom they both saw and heard.

And it came to pass that when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them: Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled—behold they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them—

And verily, verily, I say unto you, that when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people, O house of Israel.

13 Ko reira ano nga toenga e noho marara nei i runga i te mata o te whenua kohikohia ai, i te rawhiti, i te hauauru, i te tonga, i te nota; a ka whakamohiotia ano ratou ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua, nana nei ratou i hoko.

14 A, na te Matua ahau i whakahau kia hoatu e ahau tenei whenua ki a koutou, hei whenua tupu mo koutou.

15 Na, ko taku kupu atu tenei ki a koutou, Ki te kore nga Tauwi e ripeneta, i muri i nga manaakitanga e manaakitia ai ratou, i muri hoki i ta ratou whakamararatanga i toku iwi,

16 Katahi koutou te morehu o te whare o Hakopa ka haere ki waenganui i a ratou; a hei waenganui koutou i a ratou, he tokomaha nei; a hei waenganui tonu koutou i a ratou, ka rite ki te raiona, i roto i nga kuri o te ngahere, ki te kua raiona i roto i nga kahui hipi, ki te tika atu ia i waenga, ka takatakahi, ka haehae, kahore hoki he kai whakaora.

17 Ka ara tou ringa ki ou hoa riri, a ka hatepea atu ou hoa riri katoa.

18 A ka kohikohi ahau i toku iwi, ka rite ki ie tangata e kohikohi ana i ana paihere ki te patunga witi,

19 Ka meinga hoki e ahau toku iwi i kawenata ai te Matua ki a ratou, ae ra, ka meinga e ahau tou haona hei rino, ou matikuku ano ka meinga e ahau hei parahi. A he maha nga iwi e patua e koe a mongamonga noa; ka whakatapua ano hoki e ahau ma te Ariki nga mea i apohia mai e ratou, o ratou rawa ano hoki ma te Ariki o te whenua katoa. Nana, ko ahau ano ia mana enei mea e mahi.

20 A tenei ake, e ai ta te Matua, e iri ai te hoari o taku tika ki runga ake i a ratou i taua ra, a ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, ka makere ki runga ki a ratou, e ai ta te Matua, ae ra, ki runga ki nga iwi katoa o nga Tauwi.

21 A ka whakapumau ahau i toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.

22 Nana, ka whakapumau ahau i tenei iwi i runga i tenei whenua, hei whakaritenga i te kawenata i kawenata ai ahau ki to koutou tupuna ki a Hakopa; a ka riro tenei hei Hiruharama hou. A ka tau iho nga kaha o te rangi ki waenganui i tenei iwi; ae ra, ka noho ahau i waenganui i a koutou.

And then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north; and they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

And the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

And I say unto you, that if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people—

Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them; and ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many; and ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all thine enemies shall be cut off.

And I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his sheaves into the floor.

For I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted, yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass. And thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate their gain unto the Lord, and their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth. And behold, I am he who doeth it.

And it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my justice shall hang over them at that day; and except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father, yea, even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

And it shall come to pass that I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

And behold, this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the covenant which I made with your father Jacob; and it shall be a New Jerusalem. And the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people; yea, even I will be in the midst of you.

- 23 Nana, ko ahau tera i korerotia ai e Mohi, i mea ai, Ma te Ariki ma to koutou Atua e whakaara ake he poropiti mo koutou, i roto i o koutou teina, rite tahi ki a au, ko ia ta koutou e whakarongo ai i nga mea katoa e whakapuaki ai ia ki a koutou. A tera nga wairua katoa e kore e whakarongo ki taua poropiti, ka hatepea atu i roto i te iwi.
- 24 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ae; ko nga poropiti katoa no Hamuera mai, me te hunga i whai i muri i a ai, ara, te hunga katoa i korero, i whakaatu moku.
- 25 Nana, ko koutou nga tamariki a nga poropiti; no te whare hoki koutou o Iharaira: no te kawenata ano hoki i kawenata ai te Matua ki o koutou tupuna, i mea ai ki a Aperahama, a ma tou uri ka manaakitia ai nga iwi katoa o te whenua;
- 26 Kua whakaarahia ake ahau e te Matua ki a koutou i te tuatahi, i tonoa mai ano hoki ahau ki te manaaki i a koutou, hei whakatahuritanga mai i tena, i tena o koutou i ana he; a i meatia tenei no te mea he tamariki koutou na te kawenata.
- 27 A i muri i a koutou ka oti te manaaki, ko reira te Matua whakarite ai i te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki a Aperahama, i mea ai, ma tou uri ka manaakitia ai nga iwi katoa o te whenua, a te ringihanga ra ano o te Wairua Tapu ra roto i a au ki runga ki nga Tauwiwi, a ma tenei manaakitanga ki runga ki nga Tauwiwi e marohirohi ake ai ratou i nga tangata katoa, hei whakamarara i toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.
- 28 A ka meinga ratou hei whiu mo te iwi o tenei whenua. Otiia kia riro ra ano i a ratou te raneatanga o toku rongo pai, ko reira ki te whakapakeke ratou i o ratou ngakau ki a au, maku e whakahoki o ratou kino ki runga ki o ratou ake mahunga, e ai ta te Matua.
- 29 A ka maharatia e ahau te kawenata i kawenata ai ahau ki toku iwi, a naku ano i kawenata ki a ratou kia kohikohi ahau i a ratou i taku wa e rite ai; maku e hoatu ano ki a ratou te whenua o o ratou tupuna, hei kainga tupu mo ratou, koia te whenua o Hiruharama, koia nei hoki te whenua i whakaaria mai mo ratou mo ake tonu atu, e ai ta te Matua.
- 30 A tenei ake ka puta mai te wa, ina kauwhautia te raneatanga o toku rongo pai ki a ratou,

Behold, I am he of whom Moses spake, saying: A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you. And it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

Verily I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

And behold, ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel; and ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

The Father having raised me up unto you first, and sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities; and this because ye are the children of the covenant—

And after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant which he made with Abraham, saying: In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed—unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

And they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land. Nevertheless, when they shall have received the fulness of my gospel, then if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

And I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people; and I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time, that I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem, which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

And it shall come to pass that the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

31 A ka whakapono ratou ki a au, ko ahau a Ihu Karaiti, te Tama a te Atua, a ka inoi ratou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa.

32 Ko reira ka whakanuia te reo o o ratou kai tiaki, ka waiata ngatahi ano ratou; e kite hoki ratou he kanohi, he kanohi.

33 Ko reira hoki te Matua whakamine mai ai i a ratou, a ka hoatu a Hiruharama hei whenua tuturu mo ratou.

34 Katahi ka hamama ratou, i runga i te koa—waiata ngatahi koutou, e nga wahi o Hiruharama kua ururuatia; kua whakamarie hoki te Matua i tona iwi, kua hoko ia i Hiruharama.

35 Kua meinga e te Matua kia hipoki kore tona ringa tapu i nga kanohi o nga iwi katoa; a ka kite nga pito o te whenua i te whakaoranga a te Matua, a ko te Matua me ahau he kotahi maua.

36 Ko reira hoki rite ai te mea kua oti te tuhituhi, Maranga, maranga ano, kakahuria to kaha, E Hiona; kakahuria o kahu whakapaipai, E Hiruharama, e te pa tapu, no te mea, heoi ano haerenga mai ki a koe o te mea kokotikore, o te mea poke.

37 Ruia atu te puehu i a koe, whakatika ake, noho iho, E Hiruharama: wetekina atu nga here o tou kaki. E te tamahine herehere o Hiona.

38 Ko te kupu hoki tenei a te Ariki, Kua hokona kautia atu koutou e koutou ano: na, ehara i te moni mana koutou e whakahoki mai.

39 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka mohio toku iwi ki toku ingoa; ae ra, ka mohio ratou i taua ra ko ahau e korero nei.

40 Katahi ratou ka mea, ano te ataahua o nga waewae ona i runga i nga maunga e kawe mai ana i nga rongo whakahari ki te hunga e whakapuaki ana i te maunga rongo, me te kawe mai ano i nga rongo whakahari ki te hunga e mahi ana i te pai me te whakapuaki i te whakaoranga: me te mea atu ki Hiona, kua kingi tou Atua.

41 Katahi ka puta te karanga, Maunu, maunu, haere atu koutou i reira, kua e pa atu ki te mea poke; haere atu koutou i roto i a ia; kia ma koutou, e nga kai mau o nga oko a te Ariki.

And they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye.

Then will the Father gather them together again, and give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

Then shall they break forth into joy—Sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father; and the Father and I are one.

And then shall be brought to pass that which is written: Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city, for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem; loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of Zion.

For thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught, and ye shall be redeemed without money.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, that my people shall know my name; yea, in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

And then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them, that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings unto them of good, that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

And then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye, go ye out from thence, touch not that which is unclean; go ye out of the midst of her; be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

- 42 Ta te mea hoki, e kore koutou e haere kaika, e kore ano hoki e tuaoma ta koutou haere atu; no te mea ka haere te Ariki i o koutou aroaro, ko te Atua hoki o Iharaira hei hiku mo koutou.
- 43 Nana, ka mahi tupato taku pononga, ka whakanuia, ka whakarewaia, a ka tiketike noa atu.
- 44 I miharo te tini ki a koe; (i kino iho hoki tona kanohi i to te tangata, tona ahua i to nga tamariki a te tangata,)
- 45 Waihoki ka tauhiuhia e ia nga iwi maha: kopi tonu nga mangai o nga kingi ki a ia, no te mea ko nga mea kihai i korerotia ki a ratou ka kitea; ko nga mea hoki kihai i rangona ka whakaaroaroa.
- 46 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, he pono ka puta mai enei mea katoa, ka rite hoki ki ta te Matua i whakahau iho ai ki a au. Ko reira ano ka tutuki tenei kawenata i kawenata ai te Matua ki tona iwi, ka nohoia ano a Hiruharama e toku iwi i taua wa, a hei whenua tupu tera mo ratou.

For ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight; for the Lord will go before you, and the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

Behold, my servant shall deal prudently; he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

As many were astonished at thee—his visage was so marred, more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men—

So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their mouths at him, for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come, even as the Father hath commanded me. Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted with his people be fulfilled; and then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people, and it shall be the land of their inheritance.

### III. Niwhai. 21

- 1 Na, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka hoatu e ahau he tohu ki a koutou, kia mohio ai koutou ki te wa e rite ai kia puta mai enei mea, e whakahoki mai ai ahau i toku iwi i to ratou whakamararatanga roa, E te whare o Iharaira, me te whakapumau ano i toku Hiona ki waenganui i a ratou.
- 2 Nana, ko te mea tenei e hoatu ai e ahau ki a koutou he tohu, no te mea, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, a ko enei mea e whakapuakina atu nei ki a koutou, me nga mea ano hoki e whakapuakina atu ki a koutou a muri ake nei moku ake, he mea na te Wairua Tapu, e hoatu ai e te Matua ki a koutou, ka whakamohiotia ki nga Tauwiwi kia mohio ai ratou ki tenei iwi he morehu ratou no te whare o Hakopa, ki tenei iwi ano hoki oku e whakamararatia atu e ratou.
- 3 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, a te wa e whakaaturia atu ai enei mea e te Matua ki a ratou, a na te Matua ki a ratou a na ratou ki a koutou;
- 4 No te mea he whakaaro mohio tenei i roto i te Matua kia whakapumautia ratou i runga i tenei whenua, kia whakaarahia ake hoki hei iwi here-kore e te kaha o te Matua, kia puta ai enei mea i a ratou ki tetahi morehu o o koutou uri, kia tutuki ai te kawenata a te Matua i kawenata ai ia ki tona iwi E te whare o Iharaira;
- 5 Na, a te wa e puta ai enei mahi, me nga mahi e mahia i muri iho i roto i a koutou, i nga Tauwiwi mai ki o koutou uri, e iti haere nei to ratou whakapono i te kino hoki;
- 6 He tikanga ano hoki tenei ki ta te Matua, kia puta mai enei mea i nga Tauwiwi, hei whakakitenga atu mana i tona kaha ki nga Tauwiwi mo tenei take, ara, ki te kore nga Tauwiwi e whakapakeke i o ratou ngakau, kia ripeneta ratou a haere mai ana ki a au, rumakina ana i runga i toku ingoa, me te mohio mai ano ki nga tikanga pono o taku whakaakoranga, kia taua ai ratou ki roto ki toku iwi, E te whare o Iharaira.
- 7 A ano ka puta enei mea, ara, ka timata ou uri te mohio ki enei mea, ka waiho hei tohu ki a ratou, kia mohio ai ratou kua timata noa atu te mahi a te Matua hei whakatutuki i te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki te hunga o te whare o Iharaira.

### 3 Nephi 21

And verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign, that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to take place—that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O house of Israel, and shall establish again among them my Zion;

And behold, this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign—for verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare unto you, and which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the power of the Holy Ghost which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made known unto the Gentiles that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, and concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made known unto them of the Father, and shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

For it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this land, and be set up as a free people by the power of the Father, that these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your seed, that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

Therefore, when these works and the works which shall be wrought among you hereafter shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

For thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the Gentiles, that he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts, that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my name and know of the true points of my doctrine, that they may be numbered among my people, O house of Israel;

And when these things come to pass that thy seed shall begin to know these things—it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the house of Israel.

- 8 A ka puta mai taua ra, kopi tonu nga mangai o nga kingi; no te mea ko nga mea kihai i korerotia ki a ratou ka kitea; ko nga mea hoki kihai i rangona ka whakaaroaroa.
- 9 Ta te mea, i taua ra ka mahi te Matua, he whakaaro hoki ki a au, i tetahi mahi, i tetahi mahi nui whakamiharo i roto i a ratou; a tera etahi i roto i a ratou e kore e whakapono ki tenei, ahakoa whakapuakina atu e tetahi tangata ki a ratou.
- 10 Nana, hei toku ringa te ora o taku pononga; no reira e kore tona ahua e mate i a ratou, ahakoa e kino iho ia mo te whakaaro ki a ratou. Otiia, maku ia e whakaora, maku ano hoki e whakaatu atu ki a ratou, he nui ake toku whai whakaaro i to te rewera tinihanga.
- 11 No reira tenei ake, ki te kore tetahi e whakapono ki aku kupu, ko ahau nei a Ihu Karaiti, ko tera e meinga e te Matua kia whakaputaina atu e ia ki nga Tauwiwi, me te homai ano ki a ia te kaha e whakaputaina atu ai e ia enei mea ki nga Tauwiwi. (na, ka peratia me ta Mohi i ki ai,) ka hatepea atu ratou i roto i toku iwi, no te kawenata nei ratou.
- 12 Na, ko taku iwi koia nei he toenga no Hakopa, i roto i nga Tauwiwi, ae ra, i roto tonu i a ratou, ka rite ki te raiona i roto i nga kararehe o te ngahere, ki te kua o raiona i roto i nga kahui hipi, ki te tika atu hoki ia ra roto, ka takatakahi, ka haehae, kahore hoki he kai whakaora.
- 13 Ka ara to ratou ringa ki runga ki o ratou hoa riri, a ka hatepea atu o ratou hoa riri katoa.
- 14 Ae ra, aue te mate mo nga Tauwiwi, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, ta te mea i taua rangi ano, e ai ta te Matua, ka hatepea atu e ahau o hoiho i roto i a koe, ka kore ano hoki i a au o hariata,
- 15 Ka kore ano hoki i a au nga pa o te whenua, ka wawahia ano e au o pa kaha katoa;
- 16 Ka hatepea atu ano e ahau nga makutu i roto i tou ringa, kahore atu ano hoki he tohunga tuahu i roto i a koe.
- 17 Ka hatepea atu ano e ahau o whakapakoko, me o pou whakaahua i roto i a koe, e kore koe e koropiko a muri ake nei ki te mahi a o ringaringa;
- 18 Ka hutia atu ano e ahau o ngahere i roto i a koe: ka whakangaromia ano hoki o pa.

And when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall shut their mouths; for that which had not been told them shall they see; and that which they had not heard shall they consider.

For in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which shall be a great and a marvelous work among them; and there shall be among them those who will not believe it, although a man shall declare it unto them.

But behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand; therefore they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of them. Yet I will heal him, for I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the cunning of the devil.

Therefore it shall come to pass that whosoever will not believe in my words, who am Jesus Christ, which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the Gentiles, and shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto the Gentiles, (it shall be done even as Moses said) they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the covenant.

And my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the Gentiles, yea, in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest, as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and none can deliver.

Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all their enemies shall be cut off.

Yea, wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent; for it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut off thy horses out of the midst of thee, and I will destroy thy chariots;

And I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy strongholds;

And I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land, and thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

Thy graven images I will also cut off, and thy standing images out of the midst of thee, and thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;

And I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee; so will I destroy thy cities.



- 19 A tenei ake ka mutu tonu atu nga korero teka katoa, nga tinihanga, nga hae, nga tautohetohenga, nga mahi tinihanga a nga tohunga, nga puremutanga.
- 20 Ta te mea, i taua rangi ano, e ai ta te Matua, ko nga tangata katoa e kore e ripeneta, e tahuri mai ano hoki ki taku Tama aroha, ka hatepea atu ratou i roto i toku iwi, E te w hae o Iharaira;
- 21 Ka rapua ano e ahau he utu i a ratou, ka rite ki te mea i nga tangata ke, i runga i te riri, i te weriweri, he mea kihai i rangona noatia e ratou i mua.
- 22 Otira, ki te ripeneta ratou, me te whakarongo mai ano ki aku kupu, ka kore ano hoki e whakapakeke i o ratou ngakau, ka whakapumau ahau i taku hahi ki roto ki a ratou, a ka uru ratou ki te kawenata, ka taua ngatahitia me tenei toenga o Hakopa, kua hoatu nei e ahau ki a ratou tenei whenua hei kainga tupu,
- 23 Na, hei hoa awhina ratou mo toku iwi, mo te toenga o Hakopa, me nga tangata katoa o te whare o Iharaira e haere mai ana, kia hanga ai ratou he pa, e karangatia ai ko te Hiruharama Hou;
- 24 Ko reira ano ratou awhina ai i toku iwi e noho marara atu nei i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, kia kohikohia mai ratou ki roto ki te Hiruharama Hou;
- 25 I taua ra ano kei roto i a ratou te kaha o te rangi; ko ahau ano hoki kei waenganui;
- 26 Katahi ka timata te mahi a te Matua i taua ra, ina kauwhautia tenei rongopai i roto i te morehu o tenei iwi. He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, i taua ra ka timata te mahi a te Matua i roto i toku iwi katoa kua oti nei te whakamarara; ae ra, i roto ano i nga hapu kua ngaro noa atu, he mea arahi atu e te Matua i roto i Hiruharama.
- 27 Ae ra, ka timata te Matua te mahi i roto i toku iwi katoa ka oti nei te whakamarara, hei whakarite i te huarahi e haere mai ai ratou ki a au, kia inoi ratou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa:
- 28 Katahi hoki ka timata te mahi a te Matua i roto i nga iwi katoa, hei whakarite i te huarahi e kohikohia mai ai tona iwi ki to ratou kainga ki to ratou whenua tupu.

And it shall come to pass that all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

For it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son, them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;

And I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the heathen, such as they have not heard.

But if they will repent and hearken unto my words, and harden not their hearts, I will establish my church among them, and they shall come in unto the covenant and be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I have given this land for their inheritance;

And they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob, and also as many of the house of Israel as shall come, that they may build a city, which shall be called the New Jerusalem.

And then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in, who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New Jerusalem.

And then shall the power of heaven come down among them; and I also will be in the midst.

And then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people. Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people, yea, even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

Yea, the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, that they may call on the Father in my name.

Yea, and then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations in preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

29 A ka puta atu ratou i nga iwi katoa; e kore ratou e haere kaika atu, e kore ano hoki e tuaoma ta ratou haere, no te mea ka haere atu ahau i o ratou aroaro, e ai ta te Matua, ko ahau ano hoki hei hiku mo ratou.

And they shall go out from all nations; and they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight, for I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

### III. Niwhai. 22

- 1 Katahi ka rite te mea ka oti nei te tuhituhi, Waiata, E te pakoko, kahore ano i whanau: kia pakaru mai te waiata ki waho, hamama, e koe, kahore ano kia mamae i te whanautanga; he tini hoki nga tamariki a te mea whakarere i nga tamariki a te mea whai hoa, e ai ta te Ariki.
- 2 Kia rahi ake te turanga mo tou teneti, kia maro hoki nga uhi o ou nohoanga; aua e kaiponuhia, kia roa ou taura kia u hoki ou poupou;
- 3 Ta te mea hoki ka tohatoha noa atu koe ki matau, ki mau, a ka riro mai nga Tauwiwi i ou uri, ma ratou ano ka nohoia ai nga pa kua ururuatia.
- 4 Kaua e wehi, ta te mea e kore koe e whakama; kaua ano hoki e numinumi, ta te mea e kore koe e whakama; no te mea ka wareware i a koe te whakama o tou tamahinetanga, a heoi ano maharatanga ki te ingoa kino o tou tamahinetanga, heoi ano hoki maharatanga ki te ingoa kino o tou pouarutanga.
- 5 Ta te mea ko tou kai hanga tou tahu, ko te Ariki o nga mano tona ingoa; ko te Mea Tapu ano hoki o Iharaira tou Kai-whakaora; ko te Atua o te whenua katoa ka huaina ki a ia.
- 6 No te mea kua karanga te Ariki ki a koe, ano he wahine kua oti te whakarere, kua pouri hoki tona wairua, me te hoa wahine taitamariki hoki, i a koe i whakarere ra, e ai ta tou Atua.
- 7 He nohinohi te wa i mahue ai koe i a au, he nui ia nga atawhainga e kohikohi ai ahau i a koe.
- 8 He iti te riri, wa iti nei hoki i ngaro atu ai toku kanoahi i a koe, e mau tonu ana ia te aroha e aroha ai ahau ki a koe, e ai ta te Ariki, ta tou Kai-whakaora.
- 9 He penei hoki tenei ki a au me nga wai i a Noa, i a au ra i oati atu, e kore e hurihia ano te whenua e nga wai i a Noa, waihoki ka oati nei ahau, e kore ahau e riri ki a koe.
- 10 Ta te mea hoki ko nga maunga ka riro ke, ko nga pukepuke hoki ka nekehia atu, tena ko toku aroha e kore e rereke i a koe, e kore ano e nekehia ketia te kawenata ki toku iwi, e ai ta te Ariki e atawhai nei i a koe.

### 3 Nephi 22

And then shall that which is written come to pass: Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear; break forth into singing, and cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child; for more are the children of the desolate than the children of the married wife, saith the Lord.

Enlarge the place of thy tent, and let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations; spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;

For thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left, and thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities to be inhabited.

Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed; neither be thou confounded, for thou shalt not be put to shame; for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name; and thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel—the God of the whole earth shall he be called.

For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great mercies will I gather thee.

In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment, but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer.

For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

- 11 E koe, kua whakawhiua nei, kua puhia nei e te hau kaha, kahore ano i whakamarietia! nana, maku ou kohatu e whakatakoto, he pai hoki te kakano, ka hanga ano e ahau ou turanga ki te hapira.
- 12 Ka hanga ano e ahau ou matapihi ki te akahati, ou tatau hoki ki te karapanaka, ou rohe katoa ano ki nga kohatu whakapaipai.
- 13 A ka whakaakona katoatia ou tamariki e te Ariki; ka nui hoki te rangimarie ki ou tamariki.
- 14 Ka whakaturia koe ki runga ki te tika, ka whakamataratia atu i a koe te tukino, e kore hoki koe e wehi. e kore ano hoki te pawera e tata mai ki a koe.
- 15 Nana, huihui noa ratou ki te whawhai ki a koe, ehara ia i te mea naku; te tangata e huihui mai ana ki te whawhai ki a koe ka hinga ratou he whakaaro ki a koe.
- 16 Nana, naku i hanga te parakemete e pupuhi ana i nga waro i roto i te ahi, e mau mai ana hoki i te mea hei mahi mana; naku hoki te kai huna i hanga hei whakamoti.
- 17 E kore tetahi patu e hanga ana mou e kaha; nga arero katoa e whakatika mai ana ki a koe ki te whakawa, mau ano e whakahe. Ko ta nga pononga a te Ariki tenei, tuku iho, tuku iho, naku hoki ratou i tika ai, e ai ta te Anki.

O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children.

In righteousness shalt thou be established; thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

Behold, they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me; whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

Behold, I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper; and every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn. This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

### III. Niwhai. 23

- 1 Nana, ka mea atu tenei ahau ki a koutou, e tika ana kia rapua enei mea e koutou. Ae ra, he whakahaunga tenei e hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou, kia ata rapua maretia e koutou enei mea; ta te mea he whai tikanga nui nga kupu a Ihaia.
- 2 He pono hoki, i korero ia mo nga mea katoa o toku iwi o te whare o Iharaira; koia he tika me korero ano hoki ki nga Tauwi.
- 3 Na, kua mana nga mea katoa i korero ai ia, a tera ano e mana, e rite tonu ki nga kupu i korerotia e ia.
- 4 No reira kia mahara mai ki aku kupu, tuhituhia nga mea kua korero atu nei ahau ki a koutou; na, a te wa e pai ai te Matua ka puta atu enei mea ki nga Tauwi.
- 5 A ko ia e rongoa ana ki aku kupu, e ripeneta ana, a ka oti te rumaki, ka whakaorangia. Whakatakina nga poropiti; he tokomaha hoki ratou e whakaatu ana mo enei mea.
- 6 Ano ka korero atu a Ihu i enei kupu, ka mea atu ano ia ki a ratou, i muri hoki i tana whakaaturanga ki a ratou i nga karaipiture katoa kua whiwhi nei ratou, a ka mea, nana, tera atu ano tetahi karaipiture e mea nei ahau kia tuhituhia e koutou, ka kore nei i a koutou.
- 7 Na, ka mea mai ia ki a Niwhai, tikina atu te tuhituhinga kua tuhituhia nei e koutou.
- 8 Ano ka tikina atu e Niwhai nga tuhituhinga, ka whakatakotoria ki mua i tona aroaro, ka anga ona kanohi ki aua mea, a ka mea,
- 9 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, naku taku pononga, a Hamuera te Ramana, i whakahau kia whakaatu ia ki tenei iwi, i te ra i whakakororiatia ai e te Matua tona ingoa i roto i a au, tera ano tona tini o te hunga tapu e ara ake i te hunga mate, e puta mai hoki ki te tokomaha, a e minita ano hoki ki a ratou. Na, ka mea ia ki a ratou, kahore ianei i pera?
- 10 Na, ka whakahokia mai e ana akonga ki a ia, ka mea, Ae, e te Ariki, i poropiti ano a Hamuera, i rite tonu ki au kupu, a kua tutuki katoa hoki.
- 11 Na, ka mea atu a Ihu ki a ratou, mo te aha i kore ai koutou e tuhituhi i tenei mea, kua ara ake tona tini o te hunga tapu, kua puta mai ki te tokomaha, a kua minita mai hoki ki a ratou?

### 3 Nephi 23

And now, behold, I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things. Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel; therefore it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

And all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

Therefore give heed to my words; write the things which I have told you; and according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

And whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved. Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

And it came to pass that he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

And when Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people, that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. And he said unto them: Was it not so?

And his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

And Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

- 12 Na, ka mahara a Niwhai kihai tenei mea i  
tuhituhia.
- 13 Nawai a, ka whakahau atu a Ihu kia tuhituhi tera;  
koia i tuhituhia ai i peratia ai me te mea i whakahau  
ai ia.
- 14 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu te whakaatu atu i nga  
karaipiture katoa i tuhituhi ai ratou kia kotahi, ka  
whakahau ia i a ratou, kia whakaakona atu e ratou  
nga mea kua whakaaturia atu nei e ia ki a ratou.

And it came to pass that Nephi remembered that  
this thing had not been written.

And it came to pass that Jesus commanded that it  
should be written; therefore it was written according  
as he commanded.

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had ex-  
pounded all the scriptures in one, which they had  
written, he commanded them that they should teach  
the things which he had expounded unto them.

### III. Niwhai. 24

- 1 A ka whakahau ano ia ki a ratou kia tuhituhia e ratou nga kupu i homai e te Matua ki a Maraki, e korero atu nei ia ki a ratou. A ka oti te tuhituhi, ka whakaaturia aua mea e ia. Na, ko nga kupu enei i korero atu ai ia ki a ratou, i mea, Ko te kupu tenei a te Matua ki a Maraki, Nana, tenei te unga atu nei e ahau taku karere, mana e whakapai te ara i mua i a au, a kitea rawatia ake kua tae te Ariki, e rapua nei e koutou ki tona temepara, te karere o te kawenata, ta koutou e ngakau nui na; nana, tera ia ka haere mai, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano.
- 2 A ko wai e u i te ra e haere mai ai ia? Ko wai hoki e tu, ina puta mai? E rite ana hoki ia ki te ahi a te kai tahi para, ki te horoi ano hoki a te kai horoi.
- 3 Ka noho ano ia, ka rite ki te kai tahi para, ki te kai whakapai hiriwa: a ka whakapaia e ia nga tamariki a Riwai, ka whakahemokia to ratou para, ano he koura, he hiriwa, kia tapaea ai e ratou he whakahere ki te Ariki i runga i te tika.
- 4 Ko reira te whakahere a Hura raua ko Hiruharama rekaina ai e te Ariki, ka rite ki nga rangi o mua, ki nga tau onamata.
- 5 Ka whakatata atu ano ahau ki a koutou ki te whakarite whakawa; ka hohoro ano ahau hei kai whakaatu i te he o nga kai makutu, o te hunga puremu, o nga kai oati teka, o te hunga ano hoki e tahae ana i nga utu o te kai mahi, i ta te pouaru, i ta te pani, e whakapeau ke ana i te manene, a kahore e wehi i a au, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano.
- 6 Ko ahau hoki te Ariki, kahore ahau e puta ke; na reira koutou, e nga tamariki a Hakopa, i kore ai i pau.
- 7 No nga rangi ano o o koutou matua i whakarerea ai e koutou aku tikanga, kihai ano i puritia e koutou. Hoki mai ki a au, a ka hoki atu ahau ki a koutou, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano. Heoi kei te mea na koutou, kia pehea ta matou hoki atu?
- 8 E tahae ranei te tangata i ta te Atua? Heoi kua tahaetia taku e koutou. A e mea na koutou, he pehea ta matou tahae i tau? Ko nga whakatekau ra, me nga whakahere.
- 9 Kua oti hoki koutou te kanga ki tetahi kanga, na koutou hoki taku i tahae, na tenei iwi katoa.

### 3 Nephi 24

And it came to pass that he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them. And it came to pass that after they were written he expounded them. And these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi—Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me, and the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in; behold, he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

And he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

And I will come near to you to judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

For I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them. Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts. But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me. But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings.

Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

- 10 Maua a koutou whakatekau katoa ki roto ki te toa, kia whai kai ai toku whare, waiho hoki tenei hei whakamatautau moku, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano, me kahore e tuwhera i a au nga matapihi o nga rangi ki a koutou, a ka ringitia atu e ahau he manaakitanga ki a koutou, a kia kore ra ano he takotoranga.
- 11 He whakaaro ano hoki ahau ki a koutou, ka riria te kai whakangaro, kei he i a ia nga hua o o koutou oneone; e kore ano e marere noa nga hua o ta koutou waina i te mara, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano.
- 12 A ki ta nga iwi katoa, he manaakitanga koutou, no te mea he iwi ahuaureka koutou, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano.
- 13 He kaha a koutou kupu ki a au, e ai ta te Ariki. Heoi e ki na koutou, He aha ta matou korero mou?
- 14 Kua ki na koutou, kahore he hua o te mahi ki te Atua, he aha hoki te rawa o ta matou pupuri i ana mea, o ta matou haere pouri ano hoki i te aroaro o te Ariki o nga Mano?
- 15 Na, inaianei ki ta matou, ko te hunga whakakake nga mea koa; ko nga kai mahi ano hoki o te kino te hunga e whakaturia ana; a nga mea e mawhiti ana ko te hunga e whakamatautau ana i te Atua.
- 16 Na, te hunga i wehi i te Ariki, kei te kororerero ratou ki tona hoa, ki tona hoa, a ka tahuri te Ariki ka whakarongo; na, ka tuhituhia he pukapuka whakamahara ki tona aroaro, mo te hunga i wehi ki te Ariki, a i whakaaro ki tona ingoa.
- 17 Maku ano hoki ratou, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano, i te ra e mahia ai e ahau aku taonga; ka tohungia ano hoki ratou e ahau, ka peratia me ta te tangata e tohu ana i tana tamaiti e mahi ana ki a ia.
- 18 Ko reira ano hoki koutou hoki ai, i kite ai i te Terenga ketanga o ta te tangata tika, o ta te tangata kino, o ta te tangata e mahi ana ki te Atua, o ta te tangata ano e kore nei e mahi ki a ia.

Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

And all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

And now we call the proud happy; yea, they that work wickedness are set up; yea, they that tempt God are even delivered.

Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard; and a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

And they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels; and I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.



### III. Niwhai. 25

- 1 Ta te mea, na, kei te haere mai te ra ka rite nei tona ngiha ki to te oumu; a ka rite te hunga whakakake katoa, te hunga katoa e mahi kino ana, ki te kakau witi; a ka tahuna ratou e te ra meake nei puta, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano, kore noa iho he pakiaka, he manga, e mahue ki a ratou.
- 2 Ki a koutou ia e wehi na i toku ingoa, ka ara ake te Tama o te Tika, he whakaora mate ano hoki i runga i ona parirau; a ka puta mai koutou, ka tupu, ka rite ki nga kua o te turanga kau.
- 3 Ka takatakahia ano hoki e koutou te hunga kino; no te mea ka rite ratou ki nga pungarehu i raro i nga kapu o o koutou waewae i te rangi e mahi ai ahau tenei mea, e ai ta te Ariki o nga Mano.
- 4 Kia mahara koutou ki te ture a taku pononga, a Mohi, ki taku i whakahau ai ki a ia i Horepa, he mea mo Iharaira katoa, ki nga tikanga, ki nga whakariteritenga.
- 5 Nana, ka unga atu nei e ahau a Iraia poropiti ki a koutou, i mua i te taenga mai o te ra nui o te Ariki, o te ra whakamataku;
- 6 A ka whakatahuritia atu e ia nga ngakau o nga matua ki nga tamariki, nga ngakau ano hoki o nga tamariki ki o ratou matua, kei haere atu ahau, a patua iho e ahau te whenua ki te kanga.

### 3 Nephi 25

For behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven; and all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble; and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts, that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

But unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

### III. Niwhai. 26

- 1 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu enei mea te korero, ka whakaatu atu ia i aua mea ki te mano, a ka whakaaturia atu ano hoki e ia ki a ratou nga mea katoa, nga mea nunui me nga mea ririki.
- 2 A ka mea ia, ko enei karaipiture kahore nei i a koutou, na te Matua ahau i whakahau kia hoatu ki a koutou, no te mea hoki he whakaaro nui i roto i a ia kia hoatu enei mea ki nga whakatupuranga e haere ake nei.
- 3 A ka whakaaturia ano e ia nga mea katoa, no te timatanga ra ano a tae noa atu ki te wa e haere mai ai ia i runga i tona kororia; ae ra, nga mea katoa e puta mai ai ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, a taka noa te wa e rewa ai nga mea timatanga i te wera nui, ko te whenua, ka pera me te pukapuka e pokaia ana, a ko te rangi raua ko te whenua ka pahemo atu;
- 4 Tae noa atu ano ki te ra nui, ra whakamutunga, ki te wa e tu ai nga tangata katoa, nga hapu katoa, nga iwi katoa, me nga reo ano hoki i te aroaro o te Atua, kia whakawakia ki te ritenga o a ratou mahi, ahakoa pai, ahakoa kino;
- 5 Ki te pai, ki te aranga o te oranga tonutanga, ki te kino, ki te aranga o te whakawakanga, he mea e tino rite ana, tetahi mo tetahi ringa, tetahi mo tetahi ringa, e rite ana ki te mahi tohu, ki te tika, me te tapu i roto nei i a te Karaiti, no mua atu ia i te orokohanganga o te ao.
- 6 Na, e kore e ahei te tuhituhi ki roto ki tenei pukapuka ahakoa ko te wahi whakaterau noa o nga mea i whakaako ai a Ihu ki te iwi;
- 7 Tena, kei nga papa a Niwhai te wahi nui o nga mea i whakaako ai ia ki te iwi;
- 8 A ko enei mea kua tuhituhia nei e ahau, ko te wahi iti o nga mea i whakaako ai ia ki te iwi; a kua tuhituhi enei mea e ahau he whakaaro ki te putanga mai o enei mea i nga Tauivi mai ki tenei iwi, ki te ritenga o nga kupu i korero ai a Ihu.
- 9 Na, te rironga i a ratou o enei mea, he tikanga ano tenei kia matua riro i a ratou, hei whakamatautau i to ratou whakapono, a ki te whakapono ratou ki enei mea, katahi ka whakakitea atu ki a ratou nga mea nui.

### 3 Nephi 26

And now it came to pass that when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude; and he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

And he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the Father commanded that I should give unto you; for it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

And he did expound all things, even from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory—yea, even all things which should come upon the face of the earth, even until the elements should melt with fervent heat, and the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll, and the heavens and the earth should pass away;

And even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

And now there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

But behold the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

And these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

And when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith, and if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

- 10 A ki te kore ratou e whakapono ki enei mea, ka kaiponuhia nga mea nui ki a ratou, hei whakahenga mo ratou.
- 11 Nana, wahi iti kua tuhituhi ahau i aua mea katoa ka oti nei te tuhituhi ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai, heoi i riria e te Ariki, i mea, Maku e whakamatautau te whakapono o toku iwi;
- 12 Koia ahau, a Moromona, ka tuhituhi nei i nga mea i whakahaua nei e te Ariki ki a au. Na, ka whakamutua e ahau, e Moromona aku kupu, ka anga ano ka tuhituhi i nga mea i whakahaua ai ahau;
- 13 Na, e mea ana ahau kia mohio mai koutou, he pono e toru nga ra i whakaako ai te Ariki i te iwi; a i muri iho hoki he maha nga wa i whakakite ai ia i a ia ano ki a ratou, i whawhati taro ai, i whakapai taro ai, me te hoatu ano ki a ratou.
- 14 Na, ka whakaako, ka minita ia ki nga tamariki a taua mano kua korerotia nei, ka wetekina ano hoki o ratou arero e ia, a ka korero ake ratou ki o ratou matua i nga mea nui whakamiharo, rahi ake ano i nga mea kua whakaaturia e ia ki te iwi, i wetekina o ratou arero kia whakapuaki ratou.
- 15 Na, i te mea kua kake ia ki te rangi, i muri i te tuarua o ana whakakitenga i a ia ano ki a ratou, a kua riro ki te Matua, i muri hoki i tana whakaoranga i o ratou turoro, i o ratou kopa, i o ratou matapo kia kite me nga turi kia rongu, me te whakaora i nga ahua mate katoa i roto i a ratou, me te whakaara ake i tetahi tangata kua mate, me tana whakakitenga atu i tona mana ki a ratou, a kua kake tenei ki te Matua,
- 16 Na, i te aonga ake, ka huihui ano te mano, a rongu ana, kite ana ratou i enei tamariki; a ka whakapuaki nga manerai o nga kohungahunga, ka korero i nga mea whakamiharo; na, i riria kia kauaka tetahi tangata e tuhituhi i aua mea i whakapuaki ai ratou.
- 17 A no taua wa ake nga akonga i whiriwhiria ra e Ihu, ka anga ka rumaki, me te whakaako ano i nga mea katoa e haere mai ana ki a ratou; na, ki tonu i te Wairua Tapu te hunga katoa i rumakina i runga i te ingoa o Ihu.
- 18 Ka kitea ano hoki ka rangona e te tokomaha o ratou nga mea e kore e taea te whakapuaki e kore ano hoki e tika kia tuhituhia;

And if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

Behold, I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it, saying: I will try the faith of my people.

Therefore I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord. And now I, Mormon, make an end of my sayings, and proceed to write the things which have been commanded me.

Therefore, I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days; and after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

And it came to pass that he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues, and they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

And it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven—the second time that he showed himself unto them, and had gone unto the Father, after having healed all their sick, and their lame, and opened the eyes of their blind and unstopped the ears of the deaf, and even had done all manner of cures among them, and raised a man from the dead, and had shown forth his power unto them, and had ascended unto the Father—

Behold, it came to pass on the morrow that the multitude gathered themselves together, and they both saw and heard these children; yea, even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things; and the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should not any man write them.

And it came to pass that the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them; and as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with the Holy Ghost.

And many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are not lawful to be written.

19 A whakaako ana ratou, minita ana tetahi ki tetahi;  
huihuia ano hoki a ratou mea katoa, tika tonu hoki  
te mahi a tetahi, a tetahi ki tona hoa, ki tona hoa.

20 Nawai a, ka mahi ratou i nga mea katoa, rite tonu  
ki ta Ihu i whakahau ai ki a ratou,

21 Na, te hunga ra i rumakina i runga i te ingoa o Ihu,  
ka huaina ko te hahi a te Karaiti.

And they taught, and did minister one to another;  
and they had all things common among them, every  
man dealing justly, one with another.

And it came to pass that they did do all things even  
as Jesus had commanded them.

And they who were baptized in the name of Jesus  
were called the church of Christ.

### III. Niwhai. 27

- 1 Na, i nga akonga a Ihu e kauwhau haere ana i nga mea i rongo ai i kite ai ratou, e rumaki ana ano hoki i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, ka huihui tahi nga akonga kotahi tonu te whakaaro i runga i te inoi kaha me te noho puku.
- 2 Na, ka whakakite mai ano a Ihu i a ia ki a ratou, e inoi ana hoki ratou ki te Matua, i runga i tona ingoa; a puta mai ana a Ihu, tu ana ki waenganui i a ratou, mea ana ki a ratou, He aha ta koutou e pai na kia hoatu e ahau ki a koutou?
- 3 Na, ka mea atu ratou ki a ia, e te Ariki ko ta matou e pai nei, kia korerotia mai e koe te ingoa e karangatia e matou ki tenei hahi; no te mea kei roto nga tautohetohenga i te iwi mo tenei mea.
- 4 Na, ka mea mai te Ariki ki a ratou. He pono, he pono taku e mea atu ki a koutou, mo te aha e amuamu nei tenei iwi, e tautohetohe nei i runga i tenei mea?
- 5 Kahore ianei ratou i korero i nga karaipiture, e ki nei, me tango e koutou te ingoa o te Karaiti ki runga ki a koutou, a koia nei toku ingoa? no te mea ka karangatia koutou ki tenei ingoa a te ra whakamutunga;
- 6 A ko ia e tango ana i toku ingoa ki runga ki a ia, a u tonu ana tae noa ki te mutunga, ka whakaoranga tera a te ra whaka mutunga;
- 7 No reira ko nga mea katoa e mea ai koutou, ka meatia e koutou i runga i toku ingoa; no reira me karanga tenei hahi e koutou ki toku ingoa; a ka inoi koutou ki te Matua kia manaakitia te hahi e ia mo te whakaaro ki a au;
- 8 Na, me pehea e waiho ai hei hahi maku, ki te kore ia e karangatia ki toku ingoa? ina hoki ki te karangatia tetahi hahi ki te ingoa o Mohi, na Mohi ano taua hahi; ki te karangatia ranei ki te ingoa o tetahi tangata, na tetahi tangata ano te hahi; heoi ki te karangatia ia ki toku ingoa, ko taku hahi ano ia, ki te mea ka oti ratou te hanga ki runga ki taku rongo pai.

### 3 Nephi 27

And it came to pass that as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus, it came to pass that the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

And Jesus again showed himself unto them, for they were praying unto the Father in his name; and Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

And they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church; for there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

And the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name? For by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

And whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

Therefore, whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name; therefore ye shall call the church in my name; and ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

And how be it my church save it be called in my name? For if a church be called in Moses' name then it be Moses' church; or if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man; but if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

- 9 He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ka oti koutou te hanga ki runga ki taku rongo pai; no reira me karanga e koutou nga mea katoa e karanga ai koutou i runga i toku ingoa; no reira ki te inoi koutou ki te Matua, mo te hahi, ki te mea i runga te inoi i toku ingoa, ka whakarongo mai te Matua ki a koutou;
- 10 A ki te mea ka oti te hahi te hanga ki runga ki taku rongo pai, ka whakakite te Matua i ana mahi ake i roto i a ia:
- 11 Otira ki te mea ehara i te mea hanga ki runga ki taku rongo pai, heoi he mea hanga ki runga ki nga mahi a te tangata, ki runga ranei ki nga mahi a te rewera, na, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, e hari ana ratou i runga i a ratou mahi mo tetahi wa, taihoa ka puta mai te mutunga, a ka tuakina ratou, ka makā ki te ahi, ki te wahi e kore rawa ai e hoki mai ano i reira.
- 12 Ka aru tahi hoki a ratou mahi i a ratou, no te mea mo a ratou mahi kino i tuakina ai ratou; no reira maharatia e koutou nga kupu kua korero atu nei ahau ki a koutou.
- 13 Nana, kua hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou taku rongo pai, a ko te rongo pai tenei kua hoatu nei e ahau ki a koutou, ara, kua tae mai ahau ki te ao ki te mea i ta toku Matua i pai ai, no te mea na toku Matua ahau i tonono mai;
- 14 Na toku Matua hoki ahau i tonono mai kia whakairia ake ai ahau ki runga ki te ripeka; kia kukume ai ahau i nga tangata katoa ki a au, i te mea ka oti ahau te whakairi ki runga ki te ripeka: ka rite ki toku whakaarahanga ake e nga tangata ta te Matua whakaarahanga ake i nga tangata, kia tu ki toku aroaro, whakawakia ai mo a ratou mahi, ahakoa pai, ahakoa kino:
- 15 Koia ahau i whakairia ake ai; na, ki te ritenga o te kaha o te Matua, tera ahau e kukume i nga tangata katoa ki a au, kia whakawakia ai ratou i runga i a ratou mahi.
- 16 A tenei ake ko te tangata e ripeneta ana, e rumakina ana i runga i toku ingoa, ka makona; a ki te u tonu ia tae noa ki te mutunga, ka whakaharakoretia tenei e ahau i te aroaro o toku Matua, i te ra e tu ai ahau ki te whakawa i te ao.

Verily I say unto you, that ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name; therefore if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

And if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season, and by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

For their works do follow them, for it is because of their works that they are hewn down; therefore remember the things that I have told you.

Behold I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you—that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

And my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross; and after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me, that as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted up by the Father, to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil—

And for this cause have I been lifted up; therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

And it shall come to pass, that whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled; and if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

17 Na, ko te tangata e kore e u, a tae noa ki te mutunga, ko ia tera e tuakina iho, e makā hoki ki te ahi, ki te wahi e kore ai e hoki mai ano i reira, he mea hoki na te tika a te Matua;

18 A ko te kupu ano tenei kua homai e ia ki nga tamariki a te tangata. Mo reira ka whakarite ia i nga kupu i homai e ia, kahore hoki ana teka, engari ka whakaritea katoatia ana kupu e ia;

19 Na, e kore e ahei i tetahi mea poke te tomo ki roto ki tona kingitanga; no reira kahore noa iho he mea e tomo ki roto ki tana okiokinga, ko te hunga anake ka oti i a ratou o ratou kakahu te horoi ki oku toto, i runga i to ratou whakapono, me te ripeneta ki o ratou hara, me to ratou u ano hoki a tae noa ki te mutunga.

20 Na, ko te whakahaunga tenei, ripeneta, e koutou katoa, e nga topito o te whenua, haere mai hoki ki a au, kia rumakina ai i runga i toku ingoa, kia whakatapua ai koutou i runga i te rironga i a koutou o te Wairua Tapu, kia tu kohakore ai koutou ki toku aroaro i te ra whakamutunga.

21 He pono, he pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko taku rongo pai tenei; a kei te mohio na koutou ki nga mea e mea ai koutou i roto i toku hahi; no te mea ko nga mahi i kitea e koutou e mahi ana ahau, ka meinga ano hoki e koutou: ta te mea hoki ko te mea i kitea e koutou e meatia ka meinga ano hoki tera e koutou;

22 Na, ki te mea koutou i enei mea, ka koa koutou, ka whakaarahia ake hoki koutou a te ra whakamutunga.

23 Tuhituhia aua mea i kite na i rongo na koutou, haunga ra nga mea i riria;

24 Tuhituhia nga mahinga o tenei iwi, e takoto ake nei ki te ritenga o te mea ka oti nei te tuhituhi mo nga mea kua oti noa:

25 Ta te mea, na, ka whakaritea te whakawa mo tenei iwi i roto i nga mea ka oti nei te tuhituhi ki nga pukapuka, i roto ano i nga mea era e tuhituhia, no te mea ma enei ka mohiotia ai a ratou mahi e nga tangata.

26 Nana, e tuhituhia ana nga mea katoa e te Matua; no reira ma nga pukapuka e tuhituhia ka whakaritea ai te whakawa mo te ao.

And he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no more return, because of the justice of the Father.

And this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men. And for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given, and he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

And no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom; therefore nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the end.

Now this is the commandment: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me and be baptized in my name, that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel; and ye know the things that ye must do in my church; for the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do; for that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;

Therefore, if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be those which are forbidden.

Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath been written, of that which hath been.

For behold, out of the books which have been written, and which shall be written, shall this people be judged, for by them shall their works be known unto men.

And behold, all things are written by the Father; therefore out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged.

- 27 Na, kia mohio koutou ko koutou nga kaiwhakarite whakawa ino tenei iwi, i runga i te whakaritenga whakawa e hoatu ai e ahau ki a koutou, koia ano he tika; no reira hei tangata pehea koutou e tika ai koutou? He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, me rite ki a au.
- 28 Na, ko aianeia ahau haere atu ai ki te Matua. He pono taku e mea atu nei ki a koutou, ko nga mea katoa e inoi ai koutou ki te Matua, i runga i toku ingoa, ka hoatu ki a koutou;
- 29 Na reira, inoia, a ka whiwhi koutou; patukia, a ka uakina ki a koutou; ta te mea ka whiwhi te tangata ina inoi, ka uakina hoki ki te tangata e patuki ana.
- 30 Nana, he nui toku koa inaianei, ki tonu, mo koutou, mo tenei whakatupuranga ano hoki; ae ra, e koa ana te Matua, me nga anahera tapu katoa ano hoki, mo koutou ko tenei whakatupuranga; no te mea kahore tetahi o ratou i ngaro.
- 31 Nana, e mea ana ahau kia matau koutou; ko taku hoki e mea nei ko nga tangata o tenei whakatupuranga kei te ora na i tenei wa tonu; a kahore tetahi o ratou i ngaro; a he nui toku koa i runga i a ratou.
- 32 Otiia he pouri toku mo te wha o nga whakatupuranga i muri i tenei whakatupuranga, he mea whakarau hoki ratou e ia, to ratou rite kei te tama o te whakangaromanga: no te mea e hoko ratou i a au ki te hiriwa, ki te koura, ki te mea e kinongia ana e te huhu, e keria ana e nga tahae, tahae ai. I taua ra ano ka tirohia ratou e ahau, a ka whakahokia a ratou mahi ki runga ki o ratou mahunga ake.
- 33 Nawai a, ka oti i a Ihu enei korero, ka mea atu ia ki ana akonga. Tomo atu ma te kuwaha kuiti; e kuiti ana hoki te kuwaha, e kiki ana te ara e tika ana ki te ora, a he ruarua te hunga e kitea ai, he wharahi ia te kuwaha, he nui noa atu te ara e tika ana ki te mate, a he tokomaha e haere ana ra reira, a tae noa ki te po, e kore ai tetahi e kaha ki te mahi.

And know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just. Therefore, what manner of men ought ye to be? Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

And now I go unto the Father. And verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father in my name shall be given unto you.

Therefore, ask, and ye shall receive; knock, and it shall be opened unto you; for he that asketh, receiveth; and unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

And now, behold, my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you, and also this generation; yea, and even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels, because of you and this generation; for none of them are lost.

Behold, I would that ye should understand; for I mean them who are now alive of this generation; and none of them are lost; and in them I have fulness of joy.

But behold, it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was the son of perdition; for they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal. And in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon their own heads.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had ended these sayings he said unto his disciples: Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it; but wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh, wherein no man can work.



### III. Niwhai. 28

- 1 Ano ka korero a Ihu i enei kupu, ka kōrero takitahi atu ia ki ana akonga, a ka mea ki a ratou, He hiahia aha ta koutou ki a au, ina riro atu ahau ki te Matua?
- 2 Na, ka korero mai ratou katoa, haunga nga mea tokotoru, ko ta matou e hiahia nei mo te wa e taka noa ai o matou tau e rite ana mo te tangata; kia mutu ta matou mahi minita, te mea i karangatia ai matou e koe, kia horo atu hoki ta matou haerenga atu ki a koe, ki roto ki tou kingitanga.
- 3 Na, ka mea atu ia ki a ratou. Ka koa koutou mo koutou i hiahia ki tenei mea ki a au; na, ka whitu tekau ma rua o koutou tau, ka haere mai kotuou ki a au ki roto ki toku kingitanga, a ka kite hoki koutou i te okiokinga i a au.
- 4 Ano ka korero ia ki a ratou, ka tahuri ia ki aua tokotoru, ka mea atu hoki ki a ratou, He aha ta koutou e pai na hei mahi maku ki a koutou, ina riro atu ahau ki te Matua?
- 5 Na, ka pouri o ratou ngakau, kihai hoki ratou i maia ki te korero atu ki a ia i te mea i hiahia ai ratou.
- 6 Na, ka mea atu ia ki a ratou. Nana, e mohio ana ahau ki o koutou whakaaro, a kua hiahia koutou ki taua mea i hiahiatia ki a au e Hoani, e taku i aroha ai, e te mea i a au i roto i aku inahi, i mua i toku whakairinga ake e nga Hurai;
- 7 No reira rahi ake te koa mo koutou, no te mea e kore rawa koutou e rongoi te mate, engari e ora tonu koutou hei kite i nga meatanga katoatanga a te Matua, ki nga tamariki a te tangata, a kia rite ra ano nga mea katoa, i runga i ta te Matua e pai ai, ina haere mai ahau i runga i toku kororia, me nga kaha o te rangi;
- 8 E kore ano hoki koutou e mamae i nga mamae o te matenga; otira ka tae mai ahau i runga i toku kororia, kimo kau te kano, ka whakaputaina ketia koutou i te hanga matemate ki te mate-kore: katahi ka koa koutou i roto i te kingitanga o toku Matua.
- 9 Me tenei ano, e kore koutou e mamae i a koutou i te kikokiko, e kore ano hoki e pouri, engari i runera i nga hara o te ao: a tenei katoa e mahia e ahau mo ta koutou i hiahia ai ki a au, ta te mea i hiahia koutou kia whakatahuritia e koutou nga wairua o nga tangata ki a au, i te ao e tu ana;

### 3 Nephi 28

And it came to pass when Jesus had said these words, he spake unto his disciples, one by one, saying unto them: What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the Father?

And they all spake, save it were three, saying: We desire that after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

And he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me; therefore, after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

And when he had spoken unto them, he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

And they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

And he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, and ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

Therefore, more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

And ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality; and then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

And again, ye shall not have pain while ye shall dwell in the flesh, neither sorrow save it be for the sins of the world; and all this will I do because of the thing which ye have desired of me, for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

- 10 Na reira ka ki koutou i te hari; ka noho iho ano hoki koutou ki te kingitanga o toku Matua; ae ra, ka ki tonu koutou i te hari, ka rite ki te kinga o te hari i homai e te Matua ki a au; a ka rite koutou ki a au, a ko ahau rite tonu ki te Matua; a ko maua ko te Matua kotahi tonu;
- 11 A hei kai whakaatu te Wairua Tapu mo maua ko te Matua; a e homai ana e te Matua te Wairua Tapu ki nga tamariki a te tangata, mo te whakaaro ki a au.
- 12 Ano ka korero a Ihu i enei kupu, ka pa atu tona matihao ki tena, ki tena o ratou, haunga ra aua tokotoru e noho tonu nei, katahi ka mawehe atu ia.
- 13 Nana, ka puare nga rangi, a ka kahakina ake ratou ki roto ki te rangi, a kite ana rongo ana i nga mea e kore e taea te whakapuaki.
- 14 Na, ka riria ratou kei whakapuaki; kihai ano hoki i homai ki a ratou he kaha hei whakapuaki i nga mea i kite ai i rongo ai ratou;
- 15 A i roto ranei ratou i te tinana, i waho ranei i te tinana, kahore ratou i mohio; ki ta ratou hoki kua whakaputaina ketia o ratou ahua, me te mea nei kua whakaputaina ketia tenei tinana kikokiko hei mea mate-kore kia kite ai ratou i nga mea a te Atua.
- 16 Nawai a, ka minita ano ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua; otira kahore ratou i minita i aua mea i kite ai i rongo ai ratou, he whakaaro hoki ki te whakahaunga i whakahaua ai ratou i roto i te rangi.
- 17 Na, kahore ahau e matau he hanga matemate ranei ratou, he mea mate-kore ranei, i muri i te ra o to ratou whakaputanga ketanga;
- 18 Otira ko te mea tenei e matau nei ahau, he mea na te tuhituhinga kua homai nei ki a au, i haereere ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua, i minita ki te iwi katoa, a honohono ana ki te hahi i te hunga katoa e whakapono ana ki a ratou kauwhautanga; e rumaki ana hoki i a ratou: a riro ana te Wairua Tapu i te hunga katoa i rumakina;
- 19 Na, makā ana ratou ki roto ki te whare herehere e te hunga kahore nei i te hahi. A kahore ratou i taea e nga whare herehere te pupuri, no te mea ka pakaru kia rua nga wahi.

And for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy; and ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father; yea, your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness of joy; and ye shall be even as I am, and I am even as the Father; and the Father and I are one;

And the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me; and the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men, because of me.

And it came to pass that when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

And behold, the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

And it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

And whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

But it came to pass that they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

And now, whether they were mortal or immortal, from the day of their transfiguration, I know not;

But this much I know, according to the record which hath been given—they did go forth upon the face of the land, and did minister unto all the people, uniting as many to the church as would believe in their preaching; baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the Holy Ghost.

And they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the church. And the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

20 A ka makā hoki ki roto ki te whenua. Na, patua ana te whenua e ratou ki te kupu a te Atua, no ka whakaputaina mai ratou i runga i tona kaha i roto i nga poka hohonu o te whenua; koia ratou i kore ai e ahei te Keri i nga poka e rite ana hei pupuri i a ratou.

21 E toru o ratou makanga ki te oumu, a kihai i ahatia.

22 E rua o ratou makanga ki tetahi ana kararehe mohoa: nana, he takaro ta ratou ki nga kararehe he pera me ta te tamaiti ki te reme ngote u, a kihai i ahatia.

23 Nawai a, ka penei ta ratou haereere i roto i te iwi katoa o Niwhai, a ka kauwhautia atu te rongo pai o te Karaiti ki te iwi katoa i runga i te mata o te whenua: a ka whakatahuritia ratou ki te Ariki, ka honoa ano hoki ki te hahi a te Karaiti, a penei ka manaakitia te iwi o taua whakatupuranga, e rite ana ki ta te kupu a Ihu.

24 Na, ka whakamutua e ahau, e Moromona mo tetahi wa te korero mo runga i enei mea.

25 Nana, i tata ahau te tuhituhi i nga ingoa o aua tangata kahore e rongo i te mate: heoi i riria e te Ariki, no reira kahore e tuhituhia e ahau, he mea huna hoki ratou ki te ao.

26 Otira i kite ahau i a ratou, a i minita mai ratou ki a au;

27 Nana, tera ratou e noho i roto i nga Tauwiwi, heoi e kore nga Tauwiwi e matau ki a ratou.

28 A tera ano hoki ratou e noho i roto i nga Hurai, a e kore nga Hurai e matau ki a ratou.

29 A tenei ake, ina kite te Ariki he pai i runga i tana whai whakaaro, ka minita ratou ki nga hapu katoa o Iharaira, e marara ana, ki nga iwi katoa, ki nga hapu, ki nga reo, ki nga huihuinga tangata, a ka whakaputaina i roto i a ratou te tini o nga wairua ki a Ihu, kia tutuki ai ta ratou hiahia, he meatanga ano hoki na te kaha whakamohio o te Atua i roto nei i a ratou:

30 A e rite ana ratou ki nga anahera a te Atua, a ki te inoi ratou ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, ka kaha ratou ki te whakakite i a ratou ki ta ratou tangata e pai ai:

And they were cast down into the earth; but they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth; and therefore they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

And thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

And twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and received no harm.

And it came to pass that thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the land; and they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the church of Christ, and thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to the word of Jesus.

And now I, Mormon, make an end of speaking concerning these things for a time.

Behold, I was about to write the names of those who were never to taste of death, but the Lord forbade; therefore I write them not, for they are hid from the world.

But behold, I have seen them, and they have ministered unto me.

And behold they will be among the Gentiles, and the Gentiles shall know them not.

They will also be among the Jews, and the Jews shall know them not.

And it shall come to pass, when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto Jesus many souls, that their desire may be fulfilled, and also because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

And they are as the angels of God, and if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

- 31 No reira, he rahi he whakamiharo nga mahi e mahi ai ratou, i mua i te ra nui, e puta ana, he pono e tu nga iwi katoa ki mua i te nohoanga whakawa o te Karati:
- 32 Ae ra, i roto ano i nga Tauivi, he nui he whakamiharo te mahi e mahi ai ratou i mua i taua ra whakarite whawawa.
- 33 A me he mea kei a koutou nga karaipiture katoa e whakaatu mai ana i nga mahi whakamiharo a te Karaiti, penei kua matau katoa, i runga i nga kupu a te Karaiti, he pono ka puta mai enei mea.
- 34 Na, aue te mate mona, mo te tangata e kore e whakarongo ki nga kupu a Ihu, ki ta te hunga ano hoki nana i whiriwhiri, nana hoki i tono ki roto ki a ratou, ina hoki te tangata e kore e manako ki nga kupu a Ihu me nga kupu a te hunga nana i tono mai, e kore e manako ki a ia; no reira e kore ia e manako ki a ratou i te ra whakamutunga;
- 35 A nui ke te pai mo ratou me i kore i whanau. He whakaaro hoki ianei ta koutou tera koutou e mawhiti i te tika a tetahi Atua kua whakahengia, kua takatakahia hoki ki raro e nga waewae o nga tangata, kia puta ai te whakaoranga ra reira?
- 36 Nana, i a au i korero ra mo te hunga i whiriwhiria e te Ariki, ae ra, mo ratou tokotoru i kahakina ake ra ki roto ki nga rangi, i a au i mea ra, kahore ahau i matau ka oti koia ratou te whakama i tenei hanga matemate nei hei mea mate-kore.
- 37 Nana, no taku tuhituhinga, kua uiui ahau ki te Ariki, a nana i whakaatu mai ki a au, e tika ana kia whakaputaina ketia o ratou tinana, ki te kore, e tika ana kia rongorongo ratou i te mate;
- 38 No reira kia kore ai ratou e rongorongo i te mate, i mahia kia rereke o ratou tinana, kia kore ai ratou e aue i te mamae i te pouri, engari i nga hara o te ao.
- 39 Na, kahore tenei rereketanga i rite ki te mea e rereke ai a te ra whakamutunga; heoi i mahia kia rereke ratou, no ka kore he kaha o Hatana i runga i a ratou, kei ahei i a ia te whakamatautau i a ratou, ka oti ano hoki ratou te whakama i roto i te kikokiko, a he mea tapu ratou, a kahore nga mano o te ao e kaha ki te pupuri i a ratou;

Therefore, great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before the great and coming day when all people must surely stand before the judgment-seat of Christ;

Yea even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

And if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the marvelous works of Christ, ye would, according to the words of Christ, know that these things must surely come.

And wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus, and also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them; for whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those whom he hath sent receiveth not him; and therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

And it would be better for them if they had not been born. For do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby salvation might come?

And now behold, as I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea, even three who were caught up into the heavens, that I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to immortality—

But behold, since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of death;

Therefore, that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the sins of the world.

Now this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the last day; but there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan could have no power over them, that he could not tempt them; and they were sanctified in the flesh, that they were holy, and that the powers of the earth could not hold them.

40 A penei ka noho ratou taea notia te ra whakarite whakawa a te Karaiti; ko a taua ra whiwhi ai ratou i tetahi whakaputanga ketanga rahi ake, e tangohia atu ai hoki ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Matua, kahore ano putanga atu, heoi ka noho tonu i te Atua i roto i nga rangi, a ake ake ake.

And in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of Christ; and at that day they were to receive a greater change, and to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out, but to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

### III. Niwhai. 29

- 1 Nana, ka mea atu ahau ki a koutou, i te wa e kite ai te Matua i runga i tana whai whakaaro, he pai kia puta atu enei korerotanga ki nga Tauwiwi, ki te ritenga o tana kupu, ko reira matau ai koutou, kua timata te whakaritenga o te kawenata i kawenata ai te Matua ki te whare o Iharaira, mo te whakahokinga i a ratou ki o ratou whenua tupu:
- 2 Ka matau ano hoki koutou era e rite nga kupu katoa a te Ariki i korerotia e nga poropiti tapu: a kahore he rawa ma koutou te ki ake, e whakaroa ana te Ariki i tana haerenga mai ki nga tamariki a Iharaira:
- 3 Kei mahara noa ano hoki koutou i roto i o koutou ngakau, he mea horihori nga kupu kua oti nei te korero, ta te mea ka mahara te Ariki ki tana kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki tona iwi o te whare o Iharaira.
- 4 Na, ka kite koutou i enei korero e puta mai ana i roto i a koutou, ko reira kahore he rawa ma koutou te whakahawea ano ki nga meatanga a te Ariki, kei tona ringa matau hoki te hoari o tona tika, nana, a taua ra, ki te whakahawea mai koutou ki ana meatanga, ka meinga kia rokohanga wawetia koutou e ia.
- 5 Aue te mate mo te tangata e whakahawea ana ki nga meatanga a te Ariki; ae ra, aue te mate mo te tangata e whakakahore ana ki a te Karaiti me ana mahi;
- 6 Ae ra, aue te mate mo te tangata e whakakahore ana ki nga whakakitenga a te Ariki, e mea ake ana ka mutu te mahi a te Ariki i runga i te whakakitenga i te poropititanga, i nga homaitanga i nga reo, i nga mana whakaora, te mana o te Wairua Tapu;
- 7 Ae ra, aue te mate mo te tangata e mea ana i taua ra, he mea kia whai taonga ai, e kore tetahi rerekara e taea te mahi e Ihu Karaiti; no te mea ka rite te tangata e mea ana i tenei mea ki te tama o te whakangaromanga, kahore nei he mahi tohu mona, ki te ritenga o ta te Karaiti kupu.
- 8 Ae, kahore he aha e whakahi ai ano koutou e whakahawea ai e takaro ai ki nga Hurai, ki tetahi atu toenga ranei o te whare o Iharaira; ta te mea ka mahara te Ariki ki tana kawenata ki a ratou, ka rite hoki tana meatanga ki a ratou ki tana i oati ai:

### 3 Nephi 29

And now behold, I say unto you that when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

And ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled; and ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the children of Israel.

And ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have been spoken are vain, for behold, the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto his people of the house of Israel.

And when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the sword of his justice is in his right hand; and behold, at that day, if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon overtake you.

Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord; yea, wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

Yea, wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

Yea, and wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ; for he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

Yea, and ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

9 No reira kahore he aha e mahara ai koutou e kaha, ana koutou ki te whakatahuri i te ringa inatau o te Ariki ki mau kia kaua ia e whakarite i te whakawa hei whakatutuki i te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki te whare o Iharaira.

Therefore ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

### III. Niwhai. 30

- 1 Whakarongo, E koutou, e nga Tauwiwi, whakarongo ki nga kupu a Ihu Karaiti, a te Tama a te Atua ora, i whakahau ai ia ki a au hei korerotanga maku mo koutou, ina hoki, i whakahaua ahau e ia kia tuhituhi ahau, kia mea.
- 2 Tahuri mai, e koutou katoa, e nga Tauwiwi, i o koutou ara kino, ripeneta ano hoki koutou ki a koutou mahi kino, ki a koutou teka me nga tinihanga, me a koutou puremu, me a koutou whakarihariha ngaro, me a koutou karakia whakapakoko, me a koutou kohurutanga, me a koutou mahi tinihanga a nga tohunga, me a koutou hae, me a koutou tautohetohe, me a koutou kino katoa me nga mahi whakarihariha, a haere mai ki a au kia rumakma i runga i toku ingoa, kia whiwhi ai koutou ki te murunga hara, kia ki ai ano hoki i te Wairua Tapu, kia taua koutou ki roto ki toku iwi, ki te iwi o te whare o Iharaira.

### 3 Nephi 30

Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God, which he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, for, behold he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; and repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and abominations, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, that ye may receive a remission of your sins, and be filled with the Holy Ghost, that ye may be numbered with my people who are of the house of Israel.



# Ko Te Pukapuka A Niwhai. A Te Tama A Niwhai, A Tetahi O Nga Akonga O Ihu Karaiti.

*He tubitubinga mo te iwi o Niwhai, ki te ritenga o tana tubitubinga.*

- 1 Nawai a, ka pahemo te toru tekau ma wha o nga tau, me te toru tekau ma rima ano, a kua whakaritea e nga akonga a Ihu he hahi o te Karaiti puta noa i nga whenua tawhio noa, tawhio noa. A ko te hunga katoa i haere mai ki a ratou, me te ripeneta pono ki o ratou hara, i rumakina i runga i te ingoa o Ihu; a ka riro ano i a ratou te Wairua Tapu.
- 2 Na, i te toru tekau ma ono o nga tau, i tahuri katoa mai te iwi ki te Ariki i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, nga Niwhai me nga Ramana, a kahore he ngangaretanga, he tautohetohenga i roto i a ratou, a e whakahaere tika ta tena tangata, ta tena tangata ki tona hoa, ki tona hoa.
- 3 Kua huihuia katoatia a ratou mea i roto i a ratou, no reira ehara ratou i te hunga whai toanga, i te hunga rawakore, i te pononga, i te rangatira, engari i meinga katoatia ratou hei here-kore, e whai wahi ana ki te homaitanga o te rangi.
- 4 Na, ka pahemo ano hoki te toru tekau ma whitu o nga tau, a mau tonu te ata noho i runga i te whenua.
- 5 A na nga akonga a Ihu i mahi nga mahi nunui whakamiharo, no ka whakaorangia e ratou nga turoro, ka whakaarahia nga tupapaku, ka meinga nga kopa kia haere, nga matapo kia kite, nga turi kia rongu; me nga tu merekara katoa i mahia e ratou i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata; a kahore a ratou mahi merekara i runga i tetahi mea, i runga anake i te ingoa o Ihu.
- 6 A penei ka pahemo atu te toru tekau ma waru o nga tau, me te toru tekau ma iwa ano, me te wha tekau ma tahi, me te wha tekau ma rua; ā te pahemotanga ra ano o nga tau e wha tekau ma iwa, me te rima tekau ma tahi ano hoki, me te rima tekau ma rua; ā te pahemotanga ra ano o nga tau e rima tekau ma iwa;

# Fourth Nephi

*An account of the people of Nephi, according to his record.*

And it came to pass that the thirty and fourth year passed away, and also the thirty and fifth, and behold the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the lands round about. And as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus; and they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

And it came to pass in the thirty and sixth year, the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites, and there were no contentions and disputations among them, and every man did deal justly one with another.

And they had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, bond and free, but they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

And it came to pass that the thirty and seventh year passed away also, and there still continued to be peace in the land.

And there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples of Jesus, insomuch that they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear; and all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men; and in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

And thus did the thirty and eighth year pass away, and also the thirty and ninth, and forty and first, and the forty and second, yea, even until forty and nine years had passed away, and also the fifty and first, and the fifty and second; yea, and even until fifty and nine years had passed away.

- 7 A, na te Ariki i kake nui ai ratou i runga i te whenua; ae ra, ka kapi ano i a ratou nga pa, ara nga wahi i tahuna ai nga pa;
- 8 Ae ra, ko taua pa nui, ko Harahemera i meinga e ratou kia hangā houtia.
- 9 He maha ia nga pa i toremi, a puta ake he wai mo reira; no reira kihai i ahei kia whakahoutia aua pa.
- 10 Na ka tupu te iwi o Niwhai ka kaha, ka hohoro rawa to ratou tokomahatanga, a ka riro hei iwi ataahua rawa, hei iwi ahuareka.
- 11 A ka marenatia ratou, ka hoatu kia marenatia, ka manaakitia ano hoki ki te ritenga o nga kupu whakaari maha i whakaari ai te Ariki ki a ratou.
- 12 A kahore a ratou whakahaere ano i runga i nga meatanga me nga tikanga o te ture a Mohi, engari i whakahaere ratou i runga i nga whakahaunga i riro ai i a ratou i to ratou Ariki, i to ratou Atua, i hono tonu hoki a ratou noho puku me ta ratou inoi, a i honohono ano hoki o ratou huihuinga, ki te inoi me te whakarongo ki te kupu a te Ariki.
- 13 Nawai a, kore ake he tautohetohenga i roto i te iwi katoa, i runga i te whenua katoa, engari nga merekara nunui i mahia i roto i nga akonga a Ihu.
- 14 Nawai a, ka pahemo atu te whitu tekau ma tahi o nga tau, me te whitu tekau ma rua ano; a tae noa ki te pahemotanga atu o te whitu tekau ma iwa o nga tau; ae ra, kua pahemo nga tau kotahi rau, a kua riro atu nga akonga katoa a Ihu i whiriwhiri ai ia ki te pararaiha o te Atua, haunga ra aua tokotoru e noho nei; na, i whakaritea etahi atu akonga i muri i a ratou; a he tokomaha ano hoki o taua whakatupuranga i pahemo atu.
- 15 A kahore he tautohetohenga i runga i te whenua, i te aroha hoki o te Atua e noho ana i roto i nga ngakau o te iwi.
- 16 Kahore he hae, he totohe, he ngangau, he puremu, he korero teka, he kohuru, tetahi atu tu hiahia taikaha ranei; a he pono e kore tetahi atu iwi i roto i nga iwi katoa i hanga nei e te ringa o te Atua e ahei kia nui atu te hari;

And the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; yea, insomuch that they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

Yea, even that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

But there were many cities which had been sunk, and waters came up in the stead thereof; therefore these cities could not be renewed.

And now, behold, it came to pass that the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightful people.

And they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

And they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses; but they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, and in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

And it came to pass that there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; but there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

And it came to pass that the seventy and first year passed away, and also the seventy and second year, yea, and in fine, till the seventy and ninth year had passed away; yea, even an hundred years had passed away, and the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry; and there were other disciples ordained in their stead; and also many of that generation had passed away.

And it came to pass that there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

And there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness; and surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

17 Kahore ano hoki he kai pahua, he kai kohuru, he Ramana, he iwi ke ranei, engari kotahi tonu ratou he tamariki na te Karaiti, a mo ratou ano te kingitanga o te Atua;

18 A ano to ratou hari, no te mea na te Ariki ratou i manaaki i runga i a ratou meatanga katoa: a i manaakitia ratou i meinga kia kake tae noa ki te pahemotanga o nga tau kotahi rau kotahi tekau; i pahemo atu hoki te whakatupuranga tuatahi i muri i a te Karaiti tē ai he tautohetohe i runga i te whenua katoa.

19 Nawai a, ka mate a Niwhai, nana nei tenei tuhituhinga whakamutunga, (a nana i tuhituhi ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai,) a na tana tama, na Amoho i tuhituhi i muri i a ia; a nana ano i tuhituhi ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai;

20 A nana i tuhituhi mo nga tau e waru tekau ma wha, a mau tonu hoki te ata noho i runga i te whenua, haunga ra tetahi wahi iti o te iwi i puta atu i roto i te hahi, a tango ana ki runga ki a ratou ko te ingoa Ramana; na reira ka timata ano he Ramana ki runga i te whenua.

21 Nawai a, ka mate ano hoki a Amoho, (ko nga tau ano tenei kotahi rau e iwa tekau ma wha i muri i te taenga mai o te Karaiti,) a na tana tama, na Amoho i tuhituhi te tuhituhinga i muri i a ia; a nana ano i tuhituhi ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai; i tuhituhia ano hoki ki roto ki te pukapuka a Niwhai, ara, ki tenei pukapuka.

22 Nawai a, kua pahemo nga tau e rua rau, me te whakatupuranga tuarua ano kua pahemo katoa atu, haunga ra nga mea torutoru nei.

23 Heoi e mea ana ahau, a Moromona kia mohio koutou, kua tokomaha te iwi, a kua horapa haere ratou ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua, a kua tino whai taonga rawa hoki ratou, he mea hoki na to ratou kake i roto i a te Karaiti.

24 Na, i tenei, i te rua rau ma tahi o nga tau, ka kitea etahi i roto i a ratou kua neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha, ara te kakahu i nga kakahu utu nui, me nga peara papai katoa, me nga mea whakapaipai o te ao nei.

25 A no taua takiwa mai heoi ano te huihuinga o o ratou taputapu me o ratou rawa i roto i a ratou.

There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites; but they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

And how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings; yea, even they were blessed and prospered until an hundred and ten years had passed away; and the first generation from Christ had passed away, and there was no contention in all the land.

And it came to pass that Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead; and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

And he kept it eighty and four years, and there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites; therefore there began to be Lamanites again in the land.

And it came to pass that Amos died also, (and it was an hundred and ninety and four years from the coming of Christ) and his son Amos kept the record in his stead; and he also kept it upon the plates of Nephi; and it was also written in the book of Nephi, which is this book.

And it came to pass that two hundred years had passed away; and the second generation had all passed away save it were a few.

And now I, Mormon, would that ye should know that the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread upon all the face of the land, and that they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity in Christ.

And now, in this two hundred and first year there began to be among them those who were lifted up in pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

And from that time forth they did have their goods and their substance no more common among them.

26 A ka timata to ratou wehewehe, ka tahuri ano ratou ki te hanga hahi mo ratou ano, he mea kia whai taonga ai ratou, a whakakahore ana ki te hahi pono o te Karaiti.

27 Na, i te pahemotanga o nga tau e rua rau kotahi tekau, kua maha nga hahi i runga i te whenua; ae ra, kua maha nga hahi e ki nei e mohio ana ratou ki a te Karaiti, ahakoa ra whakakahore ana ratou ki nga wahi nui o tona rongopai, a manako ana ki nga tukino katoa, hoatu ana te mea tapu ma te tangata te mea i kaiponuhia ki a ia i mua, he hē hoki nona.

28 A i tokomaha rawa tenei hahi, he mea hoki na te kino, me te kaha o Hatana, o te mea whai tikanga ki o ratou ngakau.

29 A tera ano tetahi atu hahi nana i whakakahore a te Karaiti; na ratou i whakato i te hahi pono o te Karaiti mo to ratou ngakau papaku me to ratou whakapono hoki ki a te Karaiti; a ka whakahawea ratou i a ratou mo nga merekara maha i mahia i roto i a ratou;

30 No reira ka whakatupu kaha, mana, ratou ki runga ki nga akonga a te Karaiti i noho ai i a ratou, a ka maka ratou i a ratou ki roto ki te whare herehere: heoi i wahia nga whare herehere i waenganui, he mea na te kaha o te kupu a te Atua i roto ra i a ratou, a haere atu ana ratou, mahi ana i nga merekara nunui i roto i a ratou.

31 Otira he ahakoa enei merekara katoa i whakapakeke te iwi i o ratou ngakau, a whai ana ki te whakamate i a ratou pera me nga Hurai i Hiruharama i whai ki te whakamate i a Ihu, rite tonu ki tana kupu;

32 A ka maka ratou i a ratou ki roto ki nga oumu ahi, na, puta mai ana ratou kihai i ahatia:

33 Ka maka ano hoki ratou i a ratou ki roto ki nga ana kararehe mohoa, a takaro ana ratou ki nga kararehe mohoa ano ko tetahi tamaiti ki tetahi reme; na, puta mai ana ratou i roto i a ratou a kahore i ahatia.

And they began to be divided into classes; and they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain, and began to deny the true church of Christ.

And it came to pass that when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were many churches in the land; yea, there were many churches which professed to know the Christ, and yet they did deny the more parts of his gospel, insomuch that they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden because of unworthiness.

And this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their hearts.

And again, there was another church which denied the Christ; and they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their humility and their belief in Christ; and they did despise them because of the many miracles which were wrought among them.

Therefore they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of Jesus who did tarry with them, and they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, and they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

Nevertheless, and notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

And they did cast them into furnaces of fire, and they came forth receiving no harm.

And they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, and they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; and they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

34 Ahakoa ra i whakapakeke te iwi i o ratou ngakau, no te mea i whakahaeretia ratou e nga tohunga rnahā me nga poropiti teka kia hanga i nga hahi maha, kia paahi hoki i nga tu kino katoa. A ka papaki ratou i te iwi o Ihu; heoi kihai te iwi o Ihu i patu ano. A penei ka heke haere to ratou whakapono, ka kinokino haere hoki ratou i tenei tau, i tenei tau, tae noa ki te pahemotanga o nga tau e rua rau e toru tekau.

35 Na, i tenei tau, ae ra, i te rua rau te toru tekau ma tahi o nga tau ka puta ake he titorehanga nui i roto i te iwi.

36 A i tenei tau ka ara tetahi iwi e huaina ana ko nga Niwhai, na, i whakapono tika ratou ki a te Karaiti; a kei roto ano i a ratou tetahi hunga e karangiatia nei e nga Ramana, ko nga Hakopa, ko nga Hohepa, ko nga Horama;

37 No reira nga tangata whakapono tika ki a te Karaiti me nga kai karakia pono o te Karaiti, (kei roto nei kei a ratou nga akonga tokotoru a Ihu e noho ana, na, i huaina ratou ko nga Niwhai, ko nga Hakopa, ko nga Hohepa, ko nga Horama.

38 A i huaina te hunga nana i whakakahore te rongopai ko nga Ramana, ko nga Remuere, ko nga Ihimaera; na, kihai ratou i heke haere i roto i te whakapono, engari i tino tutu marire ratou ki te rongopai o te Karaiti; a na ratou ano i whakaako a ratou tamariki kia kauaka ratou e whakapono, pera ano me o ratou tupuna, no te timatanga ra ano, i heke haere ai.

39 He mea tenei na te kino me te whakarihariha o o ratou tupuna, e rite ana ki to te timatanga. He mea ako ki a ratou kia whakahaweā atu ratou ki nga tamariki a te Atua, he pera me nga Ramana i whakaakona no te timatanga ra ano kia whakahaweā ki nga tamariki a Niwhai.

40 Nawai a, kua pahemo nga tau e rua rau e wha tekau ma wha, a pera ana nga hanga a te iwi. A ko te wahi kino o te iwi ka tupu ka kaha, ka riro ano hei tini noa atu i te iwi o te Atua.

41 A i hono tonu ano ratou ki te hanga hahi ki a ratou ano, me te whakapaipai ano i aua mea ki nga tu mea utu nui katoa. A ka pera te pahemotanga atu o nga tau e rua rau e rima tekau, me nga tau ano hoki e rua rau e ono tekau.

Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity. And they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again. And thus they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, even until two hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And now it came to pass in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

And it came to pass that in this year there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ; and among them there were those who were called by the Lamanites—Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites;

Therefore the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites, and Jacobites, and Josephites, and Zoramites.

And it came to pass that they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites, and Lemuelites, and Ishmaelites; and they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ; and they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

And it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning. And they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

And it came to pass that two hundred and forty and four years had passed away, and thus were the affairs of the people. And the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

And they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things. And thus did two hundred and fifty years pass away, and also two hundred and sixty years.

42 A ka timata ano te wahi kino o te iwi ki te hanga hou i nga oati ngaro me nga whakakotahitanga a Karianato.

43 Me te iwi ano hoki i huaina ai ko te iwi o Niwhai, ka timata te whakapehapeha i roto i o ratou ngakau, he mea hoki na te nui whakaharahara o o ratou taonga, a ka riro ratou hei horihori hei pera me o ratou teina me nga Ramana.

44 A no tenei wa ka timata ka pouiri nga akonga mo nga hara o te ao.

45 A te pahemotanga o nga tau e toru rau, kua kino rawa raua e rua, te iwi o Niwhai me nga Ramana, kua rite tahi tetahi ki tetahi.

46 A ka horapa haere nga kai pahua Karianato ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua; kahore tahi he tangata tika, ko nga akonga anake a Ihu. A he ranea te koura me te hiriwa i purangatia ai e ratou, a mahi ana ratou i nga ahua mahi hokohoko katoa.

47 A i muri iho i te pahemotanga o nga tau e toru rau ma rima, (a i noho tonu te iwi i roto i te kino,) ka mate a Amoho, a na tona teina, na Amarona, i tuhituhi nga tuhituhinga i muri i a ia.

48 Ano ka pahemo nga tau e toru rau e rua tekau, he mea akiaki a Amarona e te Wairua Tapu, i huna ai ia i nga tuhituhinga ko ia nei he tapu; ae ra. katoa nga tuhituhinga tapu i tukua iho ki tenei whakatupuranga, ki tenei whakatupuranga, koia nei ano he tapu, a tae noa iho ki te toru rau te rua tekau o nga tau i muri i te taenga mai o te Karaiti.

49 Heoi nana aua mea i huna atu ki te Ariki, kia puta mai ano ki te toenga o te whare o Hakopa, rite tonu ki nga poropititanga me nga kupu whakaari a te Ariki. A ka penei te mutunga o te tuhituhinga a Amarona.

And it came to pass that the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

And also the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

And from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

And it came to pass that when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

And it came to pass that the robbers of Gadianton did spread over all the face of the land; and there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus. And gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

And it came to pass that after three hundred and five years had passed away, (and the people did still remain in wickedness) Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

And it came to pass that when three hundred and twenty years had passed away, Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred—yea, even all the sacred records which had been handed down from generation to generation, which were sacred—even until the three hundred and twentieth year from the coming of Christ.

And he did hide them up unto the Lord, that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob, according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord. And thus is the end of the record of Ammaron.

# Ko Te Pukapuka A Moromona.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 1

- 1 Na, tenei ahau a Moromona te tuhituhi nei i nga mea i kite ai ahau i rongu ai, a ka huaina ko te pukapuka a Moromona.
- 2 Na, e tata ana ki te takiwa i huna ai a Amaron a i nga tuhituhinga ki te Ariki, ka haere mai ia ki a au, (e tata ana ki te tekau oku tau; a kua ahua mohio ahau ki te ritenga o te whakaakoranga o toku iwi,) a ka ki mai a Amaron ki a au, taku titiro atu ki a koe, he tamaiti whai whakaaro koe, e hihiko ana te titiro;
- 3 No reira ina tata ki te rua tekau ma wha ou tau, e mea ana ahau kia maharatia e koe nga mea i kite ai koe mo te iwi nei; ano ka pera ou tau, me haere koe ki te whenua Anatumu, ki tetahi puke, tera e karangatia ko Himi; i reira hoki i whakatakatoria atu ai e ahau, ki te Ariki, nga tuhituhinga tapu katoa mo tenei iwi.
- 4 Na, ka mau koe ki nga papa o Niwhai ki a koe ano, a ko nga toenga ka waiho atu e koe ki to ratou takotoranga; na, ka whaowhao koe ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai i nga mea katoa kua kitea e koe mo tenei iwi.
- 5 Na, he uri ahau, a Moromona no Niwhai. (a ko Moromona te ingoa o toku papa.) a i mahara ahau ki nga mea i whakahau ai a Amaron ki a au.
- 6 Nawai a, ka tekau ma tahi oku tau, ka kawea ahau e toku papa ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga, ki te whenua o Harahemera;
- 7 Na, kua kapi te mata katoa o te whenua i nga whare, a ko te iwi, whano kua rite ki te onepu o te moana te tokomaha.
- 8 Nawai a, i tenei tau ka tupu te whawhai i waenganui o nga Niwhai, koia nei nga Niwhai ratou ko nga Hakopa, ko nga Hohepa, ko nga Horama; a i waenganui tenei whawhai i nga Niwhai me nga Ramana ratou ko nga Remuere, ko nga Ihimaera.
- 9 Na, i karangatia nga Ramana ratou ko nga Remuere, ko nga Ihimaera, he Ramana, a ko nga wehenga e rua i karangatia he Niwhai, he Ramana.

# The Book of Mormon

## Mormon 1

And now I, Mormon, make a record of the things which I have both seen and heard, and call it the Book of Mormon.

And about the time that Ammaron hid up the records unto the Lord, he came unto me, (I being about ten years of age, and I began to be learned somewhat after the manner of the learning of my people) and Ammaron said unto me: I perceive that thou art a sober child, and art quick to observe;

Therefore, when ye are about twenty and four years old I would that ye should remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people; and when ye are of that age go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim; and there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

And behold, ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are; and ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

And I, Mormon, being a descendant of Nephi, (and my father's name was Mormon) I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

And it came to pass that I, being eleven years old, was carried by my father into the land southward, even to the land of Zarahemla.

The whole face of the land had become covered with buildings, and the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

And it came to pass in this year there began to be a war between the Nephites, who consisted of the Nephites and the Jacobites and the Josephites and the Zoramites; and this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites.

Now the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites were called Lamanites, and the two parties were Nephites and Lamanites.

- 10 Nawai a, ka timata te whawhai i waenganui i a ratou i roto i nga rohe o Harahemera, i te taha o nga wai o Hairona.
- 11 Na, i whakaminea e nga Niwhai tetahi ope nui o nga tangata, ae ra, nuku atu i te toru tekau mano. Nawai a, he maha ano nga pakanga i whawhai ai ratou i taua tau ano, a i roto i aua pakanga ka taea nga Ramana e nga Niwhai, a he tokomaha i whakamatea.
- 12 Nawai a, whakamutu ana nga Ramana i ta ratou i whakaaro ai, a ka houhia ano te rongo i runga i te whenua, mana tonu taua houhanga rongo tē whakahekea he toto a taka noa nga tau e wha.
- 13 Heoi, i kake te kino i runga i te mata o te whenua katoa, no ka tangohia atu e te Ariki ana akonga e arohaina ana, a mutu ake te mahi merekara me te mahi whakaora, he kino hoki no te iwi.
- 14 A kahore o te Ariki homaitanga, kahore ano hoki o te Wairua Tapu taunga ki runga ki tetahi o ratou, i to ratou kino hoki me te whakaponono kore.
- 15 Na, kotahi tekau ma rima oku tau, a he tangata ahua whai whakaaro ano ahau, no reira ka tirohia ahau e te Ariki, a ka rongo ahau ka mohio hoki ki te painga o Ihu.
- 16 A ka totohe ahau ki te kauwhau ki tenei iwi, heoi kopia ana toku mangai, a riria iho ahau kei kauwhau ahau ki a ratou; ta te mea, na, i ata tutu marire ratou ki to ratou Atua, a no to ratou kino i tangohia ai nga akonga e arohaina ana i runga i te whenua.
- 17 Ko au ia i noho i roto i a ratou, otira i riria ahau kei kauwhau ki a ratou, i te pakeke hoki o o ratou ngakau; a he mea hoki mo te pakeke o o ratou ngakau i kangā ai te whenua mo ratou.
- 18 Na, ko enei kai pahua Karianato i noho nei i roto i nga Ramana, ka putaputa ki runga ki te whenua, no ka tahuri nga tangata whenua ki te huna i a ratou taonga ki roto ki te whenua; a ka karengorengo nga taonga, no te mea i kangā e te Ariki te whenua kei puritia aua mea, kei riro ano ranei i a ratou.

And it came to pass that the war began to be among them in the borders of Zarahemla, by the waters of Sidon.

And it came to pass that the Nephites had gathered together a great number of men, even to exceed the number of thirty thousand. And it came to pass that they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years, that there was no bloodshed.

But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, and the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

And there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

And I, being fifteen years of age and being somewhat of a sober mind, therefore I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

And I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; for behold they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

But I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts; and because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

And these Gadianton robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land, insomuch that the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery, because the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.



19      A he mahi makutu, he whaiwhaia, he atua maori;  
a mahia ana te mana o te mea kino i runga i te mata  
katoa o te whenua, tae noa ki te whakaritenga o nga  
kupu katoa o Apinari raua ko Hamuera, te Ramana.

And it came to pass that there were sorceries, and  
witchcrafts, and magics; and the power of the evil  
one was wrought upon all the face of the land, even  
unto the fulfilling of all the words of Abinadi, and  
also Samuel the Lamanite.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 2

- 1 Na, i taua tau ano ka timata ano he whawhai i waenganui i nga Niwhai i nga Ramana. A ahakoa toku tamarikitanga he tangata rahi ahau, koia te iwi o Niwhai i whakatu ai i ahau hei kai whakahaere mo ratou, ara, hei kai whakahaere mo a ratou taua.
- 2 No reira, i te tekau ma ono o oku tau ka haere atu ahau i mua i tetahi taua o nga Niwhai ki te tatau atu ki nga Ramana; na, i pahemo nga tau e toru rau e rua tekau ma ono.
- 3 A i te toru rau te rua tekau ma whitu o nga tau, ka huaki mai nga Ramana ki a matou i runga i te kaha nui rawa no ka whakawehi ratou i aku taua; no reira kahore ratou i pai ki te whawhai, a whati atu ana ratou ki nga kainga whaka-te-nota.
- 4 A tae ana matou ki te pa o Anakora, nohoia ana e matou te pa, whakariterite mea ana hei tiaki i a matou i nga Ramana. Nawai a, ka puta to matou kaha, ki te whakakaha i te pa, otiia he ahakoa a matou mahi whakakaha katoa, ka huaki mai nga Ramana ki a matou, a pana ana i a matou i roto i te pa.
- 5 A i pana ano ratou i a matou ki waho o te whenua o Rawiri.
- 6 A haere atu ana matou tae atu ana ki te whenua o Hohua, i roto i nga rohe i te hauauru i te taha o te takutai.
- 7 Nawai a, ka whakapaua to matou kaha ki te whakamine wawe i to matou iwi, kia whakaminea ratou ki roto ki te whakaminenga kotahi.
- 8 Otiia e kapi ana te whenua i nga kai pahua me nga Ramana: a he ahakoa te whakangaromanga nui e iri ana i runga, i toku iwi, kihai ratou i ripeneta ki a ratou mahi kino; no reira horahia ana te toto me te kikokiko, puta noa i te mata katoa o te whenua, i te taha ki nga Niwhai, i te taha ano hoki ki nga Ramana; na, ka tino tae tenei puta noa i te mata katoa o te whenua.

## Mormon 2

And it came to pass in that same year there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites. And notwithstanding I being young, was large in stature; therefore the people of Nephi appointed me that I should be their leader, or the leader of their armies.

Therefore it came to pass that in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites; therefore three hundred and twenty and six years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and twenty and seventh year the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies; therefore they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

And it came to pass that we did come to the city of Angola, and we did take possession of the city, and make preparations to defend ourselves against the Lamanites. And it came to pass that we did fortify the city with our might; but notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

And they did also drive us forth out of the land of David.

And we marched forth and came to the land of Joshua, which was in the borders west by the seashore.

And it came to pass that we did gather in our people as fast as it were possible, that we might get them together in one body.

But behold, the land was filled with robbers and with Lamanites; and notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings; therefore there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, both on the part of the Nephites and also on the part of the Lamanites; and it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

- 9 Na, kei nga Ramana tetahi kingi, ko Arona tona ingoa; a ka tatau mai ia ki a matou me tana taua e wha nei tekau ma wha mano. A ka tu atu ahau me te wha tekau ma rua mano ki a ia. Na, ka taea ia e ahau me taku taua, a whati atu ana ia i mua i a au. Na, ka oti tenei katoa te mea, a ka pahemo atu nga tau e toru rau e toru tekau.
- 10 Nawai a, ka timata nga Niwhai te ripeneta ki o ratou kino, ka tahuri hoki ki te karanga, ka pera me ta Hamuera poropiti i poropiti ai; ta te mea, na, kihai tetahi tangata i ahei te pupuri i tana mea ake, he mea na nga tangata tahae, me nga kai pahua, me nga kai kohuru, me nga atua maori, me nga mukutu i runga i te whenua.
- 11 Penei ka timata he aue, he uhunga, i runga i te whenua katoa, he mea na enei mea; a tera noa ake i roto i te iwi o Niwhai.
- 12 Na, i taku, i ta Moromona kitenga i ta ratou uhunga, me ta ratou aue me to ratou pouri i te aroaro o te Ariki, ka timata te hari o toku ngakau i roto i a au, kua mohio hoki ahau ki nga atawhainga me te manawanui o te Ariki, no reira i mahara ai ahau ka mahi tohu ia ki a ratou, a ka meinga ano ratou hei iwi tika.
- 13 Heoi, horihori noa iho tenei hari oku, no te mea ehara to ratou pouri i te mea he mea ripenatatanga i runga i te painga o te Atua, engari ia te pouri o te hunga ka oti nei te kanga, no te mea kihai te Ariki i pai kia tukua tonutia ratou kia hari i runga i te hara.
- 14 A kihai ratou i haere mai ki a Ihu i runga i nga ngakau maru me nga wairua iro, engari ka kanga ratou i te Atua, a ka hiahia ki te mate. He ahakoa ra ka totohe ano ratou ki te hoari mo te ora mo ratou.
- 15 Nawai a, ka hoki mai ano ki a au toku pouri, a ka kite ahau kua taka ke te ra tohu tangata mo ratou, mo te taha ki te tinana, ki te wairua ano hoki, no te mea i kite ahau i nga mano o ratou e haua iho ana i runga i te tututanga ki to ratou Atua, a purangatia ana ratou, ano he wairakau ki runga ki te mata o te whenua. Na, penei kua pahemo nga tau e toru rau e wha tekau ma wha.
- 16 A i te toru rau te wha tekau ma rima o nga tau, ka timata nga Niwhai te rere atu i mua i nga Ramana, a ka whaia ratou tae noa ki to ratou taenga atu ki te whenua o Hahona, katahi ano ka taea to ratou rere te whakamutu.

And now, the Lamanites had a king, and his name was Aaron; and he came against us with an army of forty and four thousand. And behold, I withstood him with forty and two thousand. And it came to pass that I beat him with my army that he fled before me. And behold, all this was done, and three hundred and thirty years had passed away.

And it came to pass that the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet; for behold no man could keep that which was his own, for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

Thus there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land because of these things, and more especially among the people of Nephi.

And it came to pass that when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

But behold this my joy was vain, for their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God; but it was rather the sorrowing of the damned, because the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

And they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits, but they did curse God, and wish to die. Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

And it came to pass that my sorrow did return unto me again, and I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually; for I saw thousands of them hewn down in open rebellion against their God, and heaped up as dung upon the face of the land. And thus three hundred and forty and four years had passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and forty and fifth year the Nephites did begin to flee before the Lamanites; and they were pursued until they came even to the land of Jashon, before it was possible to stop them in their retreat.

- 17 Na, e tata ana te pa o Hahona ki te whenna i whakatakoto ai a Amaronā i nga tuhituhinga ki te Ariki kei whakangaromia. A i haere ahau i runga i nga kupu a Amaronā, i mau ki nga papa a Niwhai, a tuhituhia ana tetahi whakaaturanga e rite ana ki te kupu a Amaronā.
- 18 A ka poto i a au te kino me nga mea whakarihariha katoa te tuhituhi ki runga ki nga papa a Niwhai; ka manawa-pa ahau ki te tuhituhi i o ratou kino me o ratou whakarihariha katoa ki runga ki enei papa, no te mea kua hono tonu te ahua o te kino me nga whakarihariha i taku tirohanga no te timatanga ra ano o toku kaha ki te matakitaki i nga huarahi o te tangata.
- 19 A aue te mate i a au, mo to ratou kino, ina hoki kua ki tonu toku ngakau i te pouri i oku ra katoa, he mea na to ratou kino; ahakoa ra e mohio ana ahau ka whakateiteitia ake ahau a te ra whakamutungā.
- 20 Na, i tenei tau ka rapua ano te iwi o Niwhai, ka panaia. A panaia haeretia ana matou tae noa ki to matou taenga atu ki te whenua whaka-te-nota, e karangatia nei ko Heme.
- 21 Nawai a, ka hangaia e matou kia kaha te pa o Heme, a whakamine mai hoki i to matou iwi ki roto, ara nga mea e taea ana te whakamine, me kore pea e ahei te whakaora i a ratou i te whakangaromanga.
- 22 Nawai a, i te toru rau te wha tekau ma ono o nga tau, ka timata ano ratou te huaki mai ki a matou.
- 23 A ka korero ahau ki toku iwi, ka takare tonu ki te akiaki i a ratou, kia tu maia atu ki mua i nga Ramana ki te whawhai mo a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, me a ratou whare, me o ratou kainga.
- 24 A na aku kupu i whakaoho ratou kia kaha, no ka kore o ratou rerenga atu i mua i nga Ramana, engari ka tu i runga i te maia nui hei tu atu ki a ratou.
- 25 Nawai a, ka totohe atu matou me tetahi taua e toru tekau nga mano, ki tetahi taua e rima tekau nga mano. Na, he nui to matou u ki te tu atu ki mua i o ratou aroaro, no ka rere atu ratou i mua i o matou aroaro.

And now, the city of Jashon was near the land where Ammaron had deposited the records unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed. And behold I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

And upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations; but upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations, for behold, a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

And wo is me because of their wickedness; for my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days; nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

And it came to pass that in this year the people of Nephi again were hunted and driven. And it came to pass that we were driven forth until we had come northward to the land which was called Shem.

And it came to pass that we did fortify the city of Shem, and we did gather in our people as much as it were possible, that perhaps we might save them from destruction.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and forty and sixth year they began to come upon us again.

And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

And my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor, insomuch that they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

And it came to pass that we did contend with an army of thirty thousand against an army of fifty thousand. And it came to pass that we did stand before them with such firmness that they did flee from before us.

26      Ano ka rere atu ratou, ka whaiwhai matou me a matou taua i a ratou a ka tutaki ano ki a ratou, a taea ana e matou; otira kahore i a matou te kaha o te Ariki; ae ra, i mahue noa iho matou ki a matou ano, a kahore te Wairua o te Ariki i noho i a matou: no reira kua ngoikore matou kua rite ki o matou teina.

27      Me toku ngakau ano i pouri i te aitua nui kua pa nei ki toku iwi; he mea na to ratou kino me to ratou whakarihariha. Otira i haere atu matou hei tatau atu ki nga Ramana, me nga kai pahua Karianato, a nohoia ana ano e matou o matou whenua tupu.

28      Na, kua pahemo te toru rau te wha tekau ma iwa o nga tau. A i te toru rau te rima tekau o nga tau, ka hohou matou i te rongo ki nga Ramana me nga kai pahua Karianato, a no reira i wehewehea ai o matou whenua tupu.

29      Homai ana e nga Ramana mo matou te whenua whaka-te-nota; ae ra, tae noa ki te whenua whaiti e tutuki atu ana ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga. A ka hoatu e matou mo nga Ramana te whenua whaka-tetonga.

And it came to pass that when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them; nevertheless the strength of the Lord was not with us; yea, we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us; therefore we had become weak like unto our brethren.

And my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people, because of their wickedness and their abominations. But behold, we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

And the three hundred and forty and ninth year had passed away. And in the three hundred and fiftieth year we made a treaty with the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, in which we did get the lands of our inheritance divided.

And the Lamanites did give unto us the land northward, yea, even to the narrow passage which led into the land southward. And we did give unto the Lamanites all the land southward.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 3

- 1 Na, kihai nga Ramana i haere mai ki te whawhai ano, a pahemo noa nga tau kotahi tekau. A, naku i whakamahi toku iwi, nga Niwhai, hei whakapai i o ratou whenua me a ratou patu mo te takiwa whawhai.
- 2 Nawai a, a ka mea mai te Ariki ki a au, Karanga atu ki tenei iwi, ripeneta koutou, haere mai hoki ki a au, kia rumakina koutou me te whakatu ano i toku hahi, a ka tohungia koutou.
- 3 Na, ka karanga atu ahau ki tenei iwi, heoi he mea maumau ia, kahore hoki ratou i whakaaro na te Ariki i tohu ratou, i tuku hoki ki a ratou he takiwa mo te ripeneta. Na, ka whakapakeke ratou i o ratou ngakau ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua.
- 4 Nawai a, i muri iho i te pahemotanga o tenei te tekau o nga tau, ara, huihuiua katoatia no te taenga mai ra ano o te Karaiti, e toru rau e ono tekau tau, ka tuku pukapuka mai te kingi o nga Ramana ki a au, a na reira ahau i mohio ai e whakariterite ana ratou kia haere mai ano ki te whawhai ki a matou.
- 5 Heoi, ka mea ahau i toku iwi kia huihui tahi ki te whenua Whakangaromanga, ki tetahi pa i roto i nga rohe, i te taha o te whenua whaiti e takoto atu ana ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga.
- 6 A ka whakatu matou i a matou taua i reira hei arai mo nga taua a nga Ramana kei nohoia e ratou etahi o o matou whenua; koia ka hanga pa whawhai nei matou i runga i o matou kaha katoa hei arai i a ratou.
- 7 Nawai a, i te toru rau te ono tekau ma tahi o nga tau, ka haere mai nga Ramana ki raro ki te pa Whakangaromanga, ki te whawhai ki a matou; a i taua tau ano, ka taea ratou e matou no ka hoki ano ratou ki to ratou whenua ake.
- 8 A i te toru rau te ono tekau ma rua o nga tau, ka haere mai ano ratou ki te whawhai. Na, ka taea ano ratou e matou, he tokomaha o ratou i patua, ko o ratou tupapaku i maka ki roto ki te moana.
- 9 Heoi, na tenei mea nui i mea ai toku iwi, nga Niwhai, ka timata ratou ki te whakamanamana ki to ratou ake kaha, a ka anga ka oati i te aroaro o nga rangi, tera ratou e ngaki mate mo te toto o o ratou teina i whakamatea e o ratou hoa riri.

## Mormon 3

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did not come to battle again until ten years more had passed away. And behold, I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

And it came to pass that the Lord did say unto me: Cry unto this people—Repent ye, and come unto me, and be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

And I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain; and they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them, and granted unto them a chance for repentance. And behold they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that after this tenth year had passed away, making, in the whole, three hundred and sixty years from the coming of Christ, the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me, which gave unto me to know that they were preparing to come again to battle against us.

And it came to pass that I did cause my people that they should gather themselves together at the land Desolation, to a city which was in the borders, by the narrow pass which led into the land southward.

And there we did place our armies, that we might stop the armies of the Lamanites, that they might not get possession of any of our lands; therefore we did fortify against them with all our force.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and first year the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle against us; and it came to pass that in that year we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own lands again.

And in the three hundred and sixty and second year they did come down again to battle. And we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them, and their dead were cast into the sea.

And now, because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had done, they began to boast in their own strength, and began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain by their enemies.

10 A i oatia e ratou nga rangi, me te torona o te Atua, tera ratou e haere atu ki te whawhai ki o ratou hoa riri, ki te hatepe atu i a ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua.

11 Nawai a, ka tino whakakore ahau, a Moromona no taua takiwa mai, kia waiho hei rangatira, hei kai whakahaere mo tenei iwi, he kino hoki he whakariharaha no ratou.

12 Nana, naku i arahi ratou, he ahakoa o ratou kino, he maha ano aku arahanga i a ratou ki te whawhai, a i aroha hoki ahau ki a ratou, ki te ritenga o to te Atua aroha i roto nei i a au, i runga i te paunga katoatanga o toku ngakau; i ringihia atu hoki toku wairua i te ra roa i runga i te inoi ki toku Atua mo ratou; otira he mea motu ke ia i te whakapono; he pakeke hoki no o ratou ngakau.

13 Na, e toru aku whakaputanga i a ratou ki waho i nga ringaringa o o ratou hoa riri, a kihai ratou i ripeneta ki o ratou hara.

14 Ano ka oatitia e ratou nga mea katoa i whakakahoretia nei e to tatou Ariki, e to tatou Kai-whakaora, e Ihu Karaiti, kia haere ratou ki runga ki o ratou hoa riri ki te whawhai, ki te ngaki mate mo te toto o o ratou teina, nana, ka puta mai te reo o te Ariki ki a au, ka mea;

15 Maku te rapu utu, maku te hoatu utu; a mo tenei iwi kihai i ripeneta i te mea kua whakaputa ahau i a ratou, nana, ka hatepea atu ratou i runga i te mata o te whenua.

16 Na, ka tino whakakahore rawa ahau ki te haere ki runga ki te tatau atu ki oku hoa riri; a meinga ana e ahau ta te Ariki i whakahau ai ki a au; na, ka tu mangere noa iho ahau ano he kai titiro hei kai whakaatu ki te ao i nga mea i kite ai ahau i rongu ai, e rite ana ki te whakaaturanga a te Wairua nana i whakapuaki nga mea e puta mai ana.

17 No reira ka tuhituhi atu nei ahau ki a koutou, ki nga Tauwiwi, ki a koutou ano hoki, ki te whare o Ihairaira, ina timata te mahi, e tata ana koutou te whakariterite mo te hoki ki to koutou whenua tupu;

18 Ae ra, ka tuhituhi atu ahau ki nga topito katoa o te whenua; ae ra, ki a koutou, ki nga hapu kotahi tekau ma rua o Ihairaira, e whakawakia kia rite ki a koutou mahi, e te Tekau ma Rua i whiriwhiria e Ihu hei akonga mana i te whenua o Hiruharama.

And they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God, that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and would cut them off from the face of the land.

And it came to pass that I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a commander and a leader of this people, because of their wickedness and abomination.

Behold, I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness I had led them many times to battle, and had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me, with all my heart; and my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day long for them; nevertheless, it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

And thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies, and they have repented not of their sins.

And when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of their brethren, behold the voice of the Lord came unto me, saying:

Vengeance is mine, and I will repay; and because this people repented not after I had delivered them, behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

And it came to pass that I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies; and I did even as the Lord had commanded me; and I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

Therefore I write unto you, Gentiles, and also unto you, house of Israel, when the work shall commence, that ye shall be about to prepare to return to the land of your inheritance;

Yea, behold, I write unto all the ends of the earth; yea, unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

19 Ka tuhituhi ano hoki ahau ki te toenga o tenei iwi, ki te hunga e whakawakia e te Tekau ma Rua i whiriwhiri ai a Ihu i tenei whenua; a ka whakawakia ratou e tera atu Tekau ma Rua i whiriwhiri ai a Ihu i te whenua o Hiruharama.

20 Na, he mea whakamarama mai ki a au e te Wairua; koia ahau ka tuhituhi atu nei ki a koutou katoa. A na konei ano ahau i tuhituhi atu ai ki a koutou, kia mohio ai koutou me tu koutou katoa ki mua i te nohoanga whakawa o te Karaiti, ae ra, ia wairua, ia wairua o nga tangata o te whanau o Arama; na, me tu koutou kia whakawakia mo a koutou mahi, ahakoa paiahakoa kino;

21 Kia whakapono ai ano hoki koutou ki te rongopai o Ihu Karaiti, hei waenganui i a koutou a taihoa; kia whiwhi ai ano hoki nga Hurai, te iwi kawenata a te Ariki, ki etahi atu kai whakaatu haunga ra tera i kite ai ratou i rongopai, mo Ihu i patua nei e ratou, ko ia te tino Karaiti, ko te tino Atua;

22 Heoi e mea ana ahau kia kukume ahau i a koutou katoa, i nga topito o te whenua, kia ripeneta, kia whakariterite hoki mo te tu ki mua i te nohoanga whakawa o te Karaiti.

And I write also unto the remnant of this people, who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land; and they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

And these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me; therefore I write unto you all. And for this cause I write unto you, that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, yea, every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam; and ye must stand to be judged of your works, whether they be good or evil;

And also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you; and also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

And I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.



## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 4

- 1 Na, i te toru rau te ono tekau ma toru o nga tau, ka haere atu nga Niwhai me a ratou taua ki runga ki te whawhai ki nga Ramana, ki waho o te whenua Whakangaromanga.
- 2 Nawai a, ka panaia mai nga taua a nga Niwhai kia hoki ano ki te whenua Whakangaromanga. A i a ratou e mauui ana, ka huakina e tetahi taua hou a nga Ramana; na, he nanakia rawa te riri, no ka nohoia e nga Ramana te pa Whakangaromanga, a he tokomaha o nga Niwhai i patua, he tokomaha ano hoki i riro herehere;
- 3 A ka oma atu te morehu a uru atu ana ki nga tangata o te pa Teanakumu. Na, e takoto ana te pa Teanakumu i nga rohe i te taha o te takutai: e patata ana ano hoki ki te pa Whakangaromanga.
- 4 Na, he mea na te haerenga atu o nga taua a nga Niwhai ki nga Ramana, i patupatua ai ratou: me i kore hoki tera, penei kua kore nga Ramana e ahei te whai kaha ki a ratou.
- 5 Heoi ka mau te hunga kino i nga whakawakanga a te Atua; ma te hunga kino hoki e whiu te hunga kino: no te mea na te hunga kino i whakaoho nga ngakau o nga tamariki a te tangata kia whakaheke toto.
- 6 Nawai a, ka whakariterite nga Ramana mo te haere mai ki te tu mai i te pa Teanakumu.
- 7 A i te toru rau te ono tekau ma wha o nga tau ka huaki mai nga Ramana ki te pa Teanakumu, kia nohoia hoki e ratou te pa Teanakumu.
- 8 Nawai a, ka taea ratou, ka panaia e nga Niwhai kia hoki atu. Ano ka kite nga Niwhai i nga Ramana kua panaia e ratou, ka whakamanamana ano ratou i runga i to ratou kaha; a ka haere atu ratou i runga i to ratou ake uaua, a ka noho ano i te pa Whakangaromanga.
- 9 Na, ka oti enei mea katoa te mahi, kua patupatua hoki nga mano o tetahi taha, o tetahi taha, o nga Niwhai, o nga Ramana ano hoki.

## Mormon 4

And now it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and third year the Nephites did go up with their armies to battle against the Lamanites, out of the land Desolation.

And it came to pass that the armies of the Nephites were driven back again to the land of Desolation. And while they were yet weary, a fresh army of the Lamanites did come upon them; and they had a sore battle, insomuch that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and did slay many of the Nephites, and did take many prisoners.

And the remainder did flee and join the inhabitants of the city Teancum. Now the city Teancum lay in the borders by the seashore; and it was also near the city Desolation.

And it was because the armies of the Nephites went up unto the Lamanites that they began to be smitten; for were it not for that, the Lamanites could have had no power over them.

But, behold, the judgments of God will overtake the wicked; and it is by the wicked that the wicked are punished; for it is the wicked that stir up the hearts of the children of men unto bloodshed.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did make preparations to come against the city Teancum.

And it came to pass in the three hundred and sixty and fourth year the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum, that they might take possession of the city Teancum also.

And it came to pass that they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites. And when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength; and they went forth in their own might, and took possession again of the city Desolation.

And now all these things had been done, and there had been thousands slain on both sides, both the Nephites and the Lamanites.

- 10      Nawai a, ka pahemo te toru rau te ono tekau ma ono o nga tau, a ka huaki mai ano nga Ramana ki nga Niwhai ki te whawhai; he ahakoa kihai nga Niwhai i ripeneta ki te kino i mahia e ratou, otira ka u tonu ki o ratou kino i nga wa katoa.
- 11      A e kore te arero e ahei te whakaatu, te tangata ranei i te tino whakaaturanga o te weriweri, o nga toto me nga kikokiko i roto i te iwi; o nga Niwhai me nga Ramana ano hoki: kua pakeke hoki nga ngakau katoa, a e ahuaireka ana ratou ki te whakaheke toto i nga wa katoa.
- 12      A kahore he kino nui i roto i nga tamariki katoa a Rihai, i roto ranei i te whare katoa o Iharaira, ki ta nga kupu a te Ariki, he rite ki te kino i roto nei i tenei iwi.
- 13      Nawai a, ka riro i nga Ramana te pa Whakangaromanga, no te mea nui atu to ratou tokomahatanga i to nga Niwhai.
- 14      Ka haere atu ano hoki ratou hei tatau atu ki te pa Teanakumu, a pana atu ana i nga tangata whenua ki waho, he maha ano hoki i riro herehere o nga wahine, o nga tamariki, a patua ana ratou hei patunga tapu ki o ratou atua whakapakoko.
- 15      Nawai a, i te toru rau te ono tekau ma whitu o nga tau, e riri ana nga Niwhai mo nga Ramana i patu i a ratou wahine me a ratou tamariki, a ka haere atu ratou ki te tatau ki nga Ramana i runga i te riri nui, no ka taea ano nga Ramana e ratou, a ka panaia ano ki waho o o ratou whenua;
- 16      A kihai nga Ramana i haere mai ano hei tatauranga ki nga Niwhai, tae noa ki te toru rau, ki te whitu tekau ma rima o nga tau.
- 17      A i tenei tau ka haere mai ratou ki raro me a ratou ope katoa hei tatauranga ki nga Niwhai; a kihai ratou i taua i te nui hoki o to ratou tokomahatanga.
- 18      A no tenei takiwa mai kahore o nga Niwhai kaha i whiwhi ai ratou ki runga ki nga Ramana, engari ka timata kia hatepea me he tomairangi i mua i te ra.
- 19      A ka haere mai nga Ramana ki raro hei tatauranga mai ki te pa Whakangaromanga; na, i whawhaitia tetahi whawhai nanakia rawa atu i runga i te whenua Whakangaromanga, a taea ana nga Niwhai e ratou.

And it came to pass that the three hundred and sixty and sixth year had passed away, and the Lamanites came again upon the Nephites to battle; and yet the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

And it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites; and every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

And there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, and this because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

And they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and sixty and seventh year, the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children, that they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger, insomuch that they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

And the Lamanites did not come again against the Nephites until the three hundred and seventy and fifth year.

And in this year they did come down against the Nephites with all their powers; and they were not numbered because of the greatness of their number.

And from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come down against the city Desolation; and there was an exceedingly sore battle fought in the land Desolation, in the which they did beat the Nephites.

- 20 A whati atu ana ano ratou i to ratou aroaro, haere ana ki te pa Poata; ki reira tu atu ai ki nga Ramana i runga i te maia nui, no ka kore ratou e taea e nga Ramana, a te tuarua o nga haerenga mai katahi ka taea.
- 21 Ano ka haere mai ratou, te tuarua o nga haerenga, ka whakawhatia nga Niwhai, ka patua, a he nui rawa te whakamatenga; ka patua ano a ratou wahine me a ratou tamariki hei patunga tapu ki nga whakapakoko.
- 22 Nawai a, ka rere atu ano nga Niwhai i mua i a ratou, me te mau atu ano i nga tangata whenua katoa, i roto i nga kainga, i roto ano i nga pa.
- 23 Na, ka kite ahau, a Moromona, i nga Ramana e tata ana te turaki i te whenua, koia ahau ka haere ai ki te puke Himi, a ka keru ake i nga tuhituhinga katoa i huna ai a Amaron ki te Ariki.

And they fled again from before them, and they came to the city Boaz; and there they did stand against the Lamanites with exceeding boldness, in-  
somuch that the Lamanites did not beat them until they had come again the second time.

And when they had come the second time, the Nephites were driven and slaughtered with an ex-  
ceedingly great slaughter; their women and their children were again sacrificed unto idols.

And it came to pass that the Nephites did again flee from before them, taking all the inhabitants with them, both in towns and villages.

And now I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land, therefore I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 5

- 1 Nawai a, ka haere atu ahau ki roto ki nga Niwhai, ka ripeneta hoki ki te oati i oati ai ahau kia kore atu aku awhinatanga i a ratou; na, ka homai ano e ratou maku e whakahau i a ratou taua; no te mea ka titiro mai ratou ki a au me te mea e ahei ana i a au te whakaora i a ratou i o ratou tukinotanga.
- 2 Heoi kahore oku tumanako atu, no te mea kua mohio ahau ki nga whakawakanga a te Ariki e tau ai ki runga ki a ratou; ina hoki kahore ratou i ripeneta ki o ratou kino, otia i totohe ki te ora mo ratou, a kihai ratou i karanga ki a Ia, nana nei ratou i hanga.
- 3 Nawai a, ka huaki mai nga Ramana ki a matou i a matou ka oma atu ki te pa o Horano; otira i whati ratou, a kihai i riro i a ratou te pa i taua takiwa.
- 4 Nawai a, ka huaki mai ano ratou ki a matou, a ka puritia e matou te pa. Ko era atu pa ano i puritia e nga Niwhai, a na aua piringa kaha i araia atu ai ratou te ahei i a ratou te tomo ki roto ki te whenua e takoto atu i mua i a matou ki te whakamate i nga tangata o to matou whenua.
- 5 Heoi ko nga whenua katoa i kapea ai e matou, a kihai i whakaminea o reira tangata ki roto, ka whakamatea e nga Ramana, a ko o ratou taone, o ratou kainga, me o ratou pa i tahuna ki te ahi; na, ka pera te pahemotanga o te toru rau o te whitu tekau ma iwa o nga tau.
- 6 Nawai a, i te toru rau te waru tekau o nga tau, ka haere mai ano nga Ramana ki te whawhai ki a matou, a ka tu maia atu matou ki a ratou; heoi he mea maumau ia, he nui hoki no to ratou tokomahatanga i takatakahia ai te iwi o Niwhai e o ratou waewae.
- 7 Nawai a, ka oma matou, a ko te hunga he tere rawa to ratou oma i to nga Ramana i mawhiti, ko te hunga ia kihai nei i nui atu to ratou oma te tere i to nga Ramana, i haua iho i whakamatea.

## Mormon 5

And it came to pass that I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made that I would no more assist them; and they gave me command again of their armies, for they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

But behold, I was without hope, for I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them; for they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

And it came to pass that the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan; but behold, they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

And it came to pass that they came against us again, and we did maintain the city. And there were also other cities which were maintained by the Nephites, which strongholds did cut them off that they could not get into the country which lay before us, to destroy the inhabitants of our land.

But it came to pass that whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites, and their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire; and thus three hundred and seventy and nine years passed away.

And it came to pass that in the three hundred and eightieth year the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly; but it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

And it came to pass that we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites' did escape, and those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites' were swept down and destroyed.

8 Na, kahore oku, o Moromona hiahia ki te whakaoho i te wairua o te tangata i runga i te maka atu ki o ratou aroaro i tetahi tirohanga weriweri o te toto me te kikokiko penei me te mea i takoto ai ki mua mai i oku kanohi, otira e mohio ana ahau he pono me whakaatu enei mea, me nga mea katoa ano hoki e huna ana ka hurahia ki runga ki nga whare,

9 Me tetahi matauranga ano hoki ki enei mea me puta mai ki te toenga o tenei iwi, ki nga Tauwiwi ano hoki, i ki ai te Ariki ma ratou e whakamarara tenei iwi, a ka kiia tenei iwi hei rukenga i roto i a ratou, no reira ka tuhituhia e ahau tetahi whakapototanga paku nei, te whai maia hei tino whakapau rawa i nga mea katoa i kite ai ahau te whakaatu, he mea hoki na te whakahau i whakahaua ai ahau, kei nui rawa hoki o koutou pouri i te kino o te iwi nei.

10 Nana, ka korero ahau i tenei ki o ratou uri, ki nga Tauwiwi ano hoki, e matapopore nei ki te whare o Iharaira, e whakaaro nei e matau ana ki te wahi e puta mai ai o ratou manaakitanga.

11 No te mea e mohio ana ahau ka pouri nga pera i te aitua o te whare o Iharaira; ae ra, ka pouri o ratou ngakau i te whakangaromanga o tenei iwi; ka pouri ratou mo tenei iwi kihai i ripeneta, kia awhitia ai ratou e nga ringaringa o Ihu.

12 Na, e tuhituhia ana enei mea ki te toenga o te whare o Hakopa; a ko te ahua tenei e tuhituhia nei enei mea, no te mea e mohio ana te Atua e kore e whakaputaina e te kino enei mea ki a ratou; a ko te tikanga tenei kia hunaia atu aua mea ki te Ariki, kia puta mai a tona wa e rite ai.

13 A ko te whakahau tenei i whakahaua mai ai ki a au; a ka puta mai enei mea rite tonu ki te whakahaunga a te Ariki, ina tika ki tana titiro i runga i tona whai whakaaro.

14 Nana, ka puta atu ano aua mea ki te hunga whakapono-kore o nga Hurai; a ma konei ano e haere ai: ara kia whakaaturia ai ki a ratou a Ihu Karaiti ko ia te Tama a te Atua ora; kia whakaputaina ai e te Matua ma roto i tana i aroha nui ai tana whakaaro nui mau tonu, hei whakahokinga i nga Hurai, ara, te whare katoa o Iharaira, ki to ratou whenua tupu i hoatu e te Ariki, e to ratou Atua, mo ratou, hei whakaritenga i tana kawenata.

And now behold, I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes; but I, knowing that these things must surely be made known, and that all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops—

And also that a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles, who the Lord hath said should scatter this people, and this people should be counted as naught among them—therefore I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received, and also that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

And now behold, this I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

For I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel; yea, they will sorrow for the destruction of this people; they will sorrow that this people had not repented that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

Now these things are written unto the remnant of the house of Jacob; and they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them; and they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

And this is the commandment which I have received; and behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

And behold, they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews; and for this intent shall they go—that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them, unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

15 Kia tino whakapono ai ano hoki te uri o tenei iwi ki tana rongopai e puta atu ai ki a ratou i nga Tauwiwi; no te mea ka whakamararatia tenei iwi, ka meinga hei iwi parauri, hei mea whakarihariha ko tona whakarihariha kihai rawa i mohiotia te pera i roto i a matou i mua; ae ra, nui atu i tetahi mea i roto i nga Ramana; mo to ratou whakapono-kore hoki me o ratou karakia ki nga whakapokoko te take.

16 Ta te mea, na, kua mutu noa atu ta te Wairua o te Ariki akiaki i o ratou matua; a motu ke ana ratou i te Karaiti raua ko te Atua i te ao nei, a kahakina ana hoki ratou me he papapa witi i mua i te hau.

17 He iwi ahuaureka ratou i mua, i a ratou hoki a te Karaiti hei hepara mo ratou; ae ra, i arahina ratou e te Atua, e te Matua.

18 Tena ko tenei, e kahakihakina ana ratou e Hatana me he papapa witi e kahakihakina ana i mua i te hau, ara, me he kaupuke e akiakina ana e nga ngaru, kahore ona ra, kahore ona punga, kahore hoki ona urunga; waihoki ko ratou e rite tonu ana ki taua mea.

19 Nana, kua waiho e te Ariki o ratou manaakitanga i ahei ai i a ratou te whiwhi i runga i te whenua, mo nga Tauwiwi tera e noho i te whenua.

20 Otiia, tenei ake ka panaia ratou, ka whakamararatia e nga Tauwiwi, a kia aia ratou, kia whakamararatia e nga Tauwiwi ko reira te Ariki mahara ai ki te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki a Aperahama, ki te whare katoa ano hoki o Iharaira.

21 Ka mahara ano te Ariki ki nga inoinga o te hunga tika i inoitia ake ai mo ratou.

22 Tena, e nga Tauwiwi, ma te aha e ahei ai i a koutou te tu ki mua i te kaha o te Atua, ki te kore koutou e ripeneta me te tahuri mai i o koutou huarahi kino!

23 Kahore oti koutou e mohio kei roto koutou kei nga ringaringa o te Atua? Kahore oti koutou e mohio kei a ia te kaha katoa, a ma tana whakahau nui e pokaia ai te whenua ano he pukapuka?

And also that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles; for this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us, yea, even that which hath been among the Lamanites, and this because of their unbelief and idolatry.

For behold, the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world; and they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd; yea, they were led even by God the Father.

But now, behold, they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her; and even as she is, so are they.

And behold, the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

But behold, it shall come to pass that they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; and after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

And also the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

And then, O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

24 Mo konei ra, ripeneta koutou me te whakaiti i a koutou ano i tona aroaro, kei puta mai ia i runga i te tika hei whakahe i a koutou; kei haereere tetahi toenga o te uri o Hakopa i roto i a koutou, ano he raiona, a ka haehae i a koutou, te ai hoki he kai whakaora.

Therefore, repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you—lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 6

- 1 Heoi ka whakamutu ahau i taku tuhituhinga mo te whakangaromanga o toku iwi, o nga Niwhai. Nawai a, ka haere atu matou i mua i nga Ramana.
- 2 A naku, na Moromona, i tuhituhi tetahi pukapuka ki te kingi o nga Ramana, he hiahia ki a ia kia tukua ki a matou kia huihuia atu to matou iwi e matou ki te whenua o Kumora, ki te taha o tetahi maunga e karangatia ra ko Kumora, ki reira matou hoatu whawhai ai ki a ratou.
- 3 Nawai a, ka whakaaetia mai e te kingi o nga Ramana taku mea i hiahia ai ahau.
- 4 A haere atu ana matou ki te whenua o Kumora, whakaturia ana o matou teneti e matou awhio noa i te puke Kumora; na, he whenua tera no nga wai maha, no nga awa, me nga matapuna wai; a i konei i tumanako ai matou kia whiwhi i tetahi kaha ki runga ki nga Ramana.
- 5 Ano ka pahemo nga tau e toru rau e waru tekau ma wha, kua huihuia katoatia e matou te morehu o to matou iwi ki te whenua Kumora.
- 6 Nawai a, ka oti i a matou to matou iwi katoa te huihui kia kotahi ki te whenua o Kumora, nana, kua koroua ahau, a Moromona; kua mohio hoki ahau ko te tautohetohenga whakamutunga tenei mo toku iwi; kua whakahaua hoki e te Ariki kia kaua ahau e tuku kia taka nga tuhituhinga i tukua iho ai e o matou tupuna, koia nei he tapu, ki roto ki nga ringaringa o nga Ramana, (no te mea ka whakangaromia e nga Ramana,) no reira ka tuhia e ahau tenei tuhituhinga ki nga papa a Niwhai, a ka hunaia ki roto ki te puke Kumora nga tuhituhinga katoa i tukua mai nei ki a au e te ringaringa o te Ariki, ko enei papa torutoru i hoatu e ahau ki taku tama, ki a Moronai.
- 7 Na, ka tirohia atu e toku iwi, me a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki, nga taua a nga Ramana e haere mai ana ki a ratou: a ka whanga atu ki a ratou i runga i taua wehi weriweri ki te mate e whakaki nei i nga ngakau o te hunga kino katoa.
- 8 Nawai a, ka haere mai ratou ki te whawhai mai ki a matou, a ki tonu ana nga wairua katoa i te wehi, i te nui hoki o to ratou tokomahatanga.

## Mormon 6

And now I finish my record concerning the destruction of my people, the Nephites. And it came to pass that we did march forth before the Lamanites.

And I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites, and desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

And it came to pass that the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I desired.

And it came to pass that we did march forth to the land of Cumorah, and we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah; and it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains; and here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

And when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto the land of Cumorah.

And it came to pass that when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of Cumorah, behold I, Mormon, began to be old; and knowing it to be the last struggle of my people, and having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the records which had been handed down by our fathers, which were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites, (for the Lamanites would destroy them) therefore I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

And it came to pass that my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them; and with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

And it came to pass that they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.



9 A ka kokiritia mai toku iwi e ratou ki te hoari, ki te kopere, ki te pere, ki te toki, me nga tu patu whawhai katoa.

10 Nawai a, ka haua iho oku tangata, ae ra, toku tekau mano i ahau, a i tu ano ahau, hinga ana i waenganui i a ratou; a kapea ana ahau e ratou te whakamatea rawatia.

11 Ano ka riro ratou ra waenga me te patu iho i toku iwi katoa haunga ra nga mea e rua tekau ma wha o matou, (ko taku tama ano ko Moronai tetahi o aua tangata,) a ko matou i ora i muri i te whakamatenga o to matou iwi, na, i te aonga ake, i te mea kua hoki nga Ramana ki o ratou puni, ka titiro matou i runga i te tihi o te puke Kumora, i nga mano kotahi tekau o toku iwi kua haua iho, he mea arahi naku ki mua;

12 A, ka kite ano matou i te tekau mano o toku iwi i arahina e taku tama, e Moronai.

13 Na, kua hinga te tekau nga mano o Kikirona, me ia ano hoki i waenganui;

14 A, kua hinga a Rama, me tana tekau mano; kua hinga a Kirikara me tana tekau mano; kua hinga a Rimiha me tana tekau mano; kua hinga a Honeama me tana tekau mano; me Kameniha, me Moroniha, me Anatianuma, me Hipiroma, me Heme, me Hoha, kua hinga me tana tekau mano, me tana tekau mano.

15 Na, kotahi atu tekau kua hinga i te hoari, me tana tekau mano, me tana tekau mano: ae ra, kua hinga taku iwi katoa, haunga taua rua tekau ma wha i ahau, me etahi torutoru i mawhiti atu ki nga kainga whaka-te-tonga, me etahi torutoru i puta atu ki nga Ramana, a ko o ratou kikokiko, me o ratou wheua, me o ratou toto e takoto ana i runga i te mata o te whenua, he mea waiho e nga ringaringa o te hunga nana ratou i patu, kia pirau i runga i te whenua, kia ngahorohoro kia hoki ki to ratou whaea, ki te whenua.

16 A i haehaetia toku wairua e te mamae, he mea no te whakamatenga o toku iwi, a ka karanga ahau,

17 Aue, e koutou, e nga mea ataahua, na te aha i ahei ai i a koutou te kotiti ke atu i nga huarahi a te Ariki! Aue, e koutou, e nga mea ataahua, na te aha i ahei ai i a koutou te whakaparahako ki taua Ihu i tu ra me nga ringaringa e tuwhera ana hei awahi mai i a koutou!

And it came to pass that they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

And it came to pass that my men were hewn down, yea, even my ten thousand who were with me, and I fell wounded in the midst; and they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

And when they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us, (among whom was my son Moroni) and we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah, the ten thousand of my people who were hewn down, being led in the front by me.

And we also beheld the ten thousand of my people who were led by my son Moroni.

And behold, the ten thousand of Gidgiddonah had fallen, and he also in the midst.

And Lamah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Gilgal had fallen with his ten thousand; and Limhah had fallen with his ten thousand; and Jeneum had fallen with his ten thousand; and Cumenihah, and Moronihah, and Antionum, and Shiblom, and Shem, and Josh, had fallen with their ten thousand each.

And it came to pass that there were ten more who did fall by the sword, with their ten thousand each; yea, even all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites, had fallen; and their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

And my soul was rent with anguish, because of the slain of my people, and I cried:

O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord! O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

- 18 Nana, me i kore koutou i mea i tenei, penei kua kore koutou i hinga. Na, kua hinga koutou, a e aue ana ahau i to koutou ngaronga.
- 19 Aue, e koutou, e nga tamariki ataahua, e nga tamahine ataahua, e nga matua, me nga whaea, e nga tane, me nga wahine, e koutou, e nga mea ataahua, na te aha ra i ahei ai i a koutou te hinga?
- 20 Heoi kua riro atu koutou, a e kore koutou e taea e aku aue te whakahoki mai;
- 21 A meake puta mai te ra me kakahu te mate-kore, e o koutou hanga matemate nei, a ko enei tinana e horo nei inaianei i te pirau meake ka meinga hei tinana pirau-kore; ko reira tu ai koutou ki mua i te nohoanga whakawa o te Karaiti, kia whakaritea to koutou whakawa kia rite ki a koutou mahi; a, ki te mea he hunga tika koutou, katahi koutou ka manaakitia ngatahitia me o koutou tupuna kua riro atu i mua i a koutou.
- 22 Aue, me i ripeneta koutou i te mea kahore ano i pa tenei mate nui ki a koutou. Ko tenei kua riro koutou, a, e mohio ana te Matua, ae ra, te Matua Ora Tonu o te rangi ki to koutou ahua; kei tana tika hoki me tana tohu tangata te ritenga mo tana e mea ai ki a koutou.

Behold, if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen. But behold, ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

But behold, ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

And the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, and these bodies which are now mouldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies; and then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ, to be judged according to your works; and if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you. But behold, ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state; and he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 7

- 1 Na, e mea ana ahau kia korero i etahi kupu inaianei ki te morehu o tenei iwi, ki te hunga i tohungia, ki te mea ka hoatu te Atua i aku kupu ki a ratou, kia matau ai ratou ki nga mea o o ratou tupuna; ae ra, he korero taku ki a koutou, e te toenga o te whare o Iharaira; a, ko nga kupu enei e korero atu nei ahau,
- 2 Kia mohio mai koutou no te whare koutou o Iharaira.
- 3 Kia mohio mai koutou me tae koutou ki te ripenetanga, ki te kore, e kore koutou e whakaorangia.
- 4 Kia mohio mai koutou me whakatakoto iho a koutou patu whawhai e koutou, a kauaka e ahuaureka atu ano i nga ra e takoto ake nei ki te whakaheke toto, ki te hapai ano i aua mea, ki te kore koutou e whakahaua e te Atua.
- 5 Kia mohio mai koutou me tae koutou kite matauranga ki o koutou tupuna, me te ripeneta ano ki o koutou hara katoa me a koutou kino, me te whakapono ki a Ihu Karaiti, ko ia ano te Tama a te Atua, a, i whakamatea ia e nga Hurai, a, he mea ano na te kaha o te Matua i ara ai ano ia, na reira i whiwhi ai ia ki te wikitoria ki runga ki te urupa; a, i horomia ake ano hoki te wero o te mate i roto i a ia.
- 6 A, e puta ake ana i a ia, te aranga o te hunga mate, ma reira e ara ai te tangata kia tu ki mua i tona nohoanga whakawa.
- 7 A, i puta ake ano i a ia te hokonga o te ao, ma reira e hoatu ai ki te tangata e tirohia hara-koretia ana i tona aroaro i te ra whakawa, kia noho ki te aroaro o te Atua i roto i tona kingitanga, kia waiata ngatahi me nga kai waiata i runga i whakamoemititanga mutunga kore ki te Matua, ki te Tama, me te Wairua Tapu, ko ia ano he Atua kotahi, i roto i tetahi tikanga hari kahore ona mutunga.
- 8 No reira me ripeneta koutou, me rumaki hoki i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, kia mau ano hoki ki te rongo pai o te Karaiti, e tapaea atu ai ki o koutou aroaro, ehara i te mea i roto anake i tenei tuhituhinga, engari i roto ano i te tuhituhinga e ahua mai ana i nga Hurai ki nga Tauwi, a ko taua tuhituhinga ka puta mai i nga Tauwi ki a koutou.

## Mormon 7

And now, behold, I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who are spared, if it so be that God may give unto them my words, that they may know of the things of their fathers; yea, I speak unto you, ye remnant of the house of Israel; and these are the words which I speak:

Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood, and take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, and repent of all your sins and iniquities, and believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God, and that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father he hath risen again, whereby he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

And he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

And he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, whereby he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom, to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

Therefore repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus, and lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you, not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

9 Ta te mea, na, e tuhituhia ana tenei kia whakapono ai koutou ki tera: a, ki te whakapono koutou ki tera, ka whakapono ano hoki koutou ki tenei; a, ki te whakapono koutou ki tenei, era koutou e matau ki o koutou tupuna, me nga mahi whakamiharo ano hoki i mahia e te kaha o te Atua i roto i a ratou;

10 Ka matau ano hoki koutou he toenga koutou no te uri o Hakopa; no reira e taua ngatahitia ana koutou me te iwi o te kawenata tuatahi; a, ki te mea ka whakapono koutou ki a te Karaiti, a ka rumakina ki te wai i te tuatahi, muri iho, ki te ahi me te Wairua Tapu, me te whai ano i te tauira o to tatou Kai-whakaora, rite tonu ki tana i whakahau ai ki a tatou, na, ka ora koutou a te ra whakawa. Amine.

For behold, this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; and if ye believe that ye will believe this also; and if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, and also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

And ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; therefore ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; and if it so be that ye believe in Christ, and are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 8

- 1 Nana, ka whakaoti ahau, a Moronai, i te tuhituhinga a toku papa, a Moromona. Na, he torutoru anake akumea hei tuhituhinga maku, a ko enei mea he mea whakahau iho na toku papa.
- 2 Nawai a, i muri i te whawhai nui weriweri i Kumora, nana, ka rapua haeretia nga Niwhai i mawhiti atu ai ki nga kainga whaka-te-tonga e nga Ramana, a whakamatea katoatia ana;
- 3 Na, i patua ano hoki toku papa e ratou, a ko au anake i mahue ki te tuhituhi i te korero pouri nei mo te whakangaromanga o toku iwi. Nana, kua riro ratou, a maku e whakarite te whakahaunga a toku papa. Ka patua ranei ahau e ratou, kahore ahau e mohio;
- 4 No reira ka tuhituhi ahau, me te huna ano i nga tuhituhinga ki roto ki te whenua, a hei aha maku te wahi e haere ai ahau.
- 5 Na, na toku papa i tuhituhi tenei tuhituhinga, a nana ano i tuhituhi tona tikanga. A ka tuhituhi ano hoki ahau me i whai wahi i runga i nga papa nei: ko tenei kahore oku whai wahi; kahore ano hoki oku oa, no te mea ko toku kotahi tenei; i patua toku papa i roto i te whawhai, me oku whanaunga katoa ano hoki, a kahore oku hoa, oku wahi ranei e haere ai ahau; a kahore oku mohio ki te roa e tuku ai te Ariki kia ora ahau.
- 6 Na, kua pahemo nga tau e wha rau i te taenga mai o to tatou Ariki, o to tatou Kai-whakaora.
- 7 A, na nga Ramana i rapu toku iwi, nga Niwhai, i tena pa, i tena pa, i tena wahi, i tena wahi, a kua kore noa iho ratou; he rahi ano hoki to ratou hinganga; ae ra, he mea nui whakaharahara te whakangaromanga o toku iwi, o nga Niwhai.
- 8 A na te ringa o te Ariki tenei i mea. A tena ano hoki, kei te whawhai nga Ramana tetahi ki tetahi; a kotahi ano porowhita o te kohuru, me te whahaheke toto, i te mata katoa o tenei whenua; a kahore he tangata e mohio ana ki te mutunga o te whawhai.
- 9 Na, ka mutu ake aku korero mo ratou, no te mea kahore he tangata, ko nga Ramana anake, me nga kai pahua, e ora ana i runga i te mata o te whenua;

## Mormon 8

Behold I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon. Behold, I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

And now it came to pass that after the great and tremendous battle at Cumorah, behold, the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

And my father also was killed by them, and I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people. But behold, they are gone, and I fulfil the commandment of my father. And whether they will slay me, I know not.

Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and whither I go it mattereth not.

Behold, my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent thereof. And behold, I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not; and ore I have none, for I am alone. My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk, and I have not friends nor whither to go; and how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

Behold, four hundred years have passed away since the coming of our Lord and Savior.

And behold, the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down from city to city and from place to place, even until they are no more; and great has been their fall; yea, great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the Nephites.

And behold, it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it. And behold also, the Lamanites are at war one with another; and the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder and bloodshed; and no one knoweth the end of the war.

And now, behold, I say no more concerning them, for there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do exist upon the face of the land.

- 10 A kahore tahi he tangata e matau ana ki te Atua pono, ko nga akonga anake a Ihu, i noho i runga i te whenua tae noa ki te wa i nui rawa ai te kino o te iwi, a kahore te Ariki i tuku i a ratou kia noho ki te iwi; a kahore o te tangata mohio ki a ratou kei runga ranei kei te mata o te whenua.
- 11 Otira kua kite maua ko toku papa i a ratou, na ratou ano i minita ki a maua.
- 12 Ko te tangata e manako ana ki tenei tuhituhinga, a e kore e whakahe i tenei mea i runga i nga pohehetanga kei roto, na, ka mohio taua tangata ki nga mea rahi ake i enei. Nana, ko Moronai ahau; a me i taea, penei kua whakaatu ahau i nga mea katoa ki a koutou.
- 13 Nana, ka mutu ake aku korero mo tenei iwi. Ko au te tama a Moromona, a ko toku papa he uri no Niwhai;
- 14 Na, ko au ano tena mana e huna atu tenei tunituhinga ki te Ariki; kahore he painga o aua papa, he mea na te whakahau a te Ariki. He pono hoki nana i ki e kore e riro enei i tetahi kia whai taonga ai ia: he mea utu nui ia to reira tuhituhinga, a te tangata mana e whakaputa ki te maramatanga, na, ma te Ariki ia e manaaki.
- 15 No te mea e kore tetahi e whiwhi ki te kaha hei whakaputa i tenei ki te maramatanga, ki te kore e homai ki a ia e te Atua; ta te Atua hoki e pai ai kia meatia i runga i te tapatahitanga mo tona kororia, ara, hei painga mo te iwi kawenata onamata o te Ariki kua whakamararatia noatia atu nei.
- 16 A, ka koa te tangata mana tenei mea e whakaputa ki te maramatanga; ka whakaputaina hoki i roto i te pouri ki te maramatanga, e rite ana ki te kupu a te Atua; ae ra, ka whakaputaina mai i roto i te whenua, a ka whiti mai i roto i te pouritanga, ka matauria hoki e te iwi: a ka meatia tenei mea i runga i te kaha o te Atua;
- 17 A ki te mea he pohehe kei roto, na tetahi tangata aua pohehe. Heoi kahore matou e mohio ki tetahi pohehe. Ahakoa ra e mohio ana te Atua ki nga mea katoa; no reira te tangata e whakahe ana, me tupato ia kei tika mona te kapura o te reinga.
- 18 A ko ia e mea ana, tena ra, whakaaturia mai ki a au, ki te kore, ka patua koe, na, me tupato tera kei whakahaua e ia te mea e whakakahoretia ana e te Ariki.

And there are none that do know the true God save it be the disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people; and whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

But behold, my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

And whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these. Behold, I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

Behold, I make an end of speaking concerning this people. I am the son of Mormon, and my father was a descendant of Nephi.

And I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord. For he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; but the record thereof is of great worth; and whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

For none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God; for God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

And blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light; for it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God; yea, it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people; and it shall be done by the power of God.

And if there be faults they be the faults of a man. But behold, we know no fault; nevertheless God knoweth all things; therefore, he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in danger of hell fire.

And he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten—let him beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the Lord.

- 19 Ta te mea, na, te tangata e taikaha ana tana whakarite whakawa, ka whakawakia taikahatia ano ia; no te mea ka rite ki ana mahi te utu mona; no reira, ko ia e patu ana, ka patua ano ia e te Ariki.
- 20 Me titiro ki ta te karaipiture e mea nei, kauaka te tangata e patu, kauaka hoki e whakahe; no te mea maku te whakahe, e ai ta te Ariki, a maku ano te rapu utu, maku te hoatu utu.
- 21 A ko ia e whakapuaki ana i te riri, i te totohe hei whakahe i te mahi a te Ariki, me te iwi kawenata a te Ariki, koia nei te whare o Ihairaira, e ki ana, Ka whakangaro tatou i te mahi a te Ariki, a e kore te Ariki e mahara ki tana kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki te whare o Ihairaira, na, ka tika mona kia tuakina iho kia maka ki roto ki te ahi;
- 22 No te mea ka huri haere nga tikanga mau tonu a te Ariki kia rite ra ano ana kupu whakaari katoa.
- 23 Whakatakina nga poropititanga a Ihaia. Na, e kore e ahei i a au te tuhituhi i era. Ae ra, taku kupu atu ki a koutou, ko aua hunga tapu kua riro atu nei i mua i a au, nana i noho tenei whenua, na ka karanga ratou; ae ra, ka karanga ake ratou i te puehu ki te Ariki; a e ora ana te Ariki, waihoki ka mahara ia ki te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki a ratou.
- 24 E mohio ana hoki ia ki a ratou inoi, he mea wawao mo o ratou teina. E mohio ana ano ia ki to ratou whakapono; ina i runga i tona ingoa i taea ai e ratou nga maunga te whakaneke; i taea ano hoki e ratou te whenua te whakangaeue i runga i tona ingoa; he mea hoki na te mana o tana kupu i mea ai ratou i nga whare herehere kia horo iho ki te whenua; a ko te oumu ahi kihai i ahei te aha ki a ratou; kihai ano hoki nga kuri mohoao, nga nakahi whakamate ranei, i te mana hoki o tana kupu.
- 25 Nana, i puta ano hoki a ratou inoi mo te tangata e tukua e te Ariki mana enei mea e whakaputa.
- 26 A kahore he aha e ki ai tetahi, e kore enei mea e puta mai, no te mea he pono ka puta mai, ina, na te Ariki tenei i whakapuaki: ka puta mai ano hoki enei mea i roto i te whenua he mea na te ringa o te Ariki, a e kore e ahei i tetahi te whakakahore; a ka puta mai ano ia i te ra e kiia ai kua mutu nga merekara; ka puta mai ano ia me te mea e korero ake ana tetahi i te hunga mate.

For behold, the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again; for according to his works shall his wages be; therefore, he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

Behold what the scripture says—man shall not smite, neither shall he judge; for judgment is mine, saith the Lord, and vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

And he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are the house of Israel, and shall say: We will destroy the work of the Lord, and the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel—the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

For the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on, until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

Search the prophecies of Isaiah. Behold, I cannot write them. Yea, behold I say unto you, that those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the Lord; and as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath made with them.

And he knoweth their prayers, that they were in behalf of their brethren. And he knoweth their faith, for in his name could they remove mountains; and in his name could they cause the earth to shake; and by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to the earth; yea, even the fiery furnace could not harm them, neither wild beasts nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

And behold, their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should suffer to bring these things forth.

And no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall, for the Lord hath spoken it; for out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord, and none can stay it; and it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away; and it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

27 Ka puta mai ia i tetahi ra e karanga ake ai te toto o te hunga tapu ki te Ariki, he mea na nga huihuinga ngaro me nga mahi o te pouritanga;

28 Ae ra, ka puta mai ia i tetahi wa e whakakahoretia ai te kaha o te Atua, ka poke ano nga hahi, a ka neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o o ratou ngakau; ae ra, i tetahi ra e neke ake ai nga kai whakahaere tikanga o nga hahi, me nga kai whakaako, i runga i te whakapehapeha o o ratou ngakau, a ka hae ratou ki te hunga o o ratou hahi;

29 Ae ra, ka puta mai ia i tetahi ra e rangona ai nga ahi, nga tupuhi, nga kohu paoa i nga whenua ke,

30 A ka rangona nga whawhai me nga rongo whawhai, me nga ru whenua i te tini o nga wahi;

31 Ae ra, ka puta mai ia i tetahi ra e nui ai nga mahi weriweri i runga i te mata o te whenua; nga kohurutanga, nga pahuatanga, nga korero teka, nga tinihanga, nga puremutanga, me nga tu whakariharaha katoa; ina tokomaha e ki ai, tena ra, me mahi tenei, me mahi tera, a kahore he tikanga, ka whakatikaia hoki nga penei e te Ariki i te ra whakamutunga. Heoi aue te mate mo nga pera, kei te au kawa hoki ratou, kei nga here o te kino.

32 Ae ra, ka puta mai i tetahi ra e hanga ana nga hahi e ki ai, Haere mai ra ki a au, a ma o koutou moni, ka murua ai o koutou hara.

33 E koutou, e te iwi kino, parori ke, kaki maro, mo te aha koutou i hanga ai i nga hahi ki a koutou ano kia whai taonga ai koutou? Mo te aha koutou i whakaputa ke ai i te kupu tapu a te Atua, kia takina iho ianei e koutou te whakawakanga mo o koutou wairua? Nana, me titiro atu ki nga whakakitenga a te Atua. Ta te mea, na, ka puta mai te wa, i taua rangi, e whakaritea ai enei mea katoa.

34 Nana, kua whakakite mai te Ariki ki a au i nga mea nunui whakamiharo, mo taua mea meake puta mai a taua ra e puta mai ai enei mea ki waenganui i a koutou.

35 Nana, e korero ana ahau ki a koutou ano kei konei koutou, a kahore koutou i konei. Heoi na Ihu Karaiti i whakakite mai koutou ki a au, a e mohio ana ahau ki ta koutou meatanga;

And it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

Yea, it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, and churches become defiled and be lifted up in the pride of their hearts; yea, even in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

And there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations; when there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day. But wo unto such, for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

Yea, it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people, why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain? Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls? Behold, look ye unto the revelations of God; for behold, the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

Behold, the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

Behold, I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not. But behold, Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me, and I know your doing.



36 A e mohio ana ahau e haere ana koutou i runga i te whakapehapeha o o koutou ngakau; a kahore he tangata, he torutoru anake, e kore e neke ake i runga i te whakapehapeha o o ratou ngakau, ki te kakahuranga i nga kakahu pai whakaharahara, ki te hae, ki nga totohetanga, ki te mauahara, ki nga whakatoinga, me nga tukino katoa, ko a koutou hahi ano, ae ra, ko tena ko tena kua poke i te whakapehapeha o o koutou ngakau.

37 Ta te mea, na, e aroha ana koutou ki te moni, me a koutou rawa, me o koutou kahu papai, me te whakapaipai o o koutou whare karakia nui atu i to koutou aroha ki te hunga rawa kore, ki te hunga e hapa ana, ki nga turoro me te hunga e whakamamaetia ana.

38 E koutou, e nga poke, e koutou, e nga tinihanga, e koutou, e nga kai whakaako, e hoko na i a koutou ano mo te mea e waikura ai, na, mo te aha koutou i whakanoa ai i te hahi tapu a te Atua? Mo te aha koutou i whakama ai ki te tango ki runga ki a koutou i te ingoa o te Karaiti? He aha koutou te mahara ai nui atu te pai o tetahi haringa mutunga kore i to taua pouri e kore nei e mate he mea hoki mo te whakamoemiti o te ao nei?

39 Mo te aha koutou i whakapaipai ai i a koutou ki taua mea kahore ona oranga. a ka tuku i te hunga e hiakai ana, e hapa ana, e tu tahanga ana, e turorotia ana, e whakamamaetia ana kia pahemo i a koutou, a kahore e whakaaro ki a ratou?

40 Ae ra, mo te aha koutou i hanga ake ai i a koutou whakarihariha ngaro kia whai taonga ai koutou, a ka mea i nga pouaru kia tangi i te aroaro o te Ariki, me nga pani ano hoki kia tangi i te aroaro o te Ariki; me te toto ano o o ratou matua me o ratou tane kia karanga ake ki te Ariki i te oneone kia utua ki runga ki o koutou mahunga?

41 Heoi e iri ana te hoari ngaki-mate i runga ake i a koutou; a meake puta mai te wa ka ngaki ia i te toto o te hunga tapu ki runga ki a koutou, kahore hoki ia e tuku kia roa atu, ta ratou karanga.

And I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts; and there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities; and your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

For behold, ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker, why have ye polluted the holy church of God? Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ? Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies—because of the praise of the world?

Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

Yea, why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord, and also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

Behold, the sword of vengeance hangeth over you; and the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you, for he will not suffer their cries any longer.

## Te Pukapuka A Moromona 9

- 1 A ka korero ano ahau inaianei mo te hunga kahore nei o ratou whakapono ki a te Karaiti.
- 2 Nana, ka whakapono ianei koutou a te ra o to koutou tirohanga mai, ina haere mai te Ariki; ae ra, i taua ra nui e pokaia ana te whenua ano he pukapuka, me nga mea timatanga ka rewa i te wera nui: ae ra, i taua rangi nui e kawea ai koutou kia tu ki te aroaro o te Reme a te Atua, ko reira ianei koutou ki ai kahore he Atua?
- 3 A i taua wa ka whakakahore tonu ianei koutou ki a te Karaiti, ka ahei ranei i a koutou te titiro atu ki te Reme a te Atua? E mea ana ianei koutou e ahei ana i a koutou te noho tahi me ia me te mohio ano ki o koutou he? Ki ta koutou mahara e ahei ana ianei i a koutou te noho hari me taua Mea tapu, i te mea e ohoo ana o koutou wairua i runga i te matauranga ki o koutou he i he tonu ai koutou ki ana ture i nga wa katoa?
- 4 Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, tera atu to koutou pouiri i runga i te noho tahi me tetahi Atua tapu, tika i runga i te matauranga ki to koutou poke ki tona aroaro i te noho tahi me te hunga ka oti nei te kanga i roto i te reinga!
- 5 No te mea ina meinga koutou kia kite i to koutou tu tahanga i te aroaro o te Atua, me te kororia ano hoki o te Atua, me te tapu o Ihu Karaiti, ka tahuna ki runga ki a koutou he mura ahi e kore e taea te tinei.
- 6 Kati, e te hunga whakapono-kore, tahuri mai koutou ki te Ariki, kia kaha ki te karanga ake ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti me kore pea koutou e kitea he kohakore, he purotu, he ataahua, he ma, ka oti nei te whakama ki te toto o te Reme, a taua ranui whakamutunga.
- 7 Na, ka korero ano ahau ki a koutou, ki te hunga e whakaparahako ana ki nga whakakitenga a te Atua, e ki ana, kua memeha atu aua mea, kahore he whakakitenga, kahore he poropititanga, kahore he homaitanga, kahore he mana whakaora, kahore he korerotanga i nga reo hou, kahore he whakamaoritanga i nga reo.

## Mormon 9

And now, I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

Behold, will ye believe in the day of your visitation—behold, when the Lord shall come, yea, even that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, yea, in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God—then will ye say that there is no God?

Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God? Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt? Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

Behold, I say unto you that ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

For behold, when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, and also the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

And again I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

- 8 Nana taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, te tangata e whakaparahako ana ki enei mea, kahore ona mohio ki te rongo pai o te Karaiti; ae ra, kahore ano ia kia korero i te karaipiture, a ki te mea kua korero karaipiture ia kahore e ata marama ana i a ia aua mea.
- 9 No te mea he teka ianei e korerotia ana e tatou, tuturu ana te Atua, inanahi, inaianei, a ake ake ake; a kahore he putanga ketanga i roto i a ia, he atarangi ranei o te rereketanga?
- 10 Na, ki te mea kua whakaaro koutou ki a koutou ano mo tetahi atua e puta ke ana, a i roto ano i a ia he atarangi no te rereketanga, penei kua whakaaro koutou ki a koutou ano mo tetahi atua ke ehara nei i te Atua o nga merekara.
- 11 Heoi maku e whakaatu ki a koutou he Atua no nga merekara, ara te Atua o Aperahama, te Atua o Ihaka, te Atua o Hakopa; a ko ia ano taua Atua nana i hanga nga rangi, me te whenua, me nga mea katoa i roto.
- 12 Na, nana i hanga a Arama, a i puta ake i a Arama te takanga o te tangata. Na, he whakaaro ki te takanga o te tangata, i haere mai ai a Ihu Karaiti ara te Matua me te Tama; a he mea hoki na Ihu Karaiti i puta mai ai te hokonga o te tangata.
- 13 He mea ano na te hokonga o te tangata i puta ake ai i a Ihu Karaiti e whakahokia ai ano ratou ki te aroaro o te Ariki: ae ra, ko te hokonga tenei o nga tangata katoa, no te mea e puta ake ana te aranga i te matenga o te Karaiti, e puta ake ana he hokonga i tetahi moe mutunga kore i te matenga o te Karaiti, a ma te kaha o te Atua e whakaohokia ai nga tangata katoa i taua moe ina tangi te tetere; a ka puta mai ratou, te hunga ririki me te hunga nunui, ka tu katoa ki mua i tona wahi whakawa, he mea ka oti nei te hoko, he mea wewete i tenei paihere mau tonu o te mate, ko tenei mate nei hoki he mate tinana;
- 14 A ko reira puta mai ai te whakarite whakawa a te Mea Tapu ki runga ki a ratou, katahi ka taka te wa, ko te tangata e poke ana ka poke ano ia; ko te tangata e tika ana ka tika ano ia; ko te tangata e hari ana ka hari ano ia; ko te tangata kahore ona hari ka pera ano ia.

Behold I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ; yea, he has not read the scriptures; if so, he does not understand them.

For do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and in him there is no variable-ness neither shadow of changing?

And now, if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

But behold, I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob; and it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

Behold, he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man. And because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son; and because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

And because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord; yea, this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound; and they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal band of death, which death is a temporal death.

And then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them; and then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still; and he that is righteous shall be righteous still; he that is happy shall be happy still; and he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

- 15 Heoi, e te hunga katoa ka oti na i a koutou tetahi atua te whakaaro ki a koutou ano kahore ra ona kaha hei mahi merekara, maku e ui atu ki a koutou, kua pahemo ianei enei mea katoa, kua korerotia ake nei e ahau? Kua tae ianei te mutunga? Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, Kahore; a kahore ano hoki kia memeha atu te noho o te Atua hei Atua mahi merekara.
- 16 Nana, he teka ianei he mea whakamiharo ki to tatou tirohanga nga mea i mahia e te Atua? A e taea ana e a wai nga mahi whakamiharo a te Atua te whakaaro?
- 17 Ma wai e ki ehara tenei i te merekara, ara, te rangi te whenua, he mea na tana kupu; a he mea hanga ano te tangata e te kaha o tana kupu ki te puehu o te oneone, a na te kaha o tana kupu i mahia ai nga merekara?
- 18 Ma wai e ki he teka na Ihu Karaiti i mahi i nga merekara maha nui? Na, he maha ano nga merekara nunui i mahia e nga ringaringa o nga Apotoro.
- 19 A ki te mahia nga merekara i reira, na te aha i mutu ai te Atua hei Atua mahi merekara a tuturu tonu ia? Na, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, kahore ona putanga ketanga; ki te pena kua mutu ia hei Atua: ko tenei kahore ia e mutu hei Atua, a he Atua mahi merekara ano ia.
- 20 A te take e mutu ai ana mahi merekara i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata, no te mea i heke haere to ratou whakapono, i poka ke atu i te huarahi tika, a kahore o ratou mohio ki te Atua e tika ana hei whakawhirinakitanga mo ratou.
- 21 Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, Ko ia e whakapono ana ki a te Karaiti, a kahore e ruarua, ko nga mea katoa e inoi ai ia ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o te Karaiti, ka homai ki a ia; na, ki nga tangata katoa tenei kupu whakaari, puta noa ki nga topito o te ao.
- 22 Ta te mea ko te kupu tenei a Ihu Karaiti, a te Tama a te Atua, ki ana akonga e ora tonu ai; ae ra, ki ana akonga katoa ano hoki, me te rongo ano te mano. Haere koutou ki te ao katoa, kauwhautia te rongo pai ki nga tangata katoa,
- 23 Ko ia e whakapono ana, a ka oti te rumaki, ka whakaorangia; na, te tangata e kore e whakapono, ka meinga kia mate.

And now, O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet? Behold I say unto you, Nay; and God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

Behold, are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our eyes? Yea, and who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the heaven and the earth should be; and by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the earth; and by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

And who shall say that Jesus Christ did not do many mighty miracles? And there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the apostles.

And if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being? And behold, I say unto you he changeth not; if so he would cease to be God; and he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

And the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

Behold, I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him; and this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

For behold, thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry, yea, and also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude: Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

And he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved, but he that believeth not shall be damned;

- 24 A ka whai tahi enei tohu i te hunga e whakapono ana; ma toku ingoa ratou ka pei rewera ai; ka korerotia ai e ratou nga reo hou; ka tango ake ai ratou i nga nakahi; a ki te inu ratou i tetahi mea whakamate, e kore e ahatia; ka pa iho o ratou ringaringa ki nga turoro, a ka ora;
- 25 Na, te tangata e whakapono ana ki toku ingoa, kahore hoki e ruarua, ka whakaungia aku korero katoa ki a ia, a puta noa ki nga topito katoa o te whenua.
- 26 A tena, ko wai e ahei te tu ki nga mahi a te Atua? Ko wai e ahei te whakakahore ki ana korero? Ko wai e whakatika ake ki te mana kaha rawa o te Ariki? Ko wai hei whakahawea ki nga mahi a te Ariki? Ko wai hei whakahawea ki nga tamariki a te Karaiti? Me titiro, e koutou katoa, e nga kai whakahawea ki nga mahi a te Ariki, ka miharo hoki koutou, ka mate.
- 27 Kati, auaka e whakahawea, auaka hoki e miharo, engari whakarongo ki nga kupu a te Ariki, me te inoi ake ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu ki nga mea e matea ana e koutou. Kaua e ruarua, engari me whakapono, me te timata me te pera me nga wa onamata, a haere mai ki te Ariki i runga i to koutou ngakau katoa, mahia hoki to koutou ake whakaoranga i runga i te wehi me te wiri i tona aroaro.
- 28 Kia whai whakaaro i nga ra o ta koutou noho: murua atu o koutou poke katoa: kaua e inoi mea hei whakapaunga ma koutou i runga i o koutou hiahia taikaha, engari me inoi i runga i te u e kore e taea te whakangaeue, kia kauaka koutou e ngawari ki tetahi whakamatautauranga, engari kia mahi koutou ki te Atua pono e ora ana.
- 29 Me titiro kei rumakina koutou i runga i te he; me titiro kei tango he koutou i te hakarameta o te Karaiti; engari me titiro kia mahi koutou i nga mea katoa i runga i te tika, me mahi ano i runga i te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti, o te tama a te Atua ora: a ki te mea koutou i tenei, me te u ano tae noa ki te mutunga, e kore rawa koutou e maka ki waho.
- 30 Nana, e korero ana ahau ki a koutou, me te mea e korero ake ana ahau i te hunga mate; no te mea e mohio ana ahau era koutou e rongoi aku kupu.

And these signs shall follow them that believe—in my name shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick and they shall recover;

And whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

And now, behold, who can stand against the works of the Lord? Who can deny his sayings? Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord? Who will despise the works of the Lord? Who will despise the children of Christ? Behold, all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord, and ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need. Doubt not, but be believing, and begin as in times of old, and come unto the Lord with all your heart, and work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

Be wise in the days of your probation; strip yourselves of all uncleanness; ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts, but ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation, but that ye will serve the true and living God.

See that ye are not baptized unworthily; see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily; but see that ye do all things in worthiness, and do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God; and if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast out.

Behold, I speak unto you as though I spake from the dead; for I know that ye shall have my words.

31 Kauaka au e whakahengia mo oku ngoikoretanga: kauaka hoki toku matua mo ona ngoikoretanga; kauaka hoki te hunga nana i tuhituhi i mua atu i a ia, engari te whakawhetai atu ki te Atua mona i whakaatu ki a koutou i o matou ngoikoretanga, hei ako i a koutou kia nui ake ai to koutou whai whakaaro i to matou.

32 Na, kua tuhituhi matou i tenei tuhituhinga e rite ana ki to matou matauranga i roto i nga reeta e karangatia nei i roto i a matou ko te Ihipiana i whakatikaia, he mea tuku iho, he mea whakaputa ke na matou e rite ana ki to matou tu reo.

33 A me i rite te nui o a matou papa, penei kua tuhituhi matou: te reo Hiperu; otira i whakaputaina ketia ano hoki i te reo Hiperu e matou; a me i taea e matou te tuhituhi i to te Hiperu, penei kua kore he he i roto i a matou tuhituhinga e riro i a koutou.

34 Heoi e mohio ana te Ariki ki nga mea kua tuhituhia nei e matou, me tana mohio ano, kahore atu he iwi e mohio ana ki to matou reo, no reira i whakarite mea ai ia mo tona whakamaoritanga.

35 Na, e tuhituhia ana enei mea, kia ma ai i a matou o matou kakahu i nga toto o o matou teina i iti haere nei to ratou whakapono.

36 Na, ko enei mea kua hiahia nei matou mo o matou teina, ara to ratou rironga tuaruatanga ki te matauranga ki a te Karaiti, na, e rite ana tenei ki nga inoinga o te hunga tapu katoa i noho i te whenua.

37 Na, ma te Ariki, ma Ihu Karaiti e tuku kia utua a ratou inoinga, kia rite ki to ratou whakapono; a ma te Atua, ma te Matua e mahara ki te kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki te whare o Iharaira; a mana ano ratou e manaaki, a ake ake ake i runga i te whakapono ki a Ihu Karaiti. Amine.

Condemn me not because of mine imperfection, neither my father, because of his imperfection, neither them who have written before him; but rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto you our imperfections, that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

And now, behold, we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian, being handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of speech.

And if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written in Hebrew; but the Hebrew hath been altered by us also; and if we could have written in Hebrew, behold, ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

But the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also that none other people knoweth our language; and because that none other people knoweth our language, therefore he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

And these things are written that we may rid our garments of the blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

And behold, these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

And may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith; and may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel; and may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ. Amen.

# Ko Te Pukapuka A Etere.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 1

- 1 Na, ka anga tenei ahau, a Moronai, ki te tuhituhi i tetahi whakaaturanga mo aua tangata whenua o mua i whakangaromia ra e te ringa o te Ariki i runga i te mata o tenei whenua o te nota.
- 2 A ka tangohia taku whakaaturanga i nga papa e rua tekau ma wha i kitea ra e te iwi o Rimihi, e karangatia nei ko te pukapuka a Etere.
- 3 Na, ki taku mahara kei nga Hurai te wahi tuatahi o tenei whakaaturanga, e korero nei mo te hanganga o te ao, mo Arami hoki, me tetahi whakaaturanga no taua wa tae noa mai ki te pourewa nei, me nga mea katoa i puta ki roto ki nga tamariki a te tangata, tae iho ki taua wa;
- 4 No reira e kore ahau e tuhituhi i aua mea i puta ra i nga ra i a Arama tae iho ki taua wa; heoi kei runga ano kei nga papa aua mea; a ko te tangata e kitea ai ka whai kaha ano hoki kia riro te whakaaturanga katoa i a ia.
- 5 Tena ko tenei, e kore te whakaaturanga katoa e poto i a au te tuhituhi, engari tetahi wahi e tuhituhi nei ahau, no te pourewa mai a tae iho ki te wa i whakangaromia ai ratou.
- 6 Na, ka penei te whakaaturanga e tuhituhi nei ahau. Ko te tangata nana i tuhituhi tenei whakaaturanga, ko Etere, ko ia hoki he uri no Koriatoro.
- 7 A ko Koriatoro te tama a Morono;
- 8 A ko Morono te tama a Eteme;
- 9 A ko Eteme te tama a Ahaha;
- 10 A ko Ahaha te tama a Heta;
- 11 A ko Heta te tama a Hipirona;
- 12 A ko Hipirona te tama a Komo;
- 13 A ko Komo te tama a Koriatumu;
- 14 A ko Koriatumu te tama a Amanikara;
- 15 A ko Amanikara te tama a Arona;
- 16 A ko Arona he uri no Hete, ko ia nei te tama a Heatomo:
- 17 A ko Heatomo te tama a Ripi;
- 18 A ko Ripi te tama a Te Kihi;
- 19 A ko Te Kihi te tama a Koruma;

# The Book of Ether

## Ether 1

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

And I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

And as I suppose that the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world, and also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower, and whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews—

Therefore I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time; but they are had upon the plates; and whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

But behold, I give not the full account, but a part of the account I give, from the tower down until they were destroyed.

And on this wise do I give the account. He that wrote this record was Ether, and he was a descendant of Coriantor.

Coriantor was the son of Moron.

And Moron was the son of Ethem.

And Ethem was the son of Ahah.

And Ahah was the son of Seth.

And Seth was the son of Shiblón.

And Shiblón was the son of Com.

And Com was the son of Coriantum.

And Coriantum was the son of Amnigaddah.

And Amnigaddah was the son of Aaron.

And Aaron was a descendant of Heth, who was the son of Hearthom.

And Hearthom was the son of Lib.

And Lib was the son of Kish.

And Kish was the son of Corom.

20 A ko Koruma te tama a Riwai;  
 21 A ko Riwai te tama a Kimi;  
 22 A ko Kimi te tama a Moriatono;  
 23 A ko Moriatono he uri no Ripakihi;  
 24 A ko Ripakihi te tama a Heha;  
 25 A ko Heha te tama a Hete;  
 26 A ko Hete te tama a Komo;  
 27 A ko Komo te tama a Koriatumu;  
 28 A ko Koriatumu te tama a Emera;  
 29 A ko Emera te tama a Omere;  
 30 A ko Omere te tama a Hure;  
 31 A ko Hure te tama a Kipi;  
 32 A ko Kipi te tama a Oriha, ko ia nei te tama a Iarere;  
 33 Ko taua Iarere i haere atu ra i te pourewa, raua ko tona teina, me a raua hapu, me etahi atu me o ratou hapu, i te takiwa i whakapoauau ai te Ariki i te reo o te iwi, i oati ai i runga i tona riri, kia whakamararatia atu ratou ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua; a i whakamararatia ano te iwi ki te ritenga o te kupu a te Ariki.  
 34 Na, he tangata rahi he tangata marohirohi te teina o Iarere, he tangata i paingia nuitia e te Ariki; i ki ra hoki a Iarere, tona tuakana, ki a ia, karanga ake ki te Ariki, kei whakapoauau ia i a taua kei kore taua e mohio ki a taua kupu.  
 35 Na, i karanga te teina o Iarere ki te Ariki, a i aroha te Ariki ki a Iarere; na reira kihai i whakapoauautia e ia te reo o Iarere; a kihai a Iarere raua ko tona teina i whakapoauautia.  
 36 Katahi ka mea a Iarere ki tona teina, Karanga ano ki te Ariki, a, era pea ia e whakatahuri atu i tona riri i o taua hoa, kei whakapoauautia to ratou reo e ia.  
 37 Na, ka karanga te teina o Iarere ki te Ariki, a ka aroha te Ariki ki o raua hoa, me o ratou hapu ano hoki, a kihai ratou i whakapoauautia.

And Corom was the son of Levi.  
 And Levi was the son of Kim.  
 And Kim was the son of Morianton.  
 And Morianton was a descendant of Riplakish.  
 And Riplakish was the son of Shez.  
 And Shez was the son of Heth.  
 And Heth was the son of Com.  
 And Com was the son of Coriantum.  
 And Coriantum was the son of Emer.  
 And Emer was the son of Omer.  
 And Omer was the son of Shule.  
 And Shule was the son of Kib.  
 And Kib was the son of Orihah, who was the son of Jared;  
 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth; and according to the word of the Lord the people were scattered.  
 And the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man, and a man highly favored of the Lord, Jared, his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.  
 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon Jared; therefore he did not confound the language of Jared; and Jared and his brother were not confounded.  
 Then Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends, that he confound not their language.  
 And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.



38 Nawai a, ka korero ano a Iarere ki tona teina, ka mea, Tena, haere ui ake ki te Ariki ka aia atu ranei tatou e ia i roto i te whenua, a ki te mea ka aia atu tatou e ia i roto i te whenua, karanga ake ki a ia ki te wahi e haere ai tatou. A ko wai ka mohio me kore te Ariki e kawe i a tatou ki roto ki tetahi whenua e pai ake nei i nga whenua katoa. A ki te penei, kia u tatou ki te Ariki, kia whiwhi ai tatou ki taua mea hei kainga tupu mo tatou.

39 Nawai a, ka karanga ake te teina o Iarere ki te Ariki, ka rite ki te mea i korerotia ra e te mangai o Iarere.

40 Na, ka rongo te Ariki ki te teina o Iarere, a ka aroha ki a ia, ka mea ki a ia,

41 Me haere, me whakawhaiti ou kahui, nga toa me nga uwaha, o ia ahua, o ia ahua; me nga purapura o te whenua, o ia tu, o ia tu, me ou hapu; me Iarere, me tou tuakana, me tona hapu; me ou hoa ano hoki, me o ratou hapu, me nga hoa o Iarere, me o ratou hapu.

42 A ka oti tenei i a koe, ka haere iho koe i mua i a ratou ki roto ki te raorao, kei te nota nei. A hei reira tutaki ai ahau ki a koe, a ka haere ahau i mua i a koe ki roto ki tetahi whenua e pai ake nei i nga whenua katoa o te ao.

43 A i reira ka manaaki ahau i a koe me ou uri, ka whakaara ano hoki he iwi nui moku i roto i ou uri, i te uri hoki o tou tuakana, me ratou ano hoki e haere tahi atu i a koe. A e kore tetahi i runga i te mata o te whenua katoa e nui ake i te iwi e whakaarahia ake ai e ahau moku i roto i ou uri. A ka penei taku meatanga ki a koe mo te roanga o tau karangatanga ake ki a au.

And it came to pass that Jared spake again unto his brother, saying: Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land, and if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go. And who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth? And if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord according to that which had been spoken by the mouth of Jared.

And it came to pass that the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him, and said unto him:

Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind; and also of the seed of the earth of every kind; and thy families; and also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

And when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward. And there will I meet thee, and I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

And there will I bless thee and thy seed, and raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation. And there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth. And thus I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 2

- 1 Nawai a, ka haere iho a Iarere, ratou ko tona teina, ko o raua hapu, me nga hoa ano hoki o Iarere raua ko tona teina me o ratou hapu, ki raro ki te raorao whaka-te-nota, (a ko te ingoa o te raorao ko Nimirota, he karangatanga hoki tenei ki taua tangata i maia ki te whai kirehe mohoa,) me o ratou kahui ka oti nei i a ratou te huihui, nga toa nga uwaha, o ia tu, o ia tu.
- 2 A ka whakatakoto mahanga ratou ka mau nga manu o te rangi, ka whakarite ano hoki ratou i tetahi oko, i mau ai i a ratou i roto he ika no nga wai;
- 3 A ka mau i a ratou he Tehoreta, ko tona whakamaoritanga tenei, ko te honi pi; a penei ka mau i a ratou nga heke pi, me nga mea o nga ahua katoa o nga mea i runga i te mata o te whenua, me nga purapura o nga ahua katoa.
- 4 Nawai a, ka tae ratou ki raro ki te raorao o Nimirota, ka haere iho te Ariki, ka korero ki te teina o Iarere; i roto ano ia i tetahi kapua, a kihai te teina o Iarere i kite i a ia.
- 5 Na, ka whakahau iho te Ariki i a ratou kia haere atu ki roto ki te koraha, ae ra, ki taua wahi kahore ano i tae noa he tangata ki reira. A ka haere te Ariki i mua i a ratou, ka korero iho ki a ratou i a ia e tu ana i roto i te kapua, me te tohutohu ano ki te ritenga atu e haere ai ratou.
- 6 Na, haere ana ratou i roto i te koraha, hanga ana i nga pooti i whakawhiti ai ratou i nga wai maha, he mea tohutohu tonu ratou e te ringaringa o te Ariki.
- 7 A kihai te Ariki i tuku i a ratou kia noho atu i tera taha o te moana i roto i te koraha, engari tana i pai ai kia tae mai ratou ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari, ko ia i whiriwhiri ake nei i era atu whenua katoa, he mea tiaki hoki e te Ariki mo tetahi iwi tika;
- 8 I oati ano hoki ia i runga i tona riri ki te teina o Iarere, ko te tangata e nohoia ai taua whenua no taua wa tonu, a ake ake ake, me mahi ki a ia, ki te Atua pono, ki te Atua kotahi, ki te kore, ka tahia atu ratou ina tau iho te kinga o tona riri ki runga ki a ratou.

## Ether 2

And it came to pass that Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward, (and the name of the valley was Nimrod, being called after the mighty hunter) with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

And they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air; and they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

And they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee; and thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

And it came to pass that when they had come down into the valley of Nimrod the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; and he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been. And it came to pass that the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

And it came to pass that they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

And the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

And he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

- 9 Na, e ahei ana tatou te kite i nga tikanga whakatakoto a te Atua mo tenei whenua, he whenua ia na te kupu whakaari, a, te iwi e nohoia ai, me mahi ki te Atua, ki te kore, ka tahia atu ratou ina tau iho te kinga o tona riri ki runga ki a ratou. A e puta ana te kinga o tona riri ki runga ki a ratou ina pakiri to ratou kino;
- 10 No te mea, na, he whenua tenei e whiriwhiria ana i runga ake i era atu whenua katoa; na reira te tangata e nohoia ai tenei whenua, me mahi ki te Atua, ki te kore, ka tahia atu; ko te tikanga pumau tonu ano hoki tenei a te Atua. A kia pakari ra ano te kino i roto i nga tamariki o te whenua, ko reira tahia atu ai ratou.
- 11 A e puta mai tenei ki a koutou, E nga Tauwiwi. kia mohio ai koutou ki nga tikanga whakatakoto a te Atua, kia ripeneta ai koutou, kei roa hoki i runga i o koutou he, a pakari noa, kei kukume iho koutou i te kinga o te riri a te Atua ki runga ki a koutou, kei pera me ta te hunga o te whenua i mea ai i mua.
- 12 Nana, he whenua whiriwhiri tenei, a ko te iwi e nohoia ai ka watea i te whakamahinga, i te ponongatanga, i nga iwi katoa ano hoki i raro i te rangi, heoi ano te mea ma ratou, ko te mahi ki te Atua o te whenua, ko ia nei a Ihu Karaiti, te mea i whakakitea atu nei i nga mea ka oti nei i a matou te tuhituhi.
- 13 Na, ka haere taku tuhituhinga; i kawe hoki te Ariki i a Iarere ratou ko ona teina ki te moana nui e wehewehe nei i nga whenua. Na, i a ratou ka tae atu ki te moana, ka whakaturia o ratou teneti e ratou; a ka karangatia te ingoa mo taua wahi ko Morianakumere; a i noho teneti ratou: na, e wha nga tau e noho ana ki te taha tai.
- 14 A i te mutunga iho o nga tau e wha, ka haere mai ano te Ariki ki te teina o Iarere, ka tu i roto i tetahi kapua, ka korero mai ki a ia. A pau ake nga haora e toru i te Ariki e korero mai ana ki te teina o Iarere, me te riri ano i a ia mona kihai i mahara ki te karanga ake ki te ingoa o te Ariki.

And now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, that it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them. And the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

For behold, this is a land which is choice above all other lands; wherefore he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; for it is the everlasting decree of God. And it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

And this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God—that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the fulness come, that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

Behold, this is a choice land, and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, if they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

And now I proceed with my record; for behold, it came to pass that the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands. And as they came to the sea they pitched their tents; and they called the name of the place Moriancumer; and they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

And it came to pass at the end of four years that the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him. And for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

- 15 Na, ka ripeneta te teina o Iarere ki te kino i mea ai ia, me te karanga ano ki te ingoa o te Ariki mo ona teina i a ia ra. Na, ka mea te Ariki ki a ia, ka murua a koutou hara ko ou teina e ahau; heoi me mutu tonu tou hara, me mahara hoki e kore toku Wairua e tohe tonu ki te tangata; na reira, ki te hara tonu koutou a pakari noa, ka hatepea atu koutou i te aroaro o te Ariki. A ko enei aku whakaaro mo te whenua e hoatu ai e ahau ki a koutou hei kainga tupu; ka meinga hoki tera he whenua whiriwhiri i runga ake i era atu whenua katoa.
- 16 A ka mea te Ariki, Tena, haere, hanga ano, kia rite ki te tauira o nga pooti i hanga e koutou i mua ake nei. Na, ka haere, ka mahi te teina o Iarere, me ona teina hoki, ka hanga i nga pooti ki te ritenga o ta ratou hanga ai i mua, i runga hoki i nga whakahau a te Ariki. A he mea iti, he mea mama ratou i runga i te wai, te rite kei te mama o tetahi manu i runga i te wai;
- 17 Na, te ahua i hanga ai, piri tonu no ka mau te wai i roto, ka pera me te rihi; piri tonu a raro me he rihi; nga taha ona piri tonu, me he rihi; nga pito he koikoi; piri tonu a runga me he rihi; a ko tona roa kei to te rakau: me tona tatau, ina kati, piri tonu me he rihi.
- 18 Nawai a, ka karanga ake te teina o Iarere ki te Ariki, a ka mea, E te Ariki, kua rite i a au te mahi i whakahau iho ai koe ki a au, kua hanga ahau i nga pooti i runga i tau i whakahau mai ai ki a au.
- 19 Nana, E te Ariki, kahore he maramatanga i roto, ki hea ranei matou urunga ai? A ka mate ano hoki matou, no te mea e kore e nga o matou manawa, ko te hau anake i roto; no reira ka mate matou.
- 20 Na, ka mea te Ariki ki te teina o Iarere, me mahi e koe he koroputa i to runga wahi i to raro ano hoki; ano ka mamae koe i te hau kore, ka waiho kia puare to reira koroputa, a ka whiwhi ki te hau. Na, ki te mea ka puta te wai ki roto ki runga ki a koe, ka kati i a koe to reira koroputa, kei mate koutou i te waipuke.
- 21 Nawai a, ka pera ano te teina o Iarere, ka rite ki ta te Ariki i whakahau ai.

And the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, and did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him. And the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of their sins; but thou shalt not sin any more, for ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with man; wherefore, if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord. And these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance; for it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

And the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built. And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord. And they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

And they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish; and the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish; and the ends thereof were peaked; and the top thereof was tight like unto a dish; and the length thereof was the length of a tree; and the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast commanded me, and I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

And behold, O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer? And also we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom; and when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and receive air. And if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had commanded.

22 A ka karanga ake ano ia ki te Ariki, ka mea, E te Ariki, kua rite taku ki tau i whakahau iho ai ki a au; a kua rite i a au nga pooti mo toku iwi, nana, kahore he maramatanga i roto. Nana, E te Ariki, ka tukua koia matou e koe kia whakawhiti atu i tenei wai whakaharahara i roto i te pouritanga?

23 Na, ka mea te Ariki ki te teina o Iarere, He aha tau e pai na hei meatanga maku kia whai marama ai koutou i roto i o koutou pooti? Ta te mea, kahore e ahei i a koutou te whai matapihi, ka pakarukaru hoki enei; kahore ano hoki e mau ahi i a koutou, no te mea e kore koutou e haere i runga i te maramatanga o te ahi;

24 Ta te mea, na, to koutou rite kei te tohoro i roto i te moana; no te mea ka akiaki nga ngaru maunga ki runga ki a koutou. Otiia maku koutou e whakaputa ano i roto i nga rire o te moana; he mea puta hoki nga hau i roto i toku mangai, a he mea tuku atu ano hoki naku nga marangai me nga waipuke.

25 Nana, he whakarite taku i a koutou mo enei mea; ta te mea hoki, e kore e ahei i a koutou te whakawhiti i tenei rire whakaharahara, ki te kore ahau e whakarite i a koutou mo nga ngaru o te moana, mo nga hau kua puta atu, mo nga tai ano hoki e puta mai ana. No reira he aha tau e pai na hei whakaritenga maku mo koutou kia whai marama ai koutou ina horomia ake koutou ki nga rire o te moana?

And he cried again unto the Lord saying: O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me; and I have prepared the vessels for my people, and behold there is no light in them. Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great water in darkness?

And the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your vessels? For behold, ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces; neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light of fire.

For behold, ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea; for the mountain waves shall dash upon you. Nevertheless, I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea; for the winds have gone forth out of my mouth, and also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

And behold, I prepare you against these things; for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth, and the floods which shall come. Therefore what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 3

- 1 Na, ko te teina o Iarere, (na, e waru nga pooti i whakaritea ai,) ka haere atu ki te maunga, i karangatia e ratou ko maunga Hereme, he mea hoki na te nui o tona tiketike, a ka rewa i a ia i roto i tetahi kohatu kotahi tekau ma ono nga kohatu nonohi; he mea ma, he mea marama, koia kei te karahi marama; a ka mauria ringaringatia e ia ki runga ki te tihi o te maunga, a ka karanga ano ki te Ariki, ka mea,
- 2 E te Ariki, nau i ki mai me karapoti matou ki nga waipuke. Tena, E te Ariki, kua hoki e riri iho ki tou pononga mo ona ngoikoretanga i tou aroaro; e matau ana hoki matou e tapu ana koe, a e noho ana i roto i nga rangi; a ko matou e he ana i tou aroaro; he mea hoki na te takanga, i kino tonu ai to matou ahua maori; ahakoa ra, E te Ariki, kua homai nei e koe ki a matou tetahi whakahaunga, me karanga ake matou ki a koe, kia whiwhi mea ai matou i a koe, i runga i o matou hiahia.
- 3 Nana, E te Ariki, kua pakia matou e koe mo to matou he, kua aia atu matou, a pau noa enei tau maha i a matou nei i roto i te koraha; otira, kua atawhaingia ano matou e koe. E te Ariki, tirohia iho ahau i runga i te aroha, kia tahuri ke hoki tou riri i tenei iwi ou, kua hoki ratou e tukua kia whakawhiti atu i tenei rire nanakia i roto i te pouritanga, heoi, nana, ko enei mea naku i whakarewa mai i roto i te kohatu.
- 4 Na, e matau ana ahau, E te Ariki, kei a koe nga kaha katoa, a e ahei ana ano i a koe te mea i tau e pai ai hei painga mo te tangata; no reira kia pa mai tou matihao, E te Ariki, ki enei kohatu, hei whakarite i a ratou kia tiaho i roto i te pouritanga; a ka tiaho ratou ki a matou i roto i nga pooti kua whakaritea nei o matou, kia whai marama ai matou i a matou e whakawhiti atu ana i te moana.
- 5 Nana, E te Ariki, e ahei ana i a koe te mahi i tenei. E matau ana matou e taea ano e koe te whakakite mai i te kaha nui, he mea iti nei ki ta te tangata titiro iho.

## Ether 3

And it came to pass that the brother of Jared, (now the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight) went forth unto the mount, which they called the mount Shelem, because of its exceeding height, and did molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white and clear, even as transparent glass; and he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and cried again unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by the floods. Now behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and dwellest in the heavens, and that we are unworthy before thee; because of the fall our natures have become evil continually; nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that we must call upon thee, that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity, and hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in the wilderness; nevertheless, thou hast been merciful unto us. O Lord, look upon me in pity, and turn away thine anger from this thy people, and suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in darkness; but behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

And I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man; therefore touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger, and prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness; and they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this. We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which looks small unto the understanding of men.

6 Ano ka mea atu te teina o Iarere i enei kupu, nana, ka torona mai e te Ariki tona ringaringa, a ka pa takitahi tona matihao ki nga kohatu; na, ka tangohia te arai i nga kanohi o te teina o Iarere, a ka kite ia i te matihao o te Ariki; na, tona rite kei te matihao o te tangata, kei te kikokiko me te toto; na, hinga iho te teina o Iarere i te aroaro o te Ariki, kua whakapangia hoki ia ki te wehi.

7 A ka kite te Ariki kua hinga iho te teina o Iarere ki te whenua; na, ka mea mai te Ariki ki a ia, E ara, na te aha hoki koe i hinga ai?

8 Na, ka mea atu tera ki te Ariki, I kite ahau i te matihao o te Ariki, a he wehi toku kei pakia ahau e ia; kihai hoki ahau i mohio he kikokiko he toto to te Ariki.

9 Na, ka mea mai te Ariki ki a ia, He mea na tou whakapono i kite ai koe era ahau e tango he kikokiko he toto ki runga ki a au; a kahore ano i haere noa mai te tangata ki a au i runga i te tino whakapono i haere mai na koe: me i kore hoki i pena, kua kore e ahei i a koe te kite i toku matihao. I nui atu ianei tau i kite ai?

10 Ka whakahokia atu e tera, Kahore; e te Ariki, whakakite mai ra koe i a koe ki a au.

11 Na, te meatanga mai a te Ariki ki a ia, Ka whakapono ianei koe ki nga kupu e korero ai ahau?

12 Ka whakahokia e tera, Ae, e te Ariki, e mohio ana ahau ki a koe, he korero pono tau, no te mea he Atua pono koe, a kahore hoki e ahei i a koe te korero teka.

13 Ano ka korero ia i enei kupu, nana, ka whakakite te Ariki i a ia ano ki a ia, a ka mea, Mou i matau ki enei mea, ka oti koe te hoko mai i te takanga atu; no reira kua whakahokia mai nei koe ki toku aroaro; koia ahau e whakakite atu nei i ahau ano ki a koe.

14 Nana, ko ahau tera i whakaritea ra na te orokohanganga o te ao hei hoko i toku iwi. Nana, ko ahau a Ihu Karaiti. Ko ahau te Matua raua ko te Tama. I roto i a au ka whai marama ai nga tangata katoa, he mea mau tonu, ara, ko te hunga e whakapono ana ki toku ingoa; a ka riro ratou hei tamariki hei tamahine maku.

And it came to pass that when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by one with his finger. And the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and he saw the finger of the Lord; and it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood; and the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck with fear.

And the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth; and the Lord said unto him: Arise, why hast thou fallen?

And he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared lest he should smite me; for I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

And the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that I shall take upon me flesh and blood; and never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as thou hast; for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger. Sawest thou more than this?

And he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

And the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall speak?

And he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

And when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed himself unto him, and said: Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the fall; therefore ye are brought back into my presence; therefore I show myself unto you.

Behold, I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people. Behold, I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son. In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they who shall believe on my name; and they shall become my sons and my daughters.

- 15 A kahore ano ahau i whakakite noa i a au ki te tangata i hanga nei e ahau, no te mea kahore ano te tangata i whakapono ki a au pena me tohou na. E kite ianei koe he mea hanga koe ki te ritenga o toku ake ahua? Na, ka oti nga tangata katoa te hanga no te timatanga ki te ritenga o toku ake ahua.
- 16 Nana, ko tenei tinana, e kite na koe, ko te tinana ia o toku wairua; a he mea hanga naku te tangata ki te ritenga o te tinana o toku wairua; a me au nei e kitea nei e koe i roto i te wairua waihoki ka pera ano hoki te kitenga o toku iwi i a au i roto i te kikokiko.
- 17 Na, me taku, me ta Moronai, i ki nei, kahore e taea katoatia e au te whakaatu enei mea ka oti nei te tuhituhi, no reira kati noa taku korero, ara, i whakakite a Ihu i a ia ano ki tenei tangata i roto i te wairua, i runga i te ahua me te ritenga o taua tinana ano, i whakakite ai ia i a ia ki nga Niwhai;
- 18 A i minita ia ki a ia, i rite ki tana minitanga ki nga Niwhai; na, tenei katoa, kia mohio ai tenei tangeitei ko ia ano to Atua, he moa na nga mahi nui, maha, kua whakakitea mai nei e te Ariki ki a ia.
- 19 A no te matauranga o tenei tangata kahore i ahei te pupuri i a ia kei titiro ia ki roto ki te arai, a i kite ra ia i te matihao o Ihu, a, tona kitenga i te mea ra, hinga iho ia i te wehi; i matau hoki ia ko te matihao tera o te Ariki; a mutu tonu ake tona whakapono, no te mea kua matau ia, kahore hoki he ruarua;
- 20 No reira i a ia tenei tino matauranga ki te Atua, kahore ia i taea te pupuri ki waho o te arai; no reira i kite ia i a Ihu, a ka minita mai ia ki a ia.
- 21 Nawai a, ka ki mai te Ariki ki te teina o Iarere, Nana, kua koe e tuku i enei mea i kite ai, i rongo ai koe, kia puta atu ki te ao, a taka noa te taima e whakakoriatia ai toku ingoa e ahau i roto i te kikokiko; no reira me pupuri e koe enei mea i kite ai, i rongo ai koe, kei whakakitea atu ano hoki ki tetahi tangata.
- 22 Nana, ka haere mai koe ki a au, me tuhituhi e koe me hiri ano hoki aua mea kei whakamaori tetahi i aua mea; no te mea ka tuhituhia e koe ki te reo e kore e taea te korero.
- 23 Nana, ko enei kohatu e rua ka hoatu e ahau ki a koe, a me hiri ano hoki enei e koe, me nga mea e tuhituhi ai koe.

And never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast. Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image? Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

Behold, this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit; and man have I created after the body of my spirit; and even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

And now, as I, Moroni, said I could not make a full account of these things which are written, therefore it sufficeth me to say that Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

And he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites; and all this, that this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

And because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil; and he saw the finger of Jesus, which, when he saw, he fell with fear; for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord; and he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

Wherefore, having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil; therefore he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto the brother of Jared: Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh; wherefore, ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

And behold, when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them; for ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

And behold, these two stones will I give unto thee, and ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.



- 24 Ta te mea ko te reo e tuhituhi ai koe ka oti te whakapoauau e ahau; no reira ka meinga e ahau i taku ake wa e pai ai ahau kia whakanuia e enei kohatu ki nga kanohi o nga tangata, nga mea e tuhituhia nei e koe.
- 25 A ano ka korero atu te Ariki i enei kupu, ka whakakite atu ano hoki ia ki te teina o Iarere i nga tangata i ora, me nga tangata katoa e ora i nga ra e takoto ake nei, a kihai ano hoki ia i kaiponu i a ratou ki tana titiro, puta noa ki nga pito o te ao:
- 26 I ki mai hoki ki a ia i mua, Ki te whakapono ia ki a ia, e ahei ana te whakaatu atu i nga mea katoa ki a ia—ka whakaaturia ano ki a ia; no reira kahore i ahei i te Ariki te kaiponu i tetahi mea ki a ia, no te mea i matau ia e ahei ano i te Ariki te whakaatu atu i nga mea katoa ki a ia.
- 27 A ka mea mai te Ariki ki a ia. Tuhituhia enei mea, hiritia ake hoki, a maku e whakakite atu ki nga tamariki a te tangata i taku ake wa e pai ai ahau.
- 28 A ka whakahau iho te Ariki i a ia, kia hiritia e ia nga kohatu e rua i whiwhi ai ia, kei whakakitea atu hoki, a taka noa te wa e whakakitea atu ai e te Ariki aua mea ki nga tamariki a te tangata.

For behold, the language which ye shall write I have confounded; wherefore I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

And when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be; and he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

For he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things—it should be shown unto him; therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, for he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

And the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

And it came to pass that the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 4

- 1 Na, ka whakahau iho te Ariki i te teina o Iarere kia haere atu ki raro i te maunga i te aroaro o te Ariki, kia tuhituhia ano hoki e ia nga mea i kite ai ia; a i kiia aua mea kia kaua e puta atu ki nga tamariki a te tangata, kia whakairia ake ra ano ia ki te ripeka; koia hoki te take i pupuri ai a kingi Mohia i aua mea kei puta atu ki te ao kia whakakite ra ano a te Karaiti i a ia ano ki tona iwi.
- 2 Na, i te mea he pono kua whakakite mai a te Karaiti i a ia ano ki tona iwi, ka whakahau mai ia kia whakaaturia enei mea.
- 3 Na, i muri mai i tena, kua iti haere to ratou whakapono, kua kore ake hoki he tangata, ko nga Ramana anake, a he whakaparahako ta ratou ki a te Karaiti: koia ka whakahaua nei ahau kia huna ano i enei mea ki te whenua.
- 4 Nana, kua tuhituhia e ahau ki enei papa nga mea pu ano i kite ai te teina o Iarere; a kahore he mea i whakakitea mai e nui ake i nga mea i whakakitea mai ki te teina o Iarere;
- 5 Koia ahau i whakahaua nei e te Ariki kia tuhituhia enei mea e ahau; a kua oti nei ano i a au te tuhituhi. I whakahaua iho ano hoki ahau e ia kia hiritia aua mea e ahau; me to reira whakamaoritanga ano hoki i whakahaua iho ahau e ia kia hiritia mke e ahau; koia kua hiritia ake nei e ahau nga kai whakamaori, kua rite ki te whakahaunga a te Ariki.
- 6 Ta te mea, i ki mai te Ariki ki a au, E kore enei mea e puta atu ki nga Tauwiwi tae noa ki te ra e ripeneta ai ratou ki to ratou kino, e riro ai hoki hei mea ma ki te aroaro o te Ariki;
- 7 A i te ra e whakamahi ai ratou i te whakapono ki a au, e ai ta te Ariki, e pera ai me ta te teina o Iarere i mea ai, kia whakatapua ai ratou i roto i a au, ko reira ahau whakakite atu ai ki a ratou i nga mea i kitea e te teina o Iarere, no ka hurahia atu aku whakakitenga katoa ki a ratou, e ai ta Ihu Karaiti, ta te Tama a te Atua, ko ia nei te Matua o nga rangi me te whenua me nga mea katoa i roto i a raua.
- 8 A ko te tangata e tautohetohe ana ki te kupu a te Ariki, kia kanga ia, a ko te tangata e whakakahore ana i enei mea, kia kanga ia: e kore hoki ahau e whakakite atu ki a ratou i nga mea rahi ake, e ai ta Ihu Karaiti; ko ahau hoki ia e whakapuaki nei;

## Ether 4

And the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen; and they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross; and for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

And after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

And now, after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ; therefore I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

Behold, I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw; and there never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

Wherefore the Lord hath commanded me to write them; and I have written them. And he commanded me that I should seal them up; and he also hath commanded that I should seal up the interpretation thereof; wherefore I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the commandment of the Lord.

For the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become clean before the Lord.

And in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord, even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which the brother of Jared saw, even to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the earth, and all things that in them are.

And he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be accursed; and he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed; for unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ; for I am he who speaketh.

- 9 Na, i taku whakahau iho ka puare noa, ka kati noa nga rangi; ka ngaueue ano hoki te whenua i taku kupu; to reira tangata pahemo atu ana i runga i taku whakahaunga iho, me te mea na te ahi;
- 10 A ki te kore tetahi e whakapono ki aku kupu, e kore ano hoki ia e whakapono ki aku akonga; a me he mea kahore ahau i te korero ma koutou ra e titiro; hei te ra whakamutungā hoki koutou matau ai ko ahau ano tenei e korero atu nei.
- 11 Ko te tangata ia e whakapono ki enei mea kua korerotia nei e ahau, ko ia ano hoki taku e titiro ai i runga i nga whakakitenga a toku Wairua, a ka matau ia ka whakaatu hoki. Ta te mea ma toku Wairua e matau ai ia ki enei mea e pono ana; no te mea he kukume tana i nga tangata kia mahi i te pai:
- 12 Na, ki te mea he kukume ta tetahi mea i nga tangata kia mea i te pai, naku tena; kahore hoki e puta ake te pai i tetahi, ki te kahore i a au. Ko ahau ano tera e arahi nei i nga tangata ki nga mea pai katoa; ki te kore tetahi e whakapono ki aku kupu, e kore ano hoki e whakapono ki a au, ko ahau ano ia; a ko ia e kore e whakapono ki a au, e kore ano hoki e whakapono ki te Matua, nana ahau i tonu mai. Nana, ko ahau te Matua, ko ahau te maramatanga, me te ora, me te pono o te ao.
- 13 Haere mai ki a au, E koutou, e nga Tauwiwi, maku e whakaatu ki a koutou nga mea rahi atu, ara, te matauranga e huna nei, he mea na te whakapono-kore.
- 14 Haere mai ki a au, E koutou, e te whare o Iharaira, a ka whakaaturia atu ki a koutou nga mea nui kua purangatia ake e te Matua mo koutou, no te orokohanganga ra ano o te ao: na, kahore tenei i puta ki a koutou i te whakapono-kore hoki.
- 15 Nana, ina pakaru i a koutou taua arai o te whakapono-kore e mea nei i a koutou kia noho tonu i roto i te tikanga whakawehi o to koutou kino, o te pakeke hoki o te ngakau, me te matapo o te hinengaro, ko reira nga mea nui mea whakamiharo i huna ai no te orokohanganga o te ao ki a koutou; ae ra, ina karanga ake koutou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, me te ngakau maru, me te wairua iro, ko reira koutou matau ai ki te Matua kua mahara ki te kawenata i whakarite ai ia ki o koutou matua, E te whare o Iharaira;

And at my command the heavens are opened and are shut; and at my word the earth shall shake; and at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even so as by fire.

And he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples; and if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye; for ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

But he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and bear record. For because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true; for it persuadeth men to do good.

And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me; for good cometh of none save it be of me. I am the same that leadeth men to all good; he that will not believe my words will not believe me—that I am; and he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent me. For behold, I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the world.

Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of unbelief.

Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for you, from the foundation of the world; and it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

Behold, when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you—yea, when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

- 16 Ko reira ano hoki aku whakakitenga i meinga nei e ahau kia tuhituhia e taku pononga, e Hoani, hurahia atu ai ki nga kanohi o nga iwi katoa. Kia mahara, ina kite koutou i enei mea, me mohio koutou kua tata te wa e pono ai e whakaaturia ai enei mea;
- 17 No reira, ina riro i a koutou tenei tuhituhinga, ka matau koutou kua timata te mahi a te Matua i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua.
- 18 Na, ripeneta, e koutou katoa, e nga topito o te whenua, haere mai ki a au, whakaponohia toku rongopai, a, rumakina ano hoki i runga i toku ingoa; ta te mea ko ia e whakapono ana, a ka oti te rumaki, ka whakaorangia; na, te tangata e kore e whakapono, ka meinga kia mate; a ka whai tahi nga tohu i te hunga e whakapono ana ki toku ingoa.
- 19 A ka koa te tangata e kitea ai e u ana ki toku ingoa, a te ra whakamutunga, ka whakateiteitia ake hoki ia hei noho i te kingitanga ka oti nei te whakarite mona no te orokohanganga o te ao. Nana, ko ahau ia naku tenei i whakapuaki. Amine.

And then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people. Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

Therefore, when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

Therefore, repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name; for he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not shall be damned; and signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

And blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day, for he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him from the foundation of the world. And behold it is I that hath spoken it. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 5

- 1 Na, kua tuhituhia e ahau, e Moronai, nga kupu i whakahaua mai nei ki a au, ki te ritenga o toku mahara; kua korerotia ano hoki e ahau ki a koe nga mea kua oti nei te hiri e ahau; no reira kaua e pa ki aua mea, hei whakamaori i aua mea; kua whakakahoretia hoki tenei ki a koe, engari taihoa ki te mea ka pai ki ta te whakaaro mohio o te Atua.
- 2 Nana, tera pea koe e tukua kia whakakite atu i enei papa ki te hunga hei kai awhina ratou hei whakaputa i tenei mahi;
- 3 A ki nga tangata tokotoru e whakakitea atu ai enei mea e te kaha o te Atua: koia ka matau pu ai ratou ki enei mea e pono ana.
- 4 A ma te mangai a nga kai whakaatu tokotoru e whakapumautia ai enei mea; na, te whakaaturanga a te tokotoru, me tenei mahi, i roto nei e whakakitea atu ana te kaha o te Atua, me tana kupu ko te kai whakaatu nei ko te Matua, ko te Tama, ko te Wairua Tapu; na, ka ai enei katoa hei kai whakaatu i te he o te ao a te ra whakamutunga.
- 5 Na, ki te ripeneta ratou, ki te haere mai hoki ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o Ihu, ka manakohia atu ratou ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Atua.
- 6 Na, ki te kahore oku mana i runga i enei mea, ma koutou e mea, ta te mea, ina kite koutou i a au, ina tu tatou i te aroaro o te Atua a te ra whakamutunga ka matau koutou, e whai mana ana ano ahau. Amine.

## Ether 5

And now I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me, according to my memory; and I have told you the things which I have sealed up; therefore touch them not in order that ye may translate; for that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom in God.

And behold, ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those who shall assist to bring forth this work;

And unto three shall they be shown by the power of God; wherefore they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

And in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established; and the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be shown forth the power of God and also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost bear record—and all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last day.

And if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

And now, if I have no authority for these things, judge ye; for ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and we shall stand before God at the last day. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 6

- 1 Na, tenei ahau, a Moronai, te whakaatu nei i te tuhituhinga a Iarere raua ko tona teina.
- 2 No te mea, na, i muri i te whakaritenga a te Ariki i nga kohatu i kawea e te teina o Iarere ki runga ki te maunga, ka hoki mai te teina o Iarere i runga i te maunga, a ka whakanohoia nga kohatu e ia ki roto ki nga pooti kua oti nei te whakarite, tetahi ki tetahi pito, tetahi ki tetahi pito; na, ka whai marama nga pooti i aua mea.
- 3 A ka mea te Ariki i nga kohatu kia tiaho i roto i te pouritanga, hei homai maramatanga ki nga tane, ki nga wahine, ki nga tamariki, kei whakawhiti ratou i nga wai nui i roto i te pouritanga.
- 4 A ano ka whakarite ratou i nga kai katoa hei oranga mo ratou, i runga i te wai, me te kai ano hoki ma e ratou kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, me nga manu e mauria ana e ratou. A ano ka mahia katoatia tenei e ratou, ka eke ratou ki runga ki o ratou kaupuke, ara, ki o ratou pooti, a rere atu ana i runga i te moana, tuku ana i a ratou ki te Ariki, ki to ratou Atua.
- 5 Nawai a, ka mea te Ariki te Atua i tetahi hau kaha kia pupuhi ki runga ki te kare o nga wai whakatewhenua a te kupu whakaari; a ka akina haeretia ratou i runga i nga ngaru o te moana i mua i te hau.
- 6 Na, i maha nga wa i tanumia ai ratou i roto i nga rire o te moana, he mea na nga ngaru whakapuke e akiaki ana ki runga ki a ratou, na nga tupuhi nui whakawehi ano hoki i mahia e te hau nanakia.
- 7 A i a ratou e tanumia ana i roto i te rire, kihai ratou i kinongia e te wai, he mea maru tonu hoki o ratou pooti, ano he rihi, ka rite ano hoki to ratou maru ki to te aka o Noa; a i a ratou e tanumia ana e nga wai maha, ka karanga ratou ki te Ariki, a whakaputaina ana ano ratou e ia ki runga ki nga wai.
- 8 Na, kihai te hau i mutu te pupuhi whaka-tewhenua a te kupu whakaari, i a ratou i runga i nga wai; a penei ka puhia haeretia ratou i mua i te hau;

## Ether 6

And now I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

For it came to pass after the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount, the brother of Jared came down out of the mount, and he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

And thus the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

And it came to pass that when they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them—and it came to pass that when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

And it came to pass that the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land; and thus they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

And it came to pass that they were many times buried in the depths of the sea, because of the mountain waves which broke upon them, and also the great and terrible tempests which were caused by the fierceness of the wind.

And it came to pass that when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish, and also they were tight like unto the ark of Noah; therefore when they were encompassed about by many waters they did cry unto the Lord, and he did bring them forth again upon the top of the waters.

And it came to pass that the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters; and thus they were driven forth before the wind.

9 A he waiata whakamoemiti ta ratou ki te Ariki; ae, he waiata whakamoemiti ta te teina o Iarere ki te Ariki, a he whakawhetai he whakamoemiti tana ki te Ariki i te ra roa katoa; na, ka taka te po kihai i mutu ta ratou whakamoemiti ki te Ariki.

10 A aia peneitia ana ratou; a kihai i taea e tetahi mea whakawehi o te moana, te pakaru aua mea, kihai hoki i kino i tetahi tohoro; a ka whai marama tonu ano ratou, ahakoa i runga i te wai, ahakoa i raro i te wai.

11 A aia peneitia ana ratou, e toru rau e wha tekau ina wha nga ra i runga i te wai;

12 A ka u ratou ki uta ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari. Na, te tunga o ratou waewae ki uta ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari, ka tuohu iho ratou ki te mata o te whenua, ka whakaiti i a ratou i te aroaro o te Ariki, na, ka heke nga roimata i te hari ki te aroaro o te Ariki mo ana tini mahi tohu ki runga i a ratou.

13 Nawai a, ka haere atu ratou ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, ka anga ka ngaki i te whenua.

14 Na, tokowha nga tamariki tane a Iarere; a ka huaina ratou ko Hakoma, ko Kirika, ko Mahaha, ko Orihaha.

15 A whanau ake ano hoki a te teina o Iarere, he tamariki he tamahine.

16 Na, te tokomahatanga o nga hoa o Iarere, raua ko tona teina e rua tekau ma rua nga wairua; a ka whanau ake ano a ratou he tamariki he tamahine, i mua i to ratou taenga atu ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari; koia ka anga ka tokomaha haere ratou.

17 A ka whakaakona ratou kia haere i runga i te ngakau iti i te aroaro o te Ariki; a i tukua iho i runga o ratou akoranga.

18 Nawai a, ka timata ratou te horapa haere i runga i te mata o te whenua, ka tokomaha haere ka ngaki ano hoki i te whenua; a ka tupu ratou ka kaha i runga i te whenua.

19 Na, ka timata te teina o Iarere te koroheke haere, ka kite hoki meake heke iho ia ki te urupa; koia ia i mea ai ki a Iarere, kia whakaminea ngatahiitia e taua to taua iwi kia tatau taua i a ratou, kia mohio ano hoki taua ki ta ratou e pai ai ki a taua i te mea kahore ano taua kia heke ki o taua urupa.

And they did sing praises unto the Lord; yea, the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long; and when the night came, they did not cease to praise the Lord.

And thus they were driven forth; and no monster of the sea could break them, neither whale that could mar them; and they did have light continually, whether it was above the water or under the water.

And thus they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

And they did land upon the shore of the promised land. And when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

And it came to pass that they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

And Jared had four sons; and they were called Jacom, and Gilgah, and Mahah, and Orihah.

And the brother of Jared also begat sons and daughters.

And the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls; and they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land; and therefore they began to be many.

And they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; and they were also taught from on high.

And it came to pass that they began to spread upon the face of the land, and to multiply and to till the earth; and they did wax strong in the land.

And the brother of Jared began to be old, and saw that he must soon go down to the grave; wherefore he said unto Jared: Let us gather together our people that we may number them, that we may know of them what they will desire of us before we go down to our graves.

20 No reira i whakaminea ai te iwi. Na, ko te nui o nga tamariki me nga tamahine a te teina o Iarere, e rua tekau ma rua nga wairua; ko te nui o nga tamariki me nga tamahine a Iarere, kotahi tekau ma rua, tokowha ana tamariki tane.

21 Nawai a, ka tataua raua i to raua iwi; a i muri i ta raua tauanga i a ratou, ka mea raua kia mohio ki nga mea e hiahia ana e ratou hei meatanga ma raua i mua i to raua hekenga ki o raua urupa.

22 Na, ka hiahia te iwi ki a raua kia whakawahia e raua tetahi o a raua tamariki hei kingi i runga i a ratou.

23 Nana, ka pouri raua i tenei. Na, ka mea atu te teina o Iarere ki a ratou, he pono te tukunga iho o tenei mea he whakaraunga.

24 Otira ka mea a Iarere ki tona teina, Tukua ra kia whai kingi ratou; na reira ka mea atu ia ki a ratou, Ma koutou e whiriwhiri i roto i a maua tamariki ta koutou e pai ai hei kingi.

25 Na, ka whiriwhiri ratou i te matamua a te teina e Iarere; tona ingoa ko Pakaka. Nawai a, ka whakakahore ia, kahore hoki ia i pai hei kingi mo ratou. Na, ka mea te iwi ma tona papa ia e kukume: heoi, kahore tona papa i pai; a ka kiia ratou e ia kia kaua ratou e kukume i tetahi hei kingi mo ratou.

26 Nawai a, ka poto katoa nga teina o Pakaka te whiriwhiri e ratou, a kahore ratou i pai.

27 A kahore ano hoki nga tamariki katoa a Iarere i pai, kotahi anake: a ka whakawahia ko Orihaha hei kingi i runga i te iwi.

28 A ka kingi ia, ka kake ano hoki te iwi; a ka nui rawa atu a ratou taonga.

29 Nawai a, ka mate a Iarere, me tona teina ano hoki.

30 Nawai a, ka haere a Orihaha i runga i te ngakau iti i te aroaro o te Ariki, ka mahara hoki ia ki nga mea nui i meatia e te Ariki mo tona papa, me te whakaako ano hoki i tona iwi ki nga mea nui i meatia e te Ariki mo o ratou matua.

And accordingly the people were gathered together. Now the number of the sons and the daughters of the brother of Jared were twenty and two souls; and the number of sons and daughters of Jared were twelve, he having four sons.

And it came to pass that they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that they should do before they went down to their graves.

And it came to pass that the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

And now behold, this was grievous unto them. And the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

But Jared said unto his brother: Suffer them that they may have a king. And therefore he said unto them: Choose ye out from among our sons a king, even whom ye will.

And it came to pass that they chose even the first-born of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag. And it came to pass that he refused and would not be their king. And the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not; and he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

And it came to pass that they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

And it came to pass that neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; and Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

And he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; and they became exceedingly rich.

And it came to pass that Jared died, and his brother also.

And it came to pass that Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.



## Te Pukapuka A Etere 7

- 1 Na, he tika ta Orihaha whakarite whakawa i runga i te whenua i ona ra katoa, he maha hoki ona ra.
- 2 A whanau ake ana, he tamariki, he tamahine; ae, ka whanau ake ana, e toru tekau ma tahi, e rua tekau ma toru i roto i a ratou he tane.
- 3 Nawai a, ka whanau ake tana, ko Kipi i tona koroheketanga. Nawai a, ka kingi a Kipi i muri i a ia; a ka whanau ake ta Kipi, ko Korihoro.
- 4 Ano ka toru tekau ma rua nga tau o Korihoro, ka tutu ia ki tona papa, ka haere atu ki te whenua o Nehoro, a noho ana ki reira; a whanau ake ana, he tamariki, he tamahine; a he tino ataahua rawa ratou; no reira i kukume ai a Korihoro i nga iwi maha i muri i a ia.
- 5 A ko oti i a ia tetahi taua te huihui, ka haere ake ia ki te whenua o Morono, ki te wahi e noho ana te kingi, a ka whakarau i a ia, na tenei hoki i whakatutuki te kupu a te teina o Iarere, tera ratou e whakaraua.
- 6 Na, ko te whenua o Morono, te wahi e noho ana te kingi, e patata ana ki te whenua i karangatia e nga Niwhai, ko Te Whakangaromanga.
- 7 A noho herehere ana a Kipi, me tona iwi ano hoki i raro i tana tama, i a Korihoro, a ka koroheketia rawatia ia; ka whanau ake ano ta Kipi, ko Hure i tona koroheketanga, i a ia ano i roto i te hereheretanga.
- 8 Nawai a, ka riri a Hure ki tona tuakana; a ka tupu kaha a Hure, ka marohirohi ki te ritenga o to te tangata kaha; he marohirohi ano hoki ia i runga i te whakarite whakawa.
- 9 Koia i haere ai ia ki te puke Eperaima, ka rewa mai i a ia i roto i te puke ra, me te hanga i nga hoari ki te tiira ma te hunga i kumea e ia i muri i a ia; a ano ka whakawhiwhi ia i a ratou ki nga hoari, ka hoki ia ki te pa o Nehoro; ka hoatu whawhai ki tona tuakana, ki a Korihoro, a riro ana i a ia i runga i tenei te kingitanga, whakahokia ana ano e ia ki tona papa, ki a Kipi.
- 10 Na, he whakaaro ki te mea i mea ai a Hure, ka hoatu e tona papa te kingitanga ki a ia; a ka anga ka kingi ia i muri i tona papa.

## Ether 7

And it came to pass that Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days, whose days were exceedingly many.

And he begat sons and daughters; yea, he begat thirty and one, among whom were twenty and three sons.

And it came to pass that he also begat Kib in his old age. And it came to pass that Kib reigned in his stead; and Kib begat Corihor.

And when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor; and he begat sons and daughters, and they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

And when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive, which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

Now the land of Moron, where the king dwelt, was near the land which is called Desolation by the Nephites.

And it came to pass that Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old; nevertheless Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

And it came to pass that Shule was angry with his brother; and Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man; and he was also mighty in judgment.

Wherefore, he came to the hill Ephraim, and he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him; and after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor, and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father Kib.

And now because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom; therefore he began to reign in the stead of his father.

11 Na, ka whakarite ia i te whakawa i runga i te tika: ka horapa haere ano hoki i a ia tona kingitanga i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, no te mea kua hira noa ake te iwi.

12 Nawai a, whanau ake ano hoki a Hure, he tamariki, he tamahine maha.

13 Na, ka ripeneta a Korihoro ki nga mea kino maha i meatia ra e ia; no reira ka hoatu e Hure he mana ki a ia i roto i tona kingitanga.

14 Nawai a, ka maha nga tamariki, nga tamahine a Korihoro. A i roto i nga tamariki a Korihoro tetahi, tona ingoa ko Noa.

15 Nawai a, ka tutu a Noa ki a Hure, ki te kingi, ki tona papa hoki, ki a Korihoro, ka kukume ano ia i tona teina, i a Kohoro, me ona teina katoa ano hoki, me te tokomaha hoki o te iwi.

16 Na, ka hoatu whawhai ia ki a Hure, ki te kingi, a riro ana i a ia i runga i tenei to ratou kainga tupu tuatahi; a riro ana ia hei kingi mo runga i taua wahi o te whenua.

17 A ka hoatu whawhai ano ia ki a Hure, ki te kingi; na, mau ana ia ki a Hure, ki te kingi, a whakaraua atu ana ki Morono.

18 Na, i a ia e tata ana ki te whakamate i a ia, ka tomo nga tama a Hure ki te whare o Noa i te po, ka whakamate i a ia, ka turaki hoki i te tatau o te whare herehere, a whakaputaina ana to ratou papa ki waho, whakanohoia ana ia ki runga ki tona torona i roto i tona ake kingitanga;

19 No reira ka hanga tama a Noa i tona kingitanga i muri i a ia; otia kihai i riro i a ratou tetahi mana ki runga ki a Hure, ki te kingi, a ko te iwi nei i raro i te whakahaere a Hure te kingi, ka kake rawa, ka tupu ka kaha.

20 Na, ka wehewehea te whenua; ka rua hoki nga kingitanga, ko te kingitanga o Hure, ko te kingitanga o Kohoro, o te tama a Noa.

21 Na, ka mea a Kohoro, tama a Noa, i tona iwi kia hoatu whawhai ki a Hure, a taea ana ratou e Hure, a patua ana ano hoki a Kohoro.

And it came to pass that he did execute judgment in righteousness; and he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

And it came to pass that Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

And Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; wherefore Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

And it came to pass that Corihor had many sons and daughters. And among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

And it came to pass that Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

And he gave battle unto Shule, the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance; and he became a king over that part of the land.

And it came to pass that he gave battle again unto Shule, the king; and he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

And it came to pass as he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him upon his throne in his own kingdom.

Wherefore, the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead; nevertheless they did not gain power any more over Shule the king, and the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did prosper exceedingly and wax great.

And the country was divided; and there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

And Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay Cohor.

- 22 Na, he tama ta Kohoro i huaina ko Nimirota: a ka tukua ake e Nimirota te kingitanga o Kohoro ki a Hure, na, ka riro i a ia ta Hure manakohanga mai; koia ka manakohia rawatia ia e Hure, a mahi ana ia i tana e pai ai i roto i tona kingitanga;
- 23 I a Hure e kingi ana ka puta hoki nga poropiti ki roto ki te iwi, kua tonoa mai hoki i te Ariki, a ka poropiti, kei te puta mai tetahi kanga ki te whenua, he mea na te kino me te karakia ki nga whakapakoko a te iwi, a tera ratou e whakangaromia, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta.
- 24 Nawai ra, ka taunu te iwi ki nga poropiti ka tawai ano hoki i a ratou. Na, ka whakarite a kingi Hure i te whakawa ki te hunga katoa e taunu ana ki nga poropiti;
- 25 A ka whakaritea e ia he ture puta noa i te whenua katoa i whiwhi ai nga poropiti ki te mana e haere ai ratou ki a ratou wahi e pai ai; na konei ra i whakahokia ai te iwi ki te ripenetatanga.
- 26 A ka tohungia te iwi e te Ariki mo ratou i ripeneta ki o ratou kino me nga karakia ki nga whakapakoko; a ka anga ano ratou ka kake i runga i te whenua. Nawai a, ka whanau ake a Hure, he tamariki, he tamahine i roto i tona koroheketanga.
- 27 A kahore atu ano he pakanga i nga ra o Hure; ka mahara ano hoki ia ki nga mea nunui i meatia e te Ariki ki ona tupuna i te whakawhitinga mai i a ratou i te rire nui ki te whenua a te kupu whakaari; koia ka whakarite ia i te whakawa i runga i te tika i ona ra katoa.

And now Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod; and Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did gain favor in the eyes of Shule; wherefore Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

And also in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people, who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land, and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

And it came to pass that the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them. And it came to pass that king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did revile against the prophets.

And he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they would; and by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

And because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries the Lord did spare them, and they began to prosper again in the land. And it came to pass that Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

And there were no more wars in the days of Shule; and he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land; wherefore he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 8

- 1 Nawai a, ka whanau ake tana ko Omere, a kingi ana a Omere i muri i a ia. Na, whanau ake ta Omere ko Iarere; a whanau ake a Iarere, he tamariki, he tamahine.
- 2 Na, ka tutu a Iarere ki tona papa, a ka haere ka noho ki te whenua o Hete. Nawai a, ka maha nga iwi i whakapatipati ai ia ki ana kupu tinihanga, a riro ana i a ia te hawhe o te kingitanga.
- 3 Ano ka riro i a ia te hawhe o te kingitanga, ka hoatu whawhai ia ki tona papa, ka whakarau atu ia i tona papa ki te hereheretanga, a whakamahi ana i a ia i roto i te hereheretanga.
- 4 Na, i nga ra i kingi a Omere, e noho ana ia i roto i te hereheretanga tetahi hawhe o ona ra. Nawai a, whanau ake ana he tamariki, he tamahine, a i roto nei i a ratou ko Eremo raua ko Koriatuma;
- 5 A he nui rawa atu to raua riri i nga meatanga a to raua tuakana, a Iarere, no ka ara i a raua tetahi taua, a ka hoatu whawhai ki a Iarere. A ka hoatu whawhai raua ki a ia i te po.
- 6 Nawai a, ka oti i a raua te taua a Iarere te patu, whano kua patu i a ia ano hoki; na, ka tohe ia ki a raua kia kua raua e patu i a ia, a mana e hoatu te kingitanga ki tona papa. Nawai a, ka tuku raua i a ia kia ora.
- 7 Na, ka pouri rawa a Iarere i te ngaronga atu i a ia o te kingitanga, no te mea kua tau ke tona ngakau ki runga ki te kingitanga, ki runga ano hoki ki te kororia o te ao.
- 8 Na, ko te tamahine a Iarere, he matau rawa ia, a tona kitenga i te pouri o tona papa, ka whakaaro ia ki te whakatakoto tikanga e whakahokia ai e ia te kingitanga ki tona papa.
- 9 Na, tino ataahua rawa te tamahine a Iarere. A ka korero ia ki tona papa, ka mea atu ki a ia, na te aha i penei ai te pouri nui o toku papa? Kahore ranei ia i korero i te tuhituhinga i mauria mai e o tatou tupuna i tawahi o te rire nui? Nana, he teka ianei kei reira tetahi whakaaturanga mo te hunga onamata, he mea na a ratou tikanga ngaro i whiwhi ai ratou ki nga kingitanga me te kororia nui?

## Ether 8

And it came to pass that he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead. And Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

And Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth. And it came to pass that he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

And when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

And now, in the days of the reign of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days. And it came to pass that he begat sons and daughters, among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

And they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother, insomuch that they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared. And it came to pass that they did give battle unto him by night.

And it came to pass that when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also; and he pled with them that they would not slay him, and he would give up the kingdom unto his father. And it came to pass that they did grant unto him his life.

And now Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom, for he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

Now the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

Now the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair. And it came to pass that she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow? Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep? Behold, is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

- 10 Na, no konei ra kia tikina atu e toku papa a Akihi, te tama a Kiminoro; nana, he ataahua ahau, a ka kanikani ahau i tona aroaro, ka whakaahuareka ahau i a ia, no ka hiahia mai ia ki a au hei wahine mana: no reira, ki te tono ia ki a koe kia hoatu ahau e koe hei wahine mana, me ki atu e koe, Maku ia e hoatu, a mau e kawē mai ki a au te matenga o toku papa, o te kingi.
- 11 Na, he hoa a Omere ki a Akihi, mo reira i te mea kua tikina atu a Omere e Iarere, ka kanikani te tamahine a Iarere i tona aroaro, ka whakaahuareka i a ia, no ka hiahia ia ki a ia, hei wahine mana. Na, ka mea mai ia ki a Iarere, homai ia ki a au hei wahine maku.
- 12 Na, ka mea atu a Iarere ki a ia, Maku ia e hoatu ki a koe, a mau e kawē mai ki a au te matenga o toku papa, o te kingi.
- 13 Nawai a, ka huihua e Akihi ki te whare o Iarere ona whanaunga katoa, a ka mea atu ki a ratou, e pai ana koia koutou ki te oati mai ki a au tera koutou e u ki a au i runga i te mea e hiahia ai ahau ki a koutou?
- 14 Nawai a, ka oatitia e ratou katoa ki a ia, te Atua o te rangi, me nga rangi ano hoki, me te whenua, me o ratou matenga, a ko ia e hoki iho i ta Akihi e hiahia ai, ka poutoa te matenga, a ka whakamatea ano hoki te tangata e whakapuakina ai ta Akihi e whakaatu ai ki a ratou.
- 15 Na, ka pera ta ratou ki a Akihi. A ka minita atu a Akihi ki a ratou i nga oati i homai e nga tangata onamata, kua whai ano hoki ratou i te mana, he mea ano kua tukua iho no Kaina mai, ko ia nei he kai kohuru no te timatanga.
- 16 A he mea tautoko ratou e te kaha o te rewera hei minita i enei oati ki te iwi, hei pupuri i a ratou ki te pouritanga, hei awhina i te hunga e whai ana i te mana, kia whiwhi i te mana, kia kohuru, kia pahua, kia korero teka, kia mahi ano hoki i nga kino katoa me nga puremu.
- 17 A na te tamahine a Iarere i whakaki tona ngakau, kia rapu i enei mea onamata; na Iarere hoki i whakaki te ngakau o Akihi; no reira ka minita a Akihi i aua mea ki ona whanaunga, ratou ko ona hoa, me te arahi ano i a ratou i runga i nga kupu whakaari whakapatipati kia mea i tana i pai ai.

And now, therefore, let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimnor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife; wherefore if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And now Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him, insomuch that he desired her to wife. And it came to pass that he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

And Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

And it came to pass that Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

And it came to pass that they all swore unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head; and whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

And it came to pass that thus they did agree with Akish. And Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

And they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people, to keep them in darkness, to help such as sought power to gain power, and to murder, and to plunder, and to lie, and to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

And it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old; and Jared put it into the heart of Akish; wherefore, Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

- 18     Nawai a, ka whakapumau ratou i tetahi huihui ngaro, ka pera me ratou onamata; e whakariharihanga, e kinongia rawatia atu i nga mea katoa, ki te titiro iho a te Atua;
- 19     Ta te mea kahore a te Ariki mahi i runga i nga huihui ngaro, kahore ano hoki ia e pai ma te tangata e whakaheke toto, heoi e riria ana tenei e ia i roto i nga mea katoa, no te timatanga mai ra ano o te tangata.
- 20     Na, kahore ahau, a Moronai, e tuhituhi i te ahua o a ratou oati, me a ratou tikanga ngaro, kua oti hoki te whakakite mai ki a au, kei waenga i nga iwi katoa enei mea, a kei waenga ano hoki i nga Ramana,
- 21     Na enei mea ano te whakangaromanga o tenei iwi e korerotia nei e ahau inaianei, me te whakangaromanga ano hoki o te iwi o Niwhai;
- 22     A ko te iwi e tautoko ana i nga huihuinga ngaro e rite ana ki enei, mo te whai mana, mo te whai taonga mo ratou a horapa noa ratou i runga i te iwi, nana, ka whakangaromia ratou, no te mea e kore te Ariki e tuku i te toto o tana hunga tapu e whakahekea ai e ratou, kia tangi tonu ki a ia i te whenua kia utua ki runga ki a ratou e ia, a kahore ia e ngaki mate i runga i a ratou;
- 23     No reira, E koutou, e nga Tauwiwi, he whai whakaaro no te Atua te whakakitenga atu o enei mea ki a koutou, kia ripeneta ai koutou ki o koutou hara, kia kaua ai ano hoki enei whakakotahitanga kohuru e tukua kia eke ki runga ki a koutou, nga mea kua oti te hanga he whakaaro kia whai mana ai kia whai taonga ai, a ko te mahi, ae ra, ko te mahi a te whakangaromanga kia puta mai ki runga ki a koutou, ae ra, ko te hoari o te tika a te Atua Ora Tonu kia makere ki runga ki a koutou, hei turaki hei whakangaro i a koutou, ina tuku koutou i enei mea kia puta mai;
- 24     No reira he whakahau ta te Ariki i a koutou, ina kite koutou i enei mea e puta mai ana ki roto ki a koutou, kia oho ake koutou, kia kite koutou i to koutou noho whakawehi, he mea na tenei whakakotahitanga ngaro i roto i a koutou, ki te kore, aue te mate mo taua mea, he whakaaro hoki ki te toto o te hunga kua whakamatea nei; ta te mea e tangi ake ana ratou i te puehu kia utua ki runga ki taua mea, ki te hunga ano hoki nana tenei i hanga.

And it came to pass that they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

For the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

And now I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

And whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed; for the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

Wherefore, O ye Gentiles, it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you, that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain—and the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, yea, even the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

Wherefore, the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation, because of this secret combination which shall be among you; or wo be unto it, because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

25 Ta te mea tenei ake ko te tangata e hanga ana i taua mea e whai ana ia kia turaki i te herehere-koretanga o nga whenua katoa, o nga iwi, o nga kainga; a ma taua mea hoki e whakaputaina ai te whakangaromanga mo nga iwi katoa, he mea hanga hoki na te rewera ko ia nei te matua o nga korero teka katoa; ae, ko taua kai korero teka ra ano o o tatou tupuna tuatahi i whakawaia; ae, ko taua kai korero teka nana te tangata i mea kia kohuru no te timatanga mai ra ano; nana nga ngakau o nga tangata i whakapakeke, no ka kohuru ratou i nga poropiti, ka aki i a ratou ki te kohatu, ka maka atu ano hoki i a ratou no te timatanga ra ano.

26 No reira kua whakahau ahau, a Moronai, kia tuhituhia enei mea kia whakakorea atu ai te kino, kia puta mai ai hoki te wa e kore a Hatana e whai mana ki runga i nga ngakau o nga tamariki a te tangata, engari kia kumea ratou kia mahi i te pai i nga wa katoa, kia haere mai ai ratou ki te matapuna o te tika katoa kia whakaorangia.

For it cometh to pass that whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries; and it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, for it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; even that same liar who beguiled our first parents, yea, even that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning; who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

Wherefore, I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away, and that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be persuaded to do good continually, that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and be saved.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 9

- 1 Na, ka haere taku, ta Moronai tuhituhinga. Nana, he mea na nga huihuinga ngaro a Akihi ratou ko ona hoa, i turakina ai e ratou te kingitanga o Omere.
- 2 Otira i mahi tohu te Ariki ki a Omere, ki ana tamariki ano hoki ratou ko ana tamahine, kihai nei i whai ki te whakangaro i a ia.
- 3 A ka whakatupato mai te Ariki i a Omere, he mea moemoea, kia haere atu i te whenua; no reira ka haere atu a Omere me tona hapu ki waho i te whenua, a he maha nga ra e haere ana, a ka haere ra te puke o Himi, puta atu ra te kainga i whakangaromia ai nga Niwhai, puta atu i reira whaka-te-rawhiti. tae atu ana ki tetahi kainga e karangatia nei ko Aparomo, ki te taha o te takutai, ki reira whakatu ai i tana teneti, me ana tamariki ratou ko ana tamahine, me tona whare katoa, ko Iarere ratou ko tona hapu kahore.
- 4 Nawai a, ka whakawahia a Iarere hei kingi mo runga i te iwi, e te ringaringa o te kino; a ka hoatu e ia ki a Akihi tana tamahine hei wahine mana,
- 5 Nawai a, ka whai a Akihi kia whakamatea tona hungawai; ka tono atu ia ki te hunga ra i whakaoatitia e ia ki te oati o nga tangata onamata, a riro ana i a ratou te matenga o tona hungawai, i a ia e noho ana i runga i tona torona, e whakarongo ana ki tona iwi.
- 6 No te horapa haere o tenei huihuinga kino ngaro, i kino ai nga ngakau o te iwi katoa; no reira ka kohurutia a Iarere i runga i tona torona, a ka kingi a Akihi i muri i a ia.
- 7 Nawai a, ka anga a Akihi, ka puhaehae ki tana tama, no reira ka tutakina ia i roto i tetahi whare herehere, a he iti rawa atu te kai i whangaia atu mana, a, mate noa ia.
- 8 Na, ko te teina o tera i mate, (ko Nimara tona ingoa,) i riri ki tona papa, mo ta tona papa i mea ai ki tona tuakana.
- 9 Nawai a, ka huihuia e Nimara etahi tangata torutoru, a rere atu ana ki waho o te whenua, haere mai ana, noho ana i a Omere.

## Ether 9

- And now I, Moroni, proceed with my record. Therefore, behold, it came to pass that because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends, behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.
- Nevertheless, the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to his daughters who did not seek his destruction.
- And the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of the land; wherefore Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed, and from thence eastward, and came to a place which was called Ablom, by the seashore, and there he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and all his household, save it were Jared and his family.
- And it came to pass that Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of wickedness; and he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.
- And it came to pass that Akish sought the life of his father-in-law; and he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the ancients, and they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.
- For so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people; therefore Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.
- And it came to pass that Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.
- And now the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.
- And it came to pass that Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.



- 10      Nawai a, ka whanau ake etahi tamariki tane ma Akihi, a riro ana i a ratou nga ngakau o te iwi, he ahakoa i oati ratou ki a ia kia mahi i nga tu kino katoa, kia rite ki tana e hiahia ai.
- 11      Na, i hiahia te iwi o Akihi kia whai taonga, pera i a Akihi i hiahia kia whai mana; no reira ka tapae moni atu nga tamariki a Akihi ma ratou, a na tenei i kukume ai ratou i te wahi nui o te iwi kia whai i muri i a ratou;
- 12      A ka timata he whawhai i waenganui i nga tamariki a Akihi, me Akihi, a haere tonu he maha nga tau; tae noa hoki ki te whakangaromanga o te wahi nui o te iwi; ae ra, o te katoa, haunga ra nga wairua e toru tekau, me te hunga ra i rere atu me te whare o Otoere;
- 13      No reira ka whakahokia ano a Omere ki tona kainga tupu.
- 14      Nawai a, ka koroheke a Omere, ahakoa ra whanau ake tana ko Emera i tona koroheketanga, a ka whakawahi ia i a Emera hei kingi mo muri i a ia.
- 15      A i muri iho i tana whakawahinga i a Emera hei kingi, ka kite ia i te ata noho i runga i te whenua e rua nga tau, a ka mate ia, he maha rawa hoki nga ra i kite ai ia, i ki tonu nei i te pouri. Nawai a, ka kingi a Emera i muri i a ia, a takahi ana i nga tapuae e tona papa.
- 16      A ka timata ano te Ariki te tango i te kanga i runga i te whenua, a ka nui rawa te whai pai o te whare o Emera i raro i te kingitanga a Emera; na, i nga tau e ono tekau ma rua kua tino kaha rawa ratou, no ka nui ta ratou whai taonga,
- 17      I a ratou nga tu, hua rakau katoa, me nga kereene, me nga hiraka, me nga rinena papai, me nga koura, me nga hiriwa, me nga mea utu nui;
- 18      Me nga tu kau katoa ano hoki, nga okiha, me nga kau uwaha, nga hipi, nga poaka, nga koati, me era atu tu kararehe e pai ana hei kai ma te tangata;
- 19      I a ratou ano nga hoiho, nga kaihe, a he erawhana ano a ratou, he kureromo, he kumomo; na, he pai anake aua mea, ma te tangata, a tera noa ake, te pai o nga erawhana, me nga kureromo, me nga kumomo.

And it came to pass that Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

Now the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power; wherefore, the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

And there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years, yea, unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

Wherefore, Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

And it came to pass that Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat Emer; and he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

And after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died, having seen exceedingly many days, which were full of sorrow. And it came to pass that Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

And the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land, and the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of Emer; and in the space of sixty and two years they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they became exceedingly rich—

Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep, and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of animals which were useful for the food of man.

And they also had horses, and asses, and there were elephants and cureloms and cumoms; all of which were useful unto man, and more especially the elephants and cureloms and cumoms.

20 A penei ka ringihia iho e te Ariki ana manaakitanga ki runga ki tenei whenua, koia he mea whiriwhiri pai ake i era atu whenua katoa; a nana i whakahau kia nohoia atu te whenua e te hunga mana e noho te whenua, ki te kore ka whakangaromia ratou ina pakari ratou i runga i te kino; no te mea ka ringihia e ahau te raneatanga o taku riri ki runga ki nga pera, e ai ta te Ariki.

21 A na Emera i whakarite whakawa i runga i te tika i ona ra katoa, a whanau ake ana he maha nga tamariki me nga tamahine, a whanau ake ano tana ko Koriatumu; a ka whakawahia a Koriatumu e ia hei kingi i muri i a ia.

22 A e wha nga tau i ora ai ia i muri i tana whakawahinga i a Koriatumu hei kingi mo muri i a ia, he ata noho ano hoki tana i kite ai i runga i te whenua; ae ra, i kite ra ano ia i te Tama o te Tika, a hari ana kororia ana i runga i tona ra; na, ka hemo ia i runga i te rangimarie.

23 Nawai a, ka takahi a Koriatumu i nga tapuae o tona papa, a he maha nga pa kaha i hanga e ia, ka mahi hoki i te pai mo tona iwi i ona ra katoa. Nawai a kahore ana tamariki, a taea noatia tona koroheketanga rawatanga.

24 Nawai a, ka mate tana wahine, kotahi rau ma rua ona tau. A ka mau a Koriatumu ki tetahi kotiro hei wahine marena mana i roto i tona koroheketanga, a whanau ake ana he tamariki he tamahine; na ka ora ia, a kotahi rau e wha tekau ma rua ona tau.

25 Nawai a, whanau ake tana ko Komo, a ka kingi a Komo i muri i a ia; a e wha tekau ma iwa nga tau i kingi ai ia, a whanau ake tana ko Hete; a ko etahi atu tama ano hoki me nga tamahine i whanau ake mana.

26 Na, i horapa ano te iwi ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua, a ka timata ano kia ai he kino nui rawa ki runga i te mata o te whenua, ka tahuri hoki a Hete ki te awahi atu ano ki nga tikanga ngaro onamata, hei whakangaro i tona papa.

27 Nawai a, ka turakina tona papa e ia i runga i te torona; ma hoki nana ia i patu ki tana ake hoari; a kingi ana i muri i a ia.

And thus the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was choice above all other lands; and he commanded that whoso should possess the land should possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when they were ripened in iniquity; for upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my wrath.

And Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days, and he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum, and he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

And after he had anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead he lived four years, and he saw peace in the land; yea, and he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and glory in his day; and he died in peace.

And it came to pass that Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good unto his people in all his days. And it came to pass that he had no children even until he was exceedingly old.

And it came to pass that his wife died, being an hundred and two years old. And it came to pass that Coriantum took to wife, in his old age, a young maid, and begat sons and daughters; wherefore he lived until he was an hundred and forty and two years old.

And it came to pass that he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead; and he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he also begat other sons and daughters.

And the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness upon the face of the land, and Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to destroy his father.

And it came to pass that he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword; and he did reign in his stead.

28 Na, ka puta mai ano nga poropiti ki runga ki te whenua, ka karanga i te ripeneta ki a ratou; kia whakapaia e ratou te huarahi o te Ariki, ki te kore ka pa tetahi kanga ki te mata o te whenua; ae ra, ka ai he hemo-kai nui, ma reira e whakangaromia ai ratou, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta.

29 Otiia kihai te iwi i whakapono ki nga kupu a nga poropiti, heoi maka ana i a ratou ki waho; a ko etahi o ratou i maka ki roto ki nga poka, a mahue ana ratou ki te mate. Na, ka mahi ratou i enei mea katoa i runga i te whakahau a kingi Hete.

30 Nawai a, ka pa tetahi mate-kai nui ki runga ki te whenua, a he tere rawa te whakangaromanga o nga tangata, hemea na taua mate-kai, no te mea kihai i puta te ua ki runga ki te mata o te whenua;

31 A ka puta mai ano he nakahi whakamate ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, na, he maha nga tangata i whakamatea. Nawai a, ka timata a ratou kahui te rere atu i mua i nga nakahi whakamate, ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga i karangatia ra e nga Niwhai ko Harahemera.

32 A he nui noa atu i mate i te huarahi; ko etahi ia i rere atu ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga.

33 Nawai a, ka mea te Ariki i nga nakahi kia whakamutua te whai i a ratou, engari kia katia te huarahi kei puta te iwi; kia hinga i nga nakahi whakamate nga tangata katoa e totohe ana ki te puta atu.

34 Nawai a, ka whai haere te iwi i runga i te ritenga atu o nga kararehe, a kainga ana nga tinana o nga mea i mate i te huarahi, a pau ake ana i a ratou te katoa te kai. Na, i te kitenga o te iwi tera ratou e mate, ka timata ratou te ripeneta ki a ratou kino, me te karanga ano ki te Ariki.

35 Ano ka nui ta ratou whakaiti i a ratou ano i te aroaro o te Ariki, ka unga ia i te ua ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, a ka hauora te iwi, na, ka ai he hua rakau i nga kainga whaka-te-nota, i nga kainga tawhio noa ano hoki. Heoi whakakite mai ana te Ariki i tona kaha ki a ratou, i runga i te whakaoranga i a ratou i te mate-kai.

And there came prophets in the land again, crying repentance unto them—that they must prepare the way of the Lord or there should come a curse upon the face of the land; yea, even there should be a great famine, in which they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

But the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out; and some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish. And it came to pass that they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

And it came to pass that there began to be a great dearth upon the land, and the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast because of the dearth, for there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

And there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people. And it came to pass that their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents, towards the land southward, which was called by the Nephites Zarahemla.

And it came to pass that there were many of them which did perish by the way; nevertheless, there were some which fled into the land southward.

And it came to pass that the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

And it came to pass that the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all. Now when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

And it came to pass that when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again, and there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the countries round about. And the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 10

- 1 Na, ko Heha ko ia nei he uri no Hete, i mate hoki a Hete i te hemo-kai ratou ko tona whare katoa, ko Heha ia kahore; koia a Heha i tahuri ai ki te whakatupu ano i tetahi iwi i pakaru.
- 2 Nawai a, ka mahara a Heha ki te whakangaromanga o ona tupuna, a hanga ana e ia he kingitanga tika, no te mea i mahara ia ki ta te Ariki i mahi ai hei whakawhiti i a Iarere raua ko tona teina i rawahi o te rire; a haere ana ia i nga ara o te Ariki, na, whanau ake ana he tamariki, he tamahine.
- 3 Na, ko tana matamua, tona ingoa ko Heha, i tutu ki a ia: otira i patua a Heha e te ringa o tetahi kai pahua, he nui no ana taonga, na reira i hoki ai te humarie ki tona papa.
- 4 Nawai a, he maha nga pa i hanga e tona papa ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, a timata ana ano te horapa haeretanga o te iwi ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua. Na, ka ora a Heha, a tino koroheke rawa ia; na, whanau ake tana ko Ripakihi, a ka mate ia. Na, ka kingi a Ripakihi i muri i a ia.
- 5 A kihai a Ripakihi i mahi i te tika ki te tirohanga a te Ariki, no te mea he maha ana wahine, me ana wahine iti, a nana i whakamaui ki nga pokohiwi o nga tangata te mea e taimaha ana ki te pikau; ae ra, nana i takoha ratou ki nga takoha taimaha; a he maha nga whare rarahi i hanga ai ia ki te takoha.
- 6 A hanga ana e ia mona he torona ataahua rawa, me nga whare herehere maha, a te tangata kihai nei i pai ki te uru ki raro i nga takoha, ka maka e ia ki te whare herehere; me te tangata ano kihai nei i ahei te homai takoha ka maka ki te whare herehere; a ka mea ia kia mahi tonu ratou hei oranga mo ratou; a te tangata e whakakeke ana ki te mahi, ka meinga e ia kia whakamatea;
- 7 Na reira i whiwhi ai ia ki tona mahi pai katoa: ae ra, ko ana koura para-kore i meinga e ia kia tahia i roto i te whare herehere; me nga tu mahi tohunga katoa i meinga e ia kia mahia i roto i te whare herehere. Nawai a, ka tukinotia ano te iwi e ia ki ana puremutanga me ana whakarihariha;

## Ether 10

And it came to pass that Shez, who was a descendant of Heth—for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez—wherefore, Shez began to build up again a broken people.

And it came to pass that Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, and he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep; and he did walk in the ways of the Lord; and he begat sons and daughters.

And his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him; nevertheless, Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

And it came to pass that his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, and the people began again to spread over all the face of the land. And Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died, and Riplakish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord, for he did have many wives and concubines, and did lay that upon men's shoulders which was grievous to be borne; yea, he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did build many spacious buildings.

And he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne; and he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject unto taxes he did cast into prison; and whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison; and he did cause that they should labor continually for their support; and whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

Wherefore he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did cause to be refined in prison; and all manner of fine workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison. And it came to pass that he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

8 Ano ka wha tekau ma rua ona tau e kingi ana, ka whakatika ake te iwi i runga i te tutu ki a ia, a ka timata ano te whawhai i runga i te whenua, no ka whakamatea a Ripakihi, me ana uri i panaia atu i roto i te whenua.

9 Nawai a, i muri i nga tau maha, ko Moriatono, (he uri ia no Ripakihi,) i whakamine i tetahi taua o nga mea i peia atu, a ka haere atu, ka hoatu whawhai ki te iwi; na, ka whiwhi kaha ia ki runga ki nga pa maha; a ka tino nanakia rawa te whawhai, ka mau ano mo nga tau maha, a ka whiwhi kaha ia ki runga ki te whenua katoa, a whakatu ana i a ia ano hei kingi ki runga ki te whenua katoa.

10 Na, i muri iho i tana whakatunga i a ia ano hei kingi, ka whakamama ia i te pikaunga a te iwi, na konei ia i paingia ai e te iwi, a whakawahi ana ratou i a ia hei kingi mo ratou.

11 A ka mahi tika ia ki te iwi, heoi ki a ia ano kahore, he nui hoki no ana puremutanga: no reira ka hatepea atu ia i te aroaro o te Ariki.

12 Nawai a, ka hanga a Moriatono i nga pa maha, a ka riro te iwi he, iwi tino whai taonga i roto i tona kingitanga, i runga i te whai whare, i te whai koura, me te hiriwa, me te whakatupu kereene, i te whai kahui o ia tu, o ia tu, me nga mea pera i whakahokia ki a ratou.

13 Na, ka ora a Moriatono, a ka tino koroheke rawa, katahi ka whanau ake tana, ko Kimi; a ka kingi a Kimi i muri i tona papa; na, e waru nga tau e kingi ana ia, a ka mate tona papa. Na, kihai a Kimi i kingi i runga i te tika, no reira kahore ia i arongia e te Ariki.

14 A ka whakatika ake tona teina ka tutu ki a ia, na konei i hereherea ai ia e ia, a ka noho ia i roto i te hereheretanga i ona ra katoa; a whanau ake ana, he tamariki, he tamahine, i roto i te hereheretanga; a whanau ake tana i roto i tona koroheketanga ko Riwai, a ka mate ia.

15 Nawai a, ka mahi a Riwai i roto i te hereheretanga mo nga tau e wha tekau ma rua i muri i te matenga o tona papa. A ka whakatupu whawhai ia ki te kingi o te whenua, na reira i riro ai i a ia te kingitanga.

And when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to be war again in the land, insomuch that Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of the land.

And it came to pass after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people; and he gained power over many cities; and the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years; and he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

And after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

And he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms; wherefore he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

And it came to pass that Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

And Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim; and Kim did reign in the stead of his father; and he did reign eight years, and his father died. And it came to pass that Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

And his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity; and he did remain in captivity all his days; and he begat sons and daughters in captivity, and in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

And it came to pass that Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years. And he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

- 16 Na, muri iho i te rironga o te kingitanga i a ia, ka mahi ia i te mea tika ki te tirohanga iho a te Ariki; a kake ana te iwi i runga i te whenua, ora ana ano ia, a, koroheke rawa, na, whanau ake ana he tamariki, he tamahine; a ka whanau ano tana ko Koroma, i whakawahia nei e ia hei kingi mo muri i a ia.
- 17 Nawai a, ka mahi a Koroma i te mea pai ki te tirohanga iho a te Ariki, i ona ra katoa; a whanau ake ana he tamariki maha, me nga tamahine; a i te mea kua kite ia i nga ra maha, ka pahemo atu ia, ka pera me era atu o te whenua; a ko Kihī i kingi i muri i a ia
- 18 A ka pahemo atu hoki a Kihī, a ka kingi a Ripi i muri i a ia.
- 19 A ka mahi pai ano a Ripi, ki te tirohanga iho a te Ariki. Na, i nga ra i a Ripi, ka whakangaromia nga nakahi whakamate; koia ratou ka haere ki te whenua whaka-te-tonga, ki te rapu kai ma te iwi o te whenua, no te mea e kapi ana taua whenua i nga kirehe ngahere. A ko Ripi ano i riro hei tangata maia ki te whai kirehe.
- 20 Na, ka hanga e ratou tetahi pa nui ki te whenua whaiti, ki te wahi e wehea ana te whenua o te moana.
- 21 A tiakina ana e ratou te whenua whaka-te-tonga hei koraha, e whaiwhai kirehe ai ratou. Na, kapi ana te mata katoa o te whenua whaka-te-nota i nga tangata;
- 22 A he nui rawa to ratou kaha ki te mahi, a hoko mai ana ratou hoko atu ana, whakawhitiwhiti ana, tetahi ki tetahi, kia whai taonga ai ratou.
- 23 Na, ka mahi ratou i nga tu oa katoa, ka mahi i te koura, i te hiriwa, i te rino, i te parahi, me nga tu metara katoa; he mea kerī era e ratou i roto i te whenua; no reira ka whakapukepuke ratou i nga puke whenua nui, kia whiwhi ki te oa, o te koura, o te hiriwa, o te rino, o te kapa. A mahia ana e ratou nga tu mahi papai katoa.
- 24 I a ratou nga hiraka, me nga rinena miro pai; a ka mahi ratou i nga tu kahu katoa, kia kakahu ai ratou i a ratou, i o ratou kiri-kau.
- 25 A hanga ana ratou i nga tu mea mahi katoa hei ngaki i te whenua, hei parau, hei rui, hei kokoti, hei ngaki, hei patu ano hoki.
- 26 Ka mahi ano ratou i nga mea mahi katoa hei whakamahi i a ratou kararehe.

And after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord; and the people did prosper in the land; and he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

And it came to pass that Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days; and he begat many sons and daughters; and after he had seen many days he did pass away, even like unto the rest of the earth; and Kish reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Kish passed away also, and Lib reigned in his stead.

And it came to pass that Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord. And in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed. Wherefore they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land, for the land was covered with animals of the forest. And Lib also himself became a great hunter.

And they built a great city by the narrow neck of land, by the place where the sea divides the land.

And they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game. And the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

And they were exceedingly industrious, and they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

And they did work in all manner of ore, and they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals; and they did dig it out of the earth; wherefore, they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper. And they did work all manner of fine work.

And they did have silks, and fine-twined linen; and they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

And they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

And they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

27 Ka mahi ano ratou i nga tu patu whawhai katoa. A ka mahi ano ratou i nga tu mahi katoa e rereke ana te mahinga.

28 Kahore hoki he iwi i rite nga manaakitanga te nui ki o ratou, kia nui atu ano te whai pai he mea na te ringa o te Ariki. A i roto ano ratou i tetahi whenua whiriwhiri pai ake i nga whenua katoa, na te Ariki hoki tenei i korero.

29 Nawai a, ka ora a Ripi he maha nga tau, a whanau ake ana, he tamariki, he tamahine; a ka whanau ake tana ko Heatomo.

30 Nawai a, ka kingi a Heatomo i muri i tona papa. Ano ka rua tekau ma wha tau e kingi ana a Heatomo, ka tangohia te kingitanga i a ia. A he maha ana tau e mahi ana i roto i te hereheretanga; ae ra, pau noa te toenga o ona ra.

31 A whanau ake tana ko Hete, na, ora ana a Hete i roto i te hereheretanga a pau noa ona ra. A whanau ake ta Hete ko Arona, na, noho ana a Arona i roto i te hereheretanga a pau noa ona ra; a whanau ake tana ko Amanikara, a ka noho ano hoki a Amanikara i roto i te hereheretanga pau noa ona ra; na, whanau ake tana ko Koriatumu, a noho ana a Koriatumu i roto i te hereheretanga pau noa ona ra; a whanau ake tana ko Komo.

32 Nawai a, ka kumea ketia e Komo te hawhe o te kingitanga. A ka kingi ia ki runga ki taua hawhe o te kingitanga mo nga tau e wha tekau ma rua: na, ka haere ia ki te whawhai ki te kingi, ki a Amakipi, a whawhai ana mo nga tau maha, a i roto i taua wa ka whiwhi kaha a Komo ki runga ki a Amakiri, na, ka whiwhi kaha ia ki runga ki te toenga o te kingitanga.

33 Na, i nga ra i a Komo ka timata nga kai pahua i runga i te whenua: a ka mau i a ratou nga tikanga tawhito, ka minita i nga oati i runga i nga ritenga o nga tangata onamata, a whai ana ano kia whakangaromia te kingitanga.

34 Na, ka nui te whawhai a Komo ki a ratou; heoi kihai ratou i taea e ia.

And they did make all manner of weapons of war. And they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

And never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord. And they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

And it came to pass that Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

And it came to pass that Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father. And when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him. And he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

And he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days. And Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days; and he begat Com.

And it came to pass that Com drew away the half of the kingdom. And he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years; and he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

And in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land; and they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

Now Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 11

- 1 Na, ka puta mai ano nga poropiti maha i nga ra i a Komo, a poropiti ana i te whakangaromanga mo taua iwi nui, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta, e tahuri ki te Ariki, me te whakarere atu i a ratou kohuru me o ratou kino.
- 2 Nawai a, ka whakakahoretia nga poropiti e te iwi, a oma ana ratou ki a Komo kia tiakina, no te mea i whai te iwi kia whakangaromia ratou;
- 3 A ka poropiti ratou i nga mea maha ki a Komo; na, ka manaakitia ia i te toenga katoa o ona ra.
- 4 Na, ka ora ia a koroheke rawa, a whanau ake tana ko Hipiromo; a kingi ana a Hipiromo i muri i a ia. Na, ka tutu te teina o Hipiromo ki a ia; a ka timata tetahi whawhai nui rawa ki runga ki te whenua katoa.
- 5 Nawai a, ka mea te teina o Hipiromo i nga poropiti katoa nana i poropiti te whakangaromanga mo te iwi, kia whakamatea.
- 6 A he aitua nui i runga i te whenua katoa, no te mea na ratou i whakapuaki tetahi kanga nui atu e pa ai ki te whenua, ki te iwi ano hoki, me te panga ano o tetahi whakangaromanga nuitanga ki roto ki a ratou, o tetahi kahore nei ona rite i tae noa ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua; a ka pera me he puranga whenua o ratou iwi i runga i te mata o te whenua, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta ki to ratou kino.
- 7 Na, kihai ratou i whakarongo ki te korero a te Ariki, he mea na o ratou huihuinga kinotanga; no reira ka tupu nga whawhai me nga tautohetohenga ki runga ki te whenua katoa, me nga hemo-kai maha ano hoki, me nga mate uruta, no ka ai tetahi whakangaromanga nuitanga, kahore ano i mohiotia noatia tona rite i runga i te mata o te whenua, na, puta katoa ana tenei i nga ra i a Hipiromo.
- 8 A ka timata te iwi te ripeneta ki to ratou kino; a ka tohungia ratou e te Ariki ki te ritenga o ta ratou ripenetatanga.
- 9 Na, ka whakamatea a Hipiromo, a ko Heta i riro herehere, a noho ana ia i roto i te hereheretanga i ona ra katoa.

## Ether 11

And there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

And it came to pass that the prophets were rejected by the people, and they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to destroy them.

And they prophesied unto Com many things; and he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

And he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom; and Shiblom reigned in his stead. And the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to death;

And there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified that a great curse should come upon the land, and also upon the people, and that there should be a great destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon the face of the earth, and their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

And they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their wicked combinations; wherefore, there began to be wars and contentions in all the land, and also many famines and pestilences, inasmuch that there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been known upon the face of the earth; and all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.

And the people began to repent of their iniquity; and inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.

And it came to pass that Shiblom was slain, and Seth was brought into captivity, and did dwell in captivity all his days.



- 10 Nawai a, ka riro te kingitanga i a Ahaha, i tana tama; a ka kingi ia ki runga ki te iwi i ona ra katoa. A ka mahi ia i nga tu kino katoa i ona ra, na reira i mea ai ia kia nui te whakaheke toto; a he torutoru noa ona ra.
- 11 Na, he uri a Eteme no Ahaha, a ka riro i a ia te kingitanga; a ka mahi kino ano ia i ona ra.
- 12 Na, i nga ra i a Eteme, ka puta mai nga poropiti maha, a ka poropiti ano ki te iwi; ae ra, ka poropiti ratou i tenei, ara, ka whakangaromia rawatia ratou e te Ariki i runga i te mata o te whenua, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta ki to ratou kino.
- 13 Nawai a, ka whakapakeke te iwi i o ratou ngakau, a kihai ratou i whakarongo ki ta ratou kupu: na, ka tangi nga poropiti a ka puta atu i roto i te iwi.
- 14 Nawai a, ka whakarite a Eteme i te whakawa i runga i te kino i ona ra katoa; a whanau ake tana ko Morono. Na, ka kingi a Morono i muri i a ia: a ka mahi a Morono i te mea kino i te aroaro o te Ariki.
- 15 Nawai a, ka ara tetahi tututanga i roto i te iwi, he mea na taua huihui ngaro kua hanga ra kia whiwhi mana ai, kia whai taonga ai; a ka ara ano tetahi tangata i roto i a ratou he marohirohi ia i runga i te kino, a ka whawhai ki a Morono, na reira i turakina ai e ia te hawhe o te kingitanga; na, ka pupuri ia i te hawhe o te kingitanga mo nga tau maha.
- 16 Nawai a, ka turaki a Morono i a ia, a riro ana ano i a ia te kingitanga.
- 17 Na, ka ara ano tetahi atu tangata marohirohi; he uri tera no te teina o Iarere.
- 18 Nawai a, ka turaki ia i a Morono, a riro ana te kingitanga i a ia; no reira ka noho a Morono i roto i te ponongatanga a pau noa te toenga o ona ra; na, whanau ake tana ko Koriatoro.
- 19 A ka noho a Koriatoro i te hereheretanga a pau noa ona ra.

And it came to pass that Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom; and he did reign over the people all his days. And he did do all manner of iniquity in his days, by which he did cause the shedding of much blood; and few were his days.

And Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom; and he also did do that which was wicked in his days.

And it came to pass that in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and prophesied again unto the people; yea, they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth except they repented of their iniquities.

And it came to pass that the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from among the people.

And it came to pass that Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days; and he begat Moron. And it came to pass that Moron did reign in his stead; and Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.

And it came to pass that there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that secret combination which was built up to get power and gain; and there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom; and he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

And it came to pass that Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

And it came to pass that there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

And it came to pass that he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom; wherefore, Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

And it came to pass that Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

20 Na, i nga ra ano hoki i a Koriatoro ka puta mai nga poropiti maha, a poropiti ana i nga mea nui whakamiharo, me te karanga ano i te ripenetatanga ki te iwi, a ki te kore ratou e ripeneta ka whakarite te Ariki, te Atua i te whakawa ki a ratou, hei tino whakangaromanga rawatanga mo ratou;

21 A ka tonoa mai e te Ariki, e te Atua, ara, ka mauria mai tetahi atu iwi hei noho i te whenua, he mea ma tona kaha, i runga i te ritenga i mauria mai ai e ia o ratou tupuna.

22 Na, whakakahoretia katoatia ana nga kupu a nga poropiti e ratou, no to ratou huihui ngaro hoki me o ratou whakarihariha kino.

23 Nawai a, ka whanau ake ta Koriatoro, ko Etere, a ka mate ia, kua noho hoki i roto i te hereheretanga i ona ra katoa.

And in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things, and cried repentance unto the people, and except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

And that the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

And they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

And it came to pass that Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 12

- 1 Na, i roto nga ra o Etere i nga ra o Koriatuma; a ko Koriatuma te kingi i runga i te whenua katoa.
- 2 A he poropiti a Etere na te Ariki; no reira ka puta mai a Etere i nga ra i a Koriatuma, a timata ana te poropiti ki te iwi, kihai hoki ia i taea te pehi, he mea hoki na te Wairua o te Ariki i roto ra i a ia;
- 3 Ina hoki i karanga ia no te ata, a to noa te ra, e whakahauhau ana i te iwi kia whakapono ki te Atua he mea ripenetatanga, kei whakangaromia ratou, e mea ana ki a ratou, ma te whakapono e whakaritea ai nga mea katoa;
- 4 No reira, te tangata e whakapono ana ki te Atua kua ahei te tumanako atu i runga i te tuturutanga ki tetahi ao pai ake, ae ra, ki tetahi wahi i te ringaringa matau o te Atua, he mea puta ake taua tumanako i te whakapono, riro ana hei punga ki nga wairua o nga tangata, hei mea i a ratou kia pono kia pumau, e hira tonu ana i runga i nga mahi pai, he mea arataki hoki ki te whakakororia i te Atua.
- 5 Nawai a, ka poropiti a Etere i nga mea nunui whakamiharo ki te iwi, kihai nei i whakaponohia e ratou, no te mea kahore i kitea aua mea e ratou.
- 6 Na, e mea ana ahau, a Moronai, kia korero i etahi kupu mo enei mea; e mea ana ahau kia whakaatu ki te ao ko te whakapono koia nga mea e tumanakohia atu nei, a kahore e kitea; no konei ra, kei totohe koutou mo koutou kahore e kite, no te mea kahore o koutou kai whakaatu e riro i a koutou, engari i muri i te whakamatautauranga o to koutou whakapono;
- 7 No te mea na te whakapono i whakakite ai a te Karaiti i a ia ano ki o tatou tupuna, i muri iho i tona aranga ake i te hunga mate: a kihai ia i whakakite i a ia ano ki a ratou, i te mea kahore ano ratou kia whakapono ki a ia; no reira he tika ko etahi i whai whakapono ki a ia, no te mea kihai ia i whakakite i a ia ano ki te ao.
- 8 A na te whakapono o nga tangata i whakakite ai i a ia ano ki te ao, i whakakororia ai ano hoki i te ingoa o te Matua, me te whakapai i tetahi huarahi ma reira e pa ai era atu ki te homaitanga o te rangi, kia tumanako atu ai ratou ki aua mea kahore nei i kitea noatia e ratou:

## Ether 12

And it came to pass that the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr; and Coriantumr was king over all the land.

And Ether was a prophet of the Lord; wherefore Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people, for he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

For he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed, saying unto them that by faith all things are fulfilled—

Wherefore, whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God, which hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

And it came to pass that Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

And now, I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things; I would show unto the world that faith is things which are hoped for and not seen; wherefore, dispute not because ye see not, for ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

For it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead; and he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him; wherefore, it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

But because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

- 9 No reira e ahei ana i a koutou te tumanako atu, me te pa atu ki te homaitanga, heoi ano te mea ma koutou kia whai whakapono.
- 10 Nana, he mea na te whakapono i karangatia ai te hunga onamata ki te ritenga tapu o te Atua:
- 11 Na, na te whakapono te ture a Mohi i homai ai. Otiia i runga i te homaitanga o tana Tama, i whakaritea ai e te Atua he huarahi pai rawa ake; he mea hoki na te whakapono i rite ai;
- 12 No te mea ki te kahore he whakapono i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata, e kore e ahei i te Atua te mahi merekara i roto i a ratou; no reira kihai ia i whakakite i a ia ano i te mea kahore ano kia puta to ratou whakapono.
- 13 Nana, ko te whakapono o Arami raua ko Amureke te mea nana i mea te whare herehere kia horo iho ki te whenua.
- 14 Nana, ko te whakapono o Niwhai raua ko Rihai te mea nana i mahi te rereketanga ki runga ki nga Ramana i rumakina ai ratou ki te kapura me te Wairua Tapu.
- 15 Nana, ko te whakapono o Amona ratou ko ona teina te mea nana i mahi te merekara nui i waenganui i nga Ramana;
- 16 Ae ra, me ratou katoa ano hoki i mahi merekara, i mahia e ratou i runga i te whakapono, te hunga i mua i a te Karaiti, me te hunga ano hoki i muri mai.
- 17 He mea ano na te whakapono i whiwhi ai aua akonga tokotoru ki tetahi kupu whakaari kia kore ratou e pangia e te mate; a kihai ratou i whiwhi ki te kupu whakaari i te mea kahore ano i puta to ratou whakapono.
- 18 Kahore ano hoki tetahi i mahi merekara, i tetahi taima, engari i muri i to ratou whakaponotanga; no reira to ratou tuatahi, he whakapono ki te Tama a te Atua.
- 19 A he tokomaha i nui rawa te kaha o to ratou whakapono i mua atu i te taenga mai o te Karaiti kihai ratou i taea te pupuri ki waho o te arai, engari i kite pono o ratou kanohi i nga mea i kite ai ratou i runga i te kanohi whakapono, a hari ana ratou.

Wherefore, ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

Behold it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

Wherefore, by faith was the law of Moses given. But in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; and it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

For if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them; wherefore, he showed not himself until after their faith.

Behold, it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

Behold, it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

Behold, it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

Yea, and even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were after.

And it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

And neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith; wherefore they first believed in the Son of God.

And there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

20 Na, kua kite ano tatou i roto i tenei tuhituhinga, ko tetahi o enei, ko te teina o Iarere, no te mea he nui no tona whakapono ki te Atua, a, i te toronga o te matihao o te Atua, kihai i taea e te Atua te huna i te tirohanga a te teina o Iarere, no tana kupu hoki i korero ai ia ki a ia, a ko taua kupu i whiwhi ai i runga i te whakapono.

21 A i muri i te kitenga a te teina o Iarere i te matihao o te Ariki, he mea na te kupu whakaari i whiwhi ai te teina o Iarere i runga i te whakapono, na, kihai te Ariki i ahei te kaiponu atu i tetahi mea ki tana tirohanga; no reira ka whakakite ia i nga mea katoa ki a ia, no te mea kihai ia i taea te pupuri ki waho o te arai i muri.

22 A he mea ano na te whakapono i whiwhi ai oku tupuna ki nga kupu whakaari mo enei mea kia puta ki o ratou teina ma roto i nga Tauwiwi; no reira i whakahau mai te Ariki ki a au, ara a Ihu Karaiti.

23 A ka mea atu ahau ki a ia, E te Ariki, ka tawai nga Tauwiwi ki enei mea, mo to matou ngoikoretanga hoki i runga i te tuhituhi; no te mea, E te Ariki, nau matou i mea kia kaha i runga i te kupu, he mea na te whakapono, otiia kahore koe i mea i a matou kia kaha i runga i te tuhituhi; no te mea nau tenei iwi katoa i mea kia korero nui ratou, he mea na te Wairua Tapu i homai e koe ki a ratou;

24 A nau ano matou i mea kia iti noa to matou kaha ki te tuhituhi, he mea na te porori o o matou ringaringa. Nana, kahore koe i mea i a matou kia kaha i runga i te tuhituhi, kia rite ki te teina o Iarere, ina hoki nau ia i mea, a ko nga mea i tuhituhi ai ia he kaha he pena me koe, a taea ana te tangata e korero ana i aua mea.

25 Nau ano a matou kupu i mea kia kaha, kia nui, a kahore e ahei i a matou te tuhituhi; no reira ina tuhituhi matou ka kite matou i to matou ngoikoretanga, a ka tutuki i runga i te whakahangaitanga o a matou kupu; na, e wehi ana ahau kei taunu nga Tauwiwi ki a matou kupu.

26 Ano ka korero ahau i tenei, ka korero mai te Ariki ki a au, ka mea, E taunu ana ano nga wairangi, heoi ka tangi ratou; a e ranea ana toku aroha noa mo te hunga ngakau mahaki, kei whai aha ratou i runga i to koutou ngoikoretanga.

And behold, we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared; for so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

And after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight; wherefore he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

And it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the Gentiles; therefore the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

And I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things, because of our weakness in writing; for Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast not made us mighty in writing; for thou hast made all this people that they could speak much, because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

And thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the awkwardness of our hands. Behold, thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of Jared, for thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that we cannot write them; wherefore, when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because of the placing of our words; and I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

And when I had said this, the Lord spake unto me, saying: Fools mock, but they shall mourn; and my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no advantage of your weakness;

27 Ki te haere mai hoki nga tangata ki a au, maku e whakaatu ki a ratou to ratou ngoikoretanga. E hoatu ana e ahau te ngoikoretanga mo nga tangata, kia ngakau iti ai ratou; a e ranea ana taku aroha noa mo nga tangata katoa e whakaiti ana i a ratou ano ki toku aroaro; ki te mea hoki ka whakaiti ratou i a ratou ano ki toku aroaro, me te whai whakapono ki a au, katahi ahau ka mea i nga mea ngoikore hei mea kaha mo ratou.

28 Nana, maku e whakaatu ki nga Tauwiwi to ratou ngoikoretanga, maku hoki e whakaatu ki a ratou, e kawe mai ana te whakapono, te tumanako me te aroha noa ki a au nei—ki te matapuna wai o te tika katoa.

29 Na, ko ahau, ko Moronai, kua rongu i enei kupu, a ka marire toku ngakau, a ka mea, E te Ariki, kia meatia tau e pai ai koia ano he tika, ina hoki e mohio ana ahau e mahi ana koe ki nga tamariki a te tangata e rite ana ki to ratou whakapono:

30 No te mea i ki atu te teina o Iarere ki te maunga Terini, neke atu, a i nekehia atu ano. Na, me i kore ona whakapono, penei kua kore tera e neke; no reira e mahi ana koe i muri i te whakaponotanga a te tangata;

31 No te mea i pera tau whakakitenga i a koe ano ki au akonga. I muri hoki i ta ratou whakaponotanga, i ta ratou korerotanga i runga i tou ingoa, ka whakakite koe i a koe ano ki a ratou i runga i te kaha nui;

32 A e mahara ana ano ahau ki a koe i ki, ka oti i a koe he whare te whakarite mo te tangata; ae ra, i roto i nga whare o tou Matua, hei tumanakotanga pai ke atu ma te tangata; rio reira me tumanako te tangata, ki te kore e kore ia e whai wahi i roto i te kainga kua rite na i a koe.

33 A mahara ana ano hoki ahau ki a koe i ki, kua aroha koe ki te ao, a tuku ana i a koe ano kia mate mo te ao, kia whakaora ake ai ano koe i a koe hei whakarite i tetahi wahi mo nga tamariki a te tangata.

34 Na, e mohio ana ahau ko te aroha noa tenei aroha i aroha nei koe ki nga tamariki a te tangata; mo reira ki te kore o te tangata aroha noa e kore ratou e ahei te noho i taua kainga ka oti na i a koe te whakarite i roto i nga whare o tou Matua.

And if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble; and my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves before me; for if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

Behold, I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness, and I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto me—the fountain of all righteousness.

And I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted, and said: O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest unto the children of men according to their faith;

For the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove—and it was removed. And if he had not had faith it would not have moved; wherefore thou workest after men have faith.

For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples; for after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show thyself unto them in great power.

And I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a house for man, yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man might have a more excellent hope; wherefore man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the place which thou hast prepared.

And again, I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world, even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

And now I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity; wherefore, except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

35 No reira, e mohio ana ahau i runga i tenei mea i korero ai koe, ki te kore o nga Tauwi aroha noa mo to matou ngoikoretanga, ka whakamatautauria ratou e koe, a ka tangohia o ratou taranata, ae ra, taua mea i riro ai i a ratou, a ka hoatu ki te tangata e hira ake ana ana.

36 Nawai a, ka inoi ake ahau ki te Ariki kia homai e ia te atawhai ki nga Tauwi kia whai aroha noa ai ratou.

37 A ka mea mai te Ariki ki a au, ki te mea kahore o ratou aroha noa, he aha mau, kua u tonu koe; no reira ka meinga ou kakahu kia ma. A mou i kite i tou ngoikoretanga, ka whakakahangia koe, mo te noho iho ki roto ki te wahi ka oti nei i a au te whakarite i roto i nga whare o toku Matua.

38 Heoi tenei ahau, a Moronai te poroporoaki nei ki nga Tauwi, ki oku teina ano hoki e aroha nei ahau, hei kona ra koutou tae noa ki te wa e tutaki ai tatou ki mua i te nohoanga whakawa a te Karaiti, hei reira matau ai nga tangata katoa ki oku kakahu e kohakore ana i o koutou toto;

39 Ko reira koutou matau ai kua kite ahau i a Ihu, a i korero mai ia ki a au he kanohi, he kanohi, a i korero mai ano ia ki a au mo enei mea i runga i te tino whakaiti, me tetahi tangata e korero ana ki tetahi, i toku reo ake;

40 A he torutoru nei anake ka oti i a au te tuhituhi, he ngoikoretanga noku ki te tuhituhi.

41 Na, e mea ana ahau kia akiaki i a koutou kia rapu i tenei Ihu i tuhituhi ai nga poropiti ratou ko nga apotoro mona, kia tau ai kia waiho ai ano hoki te aroha noa o te Atua Matua, o te Ariki hoki o Ihu Karaiti, me te Wairua Tapu, e whakaatu nei i a raua, ki roto ki a koutou, a ake ake ake. Amine.

Wherefore, I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent, yea, even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

And it came to pass that I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

And it came to pass that the Lord said unto me: If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee, thou hast been faithful; wherefore, thy garments shall be made clean. And because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

And now I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love, until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ, where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

And then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face, and that he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

And only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

And now, I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, that the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 13

- 1 Na, ka tahuri ahau, a Moronai ki te whakaoti i taku tuhituhinga mo te whakangaromanga o te iwi i tuhituhi nei ahau mo ratou.
- 2 Nana, i whakakahoretia katoatia e ratou nga kupu a Etere; no te mea he pono nana i korero ki a ratou mo nga mea katoa, no te timatanga ra ano o te tangata: a i muri i te hekenga o nga wai i runga i te mata o tenei whenua, ka meinga ia he whenua whiriwhiri pai ake i era atu whenua katoa, he whenua whiriwhiri na te Ariki; no reira e mea ana te Ariki kia mahi ki a ia nga tangata katoa e noho ana ki to reira mata;
- 3 Ko te wahi hoki tera mo te Hiruharama Hou, e heke iho ai i roto i te rangi, me te Wahi Tapu o te Ariki.
- 4 Nana, i kite a Etere i nga ra i a te Karaiti, i korero hoki ia mo tetahi Hiruharama Hou ki runga ki tenei whenua;
- 5 I korero ano ia mo te whare o Iharaira, me te Hiruharama e haere mai ai a Rihai i reira; muri iho i tona whakangaromanga, ka hanga ake ano hei pa tapu ki te Ariki, no reira e kore e ahei tenei hei Hiruharama Hou, no te mea no te wa onamata ia, heoi ka hanga ake ano ia, a ka meinga hei pa tapu ma te Ariki, a ka hanga ano mo te whare o Iharaira;
- 6 A ka hanga tetahi Hiruharama Hou ki runga ki tenei whenua, mo te toenga o te uri o Hohepa, kua waiho hoki tetahi ritenga mo aua mea;
- 7 No te mea pera me Hohepa i kawea i tona papa ki raro ki te whenua o Ihipa, waihoki i mate atu ia ki reira; no reira i kawea e te Ariki he toenga no te uri o Hohepa ki waho o te whenua o Hiruharama kia atawhai ai ia ki te uri o Hohepa kei ngaro ratou, pera me ia i atawhai ki te matua o Hohepa, kei ngaro ia;
- 8 No reira ka hanga te toenga o te whare o Hohepa ki runga ki tenei whenua; a ka waiho ia hei whenua tupu mo ratou; ka hanga hoki e ratou he pa tapu ki te Ariki ka pera me te Hiruharama onamata; a kahore ratou e whakapouautia ano, kia tae mai ra ano te mutunga, e pahemo ai te whenua.

## Ether 13

And now I, Moroni, proceed to finish my record concerning the destruction of the people of whom I have been writing.

For behold, they rejected all the words of Ether; for he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man; and that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands, a chosen land of the Lord; wherefore the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

And that it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven, and the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

Behold, Ether saw the days of Christ, and he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

And he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come—after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy city unto the Lord; wherefore, it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old; but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the Lord; and it should be built unto the house of Israel—

And that a New Jerusalem should be built up upon this land, unto the remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been a type.

For as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even so he died there; wherefore, the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

Wherefore, the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this land; and it shall be a land of their inheritance; and they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the Jerusalem of old; and they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when the earth shall pass away.



- 9 Na, ka ai he rangi hou, he whenua hou ano hoki; a ka rite raua ki te mea tawhito, heoi ano kua pahemo atu nga mea tawhito, a kua hou nga mea katoa.
- 10 Ko reira puta mai ai te Hiruharama Hou; a ka koa te hunga e noho nei i roto, no te mea ko te hunga tera nona nei nga kakahu i ma i runga i nga toto o te Reme; ko te hunga ano tera e taua ngatahitia me te toenga o te uri o Hohepa, no te whare nei ratou o Iharaira.
- 11 Ko reira ano puta mai ai te Hiruharama onamata; a ko ona tangata, ka koa ratou, no te mea ka eti ratou te horoi ki nga toto o te Reme; ko te hunga ano ratou i whakamararatia atu ai, a kua kohikohia mai i nga wahi e wha o te whenua, i nga kainga whaka-te-nota hoki, a mo ratou tetahi wahi o te ritenga o te kawenata i kawenata ai te Atua ki to ratou matua, ki a Aperahama.
- 12 Ano ka puta enei mea, ka rite te karaipiture e ki nei, He hunga tera no mua, e meinga ki muri; he hunga ano tera no muri, e meinga ki mua.
- 13 Na, wahi iti kua tuhituhi ano ahau, ko tenei kua riria ahau; heoi he nui, he whakamiharo, nga poropititanga a Etere, otira i mea ratou he rukenga ia, a maka ana i a ia ki waho, na, huna ane ia i a ia ano ki roto ki te puare o tetahi kohatu i te ao, a i te po ka haere atu ia, ka matakutaki i nga mea e pa ai ki te iwi.
- 14 Na, i a ia e noho ana i te puare o tetahi kohatu, ka tuhituhi ia i te toenga o tana tuhituhinga, a matakutaki ana i te po i nga whakangaromanga e pa ana ki te iwi.
- 15 Nawai a, i taua tau ano i maka atu ai ia i roto i te iwi, ka tupu tetahi whawhai nui i roto i te iwi, no te mea he tokomaha i ara, he tangata marohirohi ratou, a whai ana kia whakamatea a Koriatuma, i runga i a ratou tikanga ngaro o te kino, kua korerotia ake nei.
- 16 Na, ko Koriatuma, i ako i a ia ano ki nga whakahaere katoa o te whawhai, me nga tinihanga katoa o te ao nei, koia ia ka whawhai ai ki te hunga i whai kia whakamatea ia;

And there shall be a new heaven and a new earth; and they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away, and all things have become new.

And then cometh the New Jerusalem; and blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

And then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they, for they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb; and they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

And when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last; and there are they who were last, who shall be first.

And I was about to write more, but I am forbidden; but great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether; but they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out; and he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

And as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

And it came to pass that in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people, for there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

And now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

17 Heoi kihai ia i ripeneta, kihai ano hoki ana tamariki ataahua, me ana tamahine; kihai ano hoki nga tamariki ataahua me nga tamahine a Kohoro; kihai ano hoki nga tamariki ataahua me nga tamahine a Korihoro: ara, kahore tahi o nga tamariki ataahua me nga tamahine i runga i te mata o te ao katoa i ripeneta mo o ratou hara;

18 No reira i te tau tuatahi i noho ai a Etere i roto i te puare o tetahi kohatu, he maha nga iwi i patua ki te hoari o aua huihuinga ngaro i whawhai ki a Koriatuma, kia riro ai i a ratou te kingitanga.

19 Nawai a, he nui noa atu te whawhai a nga tamariki tane a Koriatuma, me te hekenga o te toto.

20 Na, i te rua o nga tau, ka puta mai te kupu a te Ariki ki a Etere, kia haere atu ia kia poropiti atu ki a Koriatuma, ki te pai ia ki te ripeneta me tona whare katoa ano hoki, ka hoatu e te Ariki ki a ia tona kingitanga, ka tohungia ano hoki te iwi.

21 Ki te kore ka whakangaromia ratou, me tona whare ano hoki, haunga ia, a ka ora ia mo te kitenga anake i te whakaritenga o nga poropititanga i poropititia mo te rironga o te whenua i tetahi atu iwi hei kainga tupu mo ratou; a ma ratou a Koriatuma e tanu; a ka whakamatea nga tangata katoa ko Koriatuma ia kahore.

22 Na, kihai a Koriatuma i ripeneta, kihai ano hoki tona whare, kihai ano hoki te iwi; a kihai i mutu te whawhai; na, whai ana ratou kia whakamatea a Etere, heoi rere atu ana ia i mua i a ratou, huna ana ki roto ki te puare o te kohatu.

23 Nawai a, ka ara ake a Harere, a nana ano i hoatu whawhai ki a Koriatuma; a taea ana tera e ia, no ka riro herehere ia i a ia i te toru o nga tau.

24 A i te wha o nga tau, ka taea a Harere e nga tamariki a Koriatuma, a, riro ana ano te kingitanga mo te ratou matua.

25 Na, ka timata tetahi whawhai i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, tena tangata me tona ope, tena tangata me tona ope, e whawhai ana mo tana i hiahia ai.

26 Me nga kai pahua, me nga ahua katoa o te kino i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua.

But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; and in fine, there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

Wherefore, it came to pass that in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

And it came to pass that the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

And in the second year the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr that, if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom and spare the people—

Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself. And he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance; and Coriantumr should receive a burial by them; and every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people; and the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

And it came to pass that there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr; and he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

And the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

Now there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

And there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

- 27 Nawai a, ka tino riri rawa atu a Koriatuma ki a Harere, a haere ana ia me ana taua hei tatauranga atu ki a ia; a ka tutaki ratou i runga i te riri nui, ka tutaki ratou ki a ia ki te raorao o Kirikara; a ka nanakia rawa atu te riri.
- 28 Nawai a, ka whawhai tonu a Harere ki a ia mo nga ra e toru. Na, ka taea e Koriatuma, ka whaia a tae noa ki nga mania o Heherono.
- 29 Na, ka hoatu whawhai ano a Harere ki a ia i runga i nga mania; a taea ana e ia a Koriatuma, a aia ana ia whakahokia ana ki te raorao o Kirikara.
- 30 A ka hoatu whawhai ano a Koriatuma ki a Harere i te raorao o Kirikara, a taea ana a Harere e ia patua ana ia.
- 31 A ka tu a Koriatuma i tona kuha i a Harere, a kahore ia i haere ki te whawhai i nga tau e rua, a i roto i taua wa katoa e whakaheke toto ana te iwi katoa i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, a kahore tetahi hei pehi i a ratou.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle; and they did meet in great anger, and they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

And it came to pass that Shared fought against him for the space of three days. And it came to pass that Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

And it came to pass that Shared gave him battle again upon the plains; and behold, he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

And Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in which he beat Shared and slew him.

And Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 14

- 1 Na, ka pa he kanga nui ki runga ki te whenua katoa mo te kino o te iwi, na reira ki te whakatakotoria e te tangata tana mea mahi, tana hoari ranei ki runga ki tona takotoranga, ki te wahi ranei e waiho ai e ia, nana, i te aonga ake e kore e kitea e ia, i te nui hoki o te kanga ki runga ki te whenua.
- 2 No reira ka piri a ringaringa ia tangata, ia tangata ki tana ake, a kihai ia i pai ki te tono mea, ki te tuku mea ranei; na, pupuri ana ia tangata, ia tangata i te puritanga o tona hoari ki roto ki tona ringa matau, hei tiaki mo ana taputapu, me tona ora ake, me ana wahine ratou ko ana tamariki.
- 3 Na, i muri i nga tau e rua, i muri hoki i te matenga o Harere, nana, ka ara te teina o Harere, a whawhai ana ia ki a Koriatuma, na, taea ana ia e Koriatuma, a whaiwhaitia ana ano ia tae noa atu ki te koraha o Akihi.
- 4 Nawai a, ka whawhai te teina o Harere ki a ia i roto i te koraha o Akihi; a ka tino kaha rawa atu te whawhai, ka hinga hoki nga mano maha i te hoari.
- 5 Nawai a, ka whakapaea te koraha e Koriatuma, na, ka haere atu te teina o Harere i roto i te koraha i te po, a patu ana i tetahi wahi o te taua a Koriatuma i a ratou e haurangi ana.
- 6 A haere ana ia ki te whenua o Morono, whakanoho ana i a ia ano ki runga ki te torona o Koriatuma.
- 7 Na, ka noho a Koriatuma me tana taua i te koraha, mo nga tau e rua, a whiwhi ana ia ki te kaha nui mo tana taua.
- 8 Na, ko te teina o Harere, nona nei te ingoa ko Kireara, i riro ana i a ia he kaha nui mo tana taua, he mea na nga huihuinga.
- 9 Nawai a, ka kohurutia ia e tana Tohunga Nui i a ia e noho ana ki runga ki tona torona.
- 10 A ka kohurutia tera e tetahi tangata o nga huihuinga ngaro i roto i tetahi ara ngaro, a riro ana i a ia ano te kingitanga; a ko Ripi tona ingoa; na, he tangata rahi a Ripi, tera atu i tetahi atu tangata i roto i te iwi katoa.

## Ether 14

And now there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people, in which, if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

Wherefore every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend; and every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

And now, after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared and he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish; and the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

And he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

Now the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

And it came to pass that his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

And it came to pass that one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom; and his name was Lib; and Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

11 Na, i te tau tuatahi i a Ripi, ka tae ake a Koriatuma ki te whenua o Morono, a ka tatau atu ki a Ripi.

12 Nawai a, ka whawhai ia ki a Ripi, a hahau iho ana a Ripi ki runga ki tona ringa, a kua motu; otira ka kokiri atu te taua a Koriatuma ki runga ki a Ripi, a whati atu ana ia ki nga rohe ki nga takutai.

13 A ka whaia ia e Koriatuma; na, ka whawhai a Ripi ki a ia i te takutai.

14 Nawai a, ka hahau a Ripi ki te taua a Koriatuma, a rere ana ano ratou ki roto ki te koraha o Akihi.

15 A ka whaia ia e Ripi tae noa ki nga mania o Akoha. Na, kua mauria katoatia te iwi e Koriatuma i a ia e oma ana i mua i a Ripi i taua wahi o te whenua i oma atu ai ia.

16 Ano ka tae ia ki nga mania o Akoha, ka whawhai ia ki a Ripi, ka hahau ia ki a ia, a mate noa tera; ahakoa ra, ka tatau mai te teina o Ripi ki a Koriatuma i muri i a ia, na, ka tino kaha rawa te whawhai, a whati ana ano a Koriatuma i mua i te taua a te teina o Ripi.

17 Na, ko Hiti te ingoa i huaina ki te teina o Ripi. A ka whai a Hiti i a Koriatuma, ka turaki hoki ia i nga pa maha, a patupatu ana i nga wahine me nga tamariki ano hoki, tahuna ana ano e ia nga pa o reira;

18 A ka paku atu te wehi o Hiti puta noa i te whenua; ae ra, ka puta atu te karanga puta noa i te whenua, ko wai e ahei te tu ki te aroaro o te taua a Hiti? Nana, tahia ana e ia te whenua i tona aroaro!

19 Nawai a, ka huihui tahi te iwi he taua, he taua, puta noa i te mata katoa o te whenua.

20 A ka titore ratou, ko tetahi wahi o ratou i rere atu ki te taua a Hiti, ko tetahi wahi o ratou i rere atu ki te taua a Koriatuma.

21 Na, he nui he roa no te whawhai, he roa hoki no te tirohanga ki te whakaheke toto, me te kikokiko, ka kapi te mata katoa o te whenua i nga tinana o te hunga mate;

And it came to pass that in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

And it came to pass that he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded; nevertheless, the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr pursued him; and Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

And it came to pass that Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

And it came to pass that Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh. And Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

And when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib, and he smote upon him until he died; nevertheless, the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof, and the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

Now the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz. And it came to pass that Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

And there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land; yea, a cry went forth throughout the land— Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

And it came to pass that the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

And they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

And so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

- 22 A kahore i waiho he tangata hei tanu i nga tupapaku i te hohoro hoki me te tere o te whawhai, heoi haere atu ana ratou i te whakaheke toto ki te whakaheke toto, a waiho ana nga tinana o nga tane, a nga wahine, me nga tamariki, e takoto marara ana i runga i te mata o te whenua, kia riro hei kai ma nga noke o te kikokiko;
- 23 A puta atu ana to reira haunga ki runga ki te mata o te whenua, ae ra, ki runga ki te mata katoa o te whenua; no reira ka raru te iwi, i te ao, i te po, i to reira haunga;
- 24 Ahakoa ra, kihai a Hiti i whakamutu i te whai i a Koriatuma, no te mea i oati ia ki te ngaki ki runga ki a Koriatuma i te toto o tona tuakana i patua, a ko te kupu a te Ariki i puta mai ai ki a Etere, e kore a Koriatuma e hinga i te hoari.
- 25 A penei ka kite tatou na te Ariki i whiu ratou i runga i te raneatanga o tona riri, a na ta ratou kino me a ratou whakarihariha, i whakarite he huarahi mo ta ratou whakangaromanga tonutanga.
- 26 A ka whai a Hiti i a Koriatuma whaka-te-rawhiti, a tae noa ki nga rohe o te takutai, a ka hoatu whawhai a Hiti ki reira, i nga ra e toru;
- 27 Na, i te whakawehi o te whakangaromanga i roto i nga taua a Hiti, ka pa te wehi ki te iwi, a whati atu ana i mua i nga taua a Koriatuma; rere atu ana ratou ki te whenua o Korihoro, a hatepe atu ana i nga tangata whenua i mua i a ratou, i te hunga katoa kihai nei i pai ki te tahuri ki a ratou;
- 28 A whakaturia ana o ratou teneti ki te raorao o Korihoro. Na, ko Koriatuma i whakatu i ona teneti ki te raorao o Huru. Na, e tata atu ana te raorao o Huru ki te puke Komonoro; no reira ka huihui a Koriatuma i ana taua ki runga ki te puke Komonoro, a ka whakatangihia atu he tetere ki nga taua a Hiti hei powhiri atu ki a ratou ki te riri.
- 29 Nawai a, ka haere mai ratou, heoi ka panaia ano; a haere mai ana ano te tuarua o nga haerenga mai; a ka panaia ano te tuarua o nga pananga. A ka haere mai ano te tuatoru o nga haerenga mai, a ka nanakia rawa atu te riri.

And so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men, women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

And the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land; wherefore the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

Nevertheless, Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

And thus we see that the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, and their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

And it came to pass that Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore, and there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

And so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr; and they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

And they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor; and Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr. Now the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor; wherefore, Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

And it came to pass that they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the second time, and they were driven again the second time. And it came to pass that they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

30      Nawai a, ka hahau a Hiti ki runga ki a Koriatuma  
ka maha nga motu hohonu o tera i a ia, a ka hemo a  
Koriatuma kua ngaro hoki ona toto, a kawea atu ana  
ia me te mea kua mate ia.

31      Na, he nui no te matenga o nga tane, o nga  
wahine, me nga tamariki o tetahi taha, o tetahi taha,  
i whakahau ai a Hiti i tana iwi kia kaua e whai i nga  
taua a Koriatuma: no reira ka hoki ratou ki to ratou  
puni.

And it came to pass that Shiz smote upon  
Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds;  
and Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and  
was carried away as though he were dead.

Now the loss of men, women and children on both  
sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people  
that they should not pursue the armies of  
Coriantumr; wherefore, they returned to their camp.

## Te Pukapuka A Etere 15

- 1 Ano ka ora ake a Koriatuma i ona motunga, ka anga ia ka mahara ki nga kupu i korero ai a Etere ki a ia;
- 2 Ka kite ia kua whakamatea noatia ki te hoari e tata ana ki te rua o nga miriona o tona iwi, a ka timata ia ka pouri i roto i tona ngakau; ae ra, i patua nga miriona e rua o nga tangata marohirohi, me a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki.
- 3 Ka tahuri ia ka ripeneta ki te kino i mahia e ia; ka anga ka mahara ia ki nga kupu i korerotia e te mangai o nga poropiti katoa, a ka kite i aua mea kua mana ia tongi, ia tongi tae noa ki taua wa; na, ka tangi tona wairua, a kihai i pai kia whakamarietia.
- 4 Na, ka tuhituhi pukapuka atu ia ki a Hiti, e hiahia ana kia tohungia e ia te iwi, a ka tukua atu e ia te kingitanga mo te whakaaro ki te iwi kia ora.
- 5 Na, i te taenga atu o tana pukapuka ki a Hiti, ka tuhituhi pukapuka ia ki a Koriatuma, ki te pai ia ki te tuku i a ia ano, kia patua e ia ki tona ake hoari, ka tohungia e ia te iwi.
- 6 Na, kihai te iwi i ripeneta ki a ratou kino; a ka whakaohokia te iwi o Koriatuma kia riri ki te iwi o Hiti; a ka whakaohokia te iwi o Hiti kia riri ki te iwi o Koriatuma; no reira ka hoatu whawhai te iwi o Hiti ki te iwi o Koriatuma.
- 7 Ano ka kite a Koriatuma i a ia ano e tata ana te hinga, ka whati ano ia i mua i te iwi o Hiti.
- 8 A ka tae ia ki nga wai o Ripirianakumu, tona whakamaoritanga, he nui, ara, he rahi ake i te katoa; no reira, i to ratou taenga ki enei wai ka whakaturia e ratou o ratou teneti; a ka whakaturia ano hoki e Hiti ona teneti e tata atu ana ki a ratou; no reira i te aonga ake ano ka tae ratou ki te whawhai.
- 9 A ka whawhai ratou i tetahi whawhai nanakia rawa, na, ka motu ano a Koriatuma i reira, a hemo ana ia i te kore toto.
- 10 Nawai a, ka huaki nga taua a Koriatuma ki runga ki nga taua a Hiti, a taea ana era e ratou, meinga ana ratou kia whati atu i mua i a ratou; a ka oma atu ratou whaka-te-tonga, ka whakatu i o ratou teneti ki tetahi kainga i karangatia ra ko Okata.

## Ether 15

And it came to pass when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people, and he began to sorrow in his heart; yea, there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

He began to repent of the evil which he had done; he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets, and he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

And it came to pass that he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

And it came to pass that the people repented not of their iniquity; and the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz; and the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr; wherefore, the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

And when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all; wherefore, when they came to these waters they pitched their tents; and Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them; and therefore on the morrow they did come to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.



- 11      Nawai a, ka whakatu te taua a Koriatuma i o ratou teneti i te taha o te puke Rama; na, ko taua puke ano ia i huna ai toku papa, a Moromona, i nga tuhituhinga ki te Ariki, koia nei he tapu.
- 12      A ka huihuia katoatia te iwi e ratou, i runga i te mata katoa o te whenua, kihai nei i patua, ko Etere ia i kore.
- 13      Na, ka kite a Etere i nga meatanga katoatanga o te iwi; a ka kite ia i te iwi mo Koriatuma, kua huihuia atu ki te taua a Koriatuma; a ko te iwi o Hiti, kua huihuia atu ki te taua a Hiti;
- 14      No reira e wha nga tau e whakamine ana ratou i te iwi kia taea ai e ratou te hunga katoa i runga i te mata o te whenua, kia whiwhi ki te kaha katoa e taea ana e ratou te whiwhi.
- 15      Ano ka poto ratou katoa te huihui, tena tangata ki tana taua e pai ai, tena tangata ki tana taua e pai ai, me a ratou wahine, me a ratou tamariki; he mea whakawhiwhi nga wahine, me nga tamariki ki nga patu whawhai, me nga puapua, me nga pukupuku, me nga tiaki mahunga, a whakakakahuria ana ano ki te ritenga mo te whawhai, na, ka haere atu ratou tetahi ki tetahi, ki te whawhai; a ka whawhai ratou i taua ra katoa te whai wikitoria.
- 16      Nawai a, ka po kua ngenge ratou, a hoki ana ki o ratou puni: na, i te mea kua tae ratou ki o ratou puni, ka ara i a ratou he aue, he uhunga mo te ngaromanga me te whakamatenga o to ratou iwi; a he nui no a ratou tangi, me a ratou aue, me a ratou uhunga, i haehaetia nuitia ai te hau.
- 17      Nawai a, ao ake ano ka haere ano ratou ki te whawhai, a he nui he wehi taua ra; otira kihai ratou i whai wikitoria, ano ka po ano, ka haehae ratou i te hau ki a ratou tangi, ki a ratou aue, me a ratou uhunga, mo te ngaronga o to ratou iwi.
- 18      Na, ka tuhituhi pukapuka ano a Koriatuma ki a Hiti, e hiahia ana kia kauaka ia e haere mai ano ki te whawhai, engari kia mau ia ki te kingitanga, kia tohungia hoki te iwi kia ora.

And it came to pass that the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah; and it was that same hill where my father Mormon did hide up the records unto the Lord, which were sacred.

And it came to pass that they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

And it came to pass that Ether did behold all the doings of the people; and he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

Wherefore, they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

And it came to pass that when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children—both men, women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and headplates, and being clothed after the manner of war—they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

And it came to pass that when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps; and after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people; and so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

And it came to pass that on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not, and when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

19 Heoi kua mutu te Wairua o te Ariki te totohe ki a ratou, a kei a Hatana te kaha katoa ki runga i nga ngakau o te iwi, no te mea i tukua atu ratou ki te pakeketanga o o ratou ngakau, me te kapotanga o o ratou whakaaro, kia whakangaromia ai ratou; koia ratou ka haere ano ki te whawhai.

20 A ka whawhai ratou i taua ra katoa, ano ka taka te po ka moe ratou ki runga ki a ratou hoari;

21 A ao ake ano ka whawhai ratou a po noa;

22 Ano ka taka te po kua haurangi ratou i te riri, kua pera me te tangata e haurangi ana i te waina: a ka moe ano ratou ki runga ki a ratou hoari;

23 A ao ake ano, ka whawhai ano ratou; ano ka taka te po kua hinga te kotoa i te hoari, e rima tekau ma rua ia o te iwi o Koriatuma kahore, me nga mea e ono tekau ma iwa o te iwi o Hiti.

24 A ka moe ratou ki runga ki a ratou hoari i taua po, a aonga ake ka whawhai ano ratou, a ka tautohetohe ratou i runga i to ratou kaha, me a ratou hoari, me a ratou puapua, a pau noa taua ra;

25 Ano ka taka te po, e toru tekau ma rua o te iwi o Hiti, te morehu, a e rua tekau ma whitu o te iwi o Koriatuma.

26 Nawai a, ka kai ratou, ka moe, ka whakarite mo te mate apopo. Na, he tangata rarahi, marohirohi ratou ki to te tangata kaha.

27 Nawai a, ka whawhai ratou mo nga haora e toru, a hemo ana ratou i te heke o te toto.

28 Ano ka whiwhi kaha nga tangata a Koriatuma e rite ana hei haerenga mo ratou, na, wahi iti kua oma ratou, he whakaaro hoki ki to ratou ora, heoi ka ara a Hiti, me ana tangata ano hoki, a oati ana ia i runga i tana riri mana a Koriatuma e patu, ka mate ranei ko ia i te hoari;

29 No reira ka whaia ratou e ia, a ao ake ka mau ratou i a ia; na, ka whawhai ano ratou ki te hoari. Nawai a, i te mea kua hinga ratou katoa i te hoari, ko Koriatuma raua ko Hiti kahore, na, kua hemo a Hiti i te heke toto.

But behold, the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them, and Satan had full power over the hearts of the people; for they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed; wherefore they went again to battle.

And it came to pass that they fought all that day, and when the night came they slept upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

And when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine; and they slept again upon their swords.

And on the morrow they fought again; and when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

And it came to pass that they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again, and they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

And when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

And it came to pass that they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow. And they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

And it came to pass that they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

And it came to pass that when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

Wherefore, he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; and they fought again with the sword. And it came to pass that when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

30 Ano ka whakawhirinaki atu a Koriatuma ki tana hoari, okioki iti ai, na, haua iho ana e ia, poutoa ana te matenga o Hiti.

31 Na, i muri i tana poutotanga i te matenga o Hiti, ka maranga ake a Hiti ki runga ki ona ringaringa, a hinga ana; a i muri i tona okeokenga kia whai manawa, ka mate ia.

32 Nawai a, ka hinga a Koriatuma ki te whenua, a riro ana me te mea kahore ona ora.

33 Na, ka korero te Ariki ki a Etere, a ka mea ki a ia, Haere atu. Na, ka haere atu ia, a ka kite kua mana nga kupu katoa a te Ariki; a ka whakaotitia e ia tana tuhituhinga; (a kahore i pau i a au te wahi whaka-te-  
rau te tuhituhi,) a i hunaia aua mea e ia i runga i tetahi ritenga i kitea ai aua mea e te iwi o Rimihi.

34 Na, ko nga kupu whakamutunga i tuhituhia e Etere, ko enei, ahakoa ka pai te Ariki ki a au kia kawea ketia, kia tukua ranei ahau ki ta te Ariki e pai ai i roto i te kikokiko, kahore he tikanga, ki te mea ka whakaorangia ahau ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Atua. Amine.

And it came to pass that when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

And it came to pass that after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised up on his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

And it came to pass that Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

And the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth. And he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled; and he finished his record; (and the hundredth part I have not written) and he hid them in a manner that the people of Limhi did find them.

Now the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God. Amen.

# Ko Te Pukapuka A Moronai. The Book of Moroni

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 1

- 1 Na, ko au, ko Moronai, i te mea kua oti i a au te whakapototanga i te whakaaturanga mo te iwi o Iarere, na, i mahara ahau kua kore atu aku tuhituhi, heoi kahore ano ahau i mate; a kahore ahau e whakakite i a au ki nga Ramana, kei whakamate ratou i a au.
- 2 Ta te mea, he nanakia rawa atu a ratou whawhai i roto i a ratou ano; a no to ratou mauahara, ka whakamate ratou i nga Niwhai katoa e kore e whakakahore ki a te Karaiti.
- 3 A ko au nei, ko Moronai, e kore e whakakahore ki a te Karaiti; no reira e atiutiu ana ahau ki nga wahi e ahei ana i a au hei tiaki mo toku ake ora.
- 4 Koia ahau ka tuhituhi i etahi atu mea torutoru nei, e rereke ana i taku i mahara ai; no te mea i mahara ahau e kore ahau e tuhituhi ano; ko tenei ka tuhituhi ahau i etahi atu mea torutoru nei, me kore enei mea e riro hei painga ki oku tuakana, ki nga Ramana, a tetahi ra e takoto ake nei, i runga i ta te Ariki e pai ai.

## Moroni 1

Now I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of the people of Jared, I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet perished; and I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should destroy me.

For behold, their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves; and because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will not deny the Christ.

And I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ; wherefore, I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

Wherefore, I write a few more things, contrary to that which I had supposed; for I had supposed not to have written any more; but I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according to the will of the Lord.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 2

- 1 Ko nga kupu a te Karaiti, i korero ai ia ki ana akonga, ki te Tekau ma Rua, i whiriwhiria e ia, i a ia ka whakapa i ona ringaringa ki runga ki a ratou.
- 2 A ka karanga ia i a ratou ki o ratou ingoa, ka mea, Me karanga koutou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, i runga i te inoi kaha; a i muri i ta koutou meatanga i tenei ka whai mana koutou kia hoatu i te Wairua Tapu ki te tangata e whakapakia atu e koutou o koutou ringaringa; a ka hoatu koutou i a ia i runga i toku ingoa, e pera ana hoki aku apotoro.
- 3 Na, i korero mai a te Karaiti i enei kupu ki a ratou i tona putanga tuatahi mai; a kihai i rangona e te whakaminenga, heoi i rongo nga akonga; na, tau ana te Wairua Tapu ki runga ki te hunga katoa i whakapakia nei e o ratou ringaringa.

## Moronai 2

The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon them—

And he called them by name, saying: Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer; and after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost; and in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

Now Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first appearing; and the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it; and on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 3

- 1 Te ahuatanga i whakaritea ai nga Tohunga me nga Kai-whakaako e nga akonga, e te hunga i karangatia nei ko nga Kaumatua o te hahi.
- 2 Muri iho i ta ratou inoinga ake ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o te Karaiti, ka pa iho o ratou ringaringa ki runga ki a ratou, a ka mea,
- 3 I runga i te ingoa o Ihu Karaiti ka whakarite ahau i a koe hei Tohunga; (ara, ki te mea hei Kai-whakaako ia), ka whakarite ahau i a koe hei Kai-whakaako, kia kauwhau i te ripeneta me te murunga hara ma roto i a Ihu Karaiti, i runga i te u o te whakapono ki tona ingoa tae noa ki te mutunga. Amine.
- 4 Ko te ahuatanga tenei i whakaritea ai e ratou nga Tohunga me nga Kai-whakaako i runga i te ritenga o nga homaitanga me nga karangatanga a te Atua ki nga tangata; a i whakarite ratou i a ratou, he mea na te kaha o te Wairua Tapu i roto ra i a ratou.

## Moronai 3

The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers—

After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them, and said:

In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest (or if he be a teacher, I ordain you to be a teacher) to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end. Amen.

And after this manner did they ordain priests and teachers, according to the gifts and callings of God unto men; and they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 4

- 1 Te ahuatanga i minitatia ai te kikokiko me nga toto o te Karaiti ki te hahi e nga Kaumatua ratou ko nga Tohunga. A i minitatia ano e ratou rite tonu ki nga whakahaunga a te Karaiti; no reira e mohio ana matou he tika te tauira; a na te Kaumatua na te Tohunga ranei ia i minita.
- 2 Na, ka tuturi iho ratou ko te hahi, a ka inoi ake ki te Matua i runga i te ingoa o te Karaiti, ka mea,
- 3 E te Atua, e te Matua Ora Tonu, e inoi ake ana matou ki a koe i runga i te ingoa o tau Tama o Ihu Karaiti, kia whakapaingia kia whakatapua tenei taro mo nga wairua o te hunga katoa e kai ana, kia kainga e ratou hei whakamaharatanga ki te tinana o tau Tama, me te whakaatu atu ki a koe, e te Atua, e te Matua Ora Tonu, e whakaae ana ratou kia mau ki runga ki a ratou te ingoa o tau Tama, a ka mahara tonu ki a ia, ka pupuri i ana ture i homai nei e ia ki a ratou, kia noho tonu ai tona Wairua i a ratou. Amine.

## Moroni 4

The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church; and they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; wherefore we know the manner to be true; and the elder or priest did minister it—

And they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ, saying:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it; that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son, and witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are willing to take upon them the name of thy Son, and always remember him, and keep his commandments which he hath given them, that they may always have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 5

- 1 Te ahuatanga i minitatia ai te waina. Nana, ka tango ratou i te kapa, a ka mea.
- 2 E te Atua, e te Matua Ora Tonu, e inoi ake ana matou ki a koe i runga i te ingoa o tau Tama o Ihu Karaiti, kia whakapaingia kia whakatapua tenei waina mo nga wairua o te hunga katoa e inu ana. kia meatia e ratou hei whakamaharatanga ki nga toto o tau Tama, i whakahekea nei mo ratou: kia whakaatu atu ai ratou ki a koe, e te Atua, e te Matua Ora Tonu, ka mahara tonu ratou ki a ia, kia noho ai tona wairua i a ratou. Amine.

## Moroni 5

The manner of administering the wine—Behold, they took the cup, and said:

O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, to bless and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink of it, that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son, which was shed for them; that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they do always remember him, that they may have his Spirit to be with them. Amen.



## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 6

- 1 Na, ka korero tenei ahau mo te rumakanga. Nana, i rumakina nga Kaumatua, nga Tohunga me nga Kaiwhakaako; a kihai ratou i rumakina, ki te kore e whakaputaina mai e ratou he hua e rite ana e tau ai ratou mo taua mea;
- 2 Kihai ano hoki ratou i tuku mai i tetahi ki te rumaki, ki te kore ratou e haere mai i runga i te ngakau maru me te wairua iro, me te whakaatu ano ki te hahi kua ripeneta pono ratou ki a ratou hara katoa.
- 3 A kihai tetahi i tukua mai ki te rumaki, ki te kore ratou i tango ki runga ki a ratou i te ingoa o te Karaiti, he whakaaro ta ratou kia mahi ki a ia tae noa ki te mutunga.
- 4 A i muri i te tukunga mai i a ratou ki te rumaki, a ka mahia ratou, ka whakamahia e te kaha o te Wairua Tapu, ka taua ngatahitia ratou me te iwi o te Hahi o te Karaiti, ka tuhia hoki o ratou ingoa kia maharatia ai ratou kia whakatupuria ai te kupu pai a te Atua, hei pupuri i a ratou ki roto ki te ara tika, hei pupuri tonu i a ratou kia mataara ki te inoi, e okioki tapatahi ana ki runga ki nga painga o te Karaiti, ko ia nei te putake me te kai whakaoti o to ratou whakapono.
- 5 A i huihui putuputu tonu te hahi, kia noho puku, kia inoi, kia kororerero hoki tetahi ki tetahi mo te pai mo o ratou wairua;
- 6 I huihui putuputu tonu ano ratou kia kai i te taro, kia inu i te waina hei whakamaharatanga ki te Ariki ki a Ihu;
- 7 Na, i uaua ano ta ratou titiro kei pa he kino ki waenganui i a ratou; a ko te tangata i kitea e mahi kino ana a tokotoru ano nga kai whakaatu i te he mona o te Hahi, ka whakahengia ai ratou i te aroaro o nga kaumatua; a ki te kore ratou i ripeneta, ki te kore i whaki, na, i murua atu o ratou ingoa, te taua ngatahitia ratou me te iwi o te Karaiti:
- 8 Otira i nga wa katoa i ripeneta ai ratou, i whai ai i runga te tino hiahia kia houhia ta ratou rongu, ka whakarerea noatia iho ta ratou.

## Moronai 6

And now I speak concerning baptism. Behold, elders, priests, and teachers were baptized; and they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that they were worthy of it.

Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the church that they truly repented of all their sins.

And none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ, having a determination to serve him to the end.

And after they had been received unto baptism, and were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost, they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; and their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God, to keep them in the right way, to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ, who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

And the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

And they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

And they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them; and whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out, and they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

But as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

9 A ka whakahaeretia a ratou karakia e te Hahi i runga i te ahua o te mahi e te Wairua, i runga hoki i te kaha o te Wairua Tapu; no te mea ka pera me ta te kaha o te Wairua Tapu i arataki ai i a ratou, te meatanga, ahakoa te kauwhau, te whakahauhau, te inoi, te inoi totohe, te waiata ranei.

And their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner of the workings of the Spirit, and by the power of the Holy Ghost; for as the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 7

- 1 Na, ka tuhituhi tenei ahau, a Moronai, i etahi kupu torutoru a toku papa, a Moromona, i korero ai ia mo te Whakapono, mo te Tumanako, me te Aroha; i korero penei hoki ia ki te iwi, i a ia e whakaako ana i a ratou i roto i te whare tapu i hanga ai e ratou hei wahi karakia.
- 2 Na, ka korero ahau, a Moromona, ki a koutou. e aku teina aroha: he mea hoki na te aroha noa o te Atua, o te Matua, o te Ariki hoki o Ihu Karaiti, me tana mea tapu i pai ai, he mea hoki na te homaitanga o tana karangatanga ki a au, i tukua ai ahau kia whai kupu atu ki a koutou i tenei wa.
- 3 No reira e mea ana ahau kia korero atu ki a koutou, ki te hunga o te Hahi, ki te hunga e aru marie ana i a te Karaiti, kua whiwhi nei hoki ki tetahi tumanako nui, e ahei ai koutou te tomo ki roto ki te okiokinga o te Ariki, no tenei wa ake tae noa ki to koutou okiokinga tahitanga me ia i roto i te rangi.
- 4 Heoi, e aku teina, ka whakaaroaro ahau i enei mea mo koutou i to koutou haere marie me nga tamariki a te tangata;
- 5 No te mea kei te mahara ahau ki te kupu a te Atua, i korero ai ia mo a ratou mahi e mohiotia ai ratou e koutou; ki te mea hoki ka pai a ratou mahi, ka pai ano hoki ratou.
- 6 Ta te mea, na te Atua i ki, Te tangata e kino ana, e kore ia e ahei te mahi i te pai; no te mea ki te whakahere mai ia i tetahi whakahere, ki te inoi ranei ki te Atua, ki te kore e meatia e ia i runga i te tino hiahia, na, kahore he pai ki a ia.
- 7 No te mea e kore tera e whakairia ki a ia hei tika.
- 8 Ina hoki, ki te mea he tangata, e kino ana, a ka homai e ia tetahi homaitanga, na, ka meatia e ia i runga i te manawa-pa; no reira ka whakairia ki a ia, ka peratia me te mea i kaiponuhia atu e ia te homaitanga; no reira ka whakaaroa ia he kino i te aroaro o te Atua.
- 9 Waihoki ka whakairia ki te tangata hei kino, ki te inoi ia, a kahore i runga i te tino hiahia o te ngakau; ae ra, kahore he pai ki a ia; no te mea e kore te Atua e manako ki nga pera;

## Moronai 7

And now I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity; for after this manner did he speak unto the people, as he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

And now I, Mormon, speak unto you, my beloved brethren; and it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

Wherefore, I would speak unto you that are of the church, that are the peaceable followers of Christ, and that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

And now my brethren, I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

For I remember the word of God which saith by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

For behold, God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good; for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

For behold, it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

For behold, if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly; wherefore it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift; wherefore he is counted evil before God.

And likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and not with real intent of heart; yea, and it profiteth him nothing, for God receiveth none such.

- 10 No reira te tangata e kino ana, e kore e ahei te mahi i te pai; e kore ano hoki ia e homai i tetahi homaitanga pai.
- 11 No te mea e kore te puna kawa e ahei te whakaputa mai i te wai reka; e kore ano hoki e ahei i te puna pai te whakaputa mai i te wai kawa; no reira te tangata, he pononga ia na te rewera, na e kore ia e ahei te aru i a te Karaiti; a ki te aru ia i a te Karaiti, e kore ia e ahei hei pononga ma te rewera.
- 12 No reira e ahu mai ana i te Atua nga mea pai katoa; a ko te mea kino e ahu mai ana i te rewera; no te mea he hoa riri te rewera ki te Atua, e whawhai ana hoki ki a ia i nga wa katoa, tana hoki he powhiri, he kukume kia hara, kia mahi tonu hoki i te kino.
- 13 Heoi, na, ko ta te Atua, he powhiri, he kukume kia mahi i te pai i nga wa katoa; no reira ko nga mea katoa e powhiri ana, e whakapatipati ana, kia mahi i te pai, kia aroha ki te Atua, kia mahi hoki ki a ia, na, he mea tera na te ha o te Atua.
- 14 No reira kia tupato, e aku teina e arohaina ana, kei whakaaro koutou ki te kino, he mea na te Atua, ki te mea pai ranei, ara ki te mea a te Atua, he mea na te rewera.
- 15 Ta te mea, na, e aku teina, kua homai ki a koutou kia whakaarohia e koutou, kia matau ai koutou ki te pai ki te kino; a ko te huarahi hei whakaarohanga e taea ai e koutou te matau, tona marama ano ko te awatea e marama ake nei i te pouritanga o te po.
- 16 No te mea, e homai ana te Wairua o te Karaiti ki nga tangata katoa, kia matau ai ratou ki te pai ki te kino; no reira ka whakaatu ahau ki a koutou i te ahua mo te whakaaro; ina hoki ko nga mea katoa e powhiri ana kia mahi i te pai, e kukume ana kia whakapono ki a te Karaiti, na, he mea tonu mai era e te kaha me te homaitanga a te Karaiti; ma konei e mohio ai koutou i runga i te tino matauranga, he mea tera na te Atua.
- 17 Ko nga mea katoa ia e kukume ana i te tangata kia mahi i te kino, kia kauaka e whakapono ki a te Karaiti, kia whakakahore ki a ia, kia kauaka e mahi ki te Atua, katahi ka mohio koutou i runga i te tino matauranga, he mea tera na te rewera, no te mea ko te ahua tenei o te mahi a te rewera, e kore hoki ia e kukume i tetahi tangata kia mahi i te pai, kahore kia kotahi; kahore ano hoki ana anahera; kahore hoki te hunga e uru ana ki raro i a ia.

Wherefore, a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he give a good gift.

For behold, a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water; neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water; wherefore, a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ; and if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

Wherefore, all things which are good cometh of God; and that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

But behold, that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good continually; wherefore, every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

Wherefore, take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that which is evil to be of God, or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

For behold, my brethren, it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil; and the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

For behold, the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know good from evil; wherefore, I show unto you the way to judge; for every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ; wherefore ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

But whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil; for after this manner doth the devil work, for he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one; neither do his angels; neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

18 Na, e aku teina, i te mea e mohio ana koutou ki te maramatanga e whakawa ai koutou, ko taua maramatanga ko ia te maramatanga o te Karaiti, na, kia tupato kei whakawa hē koutou; no te mea ko taua whakawa ano e whakawa ai koutou, hei whakawakanga ano tena mo koutou.

19 No reira e tohe nei ahau ki a koutou, e nga teina kia ata rapu marire koutou i runga i te maramatanga o te Karaiti kia matau ai koutou ki te pai, ki te kino; a ki te mea ka mau koutou ki nga mea pai katoa, a e kore e whakahe i taua mea, he pono ka riro koutou hei tamariki ma te Karaiti.

20 Na, e aku teina, ma te aha e ahei ai i a koutou te mau ki nga mea pai katoa?

21 Na, katahi ahau ka tae ki taua Whakapono, i ki ai ahau maku e korero atu; na, maku e korero te huarahi ki a koutou e ahei ai i a koutou te mau ki nga mea pai katoa.

22 Ta te mea e mohio ana te Atua ki nga mea katoa, e mau tonu ana hoki ia, ā mau tonu iho, mau tonu iho, nana, i tono ia i nga anahera ki te minita ki nga tamariki a te tangata, ki te whakaatu atu mo te taenga mai o te Karaiti; a i roto i a te Karaiti e puta mai ana nga mea pai katoa.

23 A na te Atua ano i whakapuaki ki nga poropiti, he mea na tona mangai ake, era e haere mai a te Karaiti.

24 Nana, he maha nga huarahi i whakakite ai ia i nga mea ki nga tamariki a te tangata, koia he pai; a ko nga mea pai katoa, e puta ake ana i a te Karaiti, me i kore penei, he mea taka te tangata, a e kore tetahi mea pai e ahei te puta ake ki a ratou.

25 No reira i runga i te minitatanga a nga anahera, i runga hoki i nga kupu katoa i puta mai ai i te mangai o te Atua, ka timata te tangata ka whakamahi i te whakapono ki a te Karaiti; a penei na te whakapono ratou i mau ai ki nga mea pai katoa; a i penei ano tae noa mai ki te taenga mai o te Karaiti.

26 A i muri iho i tona taenga mai, i whakaorangia ano nga tangata i runga i te whakapono ki tona ingoa; a na te whakapono, ratou i riro ai hei tamariki ma te Atua. A he pono e ora ana te Karaiti, waihoki i korero ia i enei kupu ki o tatou tupuna, i mea, Ko nga mea katoa e inoi ai koutou ki te Matua i runga i toku ingoa, ki te mea he mea pai, i runga i te whakapono e whakapono ana tera e riro i a koutou, nana, ka meatia ki a koutou.

And now, my brethren, seeing that ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully; for with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be judged.

Wherefore, I beseech of you, brethren, that ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may know good from evil; and if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not, ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

And now, my brethren, how is it possible that ye can lay hold upon every good thing?

And now I come to that faith, of which I said I would speak; and I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good thing.

For behold, God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting, behold, he sent angels to minister unto the children of men, to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ; and in Christ there should come every good thing.

And God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ should come.

And behold, there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the children of men, which were good; and all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

Wherefore, by the ministering of angels, and by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God, men began to exercise faith in Christ; and thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing; and thus it was until the coming of Christ.

And after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name; and by faith, they become the sons of God. And as surely as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers, saying: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you.

- 27 No reira, e aku teina aroha, kua memeha atu ianei nga merekara, mo te Karaiti i kake ki te rangi, i noho ki te ringa matau o te Atua, kia inoi atu ki te Matua ki ana tikanga o te tohu tangata e whai tikanga nei ia ki runga ki nga tamariki a te tangata?
- 28 No te mea kua ea i a ia te ture, a ki ana ia, nana te hunga katoa e whai whakapono ana ki a ia, a ko te hunga e whai whakapono ki a ia, ka piri ki nga mea pai katoa; no reira ka wawao ia mo nga tamariki a te tangata, a ka noho tonu ano ia i te rangi.
- 29 A mona i mea i tenei, e aku teina e arohaina ana, kua memeha oti nga merekara? Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, Kahore; kahore ano hoki kia mutu i nga anahera te minita ki nga tamariki a te tangata.
- 30 No te mea, na, kei raro ratou i a ia, hei minita e rite ana ki te kupu o tana whakahau, e whakakite ana i a ratou ano ki te hunga he whakapono kaha ta ratou, he whakaaro u, i runga i nga ahua katoa o te karakia.
- 31 A ko te tikanga o ta ratou minitatanga, koia hei karanga i nga tangata ki te ripenetatanga, kia whakariterite, kia mahi hoki i te mahi o nga kawenata a te Matua i kawenata ai ia ki nga tamariki a te tangata, hei whakapai i te huarahi i roto i nga tamariki a te tangata, i runga i te whakapuaki i te kupu a te Karaiti ki nga oko whiriwhiri a te Ariki, kia whakaatu ai ratou i a ia.
- 32 A i runga i te penei ka whakarite huarahi te Ariki, te Atua, kia whai whakapono ai te toenga o nga tangata ki a te Karaiti, kia whai wahi te Wairua Tapu i roto i o ratou ngakau, ki te ritenga o to reira kaha: ko te peheatanga e whakaritea ai e te Matua nga kawenata i kawenata ai ia ki nga tamariki a te tangata.
- 33 Na te Karaiti hoki i mea, Ki te whakapono mai koutou ki a au, ka whai kaha koutou hei mahi i nga mea e tika nei i roto i a au.
- 34 Nana ano i ki, Ripeneta koutou, e nga topito katoa o te whenua, haere mai hoki ki a au, kia rumakina i runga i toku ingoa, me te whakapono ana ki a au kia ora ai koutou.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into heaven, and hath sat down on the right hand of God, to claim of the Father his rights of mercy which he hath upon the children of men?

For he hath answered the ends of the law, and he claimeth all those who have faith in him; and they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing; wherefore he advocateth the cause of the children of men; and he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

And because he hath done this, my beloved brethren, have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of men.

For behold, they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

And the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance, and to fulfil and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which he hath made unto the children of men, to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord, that they may bear testimony of him.

And by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have place in their hearts, according to the power thereof; and after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants which he hath made unto the children of men.

And Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

And he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me, and be baptized in my name, and have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

- 35 Heoi, e aku teina e arohaina ana, ki te mea e pono ana enei mea ka oti nei i a au te korero ki a koutou, a e whakaatu atu ana ano te Atua ki a koutou i runga i te kaha me te kororia nui a te ra whakamutunga, i enei mea e pono ana; a ki te mea he pono enei mea, na, kua pahemo ianei te rangi mo nga merekara?
- 36 Kua mutu ianei te putanga mai o nga anahera ki nga tamariki a te tangata?—kua kaiponuhia ianei e ia te kaha o te Wairua Tapu ki a ratou? ka peratia ianei e ia i nga wa katoa e mau ai te taima, e u ai te whenua, e waiho ai ranei tetahi tangata ki runga ki to reira mata kia whakaorangia?
- 37 Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, Kahore; no te mea ma te whakapono e mahia ai nga merekara; ma te whakapono hoki e puta mai ai nga anahera, me te minita ano ki nga tangata; mo konei ra me he mea kua mutu enei mea, aue te mate mo nga tamariki a te tangata, ina hoki na te whakapono-kore i pera ai, a he horihori ano te katoa;
- 38 No te mea e kore e ahei i tetahi tangata te ora, ki te ritenga o nga kupu a te Karaiti, ki te kore o ratou whakapono ki tona ingoa; no reira me he mea kua mutu ena mea, kua mutu ano hoki te whakapono; a he mea whakawehi ano te ahua o te tangata; no te mea ko to ratou ahua me te mea kahore i puta ake he hokonga mo ratou.
- 39 Ko tenei, e aku teina e arohaina ana, pai ke atu aku mea e whakaaro nei ahau mo koutou, no te mea ki taku, e whakapono ana koutou ki a te Karaiti, ina hoki te mahaki o o koutou ngakau: ki te kore hoki to koutou whakapono ki a ia, katahi ka kahore o koutou taunga kia taua ngatahitia me te iwi o tona hahi.
- 40 Me tenei ano, e aku teina aroha, e mea ana ahau kia whai kupu ki a koutou mo te Tumanako. Me pehea e taea ai e koutou te whakapono, ki te kore o koutou tumanako?
- 41 A me tumanako atu koutou ki te aha? Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, me tumanako koutou i runga i te whakamarietanga a te Karaiti, me te kaha o tona aranga mai, ki to koutou whakaarahanga ake ki te oranga tonutanga; a he mea ano tenei na to koutou whakapono ki a ia i runga i te ritenga o te kupu whakaari;

And now, my beloved brethren, if this be the case that these things are true which I have spoken unto you, and God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true, and if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

Or have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men? Or has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them? Or will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

Behold I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought; and it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men; wherefore, if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

For no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name; wherefore, if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

But behold, my beloved brethren, I judge better things of you, for I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness; for if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

And again, my beloved brethren, I would speak unto you concerning hope. How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

And what is it that ye shall hope for? Behold I say unto you that ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal, and this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

42 No reira, ki te mea he whakapono to tetahi tangata, me whai tumanako ano ia; no te mea ki te kahore he whakapono, e kore e taea he tumanako.

43 Me tenei ano, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koutou, e kore e ahei i a ia te whakapono me te tumanako, ki te kahore ona ngakau mahaki, ngakau papaku;

44 Me i pera, penei kua maumau tona whakapono me te tumanako, no te mea e kore tetahi e paingia i te aroaro o te Atua, ko te hunga ngakau mahaki anake me te hunga ngakau papaku, a ki te mea he ngakau mahaki, he ngakau papaku to tetahi tangata, a ka whakaae ano i runga i te mana o te Wairua Tapu, ko Ihu te Karaiti, na, me whai aroha ia; no te mea ki te kore ona aroha ehara rawa ia; no reira me whai aroha ia.

45 A e manawanui ana te aroha, e atawhai ana, e kore e hae, e kore e whakapehapeha, e kore e whai ki āna ake, e kore e riri wawe, e kore e whakairi kino, e kore e hari ki te hē, engari ka hari ki te pono, e whakamanawanui ana ki nga mea katoa, e whakapono ana ki nga mea katoa, e tumanako ana ki nga mea katoa, e whakaririka ana ki nga mea katoa;

46 No reira e aku teina e arohaina ana, ki te kahore o koutou aroha, ehara rawa koutou, no te mea e kore rawa te aroha e taka. No konei ra kia mau ki te aroha, ko ia nei te mea o nga mea katoa, no te mea he pono ka taka nga mea katoa;

47 Ko tenei aroha ko te aroha whakananu kore ia o te Karaiti, he mea mau tonu; a ko nga tangata e kitea ana kei a ratou tenei aroha a te ra whakamutungana, ko te pai mo ratou.

48 No reira, e aku teina aroha, inoi ki te Matua i runga i te takare katoa o te ngakau, kia whakakiiia koutou ki tenei aroha, i tukua mai nei e ia ki runga ki nga kai aru pono katoa i tana Tama, i a Ihu Karaiti, kia meinga ai koutou hei tamariki ma te Atua, mo te wa e tae mai ia, kua rite tatou ki a ia; no te mea ka kite tatou i a ia me ia ano, kia riro tenei tumanako i a tatou, ara, kia whakamakia tatou, kia rite ki a ia e ma ana. Amine.

Wherefore, if a man have faith he must needs have hope; for without faith there cannot be any hope.

And again, behold I say unto you that he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and lowly of heart.

If so, his faith and hope is vain, for none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in heart; and if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs have charity; for if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs have charity.

And charity suffereth long, and is kind, and envieth not, and is not puffed up, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil, and rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth, beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth. Wherefore, cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all, for all things must fail—

But charity is the pure love of Christ, and it endureth forever; and whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well with him.

Wherefore, my beloved brethren, pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart, that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ; that ye may become the sons of God; that when he shall appear we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is; that we may have this hope; that we may be purified even as he is pure. Amen.



## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 8

- 1 He pukapuka na toku papa, na Moromona, he mea tuhituhi mai ki a au, ki a Moronai; i tuhituhia mai ki a au i muri tata iho i toku karangatanga ki te mahi minita. A ko te ahua tenei i tuhituhi mai ia ki a au, i mea.
- 2 E taku tama aroha, e Moronai, he nui toku hari mo tou Ariki, mo Ihu Karaiti, i mahara mai ki a koe, i karanga hoki i a koe ki tana mahi minita, me tana mahi tapu.
- 3 E mahara tonu ana ahau ki a koe i aku inoinga, e inoi tonu ana ki te Atua, ki te Matua, i runga i te ingoa o tana tamaiti tapu, o Ihu, kia pupuri ia, he mea na tona pai e kore nei e taea te mehua, me tona aroha noa, i a koe i runga i te pumautanga o te whakapono ki tona ingoa tae noa ki te mutunga.
- 4 Na, e taku tama, ka korero ahau ki a koe mo tetahi mea e whakapouri nei i a au; ta te mea he mea pouri ki a au te tupunga o nga tautohetohenga i roto i a koutou.
- 5 Ki te mea hoki he tika taku i rongu nei, na, kua ai nga tautohetohenga i roto i a koutou mo te rumakanga o a koutou tamariki nonohi.
- 6 Na, e taku tama, e hiahia ana ahau kia takare tonu koe ki te mahi, kia whakanekehia atu tenei pohehe nui i roto i a koutou; ina hoki, na konei i tuhituhi ai ahau i tenei pukapuka.
- 7 No te mea i muri tata tonu iho i toku rongonga i enei mea ki a koe, ka uiui atu ahau ki te Ariki ki taua mea. A ka puta mai te kupu a te Ariki ki a au, he mea na te kaha o te Wairua Tapu, ka mea,
- 8 Whakarongo ki nga kupu a te Karaiti, a tou Kaihoko, a tou Ariki, a tou Atua. Nana, kihai ahau i haere mai ki te ao ki te karanga i te hunga tika, engari i te hunga hara kia ripeneta; kahore he aha o nga tangata ora e meatia ai e te rata, engari o te hunga e mate ana; no reira e ora ana nga tamariki nonohi, kahore hoki o ratou kaha ki te mahi hara; no reira ka tangohia te kanga o Arama i runga i a ratou i roto i a au, a kahore ona kaha ki runga ki a ratou; ka mutu hoki te ture o te kotinga i roto i a au.

## Moroni 8

An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni; and it was written unto me soon after my calling to the ministry. And on this wise did he write unto me, saying:

My beloved son, Moroni, I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his holy work.

I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace, will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

And now, my son, I speak unto you concerning that which grieveth me exceedingly; for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

For, if I have learned the truth, there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

And now, my son, I desire that ye should labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you; for, for this intent I have written this epistle.

For immediately after I had learned these things of you I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter. And the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost, saying:

Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God. Behold, I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance; the whole need no physician, but they that are sick; wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin; wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me, that it hath no power over them; and the law of circumcision is done away in me.

- 9 Na, ko te ahua tenei i whakaatu mai ai te Wairua Tapu i te kupu a te Atua ki a au; no reira, e taku tamaiti aroha, e mohio ana ahau he karakia tawai tena i te aroaro o te Atua, ara, ta koutou rumakanga i nga tamariki nonohi.
- 10 Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koe, ko te whakaakoranga tenei mau, ko te ripeneta me te rumaki ki te hunga e mohio ana e kaha ana ki te mahi i te kino; ae ra, whakaakona nga matua me ripeneta ratou, me rumaki, me whakaiti ratou e ratou ano, me rite ki a ratou tamariki nonohi, a ka whakaorangia ratou katoa, me a ratou tamariki nonohi.
- 11 A kahore he aha o nga tamariki nonohi e ripeneta ai ratou, e rumakina ai ranei. Nana, te putake o te rumakanga koia he meatanga ki te ripeneta tangata, ki te whakaritenga i nga whakahaunga, hei murunga i nga hara.
- 12 Heoi he mea ora nga tamariki nonohi i roto i a te Karaiti, kua pera ano hoki no te orokohanganga o te ao; ki te kore, na, he Atua tapatahi kore te Atua, he Atua puta ke ano hoki, he Atua whakapai kanohi; ina hoki te tini o nga tamariki nonohi i mate a kihai i rumakina.
- 13 No konei ra, me he mea e taea nga tamariki nonohi te whakaora motu ke i te rumaki, penei kua riro era ki tetahi reinga mutunga kore.
- 14 Nana, ko taku kupu tenei ki a koe, Te tangata e mea ana, me rumaki nga tamariki nonohi, kei te au kawa ia, kei nga here hoki o te kino; no te mea kahore ona whakapono, tumanako, aroha ranei; no reira. me he mea ka hatepea atu ia i a ia i roto i taua whakaaro, na, me heke iho ia ki te po.
- 15 No te mea he whakawehi rawa te kino nei, ara, te mea ka ora i te Atua tetahi tamaiti, he mea na te rumaki, a ko tetahi atu me mate no te mea kahore ona rumakanga.
- 16 Aue te mate mo te tangata e whakariri ke ana i nga huarahi a te Ariki i runga i tenei ritenga, no te mea ka mate ratou, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta. Nana, e korero ana ahau i runga i te maia, he mana hoki toku na te Atua; kahore ano hoki oku wehi ki ta te tangata e mea ai; no te mea ko ta te tino aroha he makā atu i te wehi katoa:

And after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me; wherefore, my beloved son, I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

Behold I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of committing sin; yea, teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and humble themselves as their little children, and they shall all be saved with their little children.

And their little children need no repentance, neither baptism. Behold, baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments unto the remission of sins.

But little children are alive in Christ, even from the foundation of the world; if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and a respecter to persons; for how many little children have died without baptism!

Wherefore, if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must have gone to an endless hell.

Behold I say unto you, that he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity; for he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity; wherefore, should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to hell.

For awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner, for they shall perish except they repent. Behold, I speak with boldness, having authority from God; and I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

- 17 A e ki tonu ana ahau i te aroha, koia te aroha mau tonu; no reira ki taku, e rite ana nga tamariki katoa; koia ahau ka aroha nei ki nga tamariki nonohi i runga i te tino aroha; a e rite ana ratou katoa, e uru ana ano hoki ki te whakaoranga.
- 18 No te mea e mohio ana ahau ehara te Atua i te Atua whakapai tangata, ehara hoki i te Mea e puta ke ana: engari tuturu tonu no mua iho, a, ake ake ake.
- 19 Kahore e ahei i nga tamariki nonohi te ripeneta; no reira he kino whakawehi te kaiponu i ta te Atua tohu tangata ki a ratou, ina e ora katoa ana ratou i roto i a ia i runga i tana tohu tangata.
- 20 Te tangata e ki ana, Me rumaki nga tamariki nonohi, e whakakahore ana tera i nga tohu tangata a te Karaiti, e whakakore atu ana i tana whakamarietanga me te kaha ano o tana hokonga.
- 21 Aue te mate mo nga pera, no te mea ka tika mo ratou te mate, te reinga, me te mamae mutunga-kore. He korero maia taku, na te Atua hoki ahau i whakahau. Whakarongo mai ki enei mea, e rongohoki, ki te kore, ka tau enei mea hei kai whakaatu i o koutou hē i te nohoanga whakawa o te Karaiti.
- 22 Ta te mea, na, ko nga tamariki nonohi katoa e ora ana ratou i roto i a te Karaiti, me te hunga ture-kore ano hoki. No te mea ka horapa atu te kaha o te hokonga ki te hunga katoa kahore nei o ratou ture; no reira te tangata kahore i whakahengia, ara, te tangata kahore i raro i te whakahē, kahore e ahei i a ia te ripeneta; kahore hoki he painga o te rumakanga ki nga mea pera.
- 23 Heoi he tawai tena i te aroaro o te Atua, he whakakahore ki ā te Karaiti tohu tangata, me te kaha o tona Wairua Ora, a he okioki hoki ki runga ki nga mahi mate.
- 24 Nana, e taku tama e tika ana kia kore tenei mea; no te mea ma te hunga i raro nei i te whakahē te ripeneta, i raro nei hoki i te kanga o te ture ka oti nei te takahi.
- 25 A ko nga hua matamua o te ripeneta koia te rumaki; a e ahu mai ana te rumaki i te whakapono, hei whakaritenga i nga whakahaunga; a i runga i te whakaritenga o nga whakahaunga e puta ana te murunga hara;

And I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me; wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love; and they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

For I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being; but he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them, for they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

And he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment. I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me. Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at the judgment-seat of Christ.

For behold that all little children are alive in Christ, and also all they that are without the law. For the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law; wherefore, he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation, cannot repent; and unto such baptism availeth nothing—

But it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

Behold, my son, this thing ought not to be; for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation and under the curse of a broken law.

And the first fruits of repentance is baptism; and baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments; and the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

26 A i runga i te murunga hara e puta ana te wairua mahaki, me te ngakau papaku, na, he mea na te wairua mahaki me te ngakau papaku te putanga mai o te torotoronga o te Wairua Tapu, koia nei te Kai-whakamarie e whakakā nei ki te tumanako me te tino aroha, a ko taua aroha he mea mau tonu i runga i te takare tonu ki te inoi, a tae noa ki te putanga mai o te mutunga, o te wa e noho ai te hunga tapu katoa i te Atua.

27 Heoi, e taku tama ka tuhituhi ano ahau ki a koe, ki te kore au e haere wawe atu hei tatauranga atu ki nga Ramana. Nana, na te whakapehapeha o tenei iwi, ara, o te iwi o nga Niwhai, i tuturu ai to ratou whakangaromanga, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta.

28 Inoi mo ratou, e taku tama, kia puta ake te ripeneta ki a ratou. Otira e wehi ana ahau kua mutu pea te Wairua te tohe ki a ratou; a kei tenei wahi o te whenua, e whai ana ratou kia pehia katoatia nga kaha me nga mana e ahu mai ana i te Atua; e whakakahore ana hoki ratou ki te Wairua Tapu.

29 Heoi i muri i te whakakahoretanga ki tenei matauranga nui, e taku tama, me mate wawe ratou hei whakaritenga i nga poropititanga i korerotia e nga poropiti, me nga kupu hoki a to tatou Kai-whakaora ano.

30 Hei kona ra, e taku tama, kia tuhituhi ra ano ahau ki a koe, kia tutaki ano ranei i a koe. Amine.

And the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of heart; and because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love, which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

Behold, my son, I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites. Behold, the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them. But behold, I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them; and in this part of the land they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God; and they are denying the Holy Ghost.

And after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again. Amen.

## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 9

- 1 E taku tama aroha, ka tuhituhi ano ahau ki a koe, kia mohio ai koe kei te ora tonu ahau otira ka tuhituhi ahau i tetahi mea taumaha.
- 2 No te mea, kua tu taku riri nui ki nga Ramana, a kihai matou i whai wikitoria; na, kua hinga hoki a Araheanatu i te hoari, me Rurama ano hoki raua ko Emerono; ae ra, he tokomaha noa atu hoki o o matou tangata whiriwhiri pai kua ngaro i a matou.
- 3 Heoi, e taku tama, e wehi ana ahau kei whakamatea tenei iwi e nga Ramana, ina kahore ratou e ripeneta, a e whakakiiia tonutia ana ratou e Hatana kia riri, tetahi ki tetahi.
- 4 Na, e hono tonu ana taku mahi ki a ratou; a ina korero koi atu ahau i te kupu a te Atua, ka wiri ratou ka riri ki a au; ano ka kore aku kupu koi atu, ka whakapakeke ratou i o ratou ngakau ki taua mea; no reira e wehi ana ahau kua mutu pea te Wairua o te Ariki te tohe ki a ratou.
- 5 He nui hoki no a ratou riri, ka mahara nei ahau kahore o ratou wehi ki te mate; kua ngaro hoki to ratou aroha tetahi ki tetahi; a hono tonu ana to ratou hiahia ki te toto, ki te ngaki-mate hoki.
- 6 Na, e taku tama aroha, he ahakoa to ratou pakeketanga kia takare tonu taua ki te mahi: me i mutu hoki i a taua te mahi, penei kua uru taua ki raro i te whakahē; no te mea kei a taua he mahi ma taua i a taua i roto nei i tenei tapenakara uku, kia whai wikitoria ai taua ki runga ki te hoa riri o te tika katoa, kia okioki ano hoki o taua wairua i roto i te kingitanga o te Atua.
- 7 Na, ka tuhituhi tenei ahau i etahi mea mo nga whakamamaetanga o tenei iwi, no te mea i runga i te matauranga kua tae mai nei ki a au i a Amoronono, nana, kei nga Ramana nga herehere maha, i mau ai i a ratou i te pourewa i Heritaha; a he tane, he wahine, he tamariki ratou.

## Moroni 9

My beloved son, I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive; but I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

For behold, I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer; and Archeantus has fallen by the sword, and also Luram and Emron; yea, and we have lost a great number of our choice men.

And now behold, my son, I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent, and Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

Behold, I am laboring with them continually; and when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and anger against me; and when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it; wherefore, I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.

For so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have no fear of death; and they have lost their love, one towards another; and they thirst after blood and revenge continually.

And now, my beloved son, notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently; for if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation; for we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness, and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

And now I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people. For according to the knowledge which I have received from Amoron, behold, the Lamanites have many prisoners, which they took from the tower of Sherrizah; and there were men, women, and children.

8 A ko nga tane me nga papa o aua wahine me aua tamariki ka oti te patu e ratou; a e whangai ana ratou ma nga wahine i te kikokiko o o ratou tane, ma nga tamariki i te kikokiko o o ratou papa; a kahore he wai, he itiiti kau nei ta ratou e hoatu nei mo ratou.

9 A he ahakoa tenei weriweri nui o nga Ramana, e kore tenei e nuku ake i ta to taua iwi i a Morianatumu. Ina hoki, he tokomaha no nga tamahine a nga Ramana ka oti te herehere e ratou; a i muri i ta ratou murunga atu i taua mea tino utu nui i a ratou, e whai tikanga nui ake ana i nga mea katoa, koia ano te pai, me te puhi o te wahine.

10 Na, i te mea ka oti i a ratou tenei mea te mahi, ka kohuru ratou i a ratou i runga i tetahi tu kohuru nanakia rawa atu, he mea whakamamae rawa i o ratou tinana a mate noa; ano ka oti tenei i a ratou, ka kai ratou i o ratou kikokiko me he kararehe mohoa, he mea na te pakeke o o ratou ngakau; a ka mahi ratou i tenei hei tohu mo te toa.

11 E taku tama aroha, me pehea e taea ai e tetahi iwi te penei me tenei he tikanga mohoa nei ta ratou;

12 (A he torutoru noa nga tau kua pahemo, he iwi noho marie ratou, he iwi e ahuareka ana);

13 Heoi, E taku tama, me pehea e taea ai e tetahi iwi penei me tenei, e ahuareka nei ki nga mea whakarihariha nui,

14 Me pehea e taea ai e taua te whakaaro, ka pupuri atu te Atua i tona ringa i te whakarite whakawa ki a tatou?

15 Nana, e tangi ana toku ngakau, Aue te mate mo tenei iwi. Puta mai i runga i te whakarite whakawa. E te Atua, hunaia a ratou hara, a ratou kino, me a ratou mahi whakarihariha i mua i tou kanohi.

16 Me tenei ano, e taku tama, he maha nga pouaru me a ratou tamahine e noho ana i Heritaha; a ko taua wahi o nga kai kihai nei i kawea atu e nga Ramana, nana, na te taua a Tenepehi i tango atu, a i waiho ratou kia atiutiu atu ki ta ratou wahi e taea ai e ratou hei rapu kai; a he tokomaha nga ruwahine e hemo ana i te ara, ā mate noa atu.

17 Na, te taua i a au nei e ngoikore ana; kei waenganui hoki nga taua a nga Ramana i Heritaha i a au; a ko te hunga hoki i oma atu ra ki te taua o Arona, kua hinga hei parakete ki ā ratou tikanga mohoa weriweri.

And the husbands and fathers of those women and children they have slain; and they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the children upon the flesh of their fathers; and no water, save a little, do they give unto them.

And notwithstanding this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that of our people in Moriantum. For behold, many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue—

And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death; and after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts; and they do it for a token of bravery.

O my beloved son, how can a people like this, that are without civilization—

(And only a few years have passed away, and they were a civil and a delightful people)

But O my son, how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much abomination—

How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment against us?

Behold, my heart cries: Wo unto this people. Come out in judgment, O God, and hide their sins, and wickedness, and abominations from before thy face!

And again, my son, there are many widows and their daughters who remain in Sherrizah; and that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away, and left them to wander whithersoever they can for food; and many old women do faint by the way and die.

And the army which is with me is weak; and the armies of the Lamanites are betwixt Sherrizah and me; and as many as have fled to the army of Aaron have fallen victims to their awful brutality.

18 Aue te kino nui o toku iwi! Kahore o ratou ritenga tika, kahore o ratou tohu tangata. Nana, he tangata kau ahau, heoi ano taku ko to te tangata kaha, a ka mutu toku kaha hei mea i aku whakahau kia whakaritea;

19 Kua kaha ratou i runga i to ratou putanga ketanga; kua rite ratou ki nga kararehe noa iho, kahore o ratou tangata e tohungia e ratou, kahore nga koroua, kahore hoki nga taitamariki; a e ahua e ana ratou ki nga mea katoa, ki te mea pai ia kahore; a ko nga mamaetanga o a matou wahine me a matou tamariki i runga i te mata katoa o tenei whenua, tera atu i nga mea katoa; ae ra, e kore te arero e ahei te korero, e kore hoki e taea te tuhituhi.

20 Heoi, e taku tama, e kore ahau e whakaroa atu i runga i tenei mea weriweri. Nana, e mohio ana koe ki te kino o te iwi nei; e mohio ana koe kahore o ratou tikanga tika, kua kore hoki o ratou ohoohonga; ko ta ratou kino tera atu i ta nga Ramana.

21 Nana, e taku tama, kahore ahau e ahei te whakamohio i a ratou ki te Atua kei patua ahau e ia.

22 Heoi, e taku tama, ka whakamohio ahau i a koe ki te Atua, a e okioki ana ahau ki runga ki a te Karaiti era koe e whakaorangia me taku inoi ano ki te Atua kia tohungia koe, kia kite i te hokinga mai o tana iwi ki a ia, i to ratou whakangaromanga rawatanga ranei; no te mea e mohio ana ahau tera ratou e mate, ki te kore ratou e ripeneta e hoki mai ki a ia;

23 A ki te mate ratou, ka rite to ratou matenga ki to nga Iarere, he mea mo te whakakeke o o ratou ngakau, e rapu ana i te toto, me te ngaki-mate.

24 A kite mea ka mate ratou, e mohio ana taua he tokomaha o taua teina kua puta atu ki nga Ramana, a he tokomaha ano era e puta atu ki a ratou; no reira me tuhituhi e koe etahi mea torutoru, ki te tohungia koe: a ka mate ahau tē kite hoki i a koe; heoi taku e tumanako atu nei kia kite wawe i a koe: no te mea kei a au nei nga tuhituhinga tapu e mea ana ahau kia tukua iho ki a koe.

O the depravity of my people! They are without order and without mercy. Behold, I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man, and I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

And they have become strong in their perversion; and they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young; and they delight in everything save that which is good; and the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of this land doth exceed everything; yea, tongue cannot tell, neither can it be written.

And now, my son, I dwell no longer upon this horrible scene. Behold, thou knowest the wickedness of this people; thou knowest that they are without principle, and past feeling; and their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

Behold, my son, I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God, and I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved; and I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction; for I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

And if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

And if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them; wherefore, write somewhat a few things, if thou art spared and I shall perish and not see thee; but I trust that I may see thee soon; for I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

25 E taku tama, kia u tonu i roto i a te Karaiti: a kauaka e pouri to ngakau i nga mea e tukituhi atu nei ahau ki a koe, kaua hoki e tukua kia whakataumaha iho i a koe, ā mate noa, engari ma te Karaiti koe e hiki ake, ma ona whakamamaetanga, me tona matenga, me te whakakitenga i tona tinana ki o tatou tupuna, me tana tohu tangata, me tona manawanui, me te tumanako ki tona kororia, ki te oranga tonutanga ano hoki, e waiho tonu i roto i to whakaaro, a ake ake ake.

26 Heoi ma te aroha noa o te Atua Matua, nona nei te torona tiketike rawa ake kei nga rangi, raua ko to taua Ariki, ko Ihu Karaiti, e noho ana i te ringa matau o tona kaha, ā te urunga ra ano o nga mea katoa ki raro ki a ia, e waiho e piri tonu hoki ki a koe mo ake ake tonu atu. Amine.

My son, be faithful in Christ; and may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death; but may Christ lift thee up, and may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

And may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever. Amen.



## Te Pukapuka A Moronai 10

- 1 Na, tenei ahau, a Moronai te tuhituhi nei i etahi mea e rite ana ki taku e pai nei: taku hoki he tuhituhi atu ki oku tuakana, ki nga Ramana: a e mea ana ahau kia mohio ratou, neke atu i nga tau e wha rau e rua tekau te pahemotanga atu i te takiwa i homai ai te tohu mo te haerenga mai o te Karaiti.
- 2 Na, ka hiritia ake e ahau enei tuhituhinga, i muri i taku korerotanga i etahi kupu torutoru nei hei whakahauhau i a koutou.
- 3 Nana, taku e mea nei kia whakahauhau i a koutou ina korero koutou i enei mea, ki te tika ki ta te Atua whakaaro mohio kia korerotia enei mea e koutou, kia mahara koutou ki te tohu tangata nui i tohu tangata ai te Ariki ki nga tamariki a te tangata, no te hanganga ra ano o Arama tae noa iho ki te takiwa e riro ai enei mea i a koutou, me te hurihuri ano i taua mea i roto i o koutou ngakau.
- 4 Ano ka riro enei mea i a koutou, ko taku e mea nei kia whakahau i a koutou kia inoi atu koutou ki te Atua ki te Matua Ora Tonu, i runga i te ingoa o te Karaiti, me he mea e tika ana ranei enei mea; ki te inoi hoki koutou i runga i te ngakau pono, i runga i te tino hiahia, me te whakapono ano ki a te Karaiti, na, ka whakaaturia te tika o tenei mea ki a koutou e ia, i runga i te kaha o te Wairua Tapu;
- 5 Ma te mana hoki o te Wairua Tapu e mohio ai koutou ki te pono o nga mea katoa.
- 6 A ki te mea he mea pai, he tika he pono ano ia; no reira, e kore tetahi mea pai e whakakahore ia te Karaiti, engrari e whaki ana ko ia ano tena.
- 7 A ma te kaha o te Wairua Tapu e mohio ai koutou ki a ia, ko ia ano tena; no reira e mea ana ahau kia whakahauhau i a koutou kia kauaka koutou e whakaparahako ki te kaha o te Atua; no te mea ko tana he mahi i runga ki te kaha, e rite ana ki te whakapono o nga tamariki a te tangata, rite tonu aiane, apopo, a ake ake ake.

## Moronai 10

Now I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good; and I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites; and I would that they should know that more than four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

And I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

Behold, I would exhort you that when ye shall read these things, if it be wisdom in God that ye should read them, that ye would remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men, from the creation of Adam even down until the time that ye shall receive these things, and ponder it in your hearts.

And when ye shall receive these things, I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father, in the name of Christ, if these things are not true; and if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth of it unto you, by the power of the Holy Ghost.

And by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

And whatsoever thing is good is just and true; wherefore, nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

And ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God; for he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men, the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

8 A ka whakahauhau ano ahau i a koutou, e aku teina, kia kauaka koutou e whakakahore ki nga homaitanga a te Atua, he tini hoki era; a ka puta mai aua mea i taua Atua ra ano. A poka ke ano hoki nga huarahi e minitatia ai enei homaitanga; kotahi ano ia Atua hei mahi i nga mea katoa i roto i te katoa; he mea homai hoki i runga i nga whakakitenga a te Wairua o te Atua, ki nga tangata, hei painga mo ratou.

9 Ta te mea, na, e homai ana ki tetahi kia whakaako ia i te kupu whai whakaaro, he mea na te Wairua o te Atua;

10 Ki tetahi atu kia whakaako ia i te kupu matau, na taua Wairua ra ano;

11 Ki tetahi atu, he whakapono nui rawa; ki tetahi atu, nga homaitanga whakaora, na taua Wairua ra ano.

12 Ki tetahi atu ano hoki, kia mahi ia i nga merekara nunui;

13 Ki tetahi atu, kia poropiti ia mo nga mea katoa;

14 Me tenei ano, ki tetahi atu, te kitenga i nga anahera me nga wairua e minita mai ana;

15 Me tenei ano, ki tetahi atu, nga tu reo katoa;

16 Me tenei ano, ki tetahi atu, te whakamaoritanga i nga reo me tenei tu reo me tera tu reo.

17 Na, ko enei homaitanga katoa, he mea puta mai i te Wairua o te Karaiti, e puta mai ana hoki ki tena tangata, ki tena tangata e rite ana ki tana i pai ai.

18 A e mea ana ano ahau ki te whakahauhau i a koutou, e aku teina aroha, kia mahara koutou ki nga homaitanga papai katoa, he mea puta mai i a te Karaiti.

19 E mea ana ano ahau ki te whakahauhau i a koutou, e aku teina aroha, kia mahara koutou e tuturu tonu ana ia, inanahi, inaiane, a ake ake ake, a ko enei homaitanga katoa kua korerotia ake nei e ahau, he mea whakawairua, e kore rawa e whakamutua, i nga wa katoa e tu ana te ao, engari i runga i te ritenga o te whakapono-kore o nga tamariki a te tangata.

20 Mo konei ra me ai he whakapono; a ki te mea me ai he whakapono, me ai ano hoki he tumanako; a ki te mea me ai he tumanako, na, me ai ano hoki he aroha;

And again, I exhort you, my brethren, that ye deny not the gifts of God, for they are many; and they come from the same God. And there are different ways that these gifts are administered; but it is the same God who worketh all in all; and they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

For behold, to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

And to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

And to another, exceedingly great faith; and to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

And again, to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

And again, to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

And again, to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

And again, to another, all kinds of tongues;

And again, to another, the interpretation of languages and of divers kinds of tongues.

And all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ; and they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

And I would exhort you, my beloved brethren, that ye remember that he is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and that all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand, only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

Wherefore, there must be faith; and if there must be faith there must also be hope; and if there must be hope there must also be charity.

- 21 A ki te kore o koutou aroha, e kore rawa koutou e taea te whakaora ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Atua; e kore ano hoki koutou e taea te whakaora ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Atua, ki te mea kahore o koutou whakaponu; e kore ano hoki koutou e taea ki te kahore o koutou tumanako;
- 22 A ki te mea kahore o koutou tumanako, he tika kei te ngakau-kore koutou; a na te kino i puta ake ai te ngakau-kore.
- 23 A he pono na te Karaiti i ki mai ki o tatou tupuna, ki te mea he whakaponu to koutou, ka taea e koutou nga mea katoa e tika ana i roto i a au.
- 24 A ka korero tenei ahau ki nga pito katoa, o te whenua, Na, ki te haere mai te ra e mutu ai te kaha me nga homaitanga a te Atua i roto i a koutou, na, ma te whakaponu-kore e pera ai.
- 25 Na, aue te mate mo nga tamariki a te tangata, ki te mea ka pera; no te mea e kore e waiho he kai mahi i te pai i roto i a koutou, kahore kia kotahi. Ina hoki ki te mea tera ano tetahi i roto i a koutou e mahi ana i te pai, na ka mahi ia i runga i te kaha me nga homaitanga a te Atua.
- 26 Na, aue te mate mo te hunga mana enei mea e mutu ai, a ka mate, no te mea ka mate ratou i roto i o ratou hara, a e kore ratou e taea te whakaora ki roto ki te kingitanga o te Atua; e korero ana hoki ahau i tenei rite tonu ki nga kupu a te Karaiti, a kahore oku teka.
- 27 Ka whakahauhau ano ahau ki a koutou kia mahara ki enei mea; no te mea ka puta whakarere mai te wa e mohio ai koutou kahore oku teka, no te mea era koutou e kite i a au i te wahi whakawa o te Atua, a ka ki atu te Ariki te Atua ki a koutou, he teka ianei naku i whakapuaki ki a koutou aku kupu, i tuhituhia e te tangata nei, i rite ki tetahi e karanga ake ana i roto i te hunga mate? Ae ra, i rite ki tetahi e korero ake ana i roto i te puehu?
- 28 Na, ka whakapuaki ahau i enei mea hei whakaritenga i nga poropititanga. A ka puta mai enei mea i te mangai o te Atua Ora Tonu; ka whiowhio atu tana kupu ki tetahi whakatupuranga, ki tetahi whakatupuranga.
- 29 Ma te Atua hoki e whakaatu atu ki a koutou, taku e tuhituhi nei e pono ana.

And except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the kingdom of God; neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

And if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair; and despair cometh because of iniquity.

And Christ truly said unto our fathers: If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto me.

And now I speak unto all the ends of the earth—that if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

And wo be unto the children of men if this be the case; for there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one. For if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

And wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins, and they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God; and I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

And I exhort you to remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not, for ye shall see me at the bar of God; and the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead, yea, even as one speaking out of the dust?

I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies. And behold, they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God; and his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

And God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

30 A e mea ana ano ahau kia whakahauhau i a koutou, kia haere mai koutou ki a te Karaiti, kia mau hoki ki nga homaitanga papai katoa, a kauaka e pa ki te homaitanga kino, kauaka hoki ki te mea poke.

31 E ara, whakatika ake i te puehu, E Hiruharama; ae ra, kakahuria ou kahu whakapaipai, E te tamahine o Hiona, whakakahangia ou takiwa, whakanuia ou rohe mo ake ake tonu atu, kia kore ano koe e whakapoauautia, kia whakaritea nga kawenata a te Matua Ora Tonu i kawenata ai ia ki a koe, E te whare o Iharaira.

32 Ae ra, haere mai ki a te Karaiti, kia tino rite i roto i a ia, whakakahoretia nga mea hē katoa ki a koutou, a ki te mea ka whakakahore koutou ki a koutou ano i nga mea hē katoa, a ka whakapaua to koutou uaua katoa, to koutou whakaaro, me to koutou kaha ki te aroha ki te Atua, katahi ka ranea tona aroha noa mo koutou, kia tino rite ai koutou i roto i a te Karaiti, i runga i tona aroha noa; a ki te mea ka tino rite koutou i roto i a te Karaiti, i runga i te aroha noa o te Atua, e kore rawa e ahei i a koutou te whakakahore ki te kaha o te Atua.

33 Me tenei ano hoki, ki te mea ko koutou i runga i te aroha noa o te Atua ka tino rite i roto i a te Karaiti, a kahore e whakakahore ki tona kaha, katahi koutou ka tapu i roto i a te Karaiti, he, mea na te aroha noa o te Atua, i runga i te whakahēkenga o nga toto o te Karaiti, koia nei te kawenata a te Matua, hei murunga i o koutou hara, kia tapu ai koutou, kia koha-kore ai.

34 Heoi, ko taku poroporoaki tenei ki te katoa, hei konei ra koutou. Meake haere ahau ki te okioki ki roto ki te pararaiha o te Atua, kia whakakotahi ra ano toku wairua raua ko toku tinana, a ka kawea ahau i runga i te wikitoria i roto i te rangi, kia tutaki i a koutou i te aroaro o te wahi whakawa ahuaireka o Ihowa nui, o te Kaiwhakawa Ora Tonu o te hunga ora me te hunga mate. Amine.

*Ko te whakamutunga*

And again I would exhort you that ye would come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift, and touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

And awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem; yea, and put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion; and strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever, that thou mayest no more be confounded, that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

Yea, come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, and deny yourselves of all ungodliness; and if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness, and love God with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace sufficient for you, that by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ; and if by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

And again, if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God, through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins, that ye become holy, without spot.

And now I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, until my spirit and body shall again reunite, and I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge of both quick and dead. Amen.

*The End*